



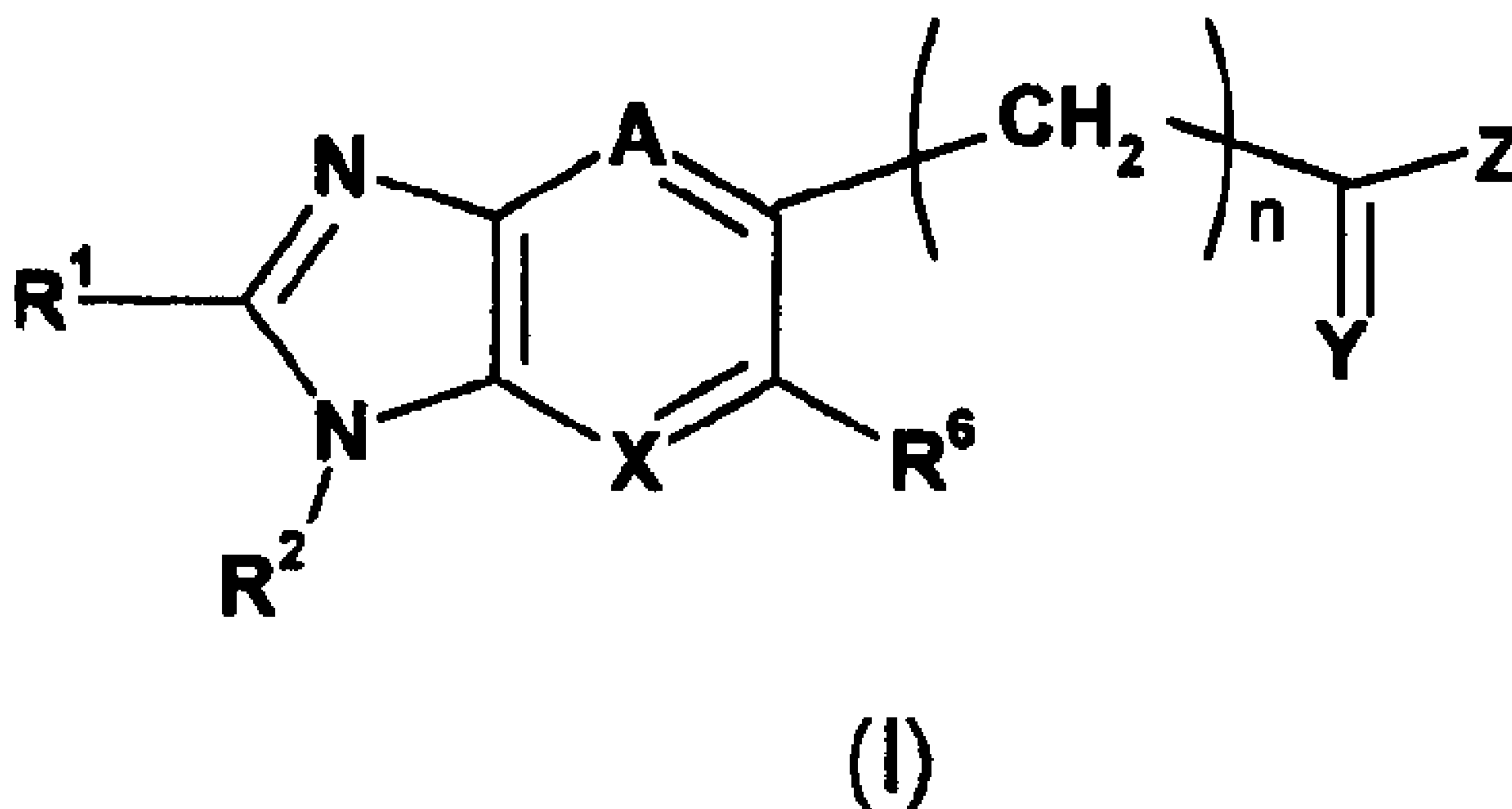
(86) Date de dépôt PCT/PCT Filing Date: 2001/07/04
(87) Date publication PCT/PCT Publication Date: 2002/01/17
(45) Date de délivrance/Issue Date: 2010/06/22
(85) Entrée phase nationale/National Entry: 2002/12/12
(86) N° demande PCT/PCT Application No.: CA 2001/000989
(87) N° publication PCT/PCT Publication No.: 2002/004425
(30) Priorités/Priorities: 2000/07/06 (US60/216,084);
2001/03/08 (US60/274,374); 2001/04/05 (US60/281,343)

(51) Cl.Int./Int.Cl. *C07D 409/14* (2006.01),
A61K 31/4184 (2006.01), *A61K 31/427* (2006.01),
A61P 31/14 (2006.01), *C07D 235/08* (2006.01),
C07D 235/18 (2006.01), *C07D 401/14* (2006.01),
C07D 403/12 (2006.01), *C07D 405/04* (2006.01),
C07D 405/14 (2006.01), *C07D 409/04* (2006.01),
C07D 413/14 (2006.01), *C07D 417/14* (2006.01)

(72) Inventeurs/Inventors:
BEAULIEU, PIERRE LOUIS, CA;
FAZAL, GULREZ, CA;
GILLARD, JAMES, CA;
KUKOLJ, GEORGE, CA;
AUSTEL, VOLKHARD, DE

(73) Propriétaire/Owner:

(54) Titre : INHIBITEURS DE POLYMERASE VIRALE
(54) Title: VIRAL POLYMERASE INHIBITORS



(57) **Abrégé/Abstract:**

A compound of formula (I) wherein: X is CH or N; Y is O or S; Z is OH, NH₂, NMeR³, NHR³, OR³ or 5- or 6-membered heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; A is N, COR⁷ or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆) alkyl and R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆) alkyl, with the proviso that X and A are not both N; R⁶ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₆) alkyl or OR⁷, wherein R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆) alkyl; R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S, phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicyclic having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicyclic are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; R² is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, all of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; R³ is selected



(73) **Propriétaires(suite)/Owners(continued)**:BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM (CANADA) LTD., CA

(74) **Agent**: LOOPER, YWE J.

(57) **Abrégé(suite)/Abstract(continued)**:

from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S; wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; n is zero or 1; or a detectable derivative or salt thereof. The compounds of the invention may be used as inhibitors of hepatitis C virus replication. The invention further provides a method for treating or preventing hepatitis C virus infection.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
17 January 2002 (17.01.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/04425 A3

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07D 235/18,
403/12, 401/12, 413/12, 417/12

(74) Agent: **BERNIER, Louise, G.**; Boehringer Ingelheim
(Canada) Ltd., 2100 Cunard, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5
(CA).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/CA01/00989

(22) International Filing Date: 4 July 2001 (04.07.2001)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:

60/216,084	6 July 2000 (06.07.2000)	US
60/274,374	8 March 2001 (08.03.2001)	US
60/281,343	5 April 2001 (05.04.2001)	US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):
BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM (CANADA) LTD.
[CA/CA]; 2100 Cunard Street, Laval, Québec H7S 2G5
(CA).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **BEAULIEU, Pierre,**
Louis [CA/CA]; 319 Place de l'Obier, Rosemère, Québec
J7A 4H5 (CA). **FAZAL, Gulrez** [CA/CA]; 66 9ième
Avenue, Roxboro, Québec H8Y 2N1 (CA). **GILLARD,**
James [CA/CA]; 346 du Vallon Crescent, Rosemère,
Québec J7A 4M2 (CA). **KUKOLJ, George** [CA/CA]; 521
avenue Algonquin, Mont-Royal, Québec H3C 1C9 (CA).
AUSTEL, Volkhard [DE/DE]; Kappellenweg 7, D-88400
Biberach (DE).

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU,
AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ,
DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR,
HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR,
LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ,
NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM,
TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF,
CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

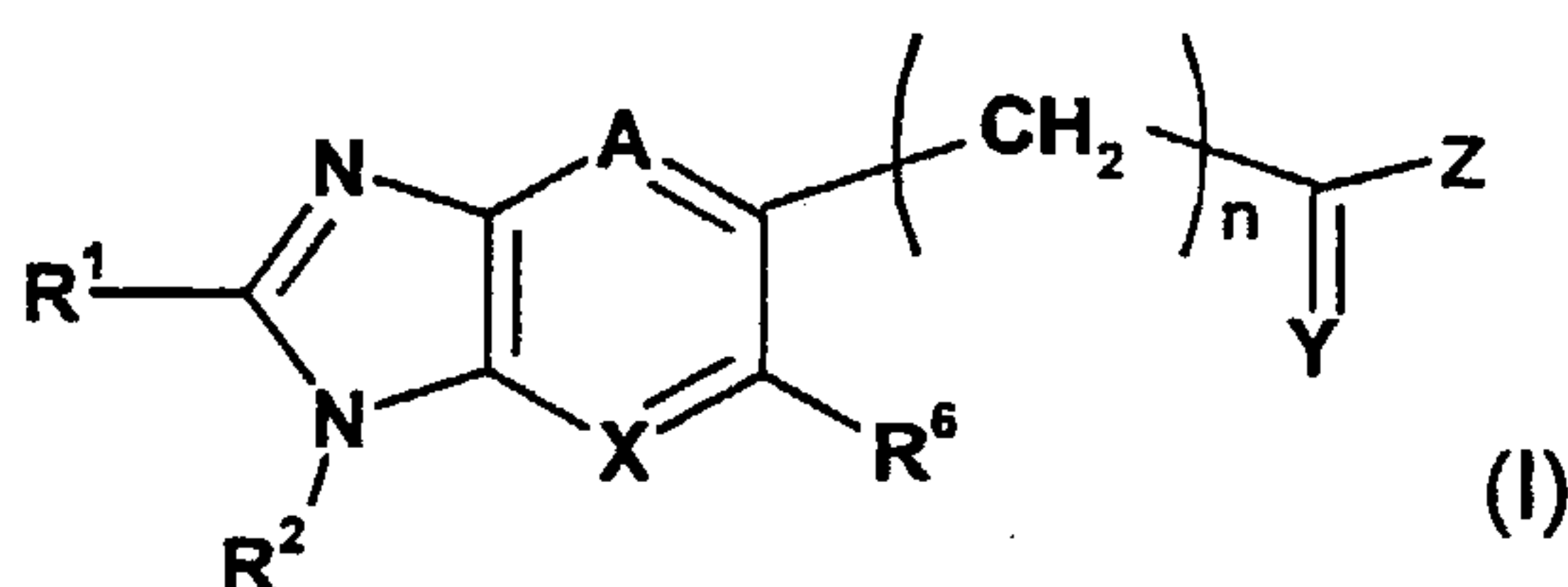
Published:

- with international search report
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the
claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of
amendments

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:
25 April 2002

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: VIRAL POLYMERASE INHIBITORS



(57) Abstract: A compound of formula (I) wherein: X is CH or N; Y is O or S; Z is OH, NH₂, NMeR³, NHR³, OR³ or 5- or 6-membered heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; A is N, COR⁷ or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆) alkyl and R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆) alkyl, with the proviso that X and A are not both N; R⁶ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₆) alkyl or OR⁷, wherein R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆) alkyl; R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle

having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S, phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicyclic having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicyclic are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; R² is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, all of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; R³ is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S; wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents; n is zero or 1; or a detectable derivative or salt thereof. The compounds of the invention may be used as inhibitors of hepatitis C virus replication. The invention further provides a method for treating or preventing hepatitis C virus infection.



WO 02/04425 A3

VIRAL POLYMERASE INHIBITORS

TECHNICAL FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates to inhibitors of RNA dependent RNA polymerases, particularly
5 those viral polymerases within the Flaviviridae family, and more particularly the
NS5B polymerase of HCV.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

10 About 30,000 new cases of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection are estimated to occur
in the United States each year (Kolykhalov, A.A.; Mihalik, K.; Feinstone, S.M.; Rice,
C.M.; 2000; *J. Virol.* **74**: 2046-2051*). HCV is not easily cleared by the hosts'
immunological defences; as many as 85% of the people infected with HCV become
chronically infected. Many of these persistent infections result in chronic liver
15 disease, including cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (Hoofnagle, J.H.; 1997;
Hepatology **26**: 15S-20S*). There are an estimated 170 million HCV carriers world-
wide, and HCV-associated end-stage liver disease is now one of the leading cause
of liver transplantation. In the United States alone, hepatitis C is responsible for
8,000 to 10,000 deaths annually. Without effective intervention, the number is
20 expected to triple in the next 10 to 20 years. There is no vaccine to prevent HCV
infection. Prolonged treatment of chronically infected patients with interferon or
interferon and ribavirin is the only currently approved therapy, but it achieves a
sustained response in fewer than 50% of cases (Lindsay, K.L.; 1997; *Hepatology*
26: 71S-77S*, and Reichard, O.; Schvarcz, R.; Weiland, O.; 1997 *Hepatology* **26**:
25 108S-111S*).

HCV belongs to the family *Flaviviridae*, genus *hepacivirus*, which comprises three
genera of small enveloped positive-strand RNA viruses (Rice, C.M.; 1996;
"Flaviviridae: the viruses and their replication"; pp. 931-960 in *Fields Virology*;
30 Fields, B.N.; Knipe, D.M.; Howley, P.M. (eds.); Lippincott-Raven Publishers,

Philadelphia Pa. *). The 9.6 kb genome of HCV consists of a long open reading frame (ORF) flanked by 5' and 3' non-translated regions (NTR's). The HCV 5' NTR is 341 nucleotides in length and functions as an internal ribosome entry site for cap-independent translation initiation (Lemon, S.H.; Honda, M.; 1997; *Semin. Virol.* **8**: 274-288*). The HCV polyprotein is cleaved co- and post-translationally into at least 10 individual polypeptides (Reed, K.E.; Rice, C.M.; 2000; *Curr. Top. Microbiol. Immunol.* **242**: 55-84*). The structural proteins result from signal peptidases in the N-terminal portion of the polyprotein. Two viral proteases mediate downstream cleavages to produce non-structural (NS) proteins that function as components of the HCV RNA replicase. The NS2-3 protease spans the C-terminal half of the NS2 and the N-terminal one-third of NS3 and catalyses *cis* cleavage of the NS2/3 site. The same portion of NS3 also encodes the catalytic domain of the NS3-4A serine protease that cleaves at four downstream sites. The C-terminal two-thirds of NS3 is highly conserved amongst HCV isolates, with RNA-binding, RNA-stimulated NTPase, and RNA unwinding activities. Although NS4B and the NS5A phosphoprotein are also likely components of the replicase, their specific roles are unknown. The C-terminal polyprotein cleavage product, NS5B, is the elongation subunit of the HCV replicase possessing RNA-dependent RNA polymerase (RdRp) activity (Behrens, S.E.; Tomei, L.; DeFrancesco, R.; 1996; *EMBO J.* **15**: 12-22*; and Lohmann, V.; Körner, F.; Herian, U.; Bartenschlager, R.; 1997; *J. Virol.* **71**: 8416-8428*). It has been recently demonstrated that mutations destroying NS5B activity abolish infectivity of RNA in a chimp model (Kolykhalov, A.A.; Mihalik, K.; Feinstone, S.M.; Rice, C.M.; 2000; *J. Virol.* **74**: 2046-2051*).

The development of new and specific anti-HCV treatments is a high priority, and virus-specific functions essential for replication are the most attractive targets for drug development. The absence of RNA dependent RNA polymerases in mammals, and the fact that this enzyme appears to be essential to viral replication, would suggest that the NS5B polymerase is an ideal target for anti-HCV therapeutics.

WO 00/06529 reports inhibitors of NS5B which are α , γ -diketoacids.

WO 00/13708, WO 00/10573, and WO 00/18231 report inhibitors of NS5B proposed for treatment of HCV.

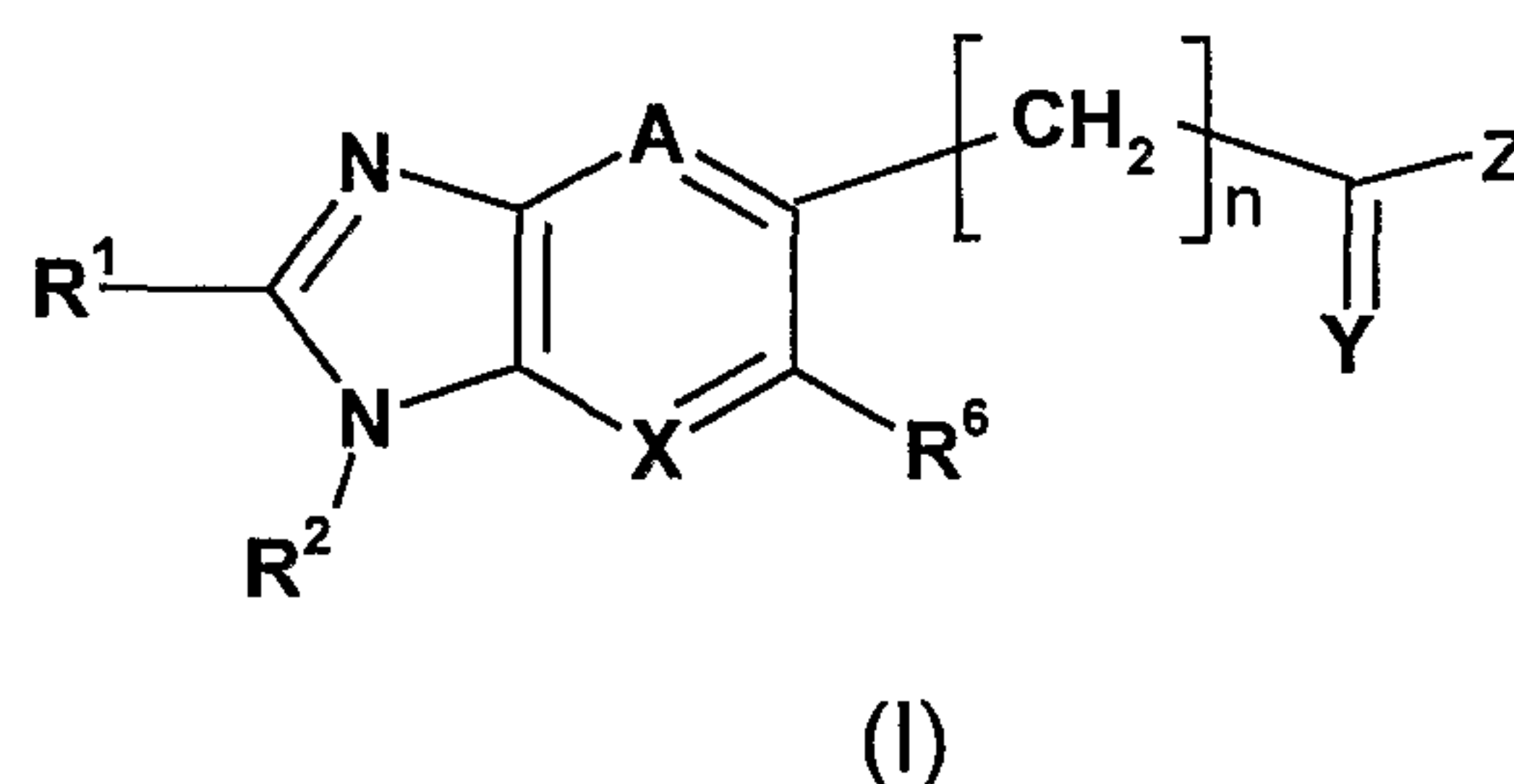
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

5

The present invention reduces the difficulties and disadvantages of the prior art by providing a novel class of compounds useful for the treatment and prevention of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection. The aforesaid compounds have been found to inhibit an RNA dependent RNA polymerase encoded by HCV.

10

In a first aspect, the invention provides a compound of formula I:



wherein:

15

X is CH or N;

Y is O or S;

Z is OH, NH₂, NMeR³, NHR³; OR³ or 5- or 6-membered heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

20

COOH and -O-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH;

A is N, COR⁷ or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆) alkyl and R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl), with the proviso that **X** and **A** are not both N;

R⁶ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₆ alkyl) or OR⁷, wherein R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl);

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R^2 is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, all of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from

halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

R^3 is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆)alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being

optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂,
NCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂,
wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

5

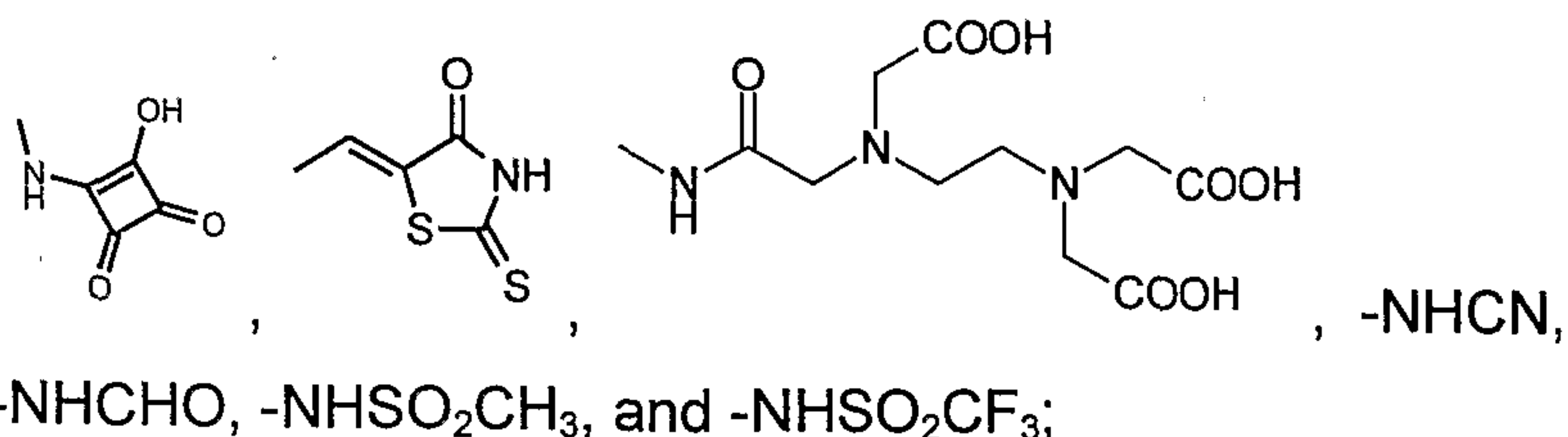
9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected
from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with
from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

10

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, -CONH₂,
-COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH,
-CONH₂, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin,
benzoyleneurea, triazolyl, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido,
-O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl,
-NHCOCOOH, -NHCOCOCONHOH, -NHCOCOCONH₂,
-NHCOCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,
-NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-
COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-
COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)
alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-
COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)
alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂,
-NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl
COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,

15

20



25

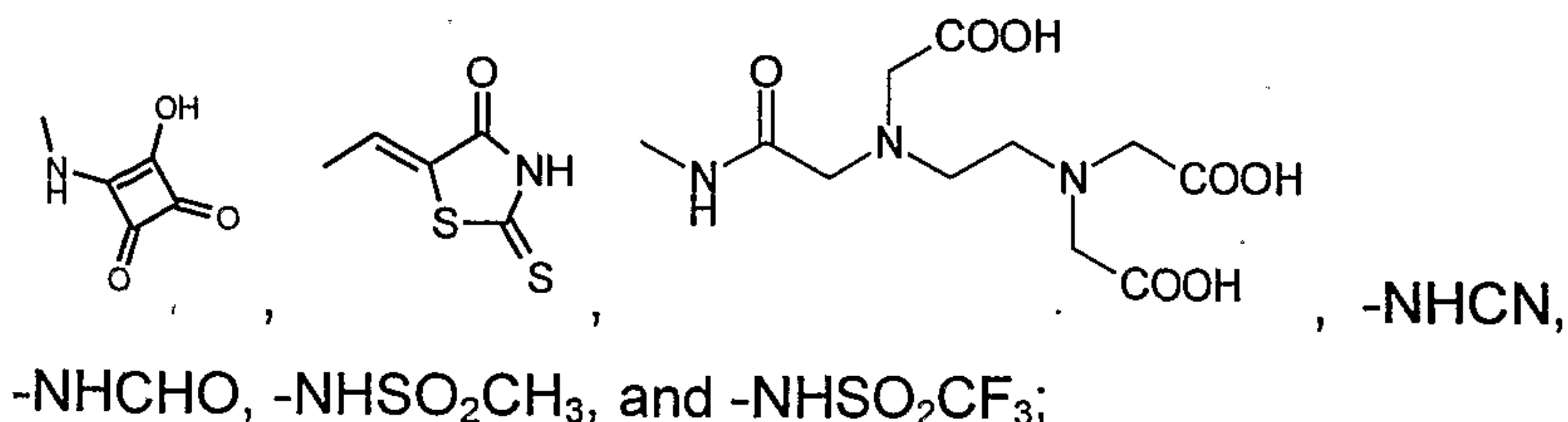
6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4
substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, nitro, -CONH₂,
-COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH,
-CONH₂, OH, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin,

5

10

benzoyleneurea, triazolyl, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido,
 -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl,
 -NHCOCOOH, -NHCOCOCONHOH, -NHCOCOCONH₂,
 -NHCOCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,
 -NHCOCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-
 COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-
 COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)
 alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-
 COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)
 alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂,
 -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl
 COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,



15

20

25

coumarin, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, C(halogen)₃,
 -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -NH(C₆₋₁₀)aroyl, -CONHCH(CH₂OH)₂, -CO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 COOH, -CO-NH-alanyl, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl,
 -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂,
 -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-pyrrolidino,
 -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-(COOH)-
 imidazole, -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,
 -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl,
 -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 COOH,
 -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆)alkyl-CONH-9 or
 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from
 O, N, and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from
 1 to 4 substituents selected from;

COOH, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (CH₂)_pCOOH;

-CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH;

5 -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl), said aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH;

-O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl; and

10 n is zero or 1;

or a detectable derivative or salt thereof;

with the proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R¹ is not a five membered heterocycle containing S and N;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R¹ is
15 (C₂₋₁₀)alkyl, (C₃₋₁₀)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R² is not phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R¹ is not 5-nitro-2-furyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is optionally substituted alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R¹ is 5-aryl-2-furyl;

20 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R¹ is not 6-phenylbenzofuran-2-yl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is *n*-Pr, then R¹ is not 2,3-benzofuranyl or phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is Me, then
25 R¹ is not phenyl or methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl ;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is Et, then R¹ is not methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is (C₁₋₈)alkyl, then R¹ is not ethenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, then R^1 is not substituted or unsubstituted phenyl, heteroaryl, CHCHphenyl, CHCHfuryl, CHCHpyridyl or CHCHquinoliny;

5 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, cycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not alkenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, pyridyl, 2-hydroxyphenyl or alkenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl or hydroxy (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not (C_{5-15}) aryl, (C_{2-6}) alkenyl or (C_{3-10}) heteroarylene;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-12}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl or aryl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 2-hydroxyphenyl;

15 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=1$, then R^1 is not methyl, ethyl or vinyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=1$, then R^1 is not 5-azabenzimidazol-2-yl;

20 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$ or 1, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl or hydroxy (C_{1-4}) alkyl then R^1 is not C_{1-4} alkyl. optionally substituted by OH, COOH or halo;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$ or 1, R^1 is heteroaryl or phenyl, then R^2 is not heteroaryl or phenyl;

25 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is (C_{1-3}) alkyl, substituted with COOH, COOalkyl or tetrazol-5-yl, and further substituted with aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$ or 1, and R^1 is (C_{2-10}) alkyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R^2 is not optionally substituted phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is $NMeR^3$ or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl or aryl, then R^1 is not a substituted 2-benzofuryl group;

30 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is alkyl,

$n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not a substituted benzofuryl group or benzofuran-2-yl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is Me, $n=0$, and R^2 is Me, then R^1 is not methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl;

5 and with the proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl or aryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl not substituted with OH, then R^1 is not aryl or heterocycle;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, heteroaryl or alkyl;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 or $NMeR^3$ [wherein R^3 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl bearing an N-substituted sulfonamido group;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heterocycle, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not
15 3,4-dialkoxyphenyl, 3,4-dialkoxyphenylphenylene or 3,4-dialkoxyphenylalkylene;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, allyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, phenyl or benzyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not tetrazolyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is
20 alkyl, halogenoalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylsulphonyl, arylaminocarbonyl or arylmethylsulphonyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, then R^1 is not substituted phenyl or heteroaryl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, phenyl or benzyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl;

25 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not fluoroalkyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, then R^1 is not alkenyl or aryl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is
30 thiazolyl], $n=1$, and R^2 is (C_{1-8}) alkyl, (C_{1-6}) haloalkyl, (C_{3-7}) cycloalkyl, phenyl or

heteroaryl, then R^1 is not phenyl, phenyl(C_{2-4})alkenyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, (C_{1-8})alkyl, (C_{2-6})alkenyl, or (C_{3-7})cycloalkyl;

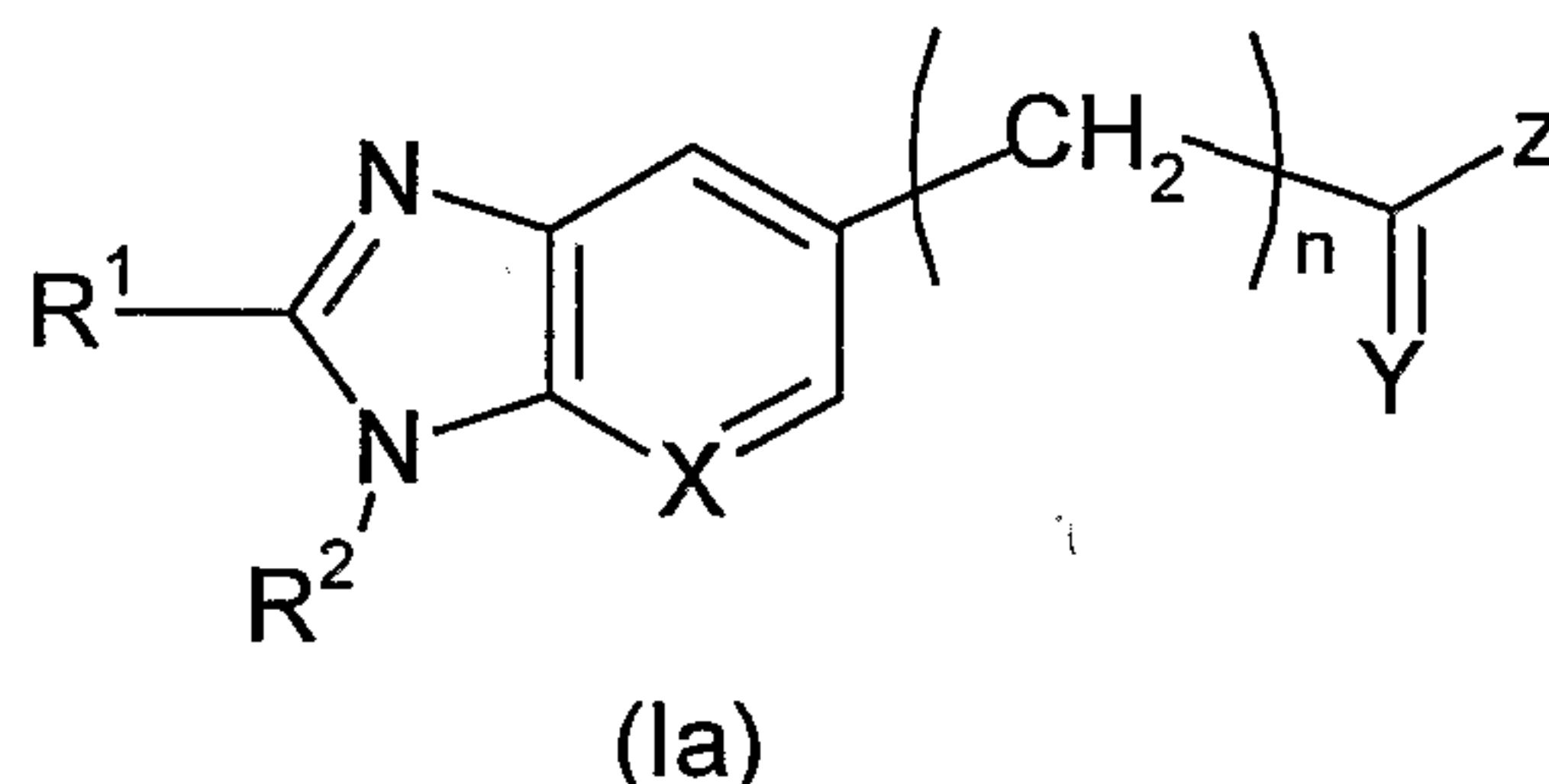
and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH_2 , $n=1$, and R^2 is (C_{1-5})alkyl, then R^1 is not methyl or optionally halogenated phenyl;

5 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is n -Pr, then R^1 is not phenylethenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, then R^1 is not substituted phenyl or naphthyl;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH_2 or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is (C_{1-4})alkyl, benzyl or p -fluorophenylmethyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4})alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl substituted with acylamino.

Alternatively, the first aspect of the invention also provides a compound of formula Ia:



15

wherein:

X is CH or N;

Y is O or S;

20 Z is OH, NH_2 , $NMeR^3$ or NHR^3 ;

and wherein

R^1 is selected from 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl or heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

25 phenyl, phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl, (C_{2-6})alkenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl, (C_{3-6})cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, 9- or 10-atom heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected

from O, N and S,

wherein said heteroaryl, phenyl phenylalkenyl, phenylalkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle are all optionally substituted with 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃ and NO₂;

R² is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, all of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

R³ is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, and 5- to 10-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

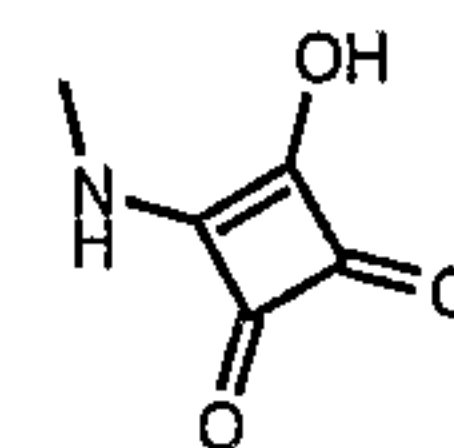
wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- to 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to four substituents selected from:

CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH and COOH;

9- to 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, tetrazolyl, COOH, -CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, and -O(C₁₋₃)COOH; (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, amino,

azido, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, OPO₃H,
sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, nitro, C(halo)₃, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl,



-NHCOCOOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂,
-NHCN, -NHCHO, -NHSO₂CH₃, -NHSO₂CF₃, -NH(C₆₋₁₀)aroyl,
-CONH₂, -CO-NH-alanyl, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph,
-O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH,
-OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,
-CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl,
-CONH(C₂₋₄)N(CH₃)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)morpholino and
-O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl, p being an integer from 1 to 4; and

n is zero or 1; or a salt thereof;

with the proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or hydroxyalkyl,
then R¹ is not a five membered heterocycle containing S and N;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R¹ is
(C₂₋₁₀)alkyl, (C₃₋₁₀)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R² is not phenyl; and with
the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or
hydroxyalkyl, then R¹ is not 5-nitro-2-furyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is optionally
substituted alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R¹ is 5-aryl-2-furyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is alkyl or
cycloalkyl, then R¹ is not 6-phenylbenzofuran-2-yl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is *n*-Pr, then
R¹ is not 2,3-benzofuranyl or phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is Me, then
R¹ is not phenyl or methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl ;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is Et, then

- R^1 is not methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-8}) alkyl, then R^1 is not ethenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, then R^1 is not substituted or unsubstituted phenyl, heteroaryl, CHCHphenyl, CHCHfuryl, CHCHpyridyl or CHCHquinoliny;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, cycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not alkenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, pyridyl, 2-hydroxyphenyl or alkenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl or hydroxy (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not (C_{5-15}) aryl, (C_{2-6}) alkenyl or (C_{3-10}) heteroarylene;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-12}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl or aryl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 2-hydroxyphenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=1$, then R^1 is not methyl, ethyl or vinyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=1$, then R^1 is not 5-azabenzimidazol-2-yl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$ or 1, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl or hydroxy (C_{1-4}) alkyl then R^1 is not C_{1-4} alkyl. optionally substituted by OH, COOH or halo;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$ or 1, R^1 is heteroaryl or phenyl, then R^2 is not heteroaryl or phenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is (C_{1-3}) alkyl, substituted with COOH, COOalkyl or tetrazol-5-yl, and further substituted with aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$ or 1, and R^1 is (C_{2-10}) alkyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R^2 is not optionally substituted phenyl;
- and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is $NMeR^3$ or NHR^3 [wherein R^3

is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl or aryl, then R^1 is not a substituted 2-benzofuryl group;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is alkyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not a substituted benzofuryl group or
5 benzofuran-2-yl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 wherein R^3 is Me, $n=0$, and R^2 is Me, then R^1 is not methoxy-2,3-benzofuranyl;

and with the proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl or aryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl not substituted with OH, then R^1 is not aryl or heterocycle;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, heteroaryl or alkyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 or $NMeR^3$ [wherein R^3 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl bearing an
15 N-substituted sulfonamido group;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heterocycle, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 3,4-dialkoxyphenyl, 3,4-dialkoxyphenylphenylene or 3,4-dialkoxyphenylalkylene;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, allyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, phenyl or benzyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl, cycloalkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not tetrazolyl;
20

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is alkyl, halogenoalkyl, alkoxyalkyl, alkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylsulphonyl, arylaminocarbonyl or arylmethysulphonyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is lower alkyl, then R^1 is not
25 substituted phenyl or heteroaryl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, phenyl or benzyl, $n=0$, and R^2 is (C_{1-4}) alkyl, then R^1 is not phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is alkyl or hydroxyalkyl, then R^1 is not fluoroalkyl;

30 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH_2 , $n=0$, and R^2 is

alkyl, then R¹ is not alkenyl or aryl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR³ [wherein R³ is thiazolyl], n=1, and R² is (C₁₋₈)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)haloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, phenyl or heteroaryl, then R¹ is not phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle,
5 (C₁₋₈)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NH₂, n=1, and R² is (C₁₋₅)alkyl, then R¹ is not methyl or optionally halogenated phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH₂, n=0, and R² is *n*-Pr, then R¹ is not phenylethenyl;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH₂, n=0, and R² is alkyl, then R¹ is not substituted phenyl or naphthyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NH₂ or NHR³ [wherein R³ is (C₁₋₄)alkyl, benzyl or *p*-fluorophenylmethyl, n=0, and R² is (C₁₋₄)alkyl, then R¹ is not phenyl substituted with acylamino.

15

In a second aspect, the invention provides an inhibitor of NS5B having the formula I, or Ia, without the provisos.

In a third aspect, the invention provides an inhibitor of HCV replication having the
20 formula I, or Ia, without the provisos.

In a fourth aspect, the invention provides a method of treating or preventing HCV infection in a mammal, comprising administering to the mammal an effective amount of a compound of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos.

25

In a fifth aspect, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prevention of HCV infection, comprising an effective amount of a compound of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

In a sixth aspect, the invention provides a use for the manufacture of a medicament of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos, for the treatment of HCV infection.

- 5 In a seventh aspect, the invention provides a use of a compound of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos, as an inhibitor of NS5B.

In an eighth aspect, the invention provides a use of a compound of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos, as an inhibitor of HCV replication.

10

In a ninth aspect, the invention provides a method of treating HCV infection in a mammal, comprising giving instructions to a third party to administer a compound of formula I, or Ia, without the provisos to a subject suffering from HCV infection.

15 **BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

Having thus generally described the invention, reference will now be made to the accompanying drawing, showing by way of illustration a preferred embodiment thereof, and in which:

- 20 **Figure 1** shows an amino acid sequence of full length NS5B (**SEQ ID NO 1**) of HCV.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Definitions

- 25 The following definitions apply unless otherwise noted:

As used herein, the term "detectable derivative" is intended to refer to substituents, which "label" compounds of the present invention such that when the compound is associated with the polymerase target, the presence of the compound can be

detected, measured and quantified. Examples of such "labels" are intended to include, but are not limited to, fluorescent labels, colorimetric labels, and radioactive isotopes.

- 5 As used herein, the terms "(C₁₋₃) alkyl", "(C₁₋₄) alkyl" or "(C₁₋₆) alkyl", either alone or in combination with another radical, are intended to mean acyclic straight chain alkyl radicals containing up to three, four and six carbon atoms respectively. Examples of such radicals include methyl, ethyl, propyl, butyl, hexyl, 1-methylethyl, 1-methylpropyl, 2-methylpropyl, 1,1-dimethylethyl.

10

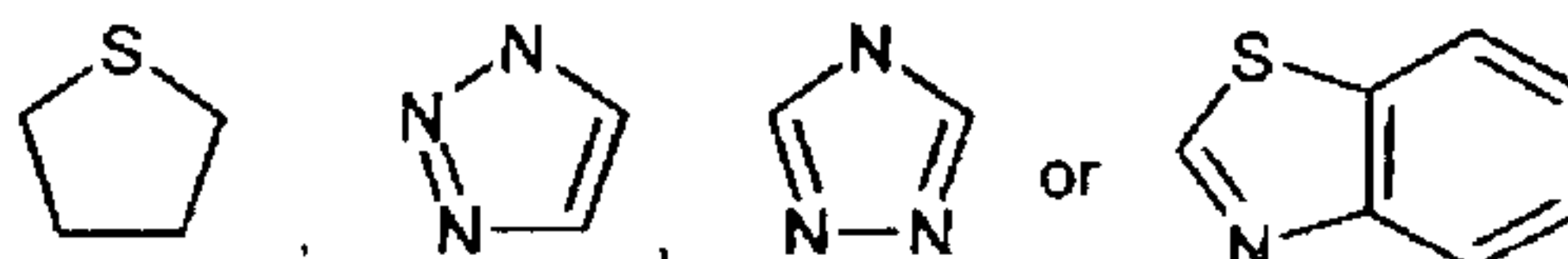
As used herein, the term "(C₂₋₄) alkenyl", either alone or in combination with another radical, is intended to mean an unsaturated, acyclic straight chain radical containing two to four carbon atoms.

- 15 As used herein, the term "(C₃₋₇) cycloalkyl", either alone or in combination with another radical, means a cycloalkyl radical containing from three to seven carbon atoms and includes cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl.

As used herein, the term "aryl", either alone or in combination with another radical
20 means aromatic radical containing six, or nine or ten carbon atoms, for example phenyl.

As used herein, the term "heterocycle" or "Het", either alone or in combination with another radical, means a monovalent radical derived by removal of a hydrogen from
25 a five-, six-, or seven-membered saturated or unsaturated (including aromatic) heterocycle containing from one to four heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Furthermore, "heterobicyclic" as used herein, means a heterocycle as defined above fused to one or more other cycle, be it a heterocycle or any other cycle. Examples of such heterocycles include, but are not limited to, pyrrolidine,
30 tetrahydrofuran, thiazolidine, pyrrole, thiophene, diazepine, 1H-imidazole, isoxazole, thiazole, tetrazole, piperidine, 1,4-dioxane, 4-morpholine, pyridine, pyridine-N-oxide,

pyrimidine, thiazolo[4,5-b]-pyridine, quinoline, or indole, or the following heterocycles:



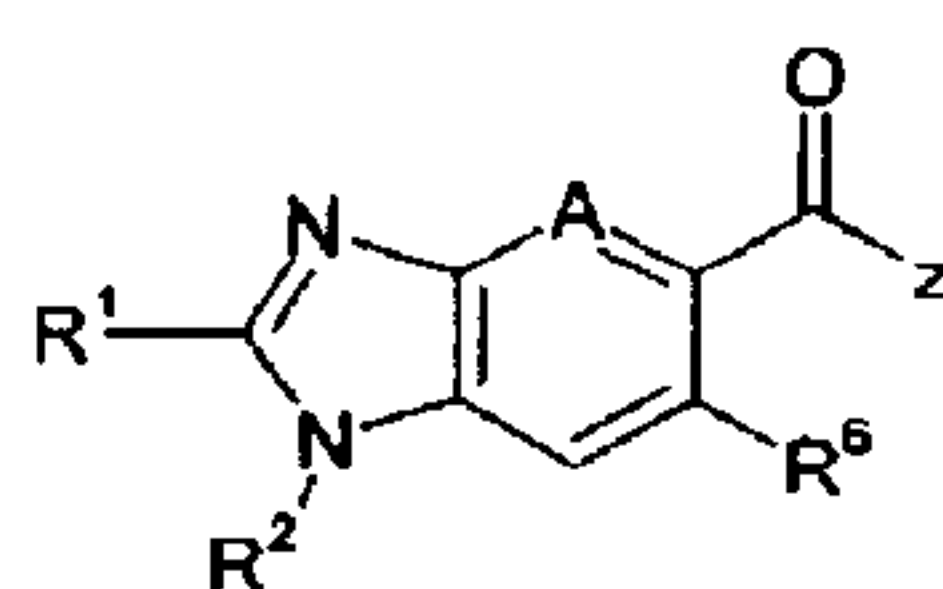
- 5 As used herein, the term "halo" means a halogen atom and includes fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

- As used herein, the term "pharmaceutically acceptable salt" includes those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable bases and is non-toxic. Examples of suitable
 10 bases include choline, ethanolamine and ethylenediamine. Na^+ , K^+ , and Ca^{++} salts are also contemplated to be within the scope of the invention (also see Pharmaceutical salts, Birge, S.M. et al., J. Pharm. Sci., (1977), 66, 1-19.

15 **Preferred embodiments**

Compounds of the invention act as inhibitors of NS5B RNA dependent RNA polymerase -type activity *in vitro* and in HCV infected individuals.

- 20 According to the first embodiment of this invention preferably compounds of the invention have the following formula:



(1b).

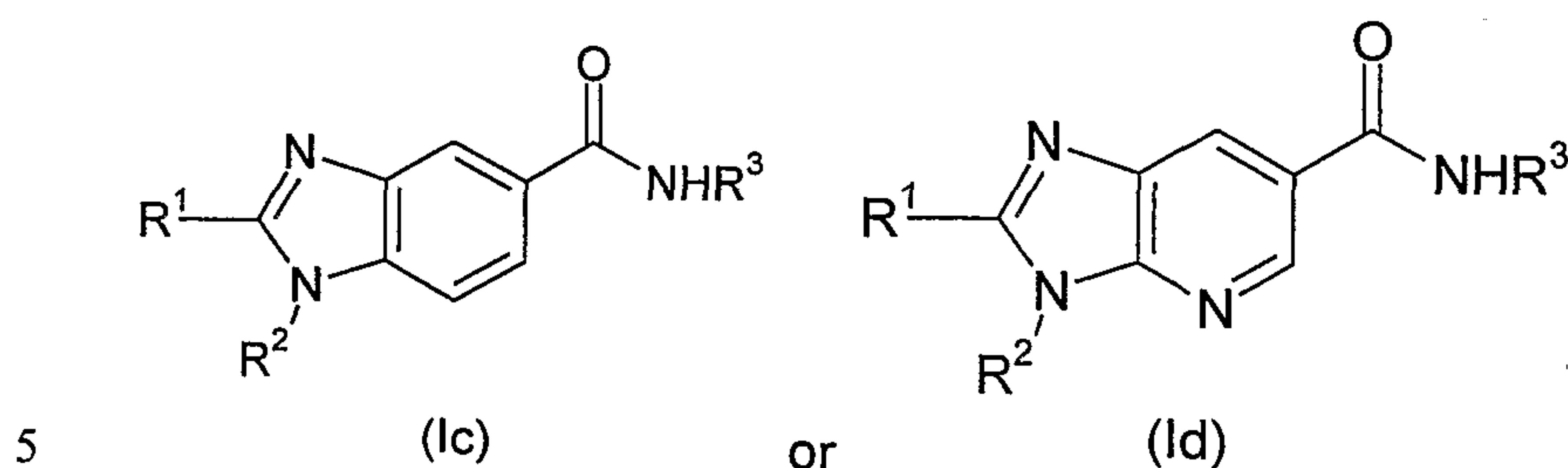
Preferably A is N or CR^5 , wherein R^5 is H or (C_{1-6} alkyl). More preferably A is N, CCH_3 , or CH. Most preferably A is CH.

- 25 Preferably R^6 is H or (C_{1-6})alkyl. More preferably R^6 is CH_3 or H. Most preferably R^6

is H.

Preferably Z is NHR^3 , OR^3 , or OH. Most preferably Z is NHR^3 .

Alternatively preferably, compounds of the invention have the following formulae:



With respect to compounds of formula (I), (Ia), (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), preferably R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

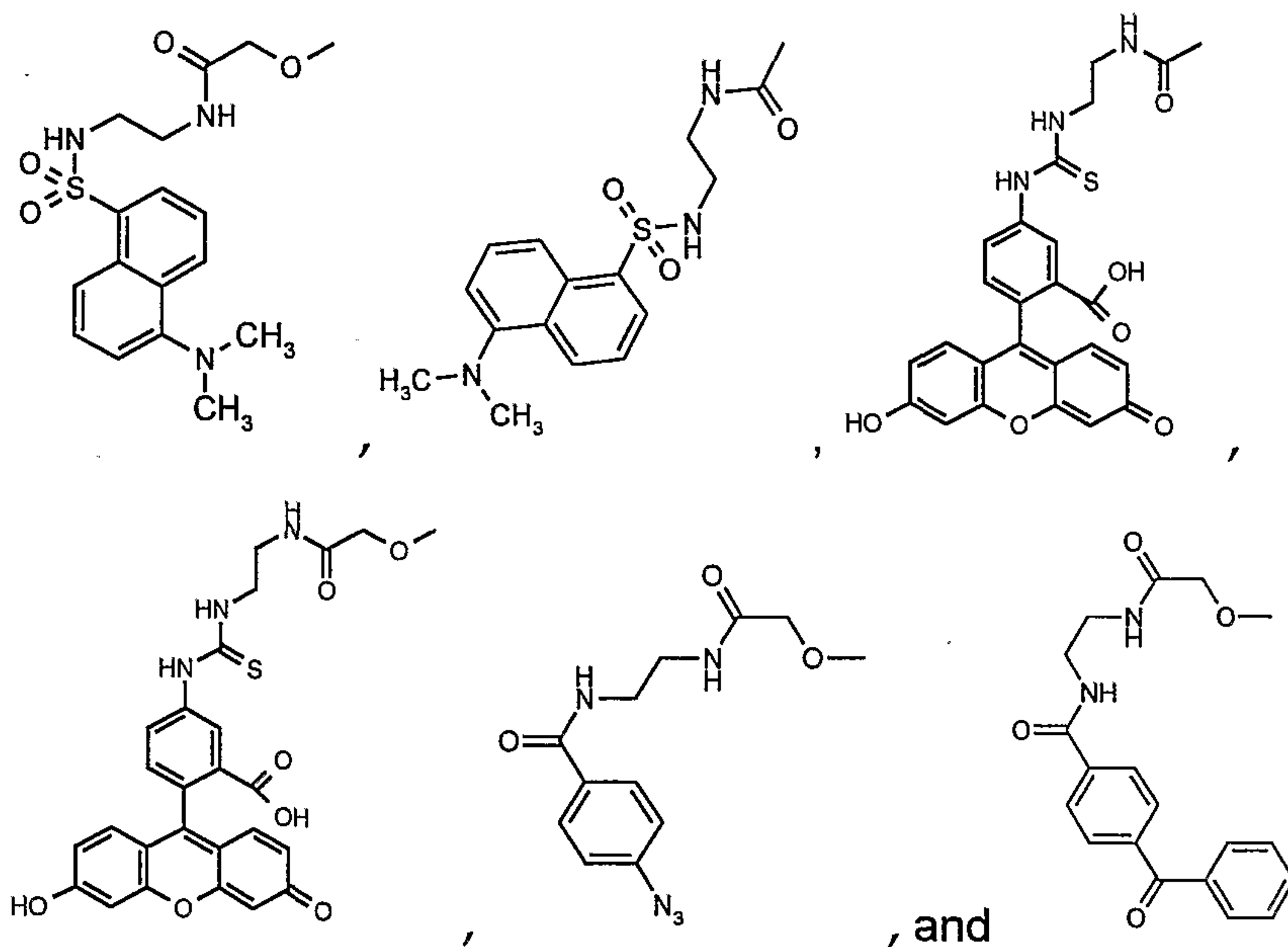
- 10 phenyl, phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl, (C_{2-6})alkenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl, (C_{3-6})cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, CF_3 , 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

15 wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl and phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, and heterobicycle are all optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF_3 , amino, cyano, phenyl(C_{1-4})alkoxy, COOH , $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CONHCH}_2\text{Ph}$, (C_{1-4})alkyl, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CONH}(\text{CH}_2)_{2-3}\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$, (C_{1-4})alkoxy, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{CO}-(\text{morpholino})$, pyrrole, pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C_{2-4})alkenyl, phenoxy, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{acyl}$, $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{OH}$, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO_3H , and NO_2 .

- 20 More preferably R^1 is furyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, pyridyl, N-methylpyrrolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazine, imidazole, isoquinoline, thiazole, pyrimidine, thiadiazole, pyrazole, isoxazole, indole, thiophenyl, 1,3-benzodioxazole, 1,4-benzodioxan, CF_3 , phenyl;

25 wherein said furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, pyridyl, N-methylpyrrolyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazine, isoquinoline, thiazole, pyrimidine, pyrazole, isoxazole, indole, thiophenyl, 1,3-benzodioxazole, 1,4-benzodioxan or phenyl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: (C_{1-6} alkyl),

(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, COOH, OH, halogen, CF₃, cyano, phenoxy, pyrrolidinyl, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)₂OH, NO₂, SO₃H,

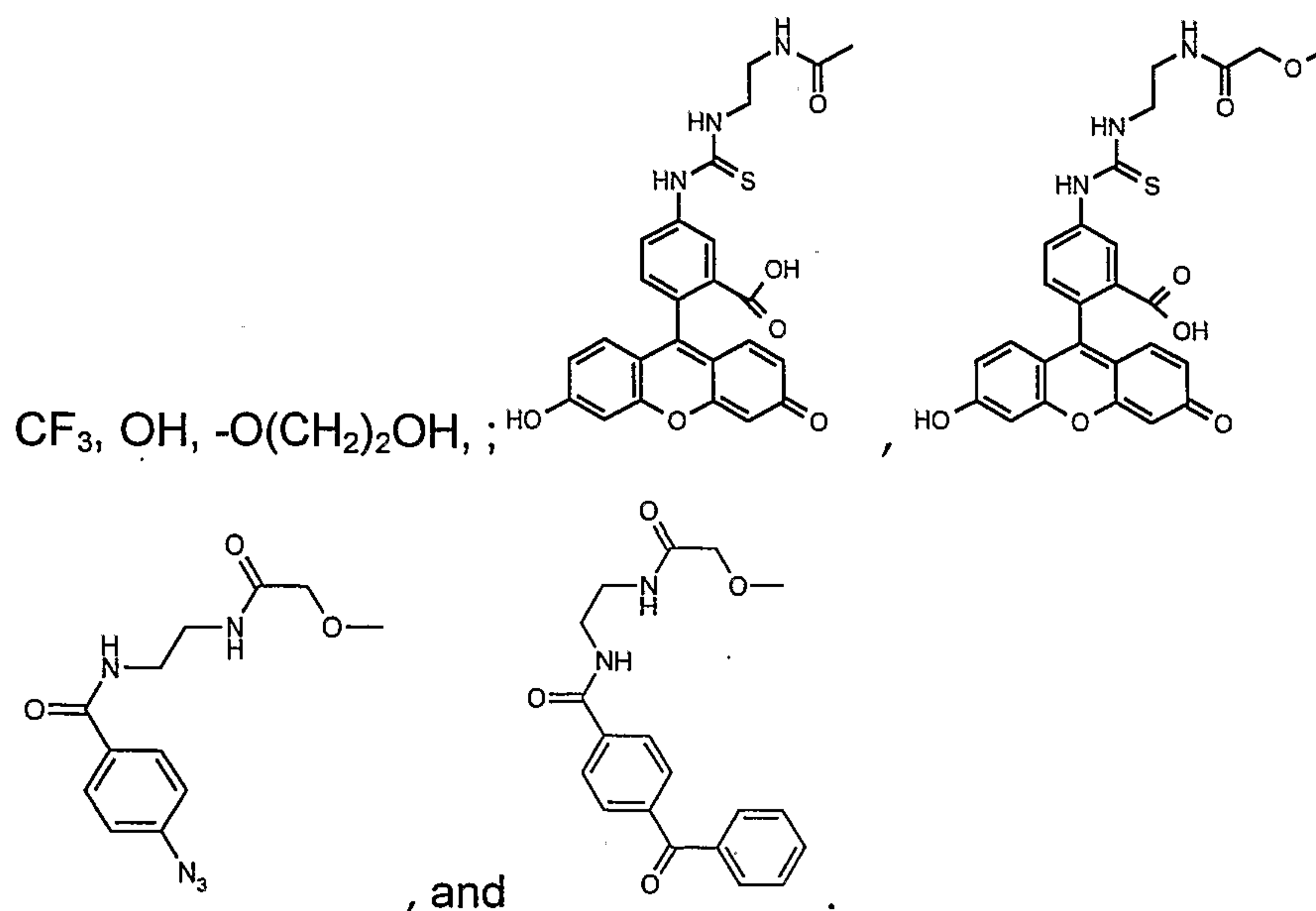


5

Even more preferably R¹ is furanyl, pyridinyl, phenyl, pyridyl, thiophene, thiadiazole, 1,3-benzodioxazole, pyrazine, imidazole, pyrazole, isoxazole,

wherein said furan, pyridinyl, phenyl, thiophenyl, thiadiazole, 1,3-benzodioxazole, pyrazine, imidazole, pyrazole, isoxazole being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: (C₁₋₆alkyl), halogen,

10

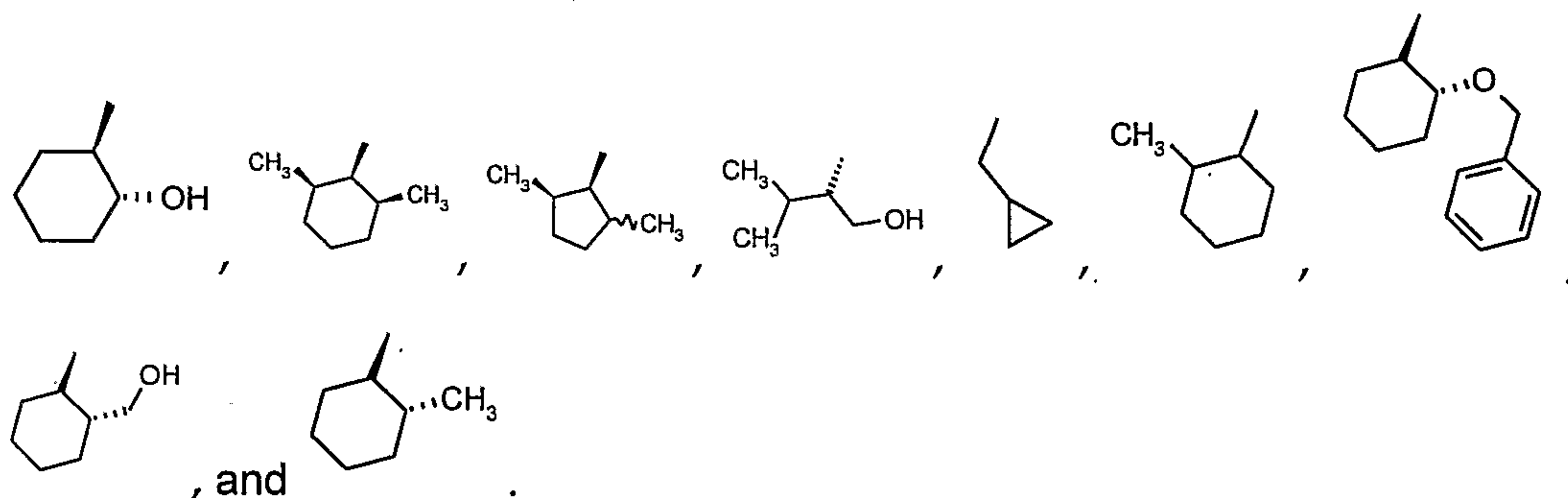


Most preferably R^1 is furanyl, pyridinyl, thiophenyl and phenyl.

With respect to compounds of formula (I), (Ia), (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), preferably R^2 is
 5 selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, all of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH.

10 More preferably R^2 is (C₁₋₆ alkyl), norbornane, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl,



15 Most preferably R^2 is cyclohexyl or cyclopentyl.

With respect to compounds of formula (I), (Ia), (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), preferably R^3 is
 selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl,
 20 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl,
 (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle, having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected
 from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected
 from O, N and S;

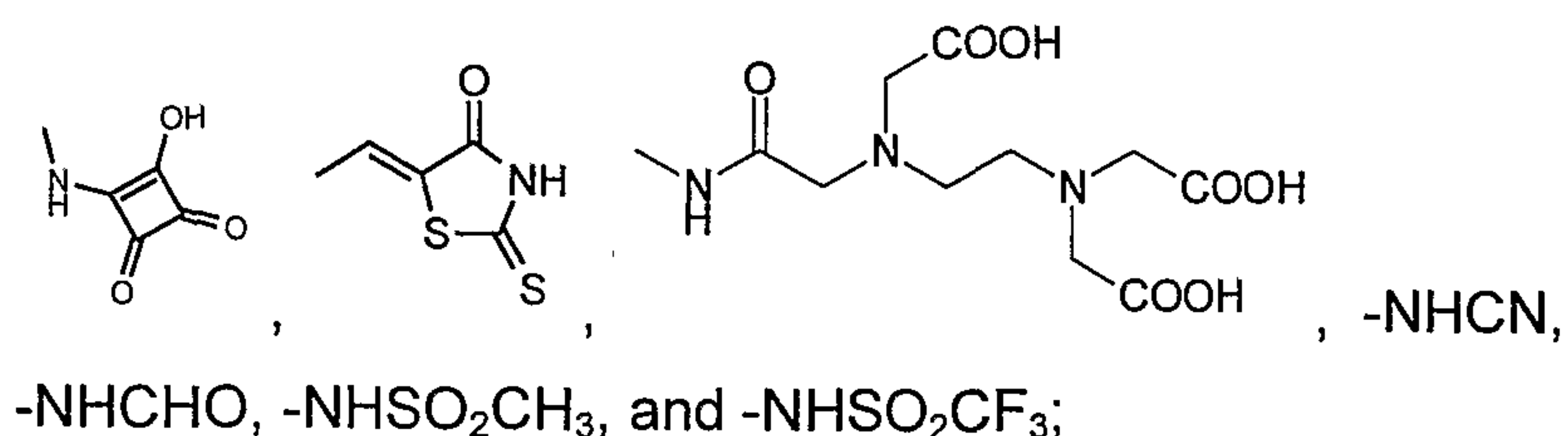
wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are all optionally
 25 substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH,

COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, NCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

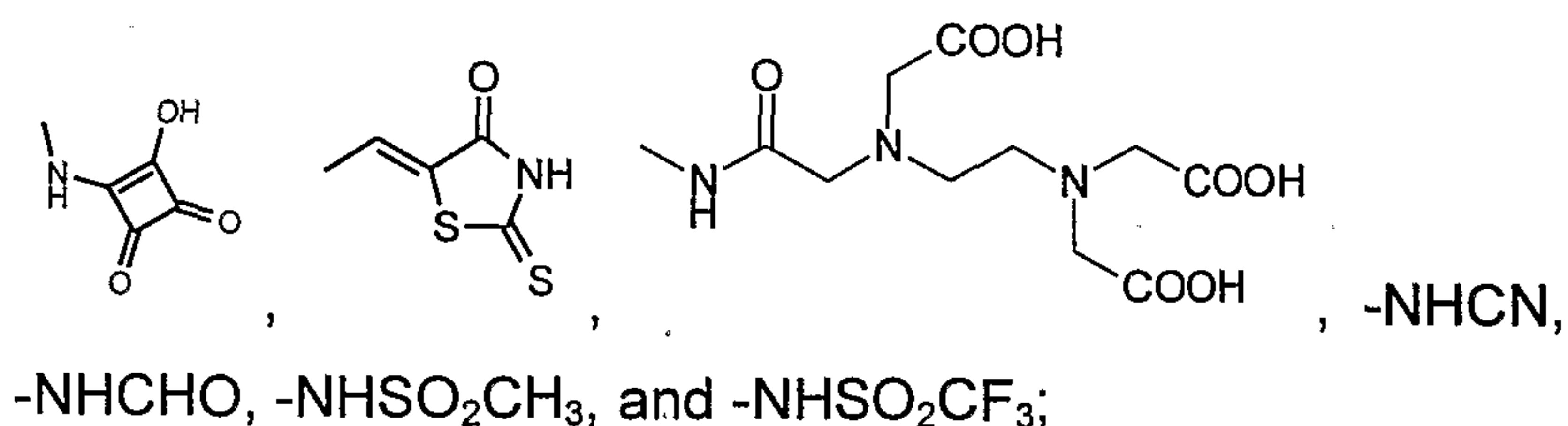
9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, nitro, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH, -CONH₂, OH, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, triazolyl, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCOOH, -NHCOCONHOH, -NHCOCONH₂, -NHCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,



6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , nitro, $-\text{CONH}_2$,
 $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkenyl})\text{COOH}$, tetrazolyl, COOH ,
 $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl, OH , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin,
 benzoyleneurea, $(\text{C}_{1-4})\text{alkoxy}$, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$
 COOH , $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COO}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCOCONHCH}_3$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, -
 $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-}$
 COOH , - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-O}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$,
 $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl COOH}$,



coumarin, $(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-amino}$, $\text{di}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-amino}$, $\text{C}(\text{halogen})_3$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{acyl}$,
 $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aroyl}$, $-\text{CONHCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{OH})_2$, $-\text{CO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{CO-NH-alanyl}$,
 $-(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, $-\text{OCH}_2\text{Ph}$, $-\text{CONHbenzyl}$, $-\text{CONHpyridyl}$, $-\text{CONHCH}_2\text{pyridyl}$,
 $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{alkylN}(\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl})_2$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{alkyl-morpholino}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-4})$
 alkyl-pyrrolidino , $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{alkyl-}$
 $(\text{COOH})\text{-imidazole}$, $-\text{CONHCH}_2\text{CH}(\text{OH})\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$,
 $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, $-\text{CONH}(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkyl-CONH-9 or 10-}$
 membered heterobicyclic having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and
 S, said heterobicyclic being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4
 substituents selected from;

COOH , $(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$;

-CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

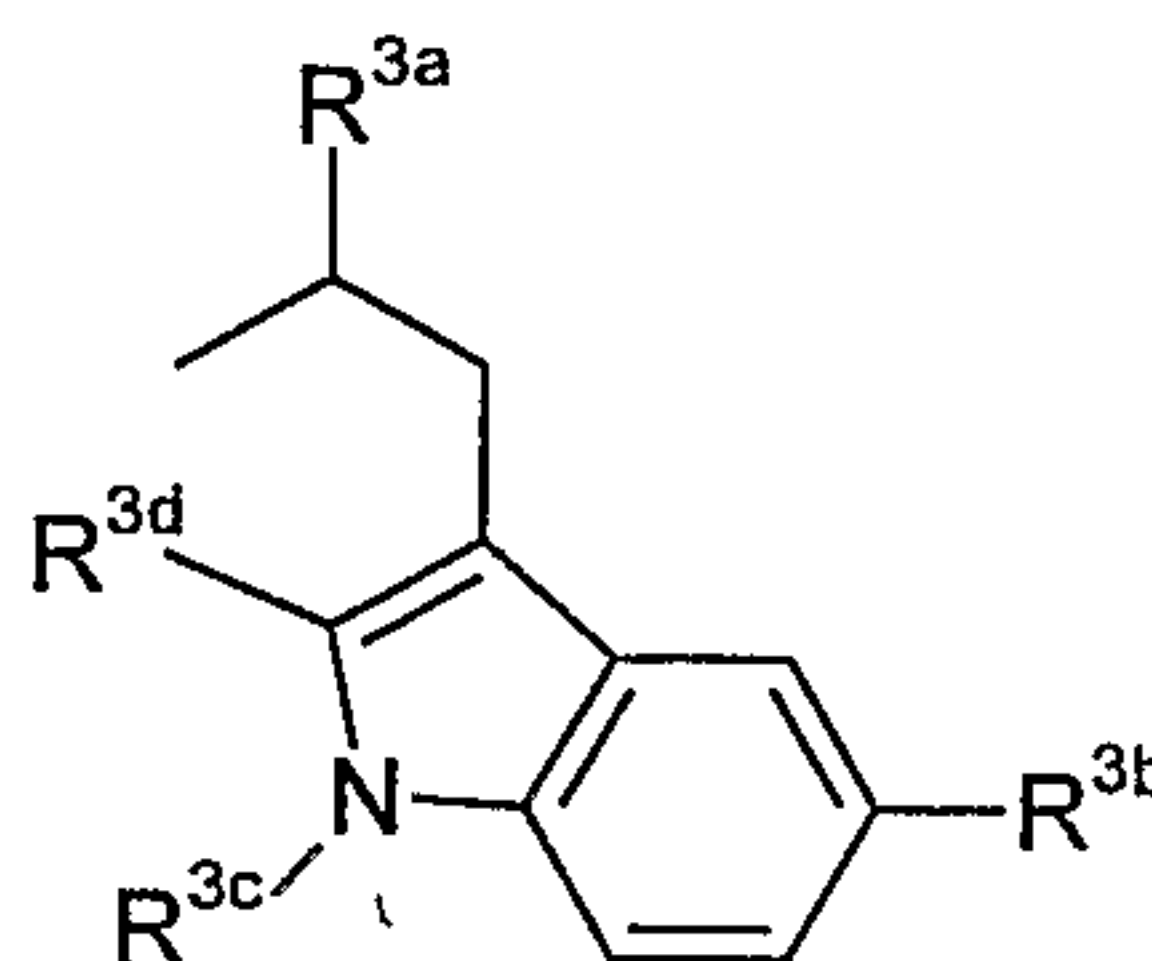
COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH;

5 -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl), said aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH; and

-O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl.

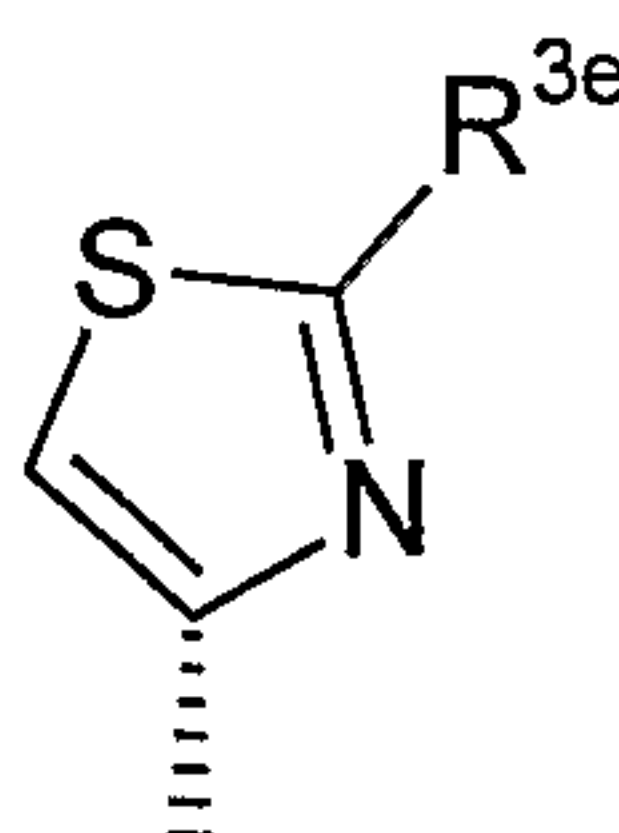
10 More preferably, R³ is



wherein preferably R^{3a} is selected from H, 5- to 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to
 15 4 substituents selected from the group consisting of: CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH, NCH(CH₃)₂, NHCOCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, and N(CH₃)₂, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CH₂-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(CH₃)₂.

20 Most preferably R^{3a} is COOR^{3g}, CONHR^{3f}, or



wherein preferably R^{3e} is H, (C₁₋₆ alkyl), amino, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), N{(C₁₋₆ alkyl)}₂, or

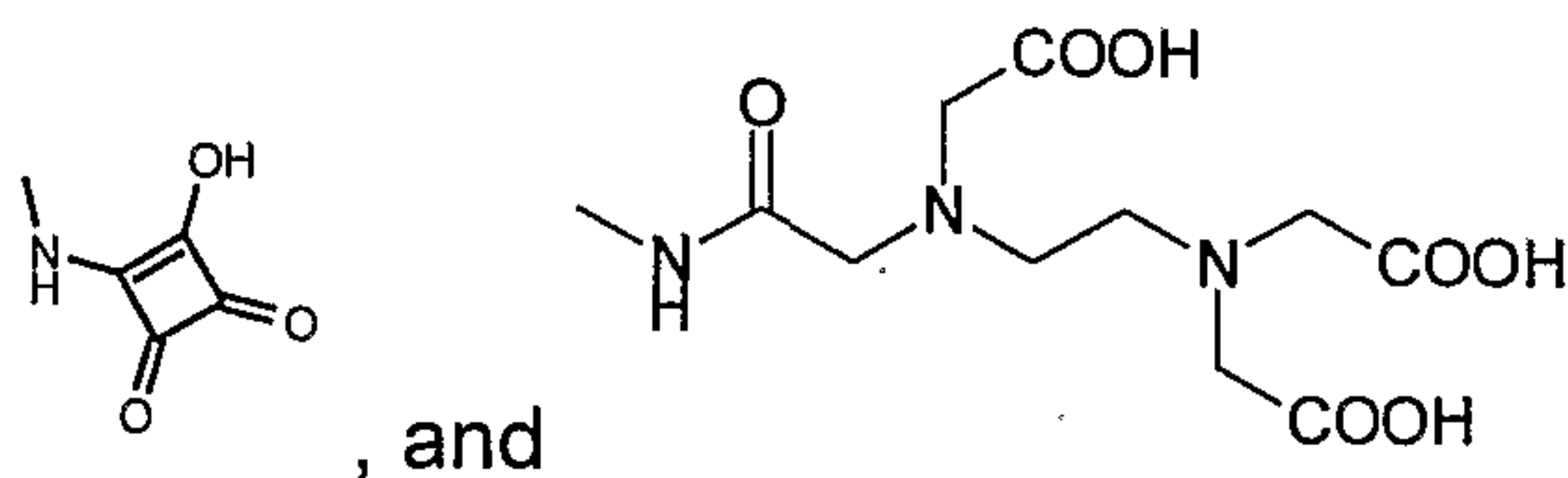
NHCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl).

Preferably R^{3f} is H, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-morpholino, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-pyrrolidino, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino; (C₁₋₆ alkyl)N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₆ alkyl)OH, CH(CH₂OH)₂ or
 5 CH₂C(OH)CH₂OH.

Most preferably R^{3f} is H

Preferably R^{3g} is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl). More preferably R^{3g} is H or CH₃.

10 Preferably R^{3b} is selected from H, OH, amino, 5- to 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S; said heterocycle being optionally substituted with OH, COOH, CH₃, CF₃, CH₂COOH, -O(C₁₋₃)alkylCOOH, -NHCOCOOH, -NHSO₂CH₃, -NHSO₂CF₃,



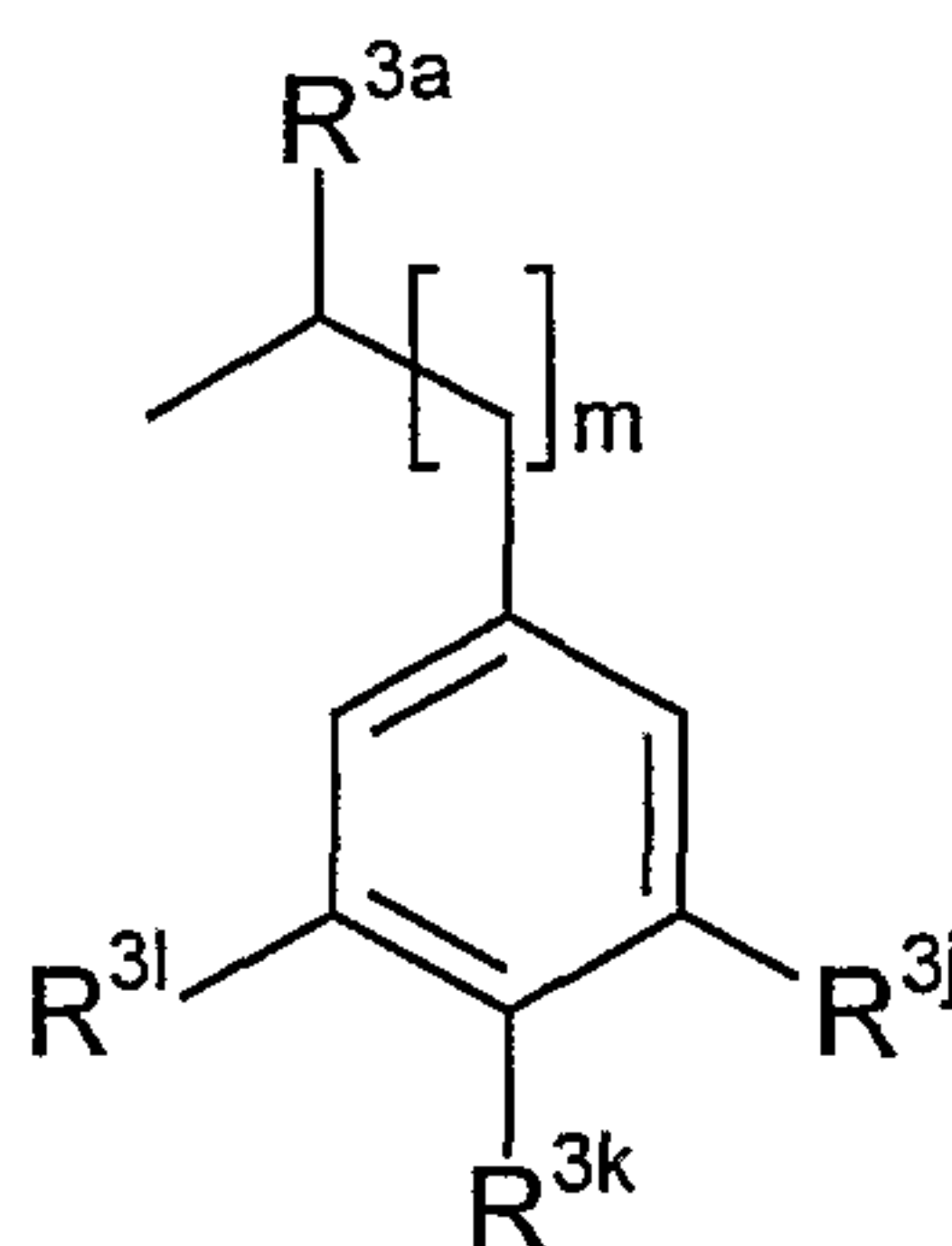
15 Most preferably R^{3b} is OCH₂COOH or OH.

Preferably R^{3c} is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl or -(CH₂)_pCOOH, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4. More preferably R^{3c} is H, CH₃ or -CH₂COOH.

20 Preferably R^{3d} is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl). More preferably R^{3d} is H or CH₃. Most preferably R^{3d} is H.

Alternatively more preferably, R³ is:

26



wherein R^{3a} is as defined above.

Preferably R^{3j} is (C_{1-4}) alkoxy, OH, $O(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)COOH, $(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), halogen; (C_{2-6}) alkenylCOOH, (C_{1-6}) alkyl-hydroxy, COOH, or azido.

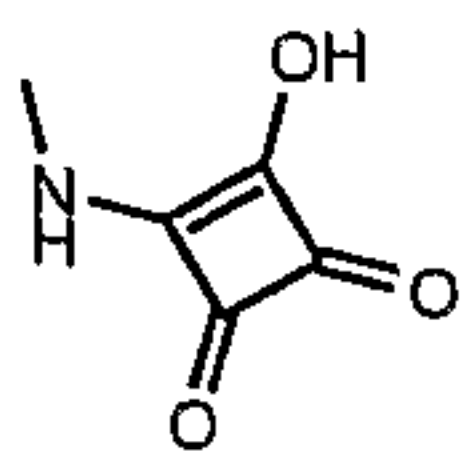
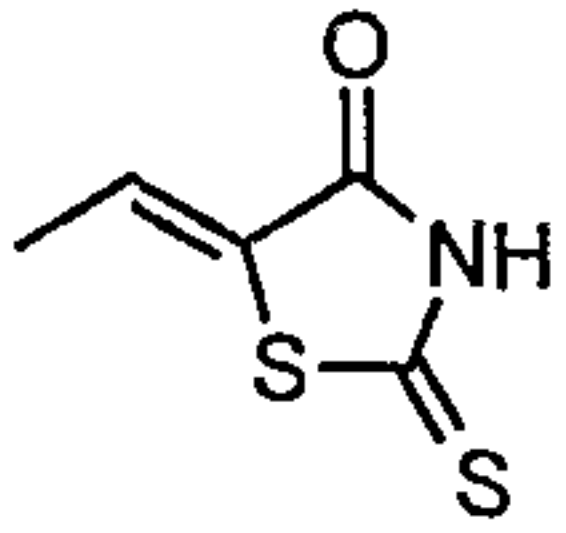
5

Preferably R^{3k} is OH, $(CH_2)_p$ COOH where p is an integer from 1 to 4, amino, (C_{1-4}) alkoxy, $NHCOCOOH$, $NH(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)COOH, $O(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)COOH, COOH, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from

10

the group consisting of:

CH_3 , CF_3 , OH, CH_2COOH , COOH;

$-O-(C_{1-6})$ alkyl COOH, , , $NHCONH_2$, $NHCN$, $NHCHO$, $NHSO_2CF_3$, $NHCOCH_3$, $NHSO_2CH_3$, $CONH_2$, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkylCOOH, (C_{2-6}) alkenylCOOH, and $NHCOCH_2(OH)COOH$.

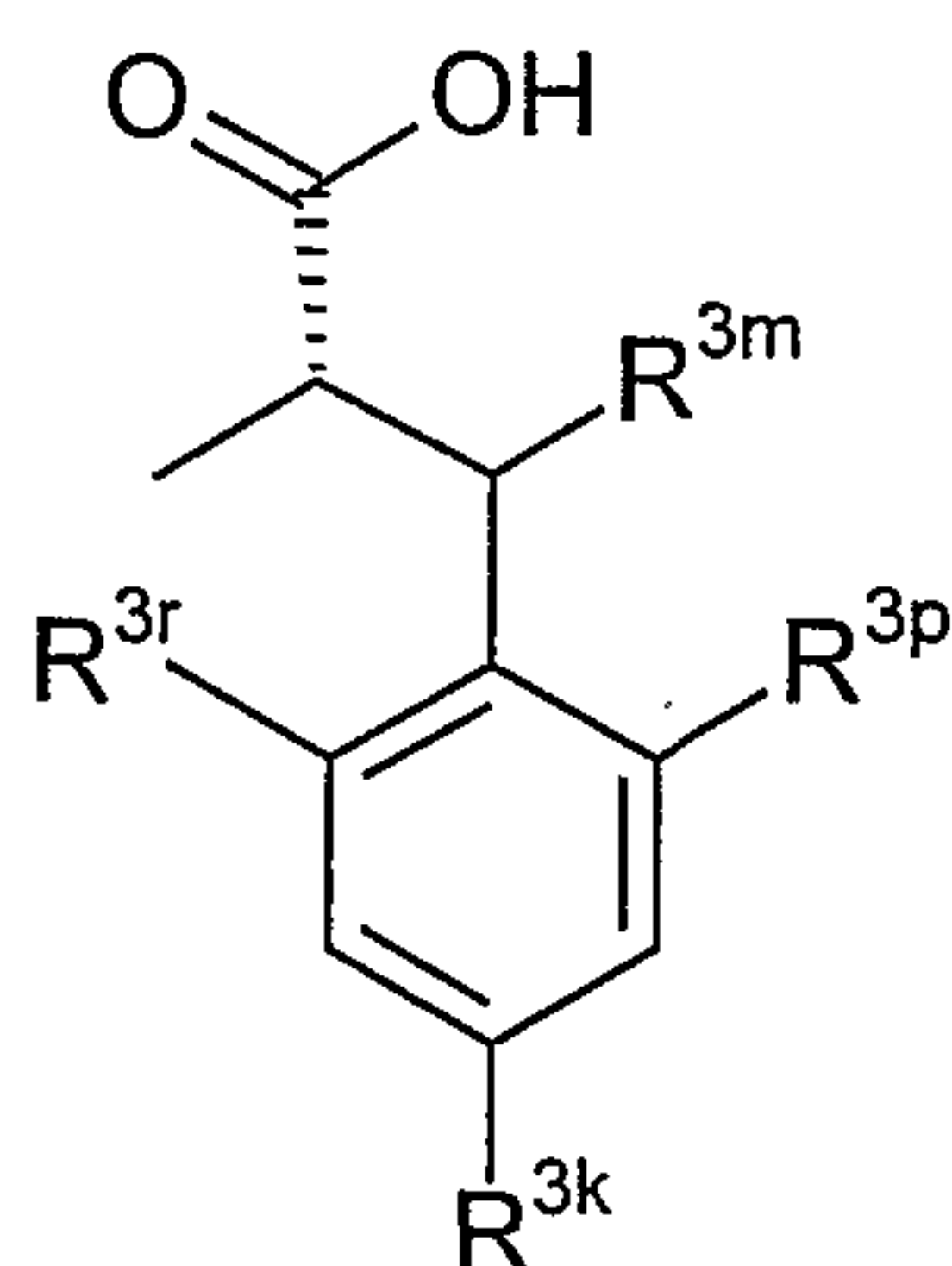
15

Preferably R^{3l} is $O(C_{1-6}$ alkyl)COOH, $(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), or halogen.

Preferably m is an integer from 0 to 4. Most preferably m is 1.

Alternatively even more preferably, R^3 is :

27



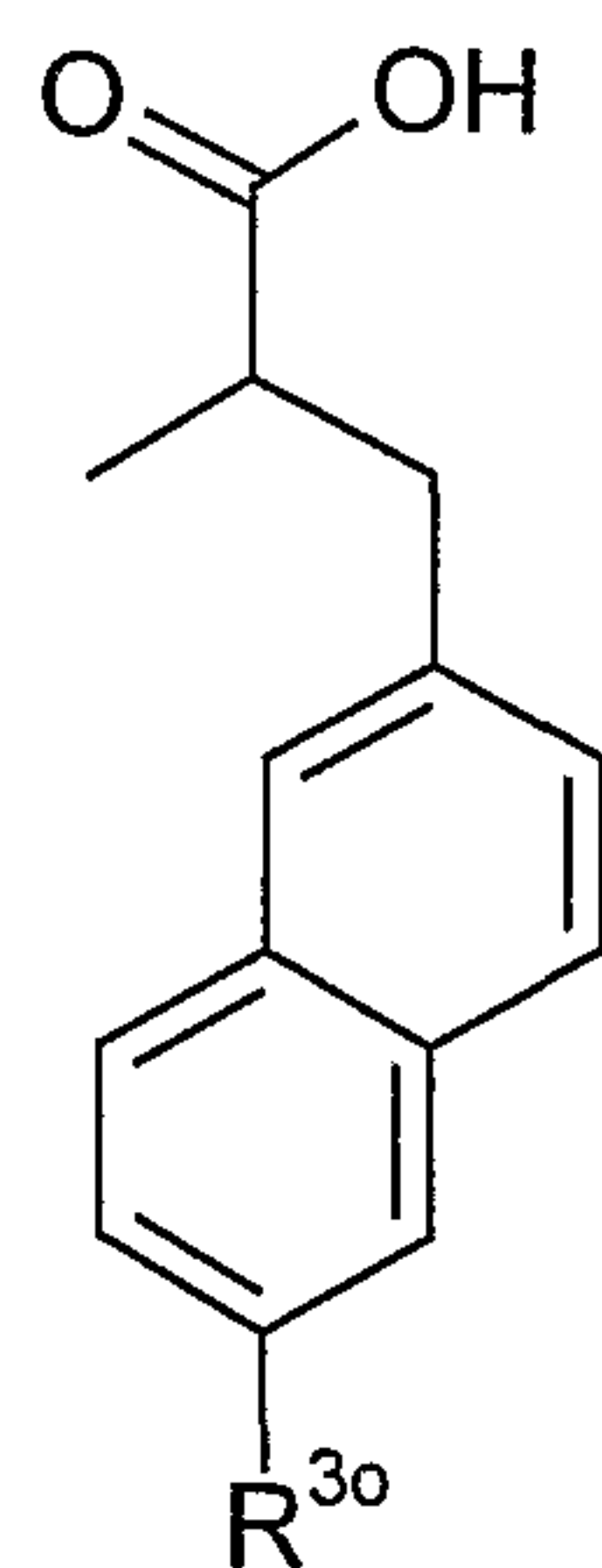
wherein R^{3k} is as defined above.

Preferably R^{3m} is H or OH.

Preferably R^{3p} is H, halogen, or (C_{1-6} alkyl).

5 Preferably R^{3r} is H, halogen, or (C_{1-6} alkyl).

Alternatively more preferably, R^3 is

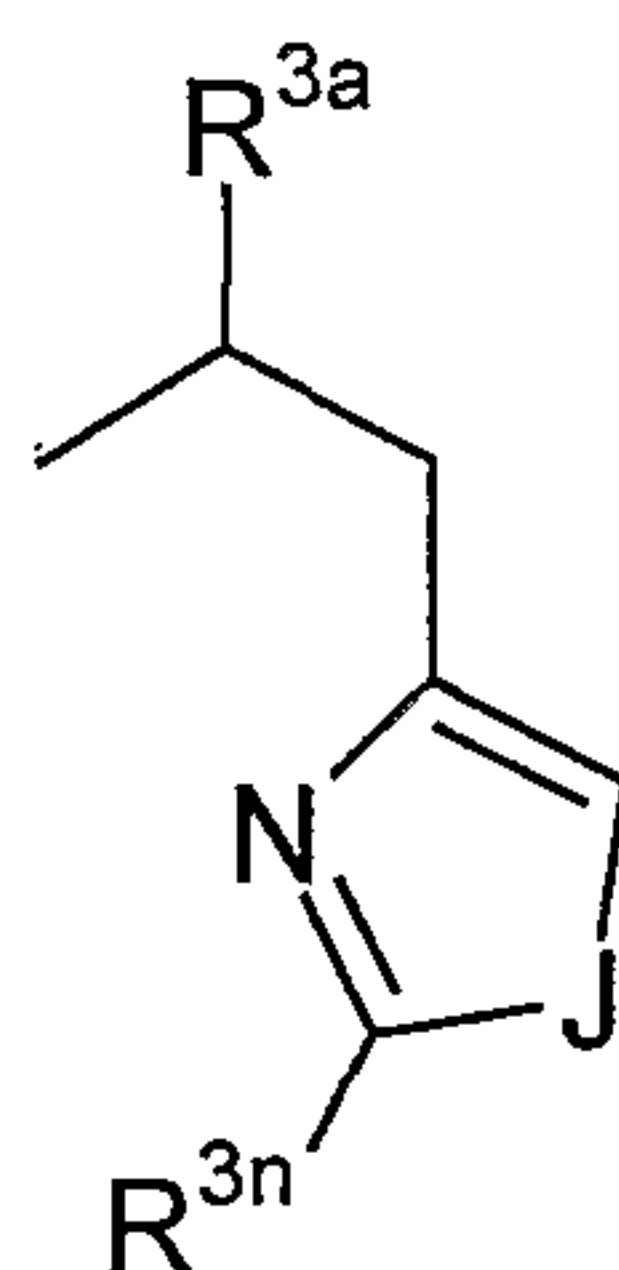


Preferably R^{30} is OH or $\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})\text{COOH}$.

10

Alternatively more preferably, R^3 is:

28



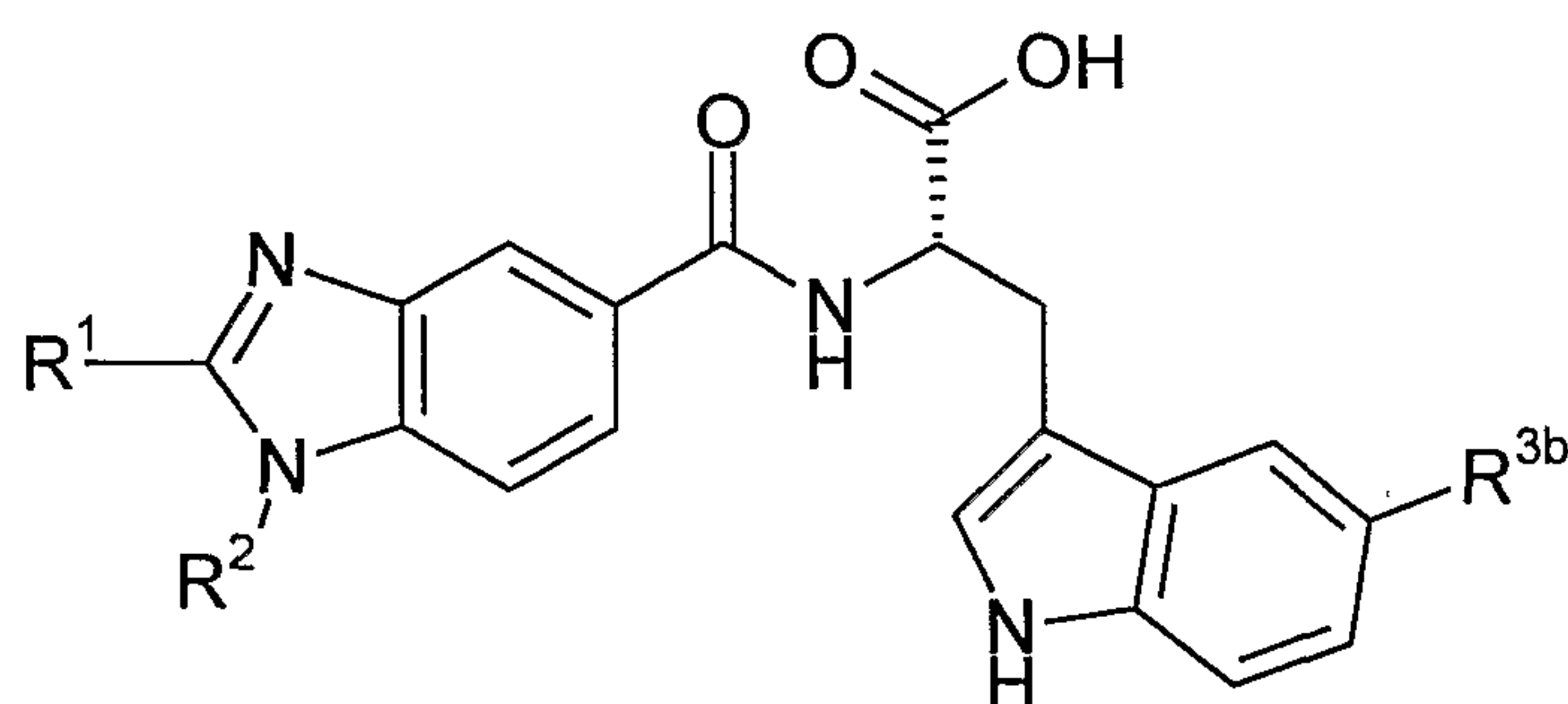
wherein R^{3a} is as defined above.

Preferably J is S or N(C₁₋₆ alkyl). More preferably J is S or N(CH₃)

Preferably R^{3n} is H or amino.

5

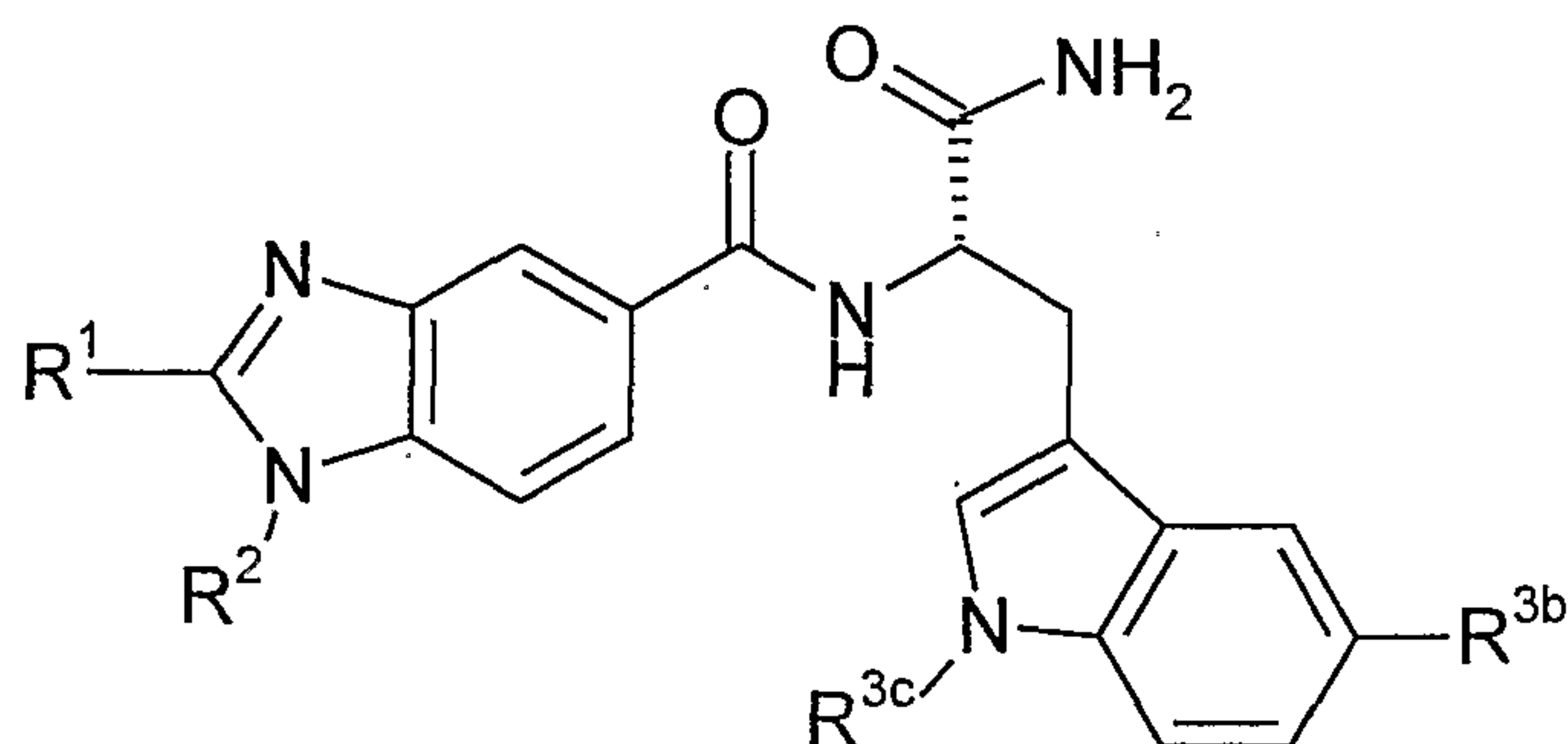
Alternatively even more preferably, compounds of the invention have the following formula:



wherein R^1 , R^2 and R^{3b} are as defined above.

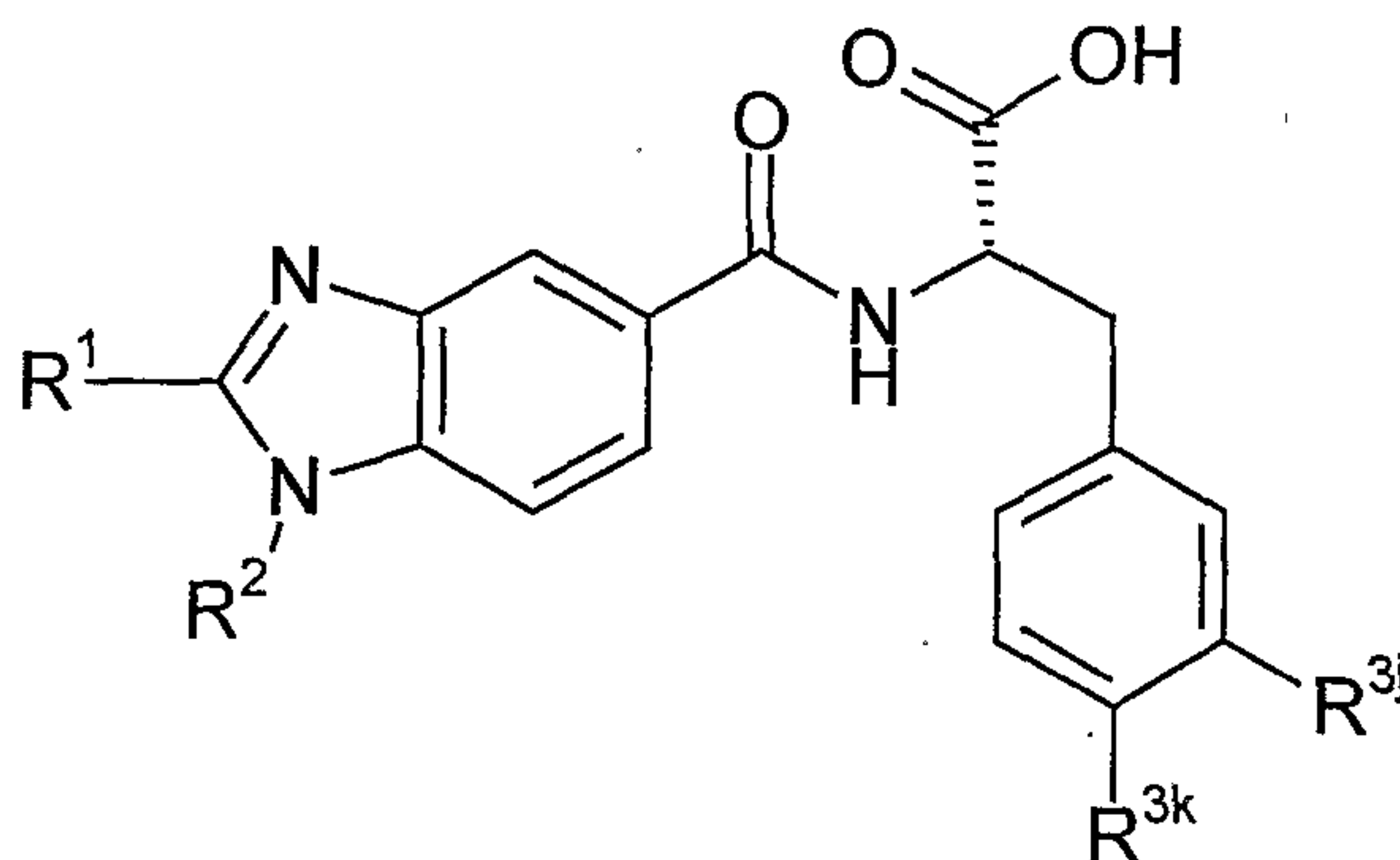
10

Alternatively even more preferably, compounds of the invention have the following formula:



wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^{3b} , and R^{3c} are as defined above.

Alternatively even more preferably, compounds of the invention have the following formula:



wherein R^1 , R^2 , R^{3j} , and R^{3k} are as defined above.

According to a second aspect of the invention, the compounds of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, are effective as inhibitors of RNA dependent RNA polymerase activity of the enzyme NS5B, encoded by HCV.

According to a third aspect of the invention, the compounds of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), or pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, are effective as inhibitors of HCV replication.

According to a fourth aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of treating or preventing HCV infection in a mammal, comprising administering to the mammal an effective amount of the compounds of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), or pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

According to a fifth aspect of the invention, there is provided a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prevention of HCV infection, comprising an effective amount of a compound of formula (Ib), (Ic) or (Id), or a pharmaceutically acceptable

salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

According to a sixth aspect of the invention, there is provided a use for the manufacture of a medicament of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), for the treatment of HCV
5 infection.

According to a seventh aspect of the invention, there is provided a use of a compound of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), as an inhibitor of NS5B.

10 According to an eighth aspect of the invention, there is provided a use of the compounds of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), as an inhibitor of HCV replication.

According to a ninth aspect of the invention, there is provided a method of treating HCV infection in a mammal, comprising giving instructions to a third party to
15 administer a compound of formula (Ib), (Ic), and (Id), to a subject suffering from HCV infection.

Specific embodiments

Included within the scope of this invention are all compounds of formula (I), (Ia), (Ib),
20 (Ic), or (Id), as presented in Tables 1 to 22.

Anti-NS5B activity

The ability of the compounds of formula (I) to inhibit RNA synthesis by the RNA dependent RNA polymerase of HCV, NS5B, can be demonstrated by any assay
25 capable of measuring RNA dependent RNA polymerase activity. A suitable assay is described in the examples.

Specificity for RNA dependent RNA polymerase activity

To demonstrate that the compounds of the invention act by specific inhibition of

NS5B, the compounds may be tested for the lack of inhibitory activity in other RNA dependent RNA polymerase assays or DNA dependant RNA polymerase assays.

When a compound of formula (I), or one of its therapeutically acceptable salts, is employed as an antiviral agent, it is administered orally, topically or systemically to mammals, e.g. humans, rabbits or mice, in a vehicle comprising one or more pharmaceutically acceptable carriers, the proportion of which is determined by the solubility and chemical nature of the compound, chosen route of administration and standard biological practice.

10

For oral administration, the compound or a therapeutically acceptable salt thereof can be formulated in unit dosage forms such as capsules or tablets each containing a predetermined amount of the active ingredient, ranging from about 25 to 500 mg, in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15

For topical administration, the compound can be formulated in pharmaceutically accepted vehicles containing 0.1 to 5 percent, preferably 0.5 to 5 percent, of the active agent. Such formulations can be in the form of a solution, cream or lotion.

For parenteral administration, the compound of formula (I) is administered by either intravenous, subcutaneous or intramuscular injection, in compositions with pharmaceutically acceptable vehicles or carriers. For administration by injection, it is preferred to use the compounds in solution in a sterile aqueous vehicle which may also contain other solutes such as buffers or preservatives as well as sufficient quantities of pharmaceutically acceptable salts or of glucose to make the solution isotonic.

Suitable vehicles or carriers for the above noted formulations are described in pharmaceutical texts, e.g. in "Remington's The Science and Practice of Pharmacy", 19th ed., Mack Publishing Company, Easton, Penn., 1995, or in "Pharmaceutical Dosage Forms And Drugs Delivery Systems", 6th ed., H.C. Ansel et al., Eds.,

30

Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Maryland, 1995.

The dosage of the compound will vary with the form of administration and the particular active agent chosen. Furthermore, it will vary with the particular host
5 under treatment. Generally, treatment is initiated with small increments until the optimum effect under the circumstance is reached. In general, the compound of formula I is most desirably administered at a concentration level that will generally afford antivirally effective results without causing any harmful or deleterious side effects.

10

For oral administration, the compound or a therapeutically acceptable salt is administered in the range of 10 to 200 mg per kilogram of body weight per day, with a preferred range of 25 to 150 mg per kilogram.

15 For systemic administration, the compound of formula (I) is administered at a dosage of 10 mg to 150 mg per kilogram of body weight per day, although the aforementioned variations will occur. A dosage level that is in the range of from about 10 mg to 100 mg per kilogram of body weight per day is most desirably employed in order to achieve effective results.

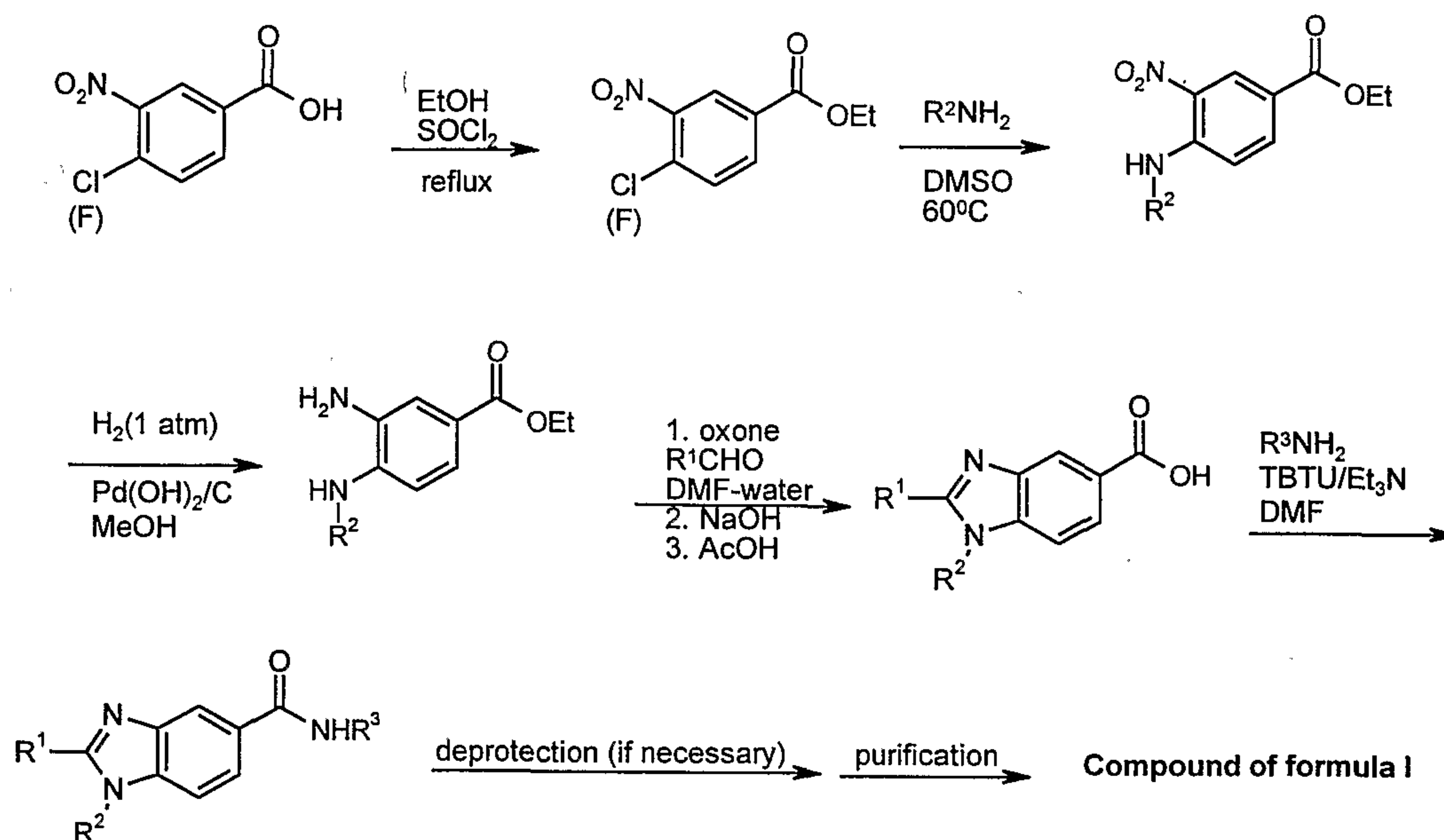
20

Although the formulations disclosed hereinabove are indicated to be effective and relatively safe medications for treating HCV infections, the possible concurrent administration of these formulations with other antiviral medications or agents to obtain beneficial results also included. Such other antiviral medications or agents
25 include interferon or interferon and ribavirin.

Methodology and Synthesis

Benzimidazole derivatives or analogs according to the present invention can be prepared from known starting materials by following Scheme 1, shown below
30 wherein R¹, R² and R³ are as previously described.

Scheme 1



In carrying out the route illustrated in Scheme 1, illustrated above, a suitably
 5 protected form of 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid or 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzoic acid is
 reacted with a primary amine R^2NH_2 . Amines are of commercial sources or can be
 prepared by literature methods. This reaction is carried out in a suitable solvent
 such as DMSO, DMF or the like, at temperatures ranging from 20 °C to 170 °C, or
 alternatively without solvent by heating the two components together. The nitro
 10 group of these derivatives is subsequently reduced to the corresponding aniline,
 using a reducing agent such as hydrogen gas in the presence of a catalyst (e.g. Pd
 metal and the like), metals in the presence of mineral acids (e.g. Fe or Zn with
 aqueous HCl), or metal salts (SnCl_2). The diamino derivatives that are obtained are
 condensed with commercially available aldehydes R^1CHO in the presence of an
 15 oxidizing agent (e.g. air, oxygen, iodine, oxone®, quinones, peroxides etc.) to give
 benzimidazole 5-carboxylates.

Alternatively, other methods for benzimidazole ring construction can be employed,
 such as condensation of the diamino derivatives with carboxylic acids, nitriles or
 amides, in the presence or absence of a catalyst. Such methods are well known in
 20 the literature to those skilled in the art. Saponification of the ester protecting group
 of such derivatives using alkali metal hydroxides, followed by neutralization with

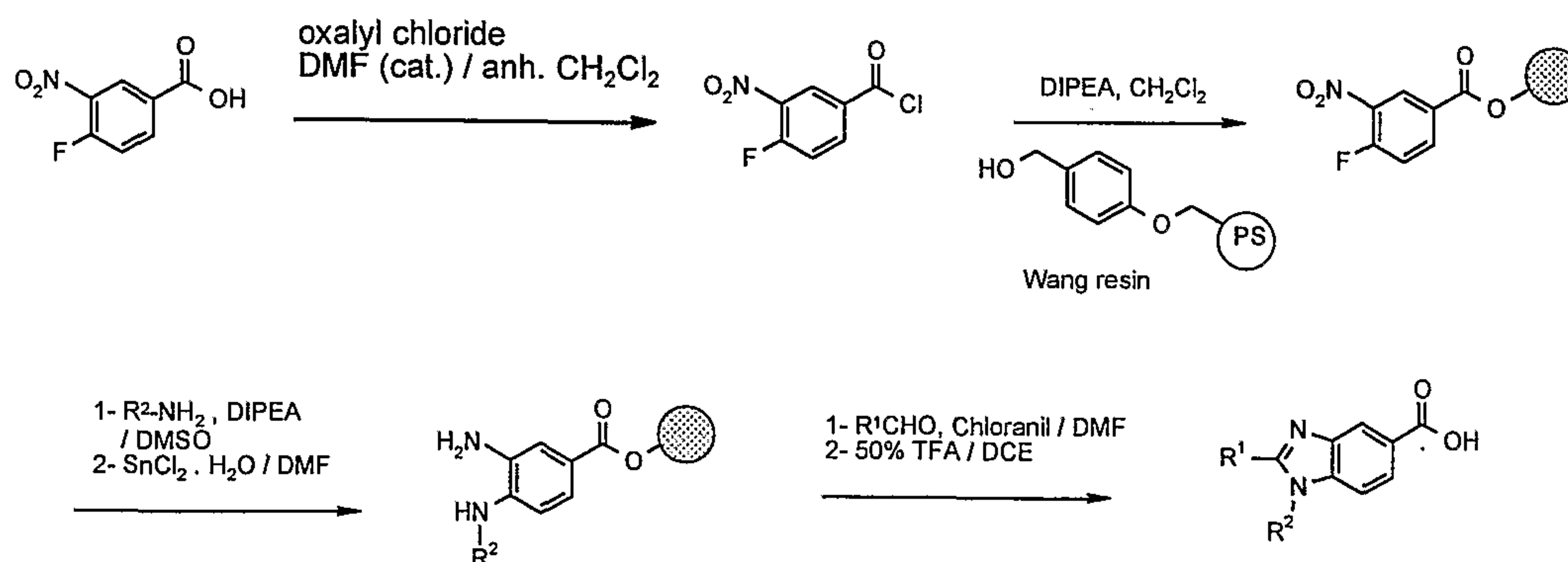
weak acids (e.g. AcOH) generates free 5-carboxybenzimidazole derivatives of general formula I ($X = \text{CH}$, $Y = \text{O}$, $Z = \text{OH}$, $n=0$).

Derivatives of formula I in which $Z = \text{NHR}^3$ may be obtained by condensation of 5-carboxybenzimidazoles of formula I ($X = \text{CH}$ or N , $Y = \text{O}$, $Z = \text{OH}$) with amines H_2NR^3 through formation of an amide bond. Amines H_2NR^3 are from commercial sources or can be prepared following literature procedures. Condensation of the carboxylic acid with amine H_2NR^3 can be accomplished using standard peptide bond forming reagents such as TBTU, BOP, EDAC, DCC, isobutyl chloroformate and the like, or by activation of the carboxyl group by conversion to the corresponding acid chloride prior to condensation with an amine. This coupling reaction can then be followed by elaboration of functional groups present in R^3 and protecting groups are subsequently removed in the last stage of the synthesis, if necessary, to provide compounds of formula I.

Alternatively, benzimidazole derivatives or analogs according to the present invention can be prepared on a solid support as described in Scheme 2, below, wherein R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are as previously described.

In carrying out the synthetic route illustrated in Scheme 2, 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzoic acid is converted to the acid chloride derivative using standard procedures (e.g. thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride, phosgene and the like in the presence of a catalytic amount of DMF) in an inert solvent such as CH_2Cl_2 .

Scheme 2



Wang resin is esterified with this acid chloride by condensation in the presence of an organic tertiary amine such as triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, DIEA and the like.

Other types of resins are well known to those skilled in the art, for example Rink resin, which may be functionalized without deviating from the scope of the invention. The functionalised resin thus obtained is then elaborated to resin-bound benzimidazole carboxylate derivatives as described above for the solution-phase chemistry. Cleavage of the benzimidazole from the resin is carried out with strong acids (e.g. trifluoroacetic acid) to give benzimidazole 5-carboxylic acids of general formula I ($X = \text{CH}$ or N , $Y = \text{O}$, $Z = \text{OH}$, $n=0$), within the scope of this invention. As described previously in solution phase, carboxylic acids of general formula I ($X = \text{CH}$ or N , $Y = \text{O}$, $Z = \text{OH}$) can be elaborated to benzimidazole derivatives of general formula I ($Z = \text{NHR}^3$) by condensation with amines R^3NH_2 .

EXAMPLES

The present invention is illustrated in further detail by the following non-limiting examples. All reactions were performed in a nitrogen or argon atmosphere. Temperatures are given in degrees Celsius. Solution percentages or ratios express a volume to volume relationship, unless stated otherwise. Mass spectral analyses were recorded using electrospray mass spectrometry. Abbreviations or symbols used herein include:

DIEA: diisopropylethylamine;

DMAP: 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine;

DMSO: dimethylsulfoxide;

DMF: N,N-dimethylformamide;

Et: ethyl;

EtOAc: ethyl acetate;

Et_2O : diethyl ether;

HPLC: high performance liquid chromatography;

$i\text{Pr}$: isopropyl

Me: methyl;

MeOH: Methanol;

- MeCN: acetonitrile;
- Ph: phenyl;
- TBE: tris-borate-EDTA;
- TBTU: 2-(1*H*-benzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate;
- 5 TFA: trifluoroacetic acid;
- THF: tetrahydrofuran;
- MS (ES): electrospray mass spectrometry;
- PFU: plaque forming units;
- DEPC: diethyl pyrocarbonate;
- 10 DTT: dithiothreitol
- EDTA: ethylenediaminetetraacetate
- HATU: O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)-N,N,N',N'-tetramethyluronium hexafluorophosphate
- BOP: benzotriazole-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate
- 15 EDAC: see ECD
- DCC: 1,3-Dicyclohexyl carbodiimide
- HOBt: 1-Hydroxybenzotriazole
- ES⁺: electro spray (positive ionization)
- ES⁻: electro spray (negative ionization)
- 20 DCM: dichloromethane
- TBME: *tert*-butylmethyl ether
- TLC: thin layer chromatography
- AcOH: acetic acid
- EtOH: ethanol
- 25 DBU: 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene
- BOC: *tert*-butoxycarbonyl

Cbz: carbobenzyloxy carbonyl

BINAP: 2,2'-Bis(diphenylphosphine)-1,1'-binaphthyl

ⁱPrOH: isopropanol

NMP: N-methylpyrrolidone

5 EDC: 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide hydrochloride

RNAasin: A ribonuclease inhibitor marketed by Promega Corporation

Tris: 2-amino-2-hydroxymethyl-1,3-propanediol

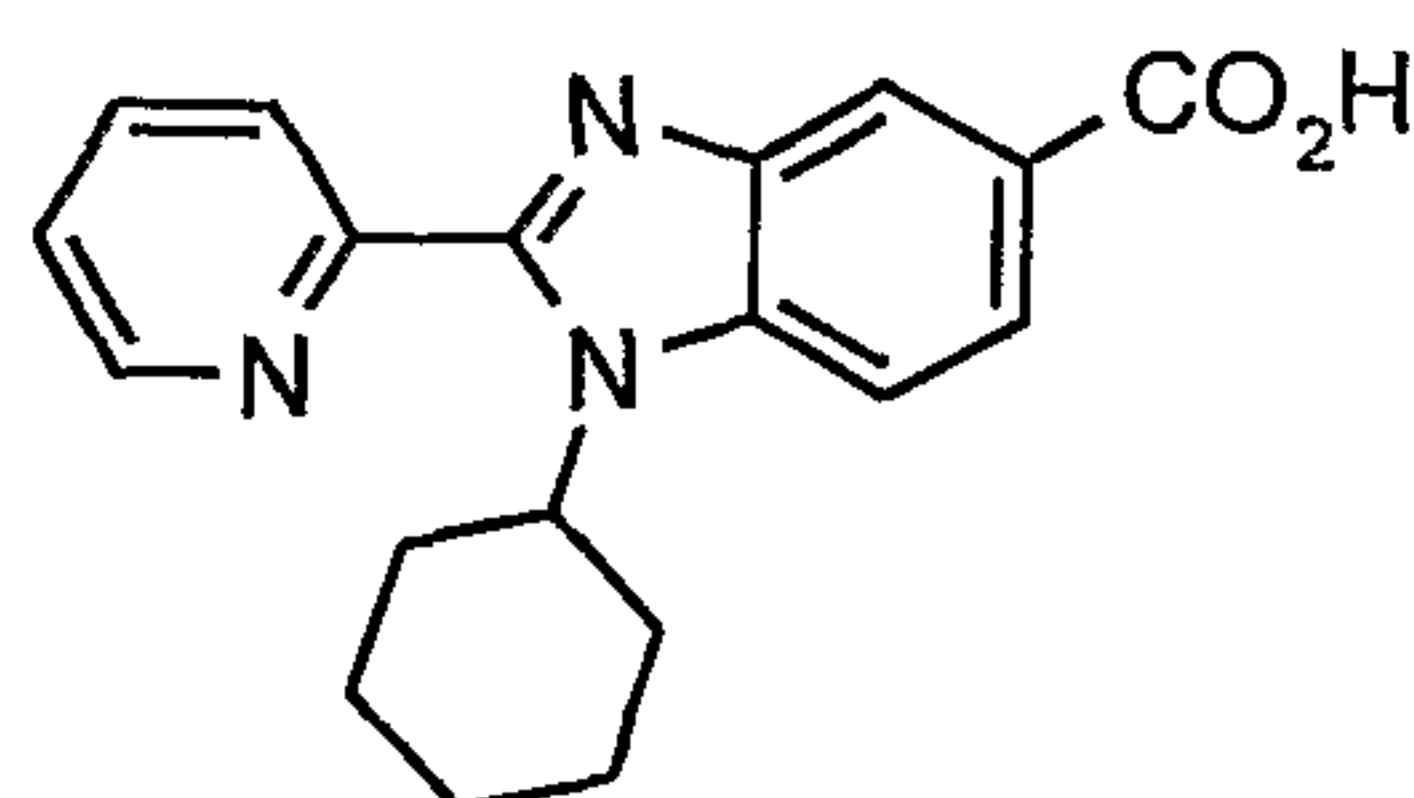
UMP: uridine 5'-monophosphate

UTP: uridine 5'-triphosphate

10 Examples 1-158 illustrate methods of synthesis of representative compounds of this invention.

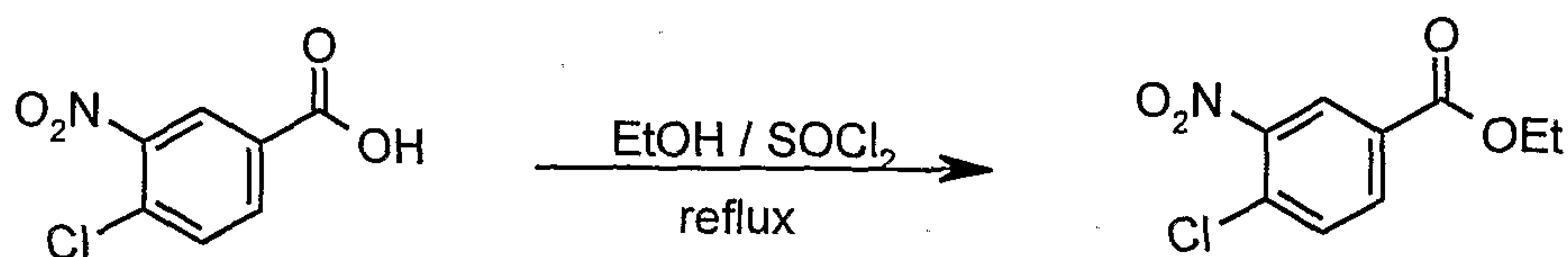
Example 1 (Entry 7021, Table 7)

1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid:

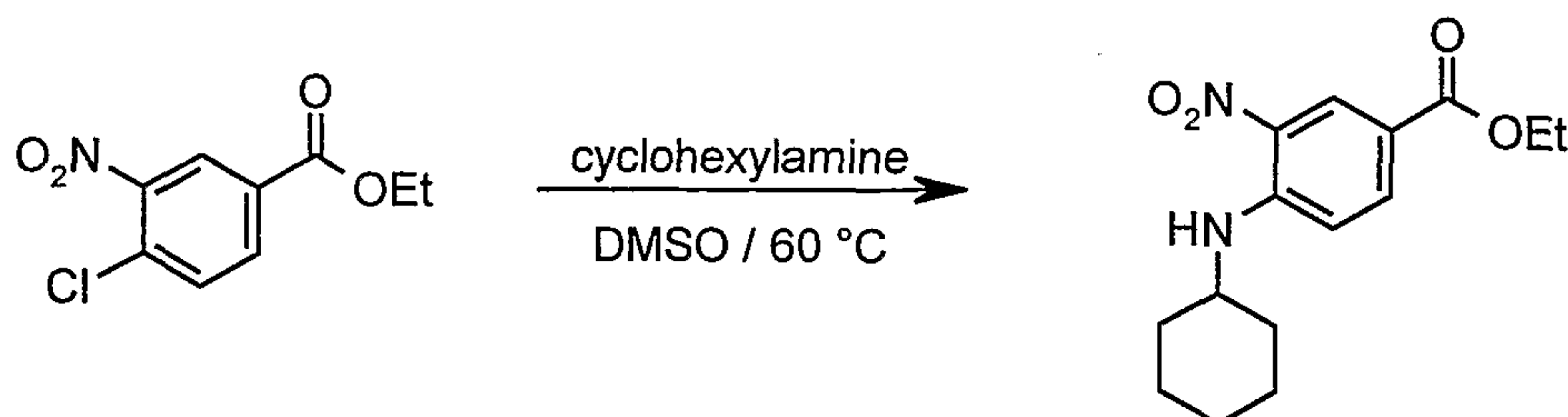


15

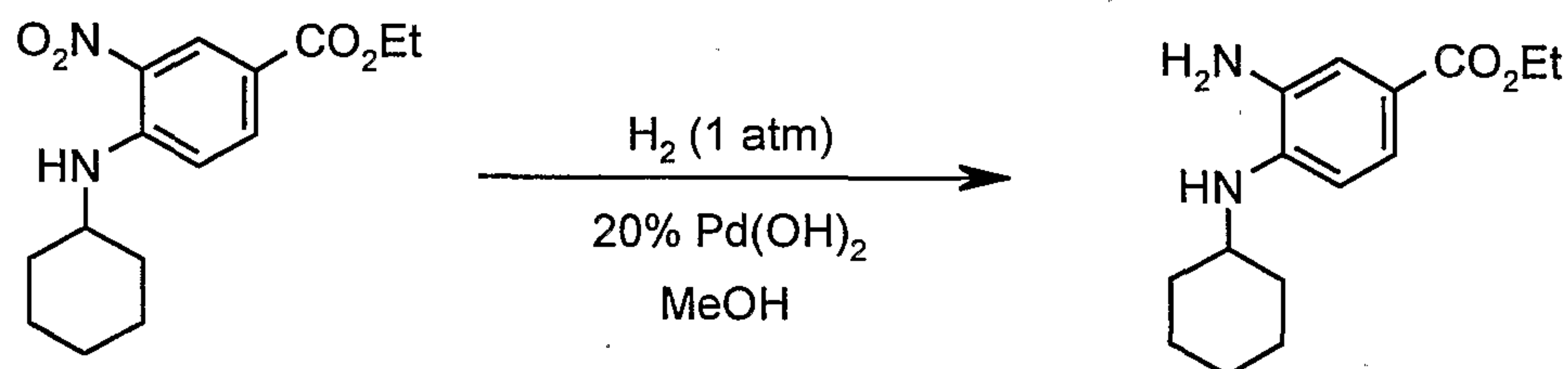
4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid, ethyl ester:



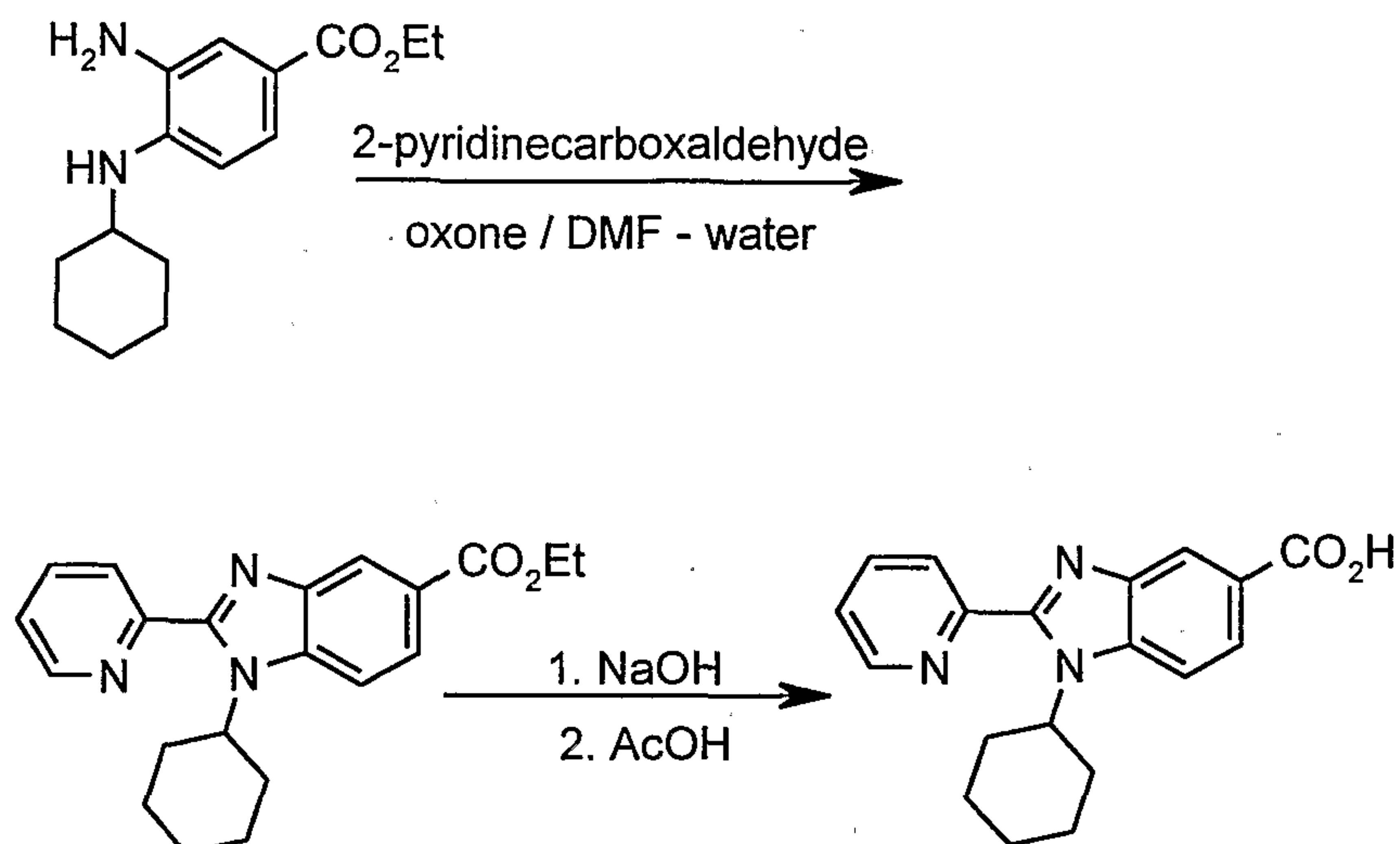
20 4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid (100.0 g, 0.496 mole) was suspended in ethanol (250 mL) and thionyl chloride (54 mL, 0.74 mole) was added drop-wise over 15 min. The mixture was then reflux for 2 h. After cooling to ambient temperature, volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was co-evaporated twice with ethanol (2 X 250 mL). The residue was crystallized from hot ethanol to give the desired ethyl ester as light yellow needles (109.8 g, 96% yield).

4-Cyclohexylamino-3-nitrobenzoic acid ethyl ester:

Ethyl 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoate (20.00 g, 87 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (50 mL) and cyclohexylamine (2.1 equiv. 21 mL, 183 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at 60 °C for 5 h. After cooling to ambient temperature, the reaction mixture was added drop-wise with vigorous stirring to water (500 mL). After stirring for an additional 15 min, the precipitated solid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried. The title compound (25.67 g, 100% yield) was obtained as a bright yellow solid.

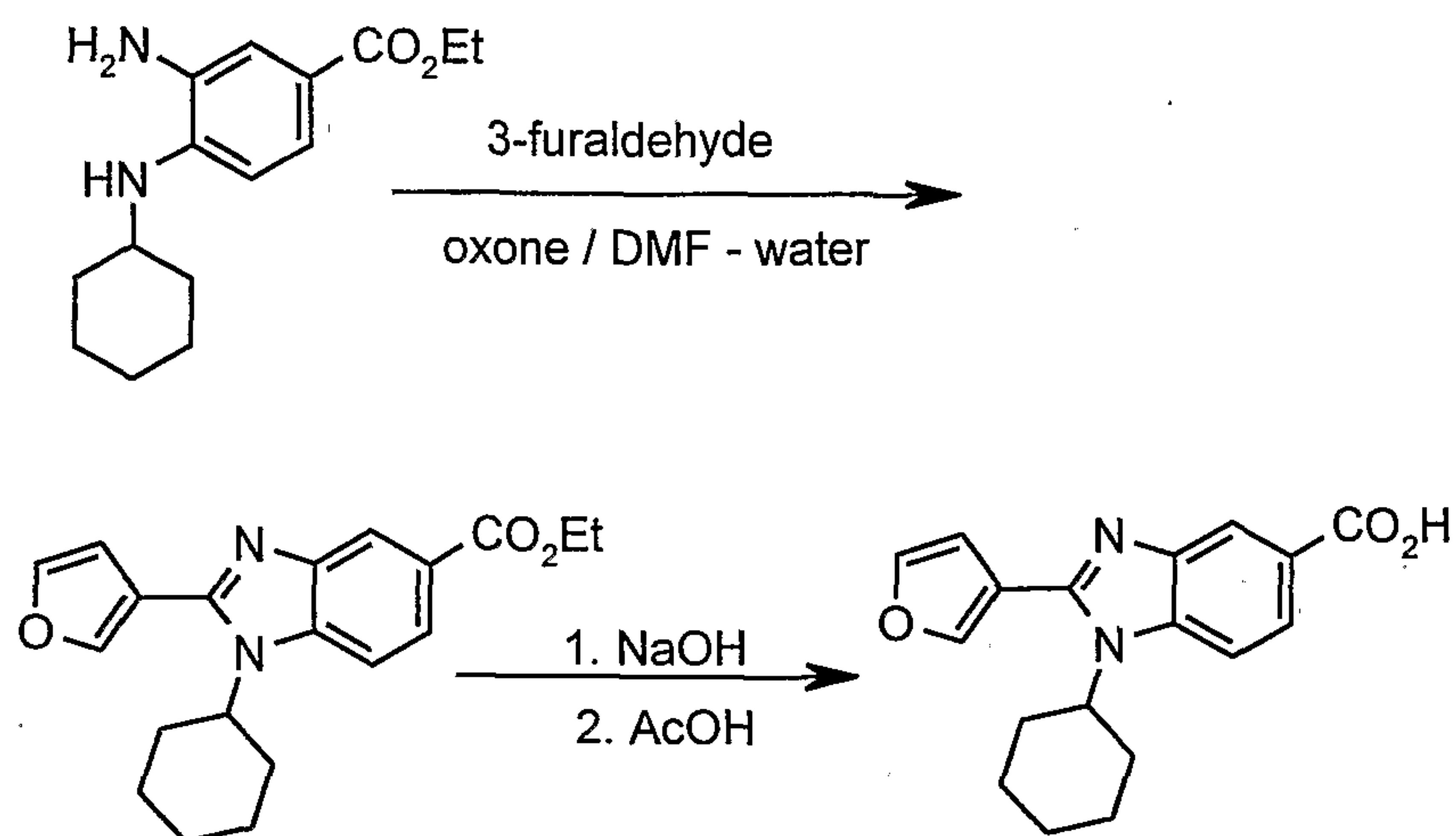
3-Amino-4-cyclohexylamino benzoic acid ethyl ester:

The nitro derivative from above (24.28 g, 83 mmol) was hydrogenated (1 atm H₂) over 20% Pd(OH)₂ on carbon (200 mg) in MeOH (150 mL) for 3 days. The catalyst was removed by filtration and volatiles removed under reduced pressure to give the title diamine (21.72 g, 100 % yield) as a dark purple solid.

1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid:

The diamine from above (3.20 g, 12.2 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (15 mL) and water (0.5 mL). 2-Pyridine carboxaldehyde (1.45 mL, 15 mmol) was added followed by oxone® (0.65 equivalent, 8 mmol, 4.92 g). The mixture was stirred 1 h at room temperature. Water (60 mL) was added, and the pH of the reaction mixture was brought up to 9 by addition of 1 N NaOH. The brown precipitate that formed was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried. The crude benzimidazole ethyl ester was obtained in 80% yield (3.43 g).

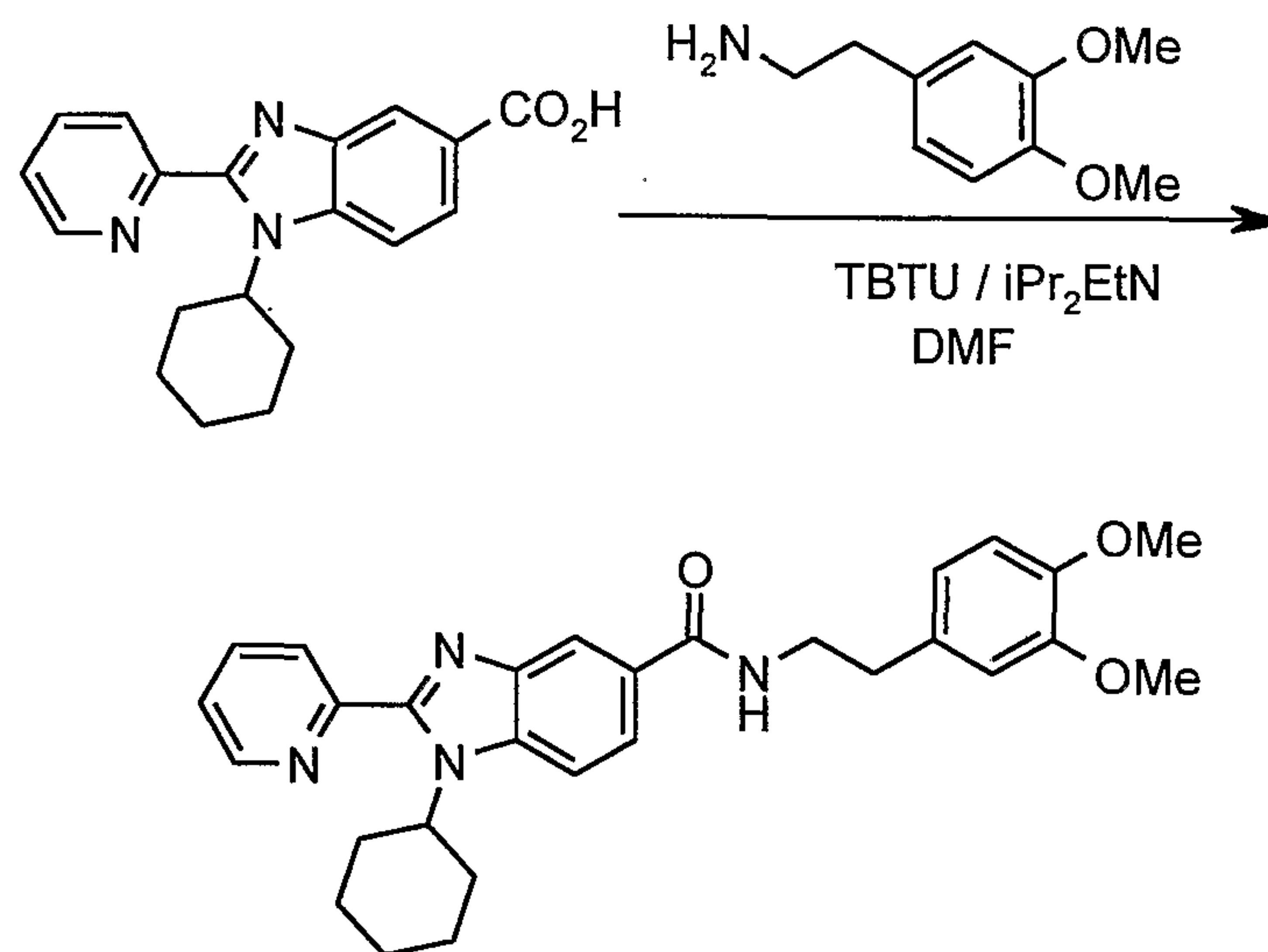
The ester from above (2.36 g, 7.53 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (15 mL) and 2 N NaOH (20 mmol, 10 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 2 h and then cooled to room temperature. MeOH was removed under reduced pressure and the residue acidified to pH 4 with glacial AcOH. The precipitated carboxylic acid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried to give the free acid as a beige solid (2.20 g, 91% yield).

Example 2 (Entry 7018, Table 7)**1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid:**

- 5 Ethyl 3-amino-4-(aminocyclohexyl)benzoate (3.67 g, 13.99 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL) and water (1 mL). Oxone® (9.8 mmol, 6.02 g) was added followed by 3-furaldehyde (1.44 g, 15 mmol). The mixture was stirred 45 min at room temperature. 4 N NaOH (20 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at 60 °C for 18 h. After cooling to room temperature, water (100 mL) was added and insoluble
- 10 impurities removed by filtration through celite. AcOH was then added to precipitate the product as a beige solid. The precipitated carboxylic acid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried to give the title compound as a beige solid (3.69 g, 85% yield).

15 Example 3 (Entry 2108, Table 2)**1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethyl]amide:**

41



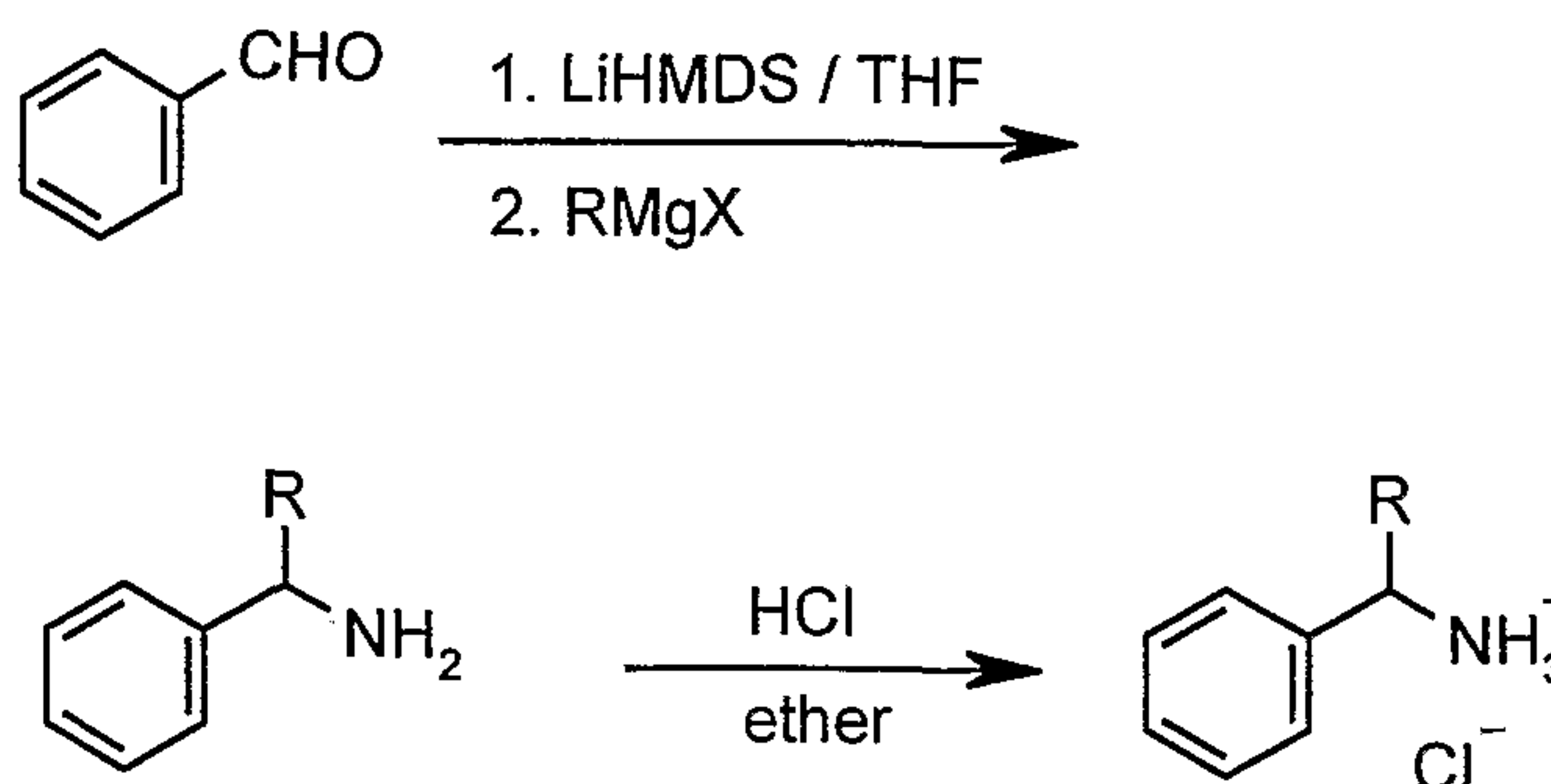
1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid (0.060 g, 0.19 mmol), 3,4-dimethoxyphenethylamine (35 μ L, 0.21 mmol) and TBTU (0.090 g, 0.28 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (1 mL), and DIEA (330 μ L, 1.9 mmol) was added.

- 5 The mixture was stirred 1 h at room temperature, when HPLC analysis indicated completion of the coupling reaction. The reaction mixture was added drop-wise with vigorous stirring to 1 N NaOH (10 mL). The precipitated product was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried. The title amide derivative was obtained as a gray solid (0.056 g, 60% yield, 98% homogeneity by HPLC).

10

Example 4

General procedure for the preparation of racemic α -alkylbenzylamine derivatives

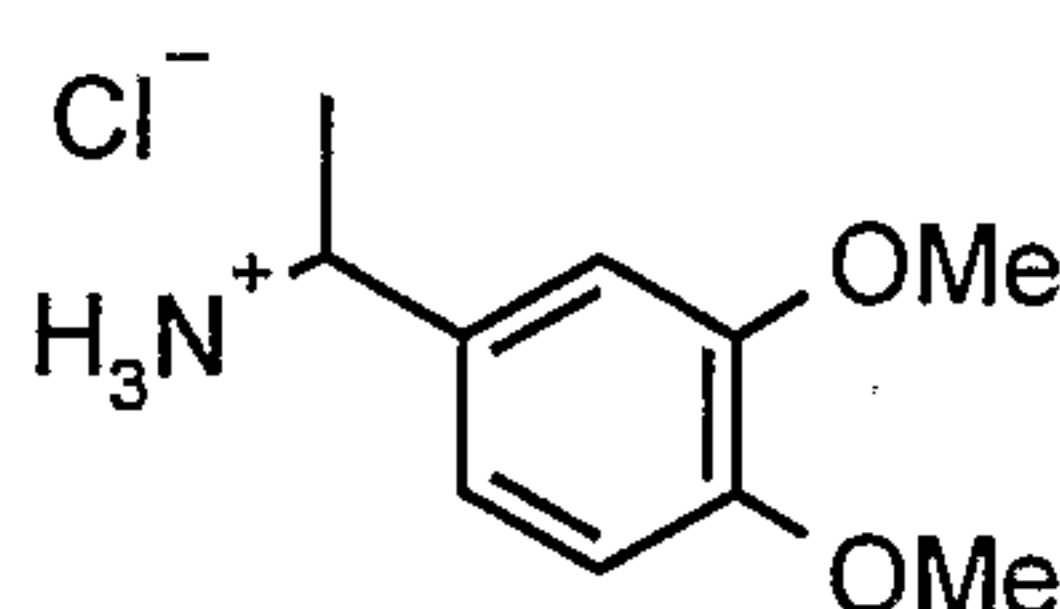


- 15 According to the general scheme shown above, and adapting the procedure of D. J. Hart et al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1983**, 48, 289), aromatic aldehydes are reacted first with lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide and then with a Grignard reagent in a suitable solvent such as Et₂O, tetrahydrofuran, toluene and the like, at temperatures ranging from 0

°C to 120 °C. Following hydrolysis, the desired racemic α -alkylbenzylamines were isolated after conversion to their hydrochlorides. In this manner, a variety of racemic α -alkylbenzylamines were synthesized with substitution as previously described in this invention:

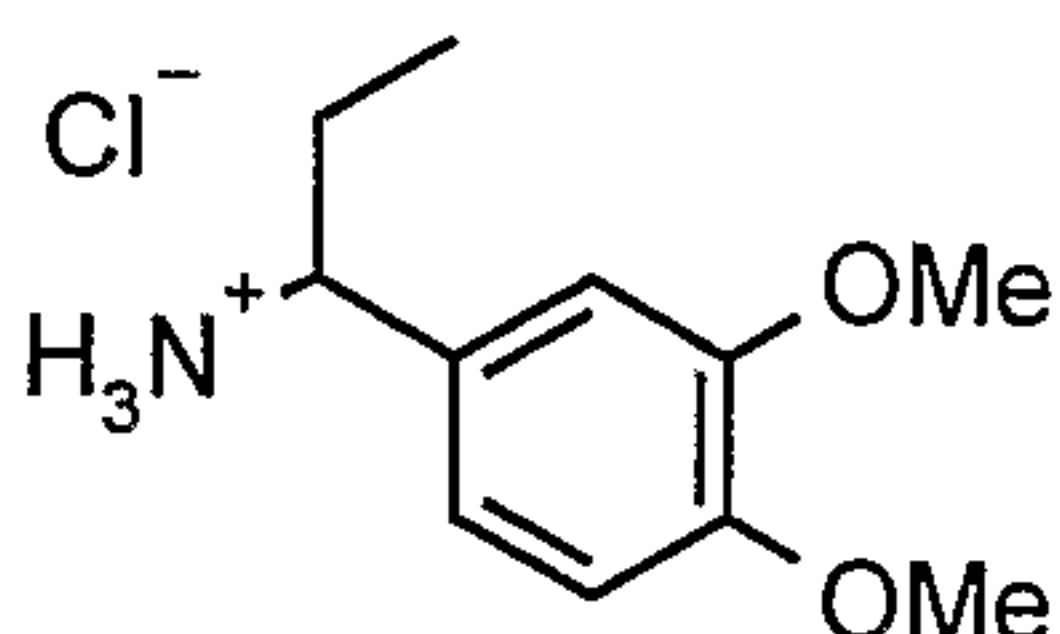
5

DL-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -methylbenzylamine hydrochloride:



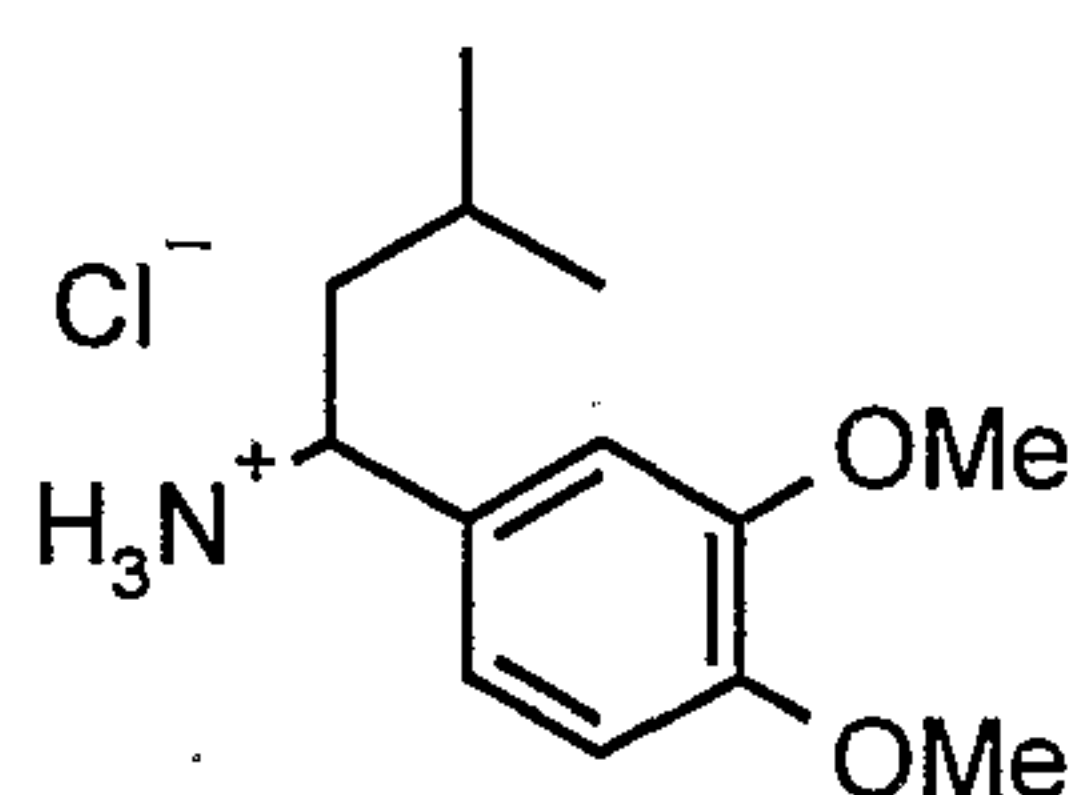
3,4-Dimethoxybenzaldehyde (5.00 g, 30 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (10 mL) and the solution cooled in ice under an argon atmosphere. Lithium
10 bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1 M in THF, 36 mmol, 36 mL) was added drop-wise and the resulting mixture stirred at 0 °C for 30 min. Methylmagnesium bromide (1.4 M in THF, 2 equiv., 72 mmol, 43 mL) was added and the solution allowed to warm up to room temperature. It was then reflux for 24 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature and poured into saturated aqueous NH₄Cl (200 mL).
15 The mixture was extracted twice with DCM (75 mL) and the extract dried over MgSO₄. The solution was concentrated to a volume of about 25 mL under reduced pressure and diluted with an equal volume of Et₂O. Excess hydrogen chloride (4 M in dioxane) was added, and the resulting precipitate collected by filtration. It was washed with Et₂O and dried in vacuo. DL-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -methylbenzylamine
20 hydrochloride (5.1 g, 78% yield) was obtained as an orange solid.

DL-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -ethylbenzylamine hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and ethylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 48 h, the title compound was obtained as a cream colored solid in 70% yield.

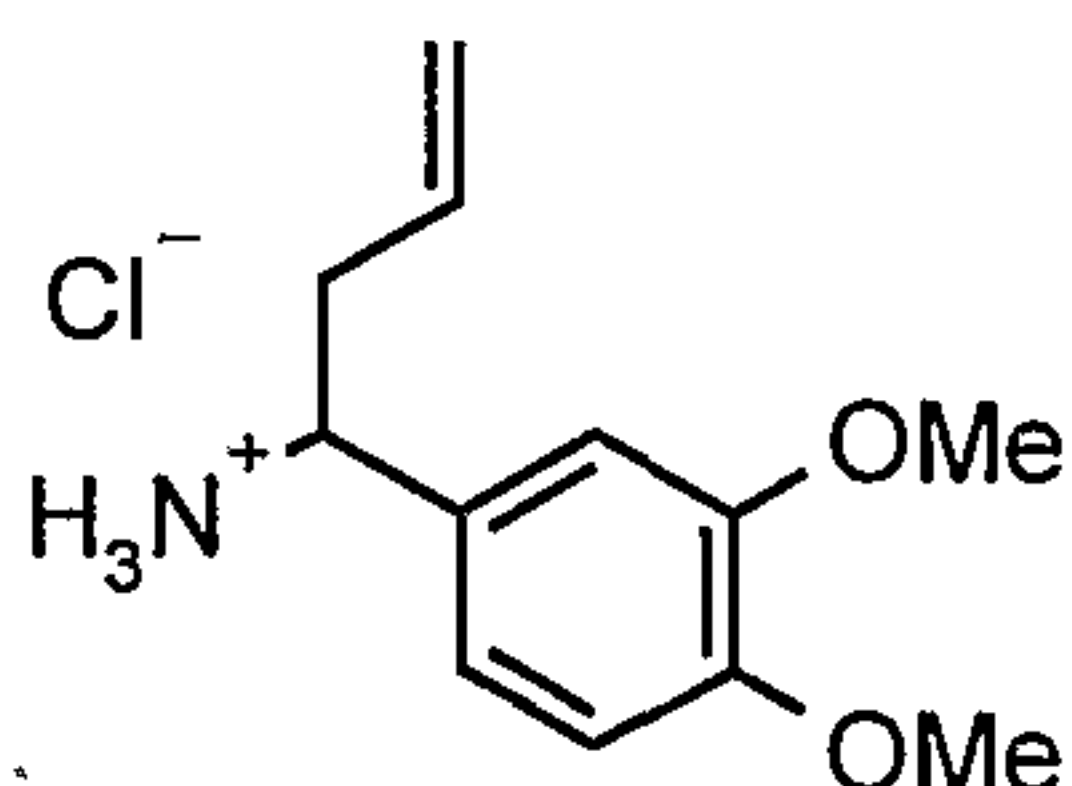
5 ***DI-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -isobutylbenzylamine hydrochloride:***



Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and isobutylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 48 h, the title compound was obtained as a pink solid in 81% yield.

10

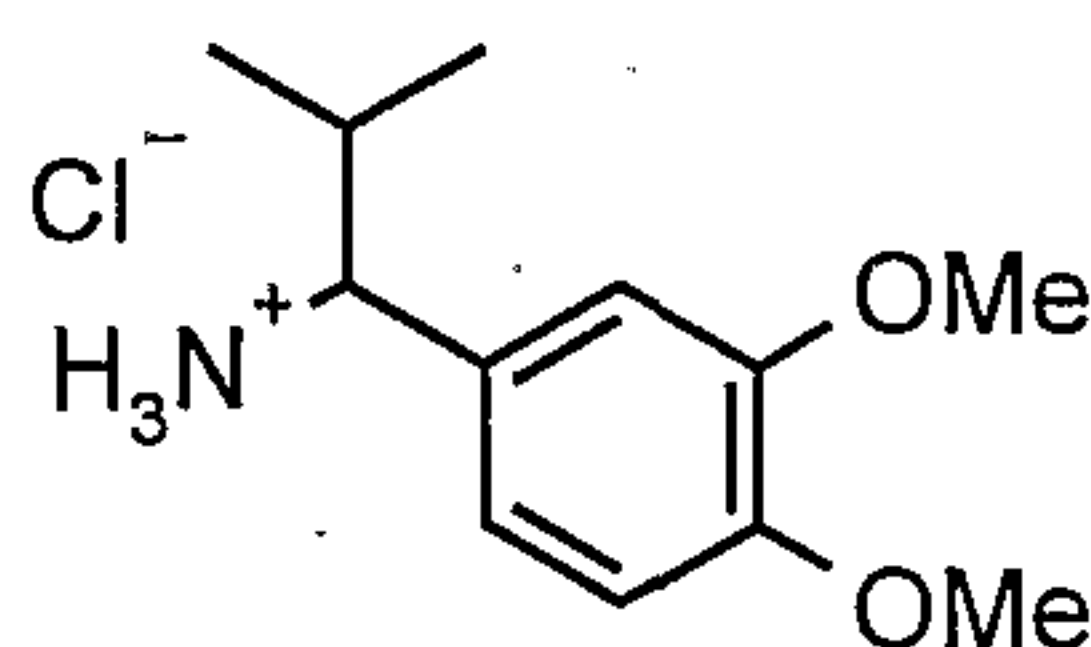
DI-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -(2-propenyl)benzylamine hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and allylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 48 h, the title compound was obtained as a cream colored solid in 89% yield.

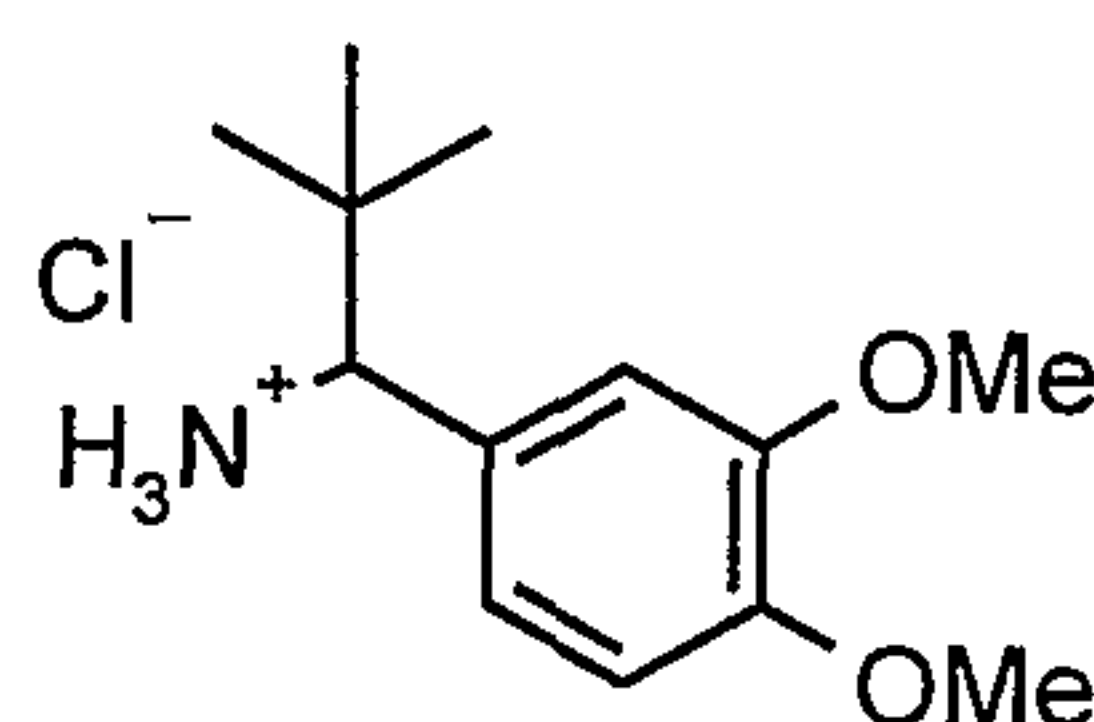
15

DI-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -isopropylbenzylamine hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and isopropylmagnesium chloride, after a reaction time of 72 h, the title compound was obtained as a cream colored solid in 75% yield.

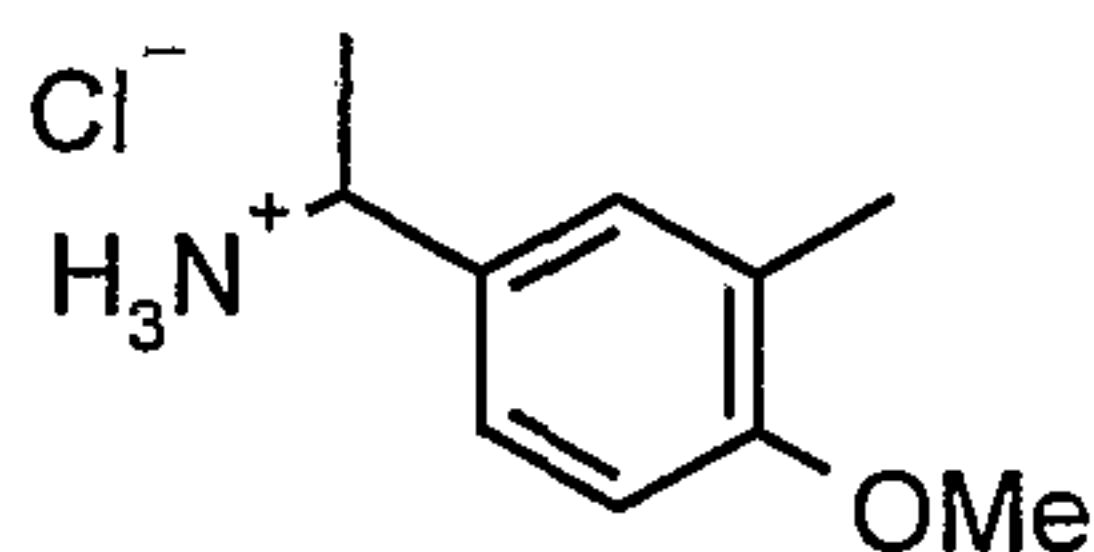
5 ***DL-3,4-Dimethoxy- α -tert-butylbenzylamine hydrochloride:***



Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde and *tert*-butylmagnesium chloride, after a reaction time of 72 h, the title compound was obtained as a cream colored solid in quantitative yield.

10

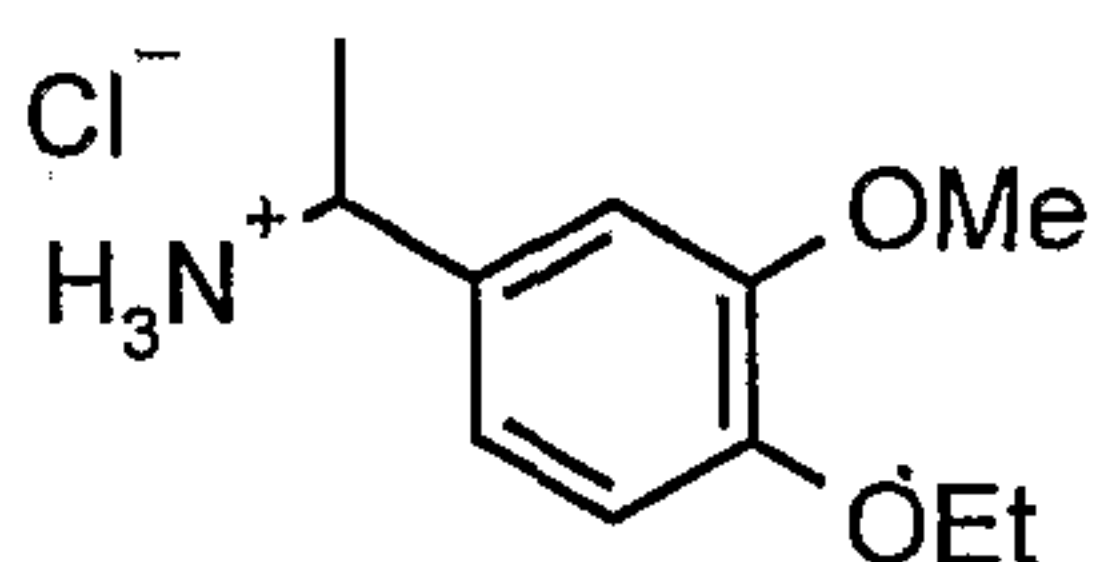
DL-4-Methoxy-3-methyl- α -methylbenzylamine hydrochloride:



15

Following the general procedure, starting from 3-methyl-*para*-anisaldehyde and methylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 48 h, the title compound was obtained as a cream colored solid in quantitative yield.

DL-4-Ethoxy-3-methoxy- α -methylbenzylamine hydrochloride:

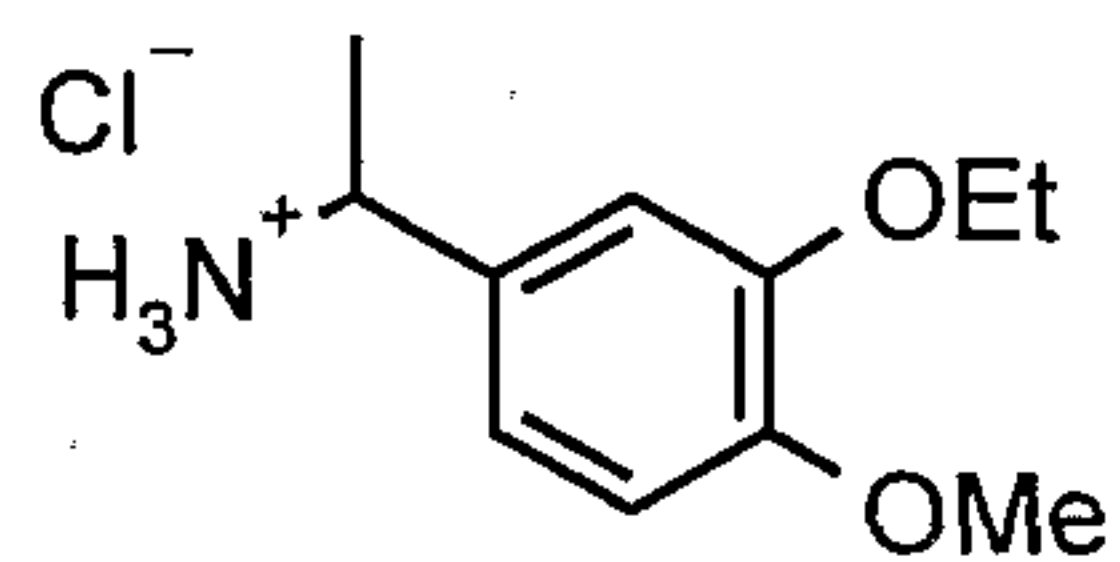


20

Following the general procedure, starting from 4-ethoxy-*meta*-anisaldehyde and methylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 72 h, the title compound was obtained as a pink solid in 86% yield.

DL-3-Ethoxy-4-methoxy- α -methylbenzylamine hydrochloride:

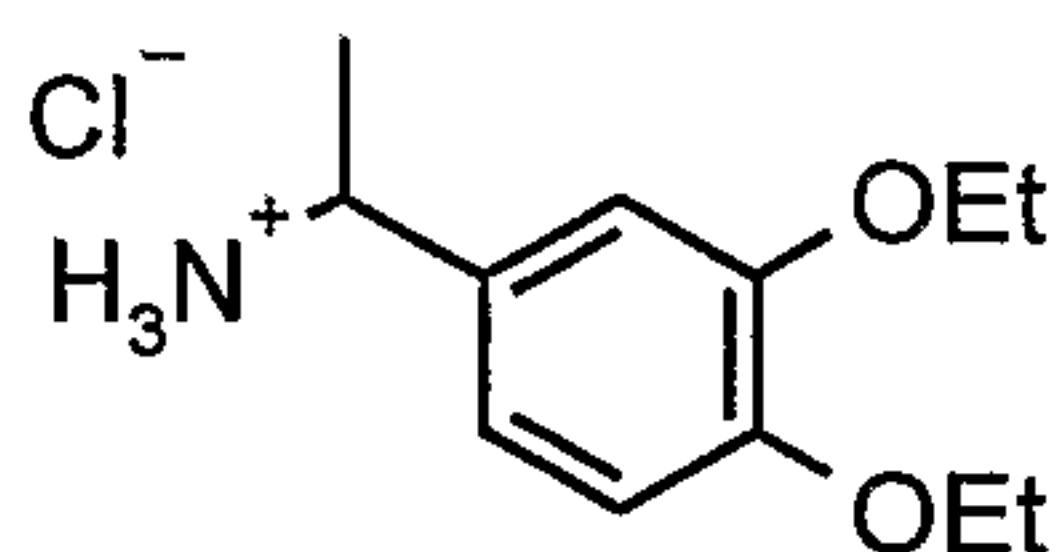
45



Following the general procedure, starting from 3-ethoxy-*para*-anisaldehyde and methylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 96 h, the title compound was obtained as a light brown solid in 82% yield.

5

DL-3,4-Diethoxy- α -methylbenzylamine hydrochloride:

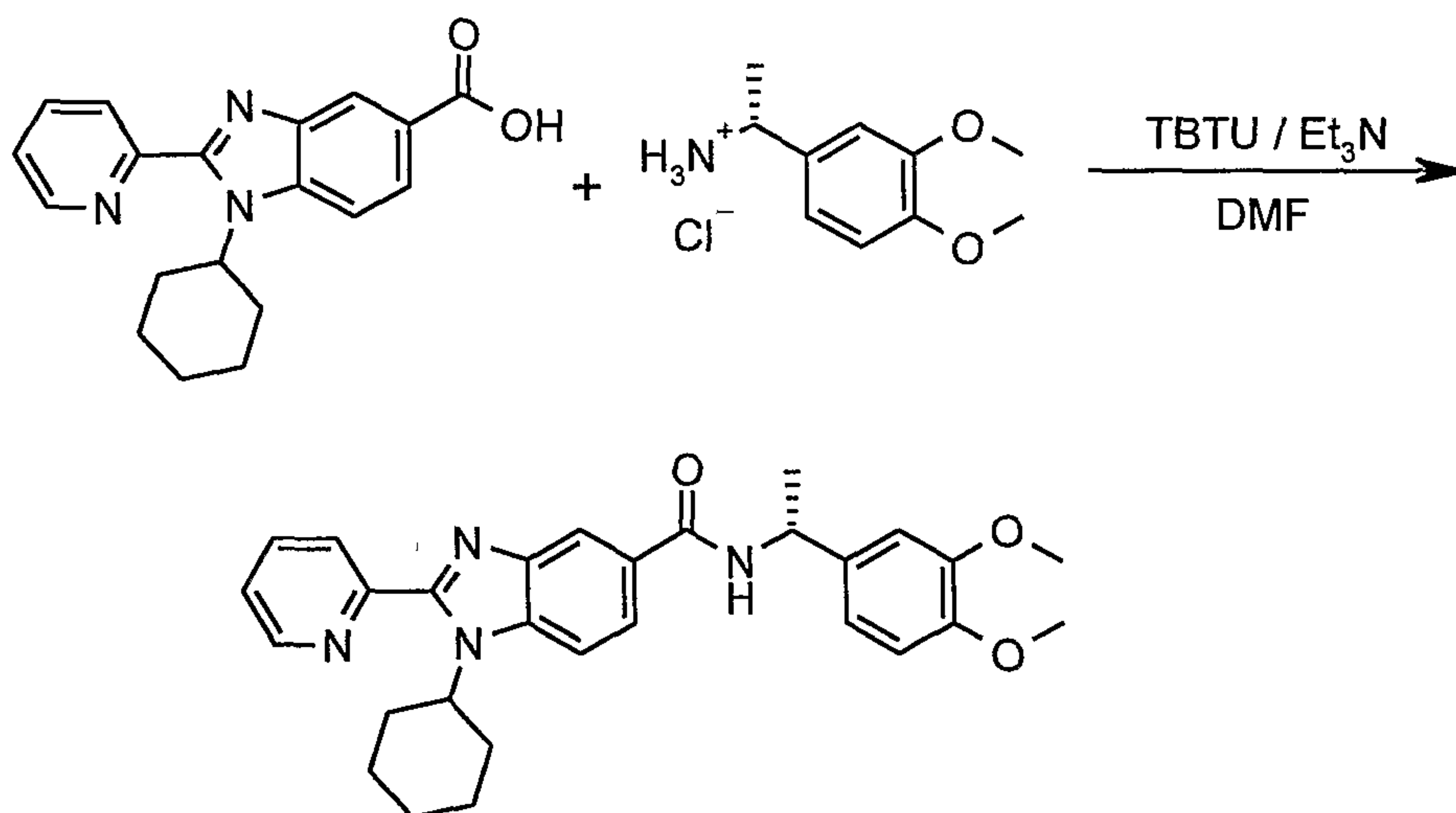
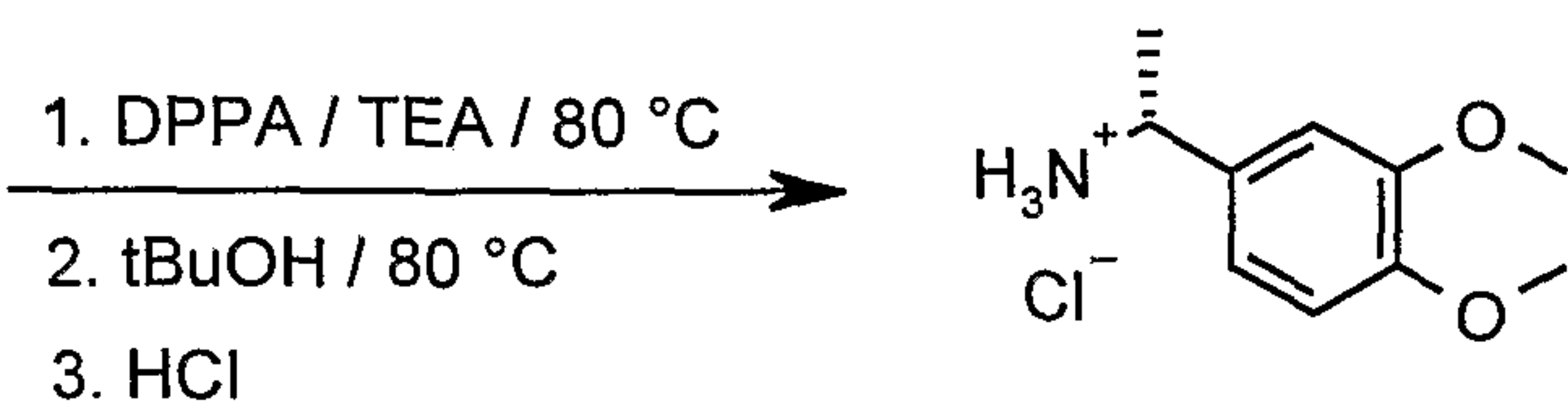
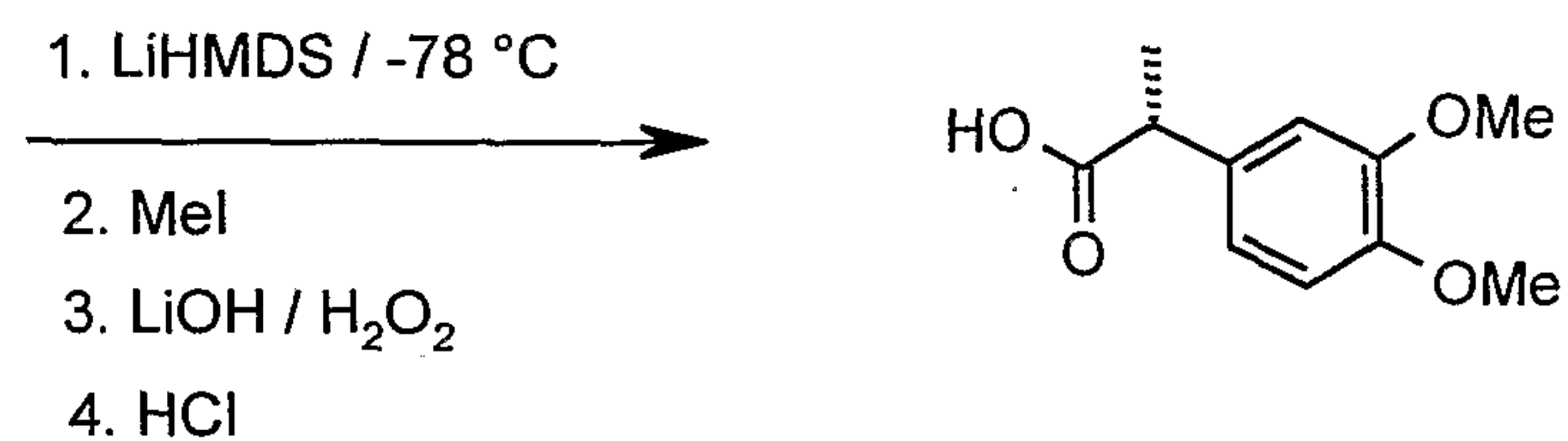
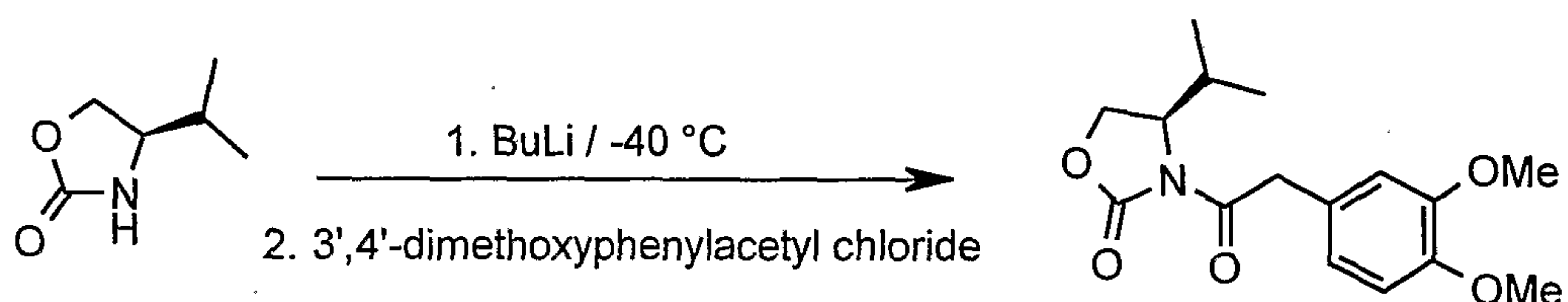


Following the general procedure, starting from 3,4-diethoxybenzaldehyde and methylmagnesium bromide, after a reaction time of 96 h, the title compound was obtained as a pink solid in 75% yield.

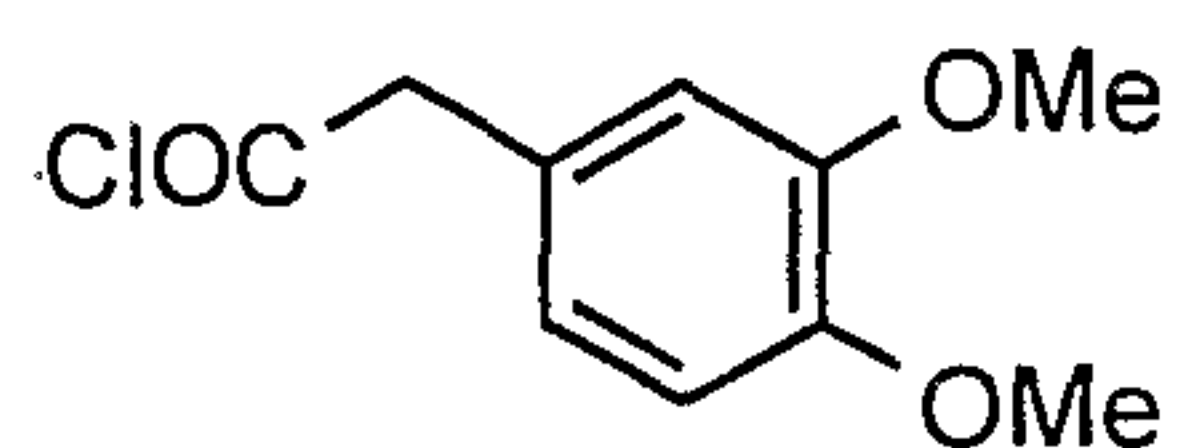
10

Example 5 (Entry 2042, Table 2)

1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1*h*-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(*R*)-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)ethyl]amide:



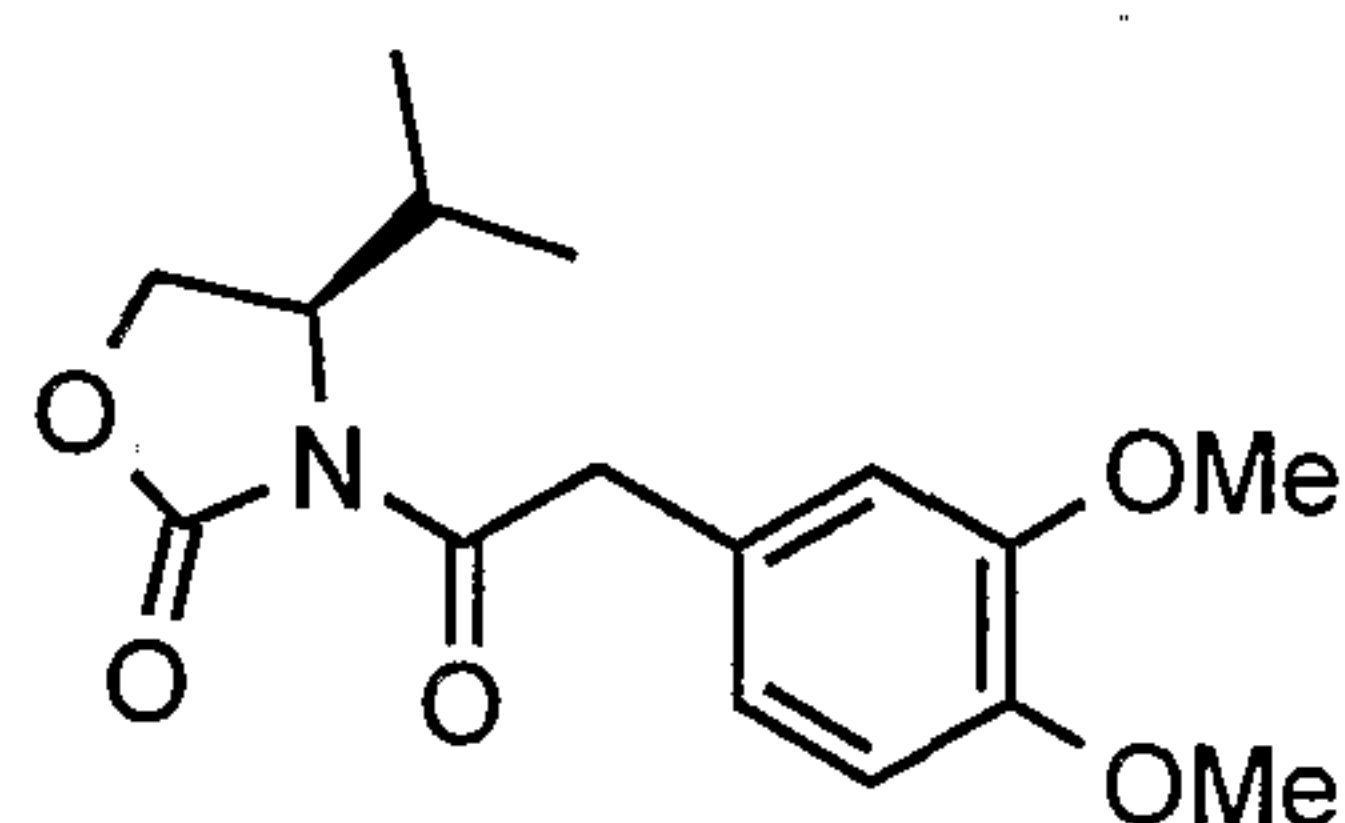
3',4'-Dimethoxyphenylacetyl chloride:



47

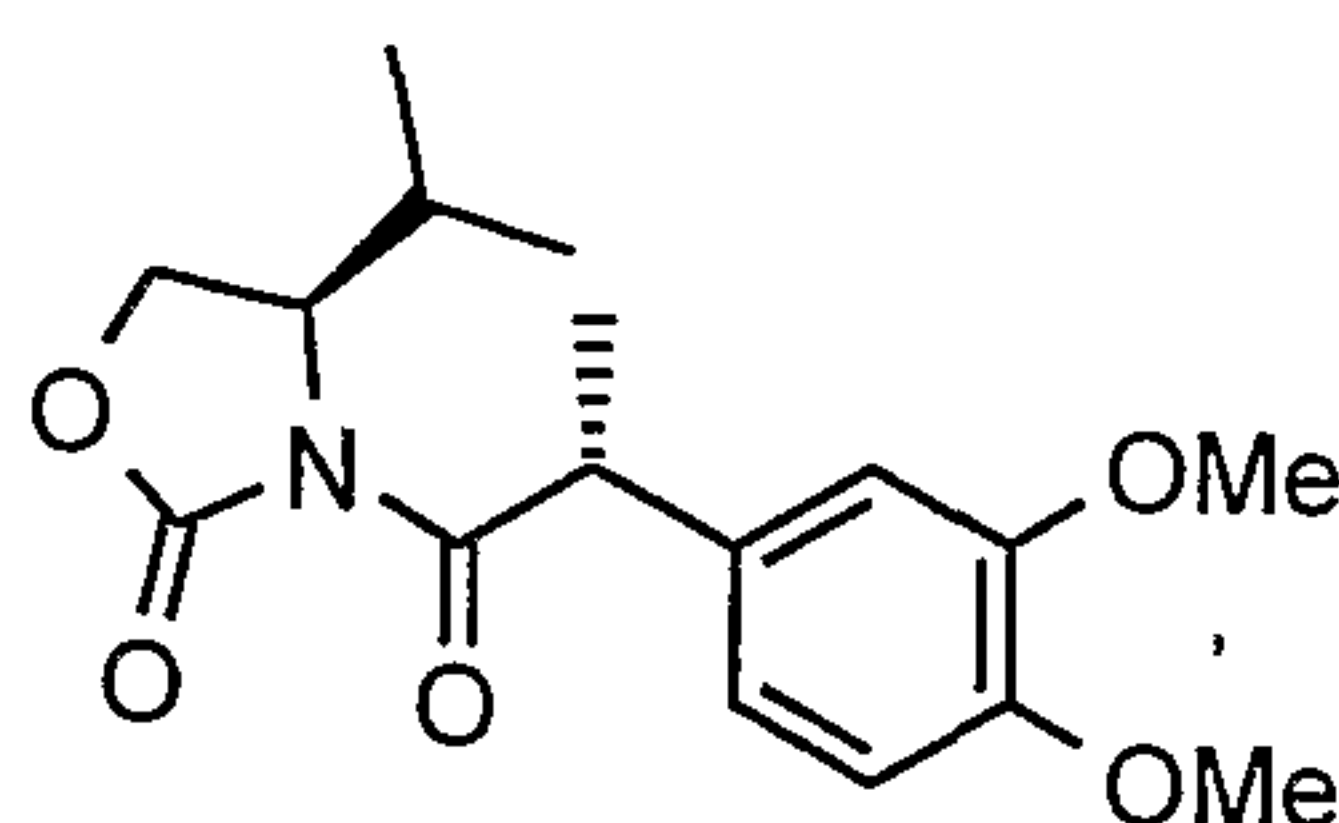
3',4'-Dimethoxyphenylacetic acid (10.00 g, 51 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (100 mL) and DMF (100 μ L) was added. Oxalyl chloride (1.05 equiv., 53.5 mmol, 4.67 mL) was added drop-wise and the mixture stirred at room temperature until gas evolutions ceased. The solution was then refluxed for 30 min, cooled to room temperature and concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude acid chloride was used directly in the next step.

(R)-3-[2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-ethanoyl]-4-isopropyl-oxazolidin-2-one:



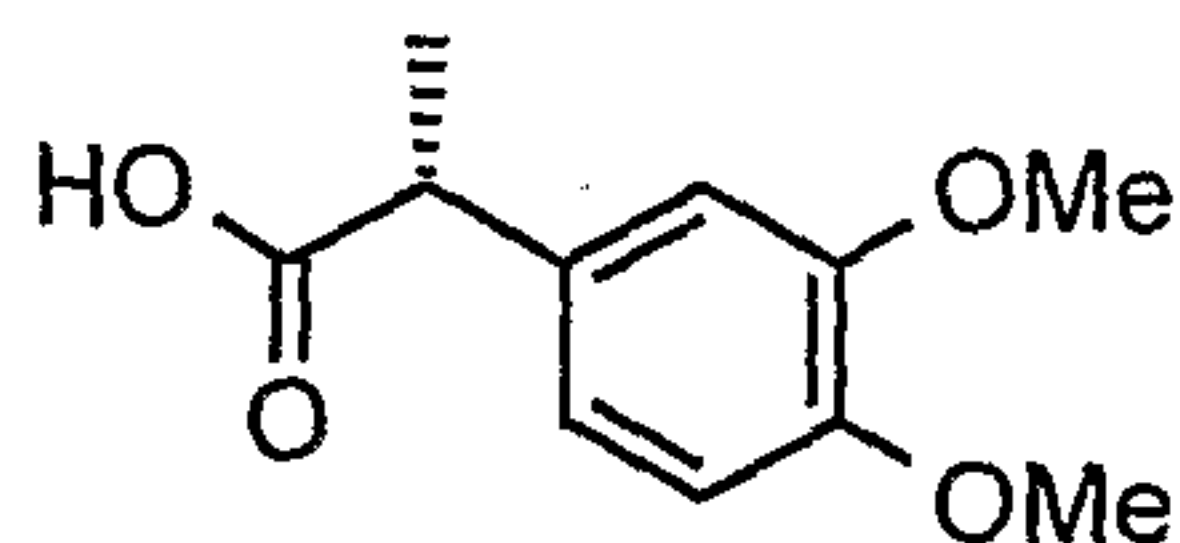
(R)-4-Isopropyl-2-oxazolidinone (6.59 g, 51 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (95 mL) under an argon atmosphere. The solution was cooled to -50°C and n-BuLi (2.3 M in hexane, 51 mmol, 22 mL) was added drop-wise. The resulting white suspension was stirred for 30 min at -40°C and then cooled further to -78°C . The acid chloride from above (51 mmol) in THF (10 mL + 5 mL rinse) was added drop-wise over 5 min and the mixture stirred for 30 min at -78°C . The reaction mixture was then allowed to warm to 0°C and stirred an additional 1 h at that temperature. After quenching with saturated aqueous NH_4Cl (25 mL), THF was removed under reduced pressure, water (25 mL) was added and the product extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The extract was washed with 5% aqueous NaHCO_3 (2 X 50 mL) and brine (50 mL), and dried over MgSO_4 . Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure, and the residue purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using 40% EtOAc in hexane as eluent (11.06 g, 70% yield).

(R)-3-[2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-propanoyl]-4-isopropyl-oxazolidin-2-one:



The oxazolidinone from above (5.24 g, 17 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (75 mL) and the solution cooled to -78°C under an argon atmosphere. Lithium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (1 M in THF, 1.15 equiv., 19.6 mmol, 19.6 mL) was added drop-wise and the mixture stirred 30 min at -78°C . Iodomethane (17 mmol, 1.06 mL) was added and the reaction mixture stirred 1 h at -78°C and then at room temperature for 2 h. After quenching with 1 M KHSO_4 (25 mL), THF was removed under reduced pressure and the product extracted with EtOAc (150 mL). The extract was washed successively with 1 M KHSO_4 (25 mL), 10% aqueous NaHCO_3 (2 X 25 mL) and brine (25 mL). After drying (MgSO_4) and removal of volatiles under reduced pressure, the crude product was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using 30% EtOAc in hexane as eluent to give the title compound as a white solid (2.93 g, 53% yield). ^1H NMR analysis indicates a 9:1 mixture of diastereomers in favor of the desired (R,R)-isomer.

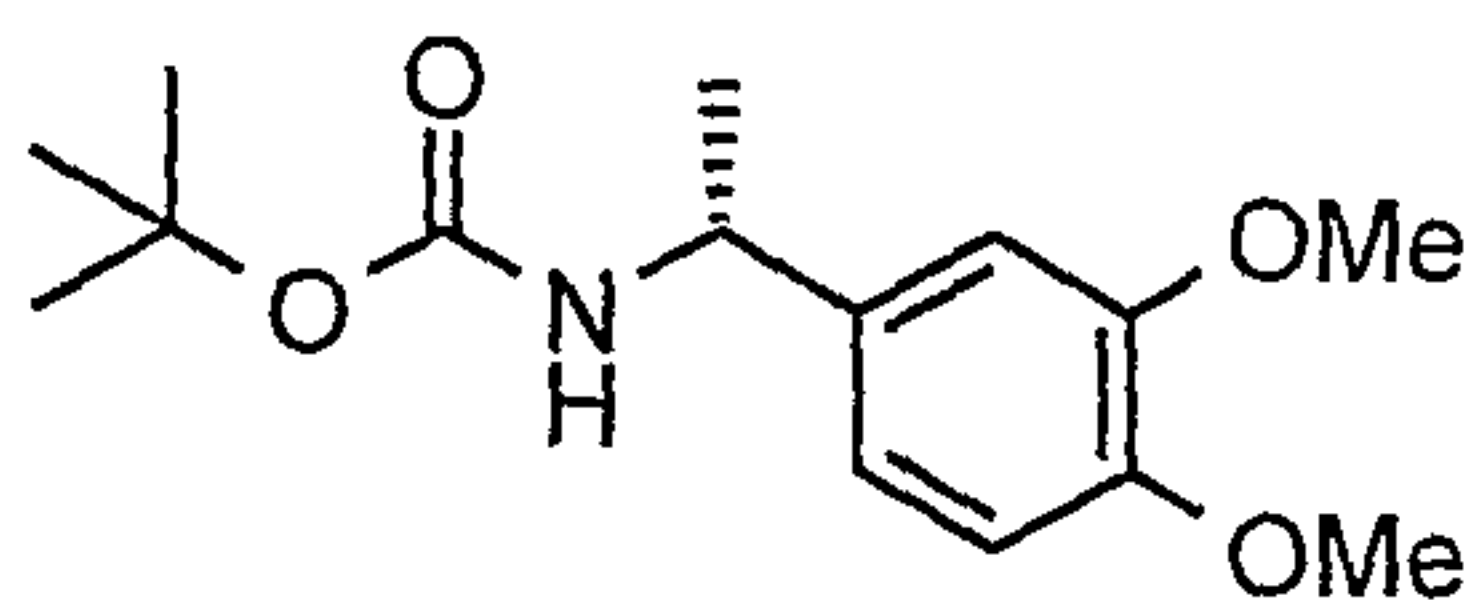
(R)-2-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)propionic acid:



The oxazolidinone from above (2.72 g, 8.5 mmol) was dissolved in THF (40 mL) and water (15 mL) was added, followed by 30% hydrogen peroxide (4.36 mL, 42 mmol) and LiOH monohydrate (0.426 g, 10.2 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 1 h. THF was removed under reduced pressure and saturated aqueous NaHCO_3 (10 mL) was added. The solution was washed with DCM (2 X 25 mL) and then acidified to pH 1 with 6 N HCl. The product was extracted with EtOAc (2 X 50 mL) and the extract dried over MgSO_4 . After evaporation of the solvent, the crude title compound (1.855 g) was obtained as a clear oil.

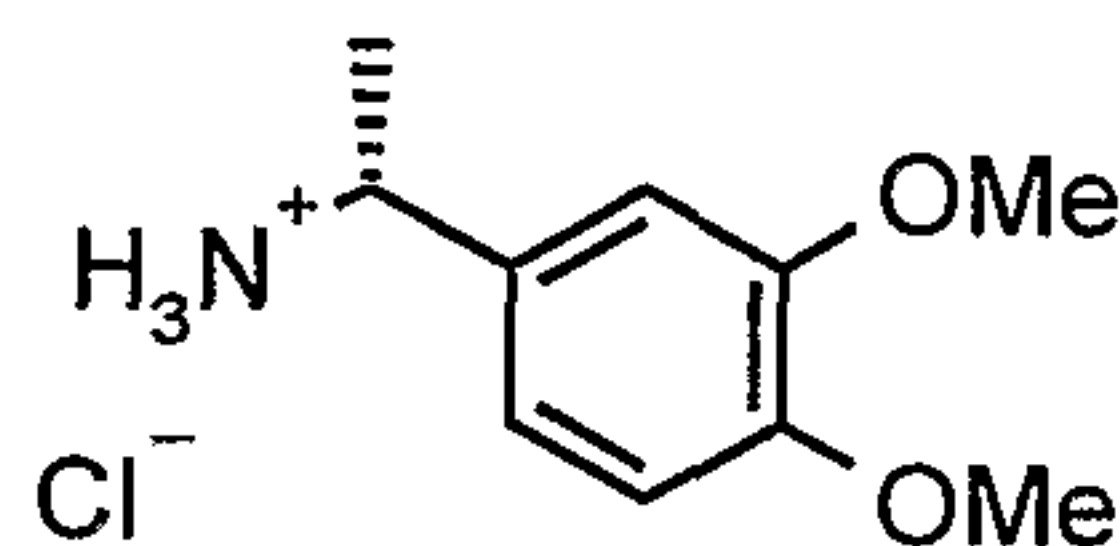
25

[(R)-1-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-ethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester:



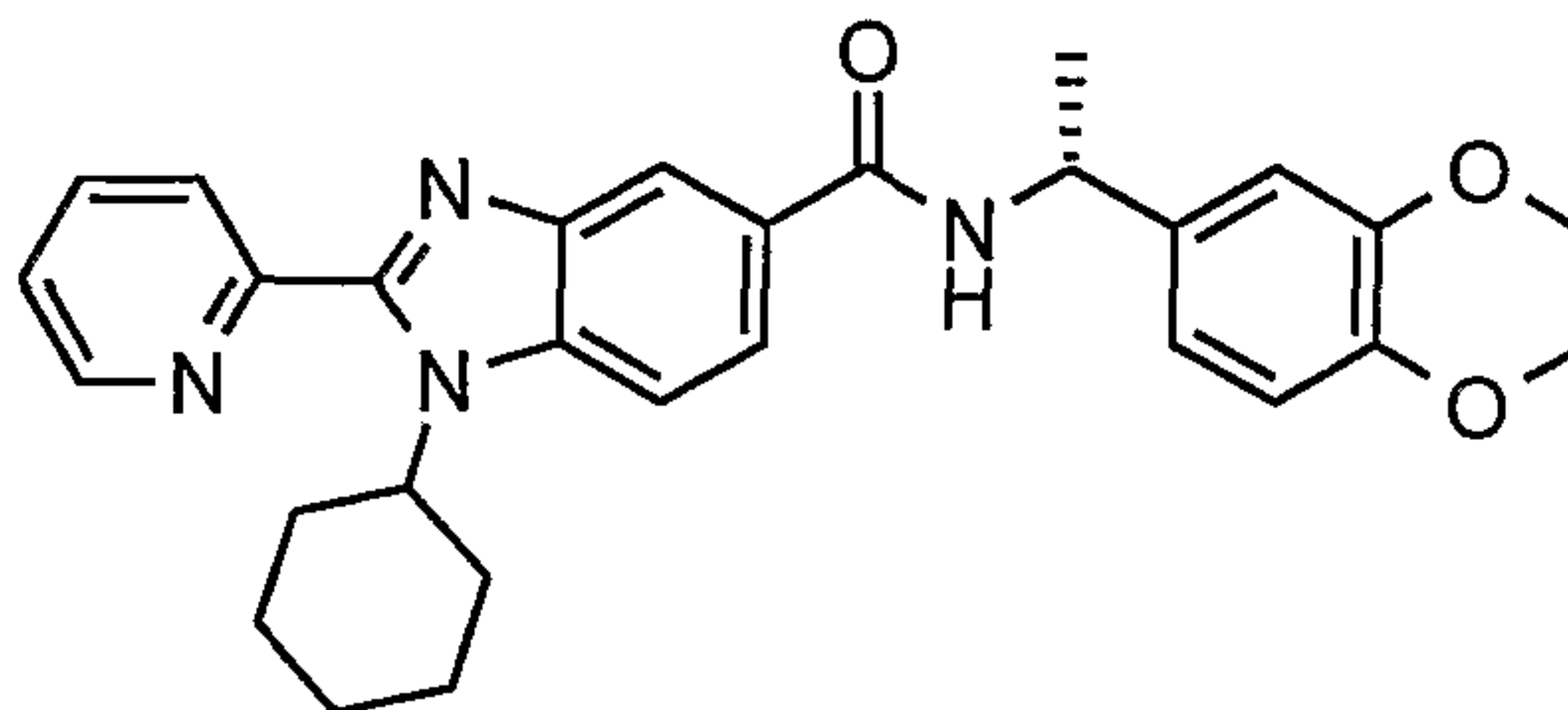
(R)-3',4'-Dimethoxy-2-methylphenylAcetic acid (1.505 g, 7.16 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (20 mL). Diphenylphosphoryl azide (1.70 mL, 7.87 mmol) and triethylamine (1.20 mL, 8.59 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 20 min and then at 80 °C for 3h. *tert*-Butanol (5 equiv., 39.2 mmol, 3.75 mL) was added and the heating to 80 °C continued for 20 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, diluted with Et₂O (100 mL) and washed successively with 1 M KHSO₄ (2 X 25 mL), saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (2 X 25 mL) and brine (25 mL). After drying (MgSO₄), solvents were removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using 15-20% EtOAc in hexane as eluent. The title amine carbamate was obtained as a white solid (0.72 g)

(R)-1-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-ethyl-ammonium chloride:



(R)-N-*tert*-Butyloxycarbonyl-3',4'-dimethoxy- α -methylbenzylamine from above (0.653 g, 2.3 mmol) was stirred for 1 h in 4 N hydrogen chloride-dioxane (4 mL). Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure to give the title amine hydrochloride as a white solid (0.518 g).

1-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(R)-1-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-ethyl]amide hydrochloride:



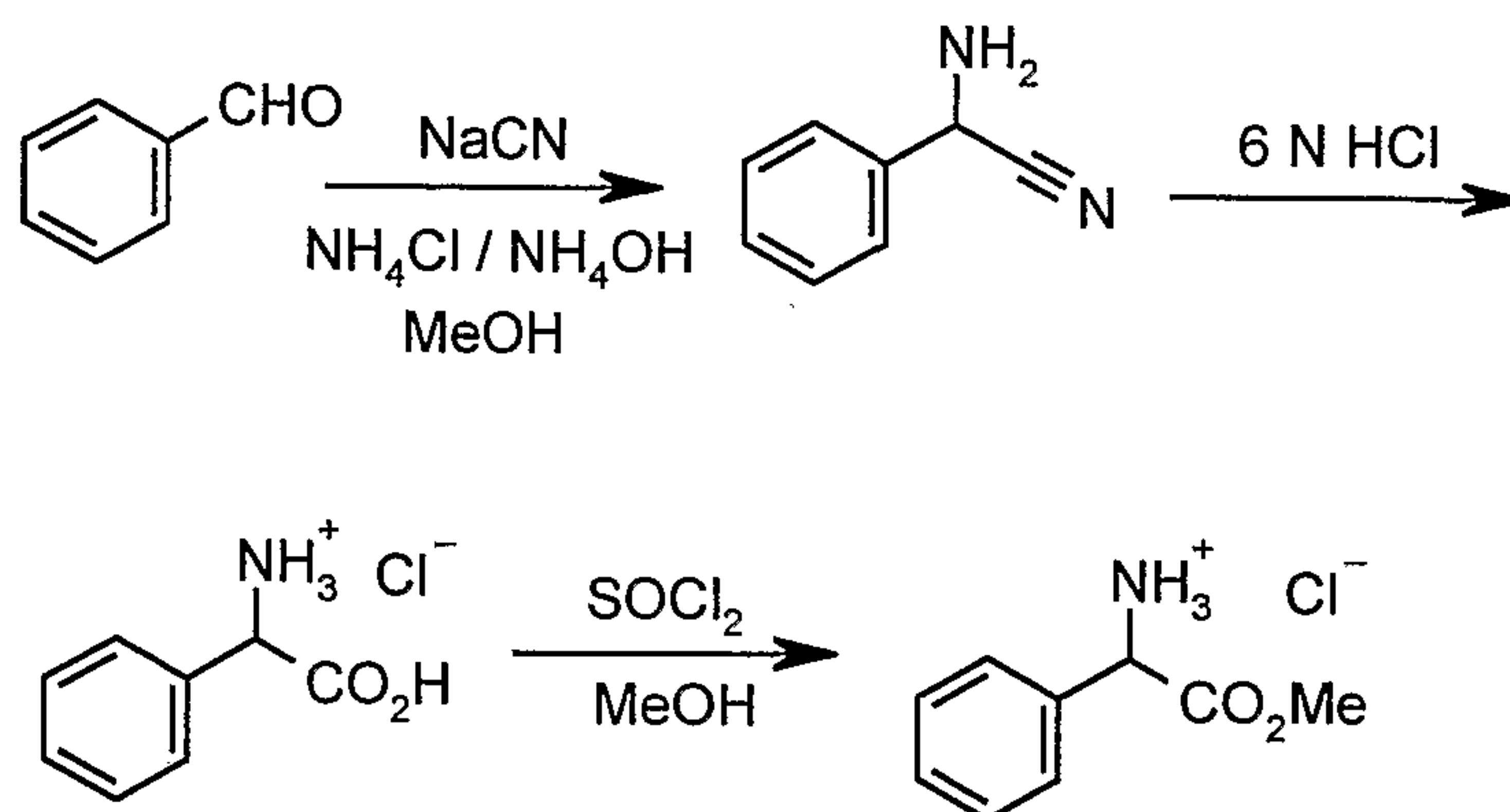
The carboxylic acid of example 1 (0.075 g, 0.23 mmol), TBTU (1.5 equiv., 0.34 mmol, 0.111 g) and triethylamine (5 equiv., 1.15 mmol, 0.16 mL) were dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL) and the (R)-amine hydrochloride from above (0.051 g, 0.23 mmol)

was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature and quenched by addition of 1 N NaOH (5 mL) and water (10 mL). The gummy precipitate was extracted into EtOAc (75 mL), washed with brine and dried (MgSO₄). The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (1 mL).
 5 TBME (10 mL) was added followed by hexane (10 mL). The precipitate that formed was collected by filtration, washed with 1:1 TBME/hexane and dried. The product was further purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using EtOAc as eluent and then converted to its hydrochloride salt by reaction with hydrogen chloride in ether. The title compound was obtained as a white solid (0.065 g).

10

Example 6

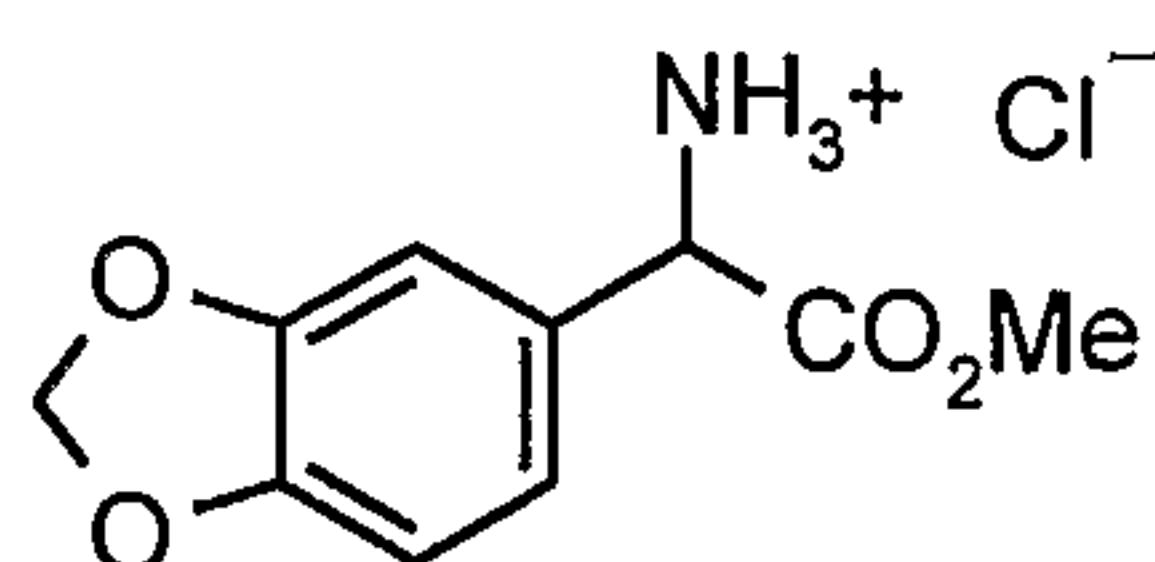
General procedure for the preparation of racemic phenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride derivatives:



15 Aromatic aldehydes, substituted according to the scope of the present invention, were reacted with an alkali metal cyanide (preferably sodium or potassium cyanide) in a mixture of aqueous ammonium chloride and ammonium hydroxide and a co-solvent such as MeOH or ethanol. The aminonitriles formed were hydrolyzed to the corresponding racemic phenylglycines in boiling aqueous mineral acid (preferably
 20 hydrochloric acid), and then converted to the racemic phenylglycine methyl ester hydrochlorides by reaction with MeOH in the presence of either thionyl chloride, oxalyl chloride, acetyl chloride, phosgene, hydrogen chloride or the like.

Racemic piperonylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

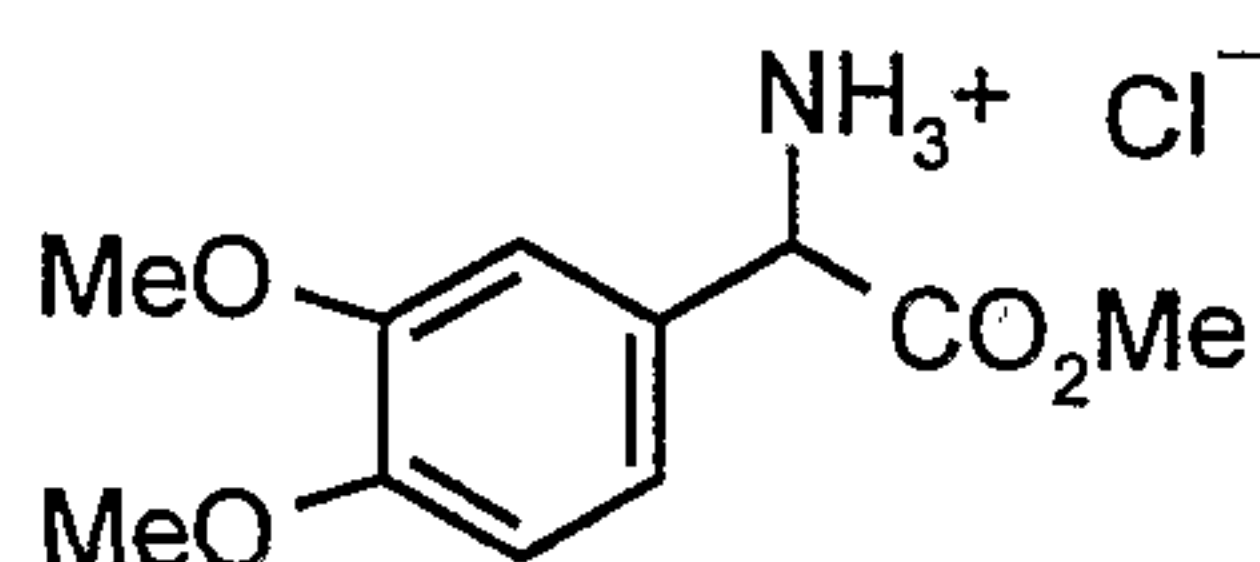
51



Piperonal (8.50 g, 56.6 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (25 mL) and a solution of NaCN (2.77 g, 56.6 mmol) and ammonium chloride (3.33 g, 62 mmol) in 30% aqueous ammonium hydroxide was added. After stirring overnight at room temperature, the supernatant was decanted from oily polymeric residues and MeOH removed from the aqueous phase under reduced pressure. The aqueous phase was then extracted with EtOAc. The aminonitrile present in the extract was then extracted into 6 N HCl (2 X 50 mL), the aqueous acid phases combined and refluxed for 8 h. Water was removed under reduced pressure to precipitate out the phenylglycine derivative as the hydrochloride salt that was collected by filtration and dried in vacuo (2.20 g).

The crude amino acid from above (1.00 g, 4.3 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (10 mL) and thionyl chloride (1.5 equiv., 0.48 mL) was added drop-wise. The mixture was refluxed for 3 h, and then volatiles were removed under reduced pressure. The residue was co-evaporated 3 times with MeOH (25 mL) and the residual solid triturated with Et₂O. The white solid was collected and dried (0.98 g, 92% yield).

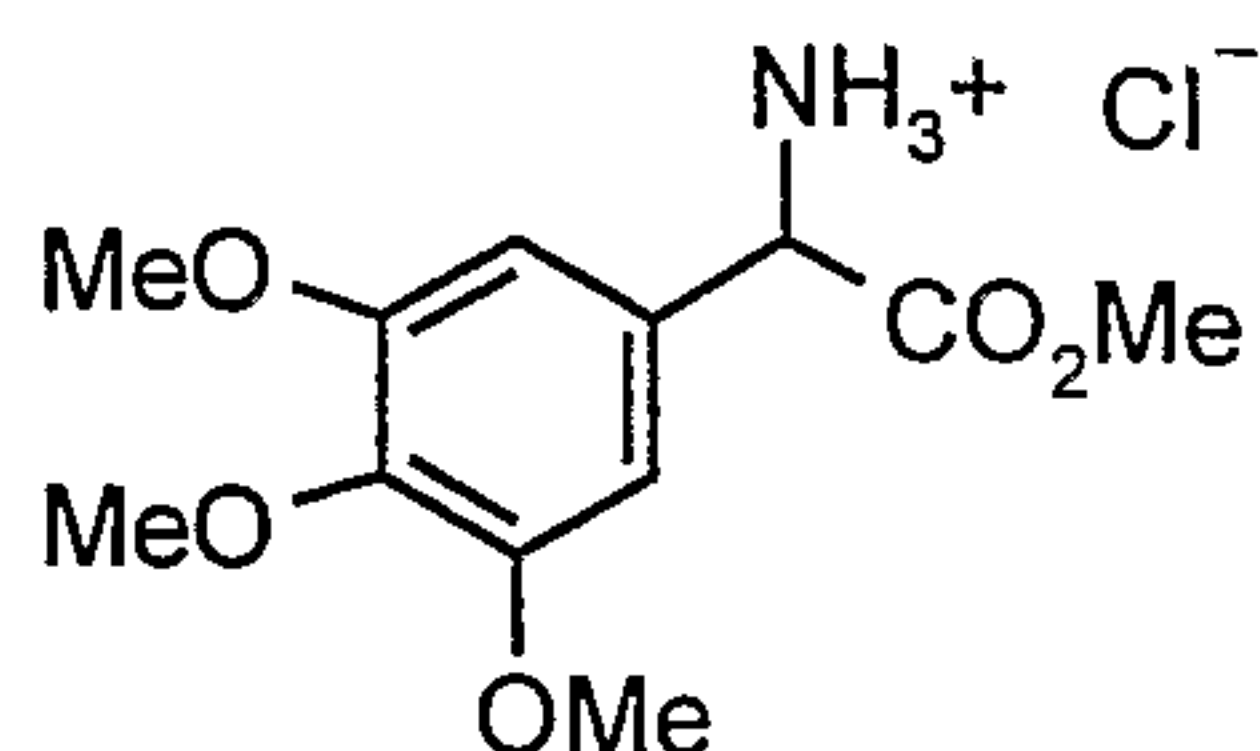
Racemic 3,4-dimethoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure and starting from 3,4-dimethoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 29% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 96% yield.

Racemic 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

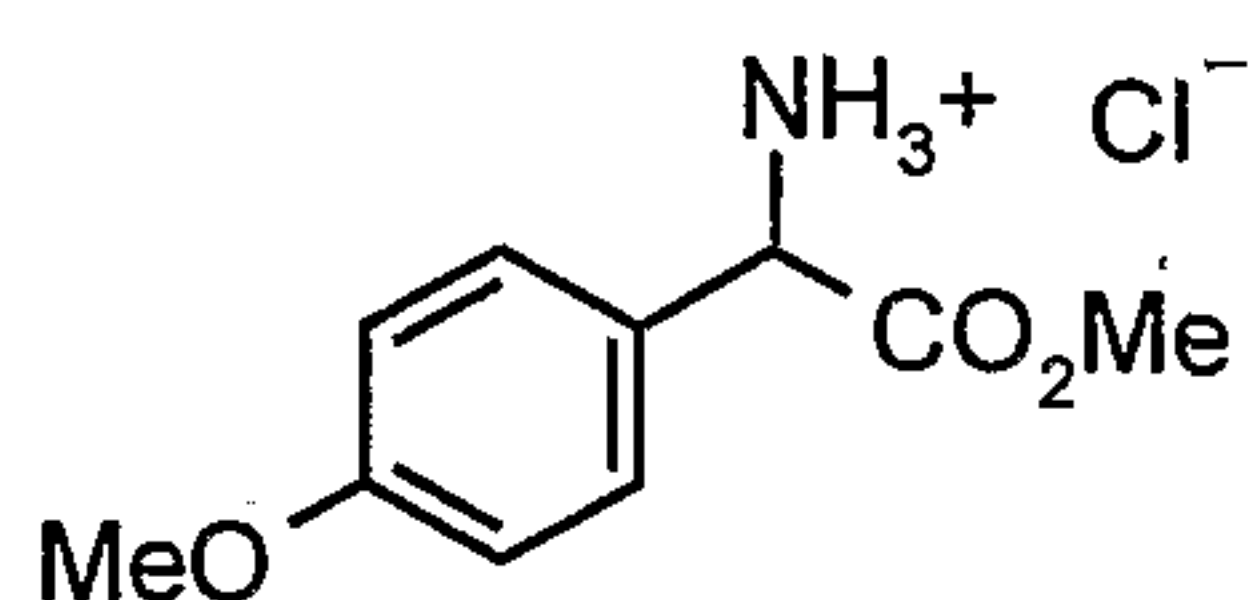
52



Following the general procedure and starting from 3,4,5-trimethoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 72% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 92% yield.

5

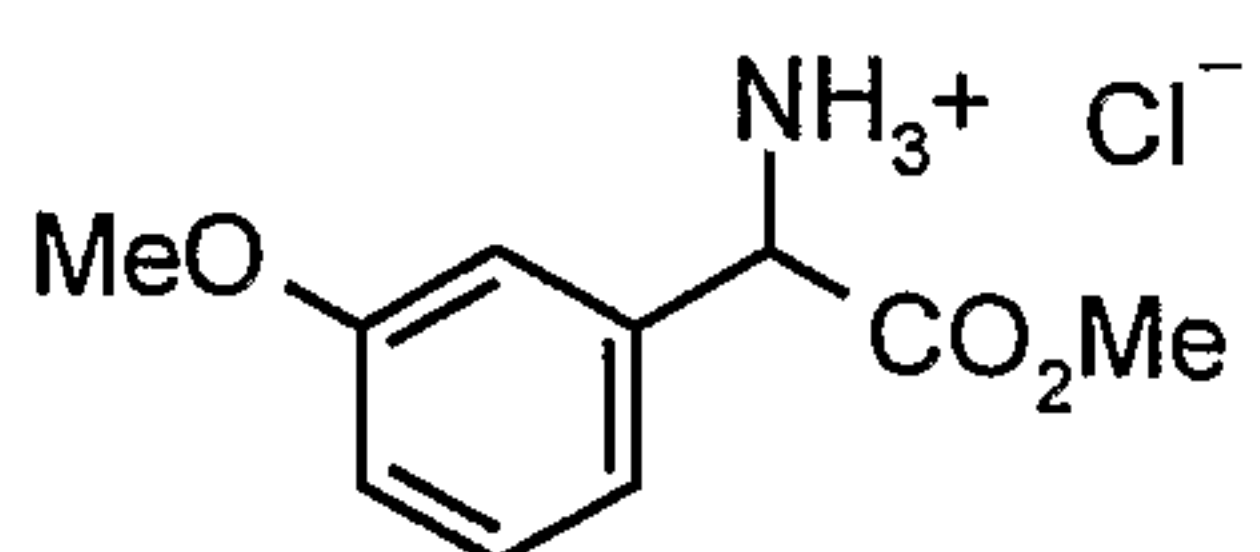
Racemic 4-methoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure and starting from 4-methoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 25% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 95% yield.

10

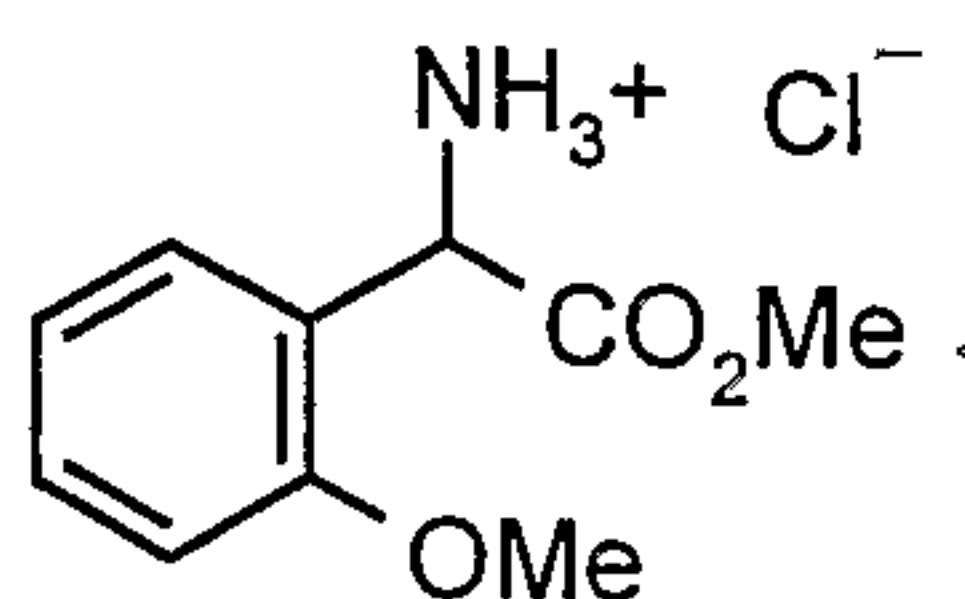
Racemic 3-methoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



Following the general procedure and starting from 3-methoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 43% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 99% yield.

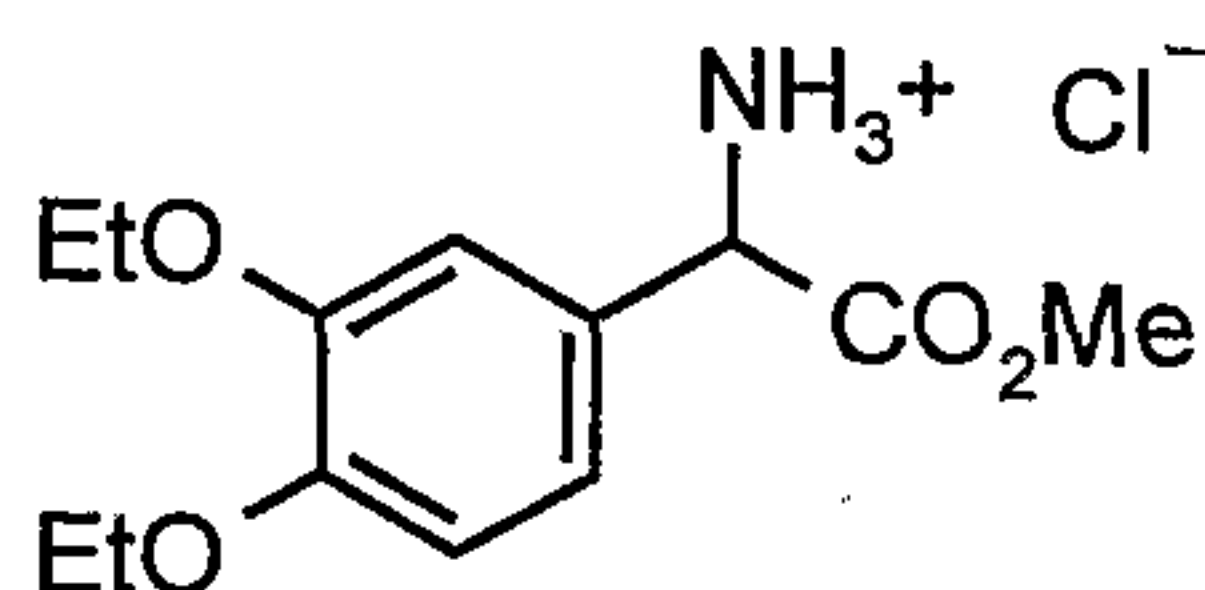
15

Racemic 2-methoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



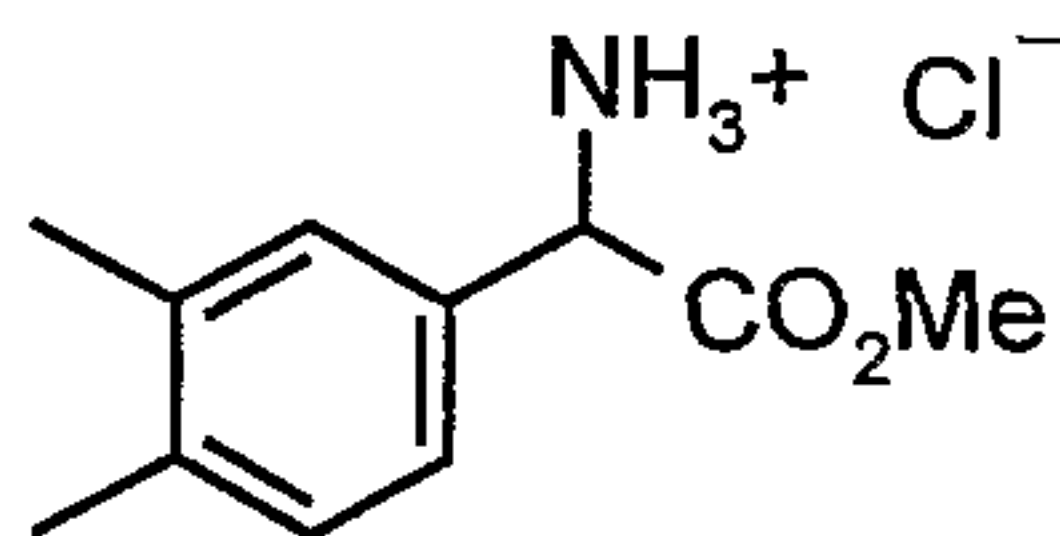
Following the general procedure and starting from 2-methoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 11% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 92% yield.

Racemic 3,4-diethoxyphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



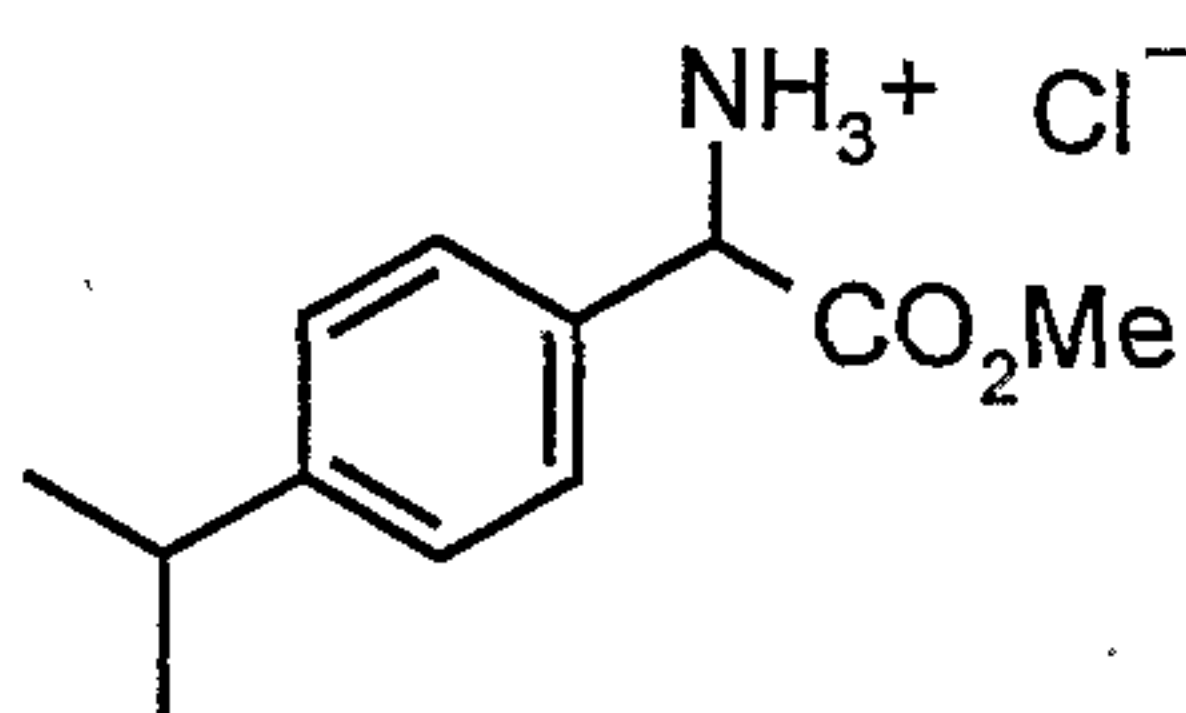
Following the general procedure and starting from 3,4-diethoxybenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 9% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 99% yield.

Racemic 3,4-dimethylphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

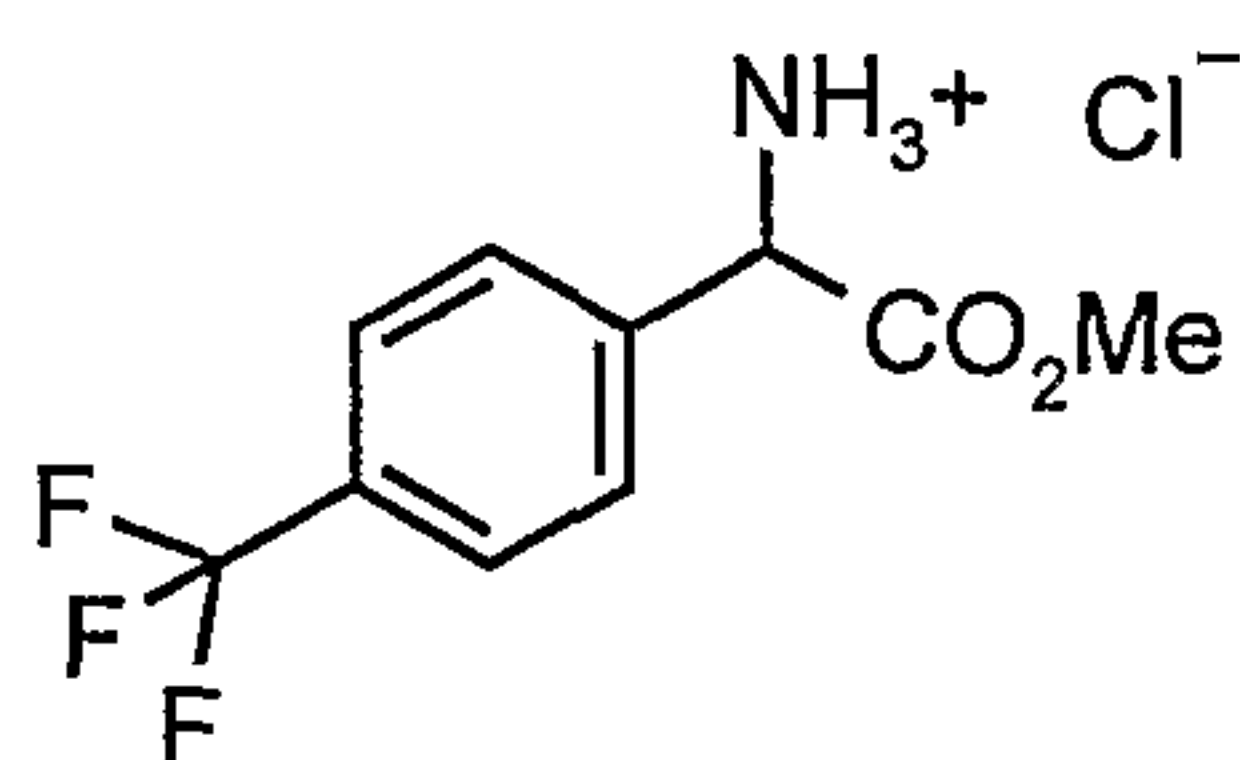


Following the general procedure and starting from 3,4-dimethylbenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 56% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 97% yield.

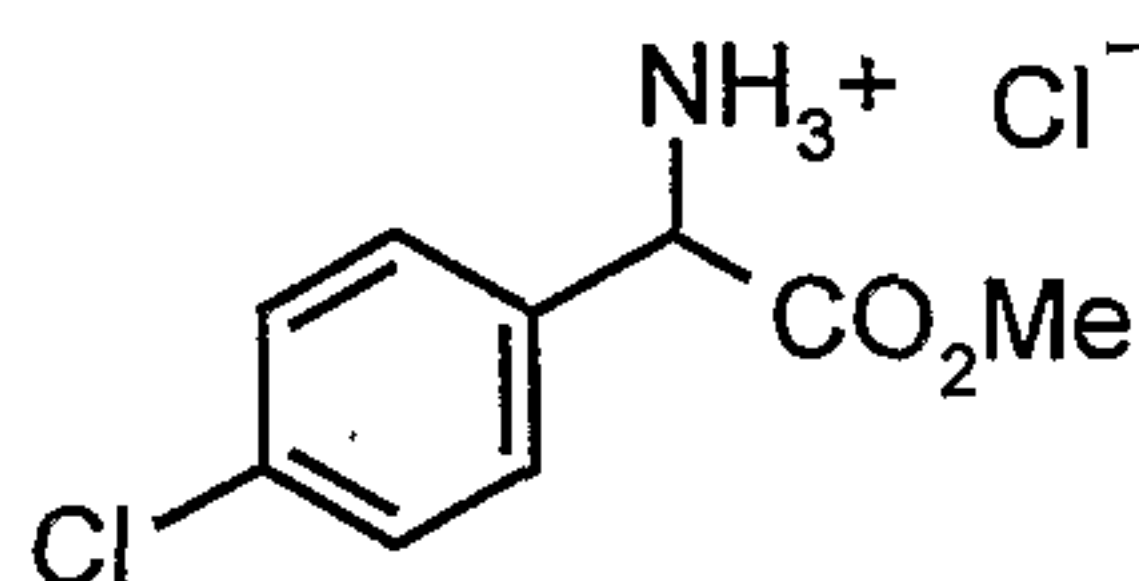
Racemic 4-isopropylphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:



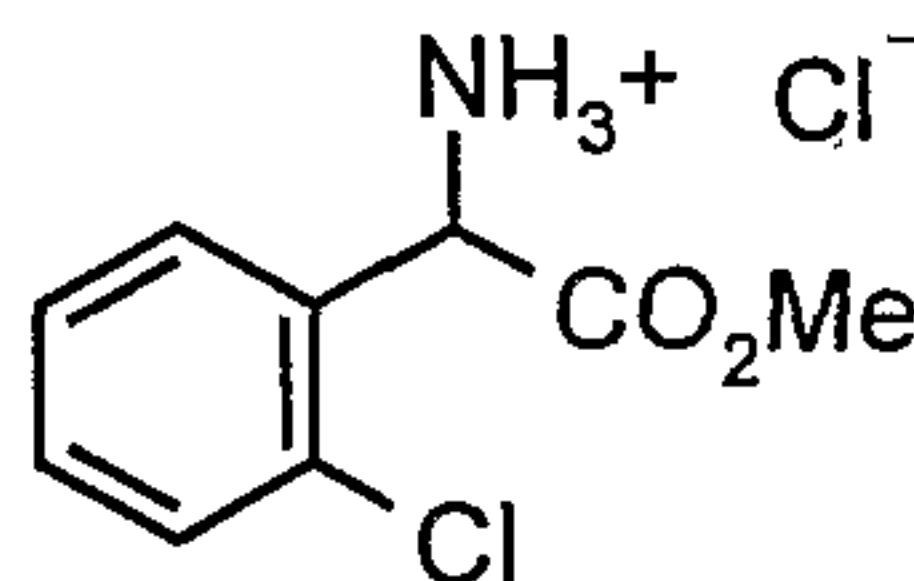
Following the general procedure and starting from 4-isopropylbenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 10% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 99% yield.

Racemic 4-trifluoromethylphenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

Following the general procedure and starting from 4-trifluoromethylbenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 53% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 78% yield.

Racemic 4-chlorophenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

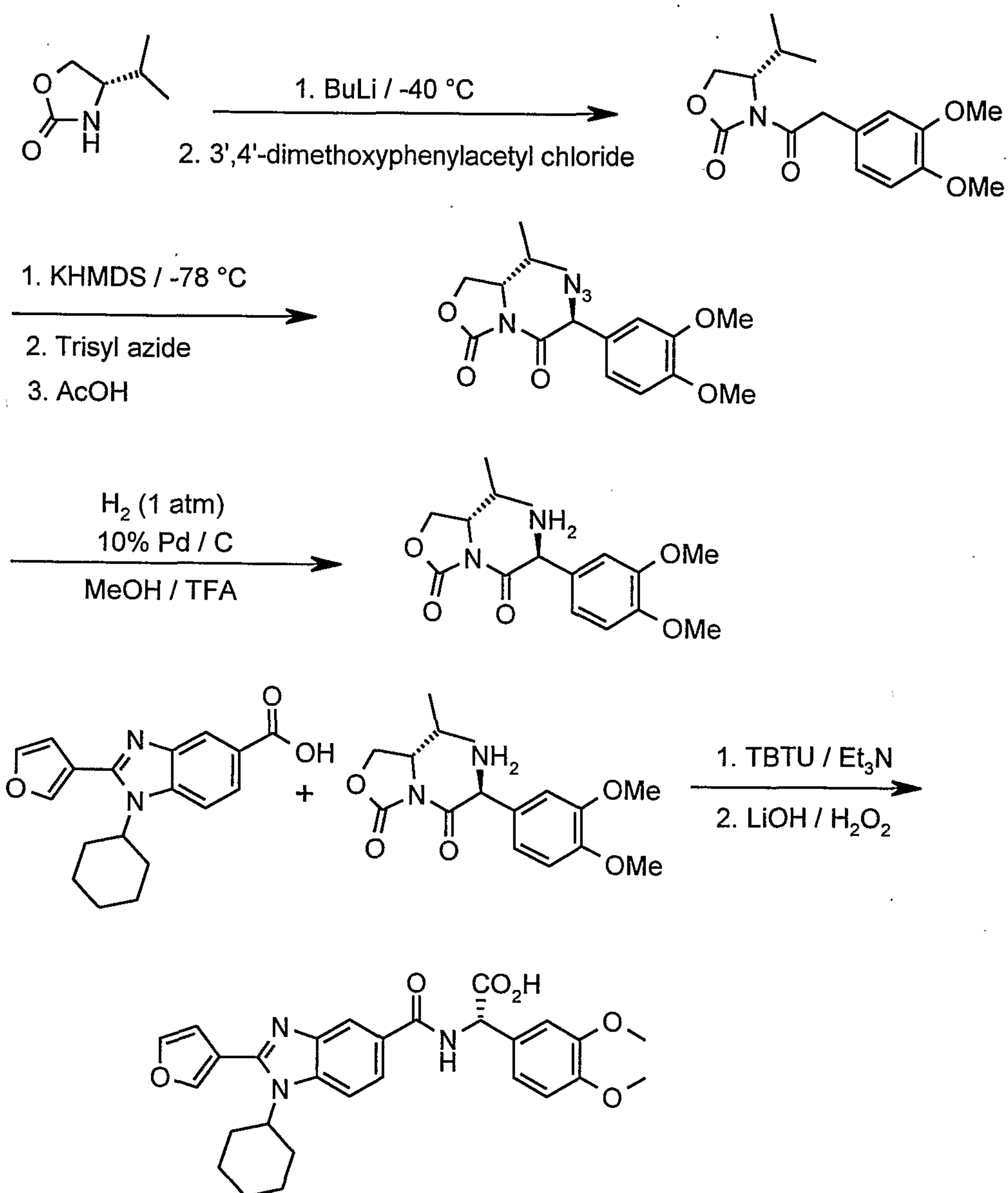
Following the general procedure and starting from 4-chlorobenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 27% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 83% yield.

Racemic 2-chlorophenylglycine methyl ester hydrochloride:

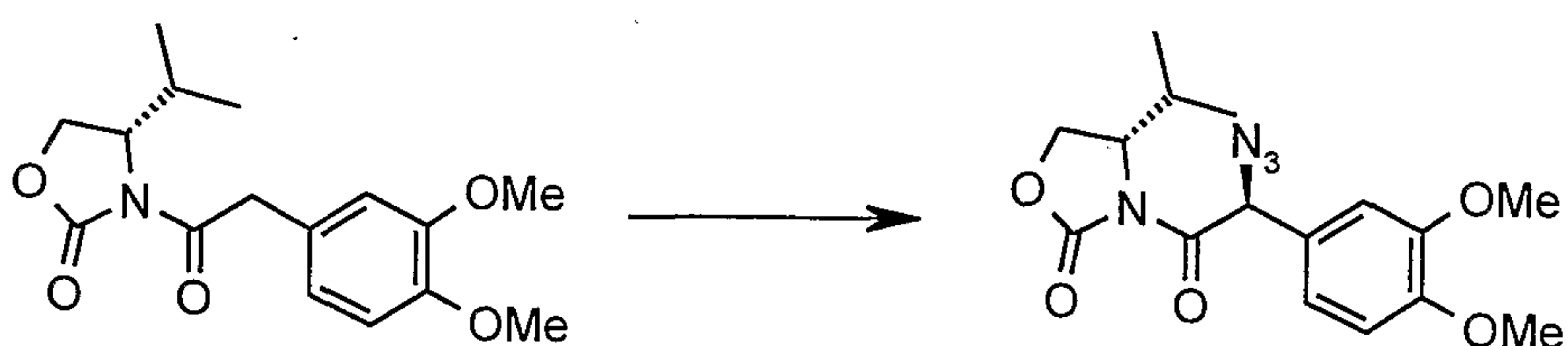
Following the general procedure and starting from 2-chlorobenzaldehyde, the phenylglycine hydrochloride was obtained in 25% yield, and the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in 93% yield.

Example 7 (Entry 16006, Table 16)

**(S)-{[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-
(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)acetic acid:**

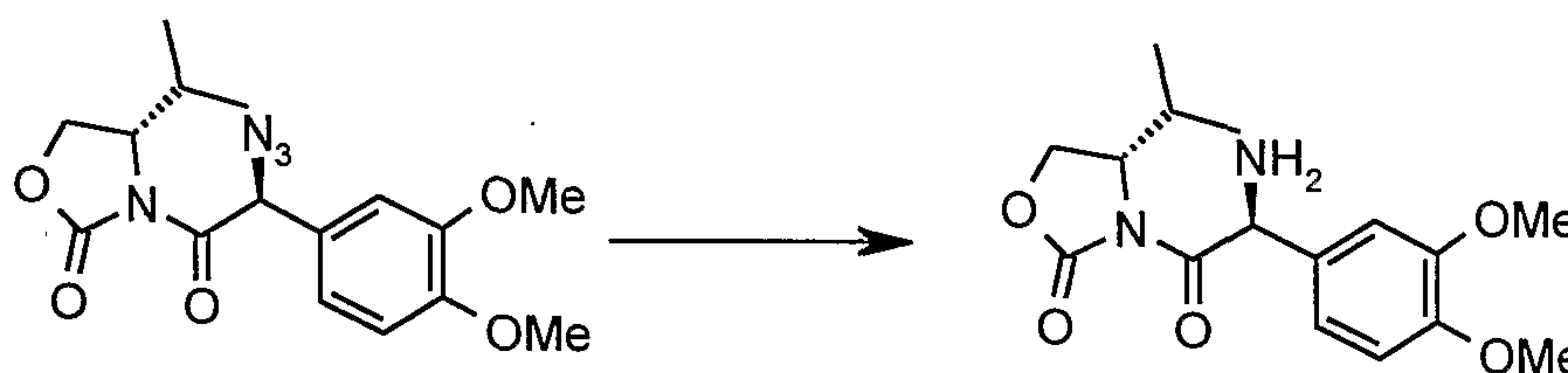


5 (S)-3-[(S)-2-Azido-2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-ethanoyl]-4-isopropyl-oxazolidin-2-one:



The (S)-N-acyloxazolidinone was prepared as in example 5 but starting from (S)-4-isopropyl-2-oxazolidinone. Following the procedure of D. A. Evans et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1990, 112, 4011), potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (0.5 M in toluene, 7.2 mL, 3.6 mmol) was diluted with anhydrous THF (10 mL), and the solution was cooled under argon to -78°C . The oxazolidinone (1.00 g, 3.25 mmol) in THF (10 mL), also at -78°C , was cannulated into the base solution. After stirring at -78°C for 30 min, a solution of trisyl azide (3.9 mmol, 1.21 g) in THF (10 mL) also at -78°C , was cannulated into the reaction mixture. The mixture was then stirred until completion (TLC) and then the reaction was quenched at -78°C with glacial AcOH (0.86 mL, 15 mmol). The reaction was warmed to room temperature and stirred overnight. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue extracted into EtOAc. After washing with water, drying (MgSO_4) and concentration, the residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using 30% EtOAc in hexane (61% yield).

(S)-3-[(S)-2-Amino-2-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-ethanoyl]-4-isopropyl-oxazolidin-2-one:

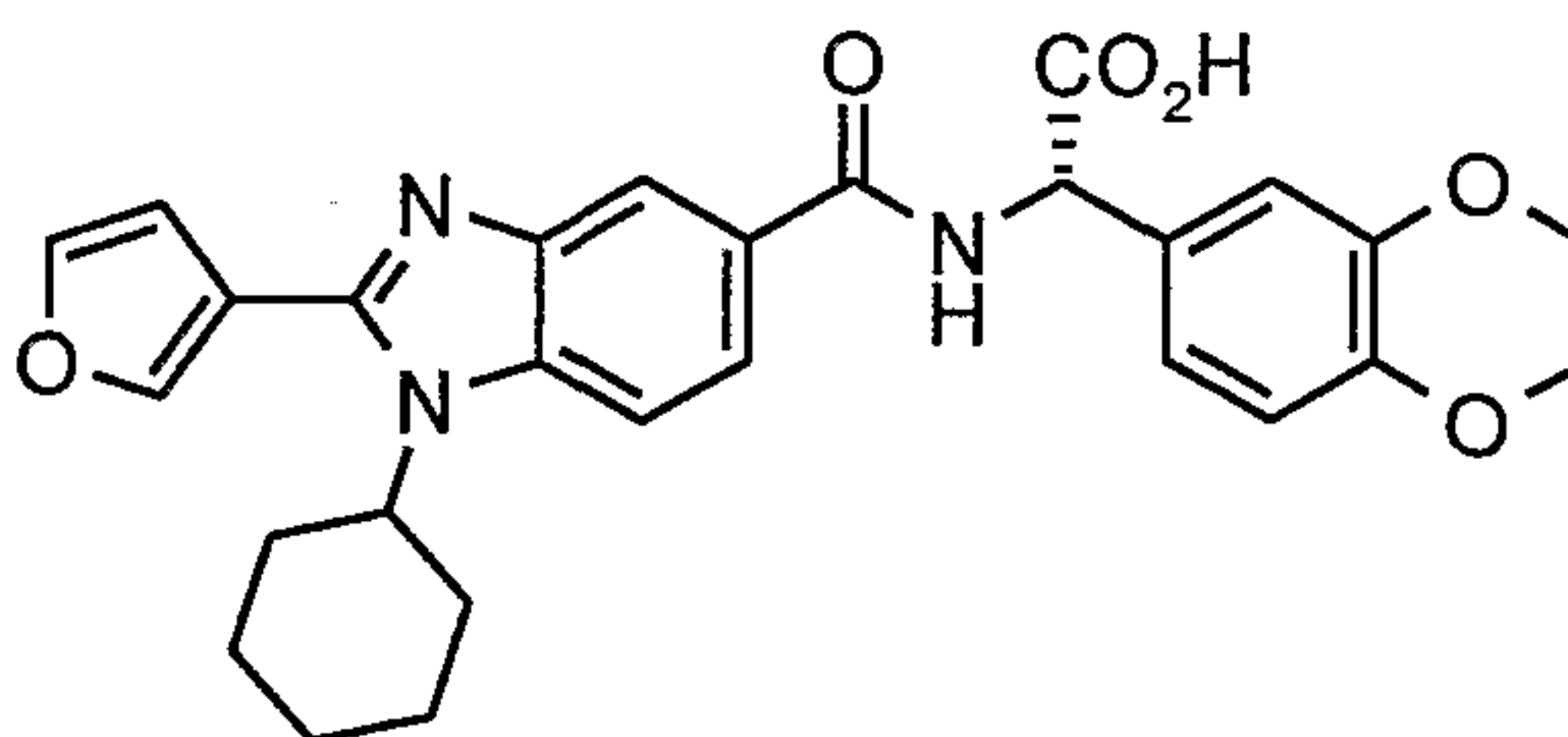


20

Following the procedure of D. A. Evans et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 1990, 112, 4011), the azido derivative from above (0.100 g, 0.28 mmol) and 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon (20 mg) were suspended in MeOH (5 mL) and trifluoroacetic acid (3 equivalents, 0.86 mmol, 66 μL) was added. The mixture was hydrogenated under 1 atm of hydrogen gas for 3 h. The mixture was filtered and volatiles removed under vacuo, to give the desired amine in quantitative yield, as a white solid.

25

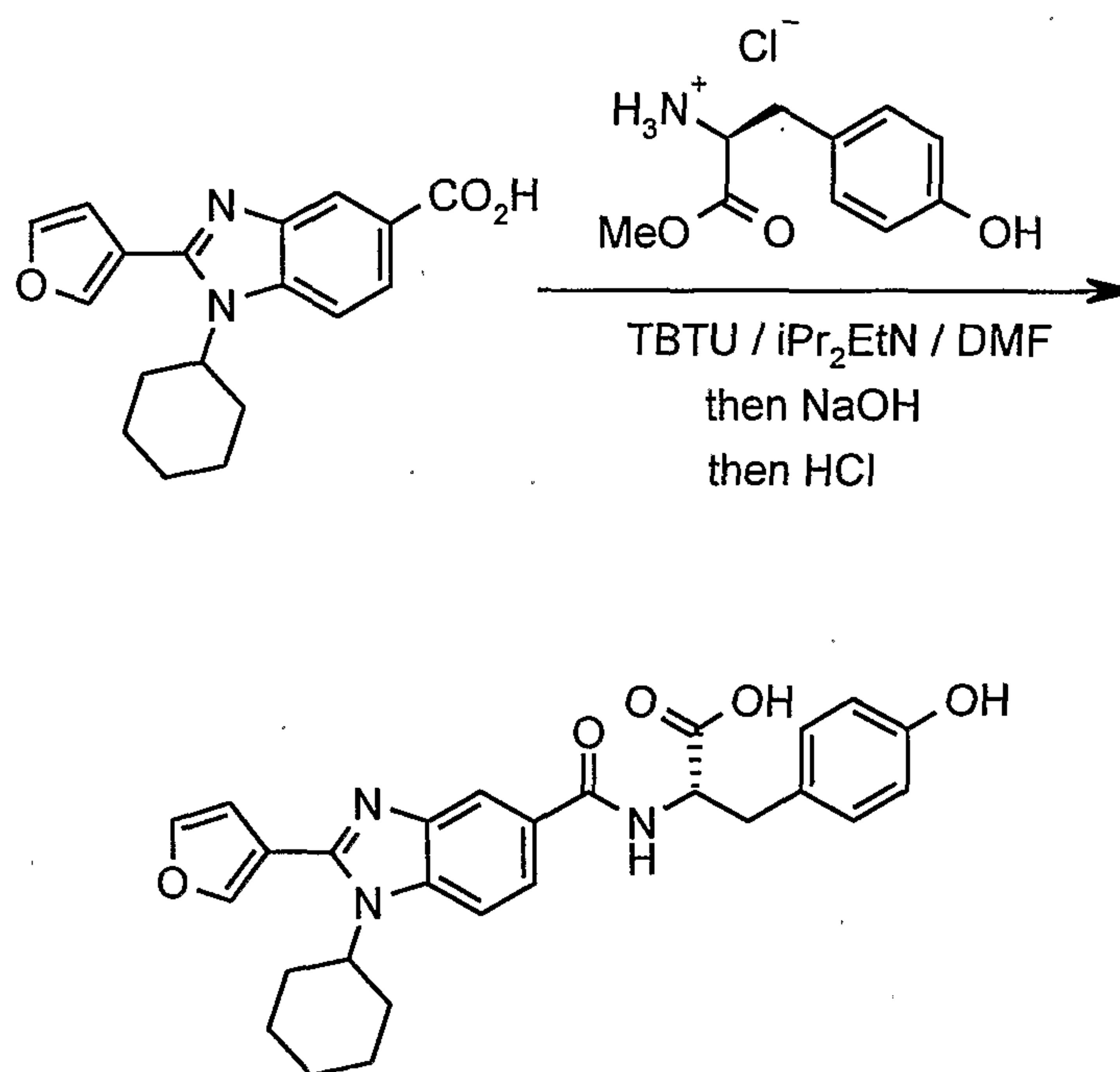
(S)-{[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazole-5-yl]-methanoyl}-amino-(3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)acetic acid:



The acid derivative of example 2 (0.100 g, 0.32 mmol), the amine derivative from
5 above (1.1 equivalent, 0.114 g, 0.36 mmol) and TBTU (1.3 equivalent, 0.134 g, 0.42
mmol) were dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL) and triethylamine (4 equivalents, 180 μ L,
1.29 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature until reaction
was complete as determined by HPLC analysis. 1 N NaOH (0.5 mL) was then
added and the reaction mixture added to water (25 mL) with vigorous stirring. The
10 resulting precipitate was collected, washed with water and dried (198 mg, 95 %
yield). This material was dissolved in THF (2.5 mL) and water (0.75 mL) was added.
The solution was cooled in ice and 30% aqueous hydrogen peroxide (4 equivalents,
151 μ L) was added followed by LiOH monohydrate (2 equivalents, 0.016 g). After
stirring for 4 h at 0 $^{\circ}$ C, the reaction was quenched by addition of sodium bisulfite (3
15 equivalents) and the THF layer separated. This solution was diluted with DMSO
and the product isolated by preparative HPLC (45 mg).

Example 8 (Entry 1040, Table 1)

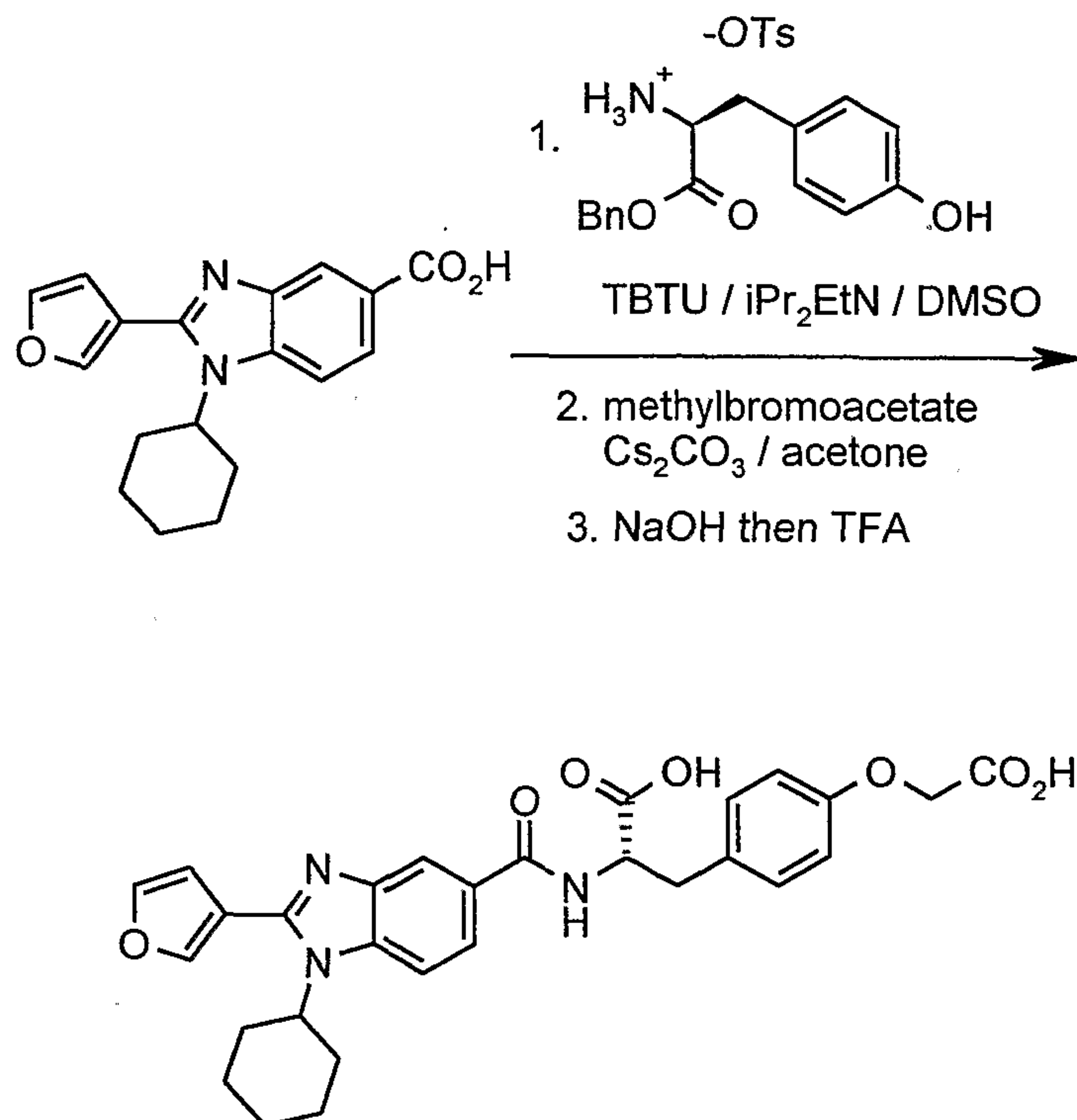
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl]methanoyl]amino}-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)propionic acid:



- 5 The carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.075 g, 0.24 mmol) and TBTU (1.2 equiv., 0.29 mmol, 0.093 g) were dissolved in DMF (0.5 mL) and DIEA (5 equiv., 1.2 mmol, 0.21 mL) was added followed by tyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (1.2 equiv., 0.29 mmol, 0.036 g). The mixture was stirred 30 min at room temperature. The reaction mixture was added drop-wise to 1 N NaOH (10 mL) and the mixture stirred until
- 10 complete hydrolysis of the methyl ester (as determined by HPLC analysis). The pH of the solution was then adjusted to 5-6 by drop-wise addition of 1 N HCl. The gray precipitate that formed was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried (125 mg). The solid was further purified by reversed-phase HPLC using 0.1% TFA – 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile gradients to give after lyophilisation, the TFA salt of the title
- 15 compound as a white amorphous solid (35 mg).

Example 9 (Entry 16011, Table 16)

(S)-3-(4-Carboxymethoxyphenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl]methanoyl]amino}propionic acid:



- 5 The carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.075 g, 0.24 mmol) and TBTU (1.3 equiv., 0.31 mmol, 0.100 g) were dissolved in DMSO (0.5 mL) and DIEA (5 equiv., 1.2 mmol, 0.21 mL) was added followed by tyrosine benzyl ester *para*-toluenesulfonate (1.3 equiv., 0.31 mmol, 0.137 g). The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature and then added drop-wise to a solution of AcOH (0.3 mL) in water (15 mL). The
- 10 gray precipitate that formed was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried (137 mg).

A portion of the tyrosine benzyl ester derivative from above (0.030 g, 0.043 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (1.5 mL) and Cs₂CO₃ (6 equiv., 0.26 mmol, 0.090 g) and methylbromoacetate (2 equiv., 0.086 mmol, 0.08 mL) were added. The mixture was

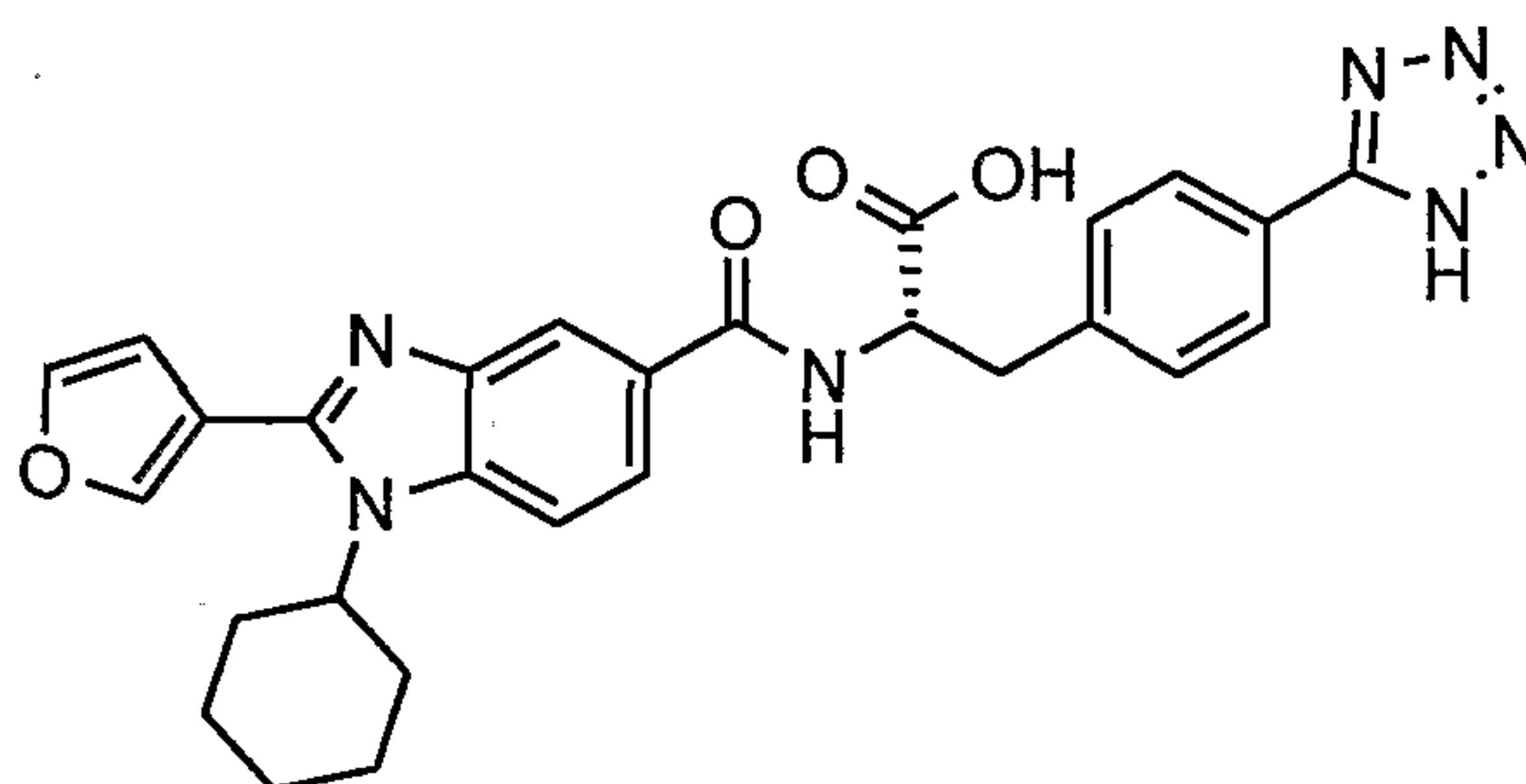
15 stirred at 50 °C for 30 min and volatiles removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (0.30 mL) and 5 N NaOH (50 µL) and water (50 µL) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min, acidified with TFA (50 µL) and diluted with DMSO (0.15 mL). The mixture was directly purified by reversed-phase HPLC using 0.1% TFA – 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile gradients to give

after lyophilisation, the TFA salt of the title compound as a white amorphous solid (18 mg).

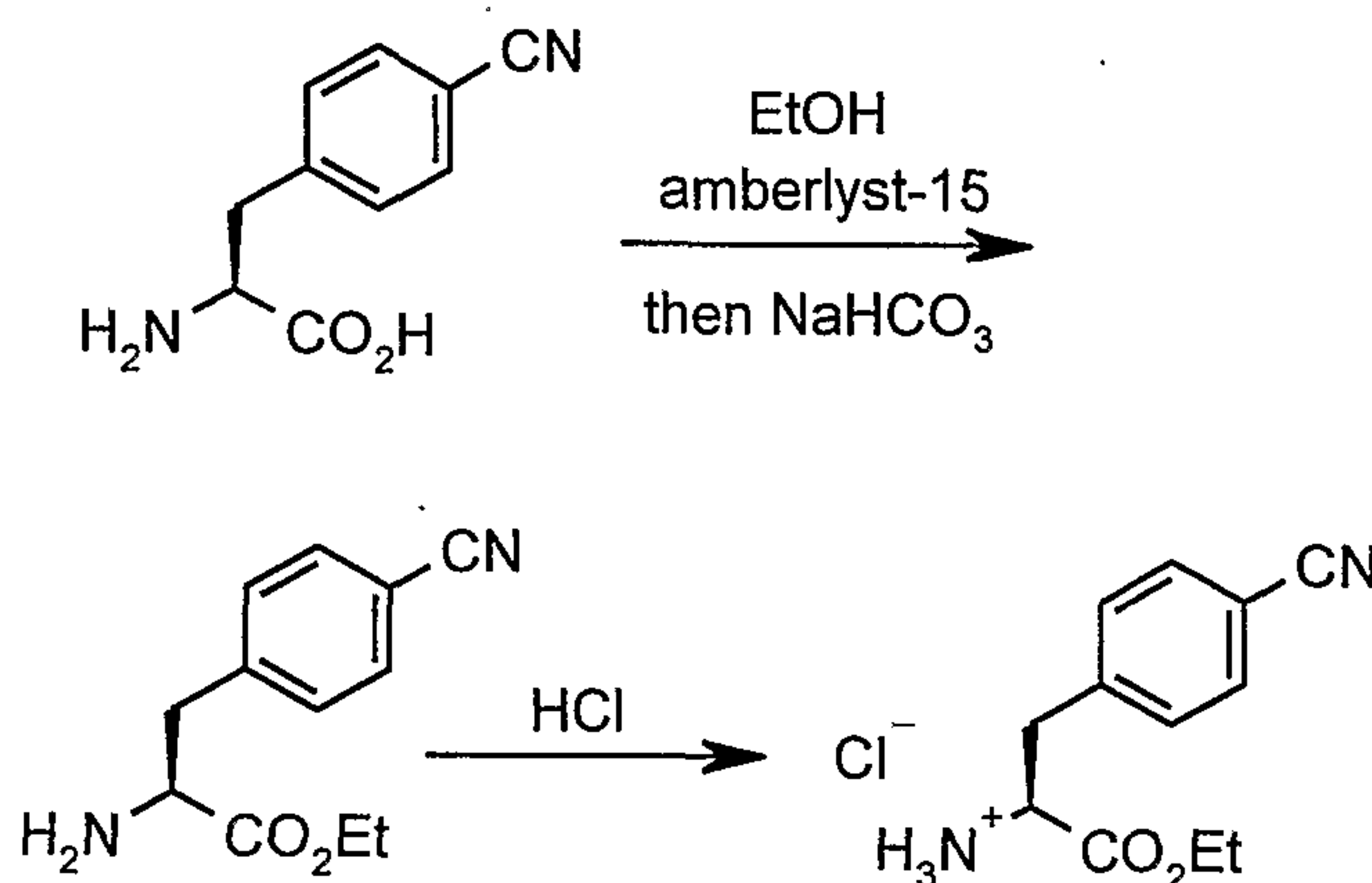
In a similar fashion, the tyrosine phenolic group could be alkylated with ethyl 4-bromopyruvate or methyl 5-bromovalerate to give inhibitors with homologated alkylcarboxyl chains.

Example 10 (Entry 16017, Table 16)

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)methanoyl]amino]-3-[4-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)phenyl]propionic acid:



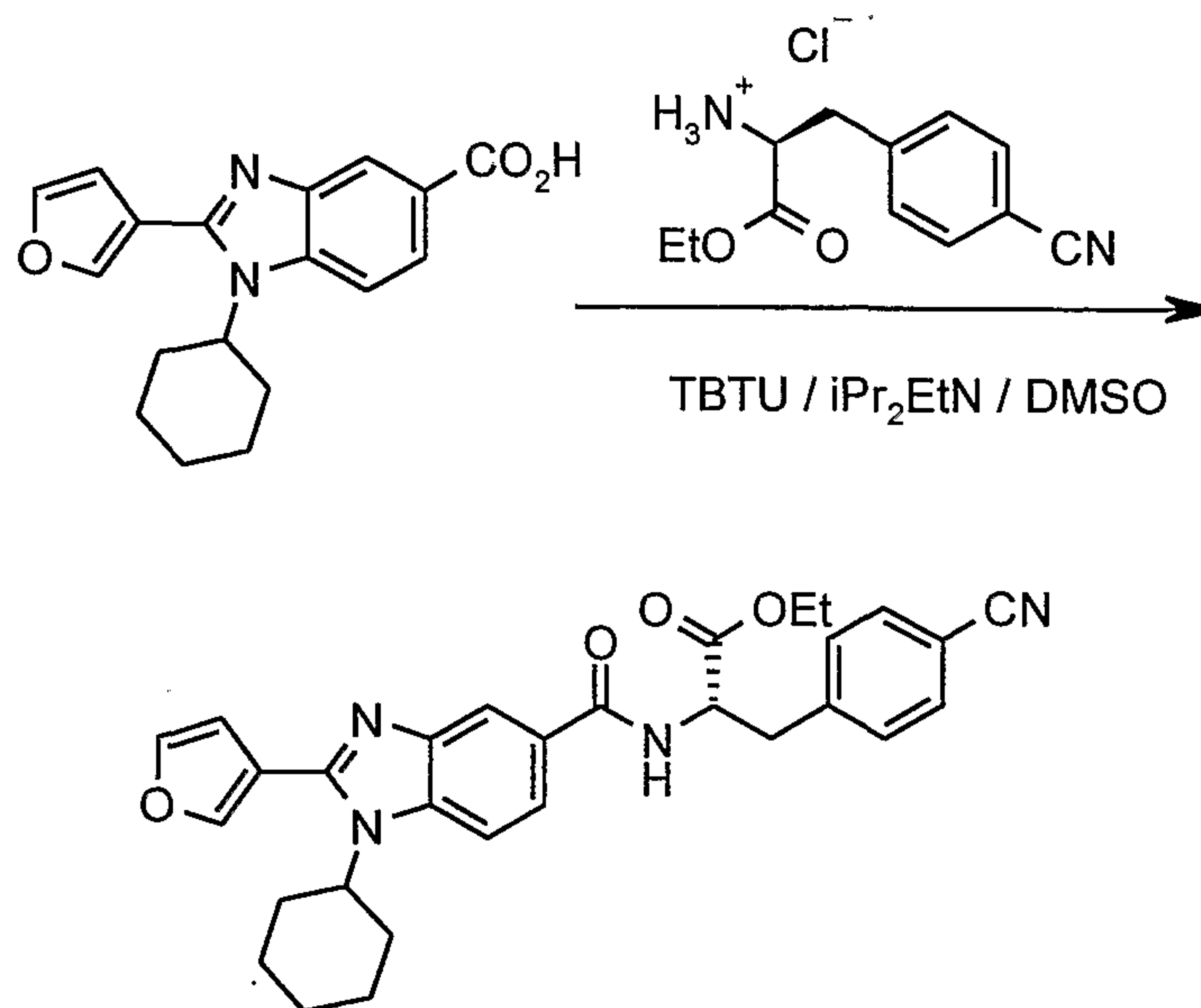
(S)-4-Cyanophenylalanine ethyl ester hydrochloride:



(S)-4-Cyanophenylalanine (0.630 g, 3.31 mmol) was suspended in EtOH (25 mL) and amberlyst-15 ion-exchange resin (10 g) was added. The mixture was stirred for two days at room temperature and quenched by addition of 10% aqueous NaHCO₃ (50 mL). The mixture was extracted twice with DCM (50 mL) and the organic extract dried over MgSO₄. Hydrogen chloride in Et₂O (1 M, 10 mL) was added and volatiles

removed under reduced pressure to give (S)-4-cyanophenylalanine ethyl ester hydrochloride as a white solid (0.800 g, 94% yield).

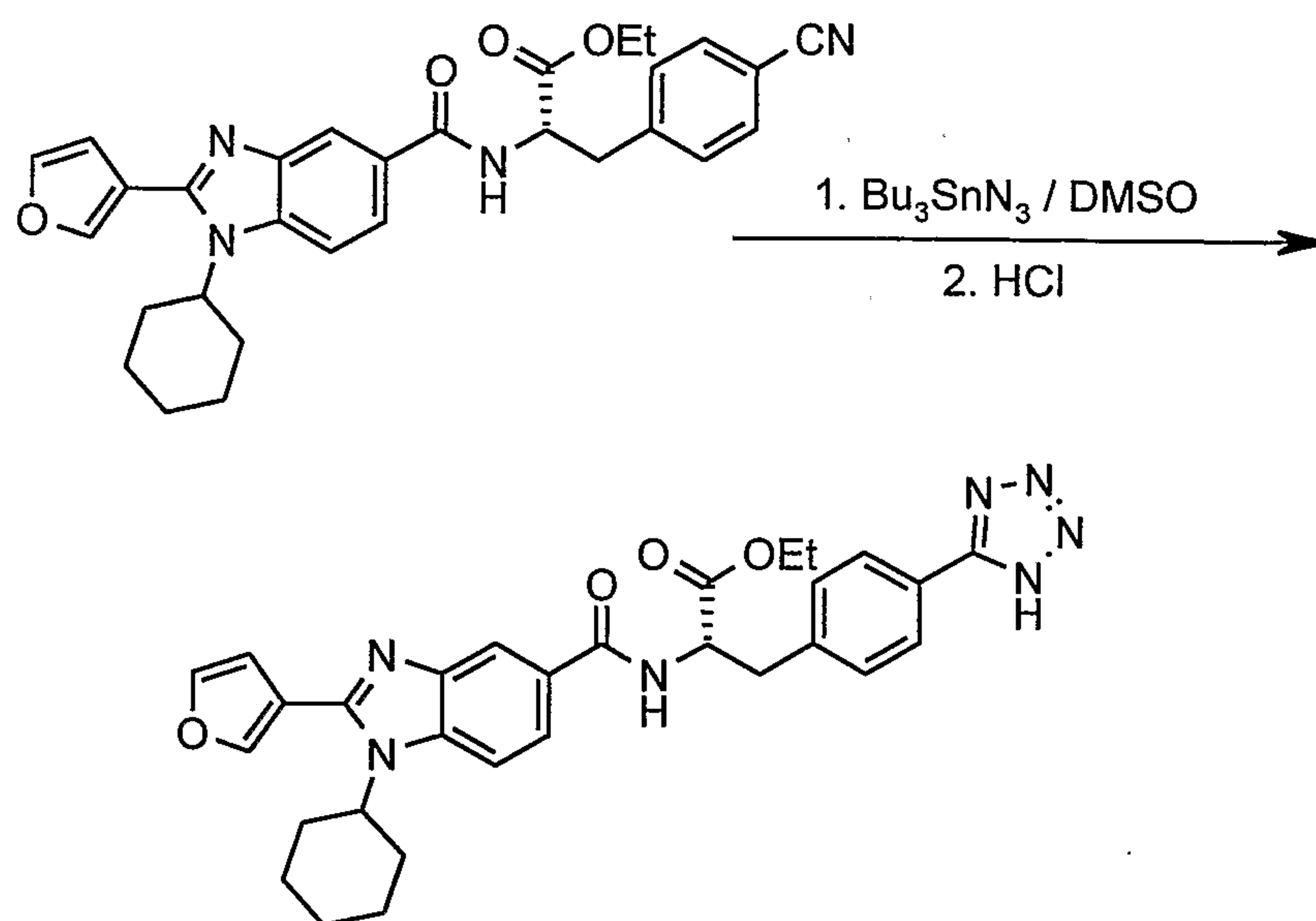
5 **(S)-3-(4-Cyanophenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]amino}propionic acid ethyl ester:**



The carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.060 g, 0.20 mmol) and TBTU (1.3 equiv., 0.26 mmol, 0.084 g) were dissolved in DMSO (0.6 mL) and DIEA (5 equiv., 1.0 mmol, 0.18 mL) was added followed by (S)-4-cyanophenylalanine ethyl ester hydrochloride (1.3 equiv., 0.26 mmol, 0.065 g). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 h and quenched with water. The precipitated solid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried. The title amide (0.081 g) was obtained as a beige solid.

15 **(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)methanoyl]amino}3-[4-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)phenyl]propionic acid ethyl ester:**

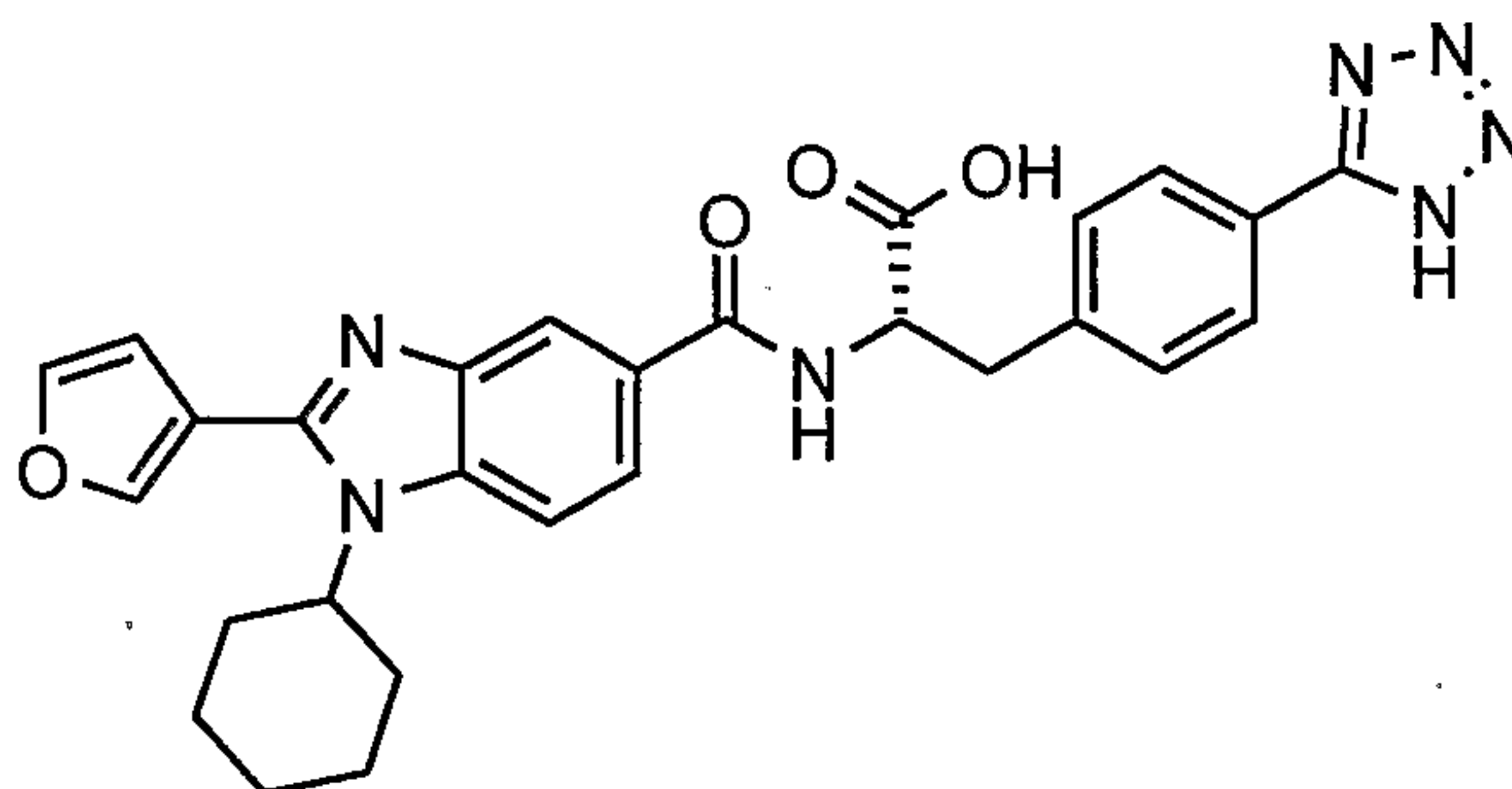
62



(S)-3-(4-Cyanophenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid ethyl ester from above (0.260 g, 0.51 mmol) and tributyltin azide (4 equiv., 2.0 mmol, 0.650 g) were dissolved in DMSO (2 mL) and the solution stirred at 80 °C for 48 h. The reaction was then quenched with 1 N HCl (10 mL) and stirred for an additional 40 min. The aqueous phase was decanted and the oily residue dissolved in DMSO and purified by reversed-phase HPLC using 0.1% TFA – 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile gradients to give after lyophilisation, the TFA salt of the title compound as a white amorphous solid (97 mg).

10

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]methanoyl]amino}-3-[4-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)phenyl]propionic acid:



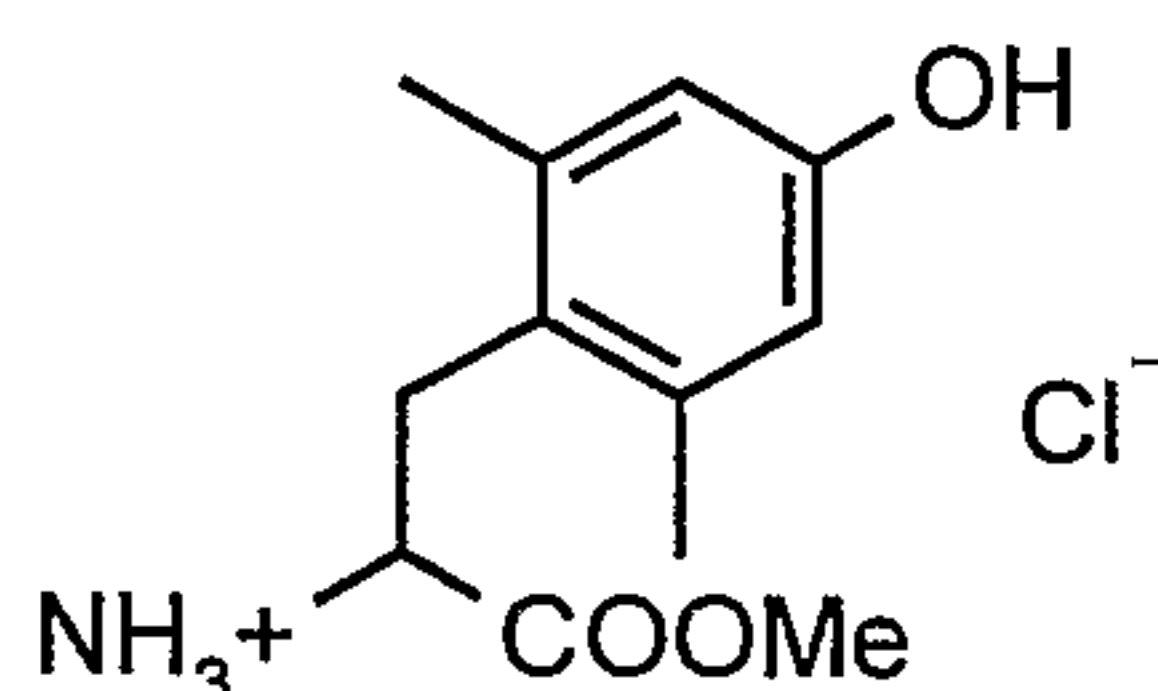
The ethyl ester prepared as above (0.16 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and aqueous KOH was added (pH 10). After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, the mixture was acidified with TFA and the precipitate collected by filtration. The

15

product was purified by reversed-phase HPLC using 0.1% TFA – 0.1% TFA in acetonitrile gradients to give after lyophilisation, the TFA salt of the title compound as a white amorphous solid (15 mg).

5 **Example 11**

2,6-Dimethyl-DL-tyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride:

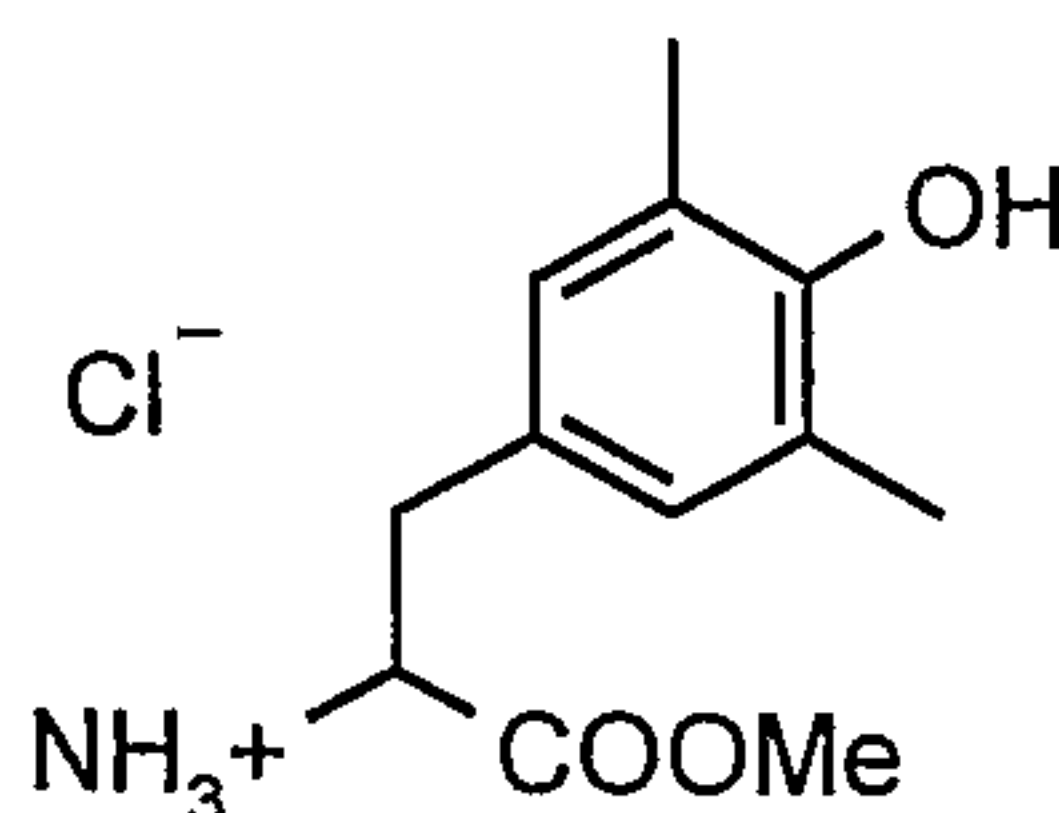


The amino acid of example 11 was prepared in racemic form following the procedure of Dygos et al. (*Synthesis* **1992**, 741). Bis(1,5-cyclooctadiene)rhodium (I) trifluoromethanesulfonate was used as catalyst and 1,2-bis(diphenylphosphino)ethane as ligand for the hydrogenation step. The amino acid was converted to its methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner (MeOH / SOCl_2). This amino acid derivative was used to prepare inhibitors in the usual manner.

15

Example 12

3,5-Dimethyl-DL-tyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride:

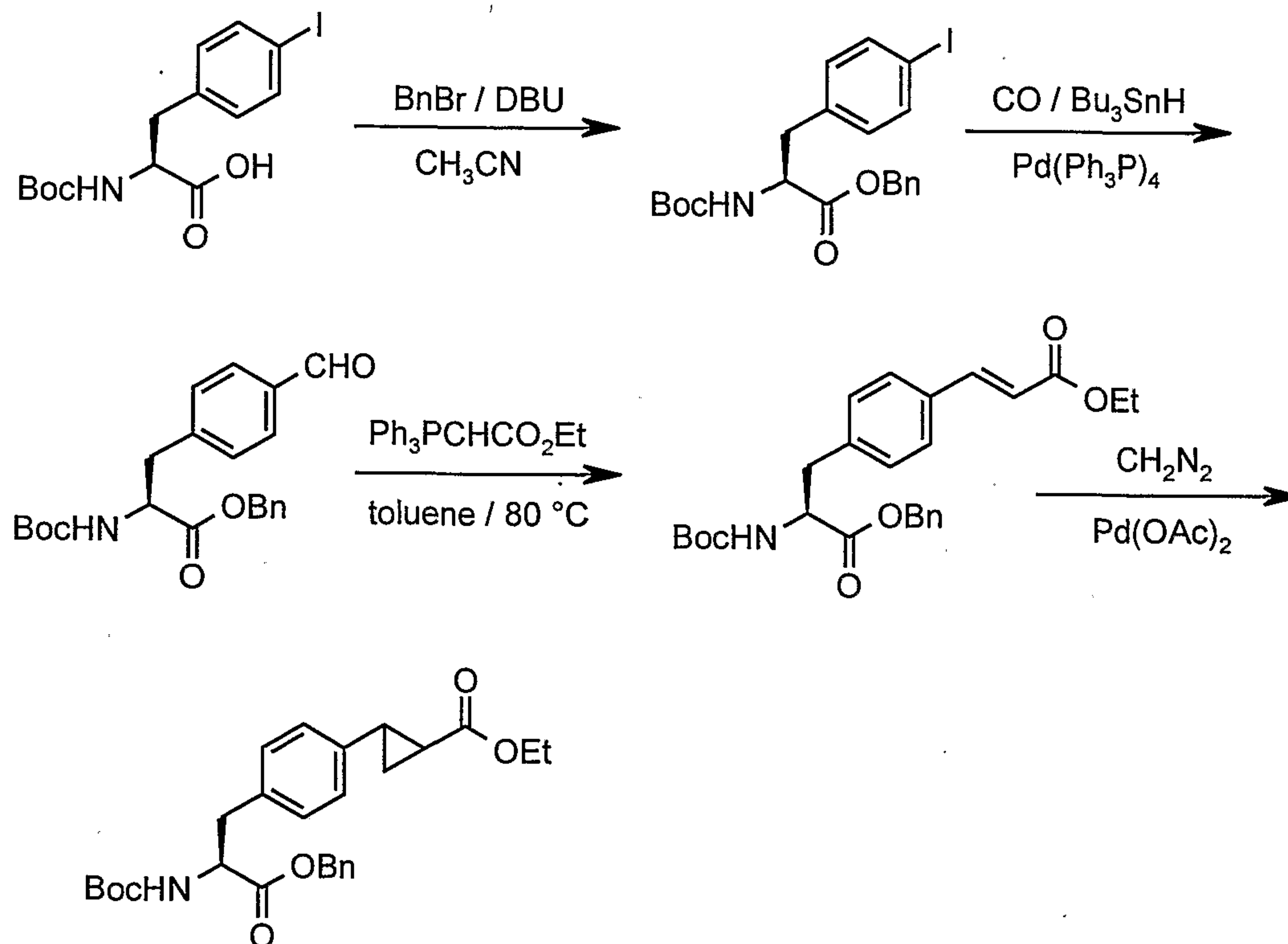


This compound was prepared from 2,6-dimethyl-4-iodophenol, using the procedure described for example 11.

20

Example 13

***N-Boc-4-(2-Carboethoxyethenyl)-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester and
N-Boc-4-(2-Carboethoxycyclopropyl)-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester:***



5 ***N-Boc-4-Iodo-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester:***

N-Boc-4-iodophenylalanine was dissolved in acetonitrile and DBU (1 equivalent) was added followed by benzyl bromide (1 equivalent). The mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature. After removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in EtOAc and the solution washed with 10% aqueous HCl and water. Drying (MgSO₄) and concentration under reduced pressure gave a crude product that was purified by crystallization from hexane.

10

N-Boc-4-Formyl-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester:

The iodo derivative from above (6.16 g, 12.8 mmol) was dissolved in dry THF (50 mL). The system was purged with carbon monoxide gas.

15

Tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (300 mg) was added and the mixture stirred for 10 min at room temperature, and then brought to 50 °C. Tributyltin hydride (4.10 g, 14 mmol) in THF (20 mL) was added drop-wise over 2.5 h while CO gas was

slowly bubbled through the solution. After completion, THF was removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash chromatography using 20% EtOAc in hexane as eluent. The title compound was obtained as a tan-colored solid (4.33 g, 88% yield).

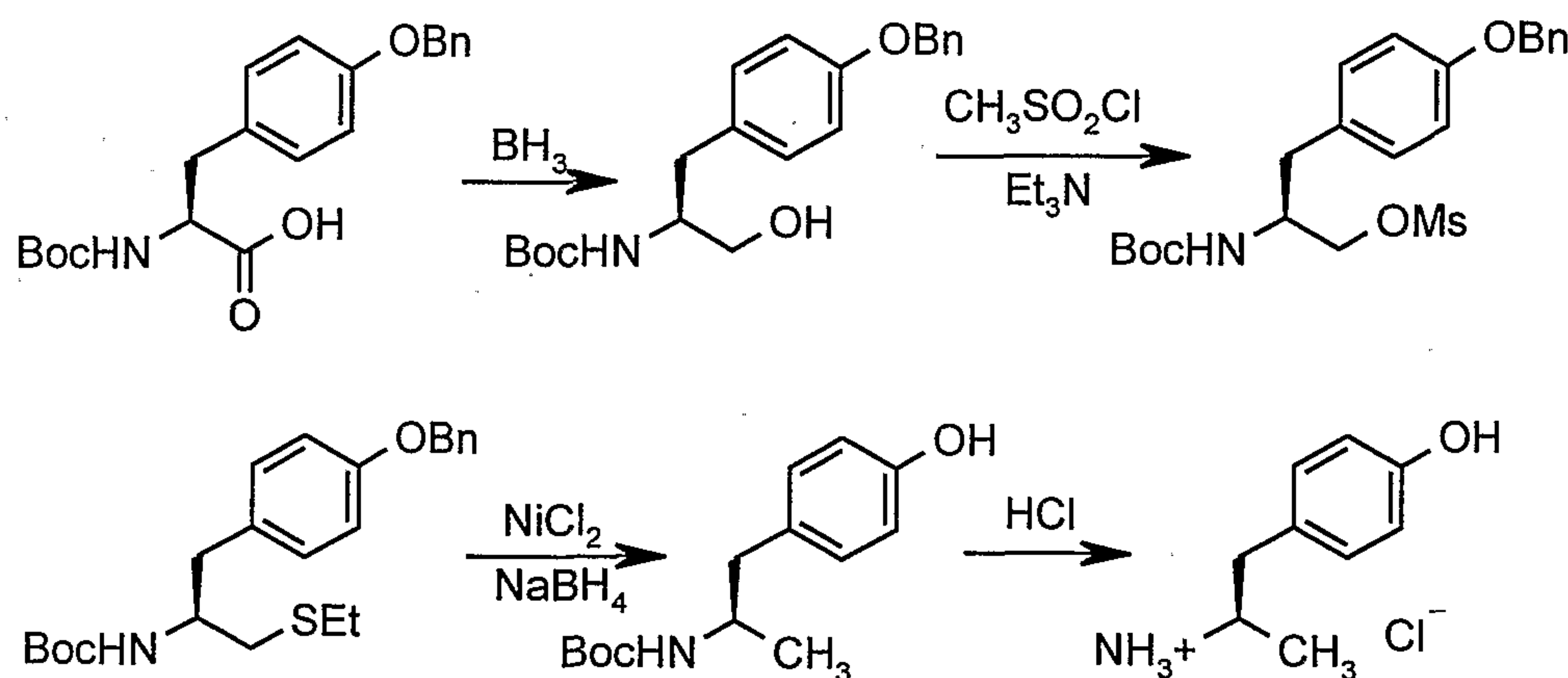
5

(E)-3-[4-((S)-2-Benzoyloxycarbonyl-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl)-phenyl]-acrylic acid ethyl ester:

The aldehyde from above (0.500 g, 1.3 mmol) and (carbethoxymethylene) triphenylphosphorane (0.905 g, 2.60 mmol) were suspended in toluene (4 mL) and
10 the mixture heated to 80 °C for 2 h. Toluene was removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using 30-50% EtOAc in hexane as eluent. The unsaturated ester was obtained as a solid in quantitative yield.

15 ***2-[4-((S)-2-Benzoyloxycarbonyl-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl)-phenyl]-cyclopropane carboxylic acid ethyl ester:***

The ester from above (0.040 g, 0.088 mmol) was dissolved in 1:1 DCM- Et₂O (0.5 mL) and palladium acetate (10 mg) was added. The solution was cooled to -5 °C and excess diazomethane in Et₂O was added slowly. After stirring for 15 min, the
20 solution was flushed with air, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The title compound was obtained in quantitative yield.

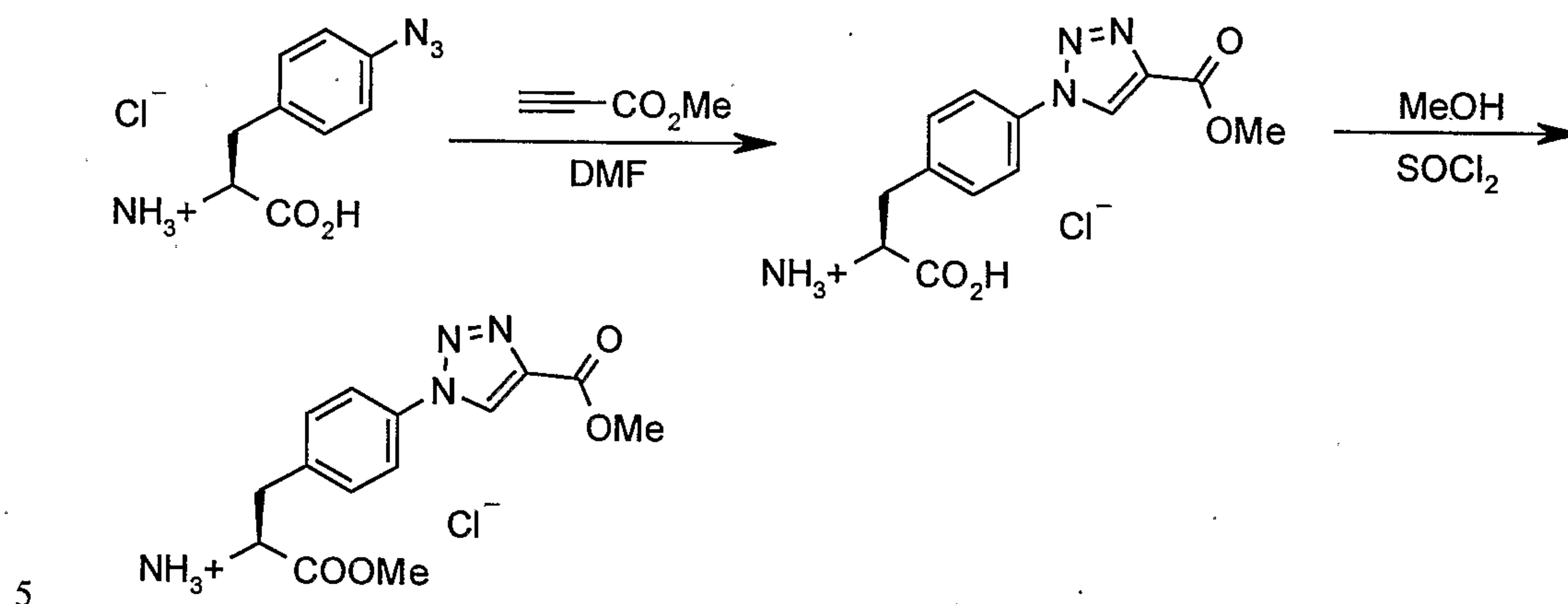
Example 14**(R)-2-(4-Hydroxyphenyl)-1-methyl-ethyl-ammonium chloride:**

N-Boc-(O-benzyl)-L-tyrosine was reduced to the corresponding amino alcohol,
 5 converted to the mesylate and then the ethyl sulfide, following the procedure of
 Donner (*Tetrahedron Lett.* **1995**, 36, 1223). The ethyl sulfide was reduced to a
 methyl group using nickel boride according to Euerby and Waigh (*Synth. Commun.*
1986, 16, 779). The O-benzyl protecting group was also cleaved in this step.

The N-Boc protecting group was removed with hydrogen chloride to give the crude
 10 amine hydrochloride salt that was used without purification.

Example 15

(S)-1-Methoxycarbonyl-2-[4-(4-methoxycarbonyl-[1,2,3]triazol-1-yl)-phenyl]-ethyl ammonium chloride:

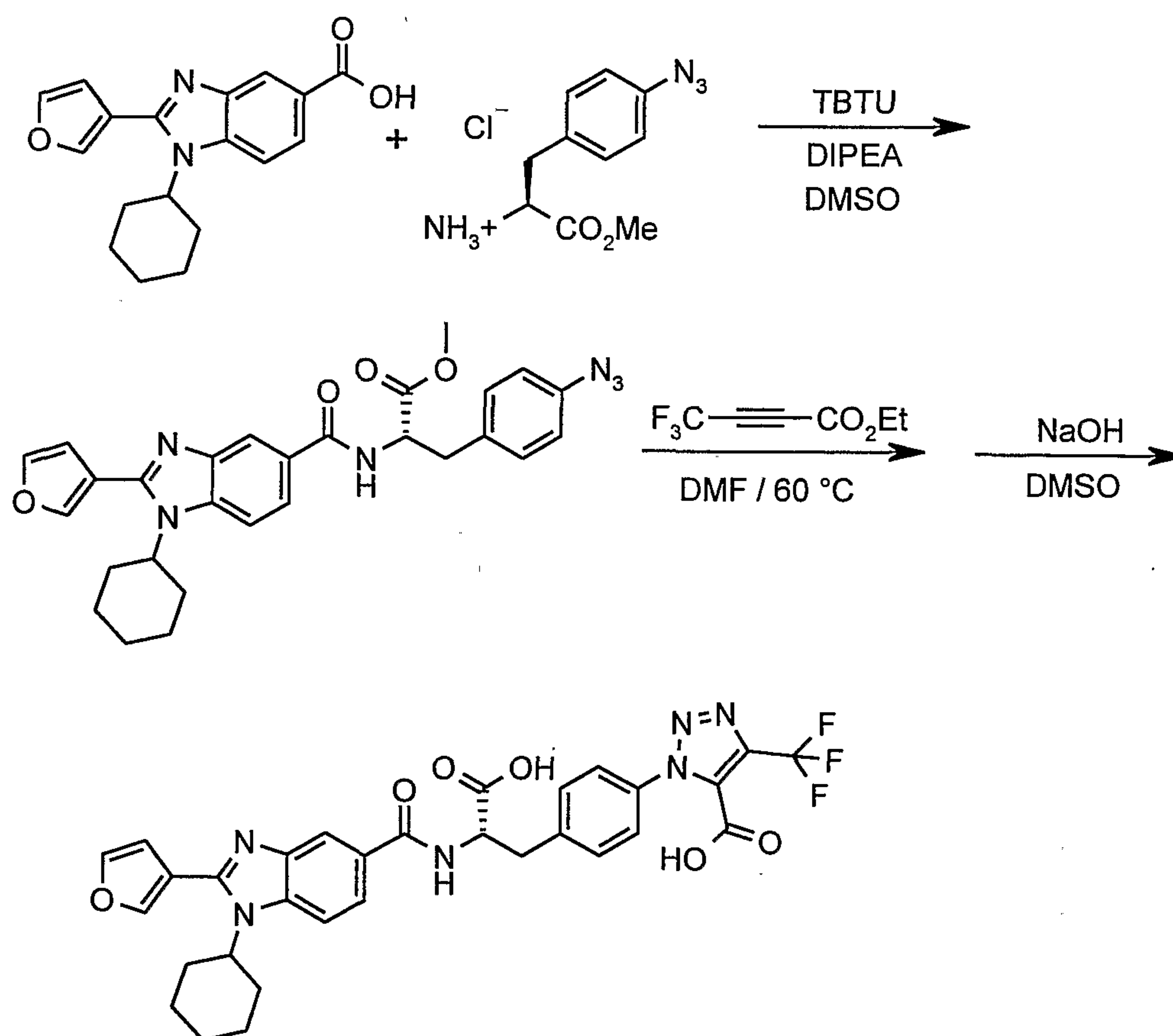


4-Azido-L-phenylalanine hydrochloride (0.242 g, 1 mmol) was dissolved in dry DMF (1 mL) and methyl propiolate (0.420 g, 5 mmol) was added. The suspension was stirred 24 h at 45 °C. After cooling to room temperature, the solid was filtered, washed with EtOAc and dried (175 mg). The material was suspended in MeOH (15 mL) and thionyl chloride (0.5 mL) was added drop-wise. The mixture was refluxed for 3 h, cooled and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with ether to give the title compound as a white solid (175 mg, 53% yield).

Example 16 (Entry 1083, Table 1)

15 **[4-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]aminoethyl)-phenyl]-trifluoromethyl-3H-[1,2,3]triazole-4-carboxylic acid:**

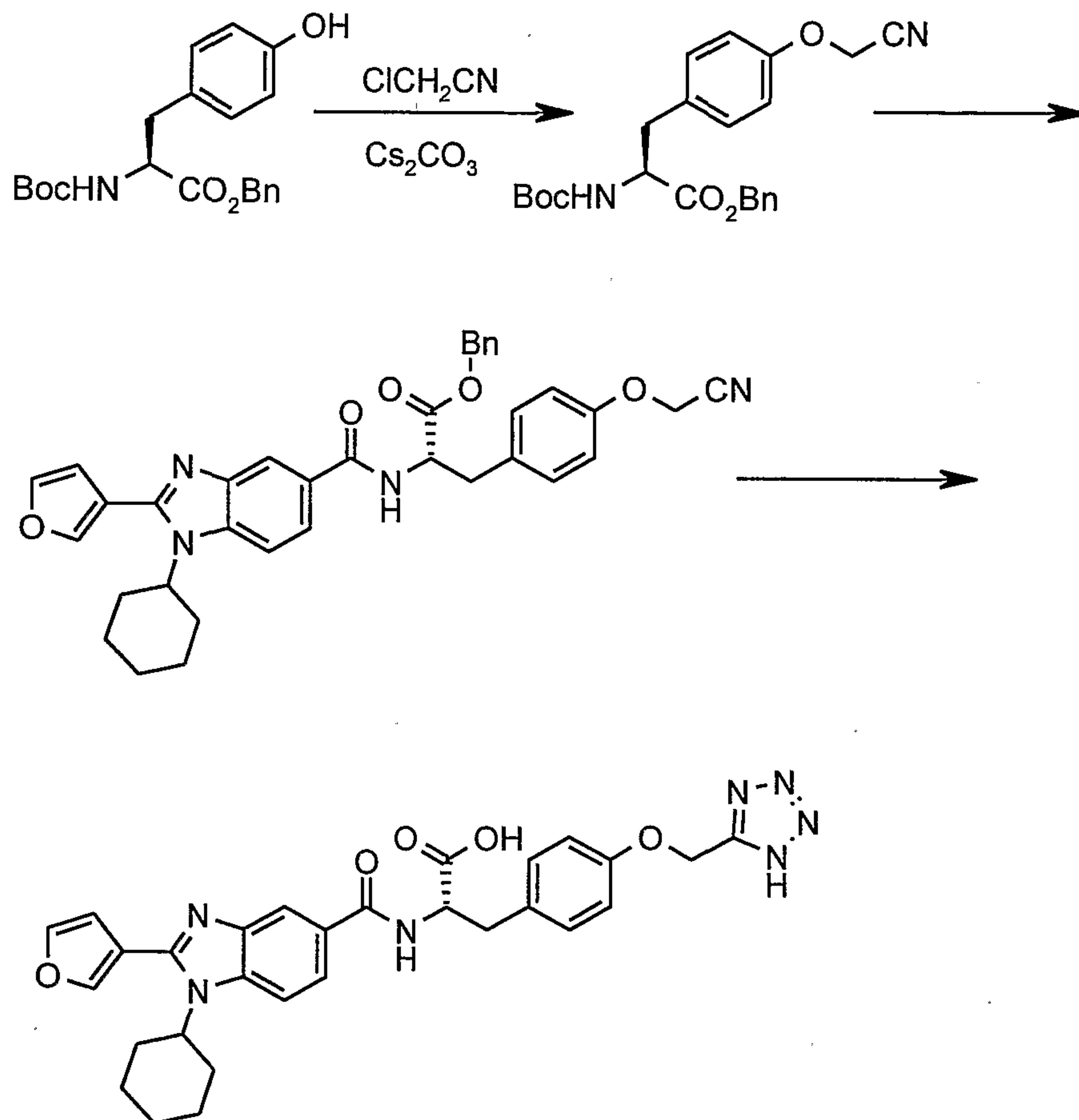
68



The carboxylic acid of example 2 was coupled to 4-azido-L-phenylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride using the usual procedure. The resulting amide derivative (0.020 g, 0.039 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (0.3 mL) and ethyl 4,4,4-trifluoro-2-butynoate (0.014 g, 0.084 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred overnight at 60 °C. The reaction mixture was then evaporated under high vacuum and the residue dissolved in DMSO (0.3 mL). Aqueous 5 N NaOH (0.2 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The title compound was isolated by preparative HPLC of the reaction mixture.

Example 17 (Entry 16022, Table 16)

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-3-[4-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethoxy)-phenyl]-propionic acid :



5 **(S)-2-tert-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-cyanomethoxyphenyl)-propionic acid benzyl ester:**

N-Boc-L-tyrosine benzyl ester (0.371 g, 1 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (5 mL) and cesium carbonate (0.650 g, 2 mmol) was added followed by chloroacetonitrile (0.150 g, 2 mmol). The mixture was then reflux for 2 h. The reaction was cooled to
 10 room temperature and insoluble salts removed by filtration using acetone for washings. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in DCM. The solution was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give the desired product as an oil (450 mg).

15 **Coupling with carboxylic acid of Example 2:**

The above ester was stirred for 1 h in 4 N HCl-dioxane. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue triturated with Et₂O to give the amine hydrochloride salt as a tan-colored solid (350 mg).

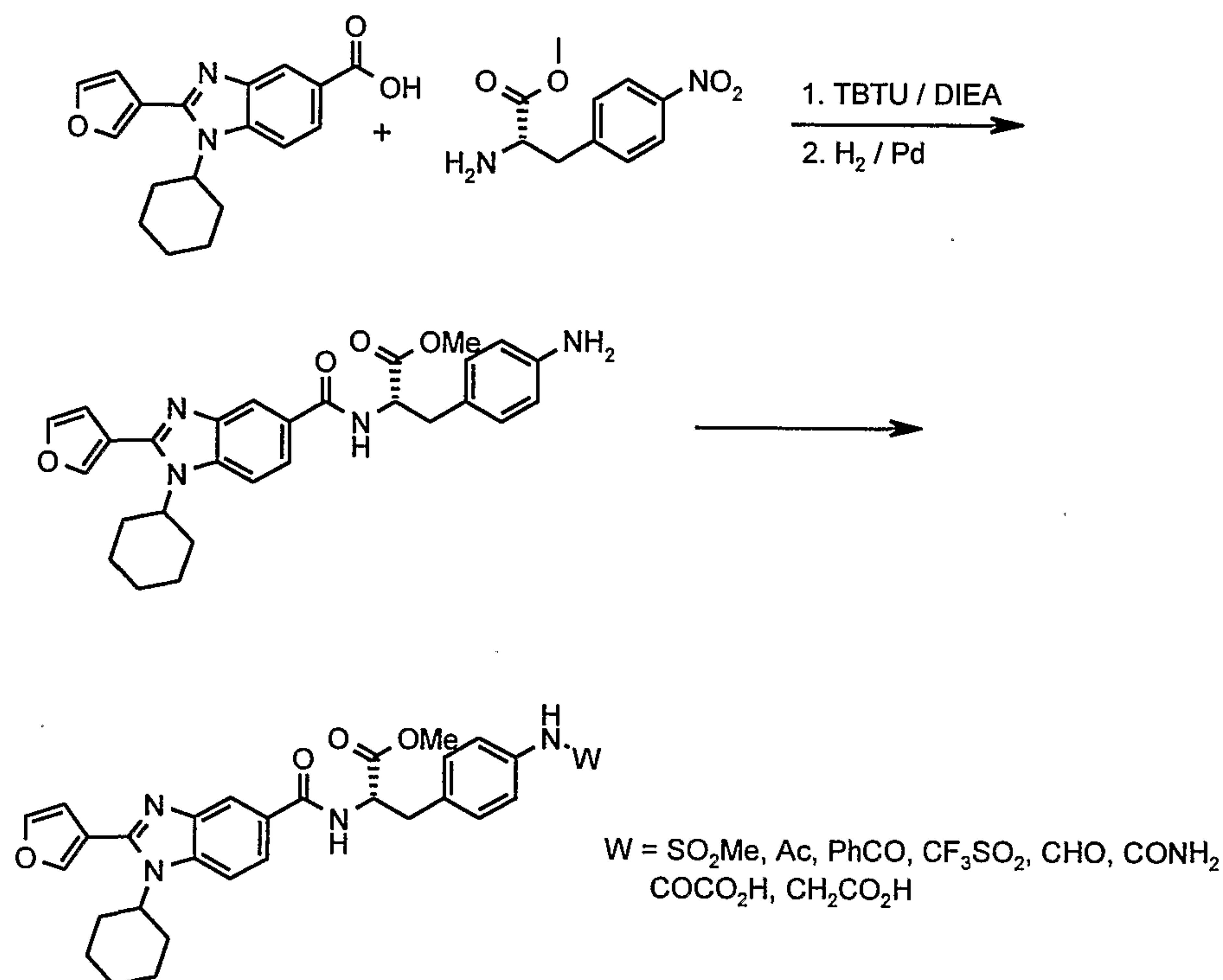
5 The hydrochloride salt (0.080 g, 0.26 mmol) was added to a mixture of the carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.060 g, 0.2 mmol), TBTU (0.080 g, 0.26 mmol) and DIPEA (150 µL) in DMSO (0.9 mL). The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature and then poured into water. The precipitated material was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried. It was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel using EtOAc as eluent, to give the desired amide derivative (50 mg).

10

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[4-(1H-tetrazol-5-ylmethoxy)-phenyl]-propionic acid :

The cyano derivative from above (0.040 g, 0.066 mmol) and tributyltin azide (300 mg) were dissolved in DMSO (0.5 mL) and the mixture stirred at 80 °C for 24 h. 15 Aqueous 6 N HCl (1 mL) was added and the mixture stirred for 1 h at room temperature. The mixture was basified to pH 10 with 5 N NaOH, and after stirring for 30 min, the solution was acidified with TFA and the precipitated material collected by filtration. The title compound was isolated by preparative HPLC (6.6 mg).

20

Example 18**4-Aminophenylalanine derivatives:**

5 **(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(4-nitrophenyl)-propionic acid methyl ester:**

The carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.500 g, 1.61 mmol), TBTU (0.621 g, 1.94 mmol) and 4-nitro-L-phenylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride (0.461 g, 1.77 mmol) were dissolved in DMSO (2.0 mL) and DIEA (6.44 mmol, 1.12 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature (HPLC: complete). The reaction mixture was added drop-wise with stirring to a mixture of water (45 mL) and AcOH (0.8 mL). The precipitate that formed was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried (0.768 g, 92% yield).

15 **(S)-3-(4-Aminophenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid methyl ester:**

The nitro derivative from above (0.765 g, 1.48 mmol) was hydrogenated in MeOH (25 mL) over 10% palladium on carbon (150 mg) under 1 atm H₂ for 6 h (HPLC:

complete). The catalyst was removed by filtration and volatiles removed under vacuum to give the desired aniline in quantitative yield as a greenish-brown solid.

(Entry 16032, Table 16): (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(4-methanesulfonylaminophenyl)-propionic acid (W = SO₂CH₃):

The aniline derivative from above (0.050 g, 0.10 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (5 mL). DIEA (1.1 equivalent, 0.11 mmol, μ L) was added and the solution cooled in ice. Methanesulfonyl chloride (1.1 equivalent, 0.11 mmol, 9 μ L) was added. Stir 1 h at 0 °C. Add DIEA (20 μ L) and methanesulfonyl chloride (4 μ L) and stir an additional h at room temperature. Evaporate DCM under reduced pressure and dissolved residue in DMSO (1.4 mL). 2.5 N Aqueous NaOH (200 μ L) was added and the mixture stirred 1 h at room temperature (hydrolysis of methyl ester complete by HPLC). TFA (100 μ L) was added, the solution was filtered and the product isolated by prep HPLC (17 mg).

(Entry 16031, Table 16): (S)-3-(4-Acetylaminophenyl)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (W = COCH₃):

The procedure described above was followed, using acetyl chloride as acylating agent.

(Entry 1080, Table 1): (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]amino]-3-{4-[(1-phenylmethanoyl)-amino]-phenyl}-propionic acid (W = CPh):

The procedure described above was followed, using benzoyl chloride as acylating agent.

(Entry 16030, Table 16): (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]amino]-3-(4-trifluoromethanesulfonylaminophenyl)-propionic acid (W = SO₂CF₃):

The procedure described above was followed, using trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride as acylating agent.

(Entry 16009, Table 16): (S)-3{4-[(1-Carboxymethanoyl)amino]phenyl}-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (W = COCO₂H):

- 5 The procedure described above was followed, using methyloxalyl chloride as acylating agent.

(Entry 16028, Table 16): (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(4-formylaminophenyl)-propionic acid (W = CHO):

- 10 The aniline derivative described at the start of example 18 (0.050 g, 0.103 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (1 mL) and methyl formate (300 µL) was added. The mixture was stirred for 48h at 50 °C (HPLC indicates 75% conversion). Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in a mixture of DMSO (1 mL) and 2.5 N NaOH (200 µL). After stirring for 1 h at room
15 temperature, TFA (100 µL) was added and the product isolated by prep HPLC (16 mg).

(Entry 16026, Table 16): (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(4-ureidophenyl)-propionic acid (W = CONH₂):

- 20 The aniline derivative described at the start of example 18 (0.050 g, 0.103 mmol) was dissolved in AcOH (0.5 mL) and KOCN (3 equivalent, 0.309 mmol, 0.024 g) was added. The mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature (HPLC: complete). Volatiles were removed under vacuo and the residue was dissolved in a mixture of DMSO (0.5 mL) and 2.5 N NaOH (200 µL). The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room
25 temperature and TFA (100 µL) was added. The product was isolated by Prep HPLC (22 mg).

(Entry 16010, Table 16): (S)-3-[4-(Carboxymethylamino)phenyl]-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (W = CH₂CO₂H):

30

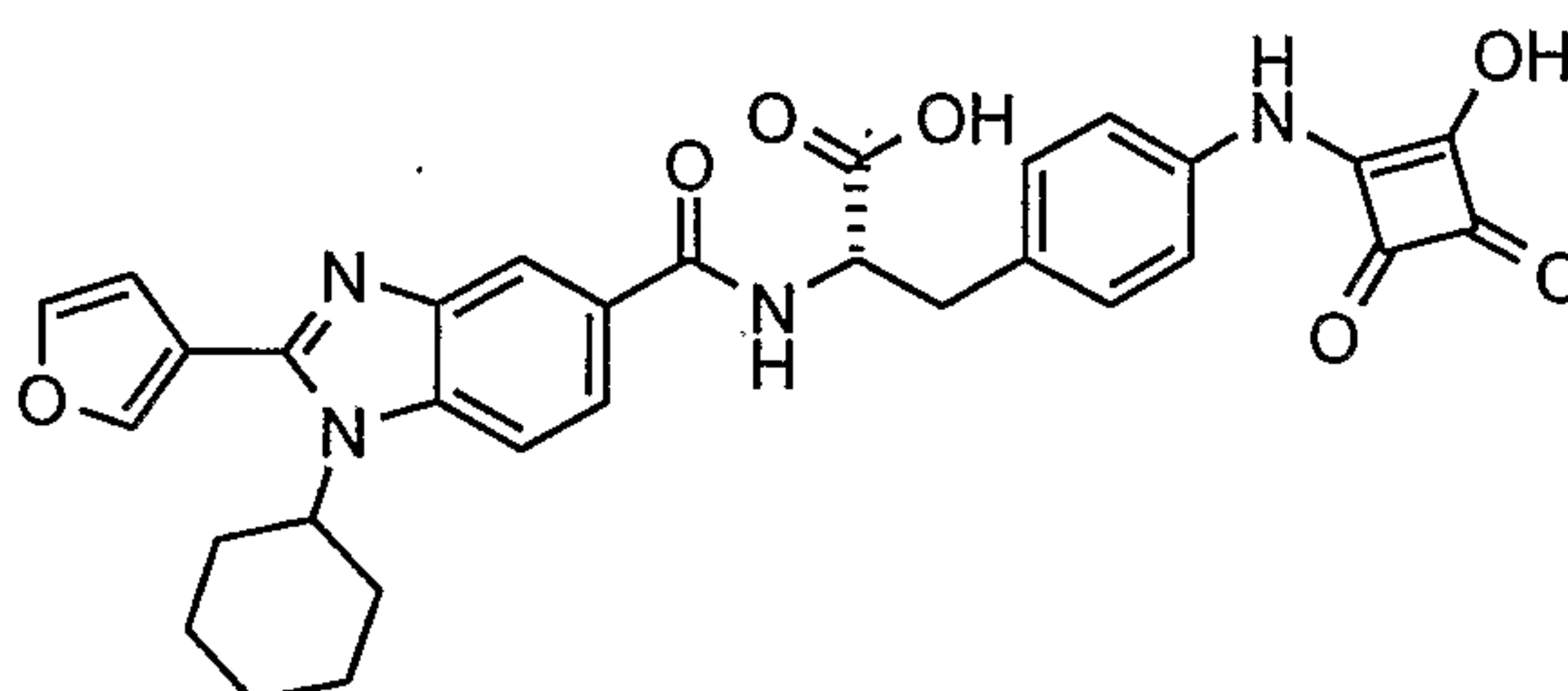
The aniline derivative described at the start of example 18 (0.040 g, 0.082 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of DCM (2 mL) and DMSO (0.5 mL). DIEA (2 equivalent, 0.16 mmol, 29 µL) and methyl bromoacetate (1.1 equivalent, 0.09 mmol, 9 µL) were

then added and the mixture stirred 48 h at room temperature. DCM was removed under reduced pressure and 5 N NaOH (50 μ L) was added. After stirring for 0.5 h at room temperature, the reaction mixture was acidified with TFA (50 μ L) and the product was isolated by prep HPLC (7 mg).

5

Example 19 (Entry 16029, Table 16)

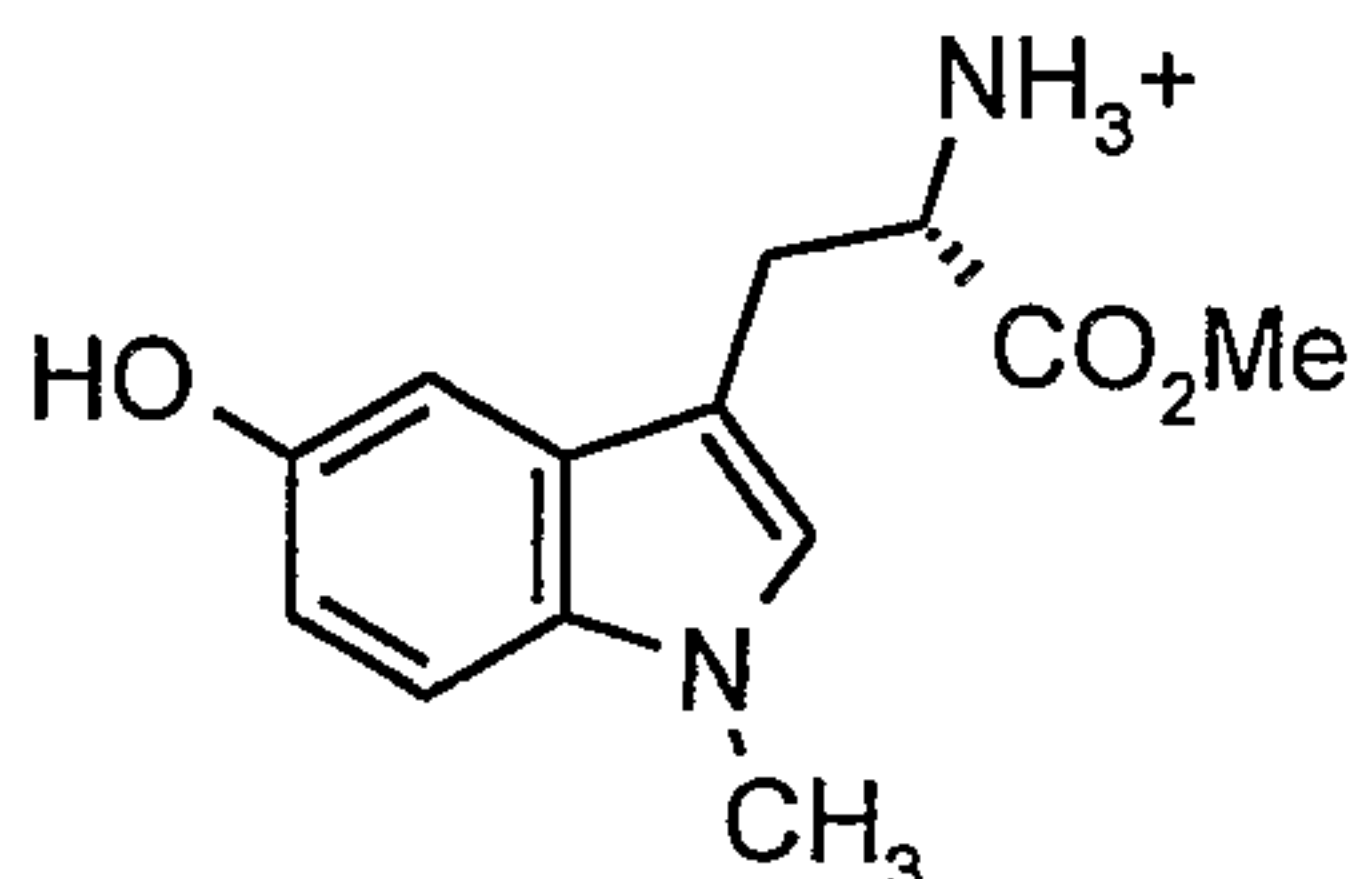
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]amino]-3-[4-(2-hydroxy-3,4-dioxocyclobut-1-enylamino)-phenyl]-propionic acid:



- 10 The aniline of example 17 (0.050 g, 0.103 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (2 mL) and 3,4-dimethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (3 equivalents, 0.31 mmol, 0.044 g) was added. The mixture was refluxed for 2 h (HPLC: complete). MeOH was removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by prep HPLC. The most polar component was isolated (corresponds to the methyl ester on the amino acid
- 15 carboxyl group) and stirred with DMSO (0.5 mL) and 2.5 N NaOH (200 μ L) for 0.5 h. TFA (100 μ L) was added and the desired compound of example 19 was isolated by prep HPLC.

Example 20 (Entry 11021, Table 11)

- 20 **(S)-2-(5-Hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl-ammonium chloride and (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3(5-hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid):**



5-Benzoyloxy-1-methylindole:

5-benzyloxyindole (2.00 g, 8.96 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (20 mL) and the solution cooled in ice. Sodium hydride (60% oil dispersion, 1.2 equivalent, 10.7 mmol, 0.43 g) was added and the mixture stirred for 30 min. Iodomethane (1.2 equivalent, 10.7 mmol, 0.67 mL) was added and the reaction stirred at room temperature overnight. The reaction was then poured into water (150 mL) and the precipitated solid collected by filtration. After washing with water and drying, 5-benzyloxy-1-methylindole (1.913 g, 90% yield) was obtained as a white solid.

10 **(S)-2-(5-Hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl-ammonium chloride:**

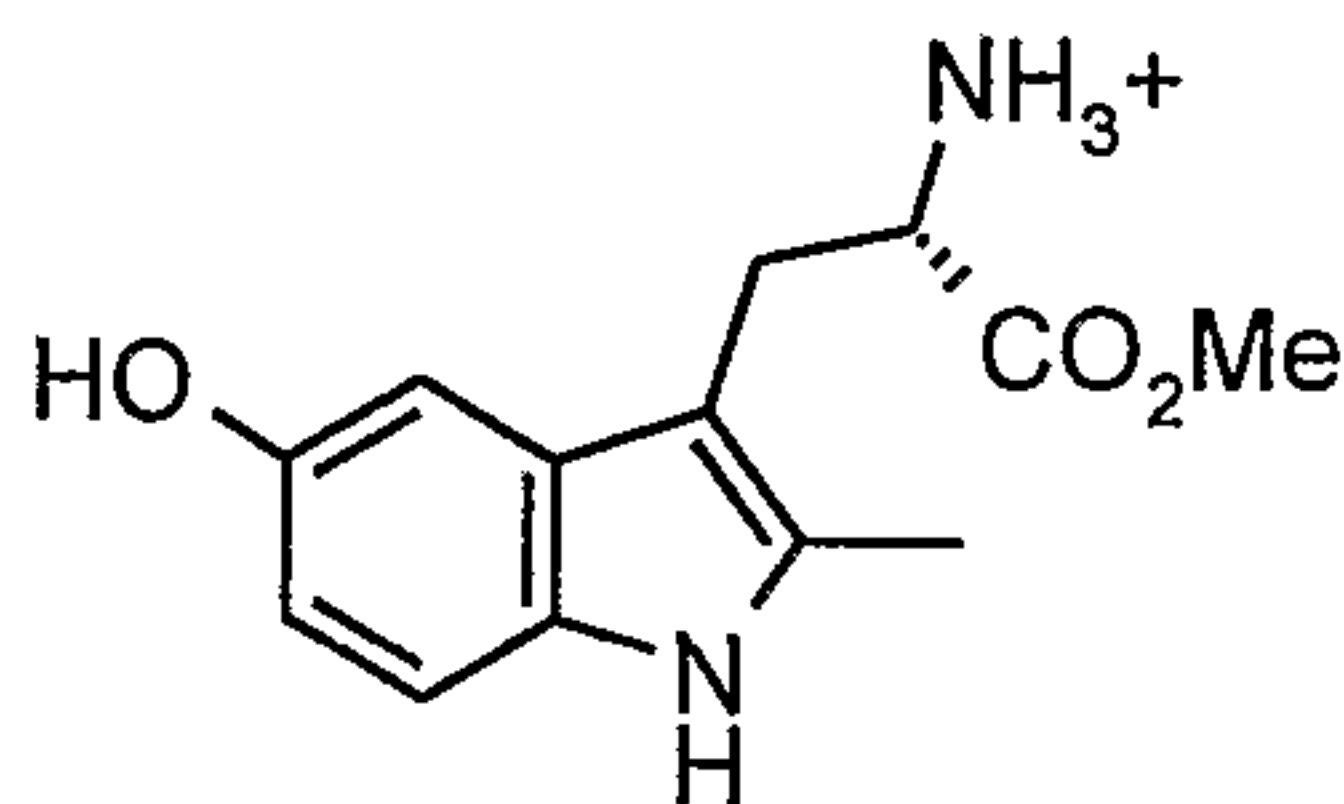
Following the procedure of Bennani et al. (*Synlett* **1998**, 754), 5-benzyloxy-1-methylindole was converted to the N-Cbz protected tryptophan benzyl ester derivative in 20% yield: MS (ES⁺) *m/z* 549 (MH⁺). Protecting groups were removed by hydrogenolysis in MeOH over 10% palladium under 1 atm H₂ and the free amino acid converted to the corresponding methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner using MeOH / thionyl chloride.

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3(5-hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid :

20 The above tryptophan derivative was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2 to give the title compound after hydrolysis of the methyl ester.

Example 21 (Entry 11020, Table 11)

(S)-2-(5-Hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl-ammonium chloride and (S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid:



(S)-2-(5-Hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl-ammonium chloride:

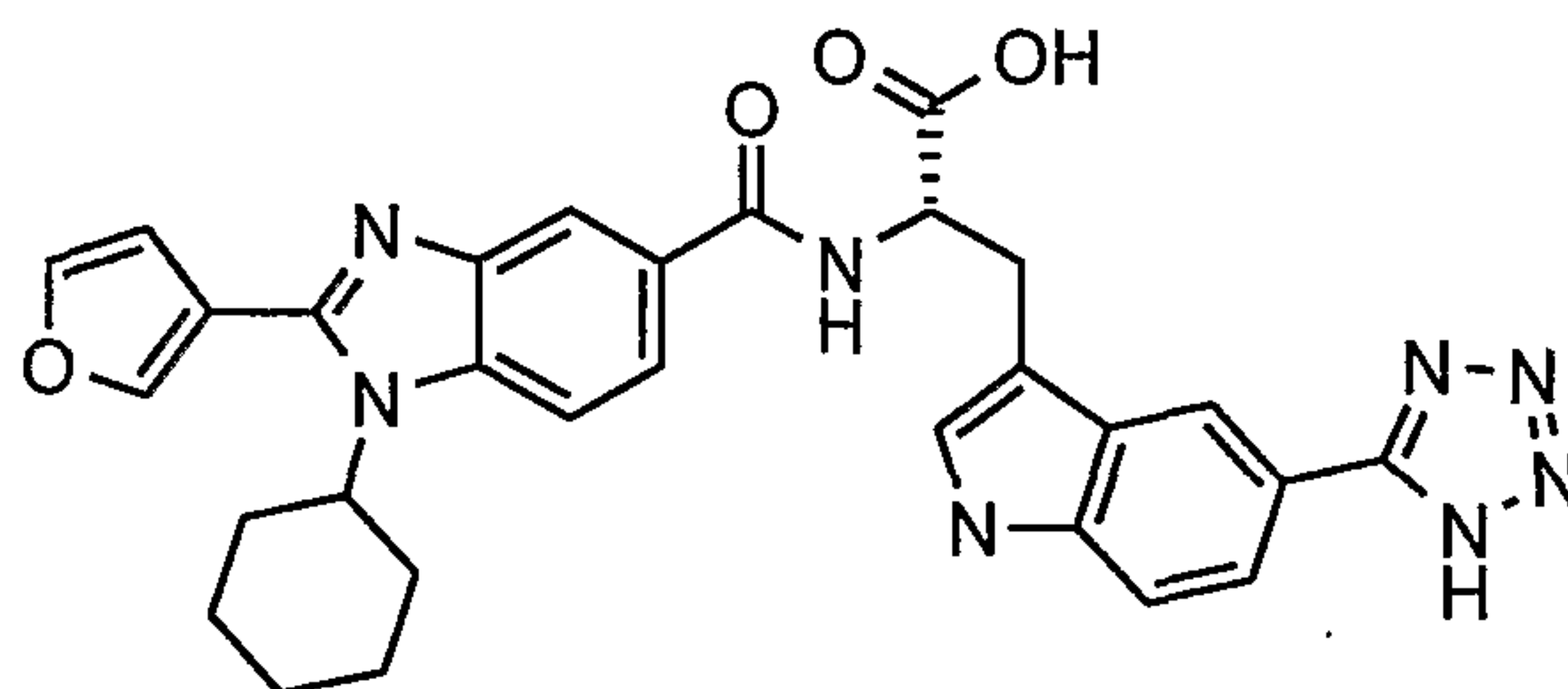
Ethyl 5-hydroxy-2-methyl-3-carboxylate was converted to the 5-benzyloxy derivative (benzyl chloride / K₂CO₃ / acetonitrile) and decarboxylated to give 5-benzyloxy-2-methylindole (R. V. Heinzelman et al., *J. Org. Chem.* **1960**, 25, 1548) which was then was converted to the corresponding tryptophan derivative as described for example 20.

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-hydroxy-2-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid :

The above tryptophan derivative was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2 to give the title compound after hydrolysis of the methyl ester.

Example 22 (Entry 11022, Table 11)

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[5-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-1H-indol-3-yl]-propionic acid:



(S)-5-Cyanotryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride was prepared according to the procedure of Dua and Phillips (*Tetrahedron Lett.* **1992**, 33, 29), and coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The cyano group was then converted into the corresponding tetrazole as described in example 10 and the title compound was isolated in the usual manner.

Example 23

3-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxylic acid (Entry 24, Table 1) and

(S)-3-(5-carbamoyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 11019, Table 11):

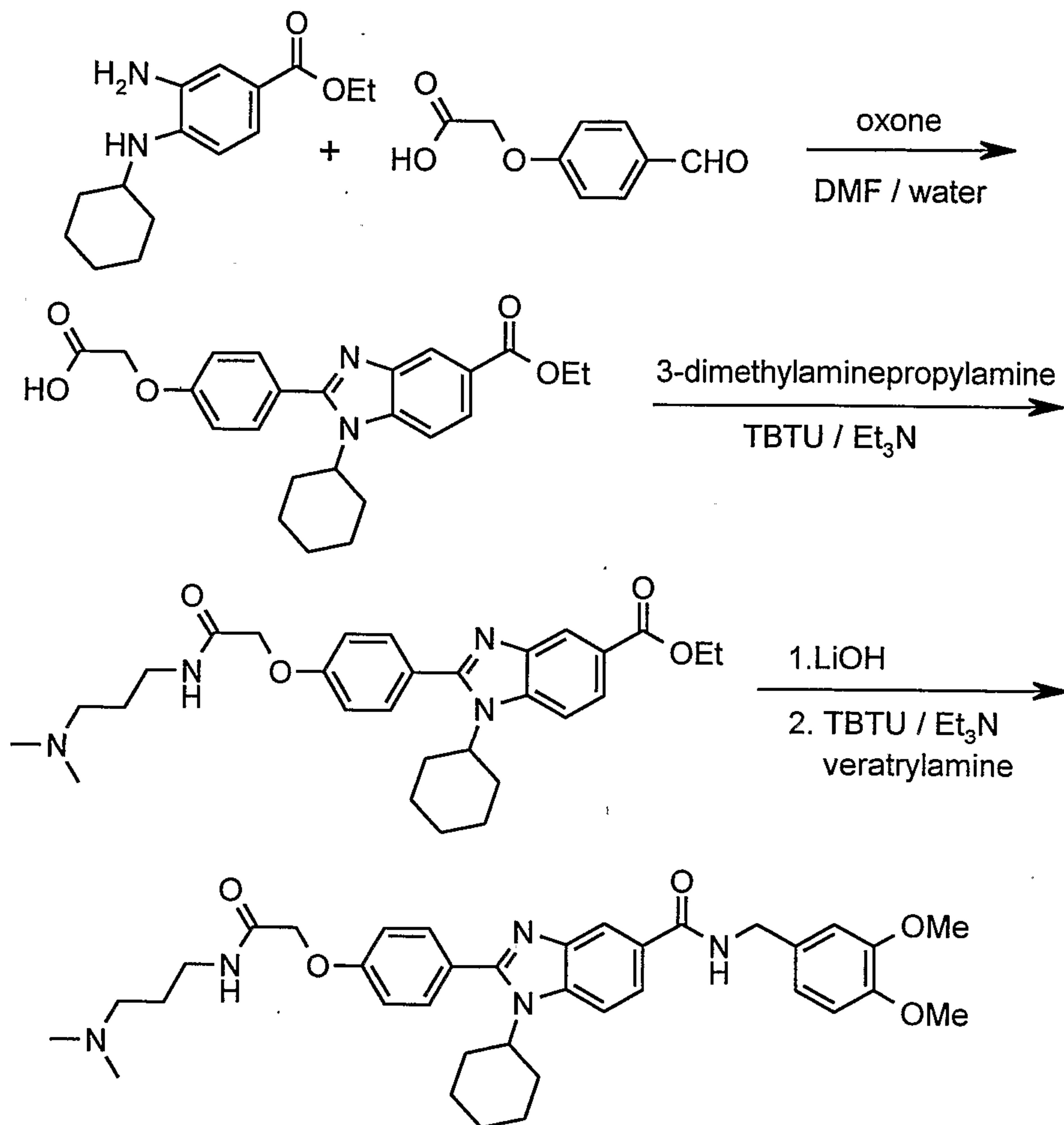
(S)-3-(1-Acetyl-5-cyano-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid methyl ester was prepared following the procedure of Dua and Phillips (*Tetrahedron Lett.* **1992**, 33, 29). The cyano derivative was stirred at 80 °C for 18 h with concentrated HCl. Removal of the volatiles under reduced pressure gave a 2:1 mixture of 5-carboxytryptophan and 5-tryptophan carboxamide. The mixture was converted to the methyl ester (MeOH / SOCl₂) and these were coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. After hydrolysis of the methyl esters, the title compounds were separated by prep HPLC.

3-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indole-5-carboxylic acid (Entry 11018, Table 11):

(S)-3-(5-carbamoyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 11019, Table 11):

Example 24 (Entry 2062, Table 2)

1-Cyclohexyl-2-{4-[(3-dimethylamino-propylcarbamoyl)-methoxy]-phenyl}-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl amide



2-(4-Carboxymethoxy-phenyl)-1-cyclohexyl-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid ethyl ester (Entry 11007, Table 11) :

Following the procedure of example 1, ethyl 3-amino-4-(aminocyclohexyl)benzoate (1.077 g, 4.1 mmol) and 4-formylphenoxyacetic acid (0.748 g, 4.15 mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of DMF (8 mL) and water (0.5 mL). Oxone® (0.7 equivalent, 2.87 mmol, 1.764 g) was added and the mixture stirred for 30 min at room temperature (HPLC: complete). Water was added to precipitate the product, which was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried (1.130g, 65% yield, brown solid).

1-Cyclohexyl-2-{4-[(3-dimethylamino-propylcarbamoyl)-methoxy]-phenyl}-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid ethyl ester :

The acid from above (0.975 g, 2.31 mmol), TBTU (0.963 g, 3.0 mmol) and triethylamine (0.98 mL, 7.0 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (4 mL) and 3-dimethylaminepropylamine (0.32 mL, 2.5 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 6 h at room temperature and quenched with 1 N NaOH (1 mL). Water was added and the product extracted with EtOAc. The extract was washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to a dark purple oil.

1-Cyclohexyl-2-{4-[(3-dimethylamino-propylcarbamoyl)-methoxy]-phenyl}-1H-benzoimidazole-5-carboxylic acid 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl amide (Entry 2062, Table 2) :

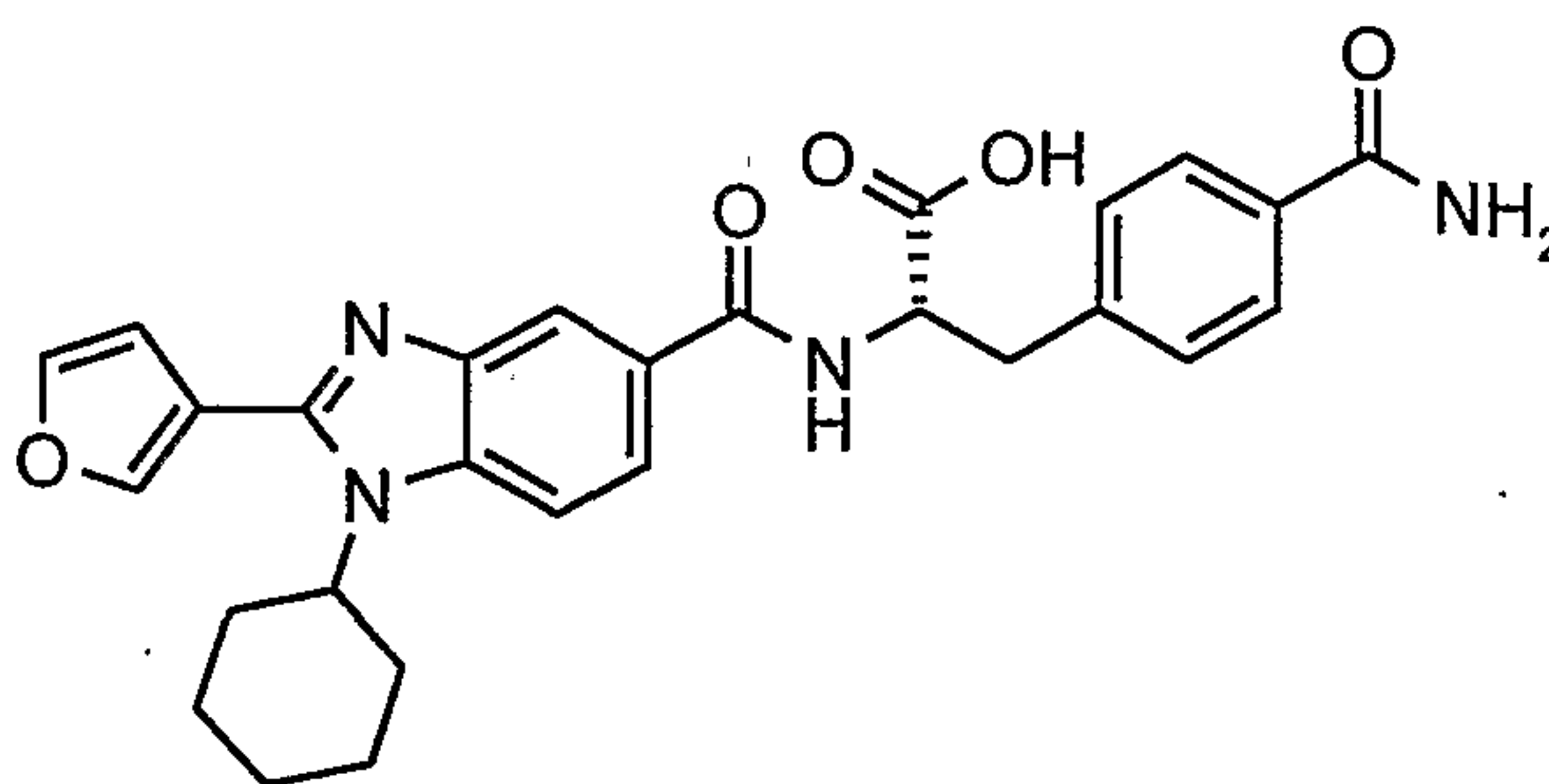
The above ethyl ester (0.598 g, 1.18 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH and 1 N LiOH (2 equivalent, 2.36 mmol, 2.36 mL) was added. The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature, volatiles removed under reduced pressure and the residue dried in vacuo at 45 °C.

The lithium salt from above (0.098 mmol) in DMSO (0.29 molar) was treated with TBTU (0.148 mmol, 0.047 g), triethylamine (0.197 mmol, 0.027 mL) and veratrylamine (0.108 mmol, 16 µL). The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature, poured into 0.5 N NaOH (10 mL) and extracted into EtOAc. The

extract was washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was purified by prep HPLC (29 mg).

Example 25 (Entry 16035, Table 16)

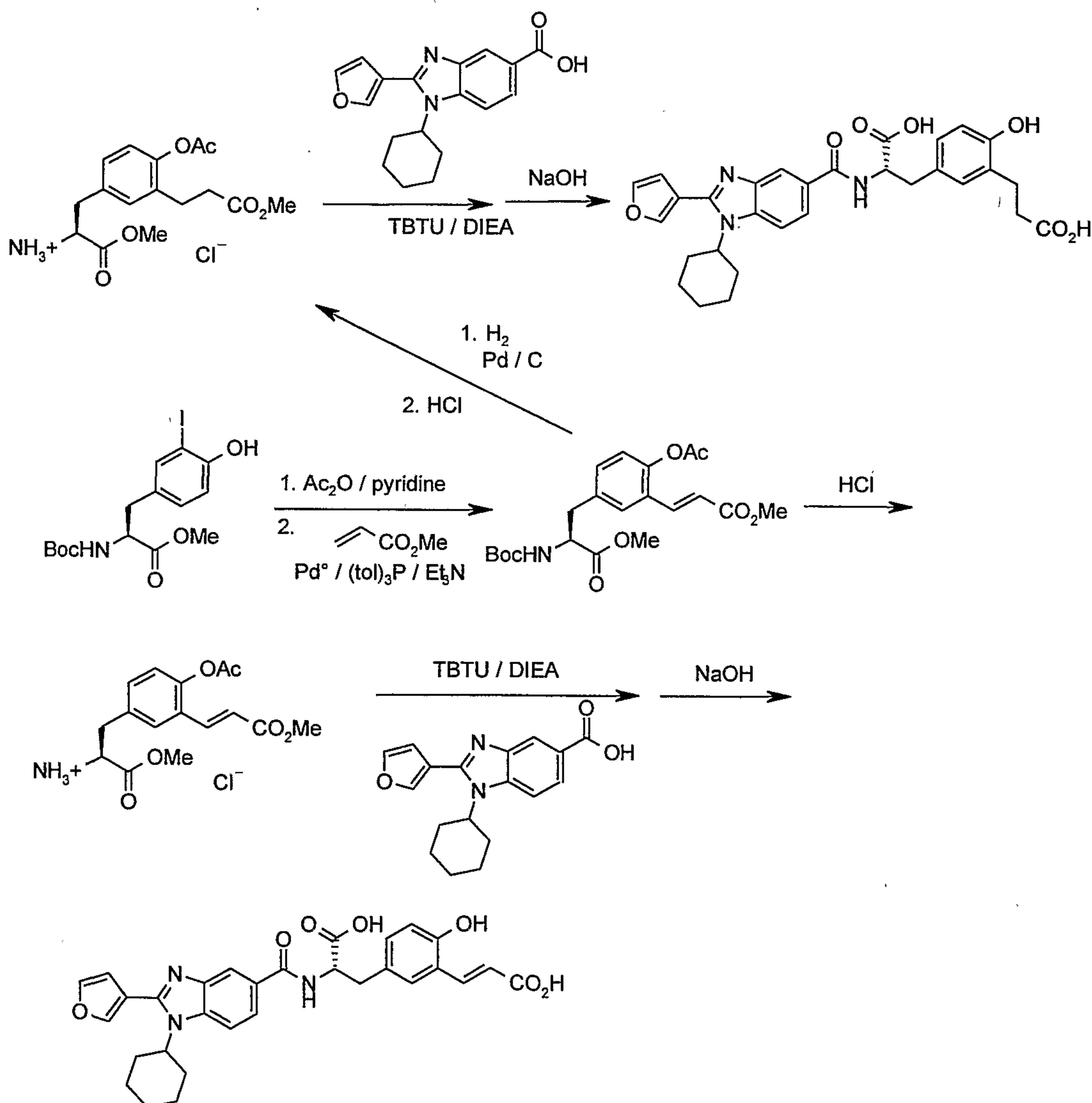
- 5 **(S)-3-(4-Carbamoyl-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid:**



- (S)-3-(4-Cyanophenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid ethyl ester from example 10 (0.120 g, 0.235 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of acetone (5 mL) and water (3 mL). Urea-hydrogen peroxide complex (1.0 mmol, 0.094 g) and potassium carbonate (10 mg) were added and the mixture stirred until completion (HPLC). The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in DMSO (1.5 mL) and 5 N NaOH (0.2 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, TFA (0.5 mL) was added and the product isolated by prep HPLC (18 mg).

Example 26

(E)-3-[5-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-2-hydroxyphenyl]-acrylic acid 26 (Entry 16064, Table 16) and (S)-3-[3-(2-carboxyethyl)-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 16065, Table 16):



(S)-3-(4-Acetoxy-3-iodo-phenyl)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid methyl ester:

- 3-Iodo-L-tyrosine was converted to the methyl ester and protected on nitrogen with a Boc group following standard procedures. The hydroxyl group was then acetylated with acetic anhydride in DMF, in the presence of DIEA.

(E)-3-[2-Acetoxy-5-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl)-phenyl]-acrylic acid methyl ester:

The iodo derivative from above (0.150 g, 0.32 mmol) was dissolved in MeCN (3 mL) and argon was bubbled through the solution for 15 min. Methyl acrylate (5
5 equivalent, 1.62 mmol, 146 μ L), tri-o-tolylphosphine (50 mg), racemic BINAP (50 mg), DIEA (2.6 equivalent, 0.84 mmol, 146 μ L) and palladium acetate (50 mg) were added and the mixture refluxed for 5 h. The reaction was cooled to room temperature and argon was bubbled again through the solution for 5 min. Fresh
10 portions of methyl acrylate (146 μ L), DIEA (146 μ L), tri-o-tolylphosphine (50 mg), racemic BINAP (50 mg) and palladium acetate (50 mg) were added and refluxing resumed for another 16 h. Volatiles were then removed under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in EtOAc. The solution was washed with 1 M KHSO₄, 5% NaHCO₃ and brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The product was purified by
15 flash chromatography using 10-25% EtOAc in hexane (122 mg, 90% yield).

(S)-3-[4-Acetoxy-3-(2-methoxycarbonyl-ethyl)-phenyl]-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid methyl ester:

The acrylate from above (0.060 g, 0.14 mmol) was hydrogenated in iPrOH (3 mL)
20 under 1 atm H₂ over 10% palladium on carbon (50 mg). After 16 h, the solution was filtered and volatiles removed under reduced pressure to give the saturated analogue (56 mg).

(E)-3-[5-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-{[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-2-hydroxyphenyl]-acrylic acid :

The acrylate derivative from above (0.060 g, 0.14 mmol) was stirred for 1 h in 4N HCl in dioxane (2 mL). Volatiles were then removed in vacuo and the residue dissolved in DMSO (1 mL). TBTU (1.5 equivalent, 0.067 mg, 0.21 mmol), DIEA (4
equivalent, 0.56 mmol, 97 μ L) and the carboxylic acid of example 2 (1.2 equivalent,
30 0.17 mmol, 0.052 g) were added and the mixture stirred for 1.5 h at room temperature. 2 N NaOH (200 μ L) and MeOH (400 μ L) were added and the mixture

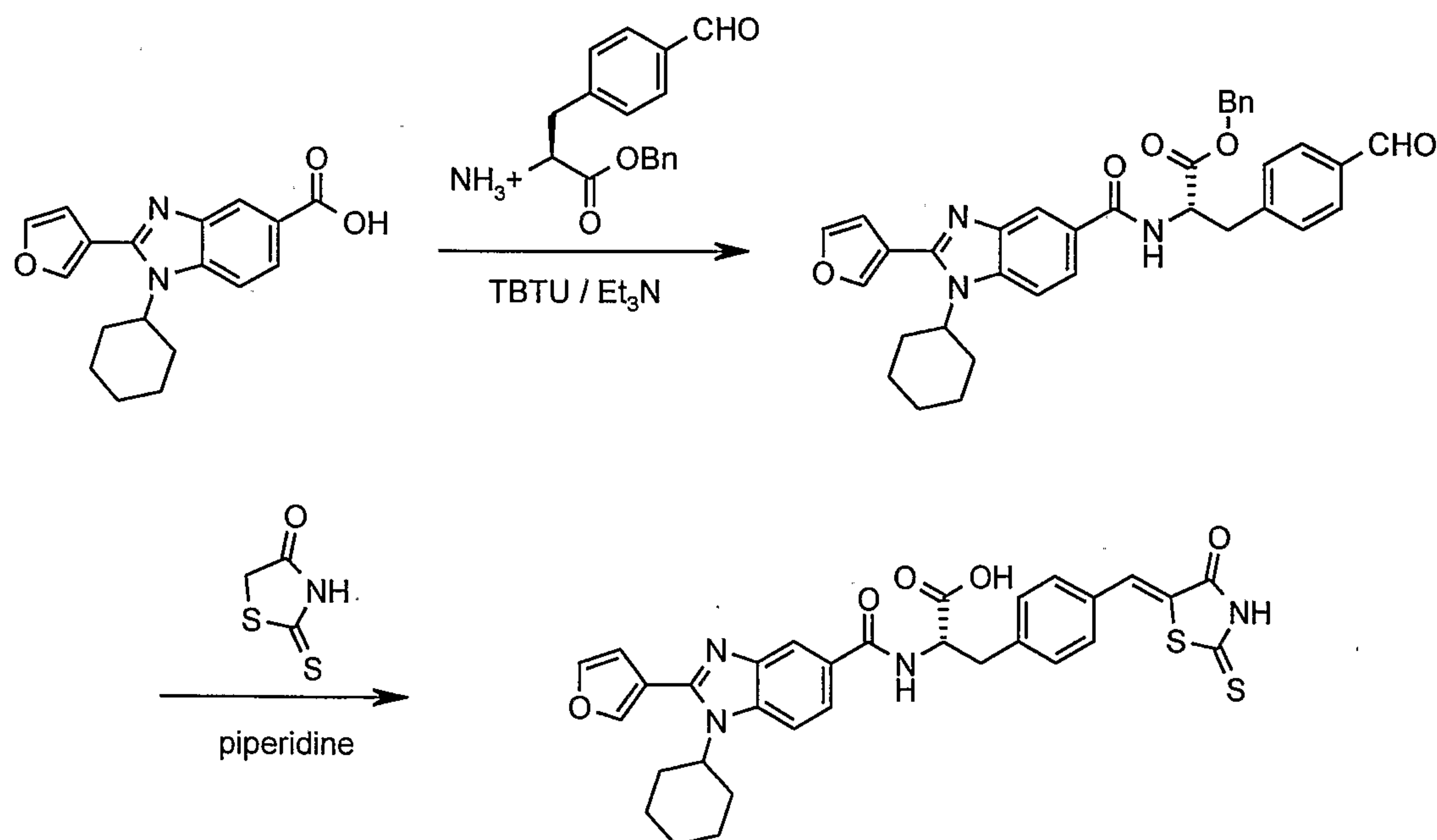
stirred overnight at room temperature. The title compound was isolated by prep HPLC (27 mg).

5 **(S)-3-[3-(2-carboxyethyl)-4-hydroxy-phenyl]-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid :**

The propanoate derivative from above (0.056 g, 0.13 mmol) was stirred for 1 h in 4N HCl in dioxane (2 mL). Volatiles were then removed in vacuo and the residue dissolved in DMSO (1 mL). TBTU (1.5 equivalent, 0.064 mg, 0.20 mmol), DIEA (4 equivalent, 0.53 mmol, 92 μ L) and the carboxylic acid of example 2 (1.2 equivalent, 10 0.16 mmol, 0.049 g) were added and the mixture stirred for 1.5 h at room temperature. 2 N NaOH (200 μ L) and MeOH (400 μ L) were added and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature. The title compound was isolated by prep HPLC (34 mg).

15 **Example 27 (Entry 16024, Table 16)**

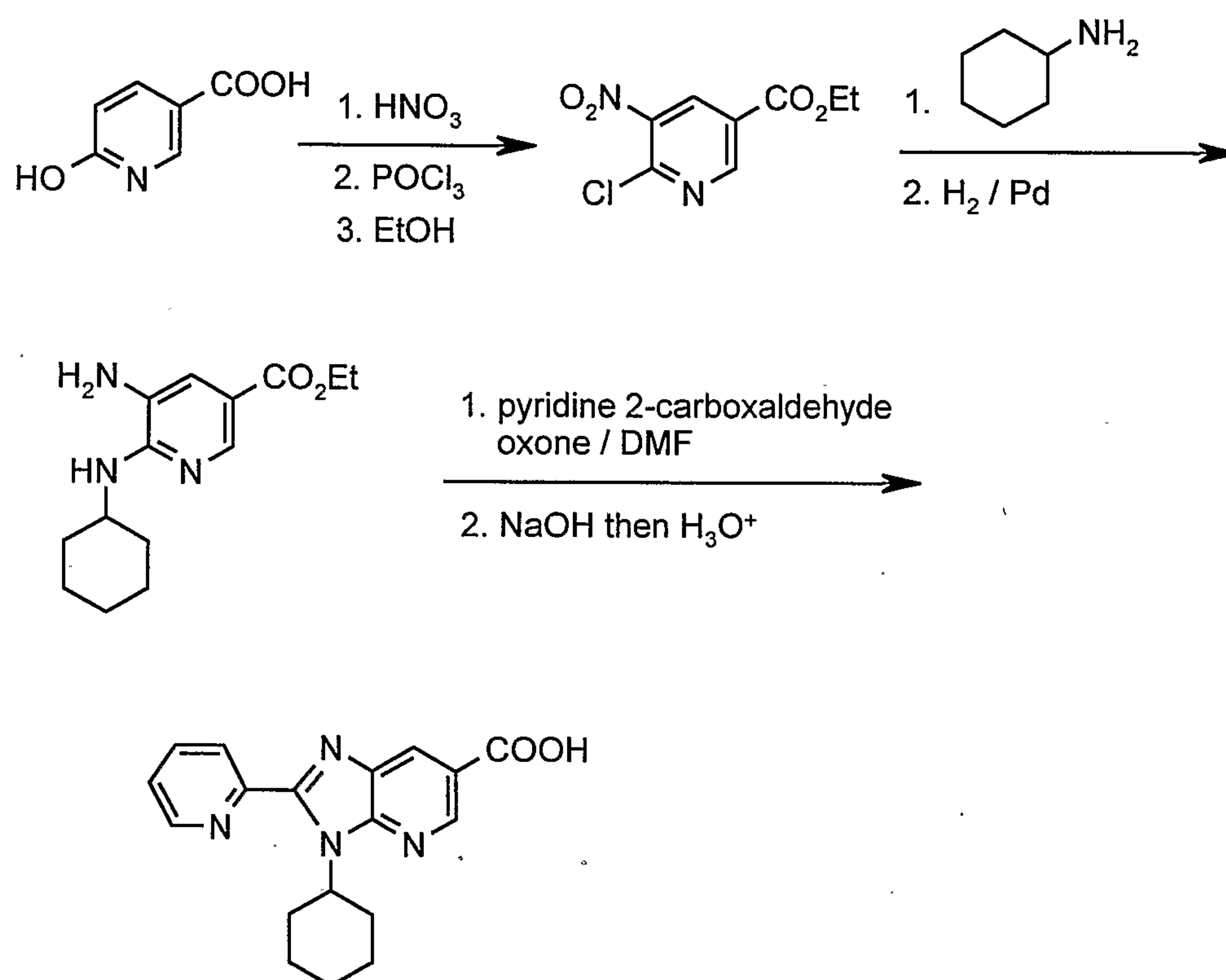
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-[4-(4-oxo-2-thioxo-thiazolidin-5-ylidenemethyl)-phenyl]propionic acid:



20 The acid of example 2 and 4-formyl-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester hydrochloride (example 13) were coupled with TBTU in the usual manner. The aldehyde derivative thus obtained (0.050 g, 0.087 mmol) and rhodamine (1.1 equivalent,

0.013 g, 0.095 mmol) were suspended in EtOH (0.5 mL) and piperidine (10 μ L) was added. The mixture was refluxed for 3 h. DMSO (1 mL) and 2 N NaOH (0.3 mL) were added and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was neutralized with TFA and the product isolated by prep HPLC (6 mg).

5

Example 28**3-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-6-carboxylic acid:**10 **Ethyl 5-amino-6-cyclohexylaminonicotinate:**

Ethyl 6-chloro-5-nitronicotinate (1.00 g, 4.33 mmol) prepared according to A. H. Berrie et al. (*J. Chem. Soc.* **1951**, 2590) was dissolved in DMSO (2 mL) and cyclohexylamine (0.54 g, 5.4 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature, diluted with water and the yellow precipitate collected by
15 filtration. The product was washed with water and dried (0.95 g, 74% yield).

The nitro derivative from above (0.68 g, 2.32 mmol) was hydrogenated (1 atm H_2) in EtOAc (30 mL) over 5% palladium on charcoal (100 mg). After 2 h, the reaction

(complete by HPLC) was filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title diamine (0.58 g, 94% yield).

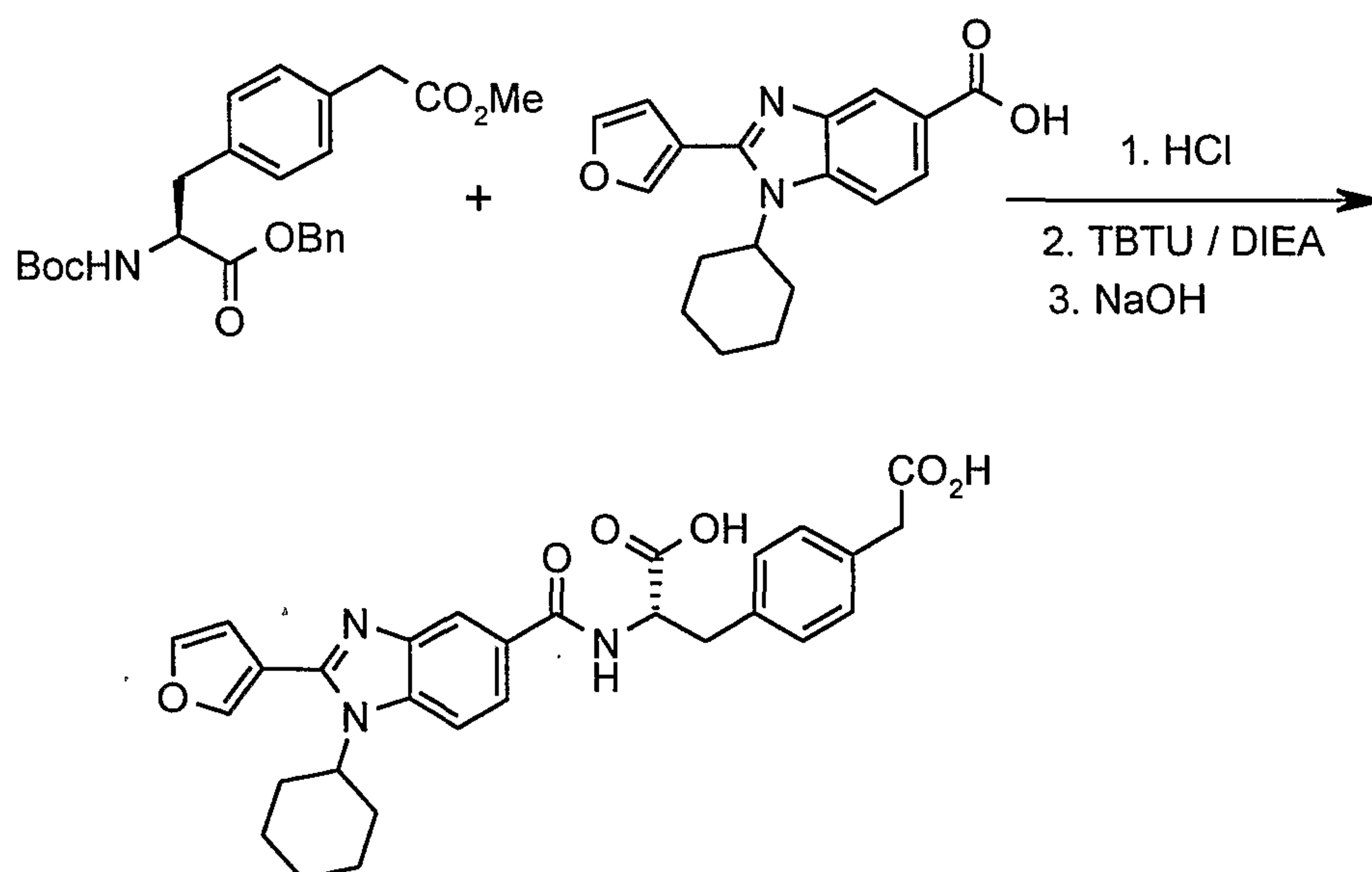
3-Cyclohexyl-2-pyridin-2-yl-3H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-6-carboxylic acid:

5 The diamine from above (0.58 g, 2.2 mmol) and 2-pyridine carboxaldehyde (0.252 g, 2.4 mmol) were dissolved in a mixture of DMF (2 mL) and water (0.1 mL). Oxone® (1.24 g, 2 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 2 h at room temperature. The reaction was diluted with 5% aqueous NaHCO₃ and extracted with DCM. The extract was washed with water and brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to a
10 brown oil.

The crude ester was dissolved in MeOH (30 mL) and KOH (300 mg) was added. The mixture was refluxed for 2 h, cooled and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in water (20 mL) and the solution acidified with 4 N HCl until complete precipitation of the product as a purple solid. The crude product was
15 collected, washed with water and dried. It was further purified by prep HPLC.

Example 29 (Entry 16002, Table 16)

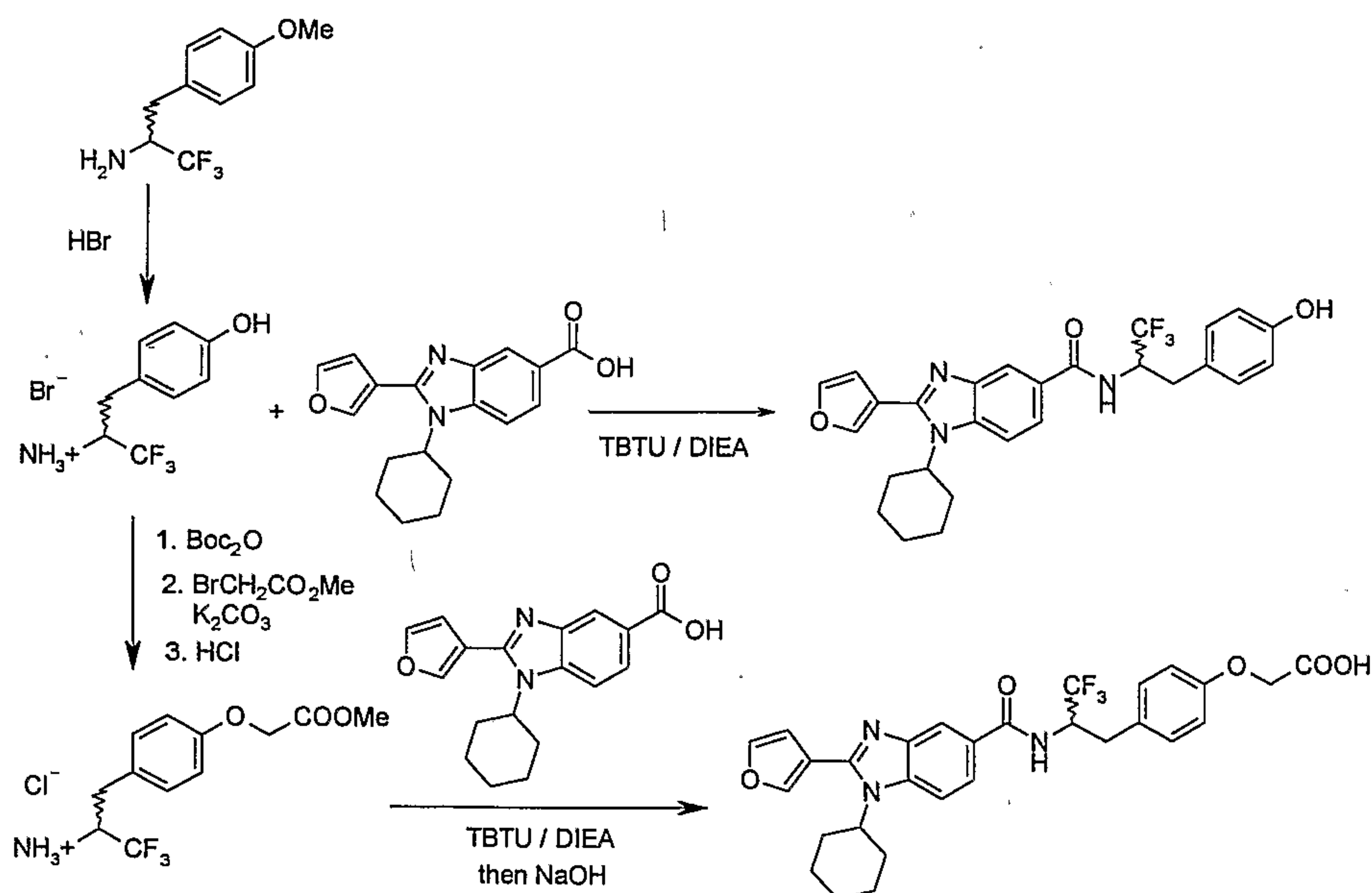
(S)-3-(4-Carboxymethyl-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzoimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino} propionic acid:



The protected 4-carboxymethyl-L-phenylalanine derivative was prepared by adaptation of the procedure of J. W. Tilley et al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1990**, 55, 906). Following deprotection on the carbamate function with HCl, the amine hydrochloride was coupled in the usual manner to the acid of example 2. Deprotection of all ester functions with NaOH and purification by prep HPLC gave the title compound:

Example 30:

Racemic 1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2,2,2-trifluoro-1-(4-hydroxy-benzyl)-ethyl]-amide and [4-(2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3,3,3-trifluoro-propyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid (Entries 1122 and 1123, Table 1)



Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2,2,2-trifluoro-1-(4-hydroxy-benzyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1122, Table 1):

The racemic O-methyl trifluoromethyl amine derivative, prepared by the procedure of R. M. Pinder et al. (*J. Med. Chem.* **1969**, 12, 322), was deprotected by stirring with 48% aqueous HBr at 100 °C for two hours. The resulting hydrobromide salt was coupled in the usual manner to the acid of example 2 to give after preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC purification the title phenolic compound.

Racemic [4-(2-{[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-3,3,3-trifluoro-propyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid: (Entry 1123, Table 1)

The racemic trifluoromethyl amine hydrobromide salt from above (0.64 g, 2.23 mmol) was dissolved in 80% aqueous MeCN and the solution cooled in ice. Sodium bicarbonate (0.50 g, 6 mmol) was added followed by di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (0.48 g, 2.23 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 15 min at 0 °C and 4 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was then poured into water (60 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 X). The extract was washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to an oily residue that was purified by flash chromatography using 3:7 EtOAc / hexane as eluent (tan-colored solid, 270 mg).

The carbamate from above (0.260 g, 0.85 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (5 mL). Anhydrous potassium carbonate (0.280 g, 2.0 mmol) and methyl bromoacetate (0.150 g, 1 mmol) were added and the mixture was refluxed for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was then diluted with acetone and filtered. Concentration of the filtrate gave the desired aryloxyacetate derivative as a white solid (0.31 g).

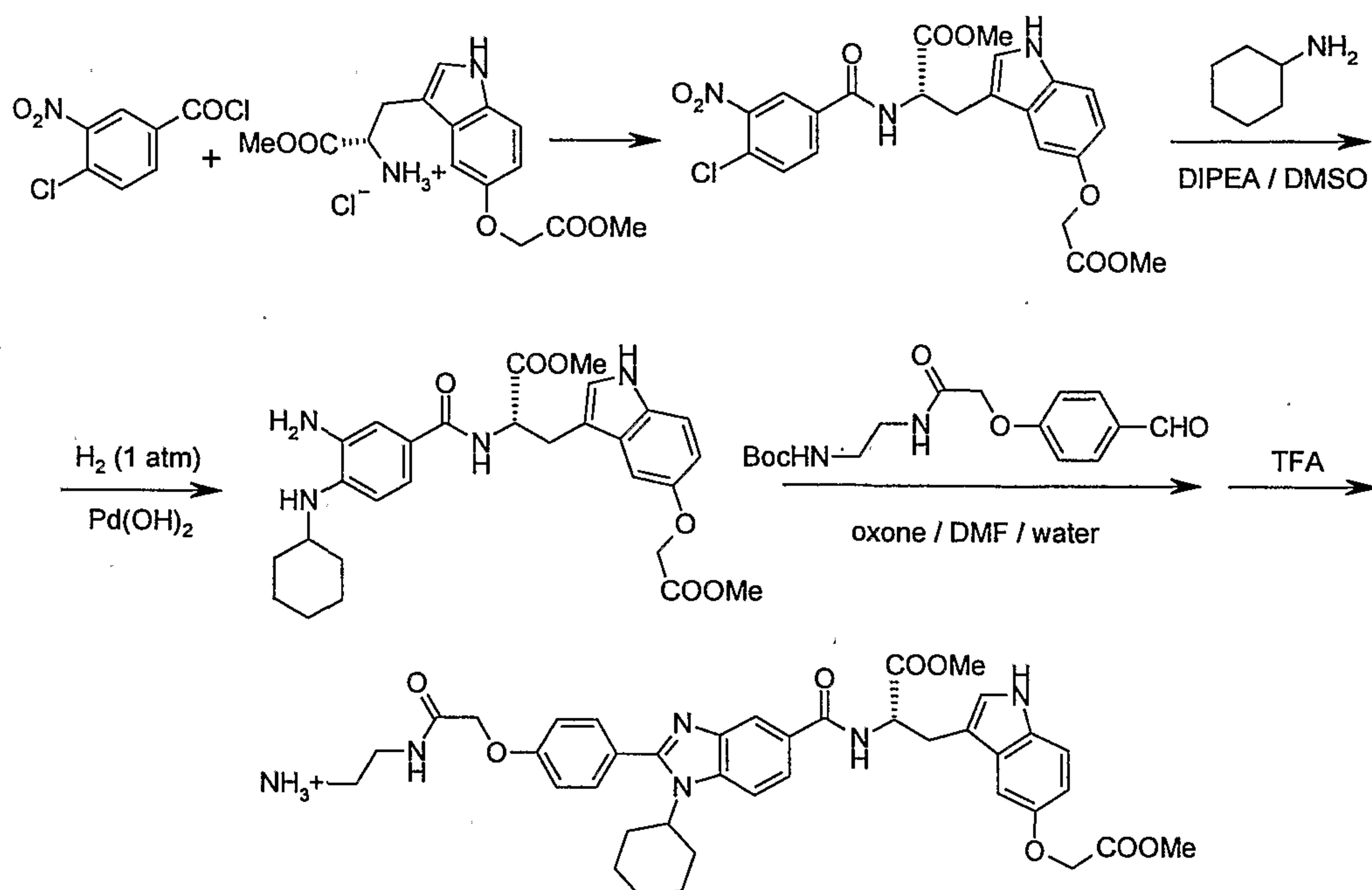
The carbamate from above (0.310 g, 0.82 mmol) was deprotected by stirring in 4N HCl-dioxane (10 mL) for 1 h at room temperature. Removal of volatiles under reduced pressure gave the amine hydrochloride salt as a yellow solid (0.250 g).

The amine salt from above was coupled in the usual manner to the acid of example 2. Deprotection of the ester function with NaOH and purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC gave the title compound.

Example 31:

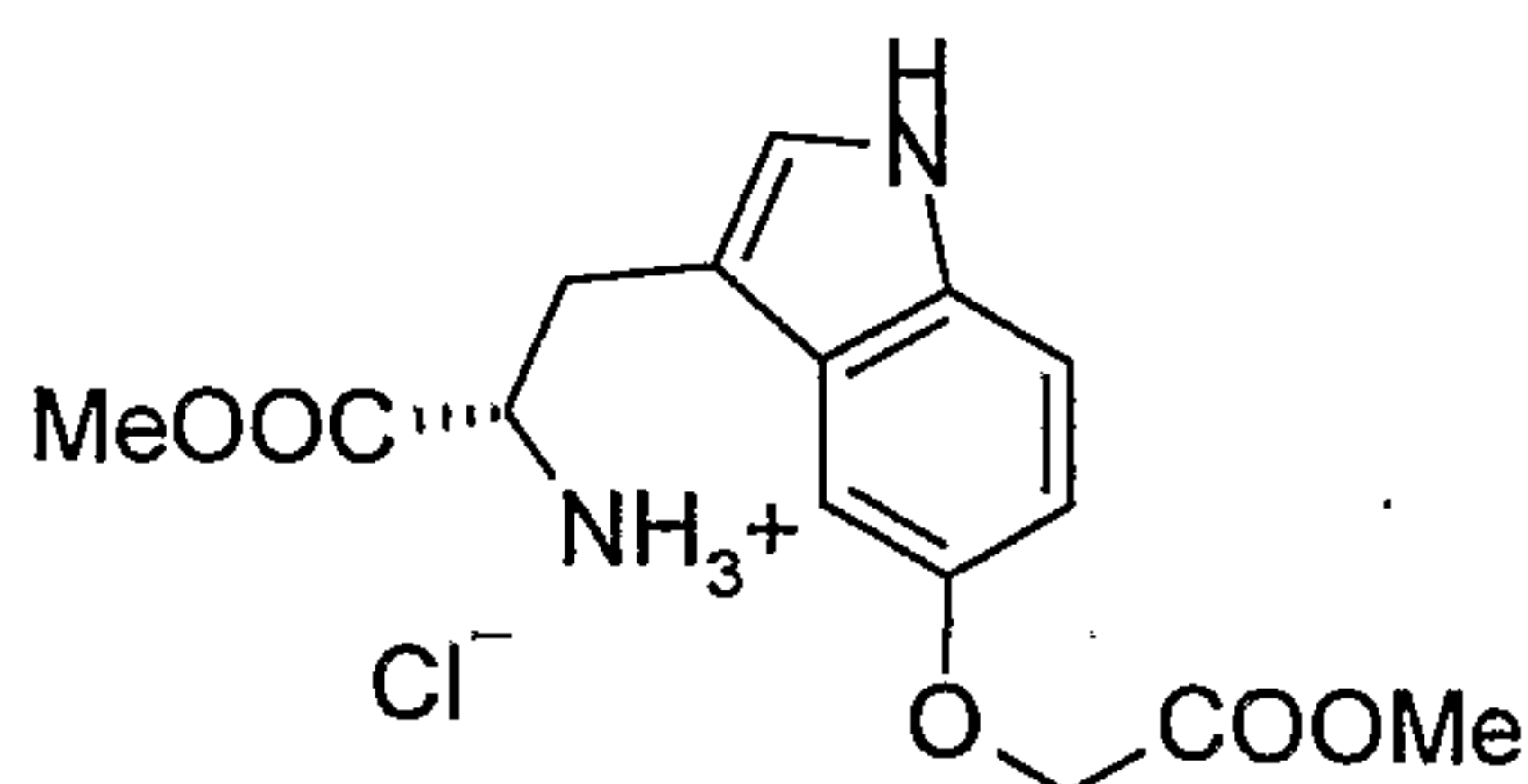
2-[2-(4-{1-Cyclohexyl-5-[(*S*)-1-methoxycarbonyl-2-(5-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethylcarbamoyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl}-phenoxy)-ethanoylamino]-ethyl-ammonium chloride:

88

**4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzoyl chloride:**

4-Chloro-3-nitrobenzoic acid (40.40 g, 0.20 mole) was suspended in DCM (100 mL) containing 3 drops of DMF. Oxalyl chloride (1.5 equivalents, 0.3 mole, 27 mL) was added in small portions and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature. After refluxing for an additional hour to complete the reaction, volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was coevaporated twice with hexane to give the title compound as a light yellow solid.

(S)-1-Methoxycarbonyl-2-(5-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl-ammonium chloride:

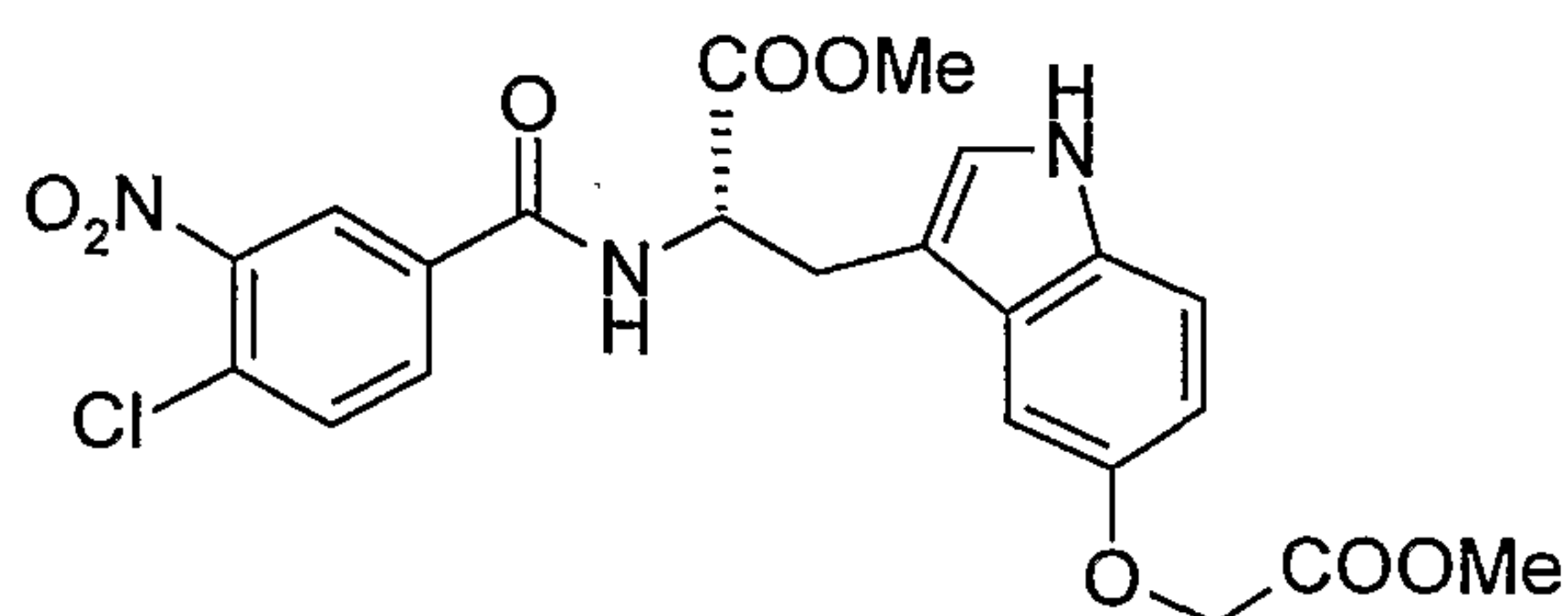


(S)-5-Hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (1.55 g, 5 mmol) was dissolved in 80% aqueous MeCN (25 mL) and the solution cooled in ice. Sodium bicarbonate (0.850 g, 10 mmol) was added followed by di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (1.10 g, 5.1 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature, poured into water (200 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 X). The combined extracts were washed with water and brine, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give a beige solid (1.65 g).

The crude product from above (1.50 g, 4.83 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (20 mL) and anhydrous potassium carbonate (1.5 g, 11 mmol) and methyl bromoacetate (0.76 g, 5 mmol) were added. The mixture was reflux for 4 h after which point additional methyl bromoacetate was added to complete the reaction (15 mg portions
 5 until complete by HPLC). The reaction mixture was then cooled and filtered to remove solid. Evaporation of the filtrate gave the desired carbamate as an oil (2.0 g).

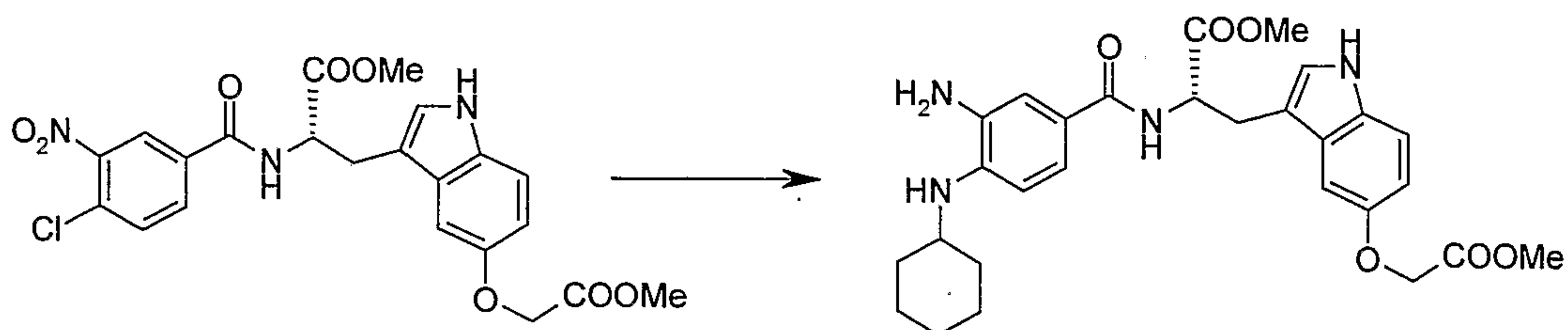
The crude carbamate from above (2.0 g) was deprotected by stirring with 4N HCl – dioxane for 1 h at room temperature. Removal of volatiles in vacuo gave the
 10 desired tryptophan ester derivative as a tan-colored solid (1.51 g).

(S)-2-[[1-(4-Chloro-3-nitro-phenyl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid methyl ester:



15 The tryptophan derivative from above (0.343 g, 1 mmol) was dissolved in 80% aqueous MeCN (10 mL) and sodium bicarbonate (3 equivalents, 0.260 g) was added. The solution was cooled in ice and 4-chloro-3-nitrobenzoyl chloride (0.220 g, 1 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred for one hour at room temperature, concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash
 20 chromatography (1:2 hexane / EtOAc as eluent) to give the title compound as a yellow foam (0.391 g).

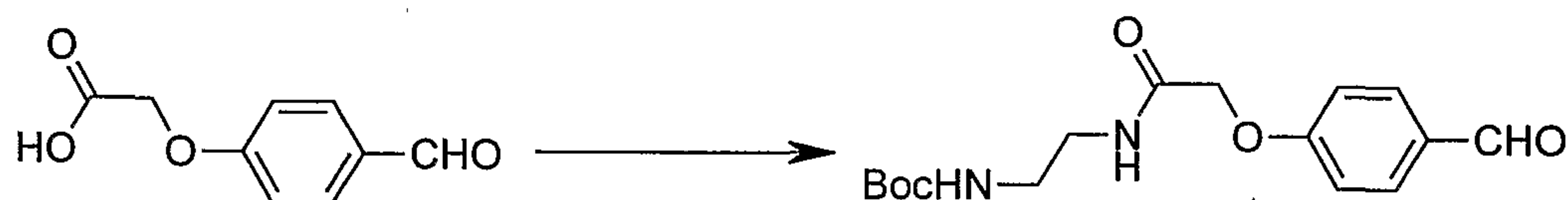
(S)-2-[[1-(3-Amino-4-cyclohexylamino-phenyl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid methyl ester:



The 4-chlorobenzamide derivative from above (0.214 g, 0.45 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (1 mL) and DIEA (0.2 mL) was added followed by cyclohexylamine (3 equivalents, 0.16 mL). The mixture was stirred at 60-65 °C for 4 h and subsequently diluted with water. The orange precipitate that formed was collected, washed with water and dried (0.200 g).

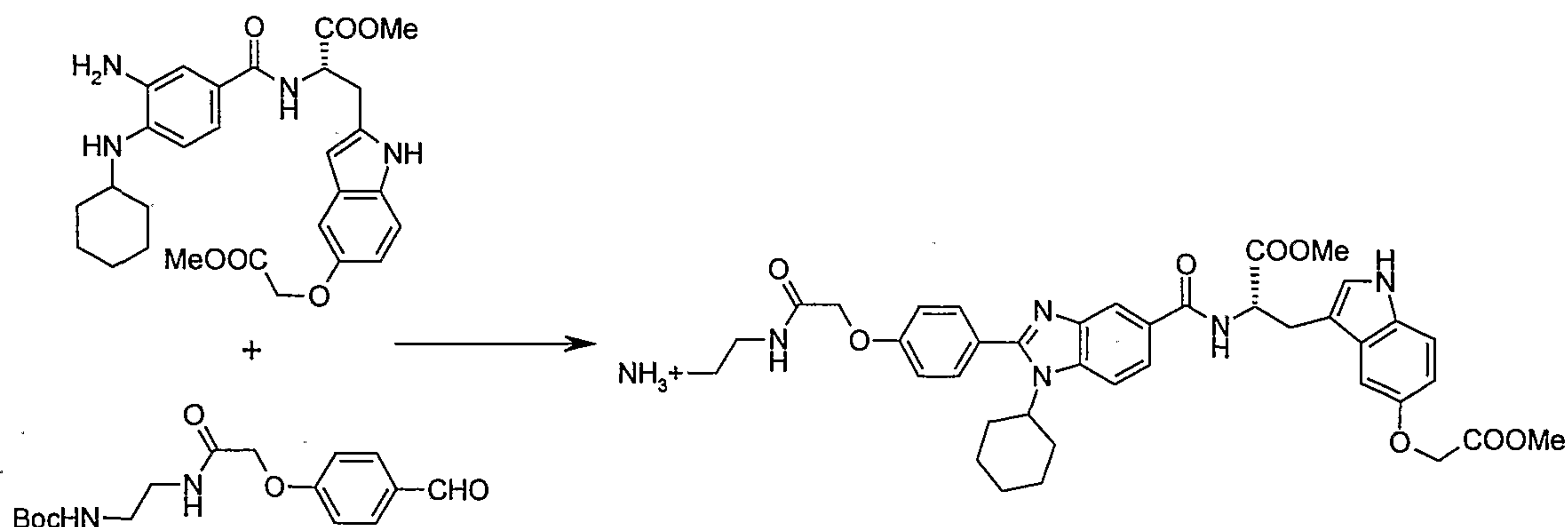
The crude material (0.200 g, 0.36 mmol) was hydrogenated (1 atm H₂) over 20% Pd(OH)₂ on charcoal (60 mg) in MeOH (15 mL). After 2 h, the suspension was filtered to remove the catalyst and concentrated under vacuo to give the title compound as a foam (0.16 g).

{2-[2-(4-Formyl-phenoxy)-ethanoylamino]-ethyl}-carbamic acid *tert*-butyl ester:



4-Formylphenoxyacetic acid (0.306 g, 1.70 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (5 mL). DIEA (0.524 g, 4 mmol) and TBTU (0.550 g, 1.70 mmol) were added followed by *tert*-butyl *N*-(2-aminoethyl)carbamate (0.250 g, 1.56 mmol). The mixture was stirred 2 h at room temperature, dissolved in EtOAc and washed sequentially with 5% aqueous K₂CO₃, KHSO₄, water and brine. The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a yellow solid (0.350 g).

2-[2-(4-{1-Cyclohexyl-5-[(*S*)-1-methoxycarbonyl-2-(5-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethylcarbamoyl]-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl}-phenoxy)-ethanoylamino]-ethyl-ammonium chloride:



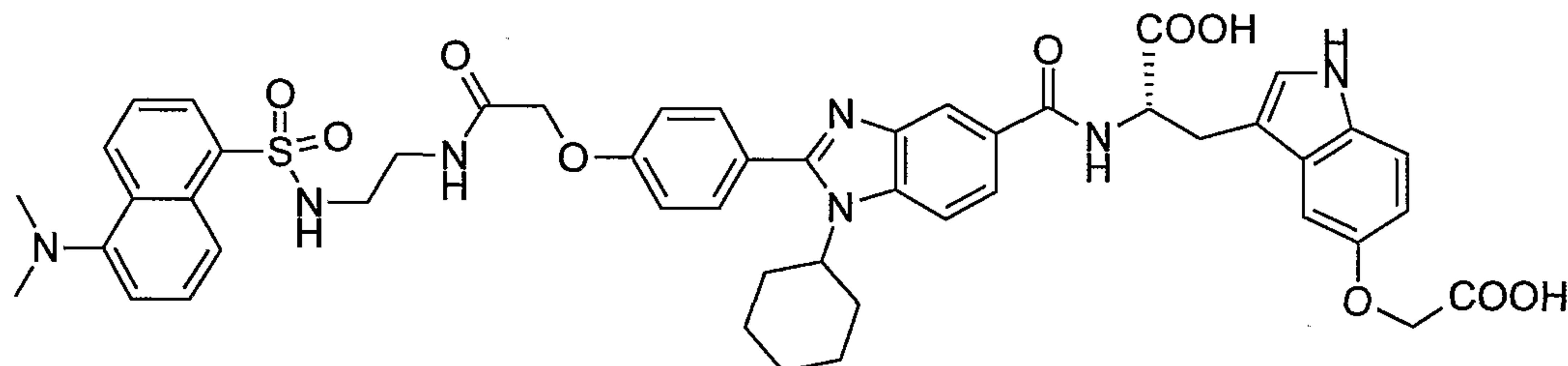
The diamine derivative (0.026 g, 0.05 mmol) and aldehyde (0.020 g, 0.06 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (0.3 mL) and water (0.03 mL) was added followed by oxone® (0.024 g, 0.04 mmol). The mixture was stirred 1 h at room temperature and then diluted with water. The resulting precipitate was collected by filtration, washed
5 with water and dried to give a beige solid (0.020 g).

The crude carbamate from above was stirred with TFA for 30 min at room temperature. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC to give the title compound of example 31 as the bis TFA salt.

10

Example 32:

**(S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-2-({1-[1-cyclohexyl-2-(4-{[2-(5-dimethylamino-naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-ethylcarbamoyl]-methoxy}-phenyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl}-amino)-propionic acid (Entry 2129,
15 Table 2,):**

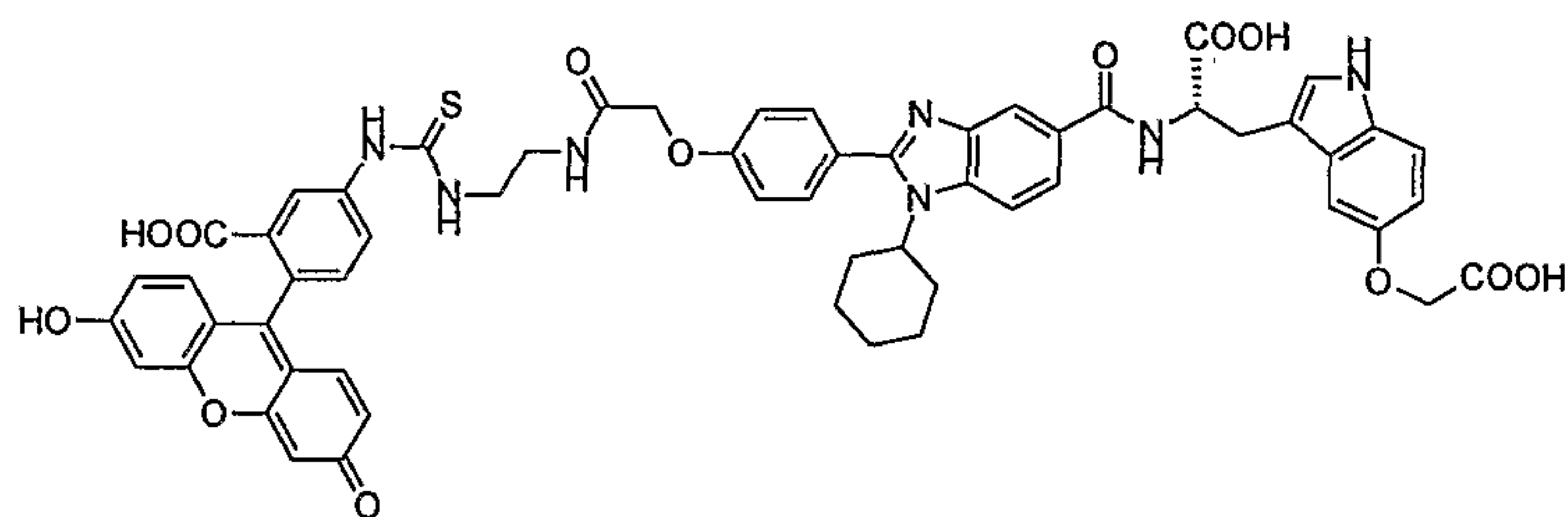


The amine salt of example 31 (0.019 g, 0.02 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (0.3 mL) and DIEA (0.06 mL) was added followed by dansyl chloride (0.065 g, 0.02 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature. 5N NaOH (0.12 mL)
20 and water (0.05 mL) were added and the saponification was allowed to proceed for 1 h at room temperature. Following acidification with TFA, the product was directly isolated from the reaction mixture by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 33:

5-(3-{2-[2-(4-{5-[(S)-1-Carboxy-2-(5-carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethylcarbamoyl]-1-cyclohexyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl}-phenoxy)-ethanoylamino]-ethyl}-thioureido)-2-(6-hydroxy-3-oxo-3*H*-xanthen-9-yl)-benzoic acid (Entry 12022, Table 12):

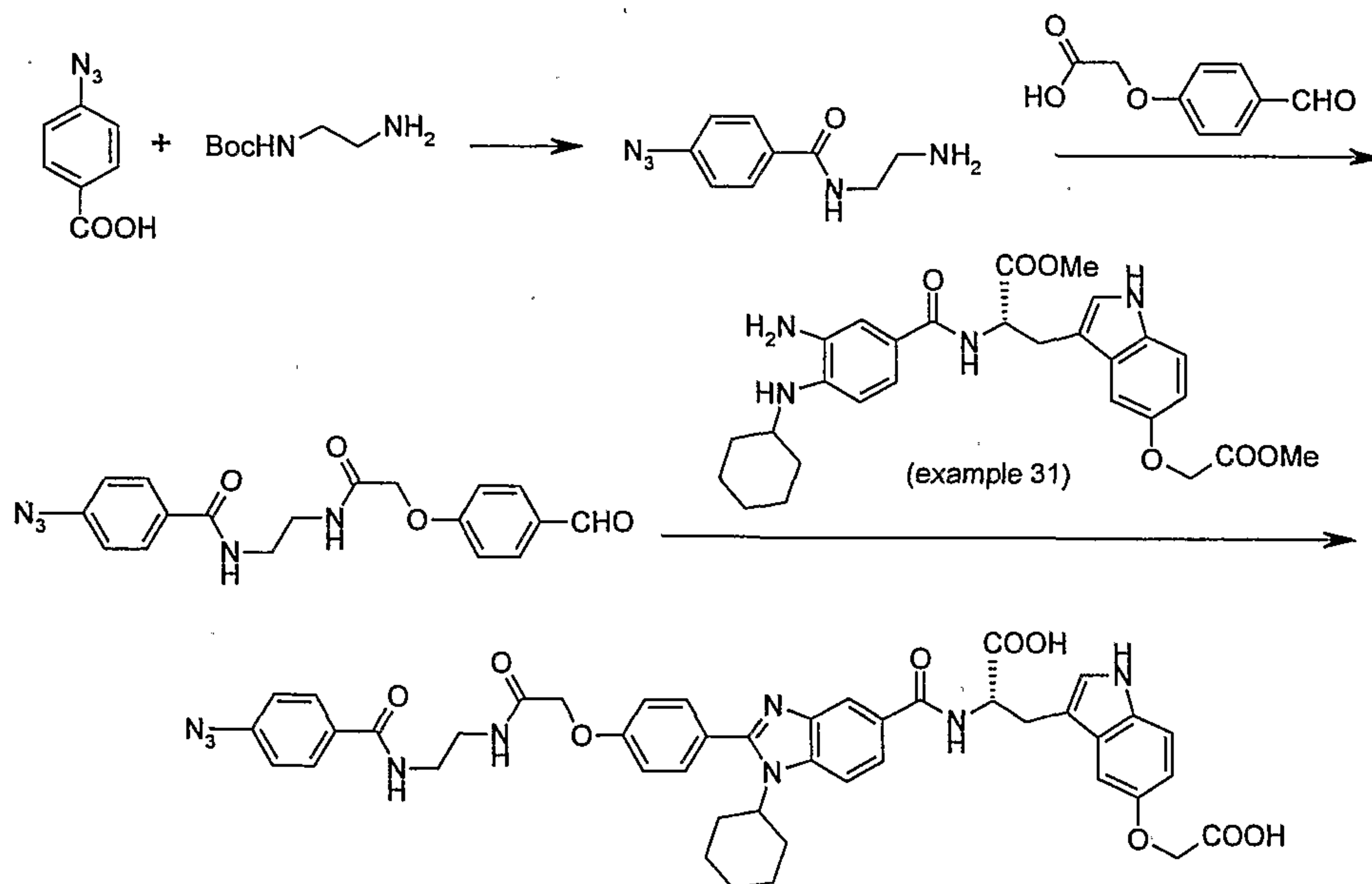
25



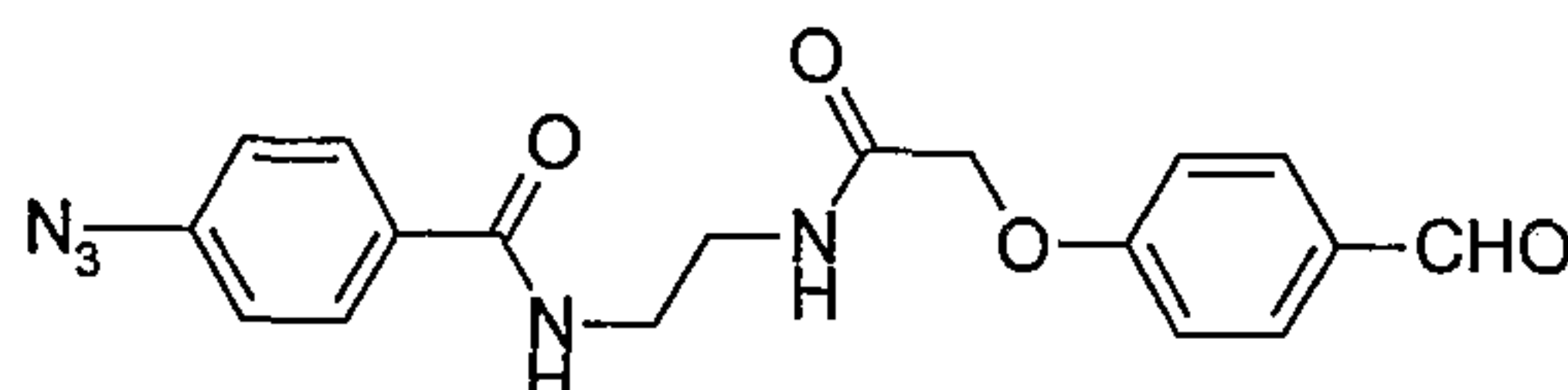
The amine salt of example 31 (0.06 mmol) was dissolved in DMSO (0.6 mL) and DIEA (0.3 mL) was added followed by fluorescein isothiocyanate isomer 1 (0.026 g, 0.066 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature. 5N NaOH (0.3 mL) and water (0.15 mL) were added and stirring resumed for an additional 30 min. Following acidification with TFA, the title compound was isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 34:

- 10 **(S)-2-[[1-(2-{4-[[2-[[1-(4-Azido-phenyl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethylcarbamoyl]-methoxy]-phenyl]-1-cyclohexyl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(5-carboxymethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 12025, Table 12):**



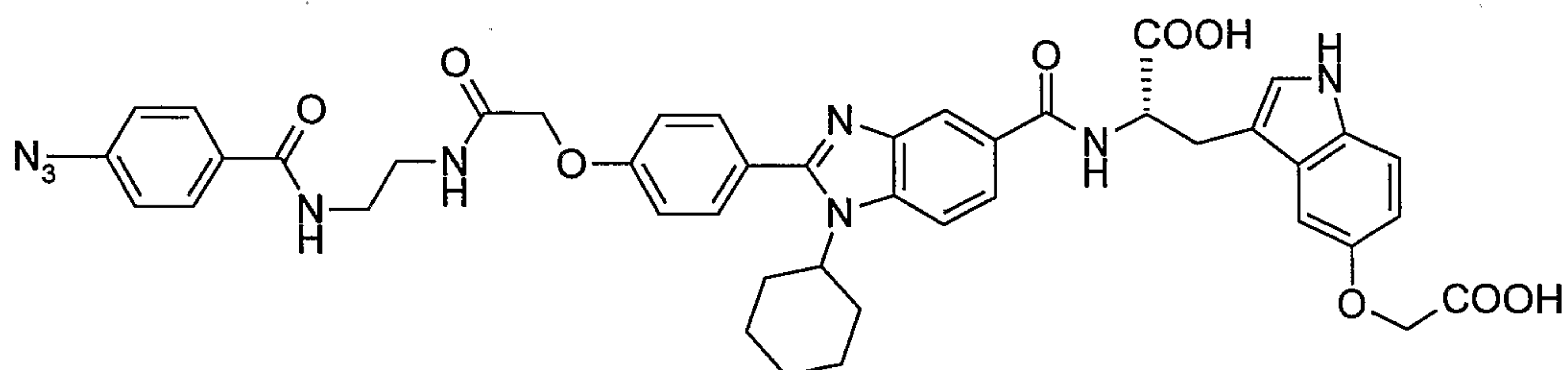
- 15 **4-Azido-N-{2-[2-(4-formyl-phenoxy)-ethanoylamino]-ethyl}-benzamide:**



4-Azidobenzoic acid (0.160 g, 1 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (3 mL). DIEA (0.5 mL, 2.5 mmol) and TBTU (0.337 g, 1.05 mmol) were added followed by *tert*-butyl *N*-(2-aminoethyl)carbamate (0.165 g, 1.03 mmol). The mixture was stirred 2.5 h at room temperature, dissolved in EtOAc and washed sequentially with 5% aqueous
 5 K₂CO₃, KHSO₄, water and brine. The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a yellow solid (0.257 g).

The crude carbamate (0.257 g, 0.84 mmol) was deprotected by stirring in 4N HCl – dioxane (15 mL) for 2 h at room temperature. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure to give a pinkish solid. 4-Formylphenoxyacetic acid (0.200 g, 1.1 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (3 mL) and DIEA (0.5 mL) was added followed by
 10 TBTU (0.350 g, 1.1 mmol) and the amine salt from above (0.240 g, 1 mmol). The mixture was stirred 4 h at room temperature, dissolved in EtOAc and washed sequentially with 5% aqueous K₂CO₃, KHSO₄, water and brine. The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated under reduced pressure to give an off-white solid
 15 (0.162 g).

(S)-2-{[1-(2-{4-[(2-{[1-(4-Azido-phenyl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethylcarbamoyl)-methoxy]-phenyl}-1-cyclohexyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(5-carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid:

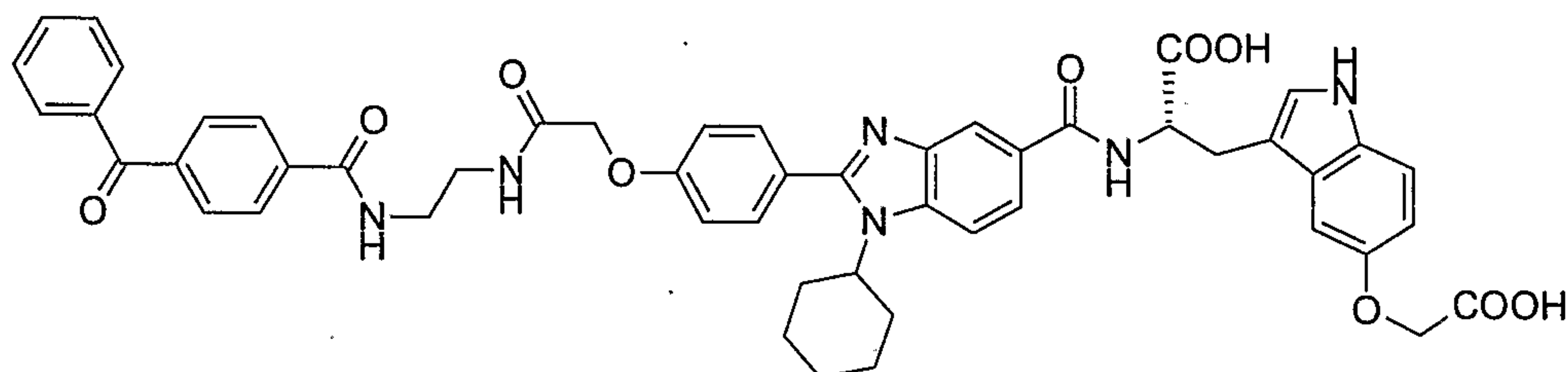


20

The benzaldehyde derivative from above (0.044 g, 0.12 mmol) and the diamine derivative of example 31 (0.052 g, 0.1 mmol) were dissolved in DMF (0.6 mL) and water (0.1 mL). Oxone ® (0.050 g, 0.8 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 1 h at room temperature. 5N NaOH (0.2 mL) and water (0.1 mL) were added and
 25 saponification allowed to proceed for 1 h. The title compound of example 34 was isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC (12.5 mg).

Example 35:

(S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-2-({1-[1-cyclohexyl-2-(4-{[2-({1-[4-(1-phenyl-methanoyl)-phenyl]-methanoyl}-amino)-ethylcarbamoyl]-methoxy}-phenyl)-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl}-amino)-propionic acid (Entry 12026, Table 12):

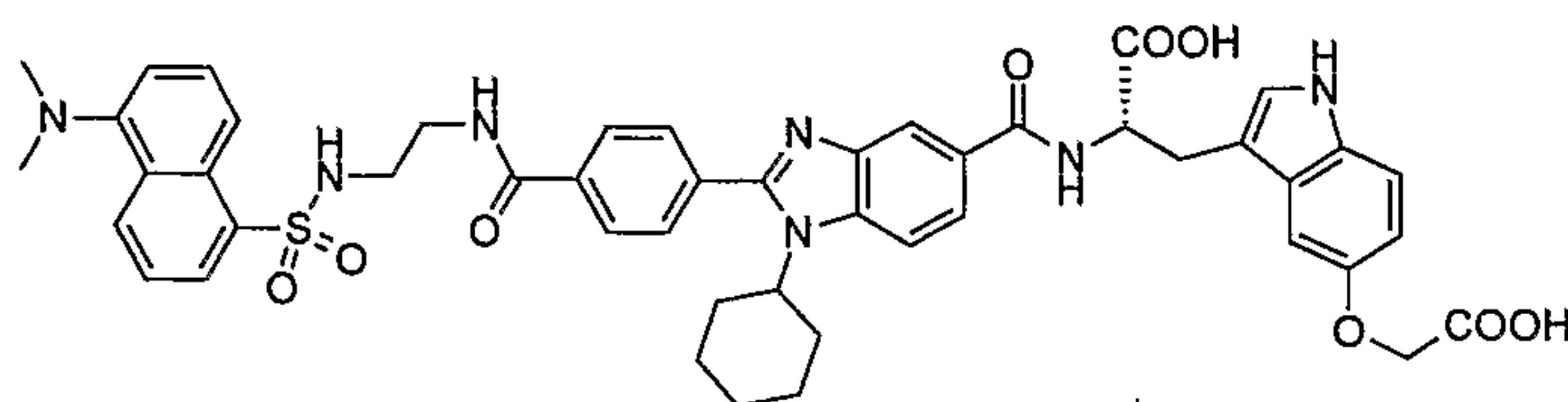


5

The title compounds was prepared following the procedures described for example 34 except that 4-benzoylbenzoic acid was used instead of 4-azidobenzoic acid.

Example 36:

10 (S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-2-{{1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-{4-[2-(5-dimethylamino-naphthalene-1-sulfonylamino)-ethylcarbamoyl]-phenyl}-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl}-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 2130, Table 2):



Following the procedures described for example 34, 4-carboxybenzaldehyde was coupled to *tert*-butyl *N*-(2-aminoethyl)carbamate. Following benzimidazole ring formation with the diamine derivative of example 34 using oxone®, the Boc protecting group was removed and the resulting amine condensed with dansyl chloride as described in example 32. The title compound was obtained following saponification of the ester group under the usual conditions and isolation by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

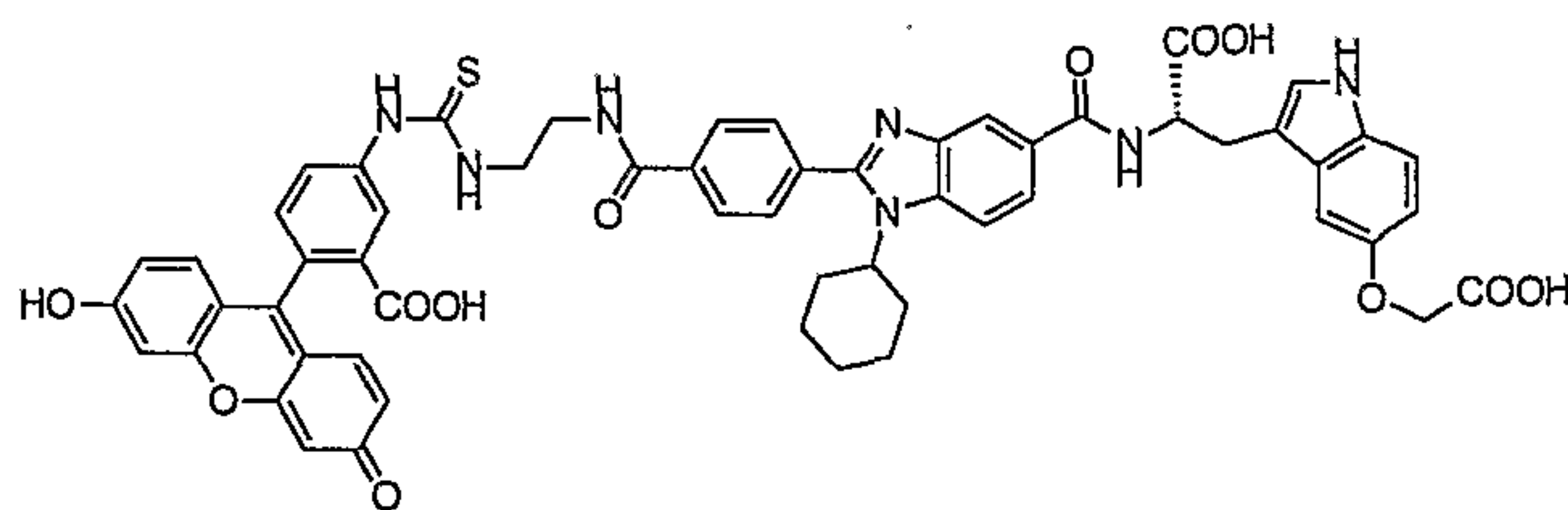
20

Example 37:

5-[3-(2-{{1-(4-{5-[(S)-1-Carboxy-2-(5-carboxymethoxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethylcarbamoyl]-1-cyclohexyl-1*H*-benzimidazol-2-yl}-phenyl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-thioureido]-2-(6-hydroxy-3-oxo-3*H*-xanthen-9-yl)-benzoic acid (Entry 12021, Table 12):

25

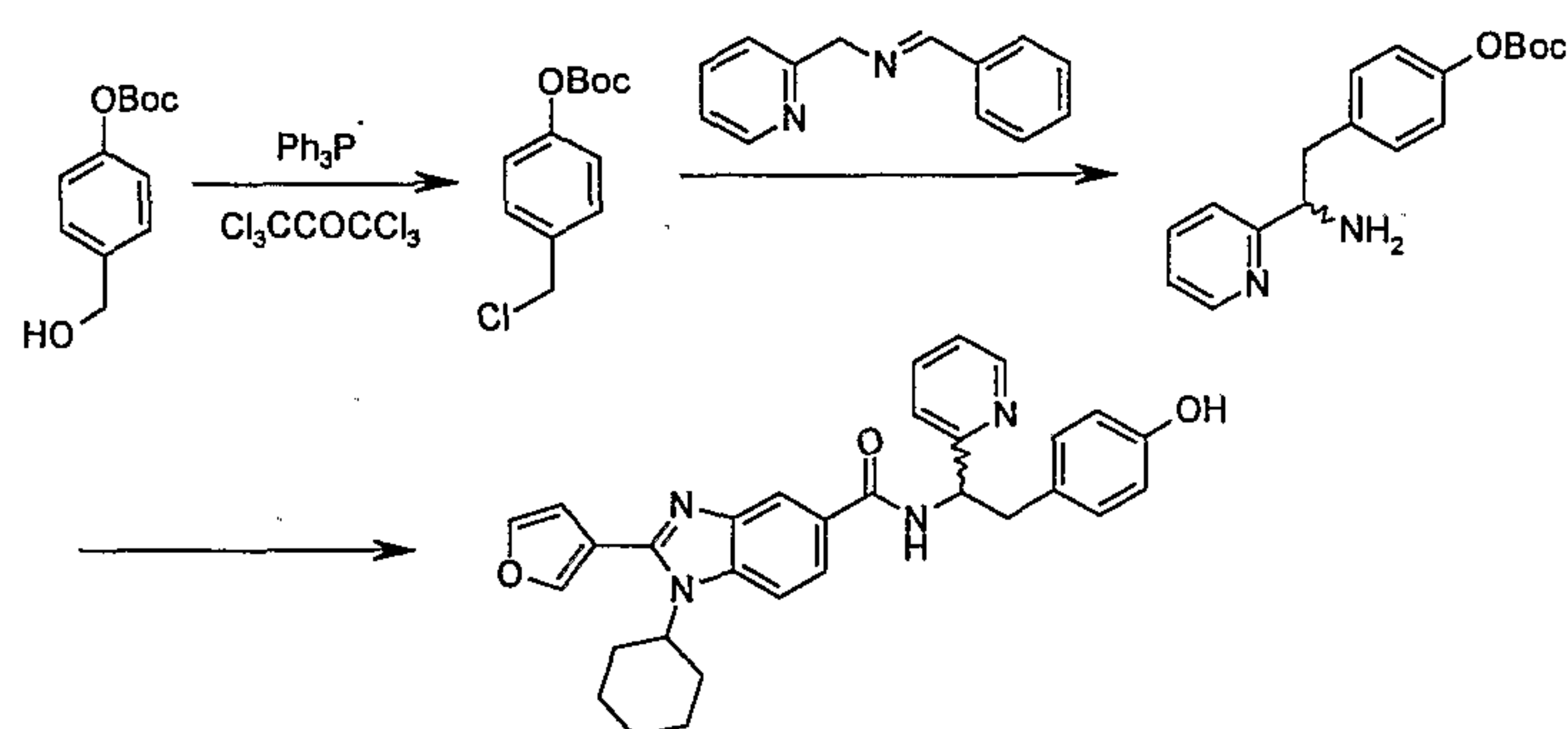
95



The procedure described for example 36 was used except that fluorescein isothiocyanate isomer 1 was used instead of dansyl chloride. The title compound of example 37 was obtained after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 38:

Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-pyridin-2-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1231, Table 1):



10

Triphosgene (5.45 g, 18.4 mmol) was added in small portions to an ice-cold solution of triphenylphosphine (12.60 g, 48 mmol) in DCM (180 mL). After stirring for 15 min, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure. A solution of 4-*tert*-butoxycarbonyloxy-benzyl alcohol (I. Cabrera et al., US Patent 5 356 752, 1994) (9.89 g, 44 mmol) in DCM (75 mL) was then added to the above residue over a 15 min period and the mixture stirred for 20 min at room temperature. The solvent was then removed in vacuo and the residue triturated with pentane (200 mL). The solid was removed by filtration and washed with pentane. The combined extracts were concentrated to 50 mL and passed through a pad of silica gel using 1:2 EtOAc – hexane as eluent. 4-*tert*-Butoxycarbonyloxy-benzyl chloride was obtained as a clear yellow liquid (8.82 g).

20

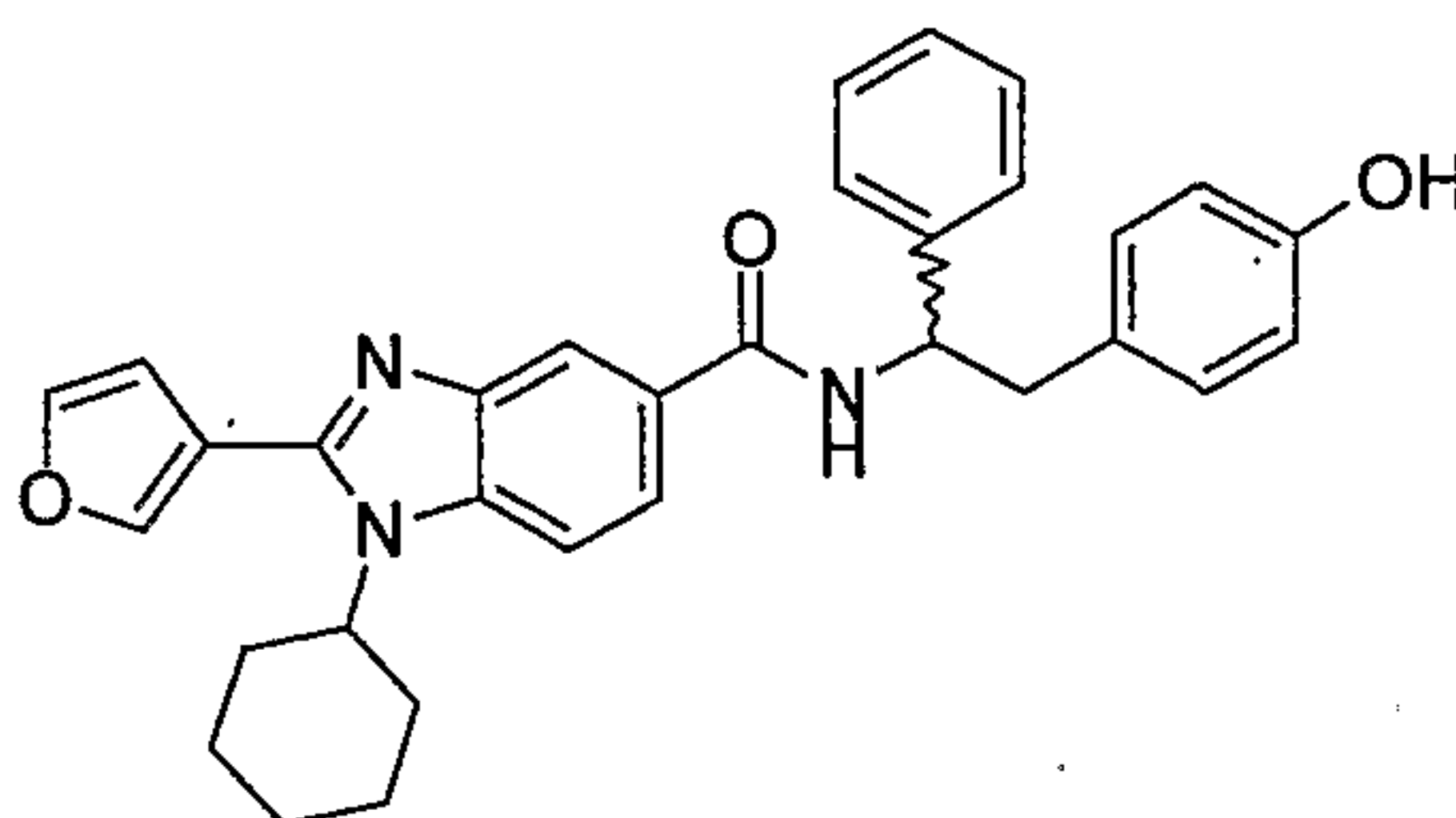
2-(Aminomethyl)pyridine was converted to its benzaldehyde imine (benzaldehyde in DCM with 4A molecular sieves) and alkylated with 4-*tert*-butoxycarbonyloxy-benzyl chloride following an adaptation of the procedure described by Y. Wang et al.

(*Synth. Commun.* **1992**, 22, 265). The resulting racemic amine was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 under the usual conditions, and deprotected with TFA to give the title compound of example 38 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

5

Example 39:

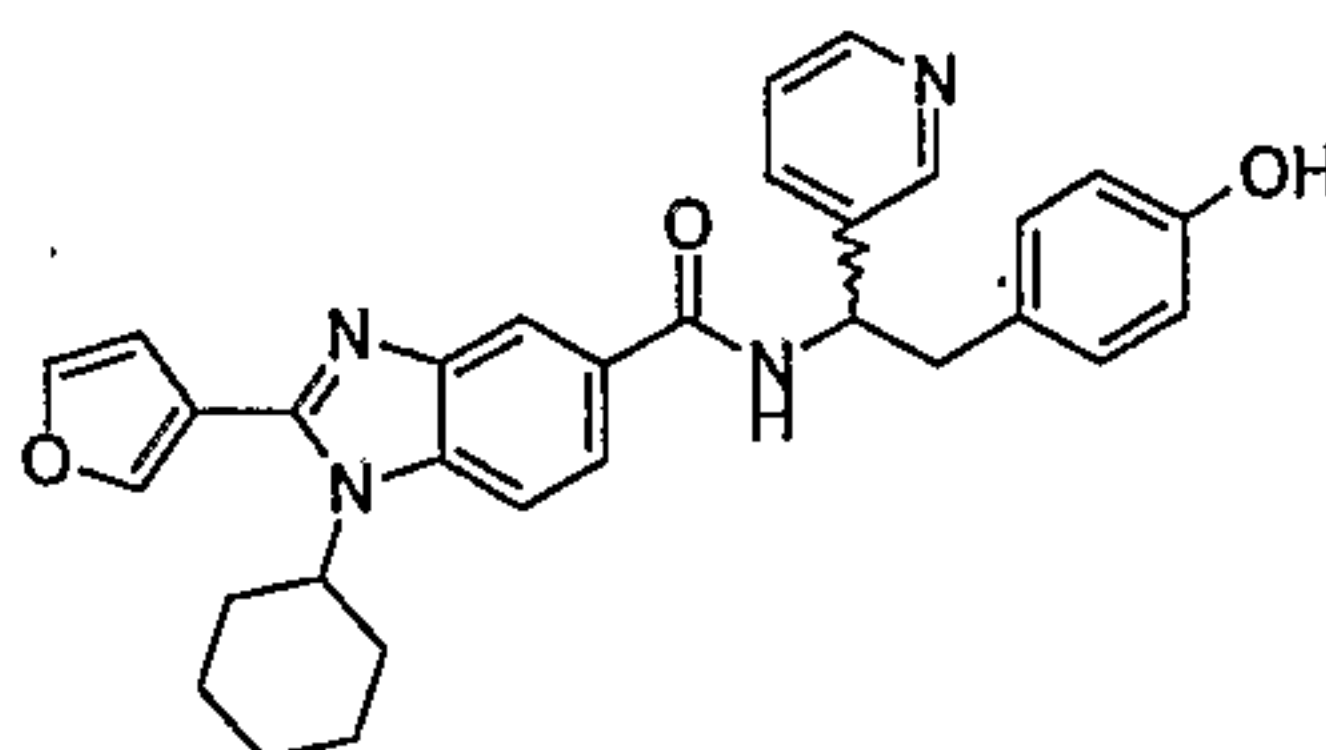
Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-phenyl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1259, Table 1):



10 Following the general method of example 37, the benzaldehyde imine of benzylamine was alkylated with *tert*-butoxycarbonyloxy-benzyl chloride using lithium hexamethyldisilazane as a base at low temperature (-78 °C) in THF as solvent. Following the usual work up, the racemic amine was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2, to give after removal of the Boc group and purification by preparative
15 C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 39.

Example 40:

Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-pyridin-3-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1260, Table 1):

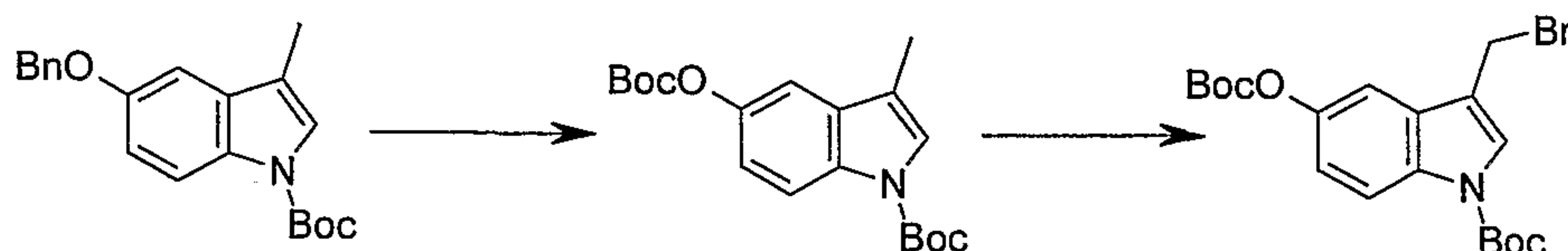


20

Following the procedure of example 39, but starting with 3-(aminomethyl)pyridine, the title compound of example 40 was obtained.

Example 41:

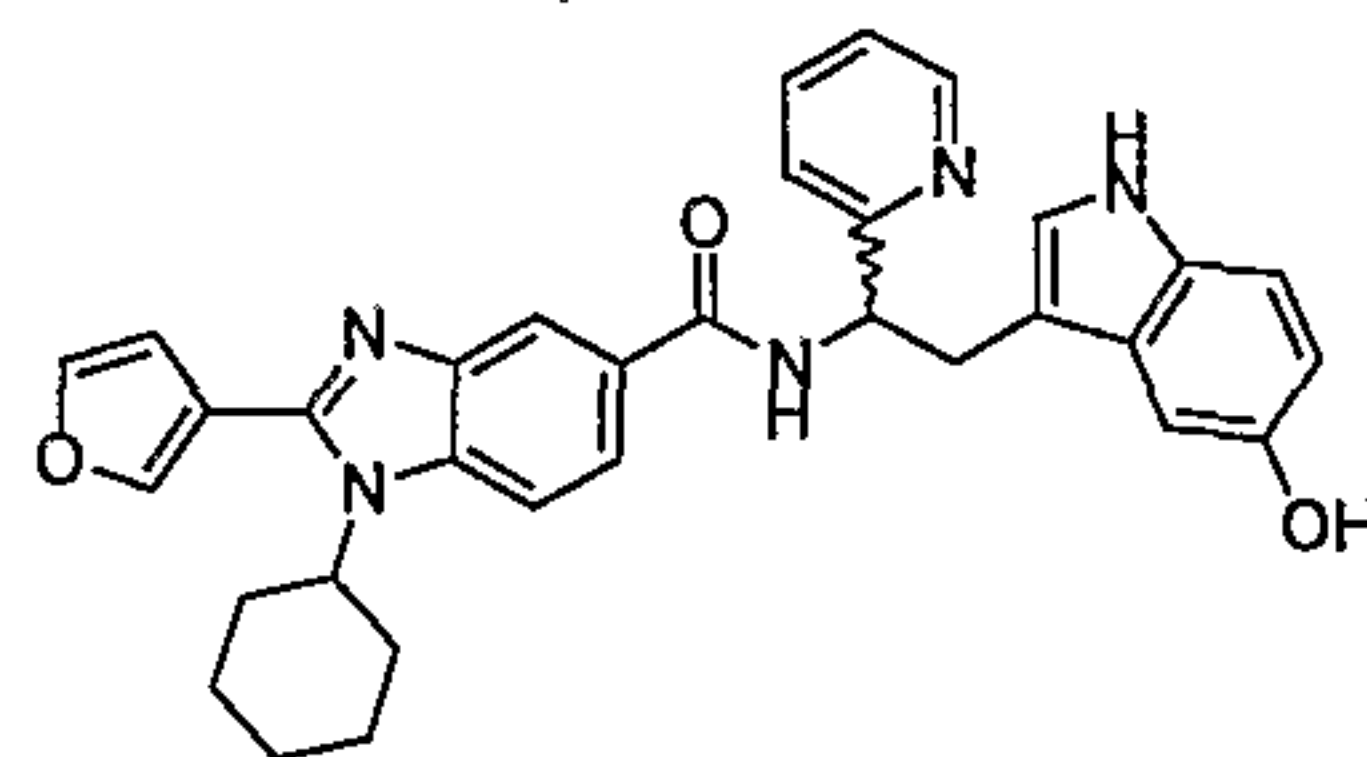
25 **3-Bromomethyl-5-*tert*-butoxycarbonyloxy-indole-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester:**



N-Boc-5-benzyloxy-3-methylindole was prepared according to the method of J. P. Marino et al. (*J. Am. Chem. Soc.* **1992**, *114*, 5566). This indole (4.00 g, 11.9 mmol) was dissolved in THF (60 mL) containing di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (2.60 g, 11.9 mmol), anhydrous K₂CO₃ (3.20 g, 23 mmol), 18-crown-6 (10 mg) and 20% Pd(OH)₂ on charcoal (0.4 g). The suspension was stirred under a hydrogen atmosphere (1 atm) for 18 h at room temperature. The mixture was then filtered and the cake washed with THF. Removal of volatiles from the filtrate and purification by flash chromatography gave the Bis-Boc-protected indole (4.14 g).
 The 3-methylindole derivative from above (3.80 g, 10.94 mmol) was dissolved in CCl₄ (200 mL) and *N*-bromosuccinimide (1.85 g, 10.4 mmol) and dibenzoyl peroxide (5 mg) were added. The mixture was refluxed under irradiation by a sun lamp for 3 h. After cooling and removal of insoluble solids by filtration, the solution was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residual yellow oil was purified by flash chromatography (6% EtOAc in hexane) to give the title compound of example 41 as a yellowish solid (2.28 g).

Example 42:

Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-pyridin-2-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 11032, Table 11):

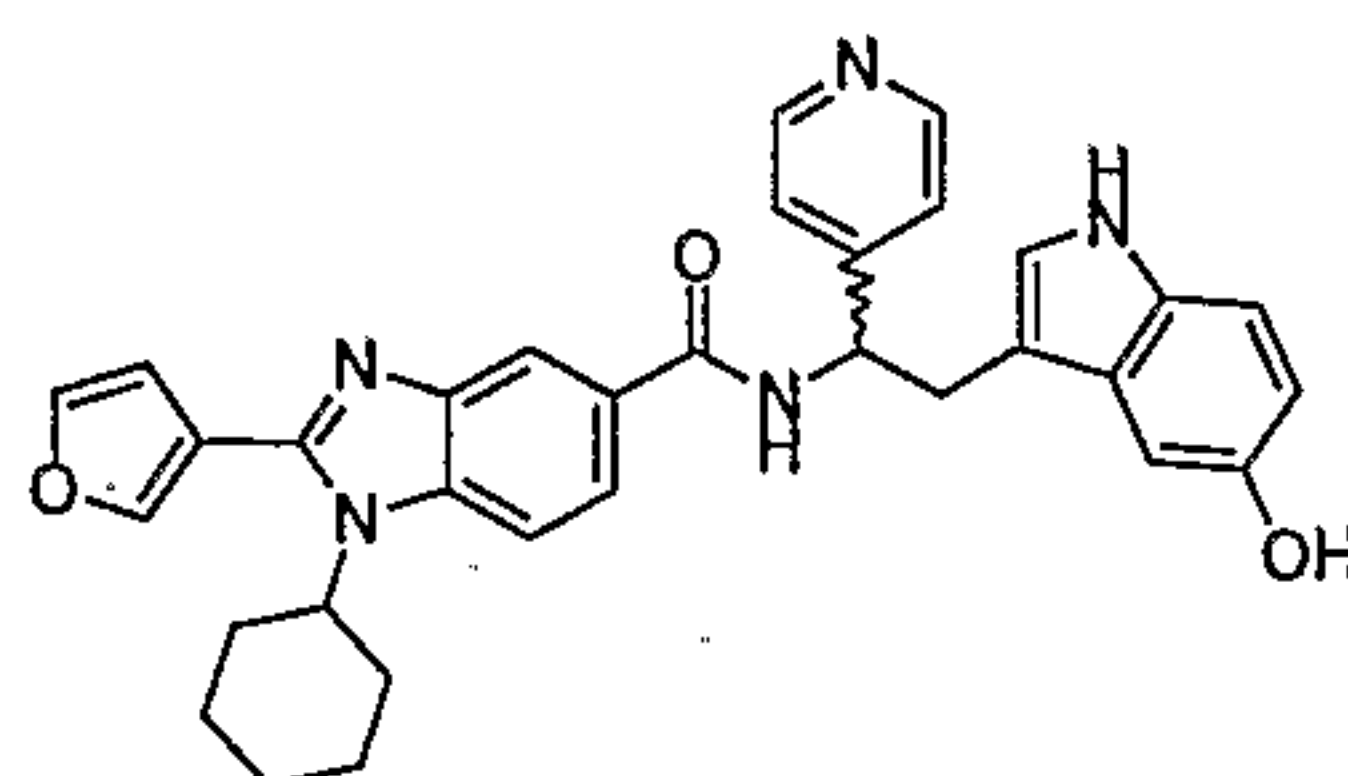


The procedure of example 39 was followed using 2-(aminomethyl)pyridine as starting material. Alkylation of the benzaldehyde imine derived from this compound with the bromomethyltryptophan derivative of example 41 gave after removal of Boc protecting groups the racemic amine as the dihydrochloride salt. The crude amine was coupled under usual conditions to the carboxylic acid derivative of example 2 to

give the title compound of example 42 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 43:

- 5 **Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-pyridin-4-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 11033, Table 11):**

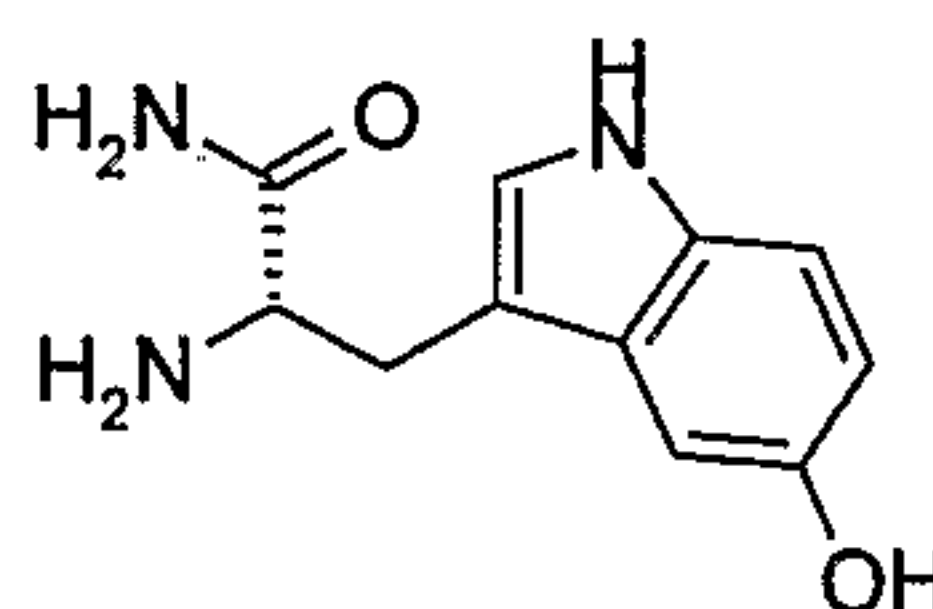


Following the above procedure for example 42, but starting with 4-(aminomethyl)pyridine, the title compound of example 43 was obtained.

10

Example 44:

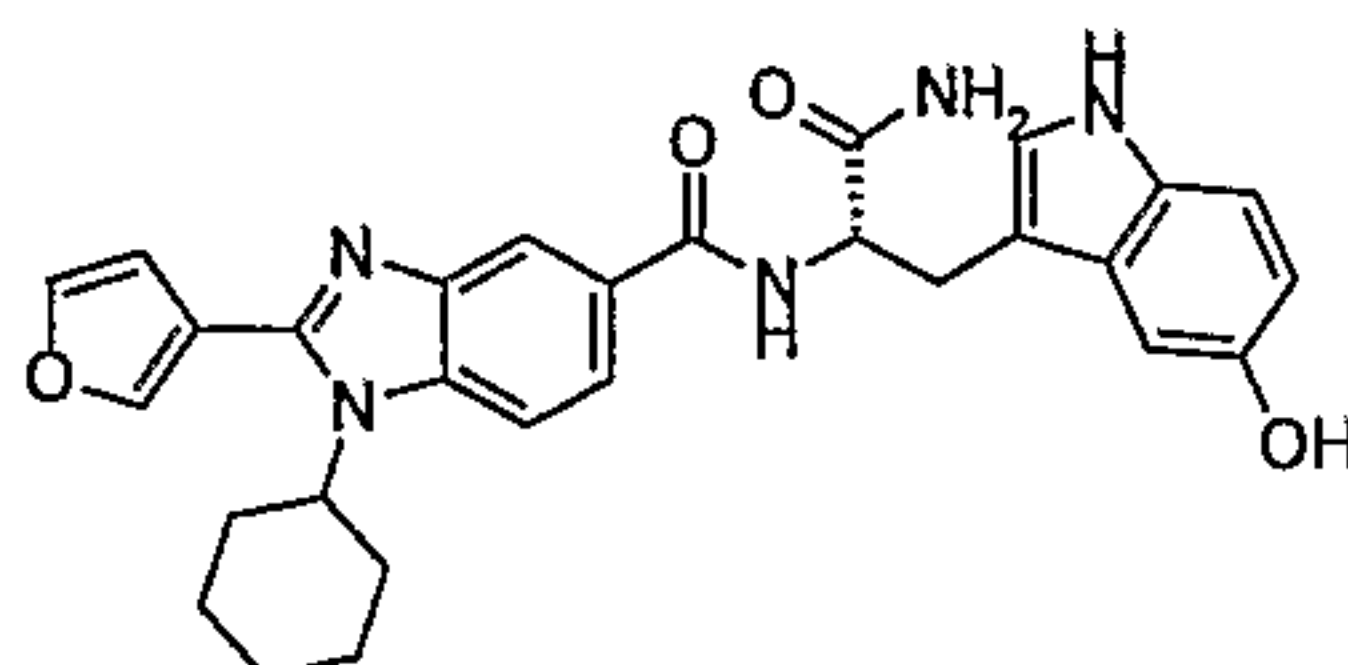
(S)-5-Hydroxytryptophan amide:



- 15 (S)-5-Hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (0.247 g, 0.91 mmol) was stirred overnight at room temperature in ammonium hydroxide (10 mL). After removal of volatiles under vacuum, the title compound of example 44 was obtained as a dark solid.

Example 45:

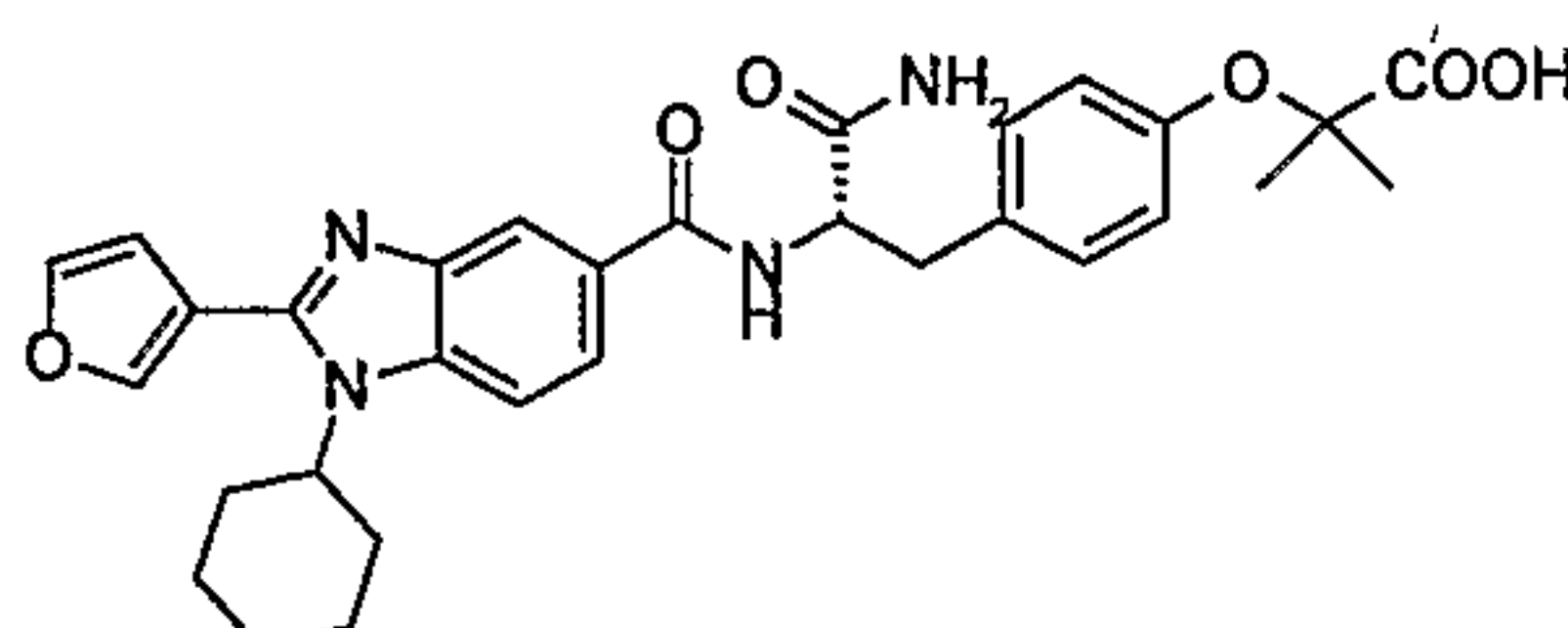
- 20 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13001, Table 13):**



- 25 The tryptophan amide derivative of example 44 was coupled in the usual manner with the carboxylic acid of example 2 to give after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC the title compound of example 45.

Example 46:

2-[4-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-phenoxy]-2-methyl-propionic acid (Entry 1171, Table 1):



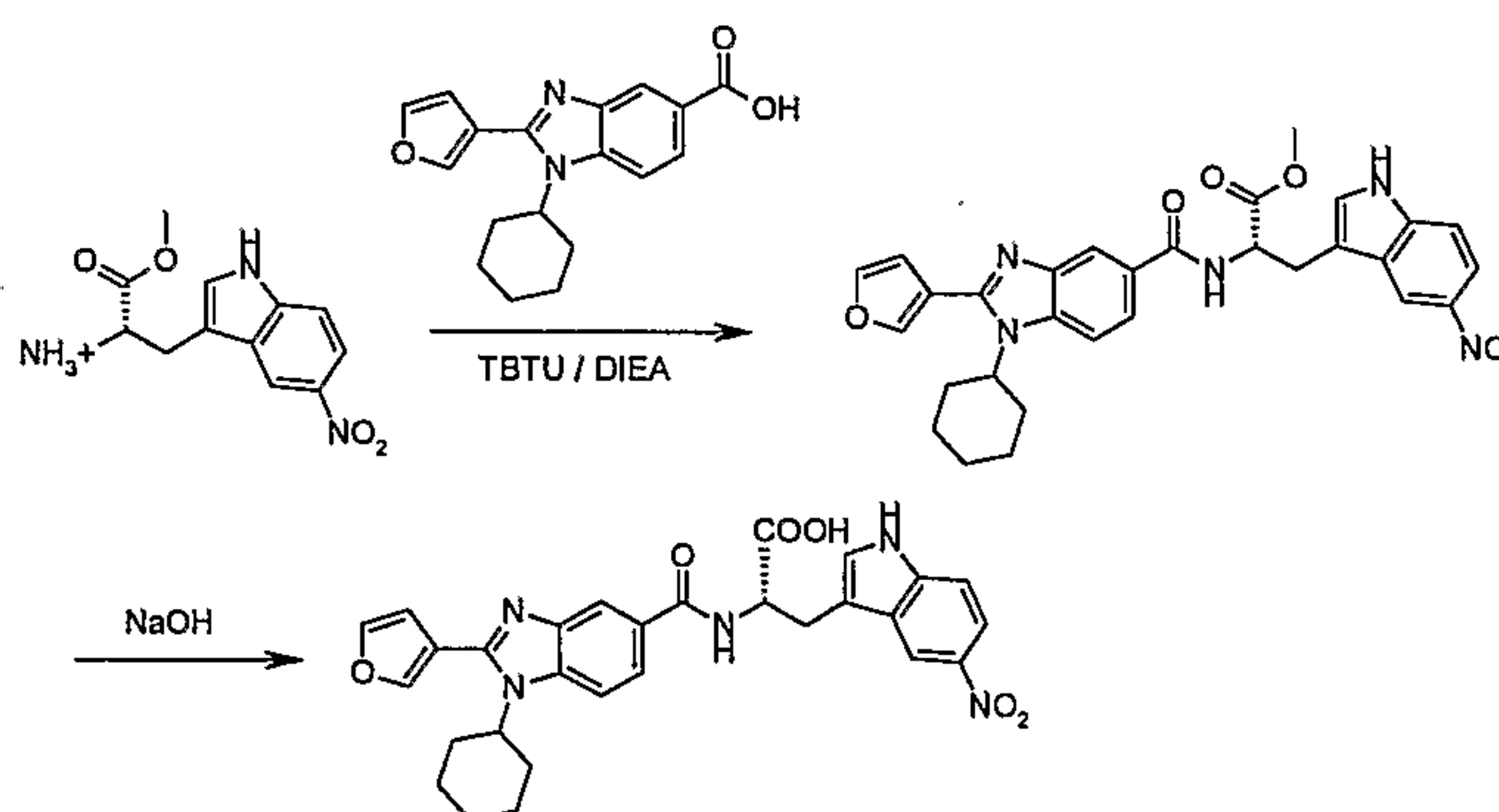
5

Tyrosine amide derivative (entry 16021, Table 16, BILB1028BS) (0.035 g, 0.074 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (0.5 mL). Cesium carbonate (0.072 g, 0.22 mmol) and *tert*butylbromoacetate (0.050 g, 0.22 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred at 60 °C for 1.5 h. Additional bromoacetate was added and the reaction brought to completion (HPLC) by refluxing overnight. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue treated with TFA (1 mL) for 1 h. The product was isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC to give the title compound of example 46.

10

Example 47:

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-nitro-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 1125, Table 1):

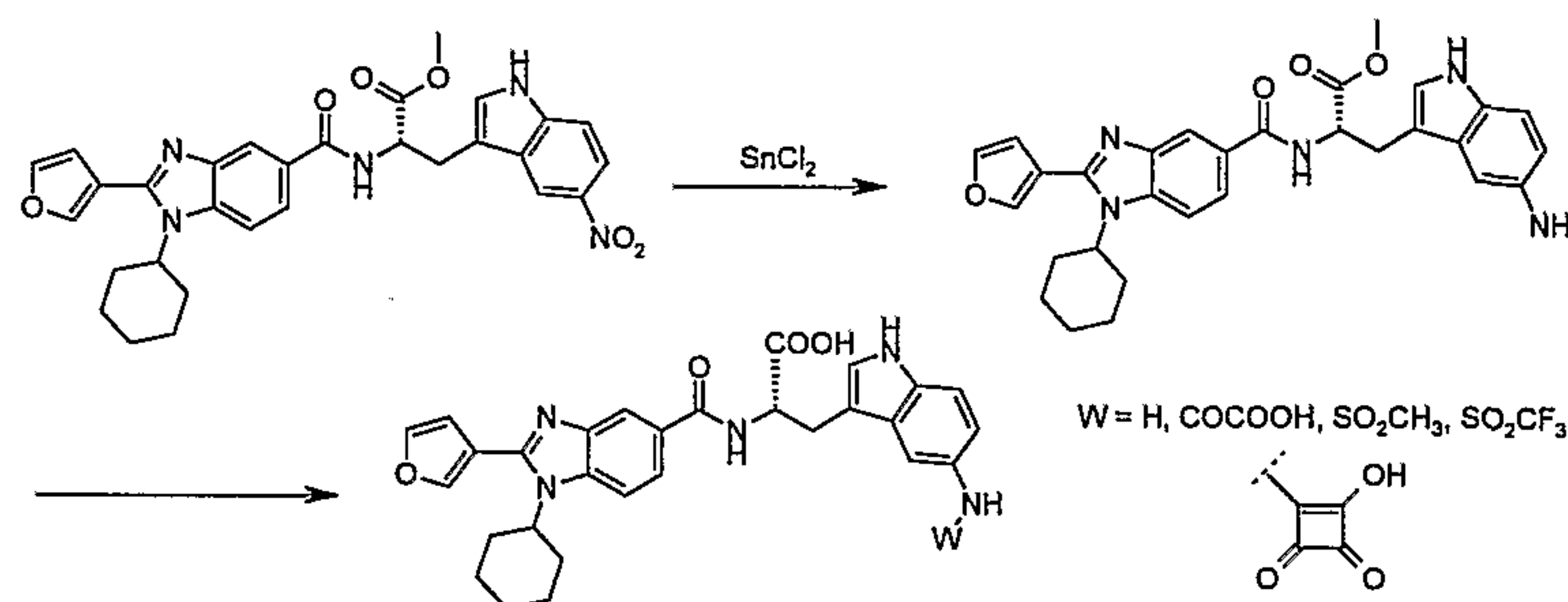


(S)-5-Nitrotryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride was prepared following adapted procedures of T. Hino et al. (*Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1983**, 1856) and K. Irie et al. (*Chem. Pharm. Bull.* **1984**, 2126). The amino ester derivative was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. Following saponification and purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 47 was obtained.

25

Example 48:

(S)-3-(5-Amino-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (Entry 11023, Table 11):



5 The 5-nitrotryptophan methyl ester intermediate of example 47 (0.400 g, 0.72 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (3 mL). Water (0.1 mL) and tin dichloride dihydrate (0.812 g, 3.6 mmol) were added and the mixture heated at 60 °C for 3 h and stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (50 mL),
 10 saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and EtOAc (50 mL). The mixture was vigorously stirred for 5 min and filtered to remove solids (wash cake with 50 mL of EtOAc). The organic layer from the filtrate was washed with water (3 X 50 mL) and brine (50 mL), and subsequently dried over MgSO₄. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was triturated with TBME (10 mL) to give the 5-aminotryptophan methyl ester derivative as a white solid (0.250 g).
 15 Following saponification and purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 48 (W = H) was obtained.

Example 49:

20 **(S)-3-{5-[(1-Carboxy-methanoyl)-amino]-1H-indol-3-yl}-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (Entry 11024, Table 11, W = COCOOH in example 48):**

The 5-aminotryptophan methyl ester intermediate of example 48 (0.025 g, 0.048 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (1 mL) and DIEA (17 µL, 0.095 mmol) and oxalyl methyl chloride (5 µL, 0.053 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred for 30 min and volatiles removed under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in DMSO (0.5 mL), 2.5 N NaOH (0.2 mL) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 30 min. After acidification with TFA, the title compound of example 49 was isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC (0.020 g).
 25

Example 50:

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-methanesulfonylamino-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 11025, Table 11, W = SO₂CH₃ in example 48):

Following the procedure described for example 49 and replacing oxalyl methyl chloride by methanesulfonyl chloride, the title compound of example 50 was obtained.

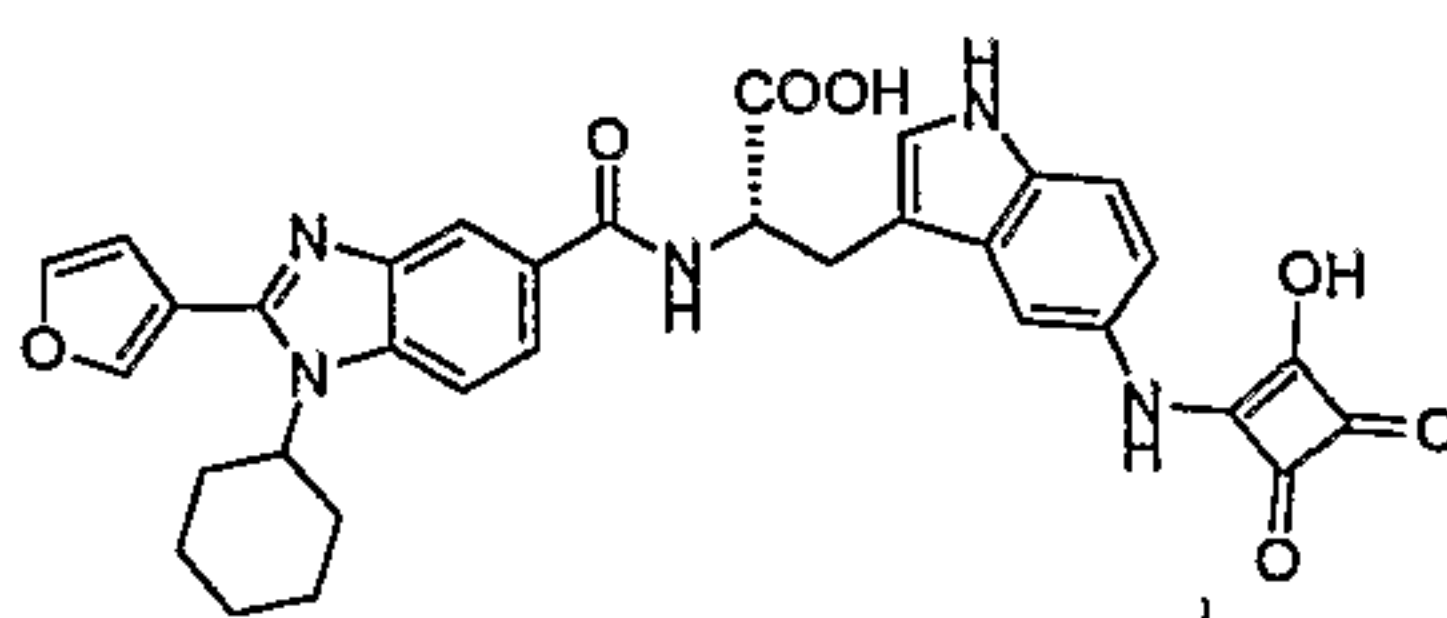
Example 51:

(S)-2-[[1-(Cyclohexyl-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-trifluoromethanesulfonylamino-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 11026, Table 11, W = SO₂CF₃ in example 48):

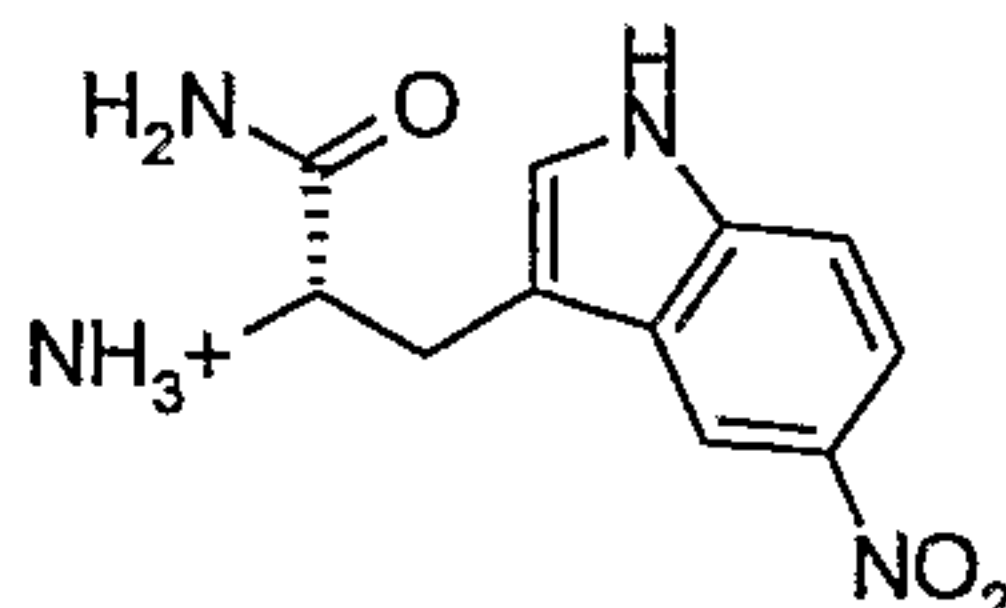
Following the procedure described for example 49 and replacing oxalyl methyl chloride by trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride, the title compound of example 51 was obtained.

Example 52:

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[5-(2-hydroxy-3,4-dioxo-cyclobut-1-enylamino)-1H-indol-3-yl]-propionic acid (Entry 11027, Table 11, W = squaric acid in example 48):



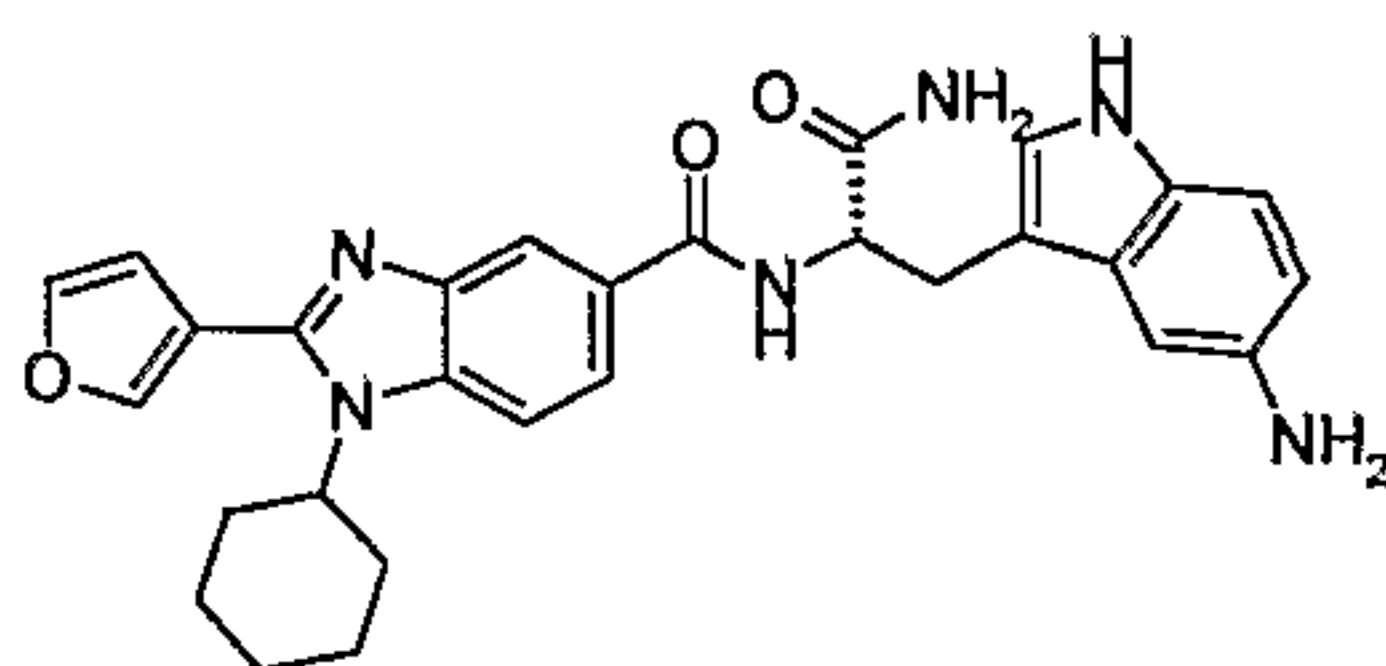
The 5-aminotryptophan methyl ester intermediate of example 48 (0.050 g, 0.095 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (2 mL) and 3,4-dimethoxy-3-cyclobutene-1,2-dione (0.041 g, 0.28 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Volatiles were then removed under reduced pressure and the protected derivative isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC as a yellow solid. The material was dissolved in DMSO (0.5 mL) and treated with 2.5 N NaOH (0.2 mL) at room temperature for 30 min. Following acidification with TFA, the title compound of example 52 was isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC (11 mg).

Example 53:**(S)-5-Nitrotryptophan amide hydrochloride:**

- 5 (S)-5-Nitrotryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (see example 47) was converted to the corresponding amide derivative following the procedure described in example 44 for the 5-hydroxy derivative. The amino amide was then converted to its hydrochloride salt using 4N HCl in dioxane.

Example 54:

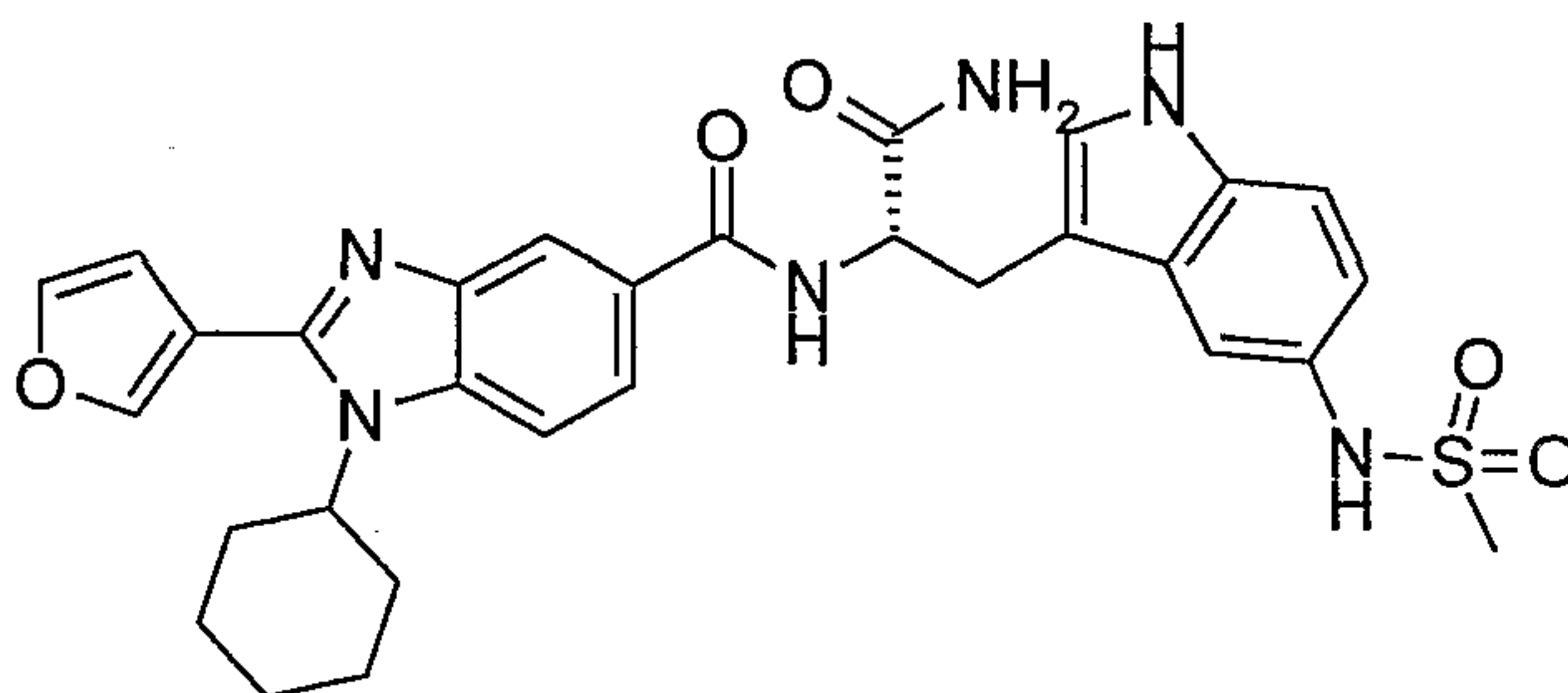
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-amino-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-carbamoyl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13005, Table 13):



- 15 The 5-nitrotryptophan amide derivative of example 53 was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The nitro group was then reduced to the corresponding amine using SnCl_2 dihydrate as described in example 48, to give the title compound of example 54 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 55:

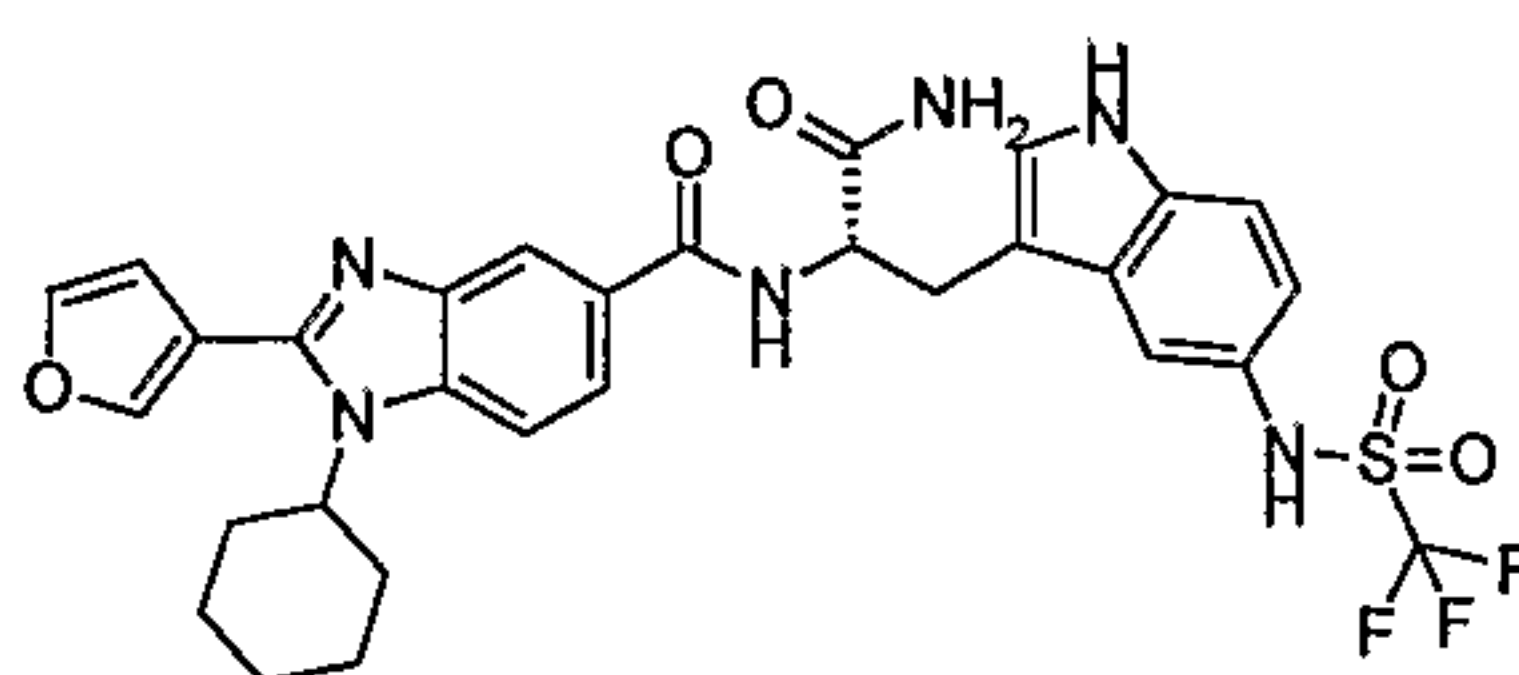
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-(5-methanesulfonylamino-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13006, Table 13):



The 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 was treated with methanesulfonyl chloride as described for example 50, to give the title compound of example 55.

Example 56:

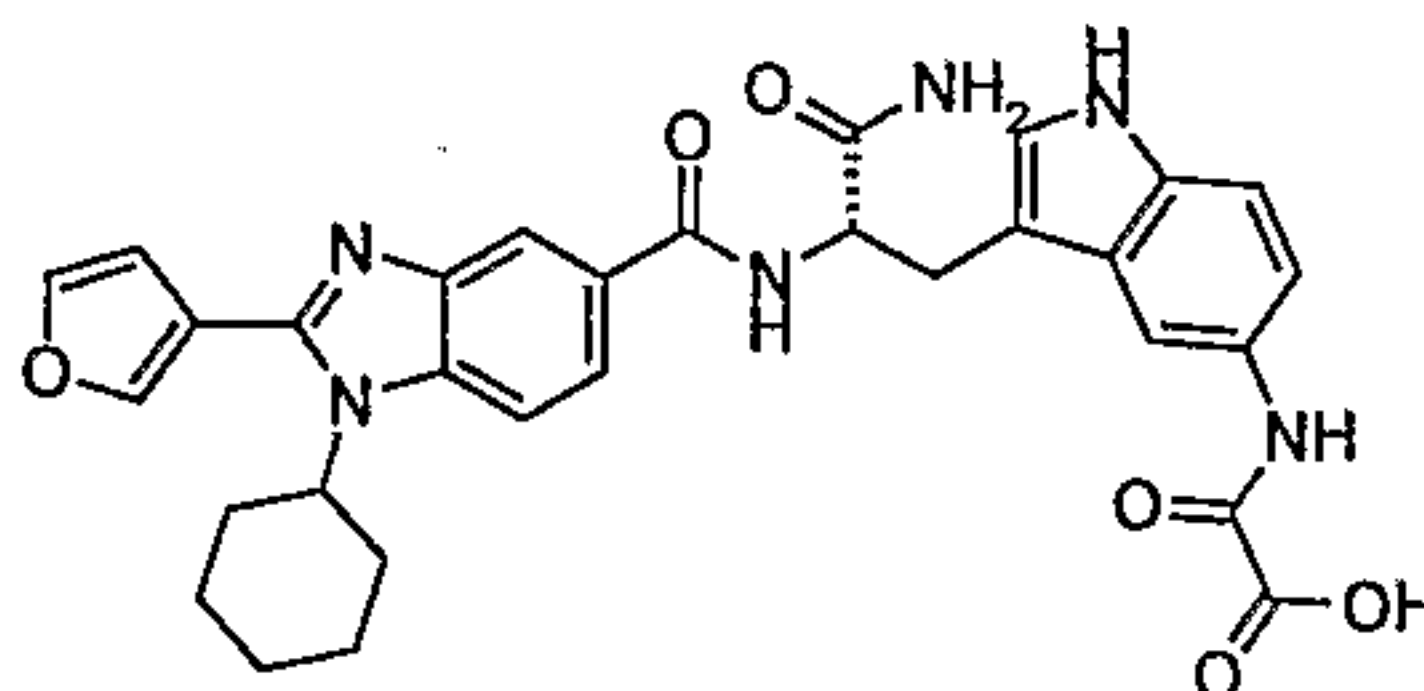
- 5 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-(5-trifluoromethanesulfonylamino-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13007, Table 13):**



- 10 The 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 was treated with trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride as described for example 51, to give the title compound of example 56.

Example 57:

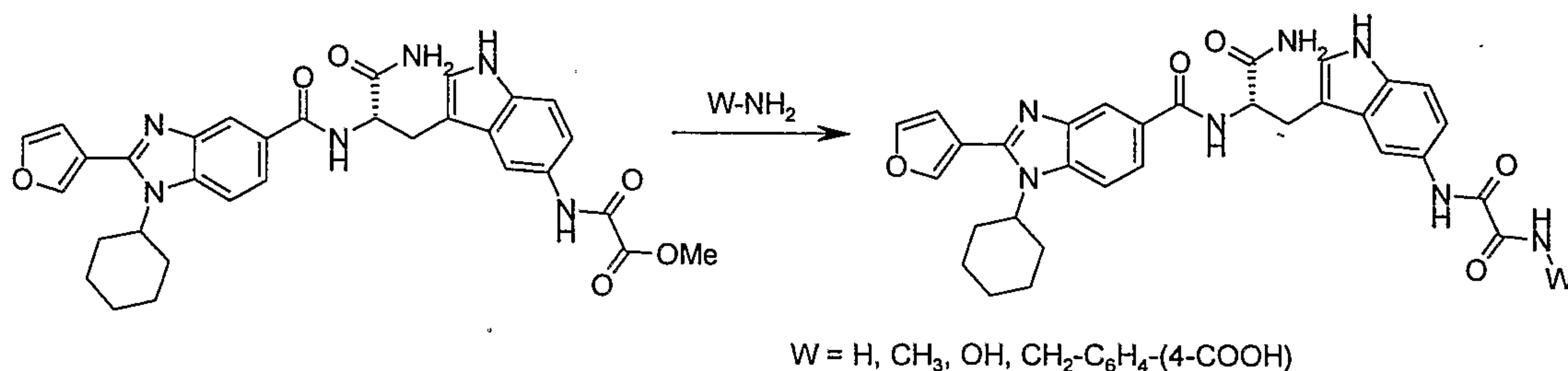
- 15 **N-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]-oxalamic acid (Entry 13008, Table 13):**



The 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 was treated with methyl oxalyl chloride as described for example 49, to give the title compound of example 57.

20 **Example 58:**

- N-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]-oxalamide (Entry 13009, Table 13, W = H):**



The 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 was treated with methyl oxalyl chloride as described for example 49. The resulting methyl ester derivative was dissolved in MeOH and treated with excess aqueous ammonium hydroxide to give
5 after isolation by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC the title compound of example 58.

Example 59:

***N*¹-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]-N²-methyl-oxalamide (Entry 13010, Table 13, W = CH₃ in example 58):**
10

The procedure of example 58 was followed except that methylamine (2M in THF) was used instead of ammonium hydroxide, to give the title compound of example 59.

15

Example 60:

***N*¹-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]-N²-hydroxy-oxalamide (Entry 13011, Table 13, W = OH in example 58):**

20 The procedure of example 58 was followed except that hydroxylamine hydrochloride and two equivalents of DIEA were used instead of ammonium hydroxide, to give the title compound of example 60.

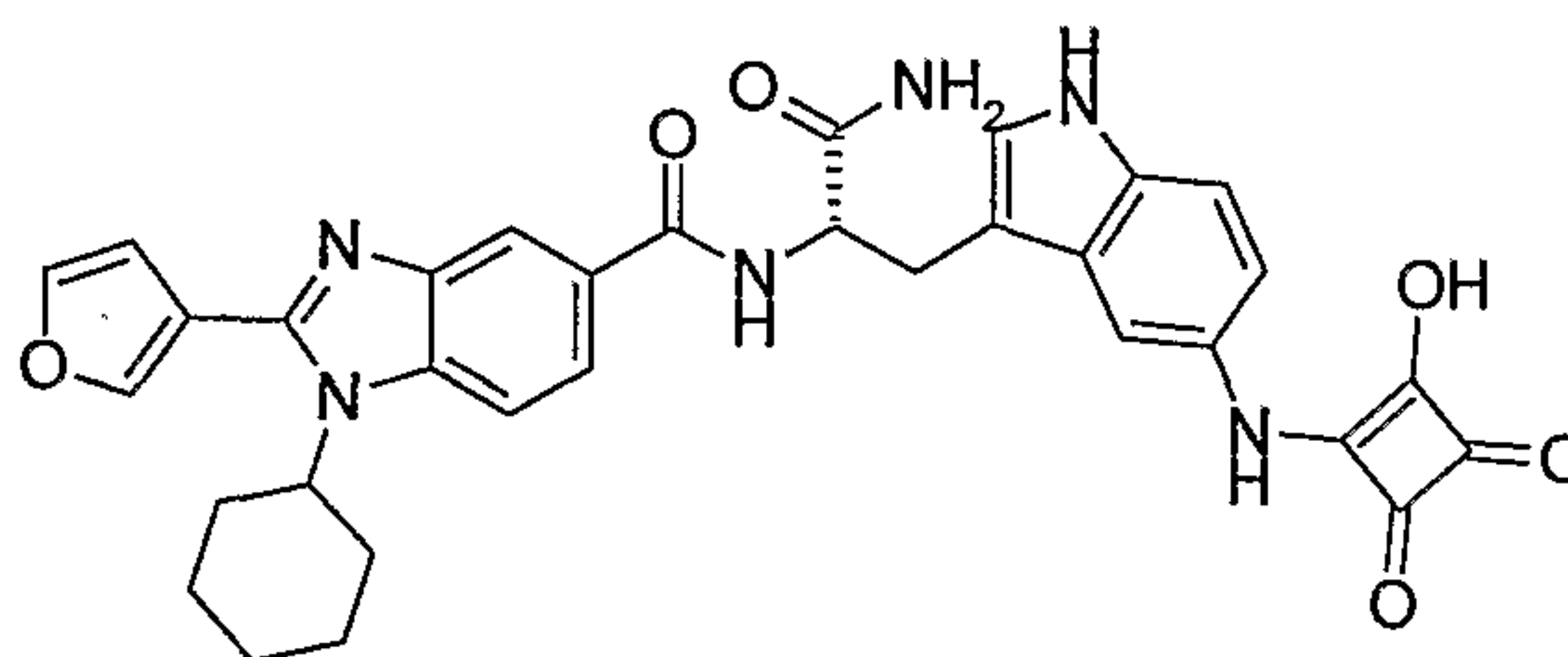
Example 61:

25 ***4-[(1-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1H-indol-5-yl]carbamoyl]-methanoyl]-amino)-methyl]-benzoic acid* (Entry 13012, Table 13, W = CH₂C₆H₄-(4-COOH) in example 58):**

30 The procedure of example 58 was followed except that 4-(aminomethyl)benzoic acid and two equivalents of DIEA were used instead of ammonium hydroxide, to give the title compound of example 61.

Example 62:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid {(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-[5-(2-hydroxy-3,4-dioxo-cyclobut-1-enylamino)-1H-indol-3-yl]-ethyl}-amide(Entry 13004, Table 13):

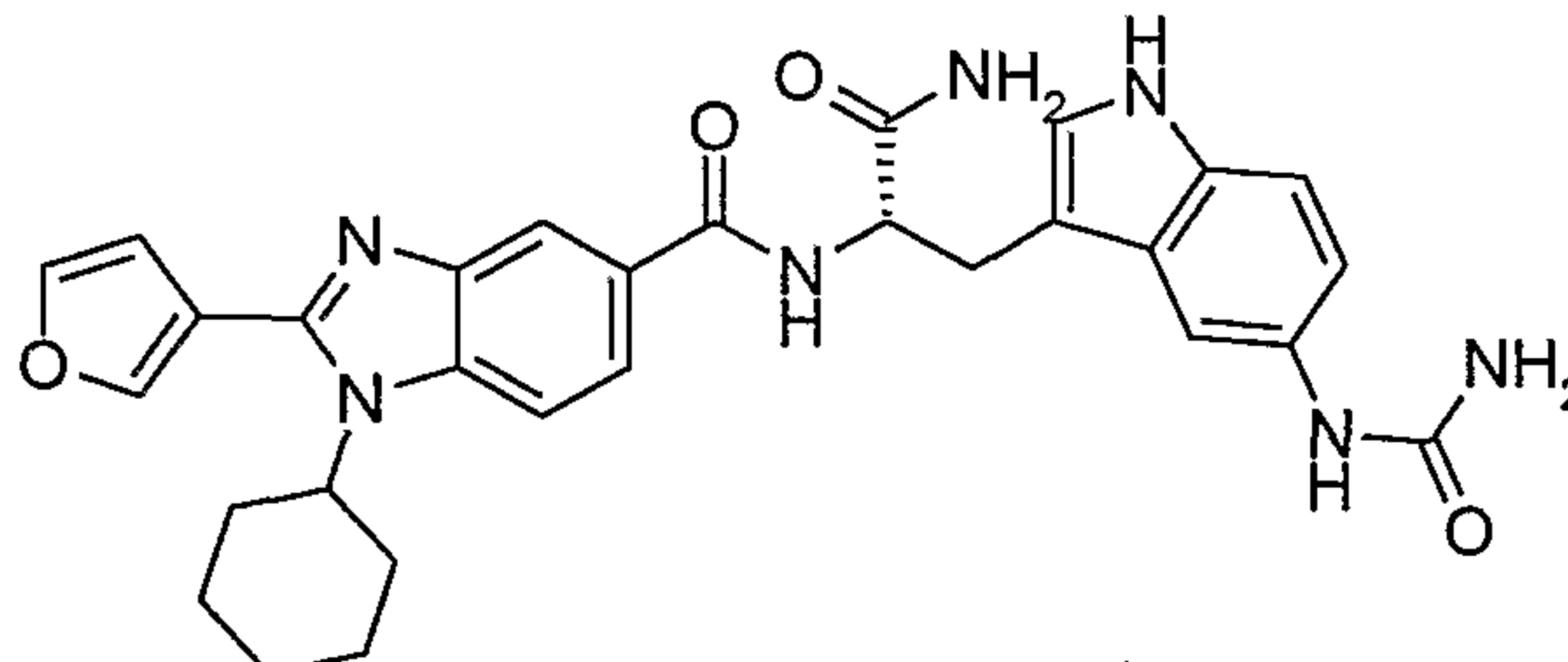


5

Following the procedure described in example 52, the 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 was converted to the title compound of example 62:.

Example 63:

10 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-(5-ureido-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13013, Table 13):**

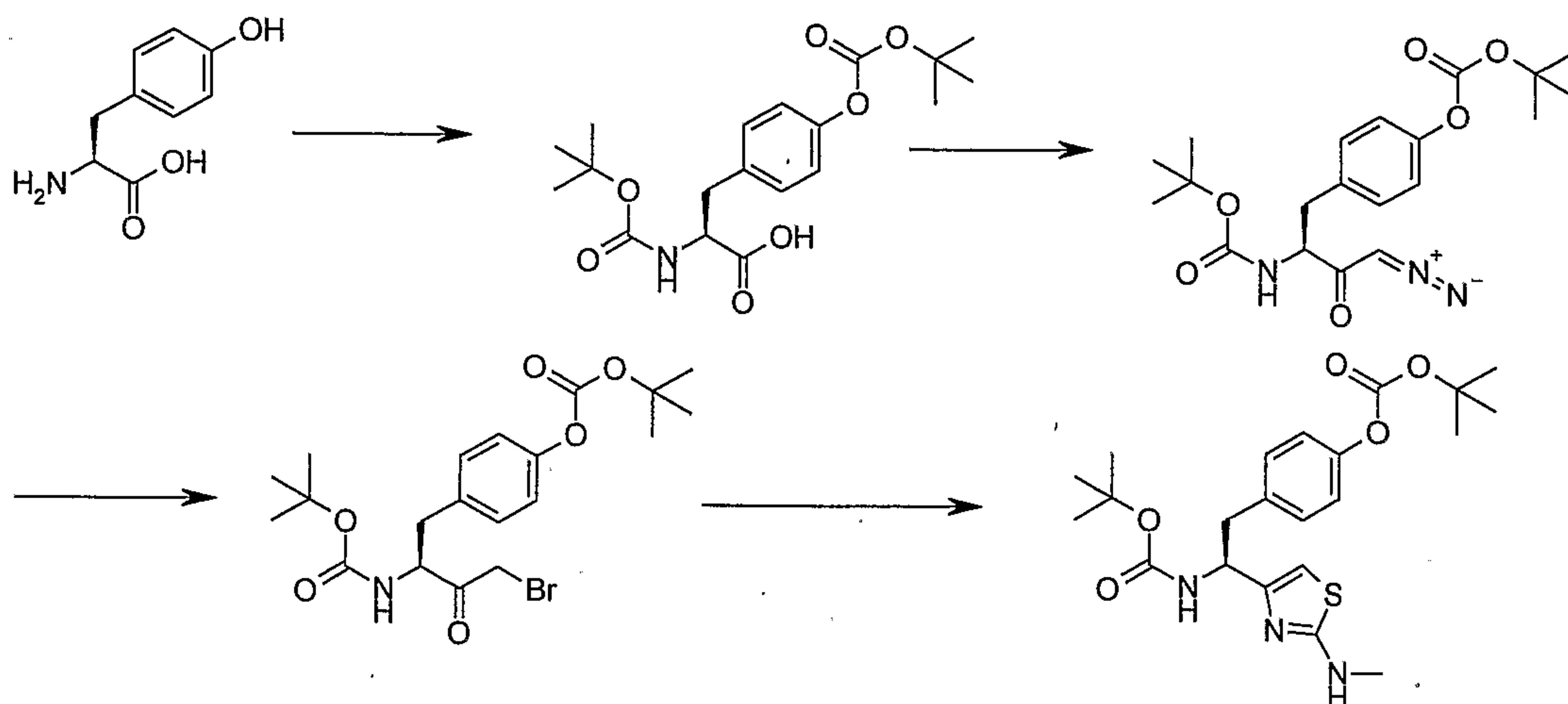


15 The 5-aminotryptophan derivative of example 54 (0.040 g, 0.078 mmol) and KOCN (0.019 g, 0.24 mmol) were dissolved in AcOH (2 mL) and the mixture was stirred for 1 h at room temperature. The urea derivative of example 63 was isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 64:

20 **Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester:**

106



N,O-Bis-Boc-(S)-tyrosine:

To a mechanically stirred suspension of L-tyrosine (50.00 g, 276 mmol) in 700 mL of water was added di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (163.00 g, 745 mmol) dissolved in 400 mL of isopropanol. The pH was adjusted to 12.0 by adding a solution of 8N KOH and was subsequently maintained at this value by adding small volumes of the basic solution. After 4 h, di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (100 g) was added and the mixture stirred overnight. The isopropanol was evaporated under reduced pressure, the residue diluted with 1 L of water, washed with Et₂O (500 mL) and a 1:1 mixture of Et₂O/hexane (2 X 500 mL). The aqueous solution was stirred with Et₂O (1 L), cooled in an ice bath and the pH was adjusted to 2.5 with conc. HCl. The organic layer was decanted, the aqueous layer re-extracted with Et₂O (2 X 500 mL), the organic fractions were pooled, washed with brine (500 mL), dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent evaporated to yield 96.85 g (92%) of a thick clear oil which crystallized on standing.

Carbonic acid 4-((*S*)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-4-diazo-3-oxo-butyl)-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

N,O-Bis-Boc-(*S*)-tyrosine (6.00 g, 15.73 mmol) was dissolved in THF (40 mL), the solution stirred under an argon atmosphere and cooled in an ice bath. Isobutyl chloroformate (3.06 mL, 23.59 mmol) was added followed by DIEA (8.22 mL, 47.19 mmol). Additional isobutyl chloroformate (1 mL) was added after 1.5 and 2.5 h. To the cold suspension was then added a ca 0.6M Et₂O solution of diazomethane (80 mL) by portions. After 15 min. of stirring, nitrogen was diffused in the solution for 0.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated, the residue taken into EtOAc (75 mL) and the

solution washed with 0.5M aqueous citric acid (2 X 50 mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 X 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). After drying (MgSO₄) and evaporation of the solvent under reduced pressure, the residue was purified by flash chromatography (20% EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound (5.52 g) of a yellowish solid.

Carbonic acid 4-((S)-4-bromo-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-oxo-butyl)-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

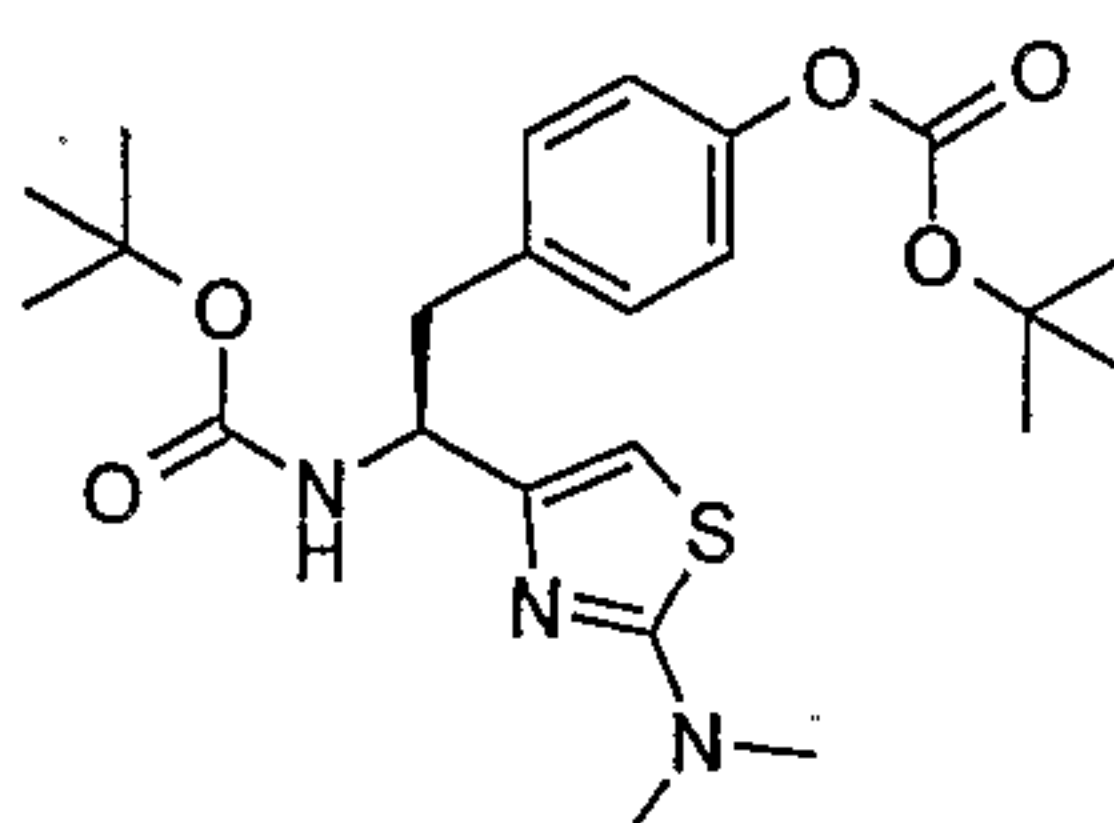
The diazoketone prepared above was dissolved in EtOAc (25 mL), the solution stirred under an argon atmosphere and cooled to -25 °C. A solution of HBr in AcOH (45% w/v, 1.33 mL, 7.40 mmol) was then added in small portions over 20 min. After 10 min the suspension was diluted with EtOAc (50mL), washed with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (4 X 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). After drying (MgSO₄) and evaporation of the solvent, the title compound (2.75 g) was obtained as a clear oil which crystallized on standing.

Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

To the bromoketone prepared above (0.750 g, 1.64 mmol) dissolved in MeCN (10 mL) was added *N*-methylthiourea (0.192 g, 2.13 mmol) and the mixture was stirred 18 h at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated to give the title compound (0.855 g, >100% yield) as a tan solid that was used directly for coupling to the carboxylic acid of example 2 (see example 69).

Example 65:

Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-dimethylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

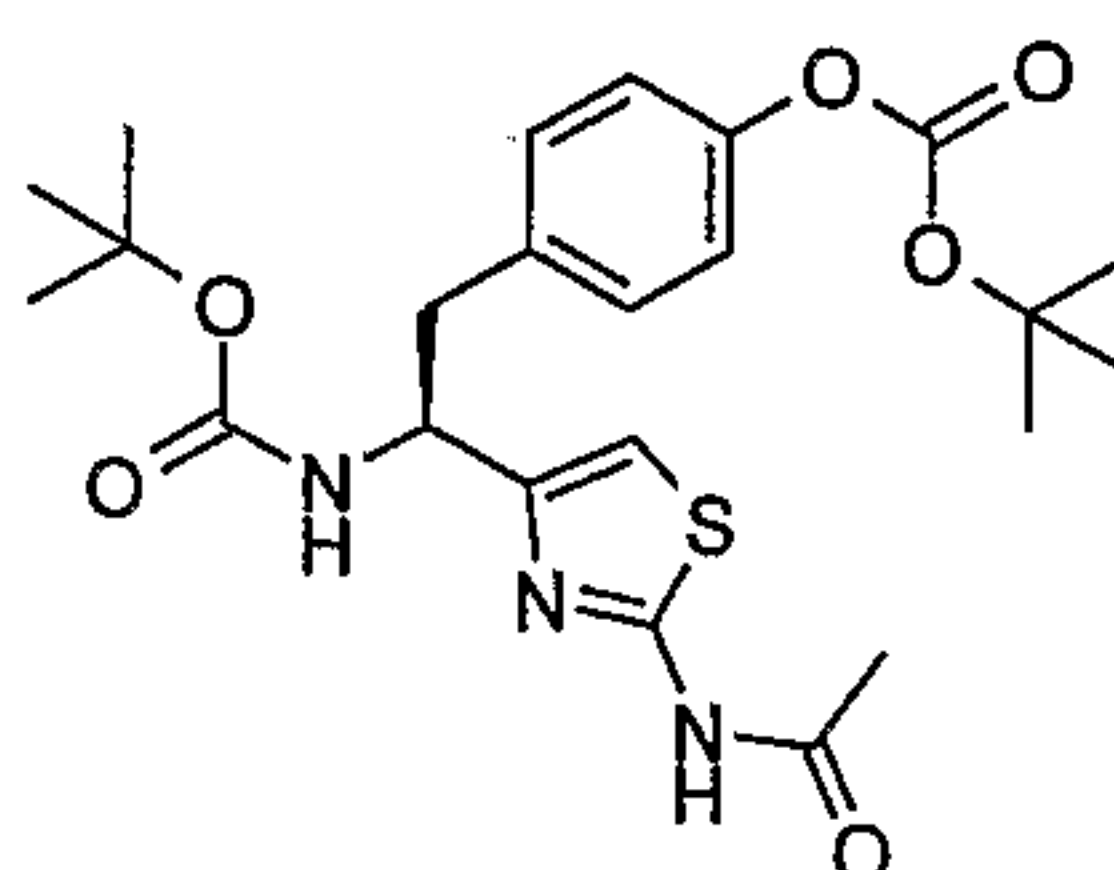


Prepared as described in example 64 except that *N,N*-dimethylthiourea was used instead of *N*-methylthiourea.

Example 66:

Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-(2-acetylthiazol-4-yl)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester:

5

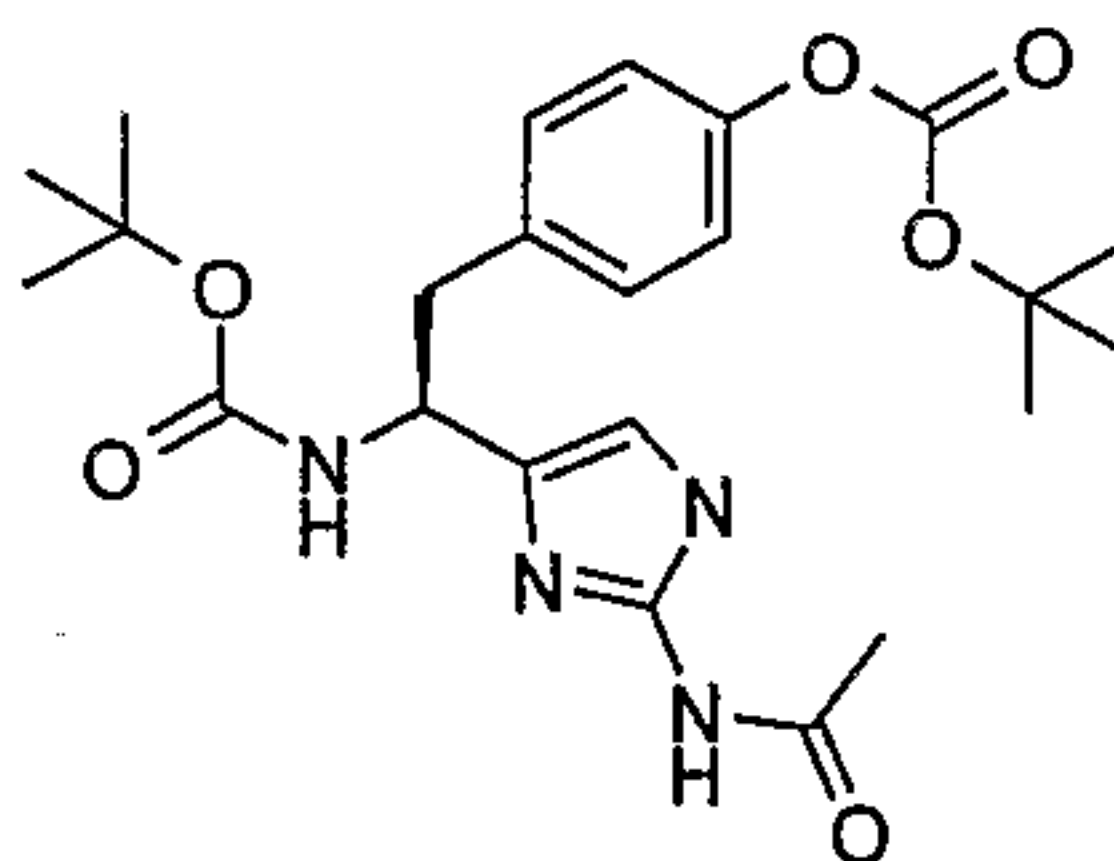


Prepared as described in example 64 except that *N*-acetyl-2-thiourea was used instead of *N*-methylthiourea.

10

Example 67:

Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-(2-acetyl-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester:

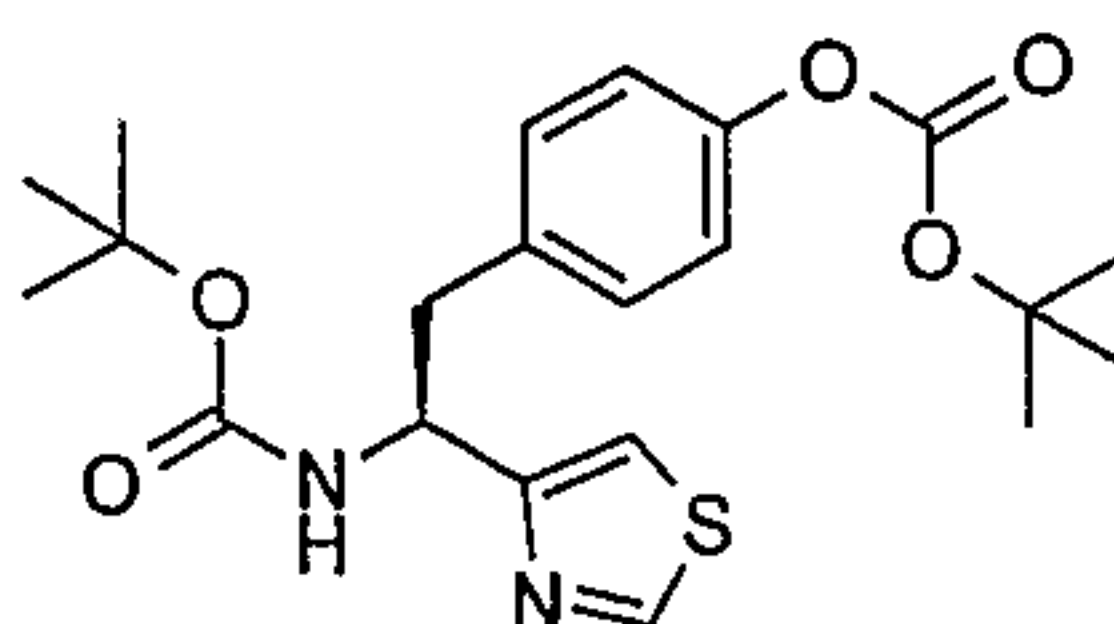


Prepared as described in example 64 except that 1-acetylguanidine was used instead of *N*-methylthiourea.

15

Example 68:

Carbonic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-thiazol-4-yl-ethyl)-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester:



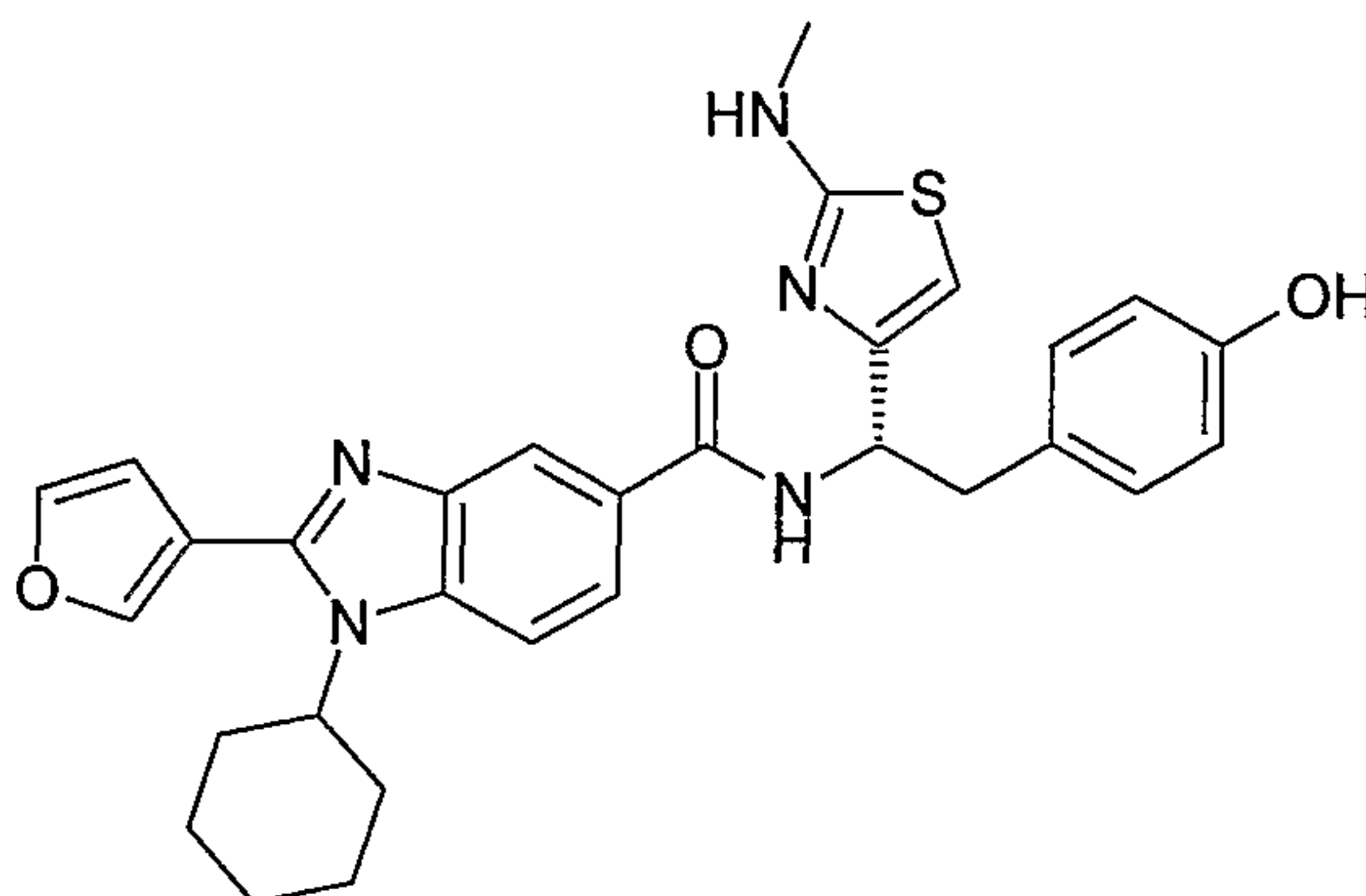
20

To a stirred suspension of P_2S_5 (0.89 g, 2.0 mmol) in dry dioxane (5 mL) was added dry formamide (433 μ L, 10.9 mmol). The mixture was heated at 90°C for 2.5 h (to maintain a free suspension occasional trituration was needed). The suspension was

allowed to cool to RT, the solid filtered off and the bromoketone from example 64 (0.229 g, 0.5 mmol) was added to the filtrate. The solution was heated to 80 °C for 2 h then diluted with EtOAc (25 mL), washed with 5% aqueous citric acid (2 X 20 mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 X 20 mL) and brine. After drying (MgSO₄) and removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the title compound (186 g) was obtained as a brown solid.

Example 69:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1240, Table 1):

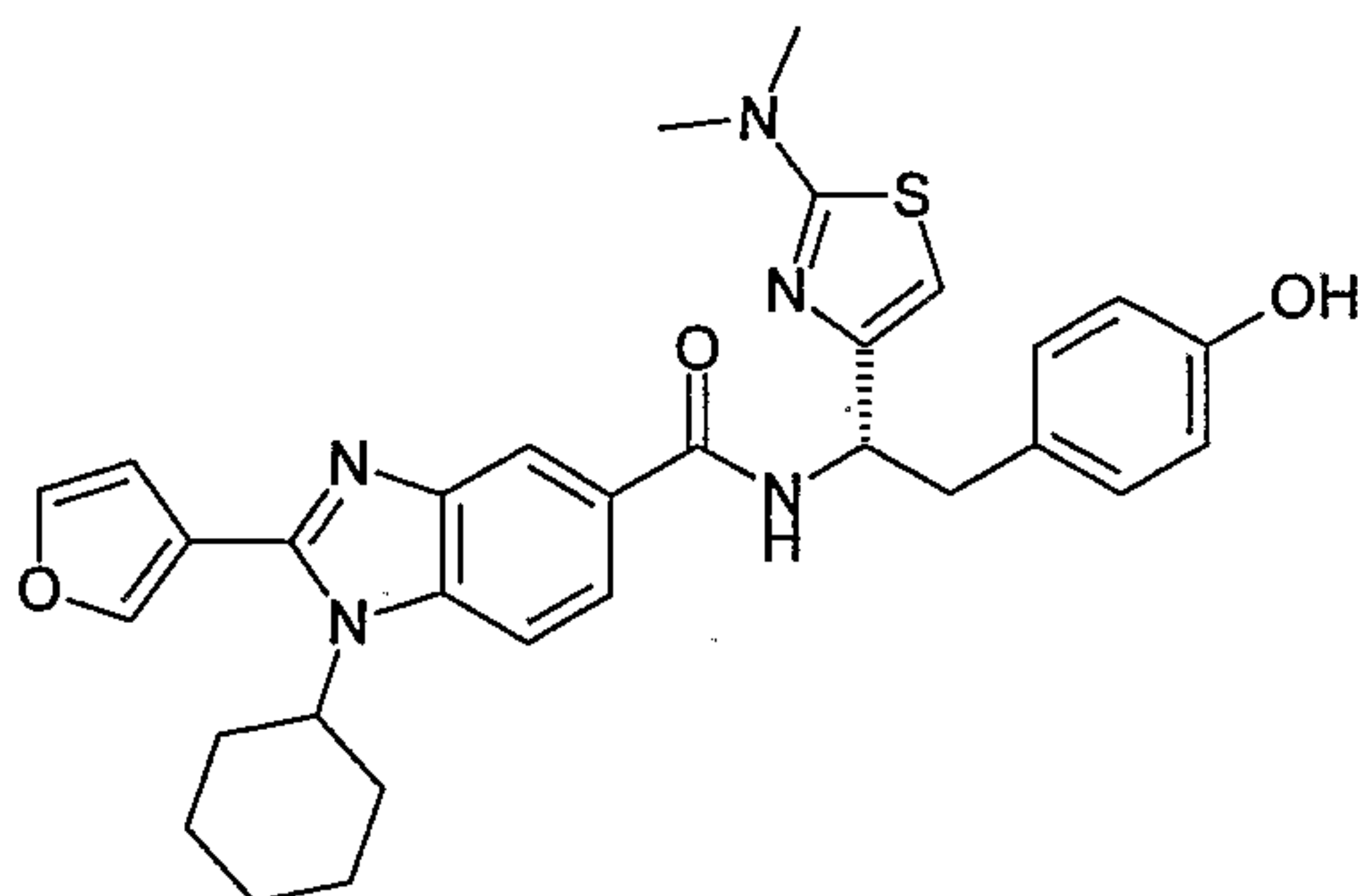


The crude protected aminothiazole derivative of example 69 (0.075 g, 0.17 mmol) was dissolved in dioxane (1 mL) and a 4N solution of HCl in dioxane was added. After 2.5 h the solvent was evaporated and the residue dried under high vacuum for 0.5 h. The resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give the title compound of example 69 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 70:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-dimethylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1241, Table 1):

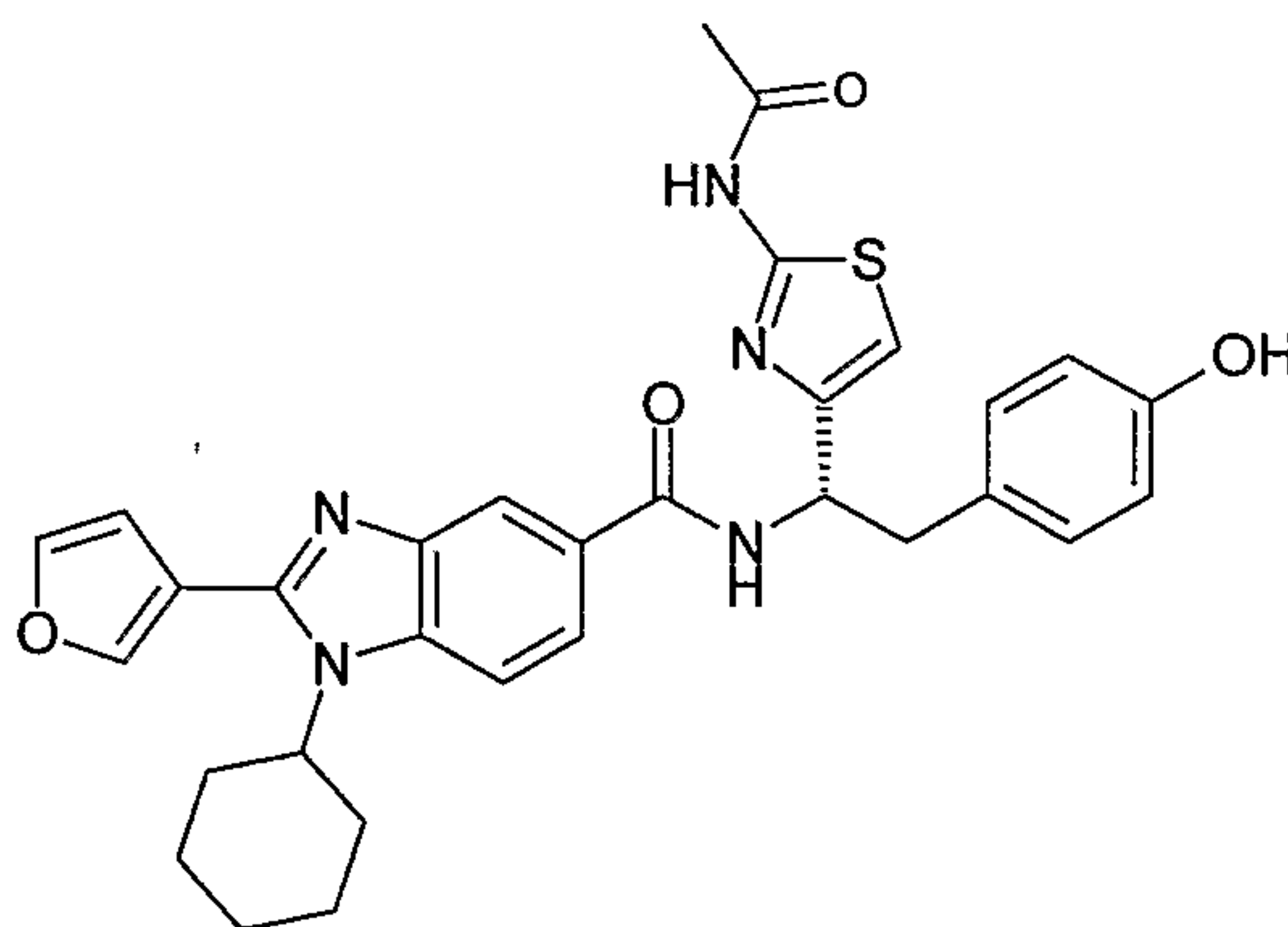
110



Prepared as described in example 69 from the aminothiazole derivative of example 65.

5 **Example 71:**

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-acetylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1242, Table 1):

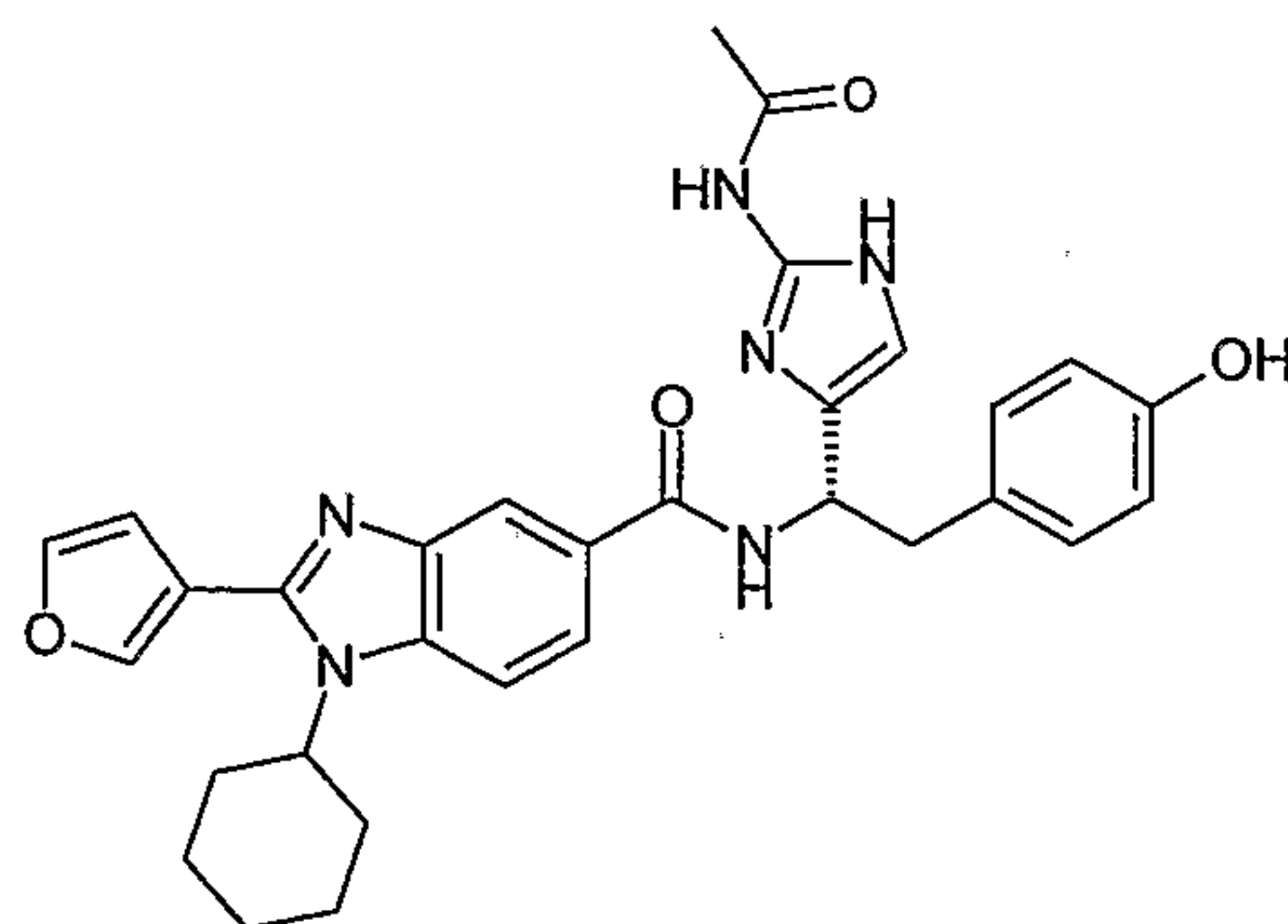


10 Prepared as described in example 69 from the aminothiazole derivative of example 66.

Example 72:

15 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-acetylamino-1H-imidazol-4-yl)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1243, Table 1):**

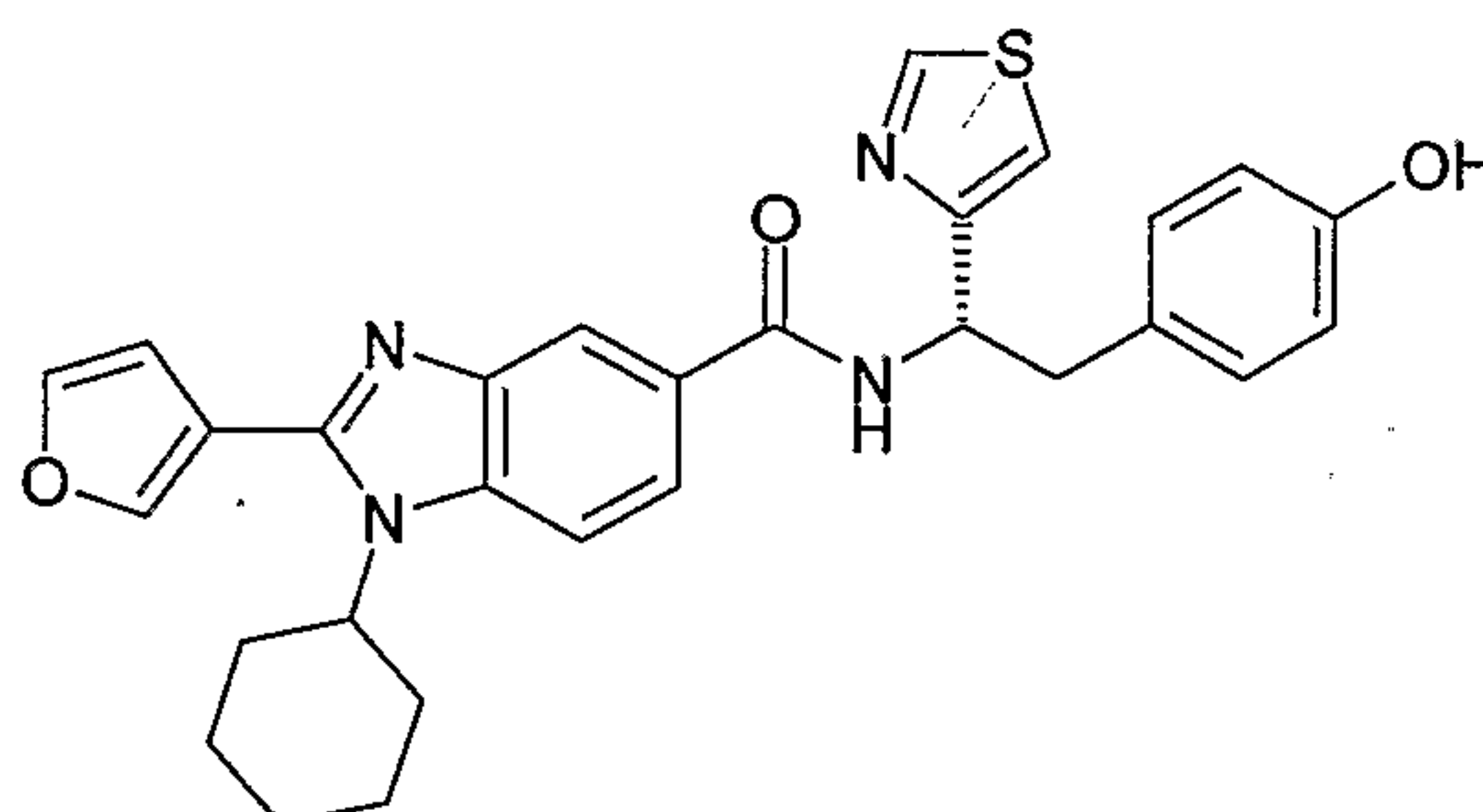
.111



Prepared as described in example 69 from the imidazole derivative of example 67.

Example 73:

- 5 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-thiazol-4-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1250, Table 1):**

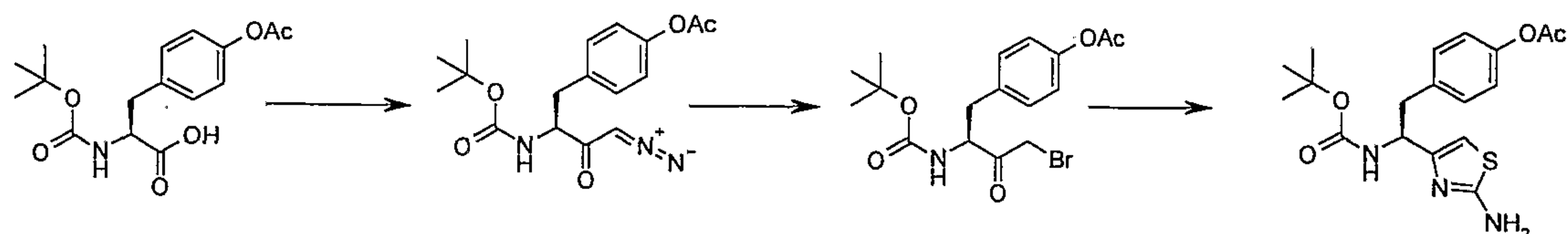


Prepared as described in example 69 from the aminothiazole derivative of example 68.

10

Example 74:

Acetic acid 4-[(S)-2-(2-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-phenyl ester:



- 15 **Acetic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-4-diazo-3-oxo-butyl)-phenyl ester:** A solution of Boc-(S)-Tyr(OAc)-OH (1.75 g, 5.4 mmol) in THF (20 mL) was

stirred under argon and cooled to -5°C . DIEA (2.83 mL, 16.2 mmol) and isobutyl chloroformate (1.05 mL, 8.2 mmol) were added. After 1 h, additional isobutyl chloroformate (1 mL) was added and stirring continued for 1 h. To the cold suspension was then added an excess of a *ca* 0.6M Et_2O solution of diazomethane (25 mL) in small portions. After 16 h of stirring nitrogen was diffused in the solution for 0.5 h. The solvent was evaporated, the residue taken in EtOAc (50 mL) and the solution washed with 0.5M aqueous citric acid (2 X 25 mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 X 25 mL) and brine (25 mL). After drying (MgSO_4) and removal of the solvent, the residue was purified by flash chromatography (gradient 30 to 50% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 1.14g (60%) of a yellowish solid.

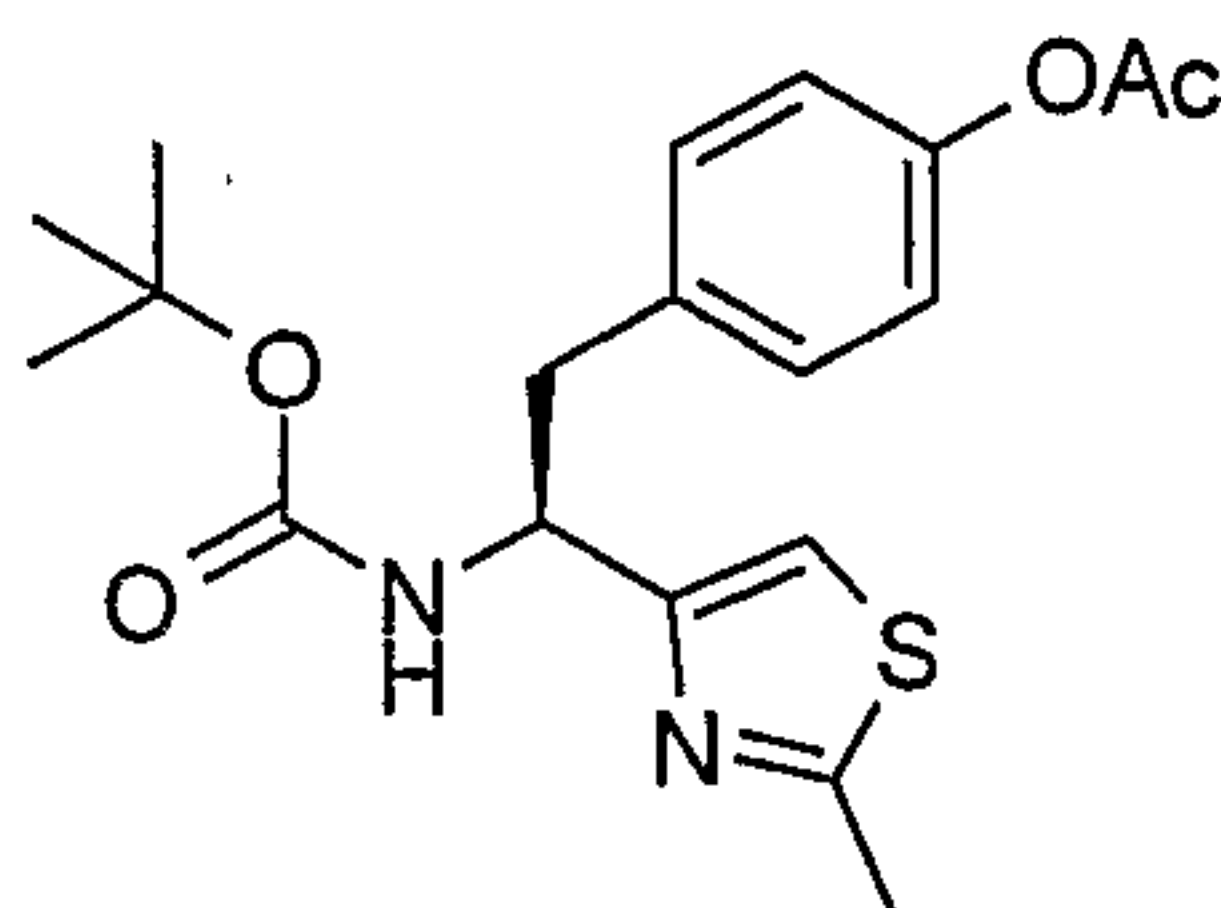
Acetic acid 4-((S)-4-bromo-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-3-oxo-butyl)-phenyl ester: The title compound was prepared as in example 64 using the diazomethylketone from above.

Acetic acid 4-[(S)-2-(2-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-phenyl ester:

The bromoketone from above (0.600 g, 1.50 mmol) and thiourea (0.135 g, 1.80 mmol) were stirred at room temperature in MeCN (10 mL) for 18 hrs. The solid was filtered and dried under high vacuum to yield the title compound.

Example 75:

Acetic acid 4-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester:

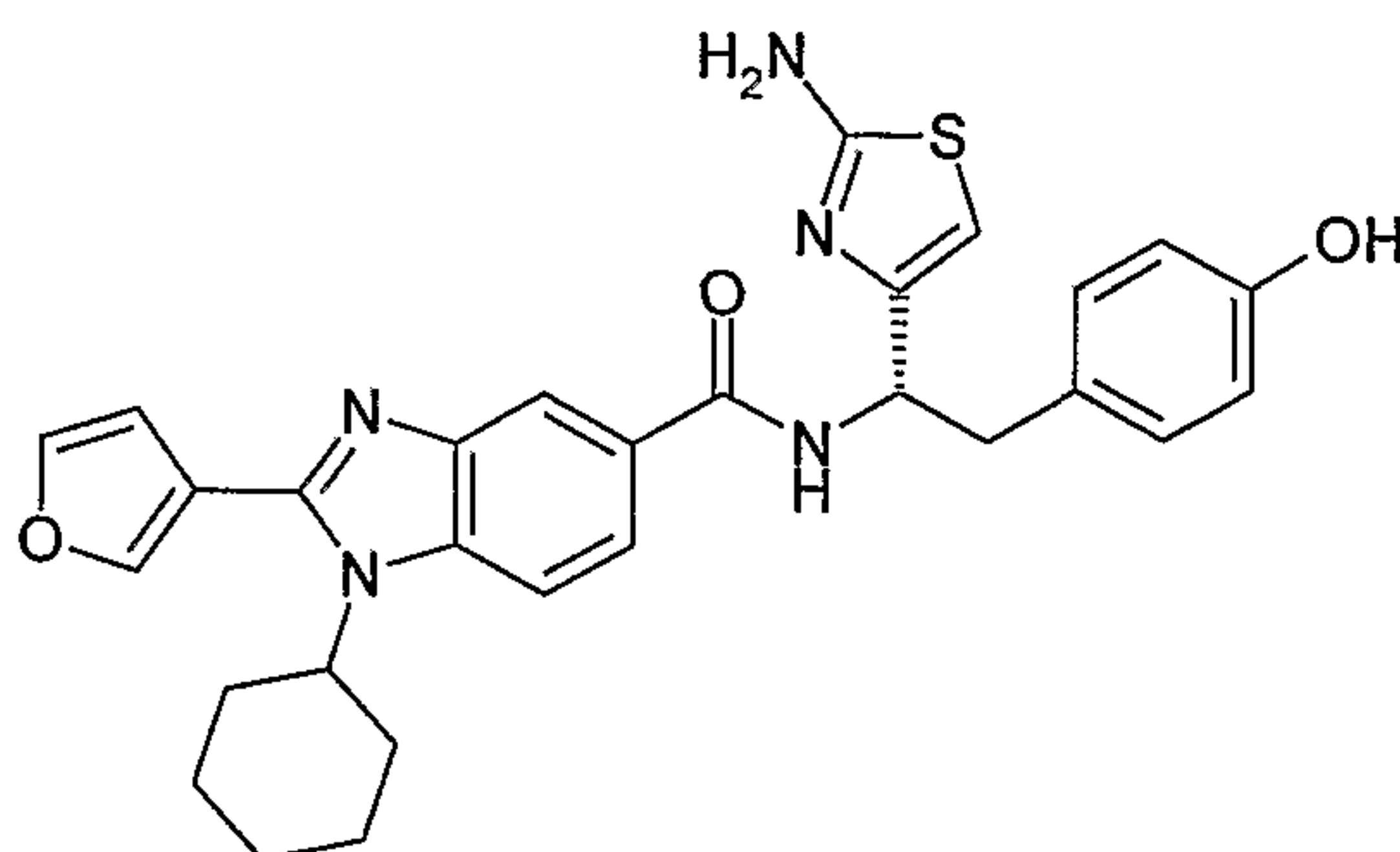


Prepared as described in example 74 except that thioacetamide was used instead of thiourea, and refluxing conditions were used for condensation with the bromomethyl ketone. Under those conditions, the *N*-Boc protecting group was cleaved. The

crude reaction product was thus re-protected (di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate / aqueous 5% NaHCO₃ / dioxane) to allow purification by flash chromatography.

Example 76:

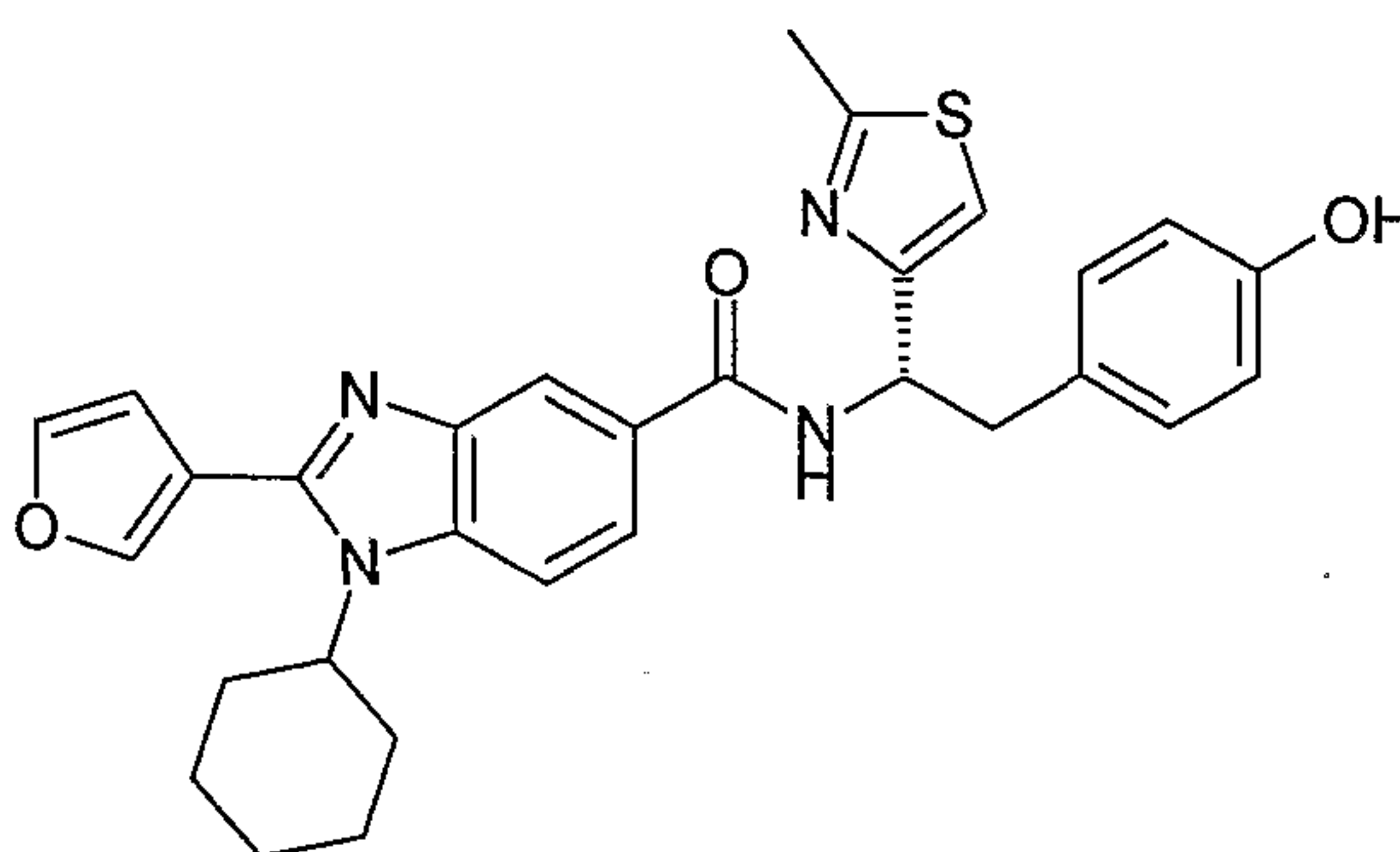
- 5 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 16060, Table 16):**



- 10 The protected aminothiazole derivative of example 74 was deprotected on nitrogen by stirring with 4N HCl – dioxane as in example 69. The resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give, after removal of the O-acetyl protecting group (NaOH) the title compound of example 75 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

EXAMPLE 77:

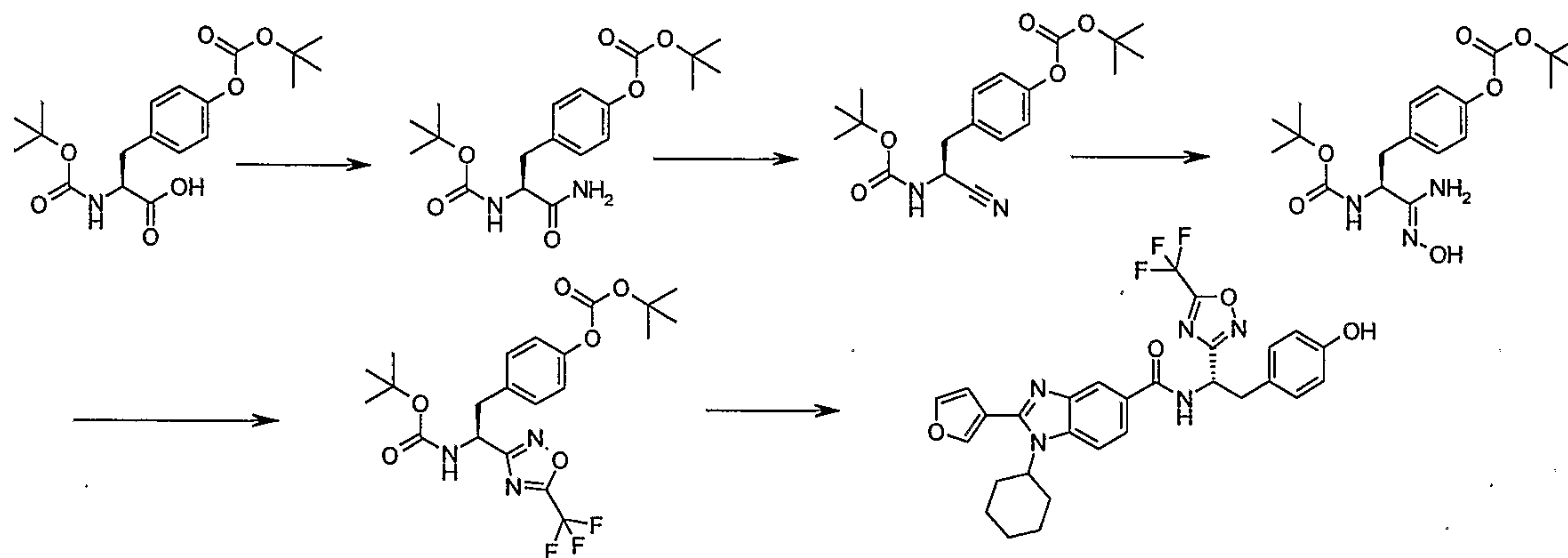
- 15 **1-Cyclohexyl-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-1-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1187, Table 1):**



Prepared as described in example 76 except that the thiazole derivative of example 75 was used.

Example 78:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-(5-trifluoromethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1298, Table 1):



5

Carbonic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-carbamoyl-ethyl)-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester: *N,O*-Bis-Boc-(*S*)-tyrosine from example 64 (5.00 g, 13.11

mmol) was dissolved in THF (20 mL), the solution stirred under an argon atmosphere and cooled in an ice bath. DIEA (5.70 mL, 32.7 mmol) was added followed by isobutylchloroformate (2.55 mL, 19.6 mmol). After 45 min a solution of 2M ammonia in isopropanol (39.3 mL, 78.6 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 18 h. The solvent was evaporated, the residue taken in EtOAc (100 mL), washed with 5% aqueous citric acid (2 X 50mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 X 50 mL) and brine. After drying (MgSO₄) and evaporation of the solvent, the residue was dissolved in chloroform (15 mL), stirred vigorously and Et₂O (150 mL) was added. The suspension was stirred for 20 min. then the solid filtered and air dried to yield 3.10g (62%) of the title compound.

Carbonic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-cyano-ethyl)-phenyl ester tert-butyl ester:

The tyrosine amide from above (2.00 g, 5.3 mmol) was suspended in DCM (20 mL), stirred under argon and DMSO (1 mL) was added. The resulting solution was cooled to -78 °C and oxalyl chloride (554 µL, 6.31 mmol) was slowly added followed by DIEA (2.75 mL, 15.8 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 5 h at room temperature, re-cooled to -78 °C, more oxalyl chloride (750 µL) was added and the

25

mixture stirred at room temperature for 18 h. It was then diluted with DCM (20 mL), washed with 1N HCl (2 X 20 mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2 X 20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The solution was dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography using 10 to 25% EtOAc / hexane to
5 yield 683 mg (36%) of the title compound as an amorphous solid.

Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(*N*-hydroxycarbamimidoyl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester: The nitrile prepared above (0.336 g, 0.93 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (3 mL), hydroxylamine hydrochloride (0.070 g, 1.02
10 mmol) was added followed by sodium bicarbonate (0.156 g, 1.85 mmol). The mixture was stirred 18 h under an argon atmosphere. The solvent was evaporated, the residue taken up in EtOAc (25 mL), washed with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine (20 mL) The solution was dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent evaporated to yield 353 mg (96%) of the title compound.

15

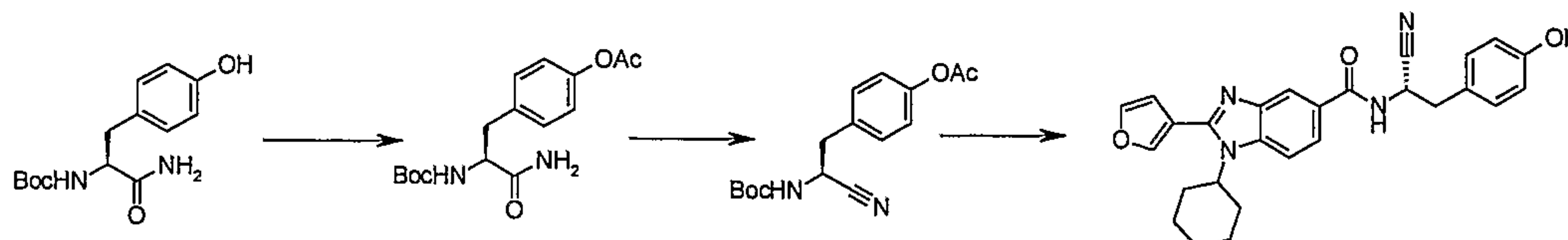
Carbonic acid 4-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(5-trifluoromethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)-ethyl]-phenyl ester *tert*-butyl ester: The amidoxime prepared above (0.200 g, 0.51 mmol) was dissolved in THF (400 µL), trifluoroacetic anhydride (216 µL, 1.53 mmol) was added followed by TFA (39 µL, 0.51 mmol). The solution
20 was heated to 70 °C for 2 h, allowed to cool to room temperature, diluted with EtOAc, washed with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The solution was dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent evaporated to yield 237 mg (98%) of the title compound that was used directly in the next step.

25 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-1-(5-trifluoromethyl-1,2,4-oxadiazol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1298, Table 1):**

The protected heterocycle from above was deprotected as described in example 64 and coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The title
30 compound of example 78 was obtained after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 79:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-cyano-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1170, Table 1):



5

Acetic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-carbamoyl-ethyl)-phenyl

ester: To a solution of Boc-tyrosine amide (0.960 g, 3.4 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) stirred under argon was added acetic anhydride (808 μ L, 8.56 mmol). After 18 hrs of stirring the solvent was evaporated, the residue taken in EtOAc (30 mL) washed with 5% aqueous citric acid (3 X 20 mL) and brine. The solution was dried (MgSO_4) and the solvent evaporated to yield 949 mg (86%) of the title compound.

10

Acetic acid 4-((S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-cyano-ethyl)-phenyl ester:

The amide from above was dissolved in a 4/1 mixture of DCM/DMSO, the solution stirred under an argon atmosphere and cooled to -78°C . Oxalyl chloride (65 μ L, 0.74 mmol) was added dropwise, the solution stirred for 30 min and triethylamine (259 μ L, 1.86 mmol) was added. After 1 h at -78°C the solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 1.5 h. EtOAc (40 mL) was added, the solution washed with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (20 mL) and brine (20 mL). The solution was dried (MgSO_4) and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (gradient 20 to 30% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 115 mg (61%) of the title compound.

15

20

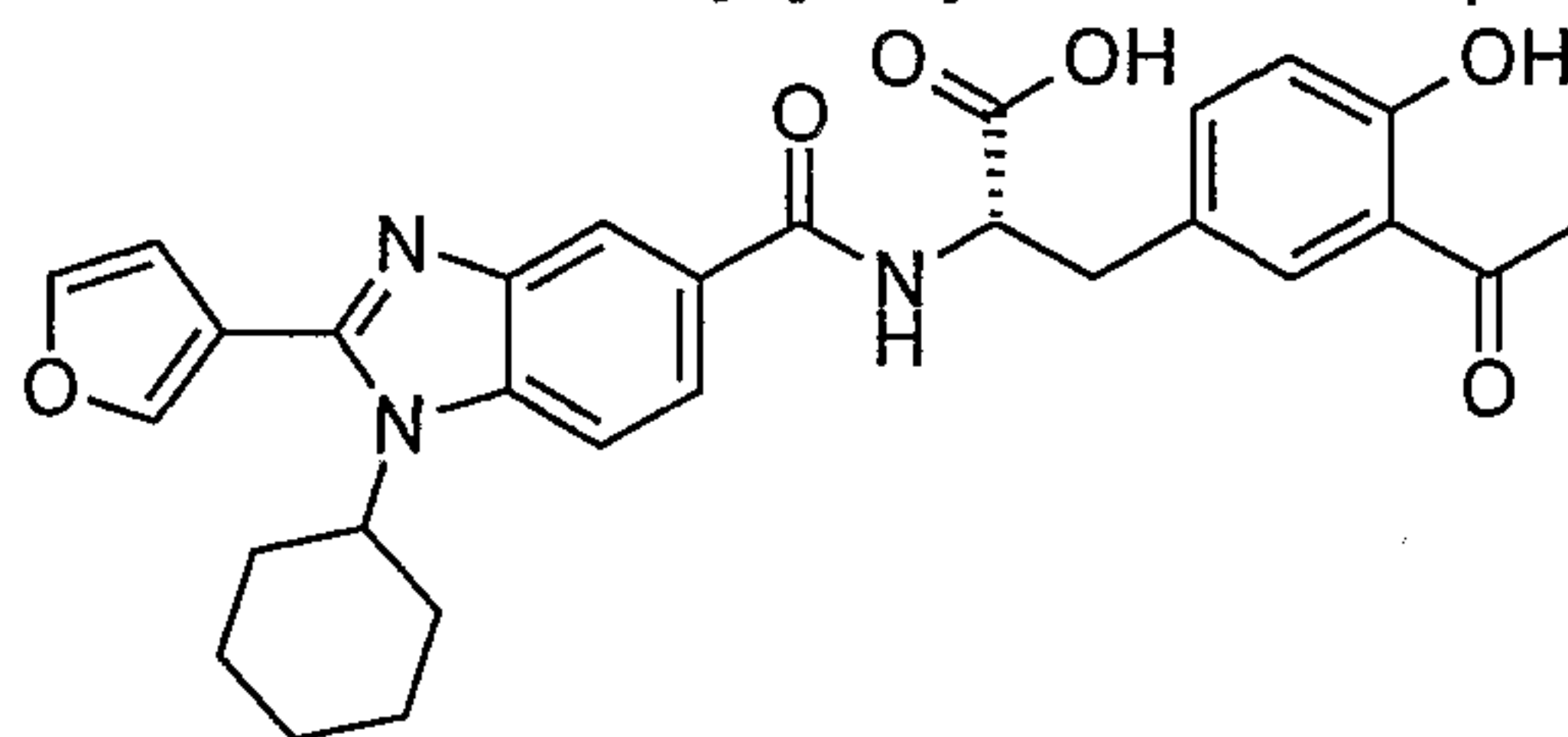
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-cyano-2-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 1170, Table 1):

Following the procedure of example 76, the nitrile from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 to give after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 79.

25

EXAMPLE 80:

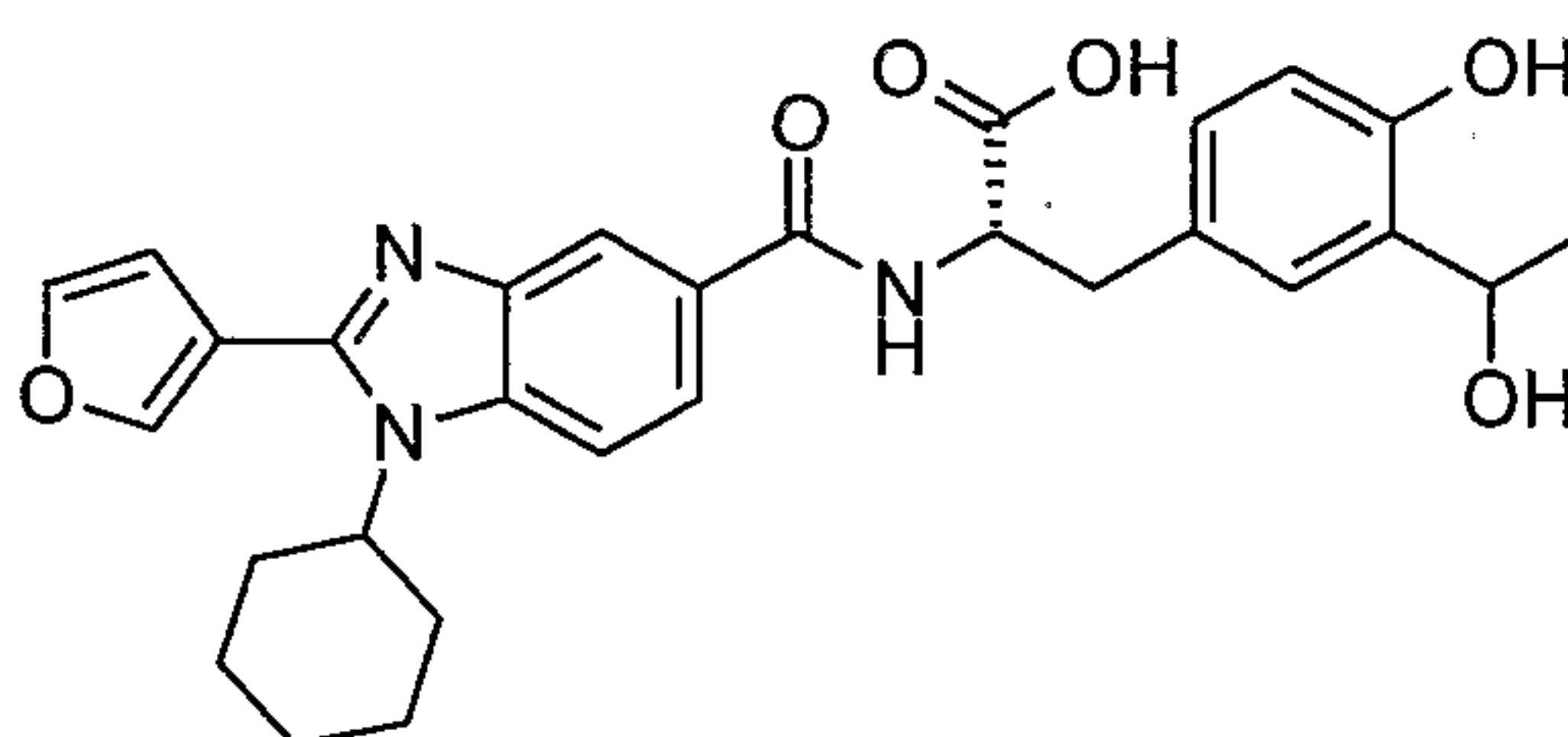
(S)-3-(3-Acetyl-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (Entry 1147, Table 1):



- 5 (S)-3-(3-Acetyl-4-hydroxyphenyl)alanine methyl ester hydrochloride was prepared according to the method of D. L. Boger et al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1987**, 52, 5283) and coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner.

Example 81:

- 10 **(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[4-hydroxy-3(RS)-(1-hydroxy-ethyl)-phenyl]-propionic acid (Entry 16052, Table 16):**

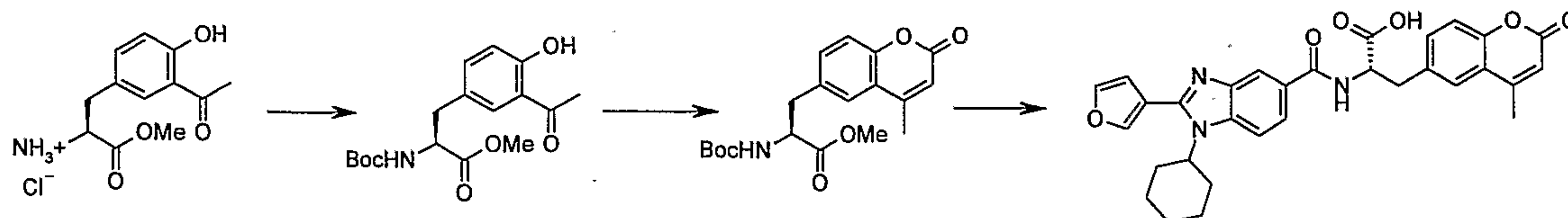


- 15 An aliquot from the coupling reaction of example 80 was treated with excess sodium borohydride at room temperature for 1 h. Following acidification with TFA, the title compound of example 81 was isolated as a mixture of epimers (carbinol center) by prep HPLC.

Example 82:

- 20 **(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(4-methyl-2-oxo-2H-1-benzopyran-6-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 1126, Table 1):**

118



(S)-3-(3-Acetyl-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid methyl ester: To a solution of (S)-3-(3-acetyl-4-hydroxyphenyl)alanine methyl ester hydrochloride (1.50 g, 5.48 mmol), prepared according to the method of D. L. Boger et al. (*J. Org. Chem.* **1987**, 52, 5283), in DMF (15 mL) was added di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (1.20 g, 5.48 mmol) and DIEA (1.91 mL, 10.96 mmol). The solution was stirred under an argon atmosphere for 16 h. It was poured in a 0.5 N solution of KHSO₄ (200 mL), extracted with EtOAc (2 X 75 mL) and the combined organic solutions were washed with brine (50 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and the solvent evaporated to yield 1.80 g (97%) of the title compound.

(S)-2-*tert*-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-methyl-2-oxo-2*H*-1-benzopyran-6-yl)-propionic acid methyl ester: To a solution of the above ketone (0.250 g, 0.74 mmol) in benzene (4 mL) was added methyl (triphenylphosphoranylidene)acetate (0.496 g, 1.48 mmol). The solution was refluxed for 5 h then evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (gradient 20 to 35% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 70 mg (26%) of the title compound.

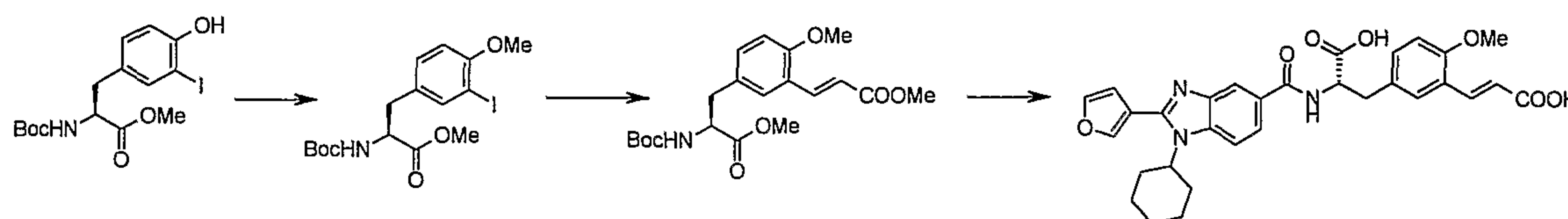
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(4-methyl-2-oxo-2*H*-1-benzopyran-6-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 1126, Table 1): The amino ester derivative from above was deprotected with 4N HCl in dioxane and coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give after saponification the title compound of example 82.

25

Example 83:

(E)-3-[5-((S)-2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-2-methoxy-phenyl]-acrylic acid (Entry 16051, Table 16):

30



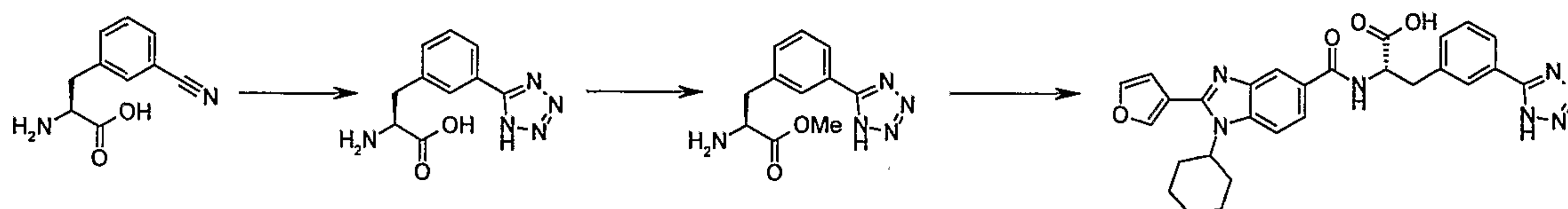
To a solution of Boc-3'-iodo-L-tyrosine methyl ester (B. Rzeszotarska et al. *Liebigs Ann. Chem.*, **1981**, 7, 1294-1302) (0.200 g, 0.47 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was added
 5 iodomethane (32 μ L, 0.52 mmol) and DIEA (125 μ L, 0.71 mmol). The solution was stirred at room temperature for 16 h then poured in water (15 mL) and the product extracted with EtOAc (15 mL). The organic solution was evaporated and the residue purified by flash chromatography (gradient 20 to 25% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 127 mg (62%) of the title compound.

10 A solution of the above iodotyrosine derivative (0.110 g, 0.25 mmol) in MeCN (3 mL) was stirred vigorously and argon was diffused in it for 20 min. Methyl acrylate (225 μ L, 2.50 mmol), DIEA (132 μ L, 0.75 mmol), tri-*o*-tolylphosphine (11 mg) and palladium acetate (11 mg) were added. Argon diffusion was continued for 5 min then the system was sealed and heated at 80 $^{\circ}$ C with vigorous stirring for 18 h.
 15 After cooling to room temperature, argon was diffused again for 20 min, additional palladium acetate (20 mg) and tri-*o*-tolylphosphine (20 mg) were added and the system sealed and heated at 90 $^{\circ}$ C for 16 h. The solvent was then evaporated, the residue taken in EtOAc (20 mL) washed with 1M KHSO₄ (10mL), 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate (10mL) and brine (10 mL). The solution was dried (MgSO₄)
 20 and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (25% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 102 mg (100%) of the title compound.

The above tyrosine fragment was deprotected with 4N HCl – dioxane and coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. Following saponification of the ester groups the title compound of example 83 was isolated by preparative C18
 25 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 84:

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[3-(2H-tetrazol-5-yl)-phenyl]-propionic acid (Entry 16057, Table 16):



- 5 A suspension of L-3-cyano-phenylalanine (0.150 g, 0.79 mmol), lithium chloride (0.060 g, 1.43 mmol) and sodium azide (0.067 g, 1.03 mmol) in methoxyethanol (500 μ L) was heated at 125 $^{\circ}$ C for 18 h. The solvent was evaporated to yield 370 mg of crude 3-tetrazolyl-L-phenylalanine.

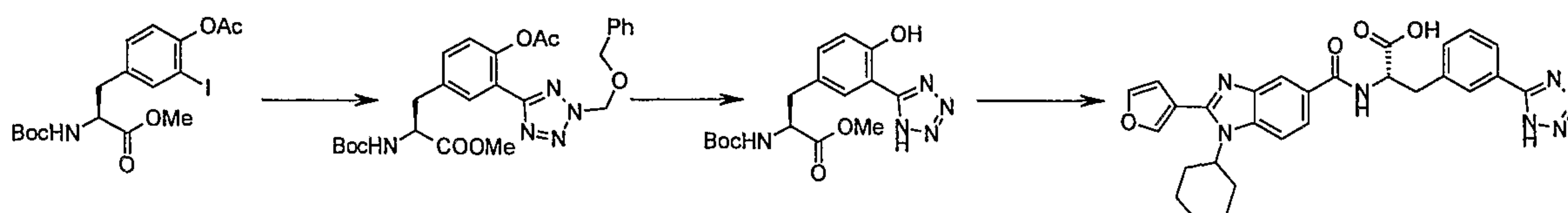
10 The crude tetrazole prepared above was dissolved in MeOH (20 mL), a 4N HCl in dioxane solution (4 mL) was added and the solution refluxed for 3 h. The solution was evaporated to dryness to yield 307 mg of the crude methyl ester hydrochloride.

The methyl ester from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give after saponification and purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC the title compound of example 84.

15

Example 85:

(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-[4-hydroxy-3-(2H-tetrazol-5-yl)-phenyl]-propionic acid (Entry 16056, Table 16):



20

To a solution of Boc-3'-iodo-L-tyrosine methyl ester (B. Rzeszotarska et al. *Liebigs Ann. Chem.*, **1981**, 7, 1294-1302) (0.300 g, 0.71 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) were added DIEA (250 μ L, 1.43 mmol), and acetic anhydride (80 μ L, 0.85 mmol). The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 h then poured in a 1M solution of KHSO₄ (40

mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (20 mL) and the organic extract washed with 5% aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. Drying (MgSO_4) and removal of the solvent gave the acetylated tyrosine derivative (330 mg, >100%).

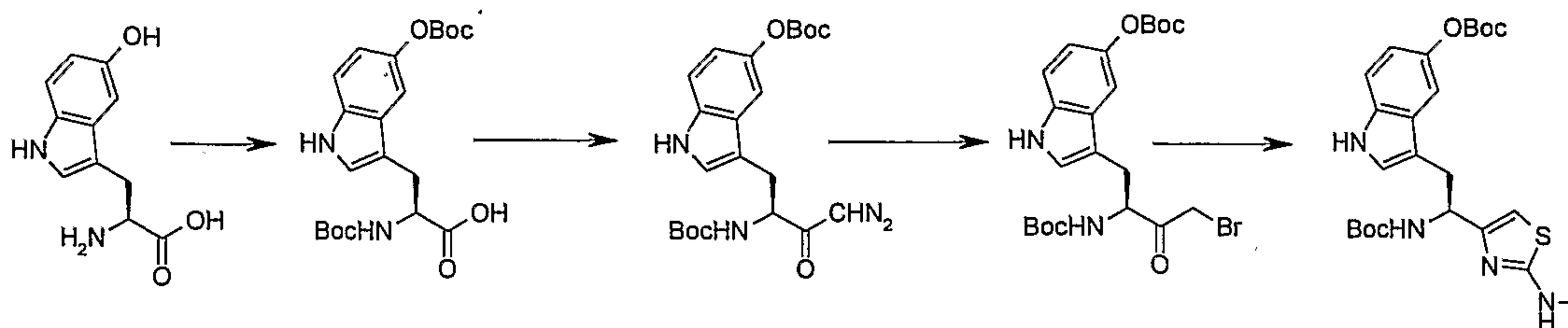
5 A solution of the above acetylated iodotyrosine derivative (0.120 g, 0.26 mmol) in toluene (5 mL) was stirred vigorously and flushed with argon for 30 min. Then were added 2-benzyloxymethyl-5-(tributylstannyl)tetrazole (B. C. Bookser, *Tetrahedron Lett.*, **2000**, 41, 2805) (0.149 g, 0.31 mmol), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (0) (15 mg, 0.013 mmol) and copper(I) iodide (5 mg, 0.026 mmol). The system was sealed and heated at 110 °C for 18 h. The mixture was cooled to room temperature,
10 a 15% aqueous solution of KF (2 mL) was added and the mixture vigorously stirred for 45 min. It was filtered over celite and the cake was washed with EtOAc (4 X 20 mL). The filtrate was dried (MgSO_4) and the solvent evaporated. The residue was purified by flash chromatography (gradient 10 to 30% EtOAc/hexane) to yield 54 mg (40%) of the protected 3-tetrazolyl-tyrosine derivative.

15 The tetrazole derivative prepared above was dissolved in MeOH (8 mL) and 10% Pd/C (50 mg) was added. The mixture was stirred under one atmosphere of hydrogen gas for 16 h. The suspension was filtered over celite washed with MeOH, the filtrate was evaporated and the residue re-dissolved in MeOH (20 mL). It was then hydrogenated at 50 psi with palladium acetate (100 mg) on a Parr shaker for 18
20 h. After filtration over celite, washing and evaporation of the filtrate 32 mg (93%) of the deprotected tetrazole derivative were obtained.

The *N*-Boc derivative from above was deprotected with 4 N HCl – dioxane and coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. Following removal of ester groups by saponification, the title compound of example 85 was isolated by
25 preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 86:

Carbonic acid 3-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-1*H*-indol-5-yl ester *tert*-butyl ester:



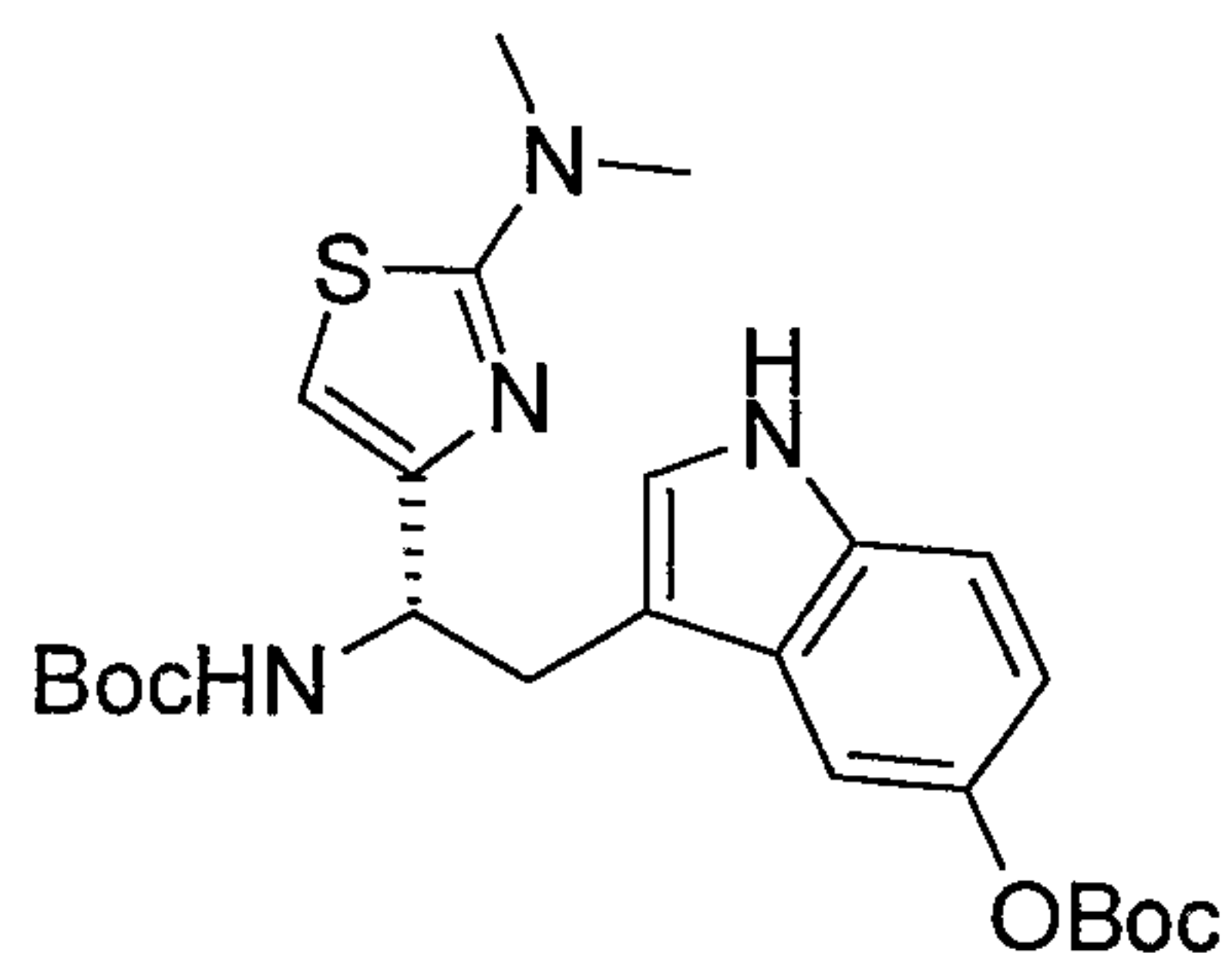
(S)-5-Hydroxytryptophan was converted to the bis-Boc derivative by the method of V. F. Pozdnev, *Chem. Nat. Compd. (Engl. Transl.)* **1982**, 18 (1), 125) which was isolated as the free carboxylic acid. This material (1.0377 g, 2.47 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5 mL), DIEA (0.645 mL, 3.7 mmol) was added and the mixture cooled in ice. Isobutyl chloroformate (0.384 mL, 2.96 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at 0-5 °C for 18 h. Excess diazomethane in Et₂O (0.6 M, 15 mL) was then added and the mixture stirred for 1 h. Another portion of diazomethane (10 mL) was added and after 40 min, the reaction was diluted with Et₂O (75 mL). The solution was washed successively with 10% aqueous citric acid (25 mL) and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (25 mL), and dried (MgSO₄). Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash chromatography with 40% EtOAc / hexane. The diazomethylketone was obtained as a yellow foam (0.783 g).

The diazomethylketone from above was dissolved in EtOAc (10 mL) and the solution cooled to -30 °C. A solution of HBr in AcOH (48% w/w, 0.384 mL) was added dropwise over 60 min. The cold reaction mixture was then diluted with Et₂O (100 mL) and washed successively with 10% aqueous citric acid (2 X 25 mL) and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (25 mL), and dried (MgSO₄). Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue coevaporated with hexane to give the bromomethylketone as a white foam (0.870 g). The bromomethylketone from above was reacted with N-methylthiourea as described for example 63.

EXAMPLE 87:

Carbonic acid 3-[(S)-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-dimethylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-1H-indol-5-yl ester tert-butyl ester:

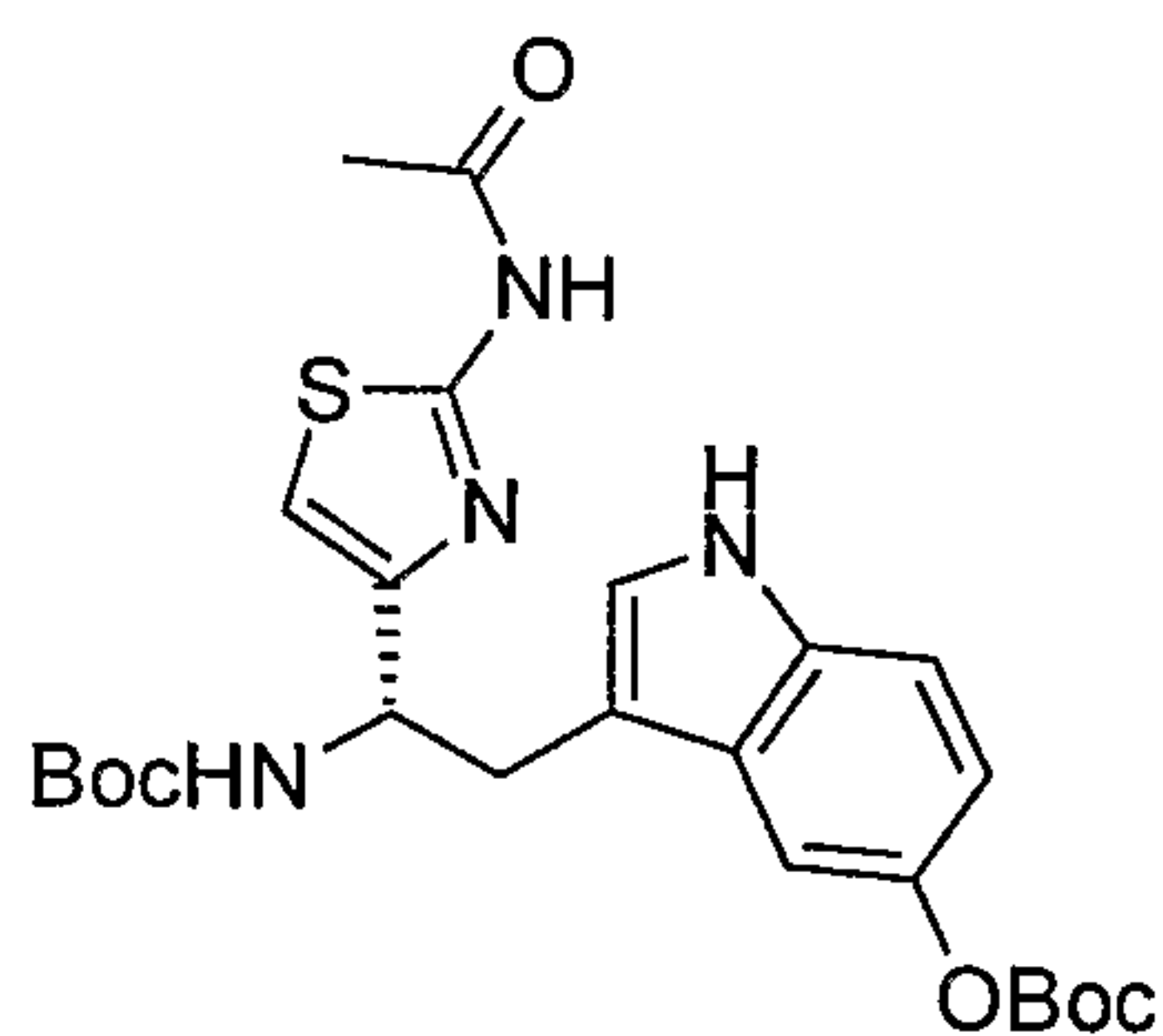
123



The bromomethylketone of example 86 was reacted with *N,N*-dimethylthiourea as described for example 64.

5 **Example 88:**

Carbonic acid 3-[(*S*)-2-(2-acetylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-1*H*-indol-5-yl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

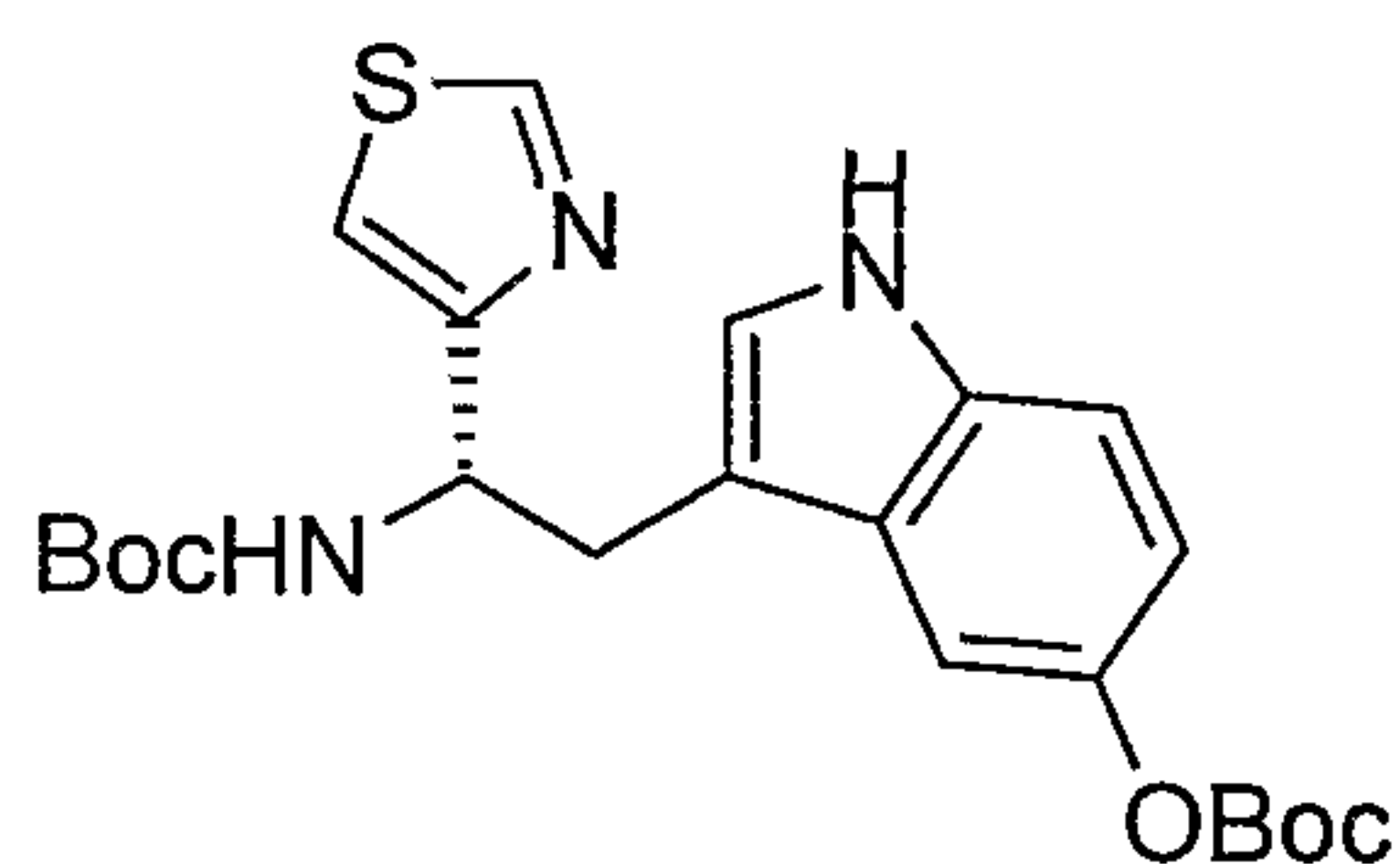


10 The bromomethylketone of example 86 was reacted with *N*-acetyl-2-thiourea as described for example 63.

Example 89:

Carbonic acid 3-((*S*)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-thiazol-4-yl-ethyl)-1*H*-indol-5-yl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

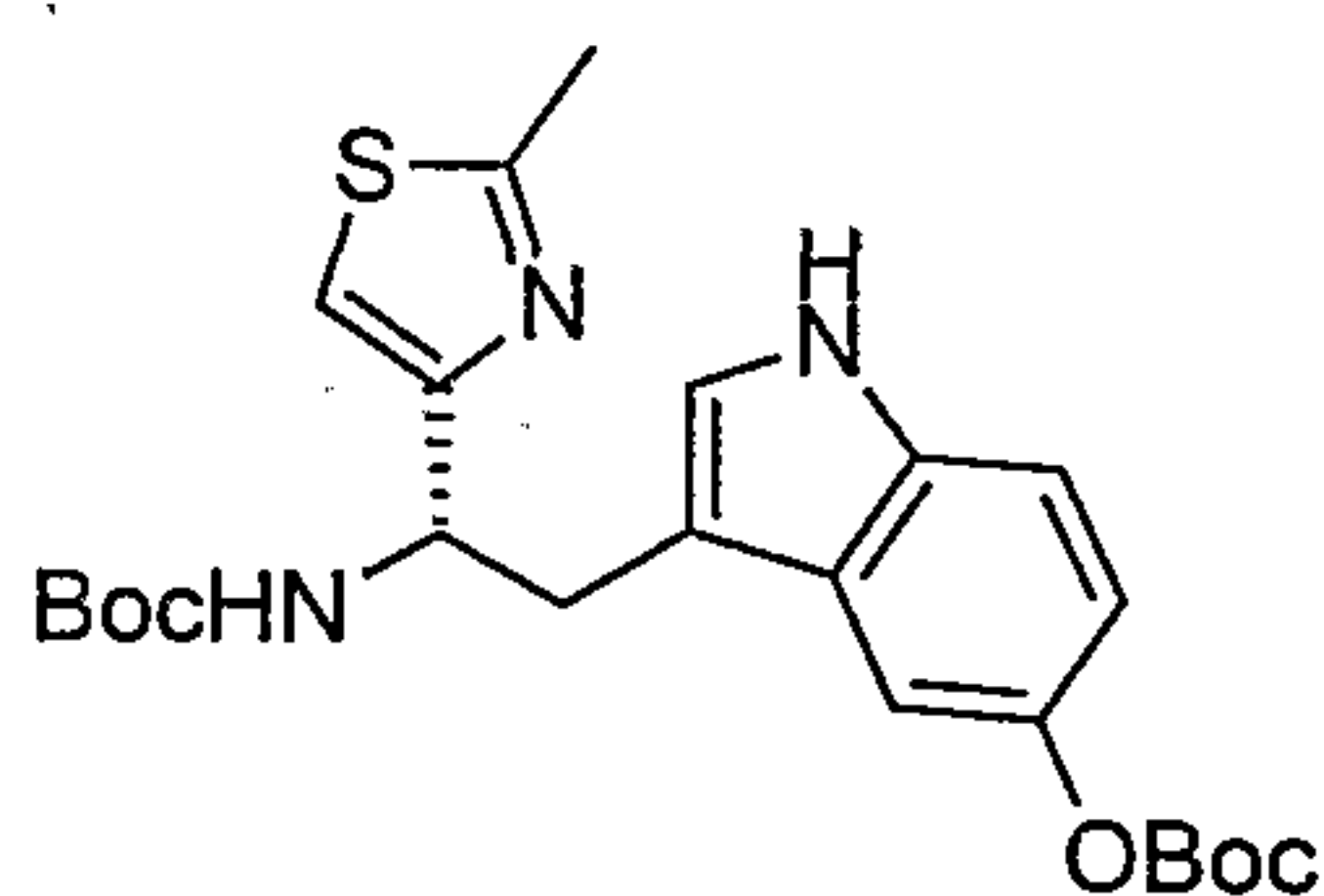
124



The bromomethylketone of example 86 was converted to the thiazole heterocycle as described for example 68.

5 **Example 90:**

Carbonic acid 3-[(S)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-1*H*-indol-5-yl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

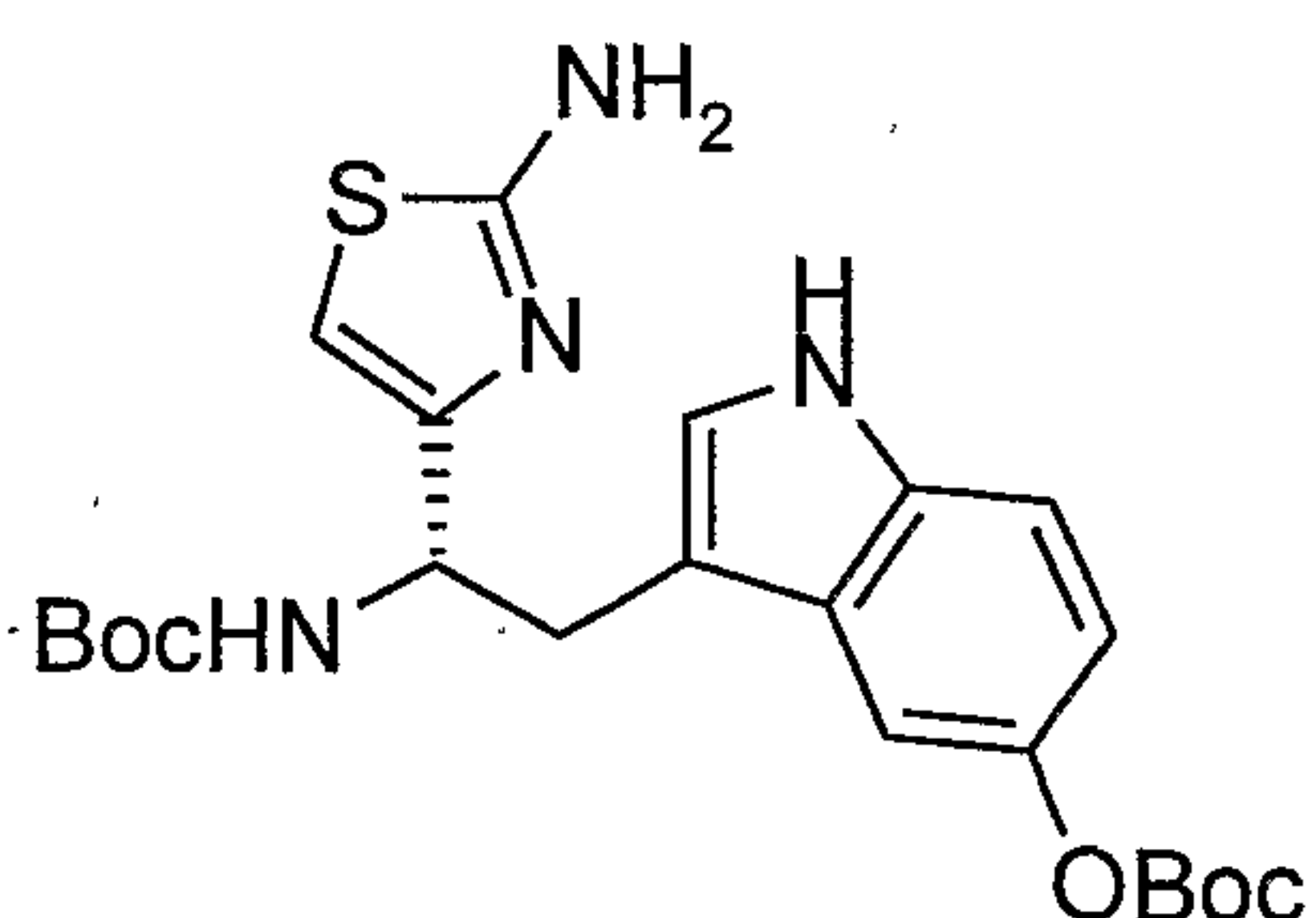


The bromomethylketone of example 86 (0.423 g, 0.85 mmol) was reacted with
 10 thioacetamide (0.128 g, 1.70 mmol) in MeCN (5 mL) at room temperature for 18 h.
 The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in
 DMSO (1.5 mL). This solution was added dropwise with stirring to a mixture of
 water (15 mL) and DIEA (0.2 mL). The precipitate that formed was collected by
 filtration, washed with water and dried to give the title compound of example 90
 15 (0.383 g).

Example 91:

Carbonic acid 3-[(S)-2-(2-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-*tert*-butoxycarbonylamino-ethyl]-1*H*-indol-5-yl ester *tert*-butyl ester:

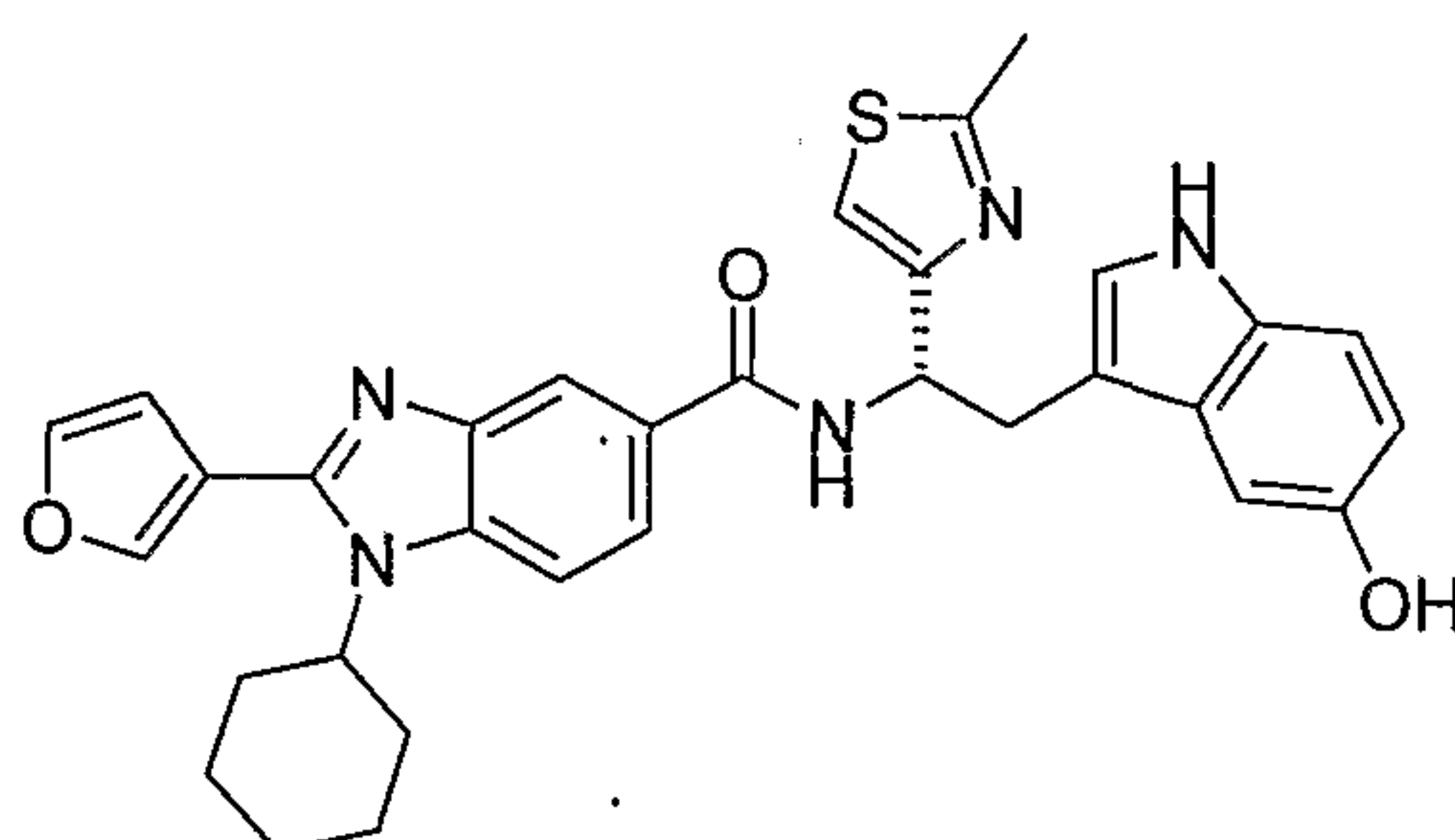
125



Prepared as described for example 90, except that thiourea was used instead of thioacetamide.

5 **Example 92:**

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 14001, Table 14):

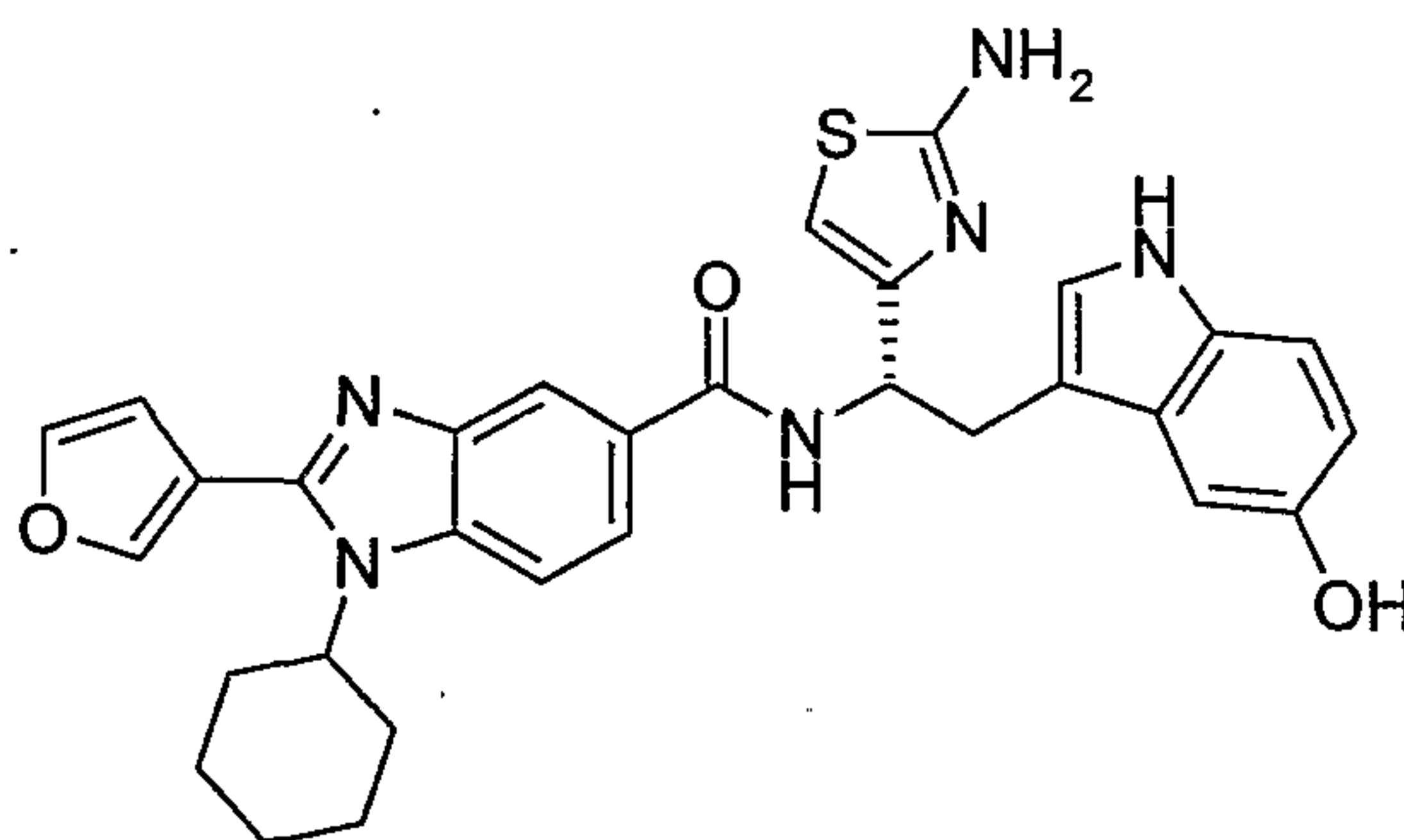


- 10 The Bis-Boc thiazole fragment of example 90 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 92 was isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

15 **Example 93:**

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 14002, Table 14):

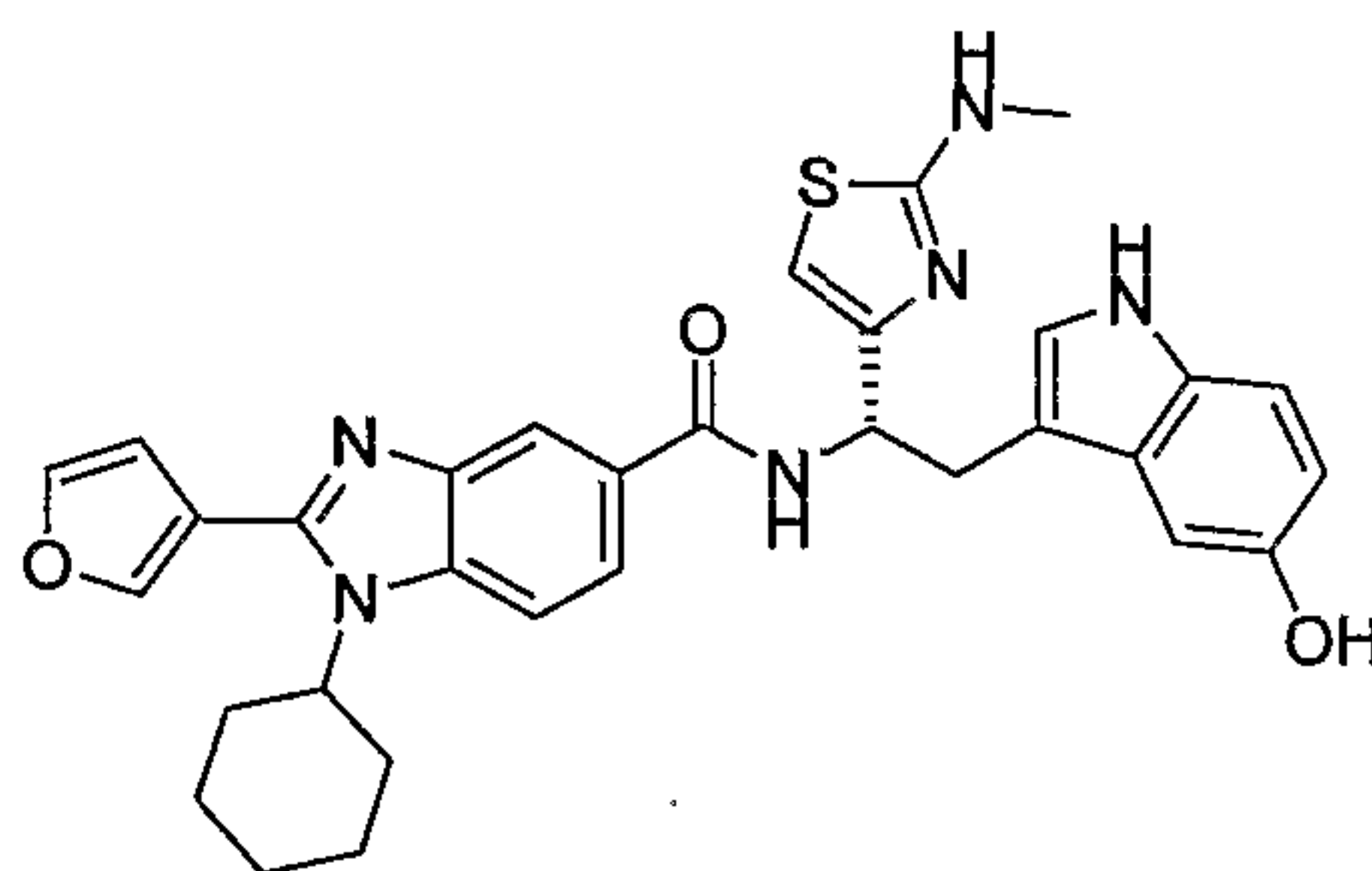
126



The Bis-Boc aminothiazole fragment of example 91 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 93 was isolated by
5 preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 94:

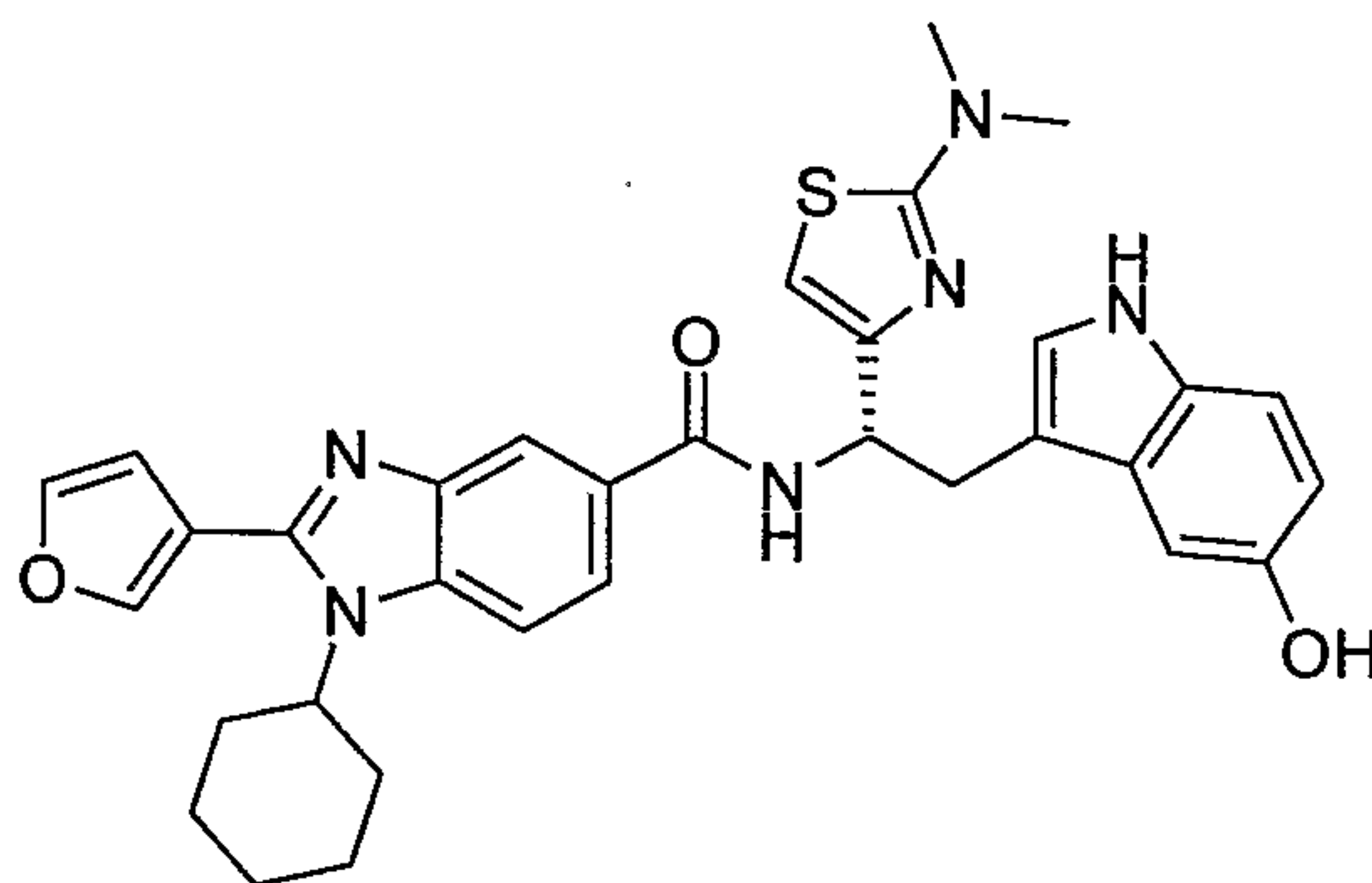
**1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry
10 14004, Table 14):**



The Bis-Boc aminothiazole fragment of example 86 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 93 was isolated by
15 preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 95:

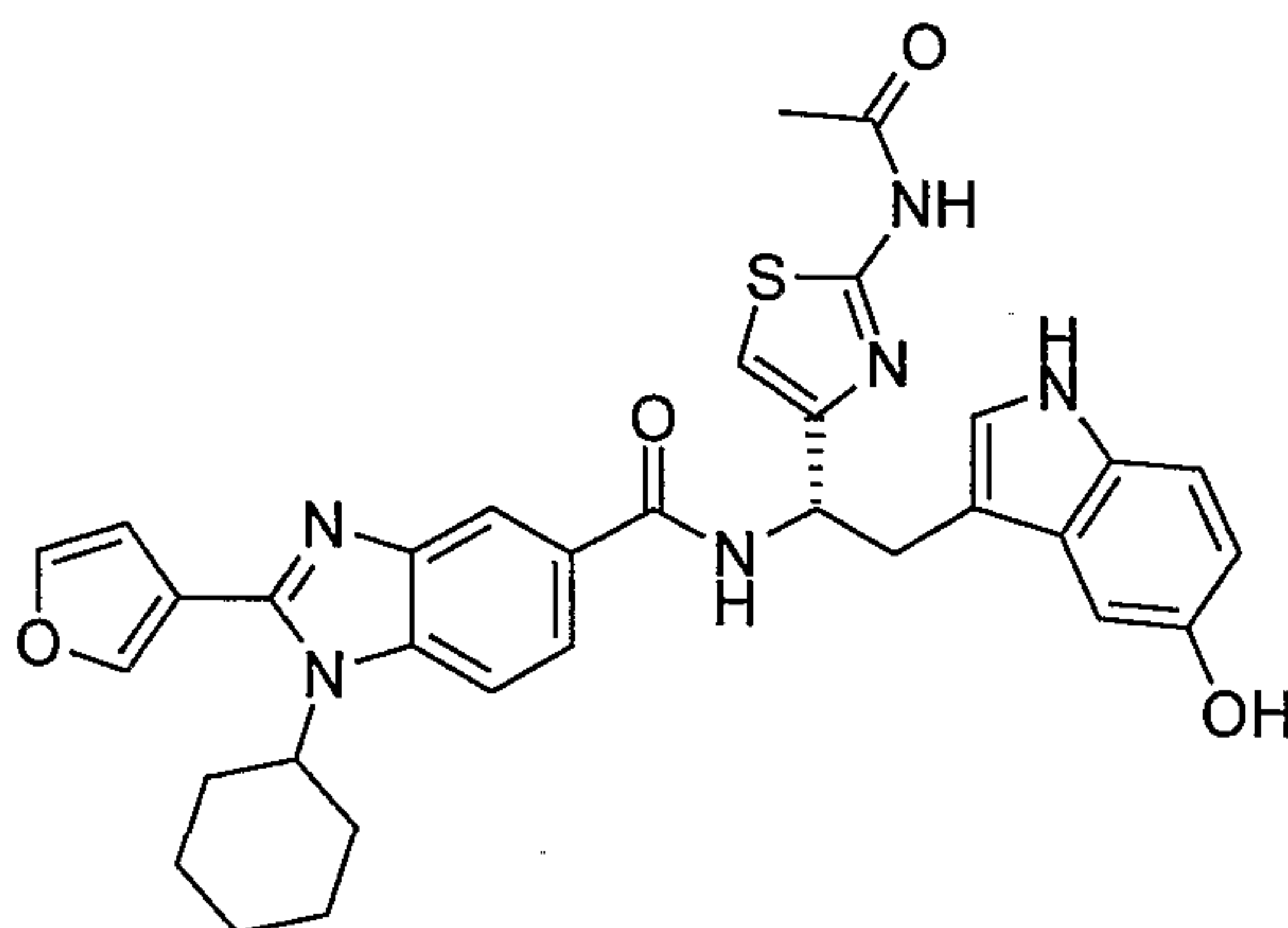
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-dimethylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13005 Table 14):



- 5 The Bis-Boc aminothiazole fragment of example 87 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 94 was isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

10 **Example 96:**

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-acetyl-amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 14006, Table 14):

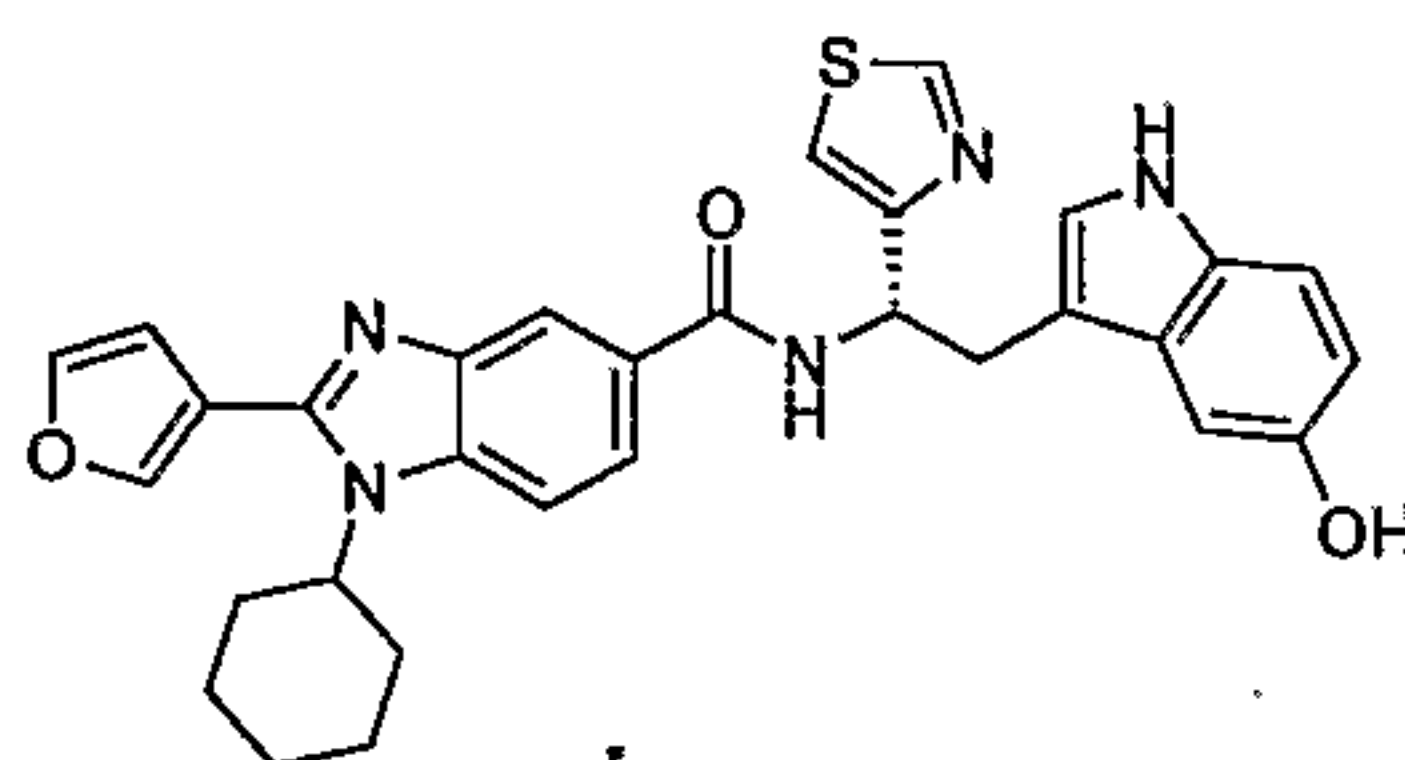


- 15 The Bis-Boc aminothiazole fragment of example 88 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to

the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 96 was isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 97:

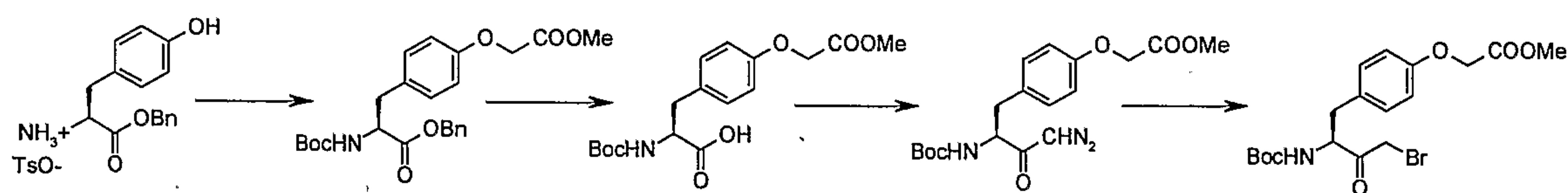
- 5 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-thiazol-4-yl-ethyl]-amide (Entry 14007, Table 14):**



- 10 The Bis-Boc thiazole fragment of example 89 was deprotected using 4 N HCl – dioxane and the resulting hydrochloride salt was coupled in the usual manner to the carboxylic acid of example 2. The title compound of example 97 was isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 98:

- 15 **[4-((S)-4-Bromo-2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-3-oxo-butyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid methyl ester:**



- 20 The *para*-toluenesulfonic acid salt of tyrosine benzyl ester (5.05 g, 11.4 mmol) was dissolved in THF (50 mL) containing DIEA (2.18 mL, 12.5 mmol) and di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (2.98 g, 13.7 mmol) was added in one portion. The reaction was stirred 1.5 h at room temperature. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue was dissolved in Et₂O (150 mL). The solution was washed successively with water (25 mL), 5% citric acid (25 mL) and 5% NaHCO₃ (25 mL).

After drying (MgSO_4), the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue dissolved in acetone (100 mL). Cesium carbonate (4.83 g, 14.8 mmol) and methyl bromoacetate (1.3 mL, 13.7 mmol) were added and the heterogeneous mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Solids were then removed by
5 filtration (acetone for washings) and the filtrate evaporated. The residue was dissolved in Et_2O (150 mL) and washed with water (25 mL) and brine (25 mL). After drying (MgSO_4), the solution was concentrated and the residue purified by flash chromatography using 25-50% EtOAc / hexane as eluent. The fully protected tyrosine derivative was obtained as a colorless oil (3.61 g).

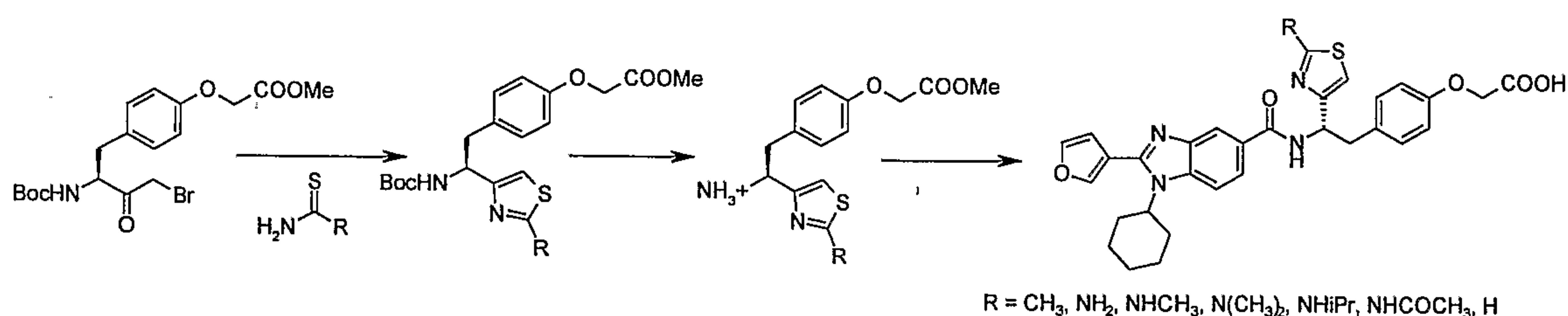
10 The benzyl ester from above (3.60 g, 8.1 mmol) was dissolved in EtOAc (25 mL) and hydrogenated (1 atm H_2 gas) over 20% $\text{Pd}(\text{OH})_2 / \text{C}$ (350 mg) for 2.5 h. The catalyst was removed by filtration and the solvent removed under reduced pressure to give the free acid derivative as a colorless oil (3.19 g).

The tyrosine derivative from above (1.20 g, 3.4 mmol) was dissolved in THF (15 mL)
15 and the solution cooled to -20°C . *N*-Methylmorpholine (0.45 mL, 4.1 mmol) was added followed by isobutylchloroformate (0.48 mL, 3.74 mmol). The mixture was stirred at -20°C for 30 min. Diazomethane in Et_2O (0.6 M, excess) was added and the solution stirred for 30 min at room temperature. A second portion of
20 diazomethane was added and stirring resumed for an additional 30 min (complete by TLC and HPLC). The reaction mixture was diluted with Et_2O (100 mL) and the solution washed successively with water (2 X 25 mL), 5% NaHCO_3 (25 mL) and brine (25 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO_4) and concentrated to give the desired diazomethylketone as a yellow oil (1.26 g).

The diazomethylketone from above (1.10 g, 3.4 mmol) was dissolved in EtOAc (10
25 mL) and the solution cooled to 0°C . A solution of HBr in AcOH (48% w/w, 0.44 mL, 3.4 mmol) was added dropwise over 5 min, followed by an additional portion (0.22 mL, 1.7 mmol). After stirring for 10 min, the reaction mixture was diluted with Et_2O (150 mL) and washed successively with water (25 mL), 10% citric acid (25 mL) and 5% NaHCO_3 (2 X 25 mL). After drying (MgSO_4), the solvent was evaporated under
30 reduced pressure to give the desired bromomethylketone as a light yellow solid (1.14 g).

Example 99:

{4-[(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-2-(2-methyl-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid (Entry 1131, Table 1, R = CH₃):



Following the procedure of example 90, the bromoketone of example 98 was reacted with thioacetamide. Following removal of the Boc protecting group (if necessary) with 4N HCl in dioxane, the amine hydrochloride salt was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The ester protecting group was then removed by saponification (NaOH) and the final product isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 100:

[4-((S)-2-(2-Amino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid (Entry 19002 Table 19, R = NH₂ in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 99 but replacing the thioacetamide by thiourea, the title compound of example 100 was obtained.

Example 101:

{4-[(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-2-(2-isopropylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid (Entry 1133, Table 1, R = NHⁱPr in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 99 but replacing the thioacetamide by *N*-isopropyl-2-thiourea, the title compound of example 101 was obtained.

Example 102:

[4-((S)-2-(2-Acetylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid (Entry 1134, Table 1, R = NHAc in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 99 but replacing the thioacetamide by *N*-acetyl-2-thiourea, the title compound of example 102 was obtained.

Example 103:

{4-[(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-2-(2-methylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid (Entry 1140, Table 1, R = NHMe in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 99 but replacing the thioacetamide by *N*-methyl-2-thiourea, the title compound of example 103 was obtained.

Example 104:

{4-[(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-2-(2-dimethylamino-thiazol-4-yl)-ethyl]-phenoxy}-acetic acid (Entry 1141, Table 1, R = N(CH₃)₂ in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 99 but replacing the thioacetamide by *N,N*-dimethyl-2-thiourea, the title compound of example 104 was obtained.

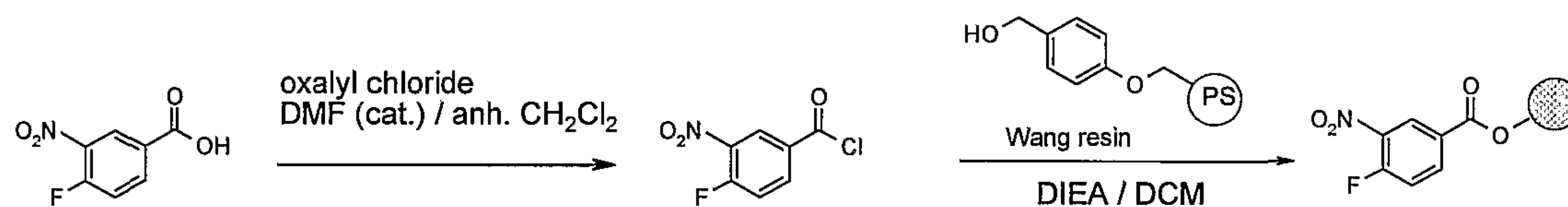
Example 105:

[4-((S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino)-2-thiazol-4-yl-ethyl)-phenoxy]-acetic acid (Entry 1150, Table 1, R = H in example 99):

Following the procedure of example 68, the title compound of example 104 was obtained.

EXAMPLE 106:

Solid phase synthesis of inhibitors, wherein, X = CH, Y = O, Z = OH, n = 0:

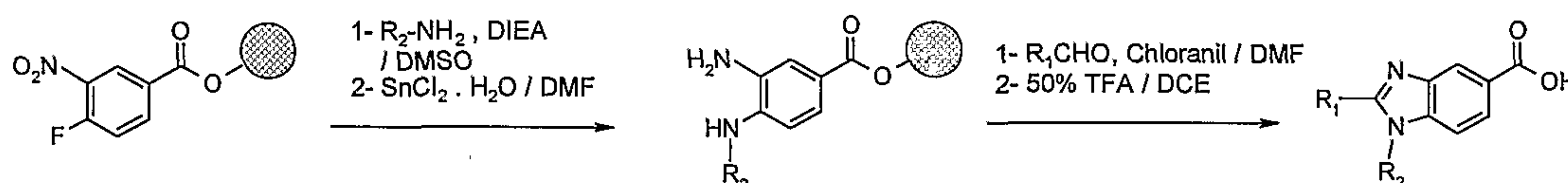


To a solution of the 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzoic acid (0.12 mol, 22.2 g) in 100 mL of anhydrous DCM was added 10 drops of anhydrous DMF. To this solution was added dropwise over 60 min, oxalyl chloride (0.144 mol, 12.6 mL). During the addition, the solid slowly dissolved to give rise to a yellow solution. The mixture was stirred for an additional 4 h and the solvent was stripped down to give a yellow oil. This oil was distilled under vacuum (110 °C, 1.5 mm Hg) to give 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzoyl chloride as a light yellow liquid (22.0 g, 90% yield).

On a solid phase synthesizer (Advanced Chemtech ACT 90), Wang resin (Nova Biochem, loading: 1.2 mmol/g, 20 mmol, 16.7 g) was washed twice with DCM (100 mL), twice with *i*-PrOH (100 mL) and was dried overnight under high vacuum over P₂O₅. The following day, the resin was washed with anhydrous DCM (2 x 100 mL) and was suspended in anhydrous DCM (100 mL). To the suspension was added DIEA (30 mmol, 5.2 mL) followed by a solution of 4-fluoro-3-nitrobenzoyl chloride (22 mmol, 4.48 g) dissolved in 10 mL of anhydrous DCM. The slurry was shaken for 3 h, the solution was drained and the resin was washed twice with 100 mL-portions of anhydrous DCM. The resin was then suspended in anhydrous DCM (100 mL) and was treated with DIEA (30 mmol, 5.2 mL) followed by acetic anhydride (24 mmol, 2.3 mL). After shaking for 2 h, the solution was drained and the resin was

washed successively with DCM (2 x 100 mL), *i*-PrOH (2 x 100 mL), DCM (2 x 100 mL) and finally with *i*-PrOH (3 x 100 mL). The resin was dried overnight under high vacuum. To calculate the level of incorporation, the resin (45.9 mg) was treated with a 1:1 mixture of TFA/1,2-dichloroethane (1.5 mL) for 1 h. The resin was filtered and
 5 was washed twice with 1,2-dichloroethane (1.5 mL). The filtrates were combined and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was lyophilized from MeCN/H₂O to give 4-fluoro-3-nitro benzoic acid as a yellow solid (6.3 mg, 0.033 mmol). Based on recovered compound, the loading was calculated to be 0.74 mmol/g.

10 The following steps were performed on a solid-phase synthesizer (ACT 496 from Advanced Chemtech), using the 96-well reaction block:



Amine addition:

Each well was filled with the benzoic acid resin from above (0.03 mmol, 40 mg) and
 15 was washed with DMF (3 x 1.2 mL) and DMSO (2 x 1.2 mL). To each well was added DMSO (530 µL), a 1 M solution of the amine R₂-NH₂ (600 µL, 0.6 mmol) and DIEA (0.4 mmol, 70 µL). The resins were shaken for 15 h at room temperature and the solvent was drained. The resins were washed successfully with 1.2-mL portions of DMF (3 x), MeOH (3 x), and DMF (4 x).

Reduction of the nitro group:

The resins were then suspended in DMF (600 µL) and were shaken with a 1 M solution of SnCl₂ · 2 H₂O (600 µL, 0.6 mmol) for 25 h. The solvent was drained, the resins were washed successively with 1.2-mL portions of 1:1 DMF-H₂O (4 x), DMF (4 x), MeOH (4 x) and NMP (4 x).

Formation of the benzimidazole ring:

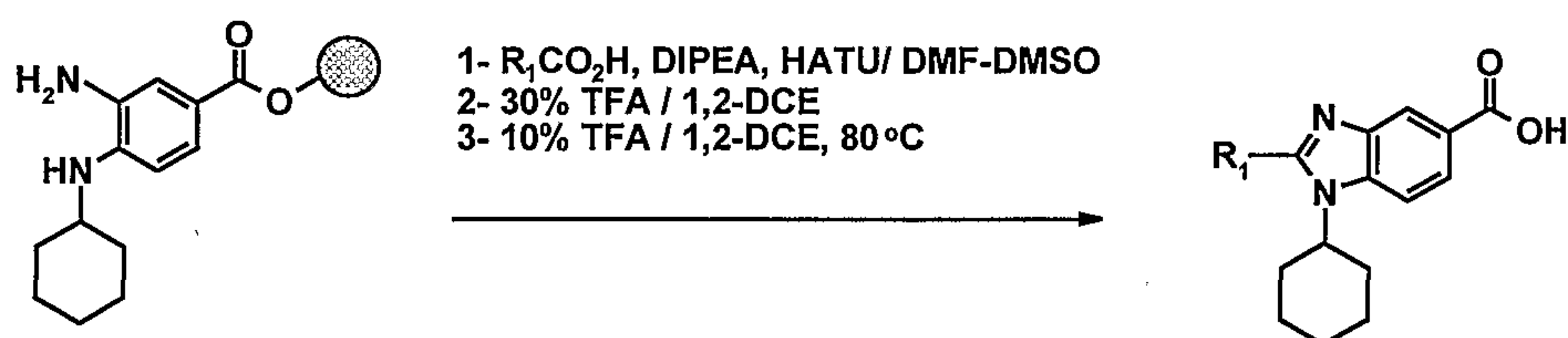
Each resin was suspended in DMF (200 µL) and a 1 M solution of the aldehyde in DMF was added (0.20 mmol, 200 µL), followed by a 0.25 M solution of chloranil in NMP (0.20 mmol, 800 µL). The resins were shaken for 18 h, the liquid was drained and the resins were washed successively with 1.2-mL portions of NMP (3 x), 1 M
 30 DIEA/NMP (2 x), NMP (3 x), MeOH (3 x) and DCM (4 x). The reaction block was placed in a vacuum chamber for 30 min in order to dry the resin.

Cleavage from the resin:

In each well was added 1.0 mL of a 1:1 solution of TFA/1,2-dichloroethane and the resins were shaken for 1 h. The wells were drained and the resins washed once with 1.0 mL of the cleavage solution. Volatiles were evaporated in a vacuum
 5 centrifuge to give the crude benzimidazole 5-carboxylic acids in which X = CH, Y = O, Z = OH and n = 0.

Example 107:

(Entries 2110, 2111, 2112, 2114-2117, 2120-2123, 2125-2128, 2139-2143, Table
 10 2):



The following steps were performed on a solid-phase synthesizer (ACT 496 from Advanced Chemtech), using the 96-well reaction block.

15

The starting diamine resin was prepared as described in example 106.

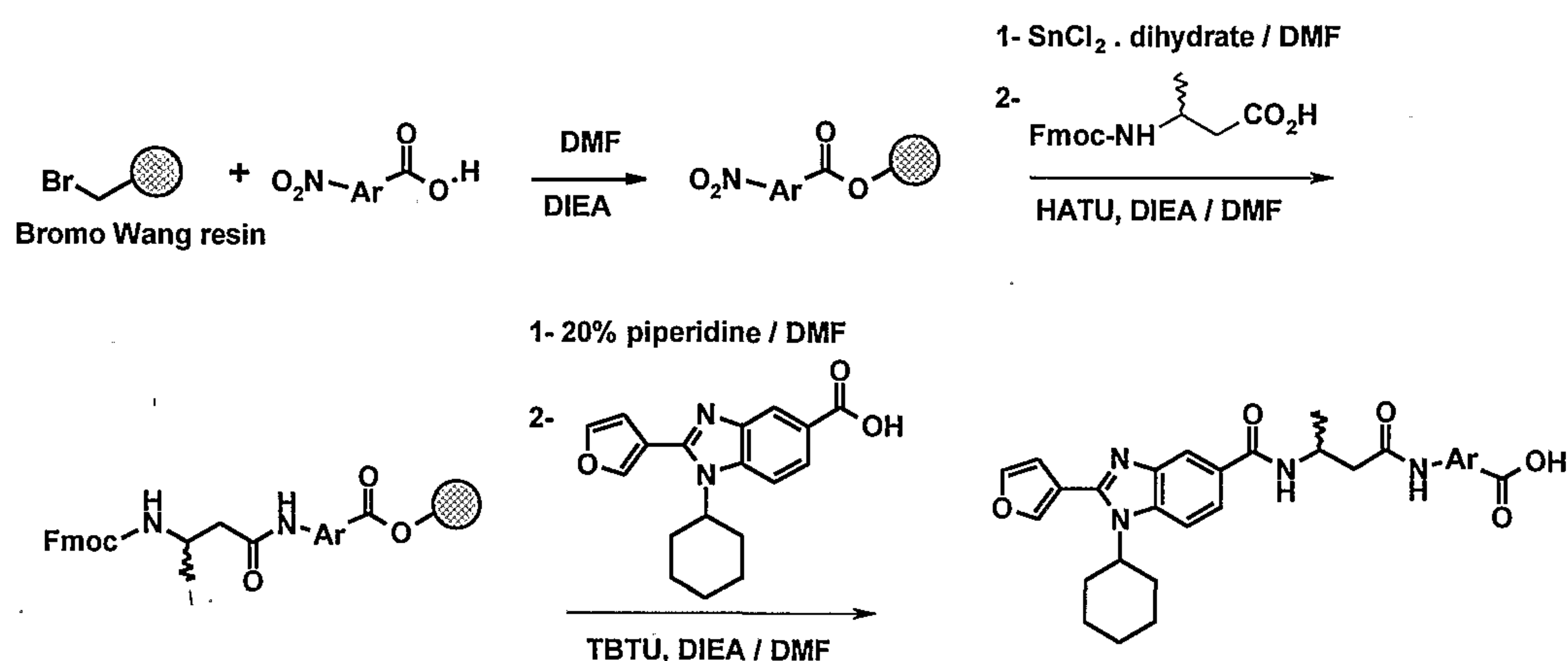
Each well was filled with resin (0.0203 mmol, 35 mg) and was washed with DMF (3 X 1.2 mL). To each well was added a 0.5 M solution of DIEA in DMF (200 μ L, 0.1 mmol), a 0.2 M solution of the acid R_1 -CO₂H in DMSO (500 μ L, 0.1 mmol) and a 0.2
 20 M solution of HATU in DMF (500 μ L, 0.1 mmol). The resins were shaken for 6 h at room temperature and the solvent was drained. The coupling was repeated for another 6 h with fresh reagent. The resins were washed successfully with 1.2-mL portions of DMF (3 x), MeOH (3 x), and DCM (3 x).

Cleavage from the resin:

25 In each well was added 1.0 mL of a 30% solution of TFA/1,2-dichloroethane and the resins were shaken for 1.5 h. The wells were drained and the resins washed once with 2 mL of 1,2-dichloroethane. The resulting filtrates containing 10% TFA in 1,2-dichloroethane was heated at 80 °C for 13 h. The volatiles were removed under

vacuum and the residue was lyophilized from MeCN/H₂O. The crude benzimidazole 5-carboxylic acid derivatives thus obtained were coupled with 5-(S)-hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride, saponified and purified in the usual manner:

5

Example 108:**(Entries 1157-1169, 1178, 1179, 1236-1239, Table 1):**

10

Note 1: In the case of compound entries 1157, 1158, 1236, 1237, 1238 and 1239, the coupling with the γ -amino butyryl fragment was omitted.

Note 2: In the case of compound entries 1159 and 1178, the amino acid fragment was coupled directly on the bromo Wang resin and, in the former case, Fmoc-*d,l*-alanine was used.

Note 3: In case of compound entries 1236, 1237, 1238, and 1239, the nitroacid was coupled to standard Wang resin using the MSNT method of J. Nielsen and L. O. Lyngsø (*Tetrahedron Lett.* **1996**, 37, 8439).

20

The following steps were performed on a solid-phase synthesizer (ACT 496 from Advanced Chemtech), using the 96-well reaction block:

Anchoring on the resin:

Each well was filled with the bromo Wang resin (0.044 mmol, 40 mg) and was washed with DMF (3 X 1.2 mL). To each well was added DMF (200 μ L), a 1 M solution of DIEA in DMF (300 μ L, 0.3 mmol), and each of the nitro acid derivatives
5 (0.176 mmol) dissolved in 500 μ L of DMF. The resins were shaken for 15 h at room temperature and the solvent was drained. The resins were washed successively with 1.2-mL portions of DMF (3 x), MeOH (3 x), and DMF (3 x).

Reduction of the nitro group and coupling of Fmoc- β -amino butyric acid:

10 The nitro group was reduced to the corresponding aniline using tin (II) chloride dihydrate (1.2 mL of a 0.5 M solution in DMF, 0.6 mmol) for 24 h followed by washing (3 X 1.2 mL) with DMF, DMF/H₂O, DMF, MeOH and DMF. The resin was then suspended in DMF (200 μ L) and treated with a 0.5 M solution of DIEA in DMF (300 μ L, 0.15 mmol), a 0.13 M solution of Fmoc-*d,l*- β -aminobutyric acid (500 μ L,
15 0.066 mmol) and a 0.13 M solution of TBTU in DMF (500 μ L, 0.066 mmol). After shaking for 5 h at 60 °C, and since several reactions were not complete as indicated by the cleavage of a few resin beads, fresh reagents were added and a second coupling was done using HATU as coupling agent at room temperature for 18 h.

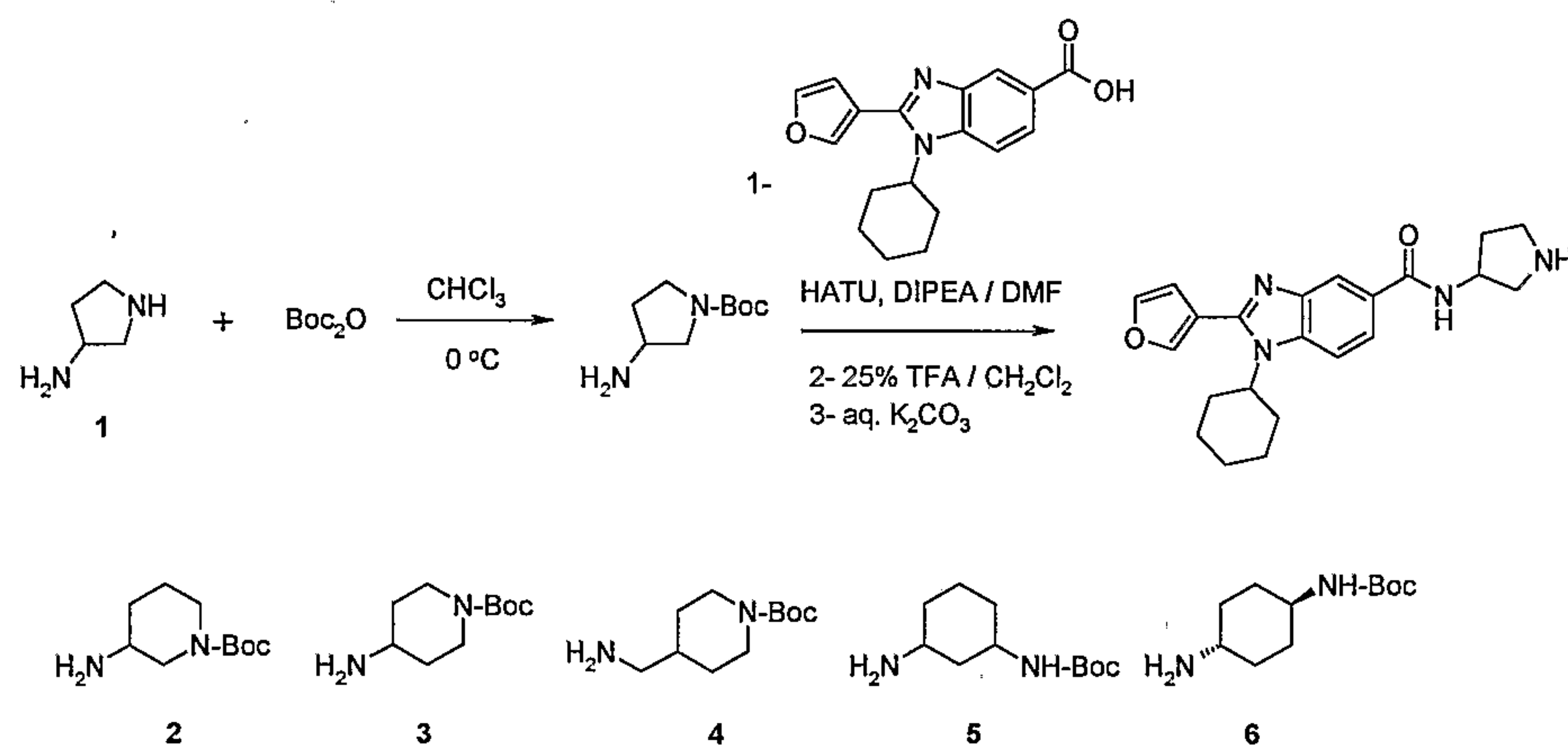
Coupling of the core benzimidazole and cleavage from the resin:

20 The Fmoc group was cleaved with 20% piperidine/DMF (20 min) and after washing, the core benzimidazole was coupled under standard conditions to the carboxylic acid of example 2 using TBTU as coupling agent (room temperature, 18 h).

Cleavage from the resin:

25 In each well was added 1.0 mL of a 50% solution of TFA/1,2-dichloroethane and the resins were shaken for 1 h. The wells were drained and the resins washed once with 1 mL of the 50% TFA/1,2-DCE solution. The volatiles were removed under vacuum and the compounds were purified by semi-prep reversed phase chromatography.

EXAMPLE 109:
(Entries 1180-1185, Table 1):



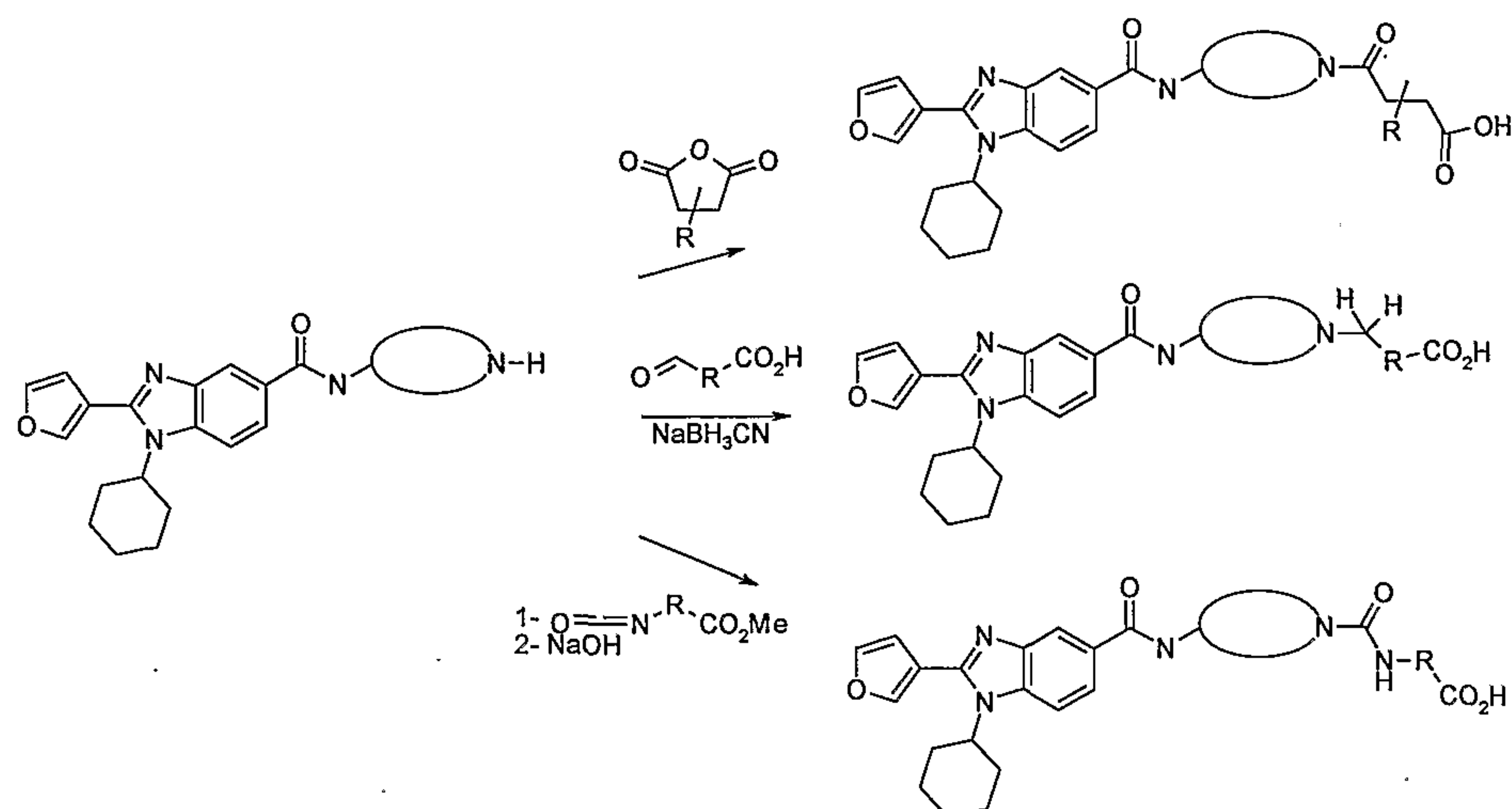
The mono-Boc diamines 1-6 were synthesized from the corresponding diamino compounds according to a literature procedure (see Carceller, E.; Merlos, M.; Giral, M.; Balsa, D.; Garcia-Rafanell, J.; Forn, J. *J. Med. Chem.* **1996**, 39, 487). 3-Aminopiperidine was prepared by hydrogenation of 3-aminopyridine at 45 psi H₂ over 5% w/w Rh / Al₂O₃ for 9 days. Coupling of the mono-protected diamino compound to the carboxylic acid of example 2 was performed using HATU. Following removal of the carbamate protecting group (TFA), the title compounds of example 109 were isolated by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC:

Example 110:

(Entry 1191-1204, 1205-1209, 1210, 1211-1227, 1261-1274, and 1275-1292, Table 1)

The following steps were performed on a solid-phase synthesizer (ACT 496 from Advanced Chemtech), using the 96-well reaction block.

138



Reaction with anhydrides and isocyanates:

In each well of the reaction block was added 0.5 mL of DMF followed by a 0.06 M
 5 solution of the appropriate amine from example 109 in DMF (0.5 mL, 0.03 mmol). In
 the case of anhydride additions, DIEA was added to the well (8.7 μ L, 0.05 mmol).
 The isocyanates or anhydrides were added to the appropriate wells as a 0.45 M
 solution in DMF (0.10 mL, 0.045 mmol).

Anhydrides addition: After shaking 5 h, a 1 M solution of NaOH / H₂O was added
 10 (0.10 mL, 0.01 mmol) and the mixture was shaken for 14 h.

Isocyanates addition: The mixture was shaken for 19 h.

Work-up: In all the wells was added AcOH (11 μ L, 0.2 mmol) and after shaking for 5
 minutes, the solutions were sequentially purified by semi-Preparative C18 reversed-
 phase HPLC (20mm x 50 mm YMC column, 5 μ m, 120A) using a water-MeCN
 15 gradient containing 0.06% TFA.

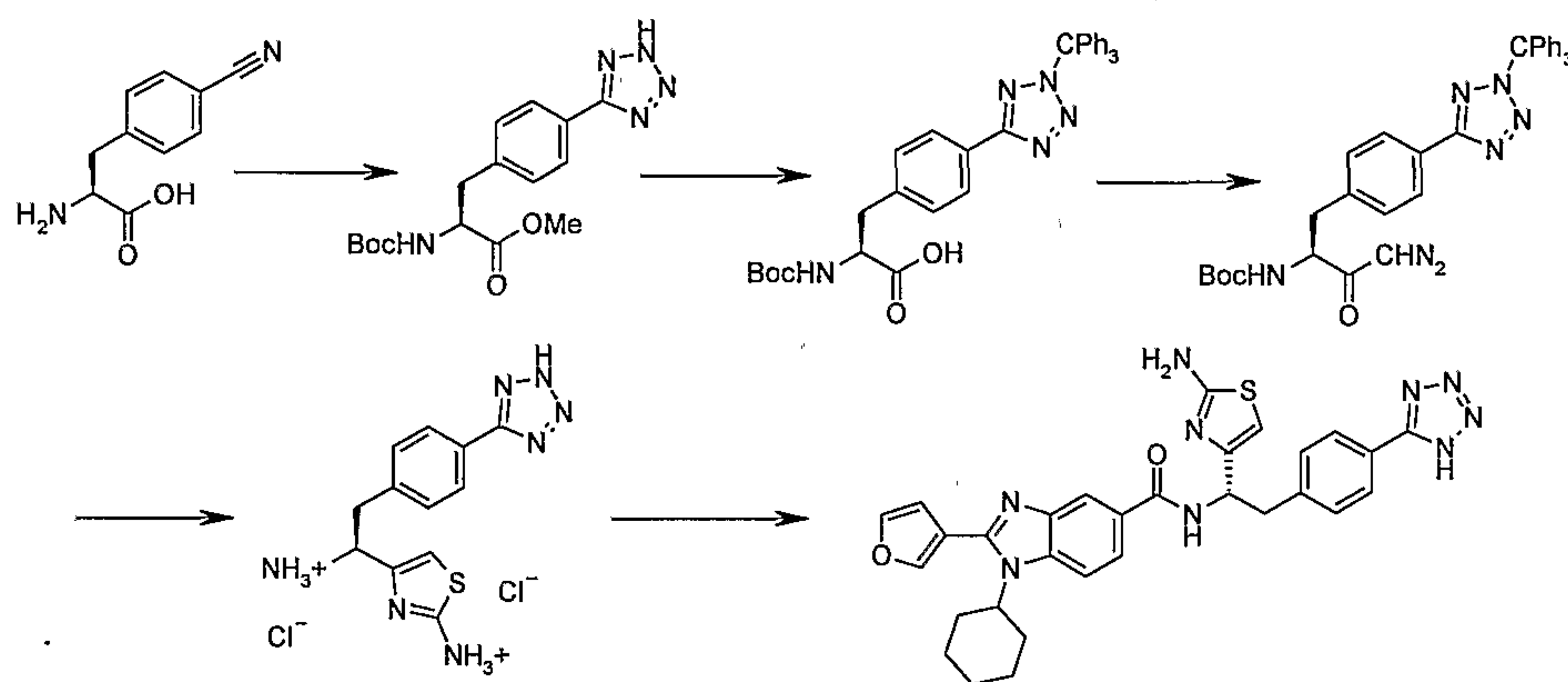
Reaction with aldehydes:

In each well of the reaction block was added 0.2 mL of trimethylorthoformate
 20 followed by a 0.345 M solution of each of the appropriate amines from example 109
 dissolved in trimethylorthoformate (0.30 mL, 0.115 mmol). Each of the aldehydes
 was dissolved in a 1% AcOH solution in trimethylorthoformate to make a 1.15 M
 solution. Each aldehyde solution was added to the appropriate well (0.10 mL, 0.115
 mmol) and the solutions were shaken for 30 minutes. A solution 0.57 M of sodium
 25 cyanoborohydride in trimethylorthoformate was then added in each well (0.10 mL,

0.057 mmol) and the mixture was shaken for 3 h after which time, a 0.1 M solution of HCl in water was added (0.10 mL, 0.010 mmol). After shaking for 5 minutes, the solutions were filtered into a 8-mL vial and the well was washed with 1 mL of MeOH. The volatile solvents were removed under vacuum and the residue was dissolved in
 5 DMSO for purification by semi-preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 111:

**1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid {(S)-1-(2-aminothiazol-4-yl)-2-[4-(2H-tetrazol-5-yl)-phenyl]-ethyl}-amide (Entry 16059, Table
 10 16):**



4-Cyano-L-phenylalanine (0.500 g, 2.63 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL) and sodium azide (0.342 g, 5.26 mmol) was added. The mixture was purged with argon gas and heated in a sealed tube at 100-120 °C for 18 h followed by 48 h at room
 15 temperature. HCl (1M, 5 mL) was added and the mixture evaporated to dryness under vacuum. MeOH (25 mL) was added followed by thionyl chloride (1 mL, 13.7 mmol) and the mixture refluxed for 3 h. After cooling to room temperature, the solution was filtered to remove insoluble material and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. The residue was taken up in MeCN (20 mL), DIEA (2.74 mL, 15.8 mmol)
 20 and di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (1.15 g, 5.26 mmol) were added, and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature. Saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (6 mL) was added, and after stirring for 1 h at room temperature, the reaction was quenched with AcOH (3.5 mL). After diluting with water (50 mL), the product was extracted into EtOAc (2 X 50 mL), washed with brine (25 mL) and dried (Na₂SO₄). After evaporation of the
 25 solvent, the desired tetrazole derivative was obtained as a tan-colored solid (0.775 g).

The tetrazole compound from above (0.752 g, 2.16 mmol) was dissolved in THF (20 mL) and DIEA (0.75 mL, 4.3 mmol) and triphenylchloromethane (trityl chloride, 0.604 g, 2.16 mmol) were added. The reaction was stirred for 1 h at room temperature and then quenched with 1 N NaOH (13 mL, 13 mmol). After stirring
5 overnight at room temperature, the reaction mixture was cooled in ice and acidified to pH 3-4 with 1 N HCl. The product was extracted into EtOAc (50 mL), washed with brine and the solution dried (Na_2SO_4). Evaporation of the solvent gave a yellow residue that was purified by passing through a pad of silica gel using EtOAc as eluent. The product was then dissolved in TBME (5 mL) and hexane (10 mL) was
10 added. The precipitated material was collected by filtration and dried to give the desired 4-tetrazolyl-L-phenylalanine free acid as a white solid (0.784 g).

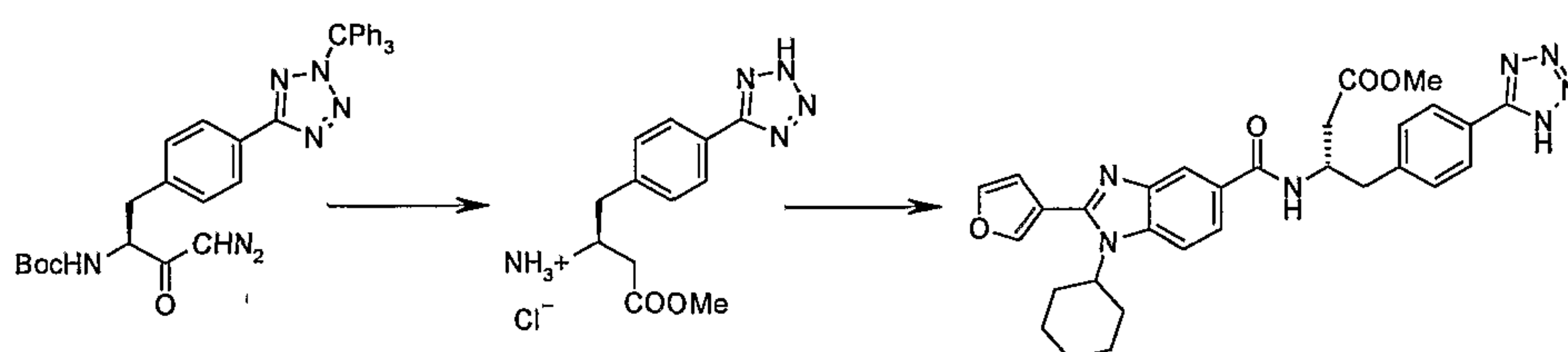
The free carboxylic acid from above (0.278 g, 0.5 mmol) was dissolved in THF (10 mL) and the solution cooled to -30°C . DIEA (105 μL , 0.6 mmol) was added
15 followed by isobutylchloroformate (72 μL , 0.55 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 30 min and excess diazomethane (0.6 M in Et_2O , 5 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, Et_2O (100 mL) was added and the mixture was washed successively with 10% citric acid (25 mL), 5% NaHCO_3 (25 mL) and brine (25 mL). After drying over MgSO_4 , the solution was concentrated to give the
20 diazomethylketone as a yellow foam (0.300 g).

The diazomethylketone from above (0.300 g, 0.5 mmol) was dissolved in EtOAc (3 mL) and cooled to -15°C . A solution of HBr in AcOH (48% w/w, 100 μL) was added dropwise and the reaction mixture stirred for 5 min. The reaction was warmed to room temperature and volatiles removed under a stream of nitrogen.
25 The residue was dissolved in MeCN (5 mL) and thiourea (0.075 g, 1.0 mmol) was added. After stirring for 45 min at 60°C , the reaction mixture was cooled and the solvent removed under a stream on nitrogen. Water (0.5 mL) was added followed by 4 N HCl in dioxane (5 mL) and the mixture stirred for 30 min. Dioxane was evaporated under reduced pressure and 1 N HCl (10 mL) was added. The aqueous
30 phase was washed with ether (3 X 10 mL) and liophilized to give a brown foam. The material was coevaporated once with MeOH then with MeCN to give a pale yellow solid (0.150 g).

The hydrochloride salt from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give, after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 111.

5 **Example 112:**

(S)-3-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-4-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-butyric acid (Entry 16061, Table 16):

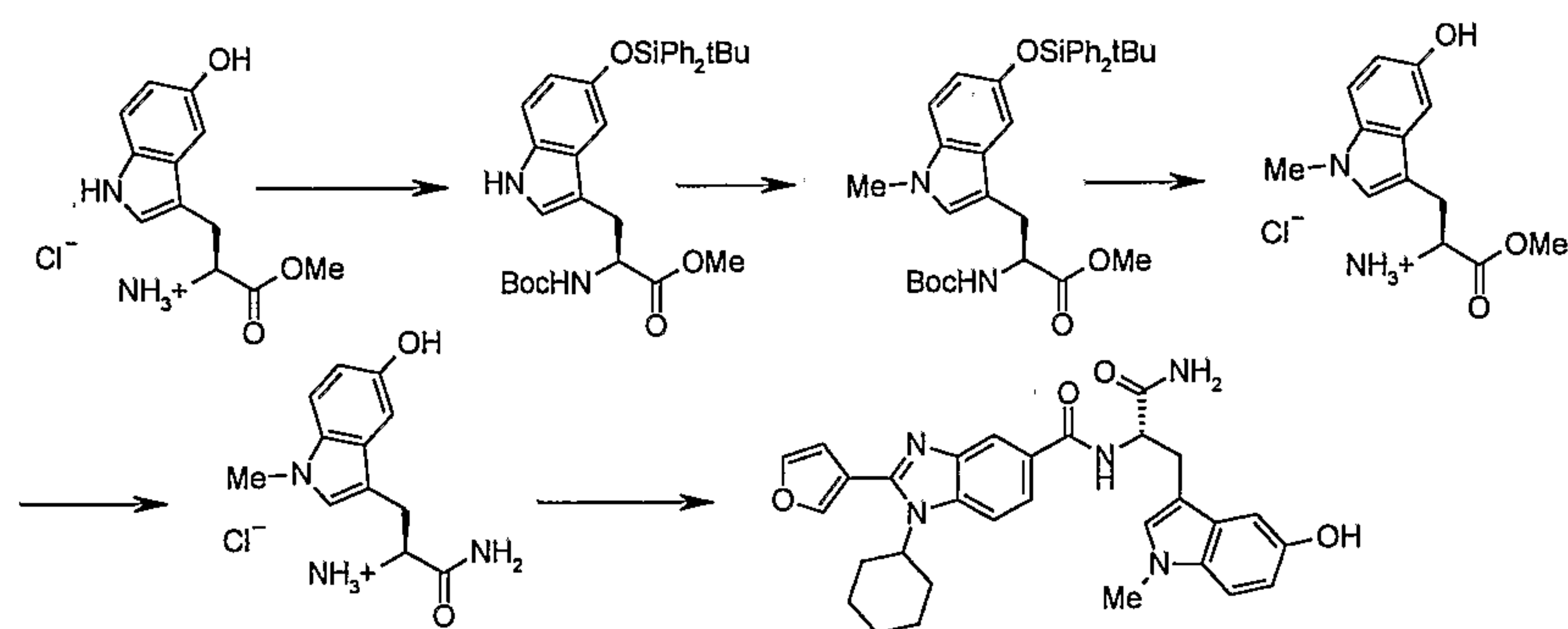


The diazomethylketone of example 111 (0.100 g, 0.17 mmol) was dissolved in a mixture of THF (0.2 mL) and MeOH (0.3 mL). A solution of silver benzoate in triethylamine (100 mg / mL, 0.1 mL) was added slowly, causing vigorous gas evolution. After 1 min, the reaction mixture turned brown. It was diluted with ether (2 mL) and 4N HCl in dioxane (0.2 mL) was added. The precipitate that formed was removed by filtration (ether for washings) and the filtrate evaporated to dryness. It was then stirred with additional 4N HCl in dioxane (0.5 mL) for 1 h. Et₂O (10 mL) and 1N HCl (10 mL) were added and the aqueous phase was lyophilized to give a yellow residue (0.078 g).

The amine hydrochloride from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner, saponified and purified by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC to give the title compound of example 112).

Example 113:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-carbamoyl-2-(5-hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13002, Table 13):



5-Hydroxy-(*S*)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (6.47 g, 23.9 mmol) was suspended in DCM (150 mL) and the suspension cooled in an ice bath. DIEA (4.17 mL, 23.9 mmol) was added followed by di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (5.22 g, 23.9 mmol) in DCM (5 mL). The mixture was stirred for 3 h at room temperature after which additional DIEA (0.75 mL) and di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (0.50 g) was added. After stirring for another hour at room temperature, the solution was washed with 5% citric acid (4 X 50 mL) and brine (2 X 50 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to a dark beige solid. The crude material was triturated with 5% Et₂O in hexane (75 mL), filtered and dried to give the desired carbamate ester (7.81 g).

The carbamate from above (1.037 g, 3.1 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10 mL). Imidazole (0.422 g, 6.2 mmol) and *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl chloride (0.847 mL, 3.26 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred overnight at room temperature. Water (50 mL) was added and the mixture extracted with Et₂O (2 X 50 mL). The extract was washed with 10% citric acid (25 mL), 5% NaHCO₃ (25 mL) and brine (25 mL). The solution was dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to give the fully protected 5-hydroxytryptophan derivative as a white foam (1.738 g).

The protected tryptophan derivative from above (0.573 g, 1.00 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (3 mL) and the solution cooled in ice. Sodium hydride (60% oil dispersion, 0.048 g, 1.2 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred for 30 min. Iodomethane (0.093 mL, 1.5 mmol) was added and stirring continued for an additional hour. The reaction was then quenched with 10% citric acid (2 mL) and water (25 mL), and extracted with Et₂O (100 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated, and the residue purified by flash chromatography (20-30% EtOAc / hexane as eluent) to give the desired *N*-methyltryptophan derivative (0.284g).

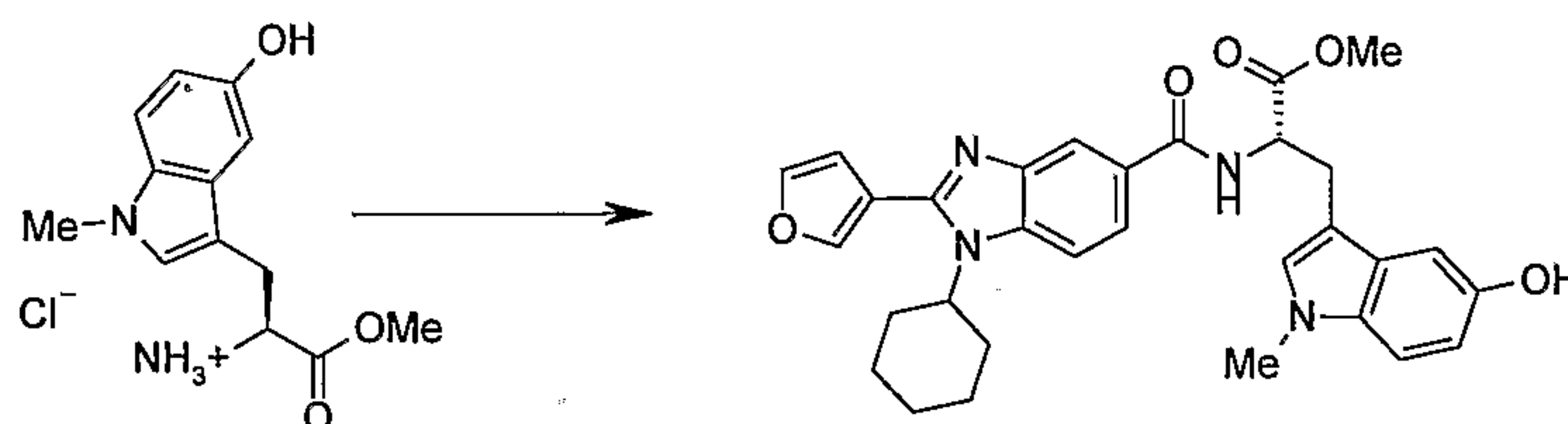
The *N*-methyltryptophan derivative from above (0.711 g, 1.21 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (10 mL) and thionyl chloride (0.6 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture

was heated to 60 °C for 3 h. Volatiles were removed under reduced pressure and the residue triturated with TBME (25 mL). The precipitated white solid was collected, washed with TBME and dried to give *N*-methyl-5-hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (0.339 g): MS (ES⁺) *m/z* 249 (MH⁺).

- 5 The methyl ester hydrochloride from above (0.170 g, 0.6 mmol) was suspended in concentrated aqueous ammonia (15 mL) and the mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. Volatiles were then removed under vacuum and the residue triturated with MeOH (3-4 mL) and Et₂O (15 mL). The amide derivative was obtained as a brown solid (0.136 g).
- 10 The tryptophan amide derivative from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give after purification by HPLC the title compound of example 113.

15 **Example 114:**

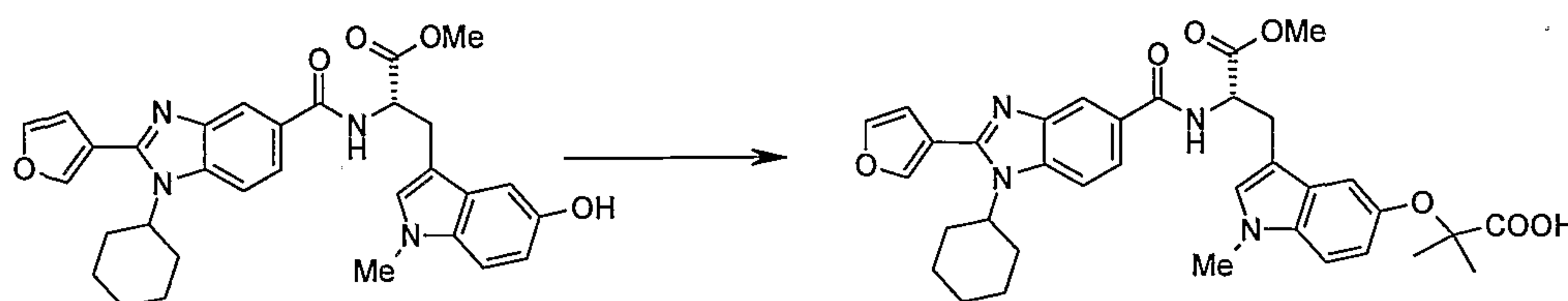
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid methyl ester (Entry 11028, Table 11):



- 20 *N*-Methyl-5-hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride (example 113) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give after purification by HPLC the title compound of example 114.

Example 115:

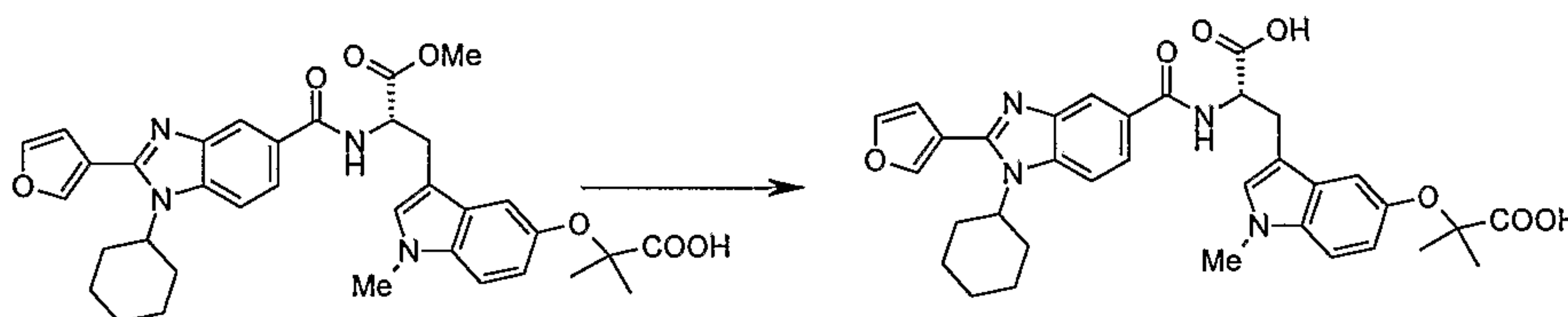
- 25 **(S)-3-[5-(1-Carboxy-1-methyl-ethoxy)-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid methyl ester (Entry 11029, Table 11):**



The title compound of example 114 (0.097 g, 0.18 mmol) was dissolved in acetone (1.5 mL). Cesium carbonate (0.175 g, 0.54 mmol) and *tert*-butylbromoisobutyrate (0.080 g, 0.36 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred at 60 °C overnight in a sealed tube. The reaction mixture was then diluted with water (10 mL) and the product extracted with EtOAc (50 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), concentrated and the residue purified by flash chromatography using 60-80% EtOAc in hexane as eluent. The purified diester was dissolved in DCM (0.5 mL) and TFA (0.5 mL) was added. After stirring at room temperature for 1.5 h, volatiles were removed under a stream of nitrogen and the residue purified by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC to give the title compound of example 115.

Example 116:

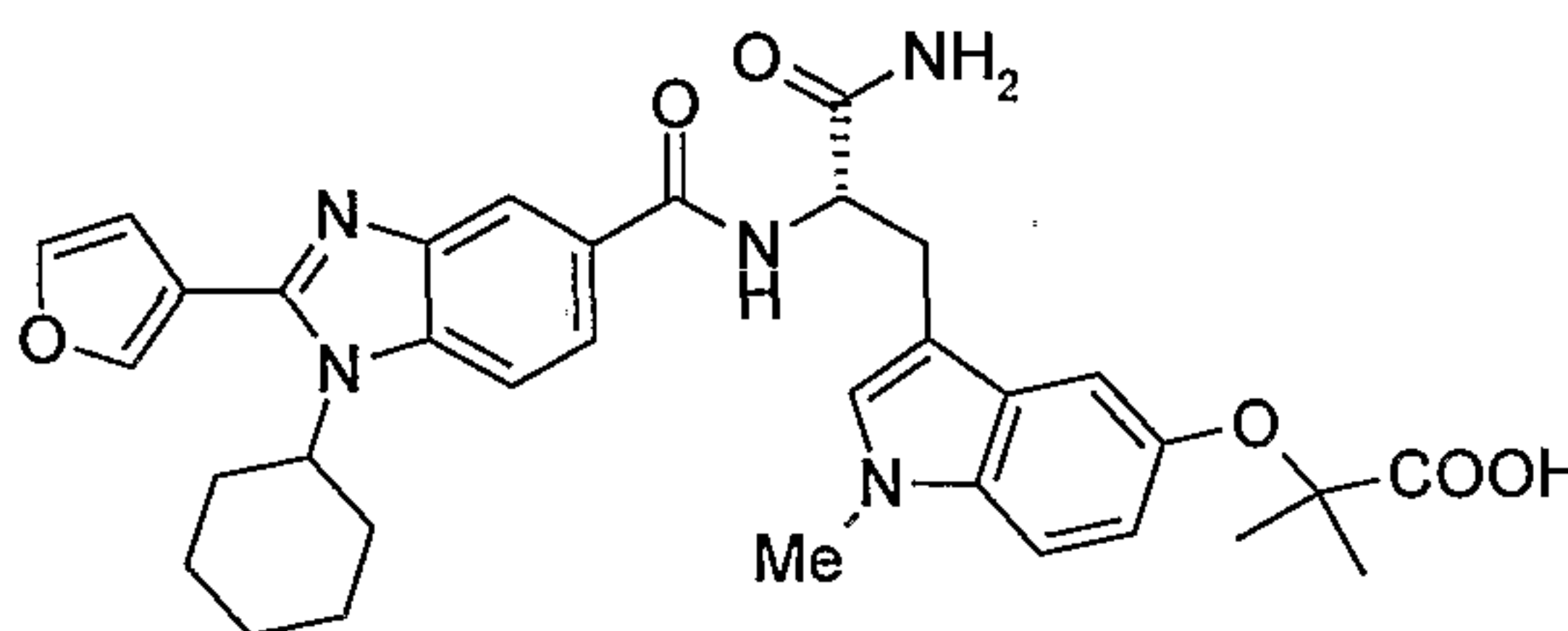
(S)-3-[5-(1-Carboxy-1-methyl-ethoxy)-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl]-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (Entry 11030, Table 11):



The title compound of example 115 (6 mg) was dissolved in DMSO (0.4 mL) and 2.5N NaOH (0.2 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, the reaction mixture was acidified with TFA (0.1 mL) and the product of example 116 isolated directly by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 117:

2-[3-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-1-methyl-1H-indol-5-yloxy]-2-methyl-propionic acid (Entry 1176, Table 1):



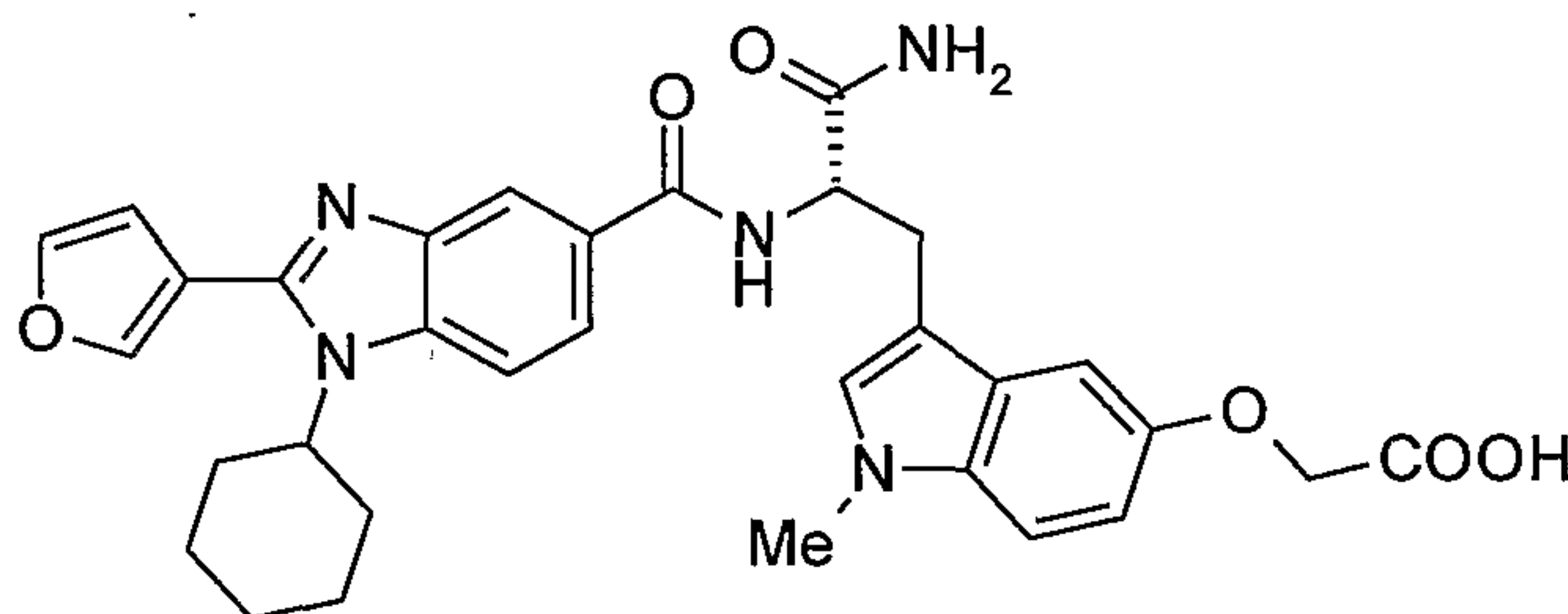
145

Following the procedure described for example 115, the title compound of example 113 was alkylated with *tert*-butylbromoisobutyrate and the protecting group removed to give the title compound of example 117 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

5

Example 118:

[3-((*S*)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-1-methyl-1*H*-indol-5-yloxy]-acetic acid (Entry 13003, Table 13):



10

Following the procedure described for example 117, the title compound of example 113 was alkylated with *tert*-butylbromoacetate and the protecting group removed to give the title compound of example 118 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

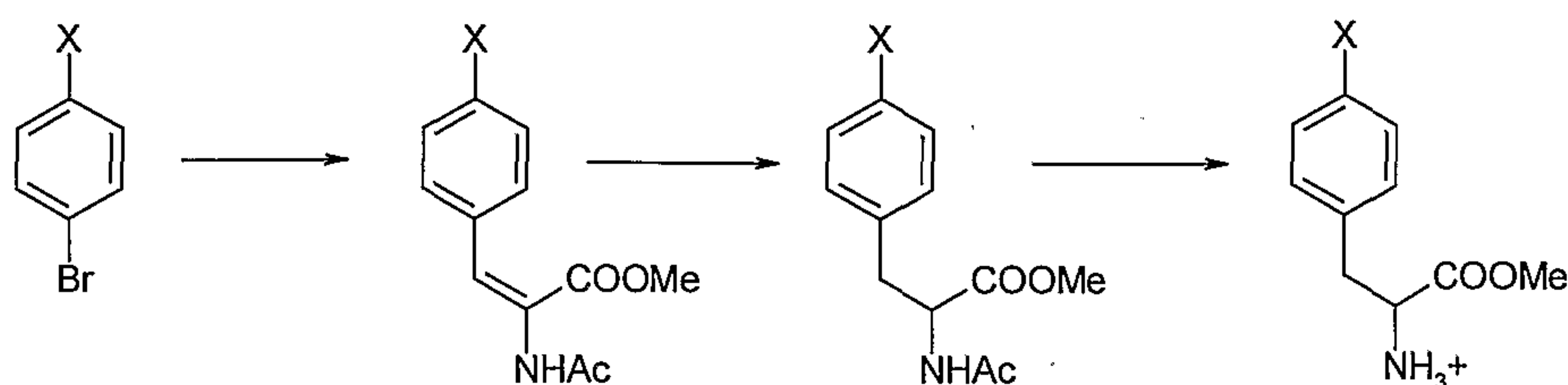
15

Example 119:**Substituted racemic phenylalanine fragments:**

A variety of racemic substituted phenylalanine derivatives were prepared from the corresponding bromobenzene derivatives via palladium-catalyzed Heck coupling with 2-acetamido methyl acrylate as described in the scheme below. For this purpose, phenolic functions were protected as acetate and carboxyl groups as methyl esters. Following Heck coupling, the resulting protected dehydroamino acids were hydrogenated to the racemic phenylalanine derivatives which were deprotected to the free amino acids by hydrolysis under acidic conditions. Free carboxylic acid functions were then reprotected as methyl esters prior to coupling with the carboxylic acid of example 2. The following examples are representative and are meant to illustrate the process:

25

146



X = COOMe, OAc (*meta* or *para* to Br)
aromatic ring substituted with halo, Me, COOMe, OAc

Racemic 3-fluoro-4-(carboxymethyl)phenylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride:

4-Bromo-2-fluorobenzoic acid (3.00 g, 13.7 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (25 mL) and thionyl chloride (1.5 mL, 20.1 mmol) was added dropwise. The mixture was refluxed overnight and then volatiles were removed under reduced pressure. The residue was triturated with a small amount of MeOH and the methyl ester collected by filtration (3.02 g).

The methyl ester from above (2.66 g, 11.4 mmol) was dissolved in MeCN (15 mL) and triethylamine (4.0 mL, 28.5 mmol) was added, followed by 2-acetamido methyl acrylate (1.80 g, 12.6 mmol) and tri-*o*-tolylphosphine (0.28 g, 0.91 mmol). The mixture was degassed with argon for 15 min and palladium acetate (0.17 g, 0.80 mmol) was added. Following an additional 15 min of degassing, the mixture was refluxed for 20 h. EtOAc was added and the solution washed with water, dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated. The residue was crystallized from EtOAc to give the desired dehydroamino ester (1.30 g).

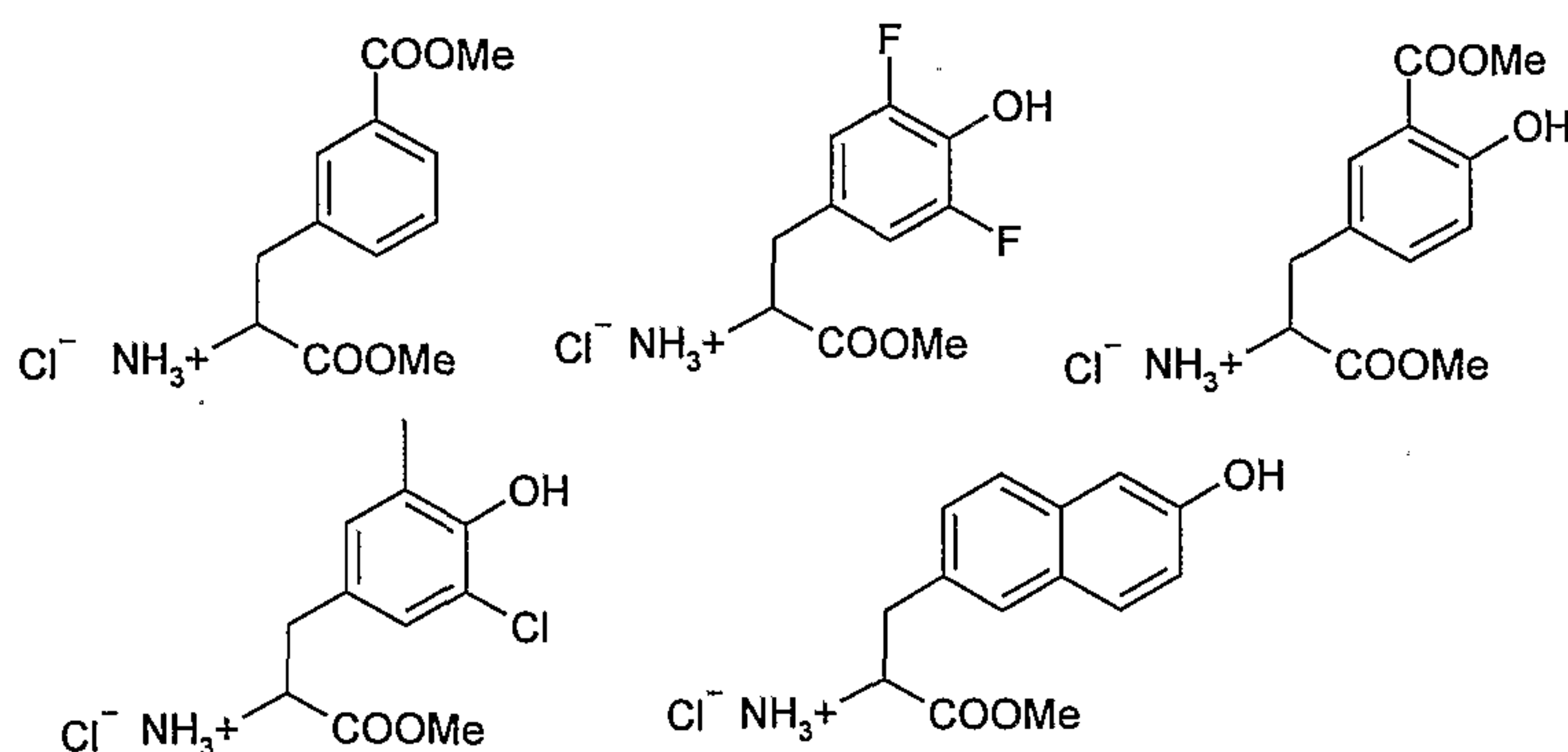
The dehydroaminoester from above was dissolved in MeOH and hydrogenated over 20% Pd(OH)₂ under one atmosphere of hydrogen gas for 20 h. After removal of the catalyst by filtration and removal of the solvent under reduced pressure, the desired protected phenylalanine derivative was obtained.

The protected phenylalanine derivative from above (0.210 g, 0.71 mmol) was added to 4N HCl and the mixture refluxed overnight. Volatiles were then removed under vacuum to give the desired free amino acid as the hydrochloride salt (0.182 g).

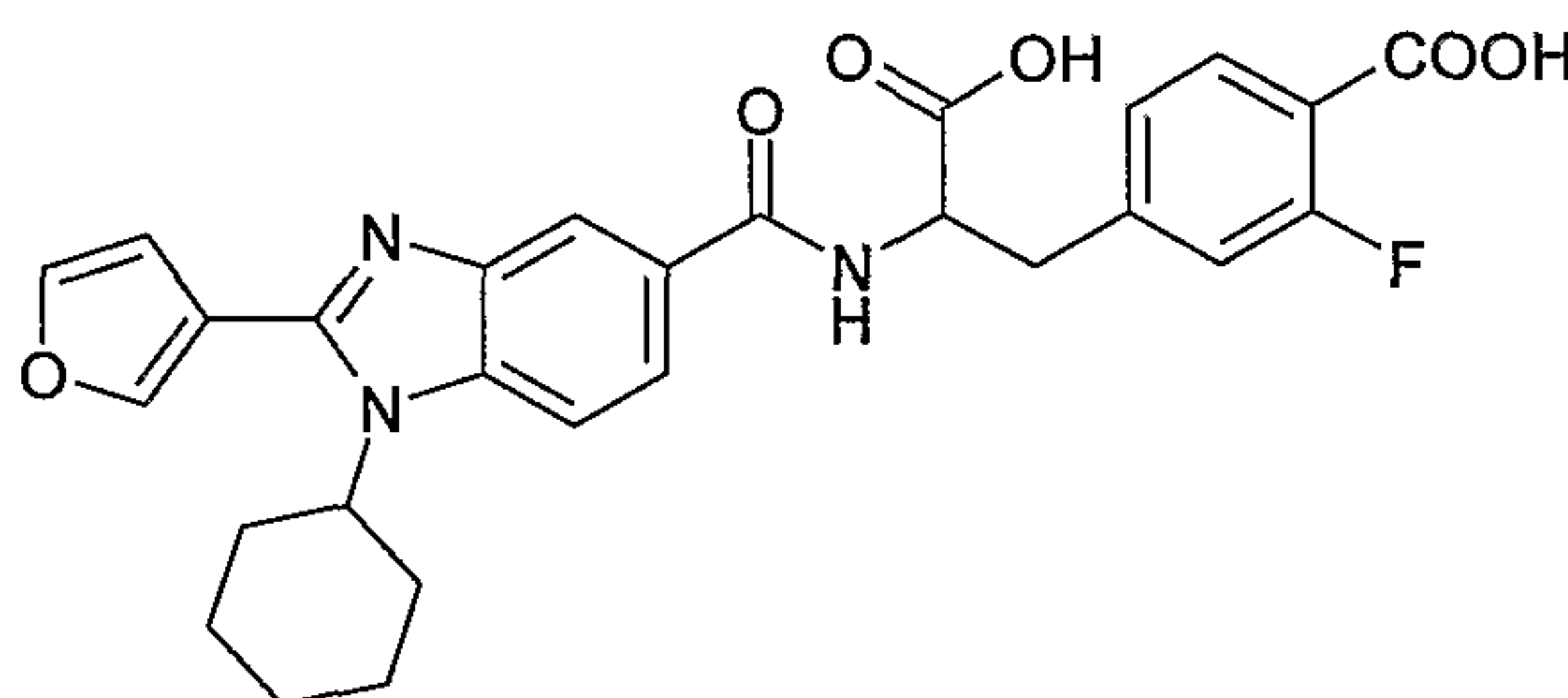
The fully deprotected phenylalanine derivative from above (0.187 g, 0.69 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (30 mL) and thionyl chloride (3 mL) was added dropwise. The mixture was refluxed overnight and then evaporated under vacuum. The residue was triturated with MeOH to give the title compound (0.193 g).

Following adaptations of the above protocols, the following racemic phenylalanine esters were prepared:

147

**Example 120:**

Racemic 4-(2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-2-fluoro-benzoic acid (Entry 1142, Table 1):

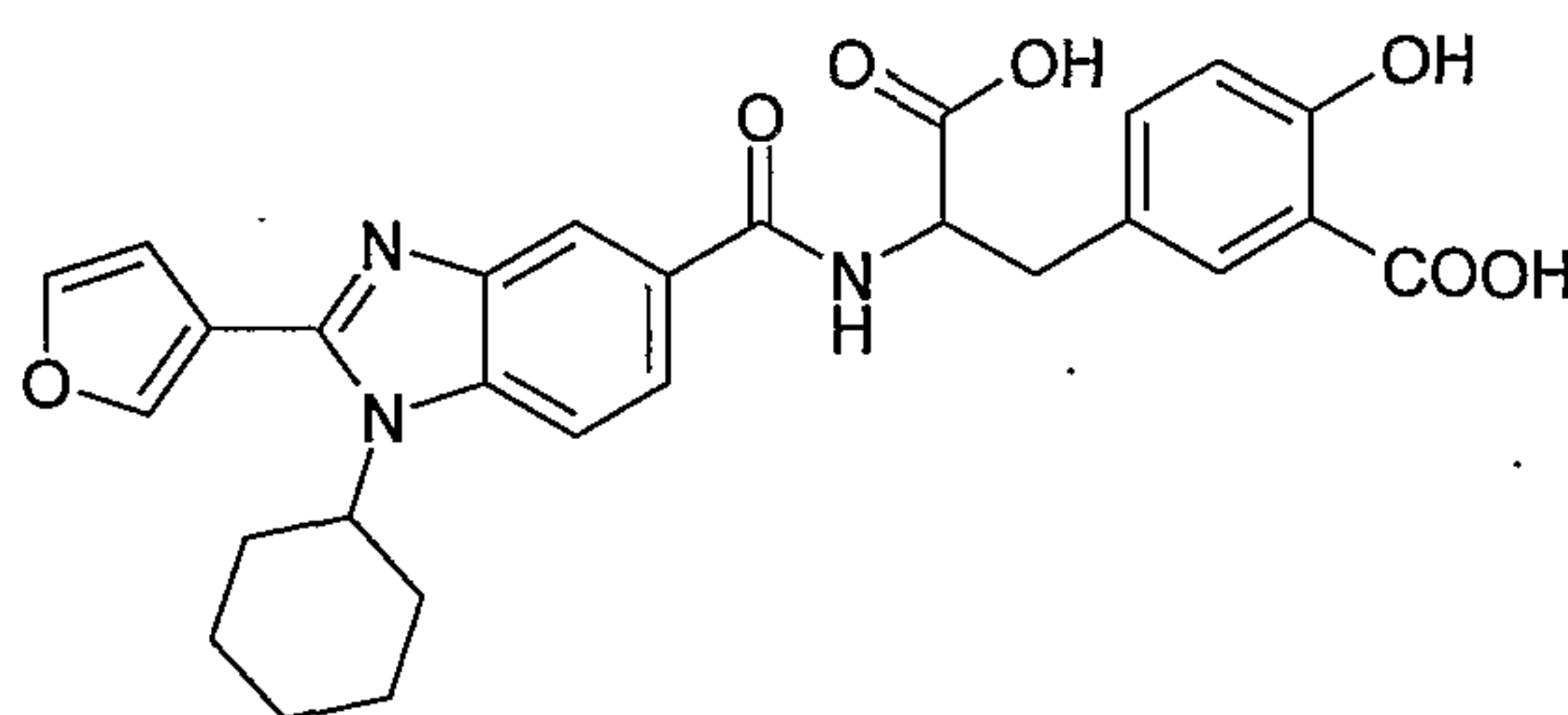


Racemic 3-fluoro-4-(carbomethoxy)phenylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 120.

10

Example 121:

Racemic 5-(2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-ethyl)-2-hydroxy-benzoic acid (Entry 16058, Table 16):

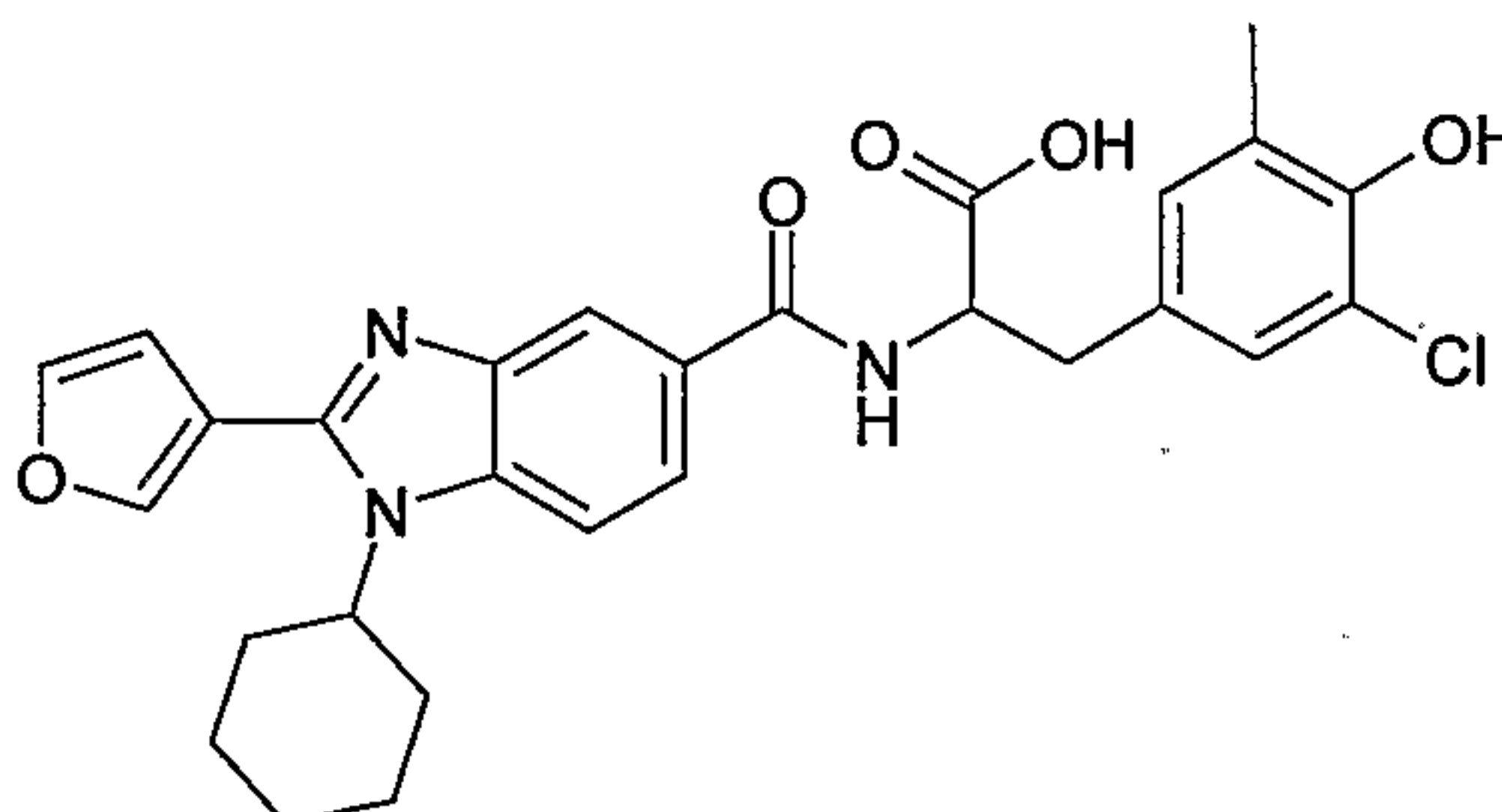


Racemic 3-(carbomethoxy)tyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 121.

15

Example 122:

Racemic 3-(3-Chloro-4-hydroxy-5-methyl-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 1152, Table 1):

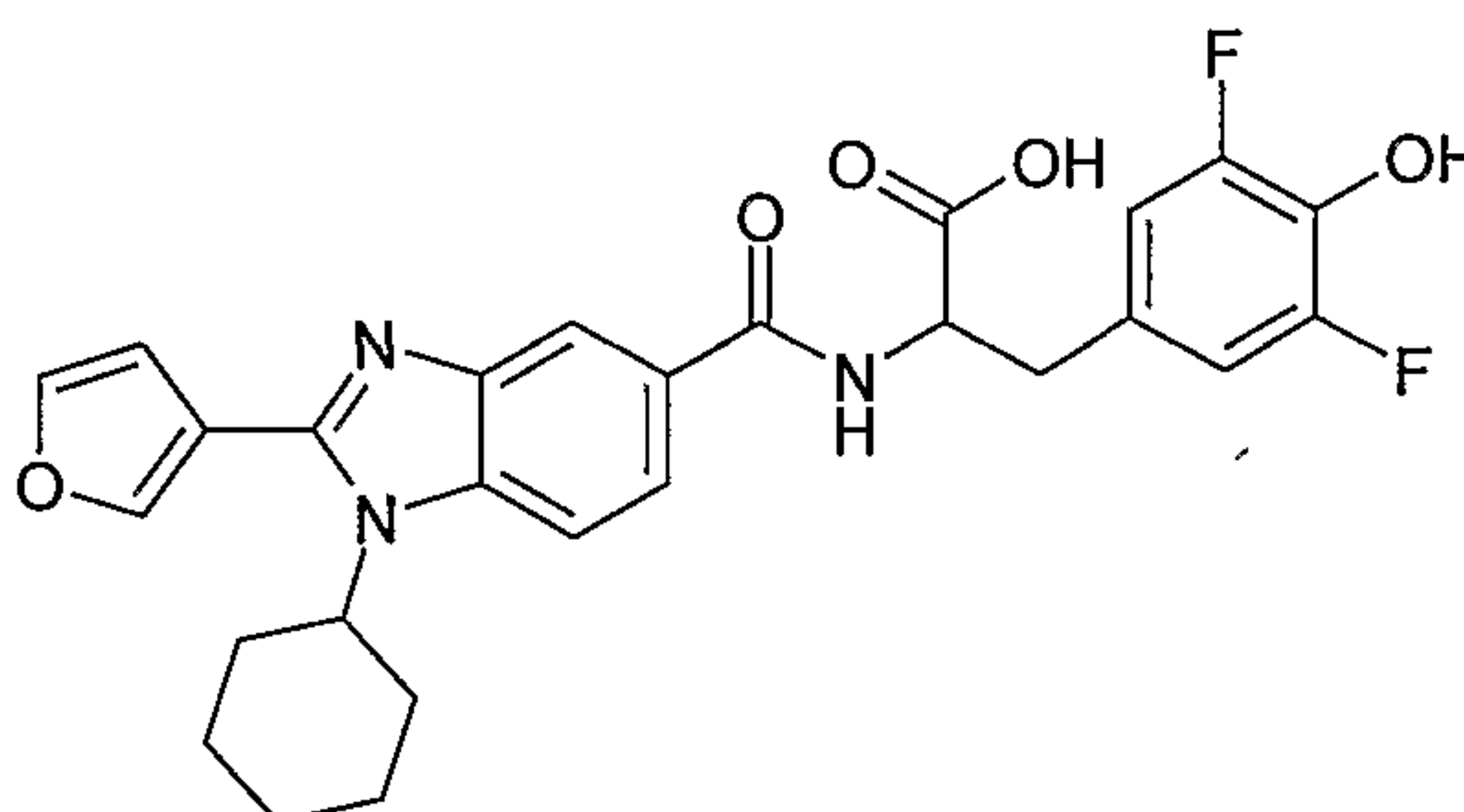


5

Racemic 3-chloro-5-methyltyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 121.

10 **Example 123:**

Racemic 2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(3,5-difluoro-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-propionic acid (Entry 1153, Table 1):



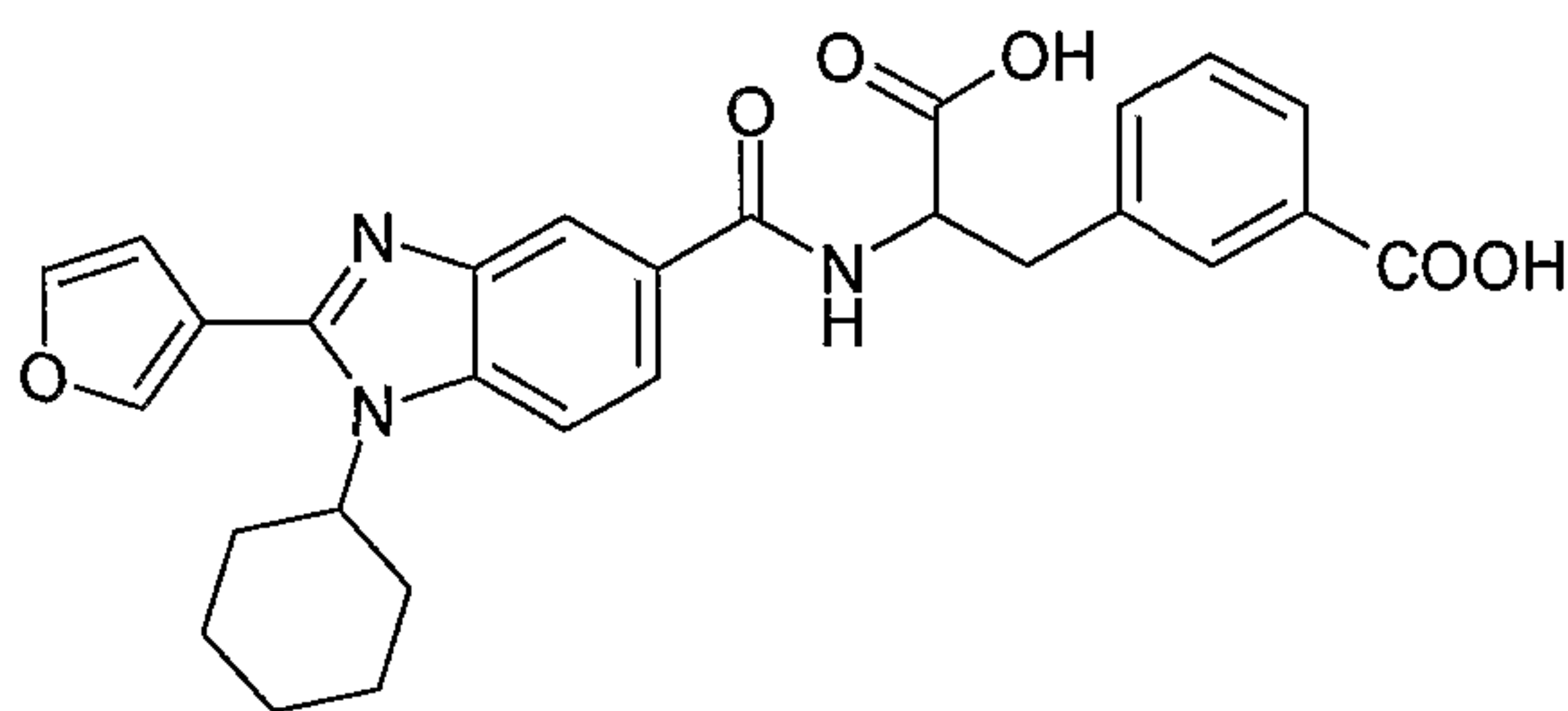
15

Racemic 3,5-difluorotyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 123.

Example 124:

20 **Racemic 3-(2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-benzoic acid (Entry 16053, Table 16):**

149

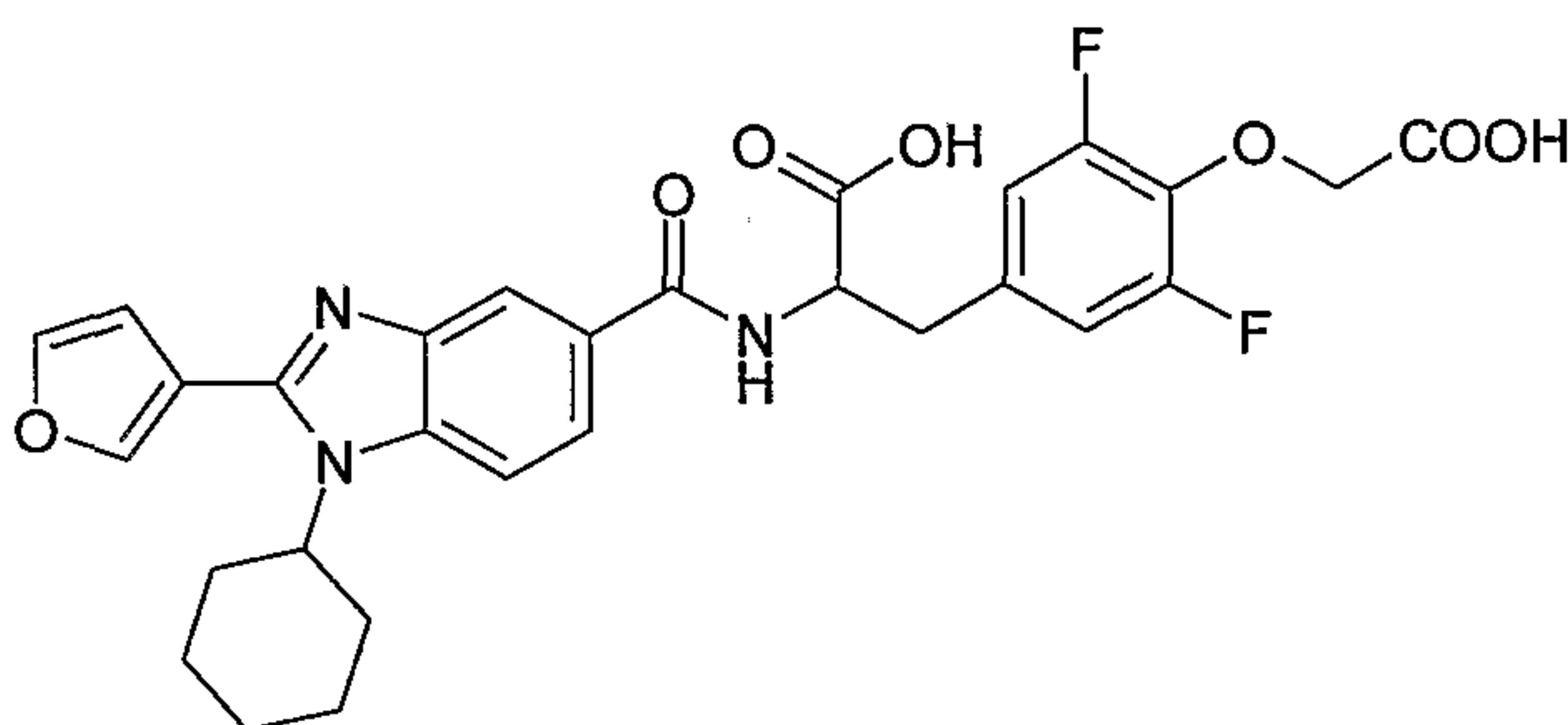


Racemic 3-(carbomethoxy)phenylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 1234.

5

Example 125:

Racemic 3-(4-Carboxymethoxy-3,5-difluoro-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 1144, Table 1):



10

Racemic 3,5-difluorotyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The phenolic hydroxyl group was alkylated with methyl bromoacetate in the usual manner (K_2CO_3 / acetone at reflux) and ester groups saponified to give the title compound of example 125.

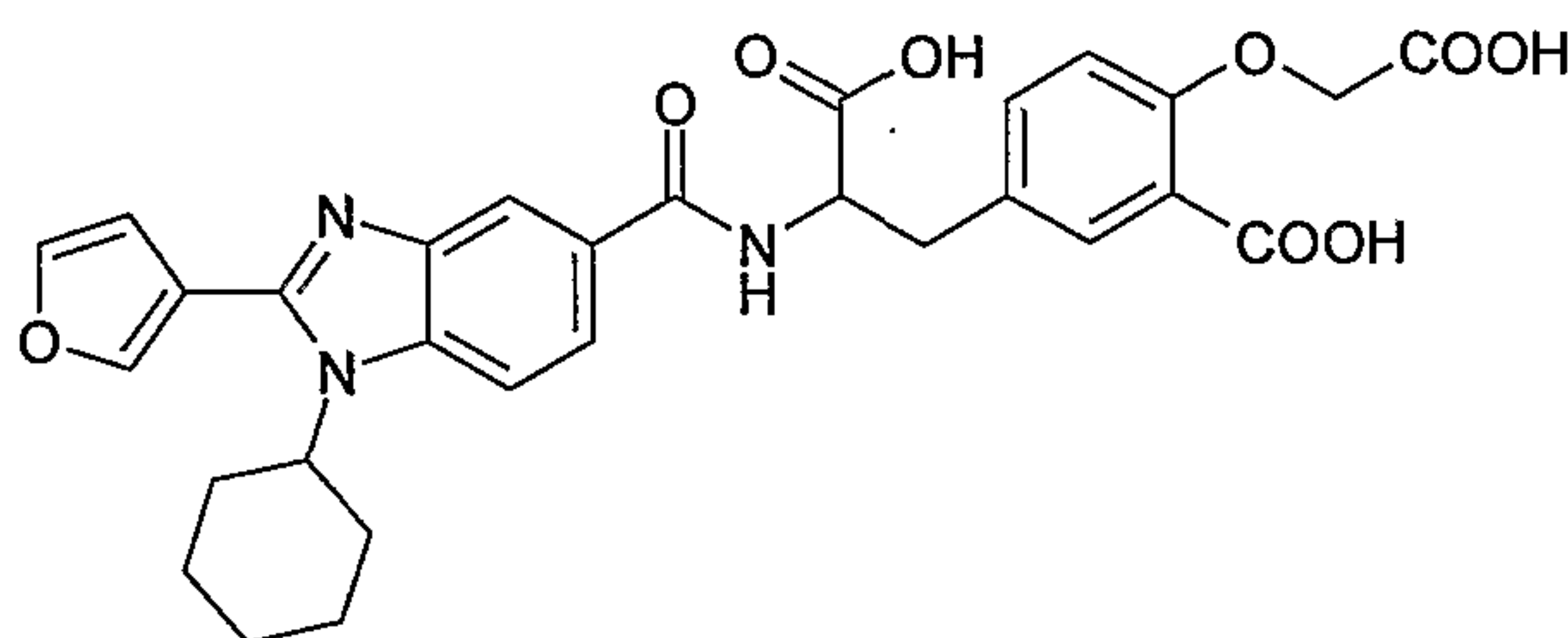
15

Example 126:

Racemic 5-(2-Carboxy-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-2-carboxymethoxy-benzoic acid (Entry 16054, Table 16):

20

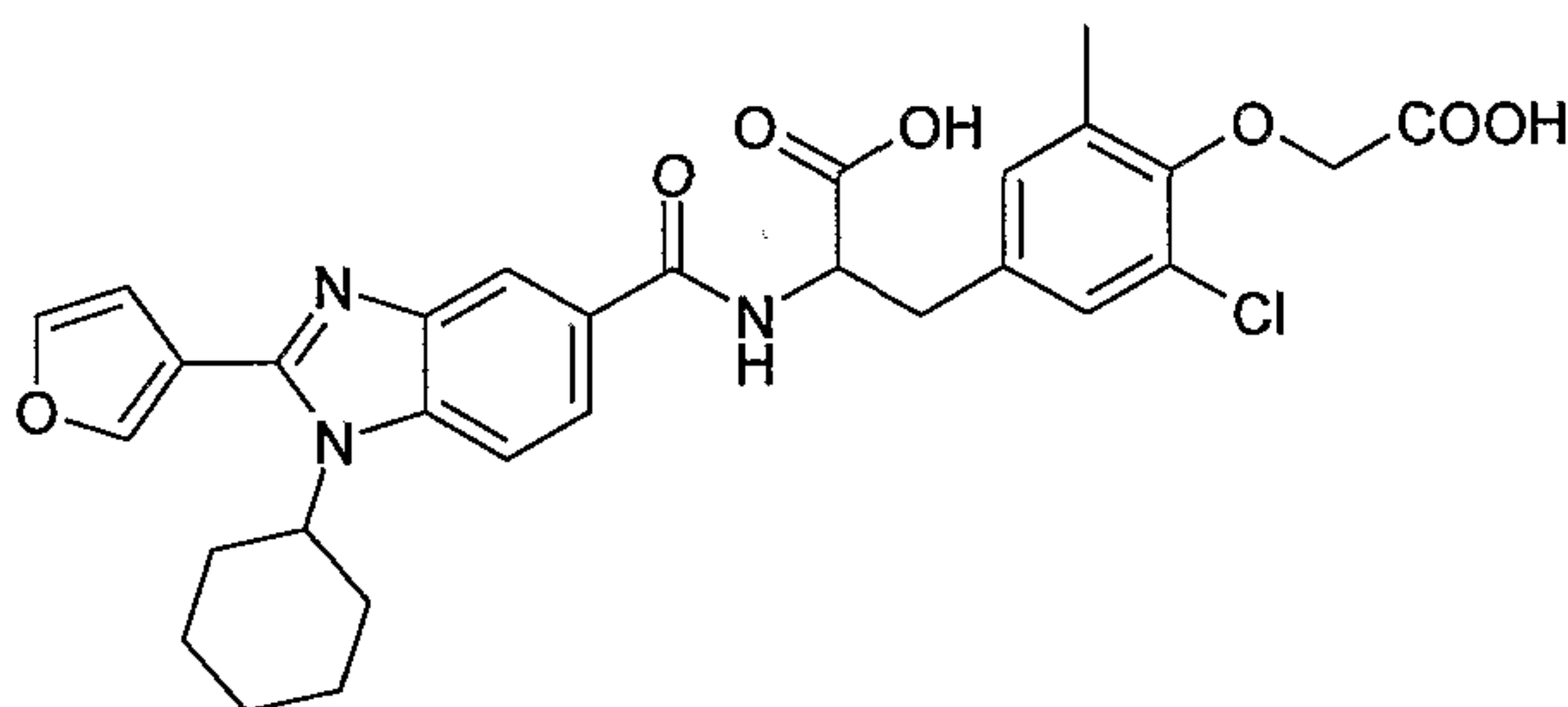
150



Racemic 3-(carbomethoxy)tyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The phenolic hydroxyl group was alkylated with methyl bromoacetate in the usual manner (K_2CO_3 / acetone at reflux) and saponified to give the title compound of example 126.

Example 127:

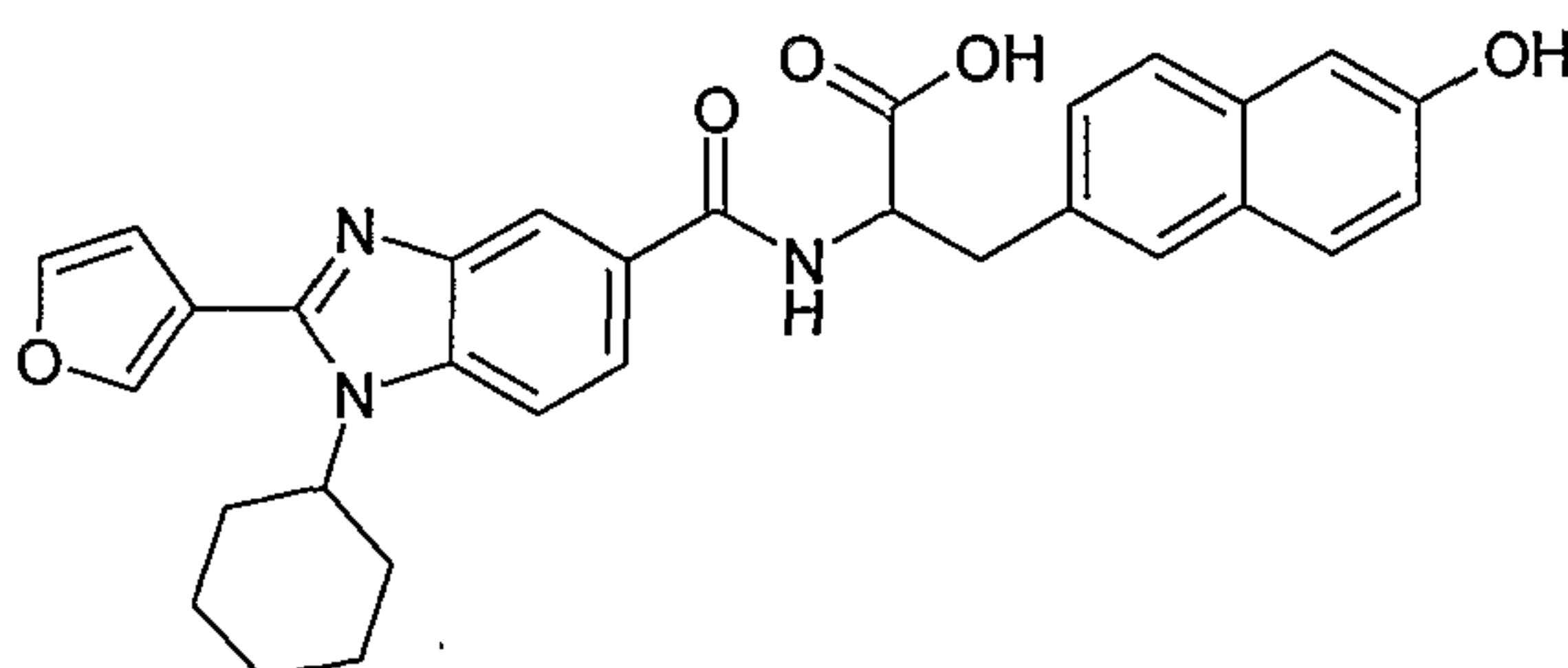
Racemic 3-(4-Carboxymethoxy-3-chloro-5-methyl-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 16055, Table 16):



Racemic 3-chloro-5-methyltyrosine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The phenolic hydroxyl group was alkylated with methyl bromoacetate in the usual manner (K_2CO_3 / acetone at reflux) and ester groups saponified to give the title compound of example 127.

Example 128:

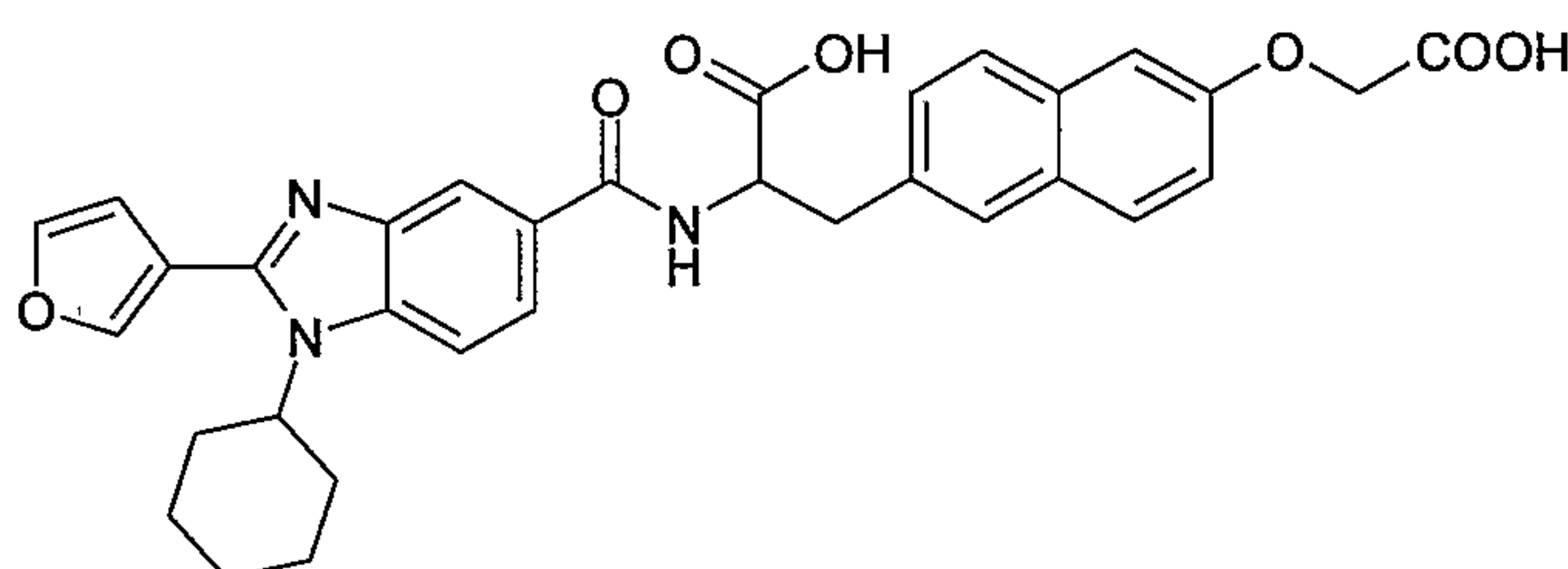
Racemic 2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(6-hydroxy-naphthalen-2-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 21001, Table 21):



Racemic 5-hydroxynaphthylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner and saponified to give the title compound of example 128.

Example 129:

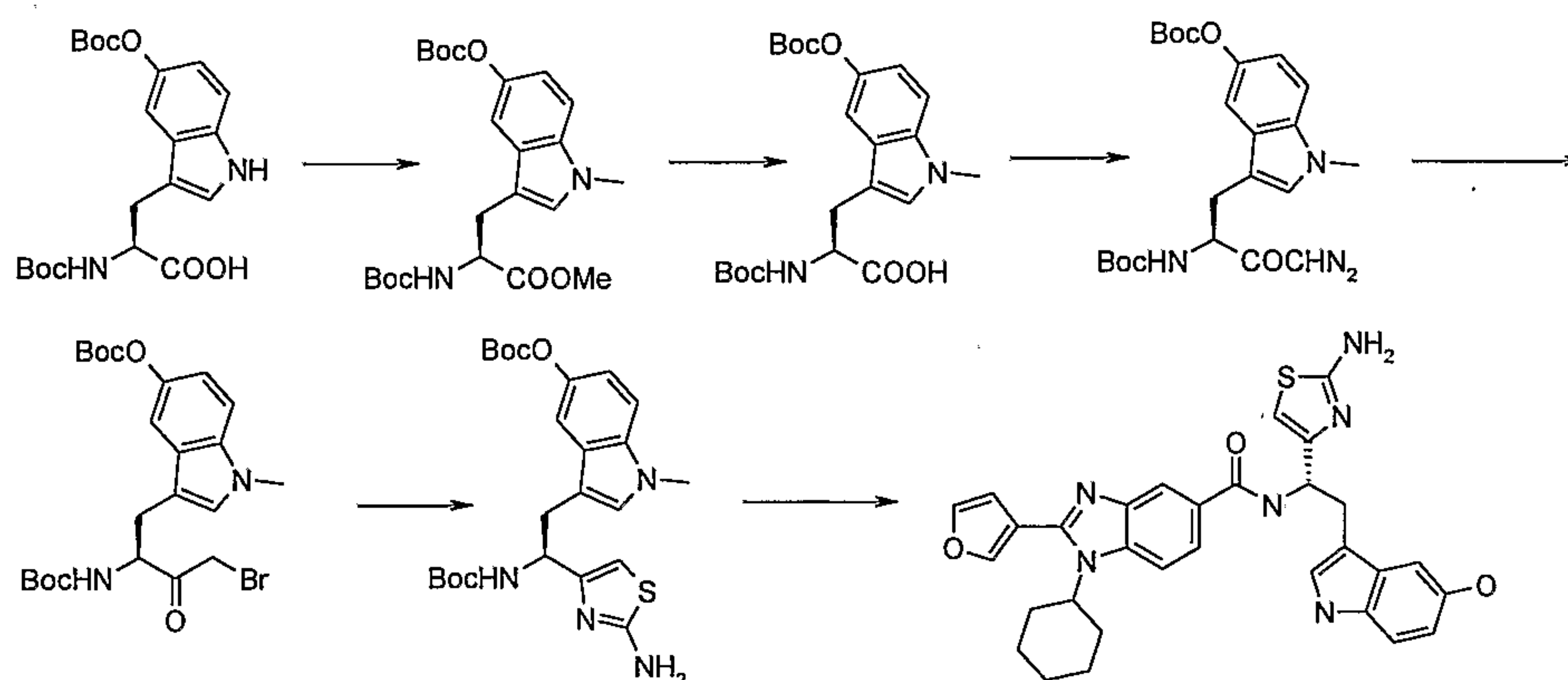
Racemic 3-(6-Carboxymethoxy-naphthalen-2-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 21002, Table 21):



Racemic 5-hydroxynaphthylalanine methyl ester hydrochloride (example 119) was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. The phenolic hydroxyl group was alkylated with methyl bromoacetate in the usual manner (K_2CO_3 / acetone at reflux) and ester groups saponified to give the title compound of example 129.

Example 130:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-aminothiazol-4-yl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1-methyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 14003, Table14):



N,O-Bis-Boc-5-hydroxy-L-tryptophan (Example 86, 0.600 g, 1.43 mmol) was converted to its methyl ester using diazomethane in Et_2O . Following removal of volatiles under reduced pressure, the residue was dissolved in DMF and the solution

cooled in ice. Iodomethane (0.178 mL, 2.86 mmol) was added followed by a 60% oil dispersion of NaH (0.086 g, 2.14 mmol). The mixture was stirred in the ice bath for 1 h and then quenched with AcOH (0.20 mL). Water (15 mL) was added and the mixture extracted with Et₂O (2 X 50 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated and the residue purified by flash chromatography (25% - 50% EtOAc in hexane as eluent) to give the *N*-methyltryptophan derivative as a white foam (0.400 g).

The methyl ester from above (0.385 g, 0.86 mmol) was dissolved in THF (4 mL). Water (0.8 mL) and lithium hydroxide monohydrate (0.036 g, 0.86 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred vigorously for 1 h at room temperature. The mixture was poured into a solution of K₂CO₃ (1.0 g) in water (30 mL) and the solution washed with ether (2 X 25 mL). The aqueous phase was acidified to pH 4 by slow addition of 4 N HCl and extracted with Et₂O (2 X 25 mL). The extract was dried (Na₂SO₄) and evaporated to give the free carboxylic acid as a white foam (0.346 g).

The free acid from above (0.334 g, 0.77 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5 mL) and the solution cooled to -20 C. DIEA (0.200 mL, 1.15 mmol) and isobutylchloroformate (0.130 mL, 1.0 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred for 2 h at -20 C. Additional DIEA (0.100 mL) and isobutylchloroformate (0.065 mL) were added to complete the reaction (additional 30 min). Diazomethane (0.6 M in Et₂O, 10 ml) was added and stirring continued for another hour. Et₂O (100 mL) was added and the solution washed successively with 10% citric acid (2 X 20 mL) and saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ (20 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and concentrated to give a residue that was purified by flash chromatography using 40-50% EtOAc in hexane as eluent. The diazomethylketone derivative (0.294 g) was obtained as a yellow foam.

The diazomethylketone was converted to the bromomethylketone with 48% HBr in AcOH as described previously (Example 86).

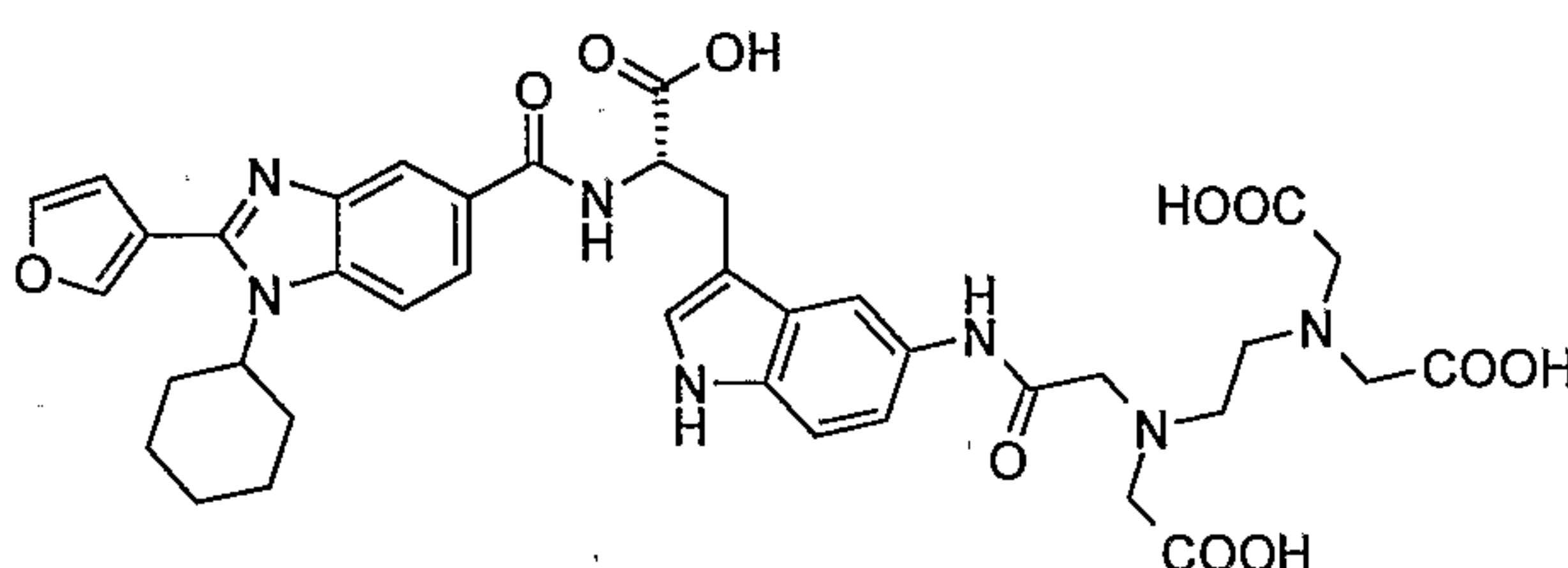
30

The bromomethylketone from above was converted to the aminothiazole derivative with thiourea as described previously (Example 91).

The thiazole derivative obtained above was deprotected using 50% TFA in DCM and the hydrochloride derivative was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 to give the title compound of example 130.

5 **Example 131:**

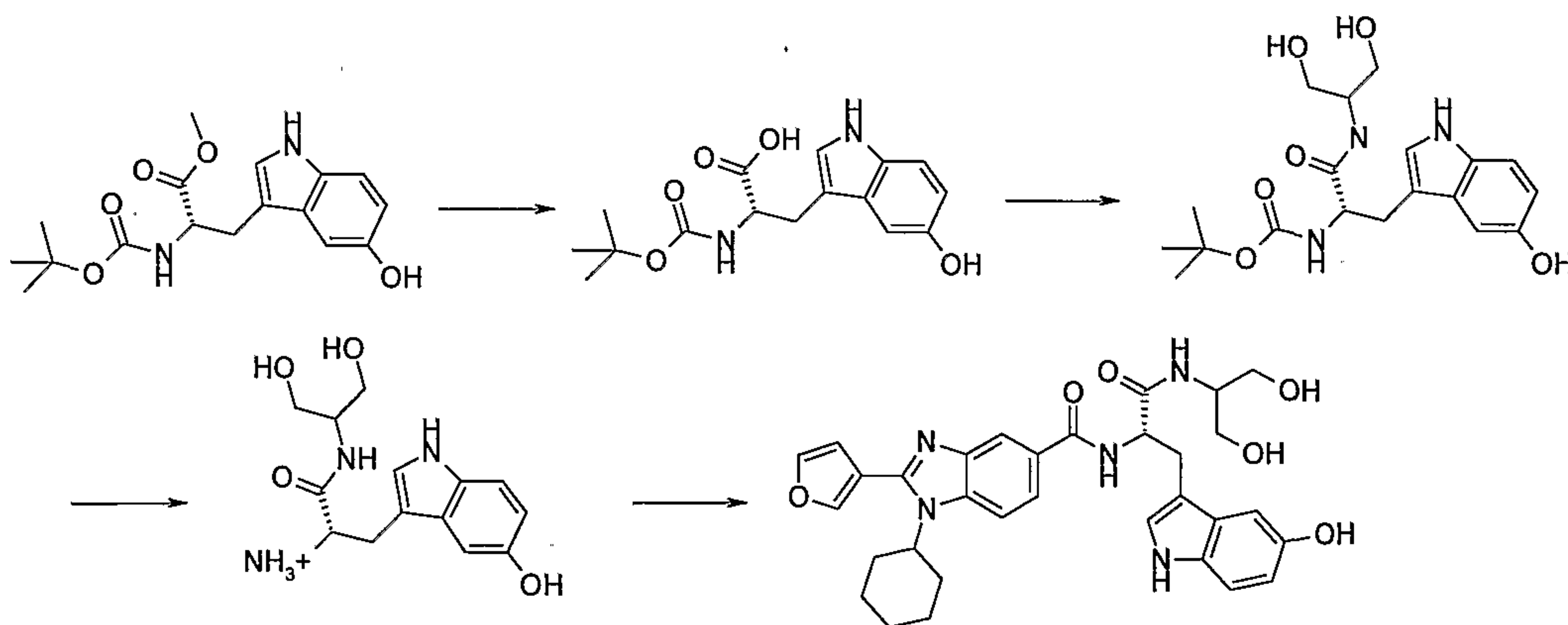
(S)-3-[5-(2-[[2-(Bis-carboxymethyl-amino)-ethyl]-carboxymethyl-amino]-ethanoylamino)-1H-indol-3-yl]-2-[[1-(cyclohexyl-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-propionic acid (Entry 111031, Table 11):



- 10 The 5-aminotryptophan methyl ester derivative of example 48 was coupled to ethylenediamine tetraAcetic acid trimethylester in the usual manner and the product saponified to give the title compound of example 131.

Example 132:

- 15 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl-ethylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13014, Table 13):**



- 20 *N*-Boc-5-hydroxytryptophan methyl ester (example 113, 0.500 g, 1.5 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (4 mL) and 2 N NaOH (2.24 mL, 4.5 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred under an atmosphere of argon for 3 h. The solution was then

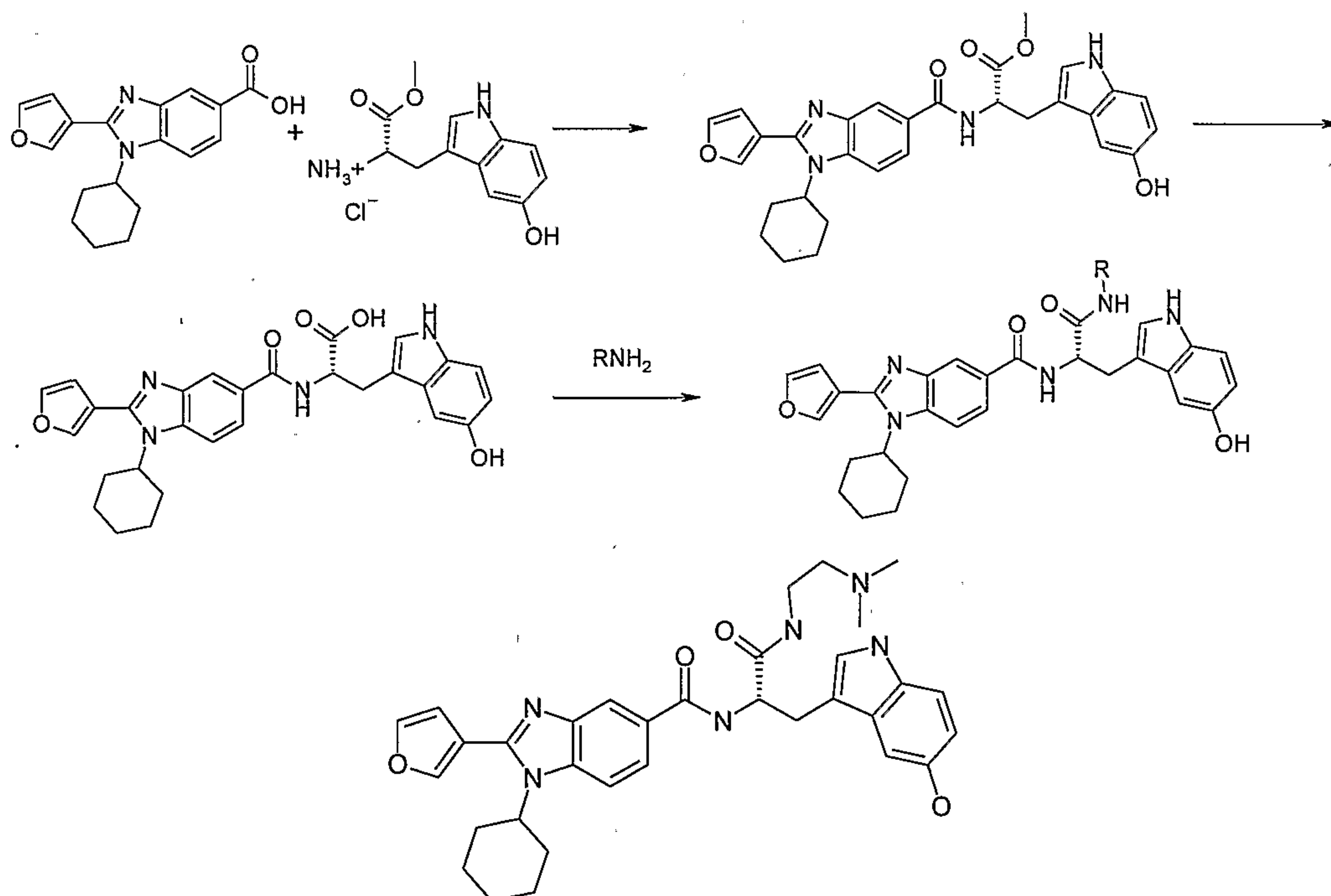
added to a vigorously stirred 1 N KHSO₄ (15 mL). After 10 min the solid was filtered and air dried 18 h.

To the carboxylic acid prepared above (0.157 g, 0.5 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) were added TBTU (0.157 g, 0.5 mmol) and DIEA (256 μ L, 1.5 mmol). The solution was stirred 30 min at room temperature and serinol (0.045 g, 0.5 mmol) was added. After 2 h the solution was poured into 50% NaCl (100 mL) and the product extracted with EtOAc (25 mL). The organic solution was washed with 5% citric acid (2 X 50 mL), 5% NaHCO₃ (3 X 50 mL) and brine (50 mL). The extract was dried (MgSO₄) and evaporated to yield 105 mg of the 5-hydroxytryptophan amide.

The Boc derivative prepared above was deprotected with 4N HCl-dioxane and coupled with the acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give the title compound of example 132.

EXAMPLE 133:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-dimethylamino-ethylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13015, Table 15):



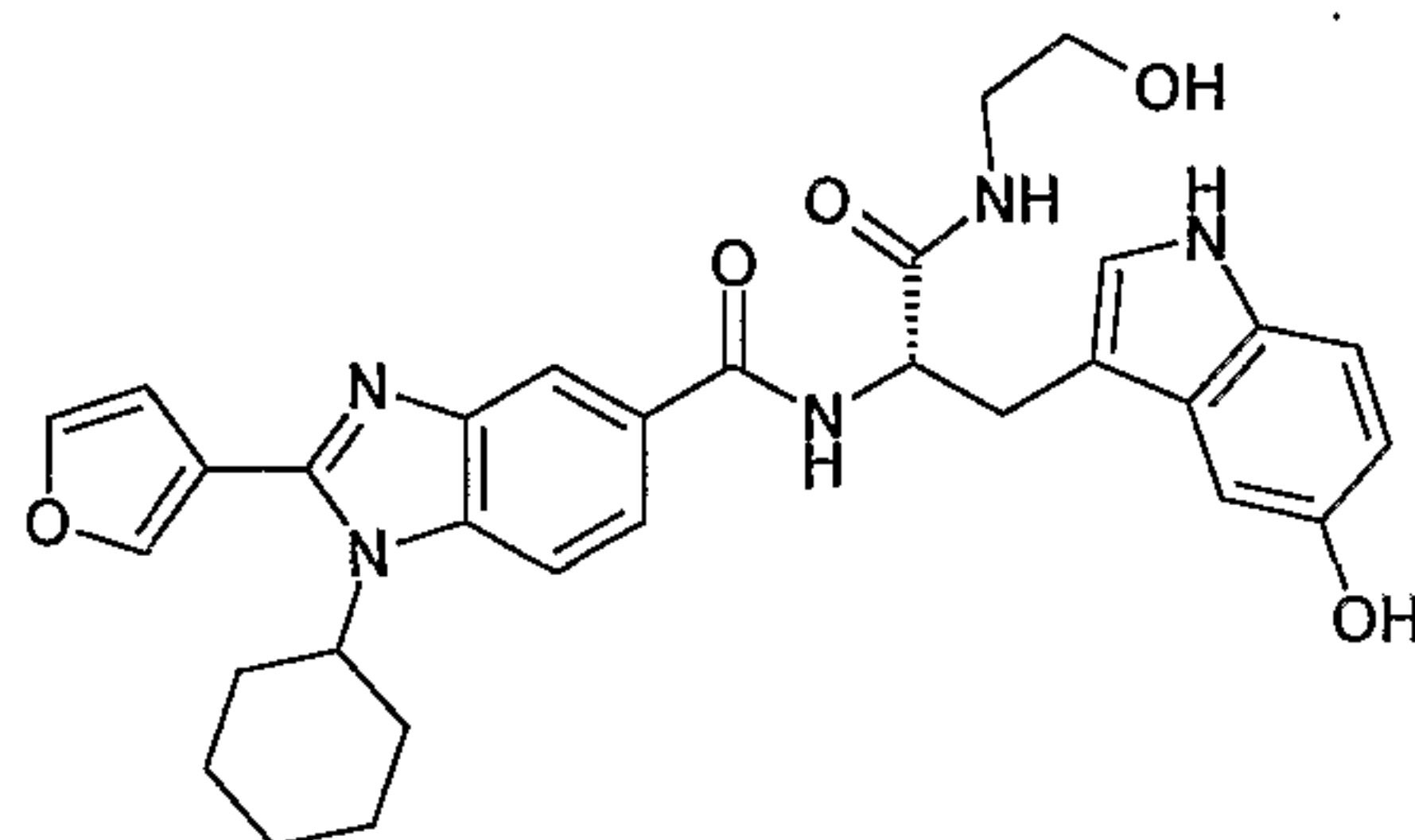
The carboxylic acid from example 2 was coupled to (S)-5-hydroxytryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride and the methyl ester saponified in the usual manner.

155

The carboxylic acid from above was coupled with *N,N*-dimethylethylene diamine under standard TBTU conditions example to yield the title compound of example 133.

5 **Example 134:**

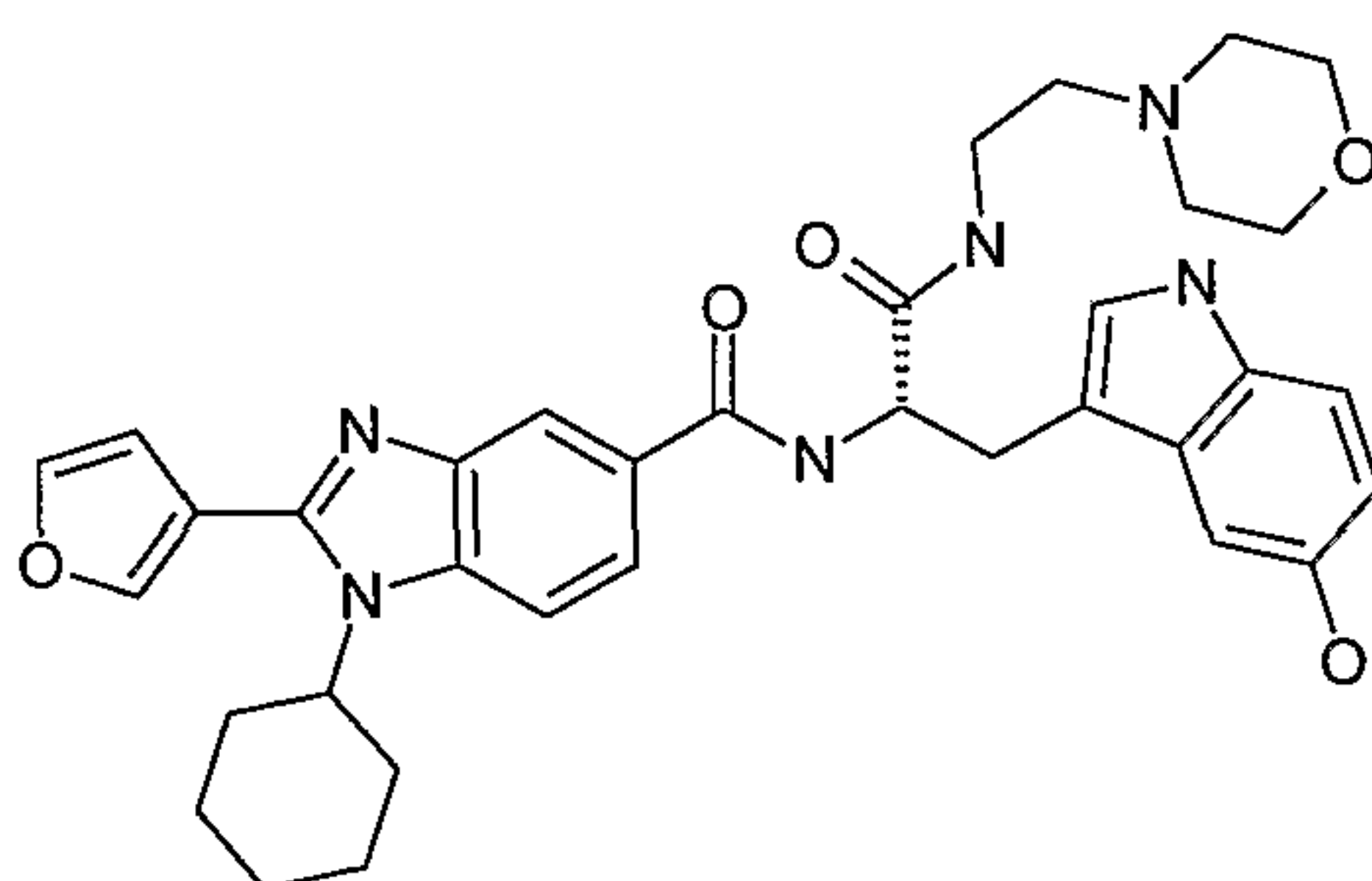
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(*S*)-1-(2-hydroxy-ethylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13016, Table 13):



10 The carboxylic acid from example 133 was coupled to aminoethanol under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 134.

Example 135:

15 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(*S*)-2-(5-hydroxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-1-(2-morpholin-4-yl-ethylcarbamoyl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13017, Table 13):**



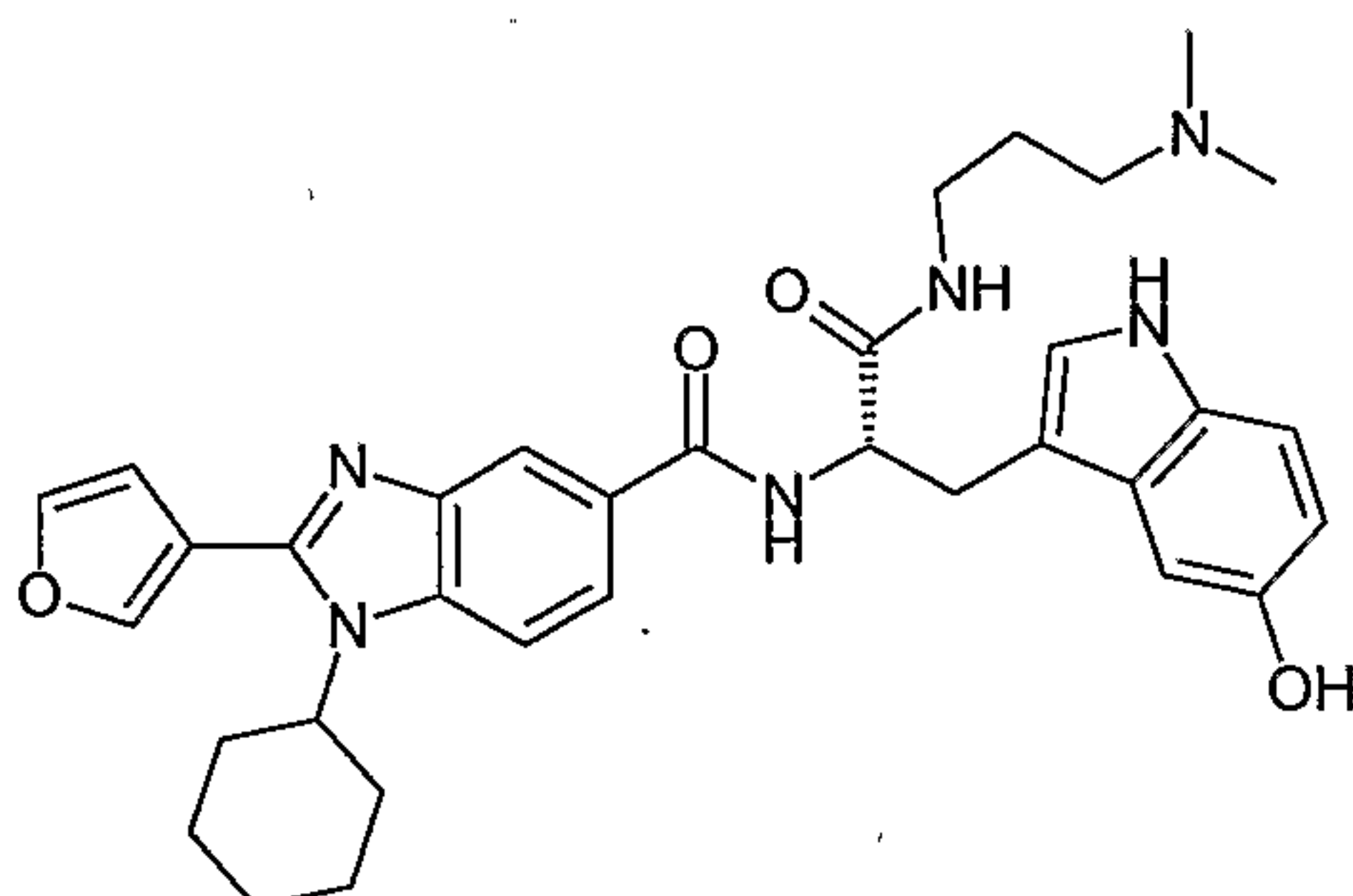
The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to aminoethylmorpholine under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 135.

20

Example 136:

25 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(*S*)-1-(3-dimethylamino-propylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1*H*-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13018, Table 13):**

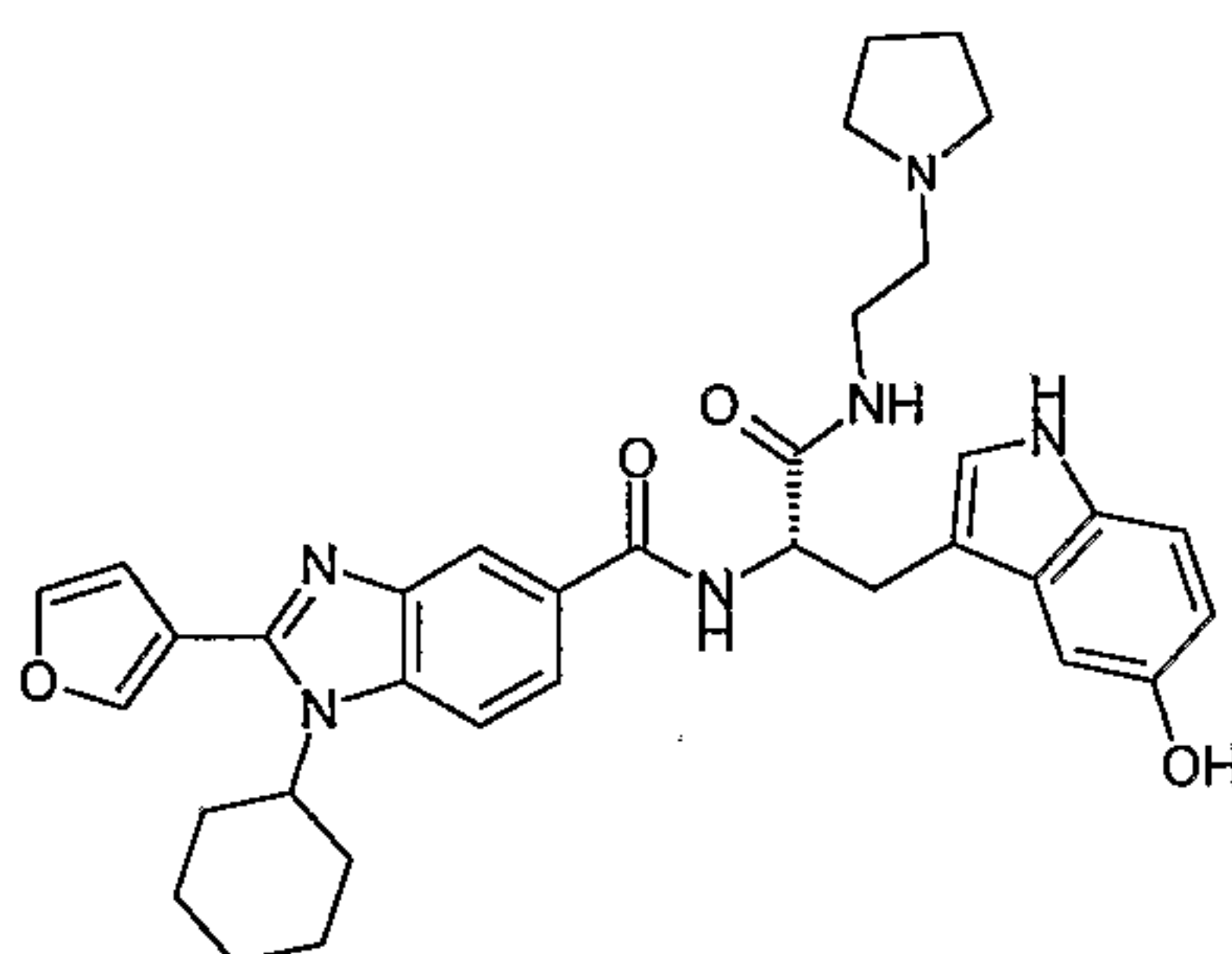
156



The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to dimethylaminopropylamine under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 136.

5 **Example 137:**

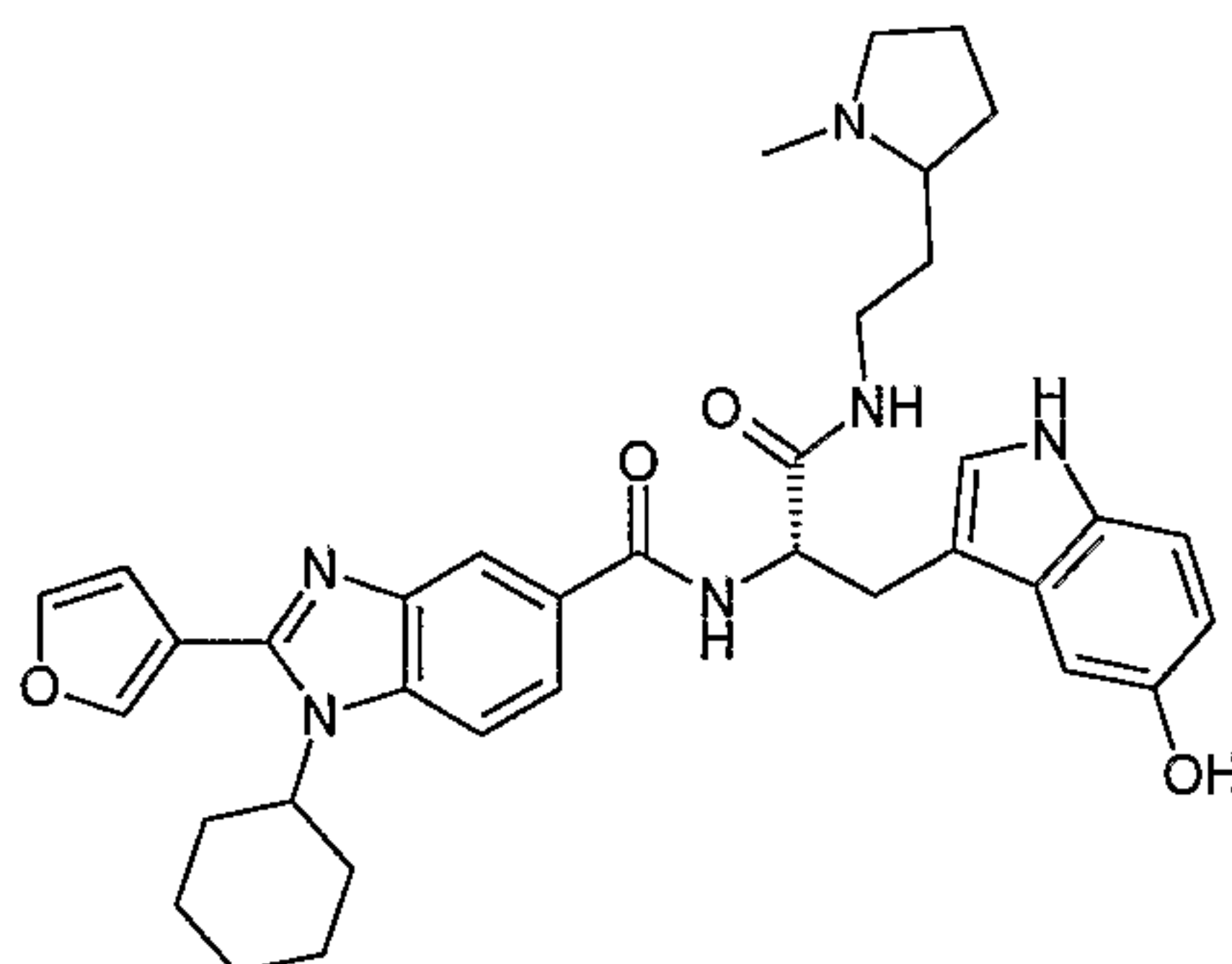
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-(2-pyrrolidin-1-yl-ethyl)carbamoyl]-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13019, Table 13):



10 The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to 1-(2-aminoethyl)pyrrolidine under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 137.

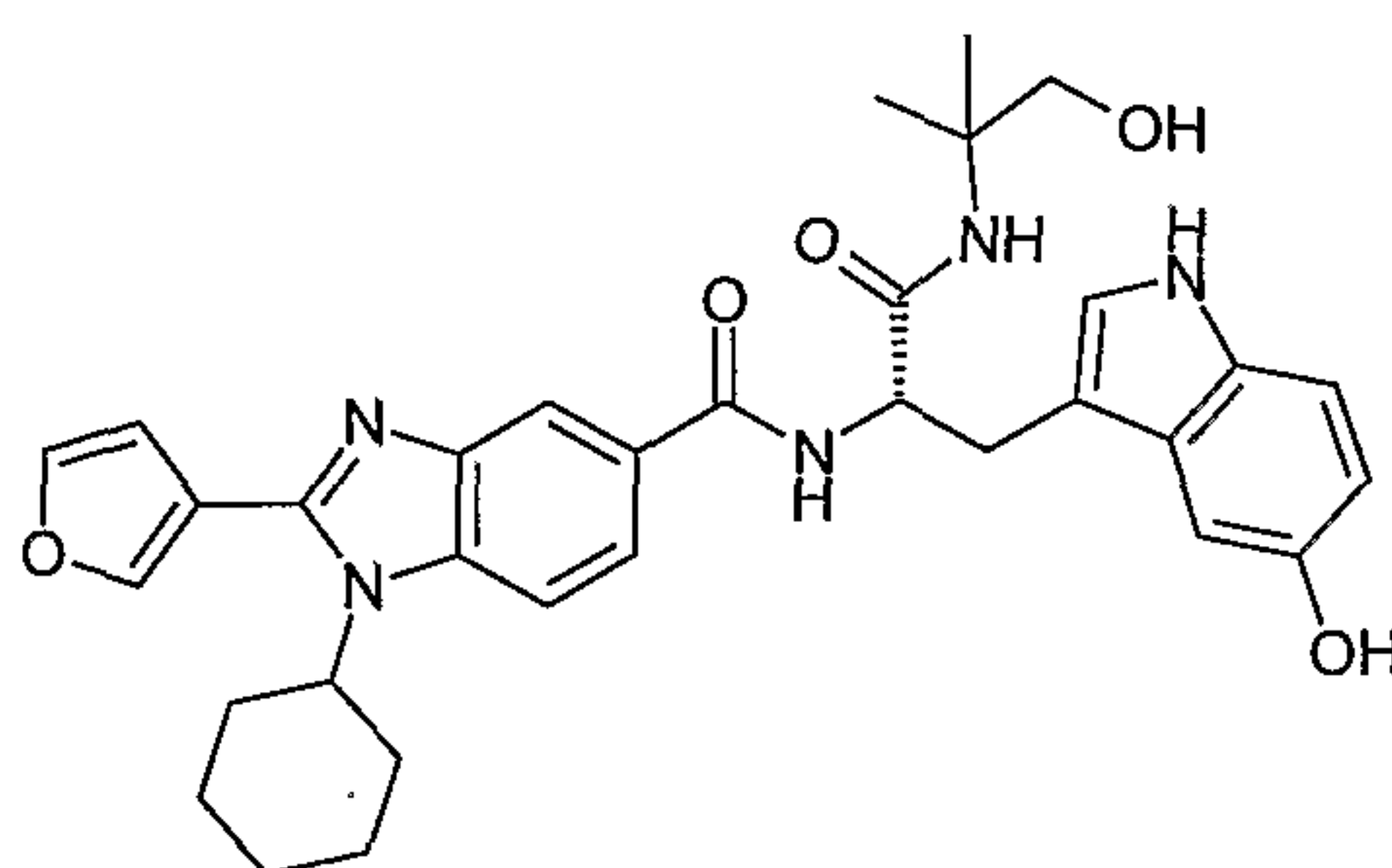
Example 138:

15 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid {(S)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-1-[2(RS)-(1-methyl-pyrrolidin-2-yl)-ethyl]carbamoyl]-ethyl}-amide (Entry 13020, Table 13):**



The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to 2-(2-aminoethyl-1-methyl)pyrrolidine under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 138.

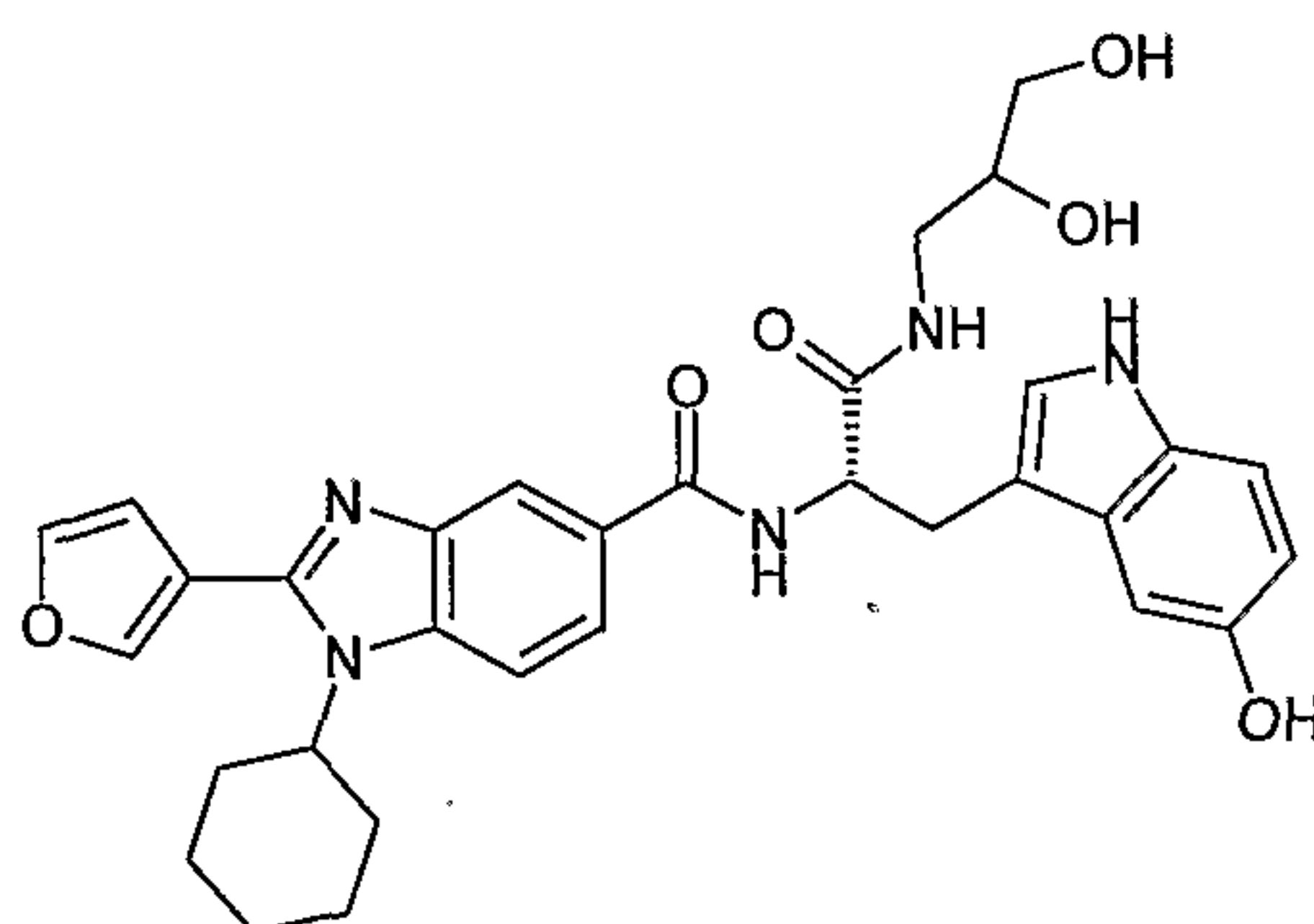
- 5 **EXAMPLE 139:**
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2-hydroxy-1,1-dimethyl-ethylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13021, Table 13):



10

The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to 2-amino-2-methyl-1-propanol under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 139.

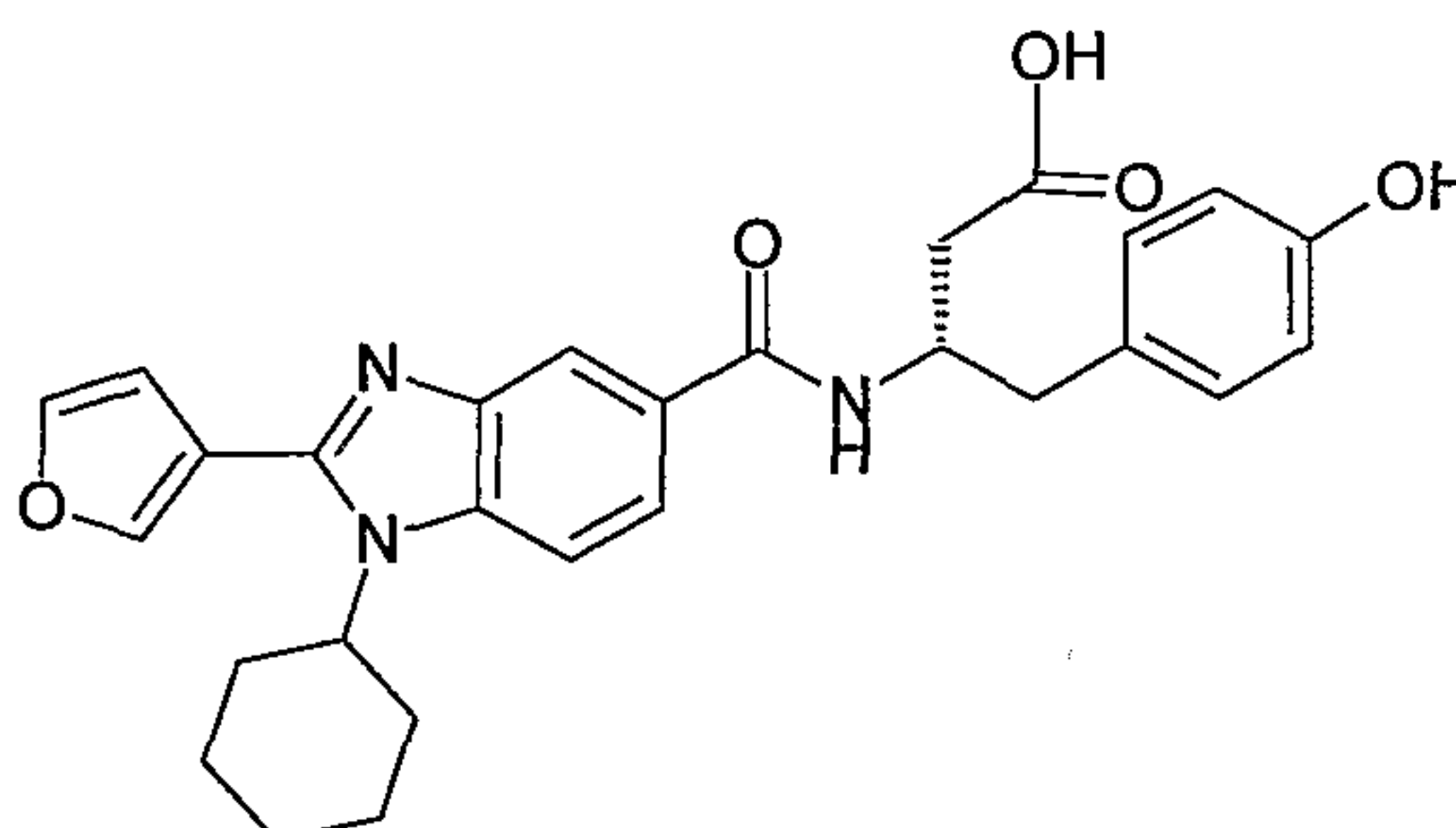
- 15 **EXAMPLE 140:**
1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid [(S)-1-(2(RS),3-dihydroxy-propylcarbamoyl)-2-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-ethyl]-amide (Entry 13022, Table 13):



- 20 The carboxylic acid of example 133 was coupled to racemic 3-amino-1,2-propanediol under standard TBTU conditions to yield the title compound of example 140.

- 25 **EXAMPLE 141:**
(S)-3-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-4-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-butyric acid (Entry 1230, Table 1):

158

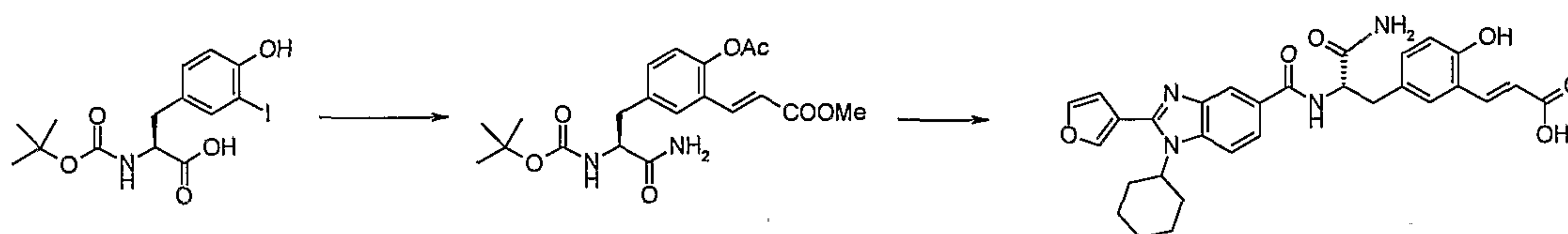


The diazomethylketone derived from Bis-Boc-Tyr (Example 64, 0.750 g, 1.85 mmol) was dissolved in a 1/1 mixture of THF / MeOH (10 mL). A solution of silver benzoate (50 mg) in triethylamine (1 mL) was added. After 15 min of stirring at room temperature the solvent was evaporated and the residue purified by flash chromatography (gradient 10 - 25% EtOAc / hexane) to yield 749 mg of protected β -tyrosine methyl ester.

The bis-Boc derivative prepared above was deprotected with 4N HCl in dioxane and coupled with the acid of example 2 in the usual manner. Following saponification of the methyl ester, the title compound of example 141 was obtained.

EXAMPLE 142:

(E)-3-[5-((S)-2-Carbamoyl-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-ethyl)-2-hydroxy-phenyl]-acrylic acid (Entry 16062, Table 16):



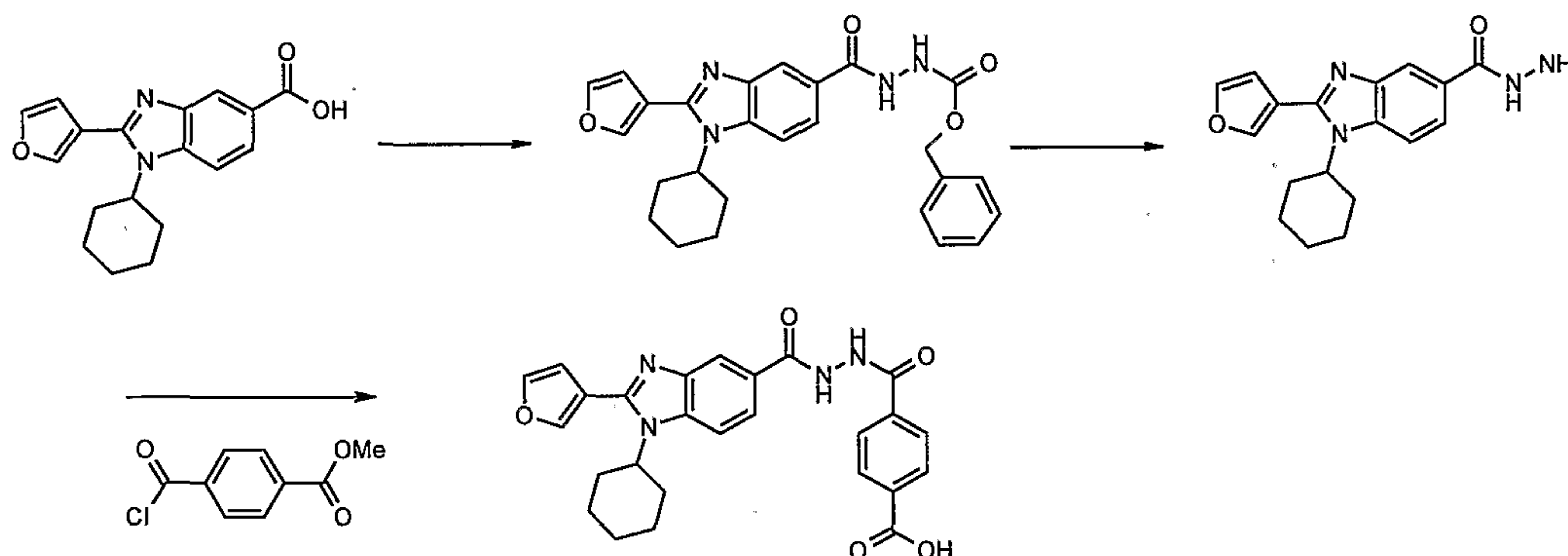
To a solution of *N*-Boc-3-iodotyrosine (0.380 g, 0.93 mmol) in pyridine (1 mL) were added acetic anhydride (105 μ L, 1.1 mmol) and DMAP (10 mg, cat). The solution was stirred 1.5 h then diluted in 5% citric acid (20 mL), and the product extracted with EtOAc. The organic solution was evaporated and the residue dissolved in MeCN (4 mL). To the stirred cold (ice bath) solution were added EDC (0.196 g, 1.0 mmol) and HOBt (0.135 g, 1.0 mmol). After stirring for 1 h, a 2 N solution of ammonia in *i*PrOH (3 mL) was added. The suspension was stirred 1 h at 5 $^{\circ}$ C, the solid was filtered, the filtrate evaporated and the residue purified by flash chromatography (gradient 3 - 5% MeOH / chloroform) to yield *N*-Boc-O-acetyl-3-iodotyrosine amide.

The iodo tyrosine derivative prepared above was coupled to methyl acrylate according to the procedure of example 83: MS (ES⁺) *m/z* 307 (MH⁺-Boc).

The *N*-Boc-tyrosine derivative prepared above was deprotected with 4 N HCl in dioxane and coupled with the acid of example 2 in the usual manner. Following
 5 saponification of the *O*-acetyl group the title compound of example 142 was obtained.

EXAMPLE 143:

10 **4-{N'-[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl}-hydrazinocarbonyl}-benzoic acid (Entry 1302, Table 1):**



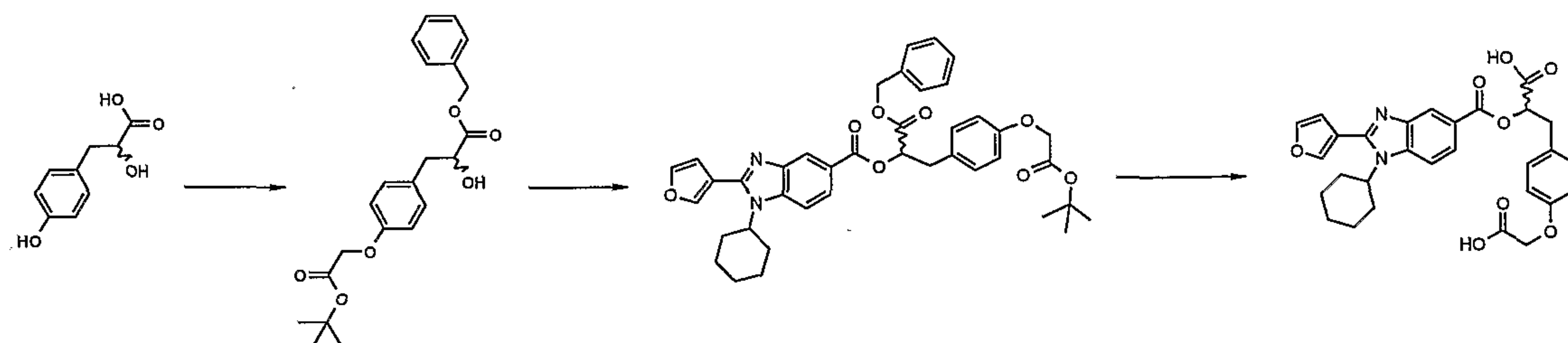
The benzimidazole carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.500 g, 1.61 mmol) was stirred in DMF (10 mL) with *N*-Cbz-hydrazine (0.268 g, 1.61 mmol), TBTU (0.620 g, 1.93
 15 mmol) and DIEA (0.727 g, 563 mmol) for 3 days. EtOAc was added and the reaction mixture was washed twice with 10% aqueous citric acid, twice with saturated aqueous NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give a brown foam that was hydrogenolyzed in THF - EtOH (1:1) with 10% Pd /C (70 mg) under an atmosphere
 20 of hydrogen for 8 h. The suspension was filtered and concentrated to dryness to give 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid hydrazide as a brown foam.

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid hydrazide (0.022 g, 0.068 mmol) and methyl-4-chlorocarbonylbenzoate (0.013 g, 0.068 mmol) were
 25 stirred in DMF (1 mL) in the presence of DIEA (0.018 g, 0.14 mmol) for 2 h. An aqueous solution of NaOH (2.5 N, 0.22 mL, 0.55 mmol) was then added and the mixture was stirred for 2 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was acidified

by the addition of AcOH and purified by reversed phase C18 preparative HPLC to give the title compound of example 143.

Example 144:

5 *Racemic 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid 1-carboxy-2-(4-carboxymethoxy-phenyl)-ethyl ester (Entry 5005, Table 5):*



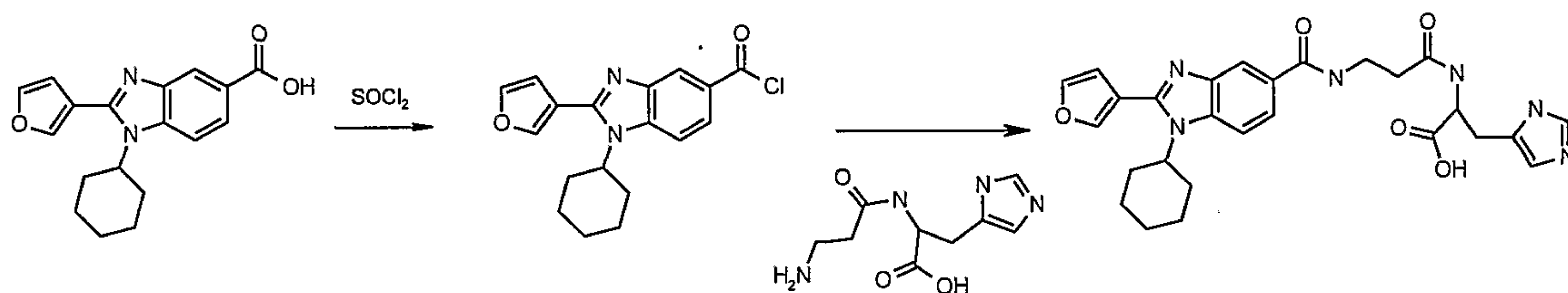
Racemic 2-hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-propionic acid (0.100 g, 0.55 mmol) was stirred in acetone (10 mL) with triethylamine (0.17 mL, 1.2 mmol) and benzyl bromide (0.14 mL, 2.2 mmol) for 16 h at room temperature. The mixture was concentrated to dryness, taken up in EtOAc and washed once with water and twice with brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography to give the benzyl ester (150 mg). The ester (150 mg) was then dissolved in acetone (10 mL), *t*-butyl bromoacetate (0.1 mL, 0.65 mmol) and cesium carbonate (0.540 g, 1.7 mmol) were added and the reaction was stirred at 50 °C for 2.5 h. The mixture was concentrated to dryness, taken up in EtOAc and washed once with water and twice with brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to dryness. The crude product was purified by flash column chromatography, using 20% EtOAc in hexane as eluent, to give 3-(4-*t*-butoxycarbonylmethoxyphenyl)-2-hydroxy-propionic acid benzyl ester in 70% yield (146 mg).

To a solution of the above compound (0.060 g, 0.155 mmol) in DCM (5 mL), the carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.058 g, 0.19 mmol), DCC (0.039 g, 0.19 mmol) and DMAP (0.023 g, 0.19 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then concentrated and purified by flash chromatography to give 160 mg of 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid 1-benzylloxycarbonyl-2-(4-*t*-butoxycarbonylmethoxy-phenyl)-ethyl ester.

The benzyl ester from above (0.040 g, 0.059 mmol) was stirred in a mixture of EtOAc:EtOH (4 mL, 3:1 ratio) with 10% Pd/C (10 mg) under an atmosphere of hydrogen gas for 4 h. The suspension was filtered and concentrated, then dissolved in 1 mL of 4 N HCl in dioxane and stirred for 1 h. The mixture was concentrated to dryness and purified by reversed phase C18 preparative HPLC to give the title compound of example 143.

Example 145:

Racemic 2-(3-{{1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl}-methanoyl]-amino}-propanoylamino)-3-(3H-imidazol-4-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 1228, Table 1):

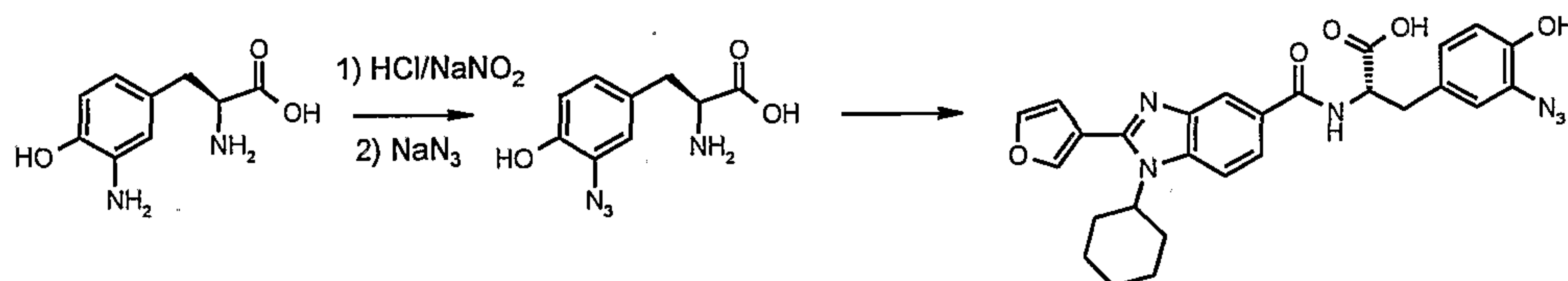


The carboxylic acid of example 2 (0.550 g, 1.8 mmol) was dissolved in SOCl₂ (20 mL) and DMF (~0.1 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 h and then concentrated to dryness and co-evaporate with EtOAc to give a 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carbonyl chloride as a brown solid (580 mg). The acid chloride (0.050 g, 0.16 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (1 mL) and reacted with L-carnosine (0.036 g, 0.159 mmol) in the presence of DIEA (82 µL, 0.476 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 3 days at room temperature before it was acidified with AcOH (1 mL) and purified by reversed phase C18 preparative HPLC. The title compound of example 145 was obtained as a white solid.

Example 146:

(S)-3-(3-Azido-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-2-{{1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl}-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 1248, Table 1):

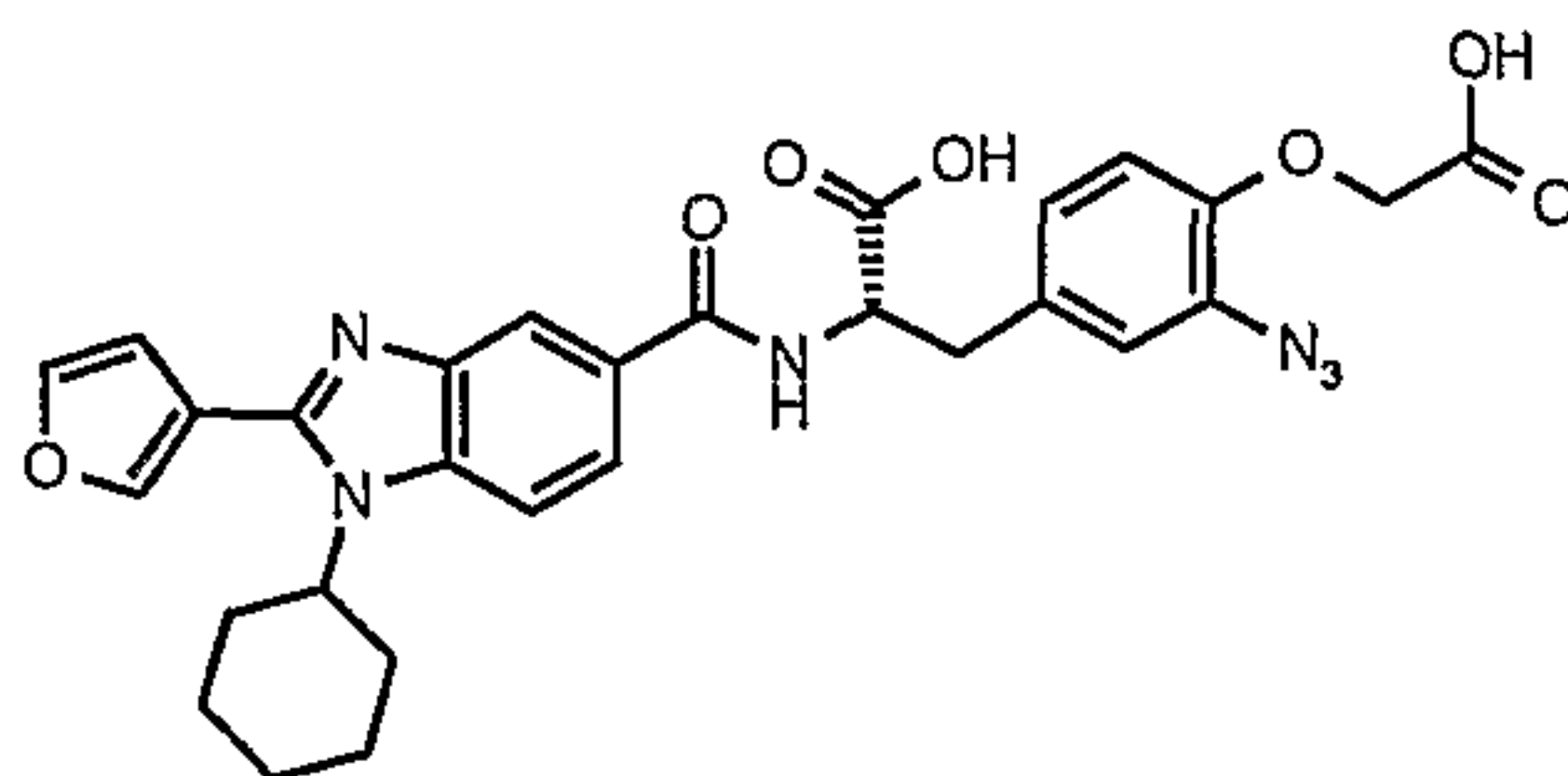
162



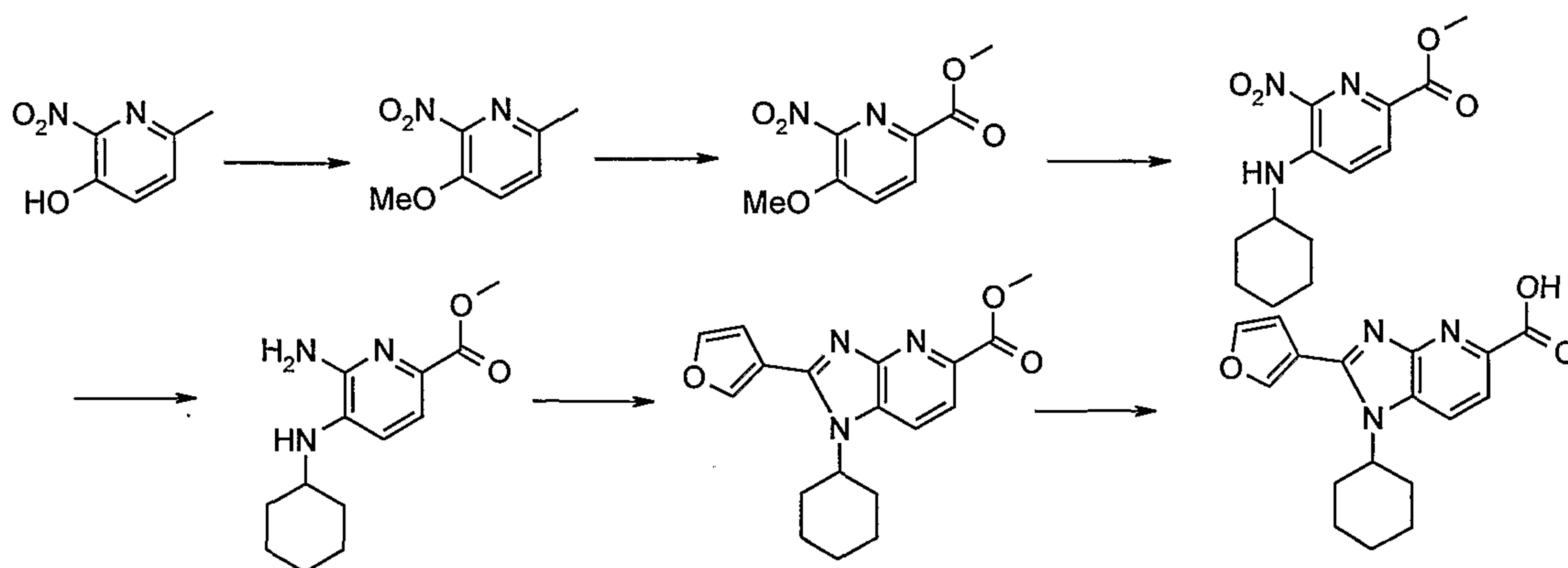
To a solution of 3-amino-L-tyrosine.2HCl.H₂O (2.50 g, 8.8 mmol) in 0.5 N HCl (28 mL) at 0 °C, an aqueous solution of NaNO₂ (0.724 g, 10.5 mmol, in 10 mL H₂O) was added slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 min at 0 °C, in the dark, and then a solution of NaN₃ (1.43 g, 21.9 mmol, in 10 mL H₂O) was added and stirring was continued for 1 h at 0 °C. The white solid formed was filtered and dried to give (S)-2-amino-3-(3-azido-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-propionic acid (1.16 g) as of a beige solid. This amino acid was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner to give the title compound of example 146 after purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 147:

(S)-3-(3-Azido-4-carboxymethoxy-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 16063, Table 16):



(S)-3-(3-Azido-4-hydroxy-phenyl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl)-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl]-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Example 146, 0.230 g, 0.44 mmol) and methyl bromoacetate (0.136 g, 0.89 mmol) were stirred in acetone (4 mL) in the presence of Cs₂CO₃ (0.058 g, 0.18 mmol) for 20 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated to dryness and dissolved in water, acidify to pH 4 and extracted with EtOAc (3x). The combined organic layers were dried over anhydrous MgSO₄ and concentrated to give a brown oil. This oil was stirred in THF:MeOH (6 mL, 2:1 ratio) in the presence of LiOH monohydrate (0.18 mmol) for 3 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated to remove most of the THF and MeOH, acidified with AcOH and purified by reversed phase C18 preparative HPLC to obtain the title compound of example 147.

Example 148:**1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-5-carboxylic acid (Entry 5001, Table 5):**

5

3-Methoxy-6-methyl-2-nitro-pyridine:

A solution of 3-hydroxy-6-methyl-2-nitropyridine (4.00 g, 26 mmol) in MeOH - DCM (30 mL, 2:1 ratio) was treated with diazomethane in Et₂O until all starting material was converted to 3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-nitropyridine (TLC). The solution was concentrated to dryness to give the desired product as a yellow solid (4.25 g).

10

5-Methoxy-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester:

A solution of 3-methoxy-6-methyl-2-nitro-pyridine (2.25 g, 13.4 mmol) in H₂O containing MgSO₄ (5.24 g, 43.7 mmol) was heated to reflux. A solution of KMnO₄ (5.72 g, 36.2 mmol) was added slowly over a period of 1 h and reflux was maintained for an additional 5 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature and concentrated ammonia was added (6 mL). The brown solid formed was filtered and washed twice with water. The filtrate was concentrated and the new precipitate formed, composed mostly of starting material, was removed by filtration. The filtrate was acidified and extracted twice with EtOAc. The combined organic layers were washed with brine and dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. The residue was taken up in MeOH-DCM (40 mL, 1:1 ratio) and a solution of diazomethane in Et₂O was added until a persisting yellow color was observed. The solution was then concentrated to dryness and purified by flash column chromatography, using a gradient of hexane/EtOAc from 6/4 to 4/6 as the eluent, to give 5-methoxy-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (585 mg).

15

20

25

5-Cyclohexylamino-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester:

A solution of 5-methoxy-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (0.585 g, 2.75 mmol) and cyclohexylamine (0.636 mL, 5.51 mmol) in DMF (8mL) was heated at 70 °C for 20 h. The mixture was poured on brine (50mL) while mixing vigorously.

- 5 The solid formed was filtered, washed with water and then dissolved in EtOAc. The solution was washed with water, saturated NaHCO₃ and brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated to give 5-cyclohexylamino-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester as a brown oil (0.558 g) which was used in the subsequent step without purification.

10

6-Amino-5-cyclohexylamino-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester:

The crude 5-cyclohexyl-6-nitro-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester from above (0.530 g, 1.90 mmol) was stirred in EtOH (10 mL) and 10% Pd/C (50 mg), under 1 atm of H₂ gas at room temperature for 3 days. The suspension was filtered through
15 a pad of celite and concentrated to dryness. The product was purified by flash column chromatography, using a gradient from 60% hexane in EtOAc to 100% EtOAc as the eluent, to give 6-amino-5-cyclohexylamino-pyridine-2-carboxylic acid methyl ester (0.210 g).

- 20 **1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-5-carboxylic acid methyl ester:** To a solution of the methyl ester from above (0.100 g, 0.40 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) and H₂O (0.300 mL), oxone® (0.813 g, 1.32 mmol) and 3-furaldehyde (0.138 g, 1.32 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 h and then stored at 5 °C for 3 days. The mixture was diluted with EtOAc and
25 washed twice with water, twice with saturated NaHCO₃ and once with brine. The organic layer was then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give an oil that was purified by flash chromatography, using EtOAc as the eluent, to give 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-5-carboxylic acid methyl ester (0.058 g).

30

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridine-5-carboxylic acid (Entry 5001, Table 5):

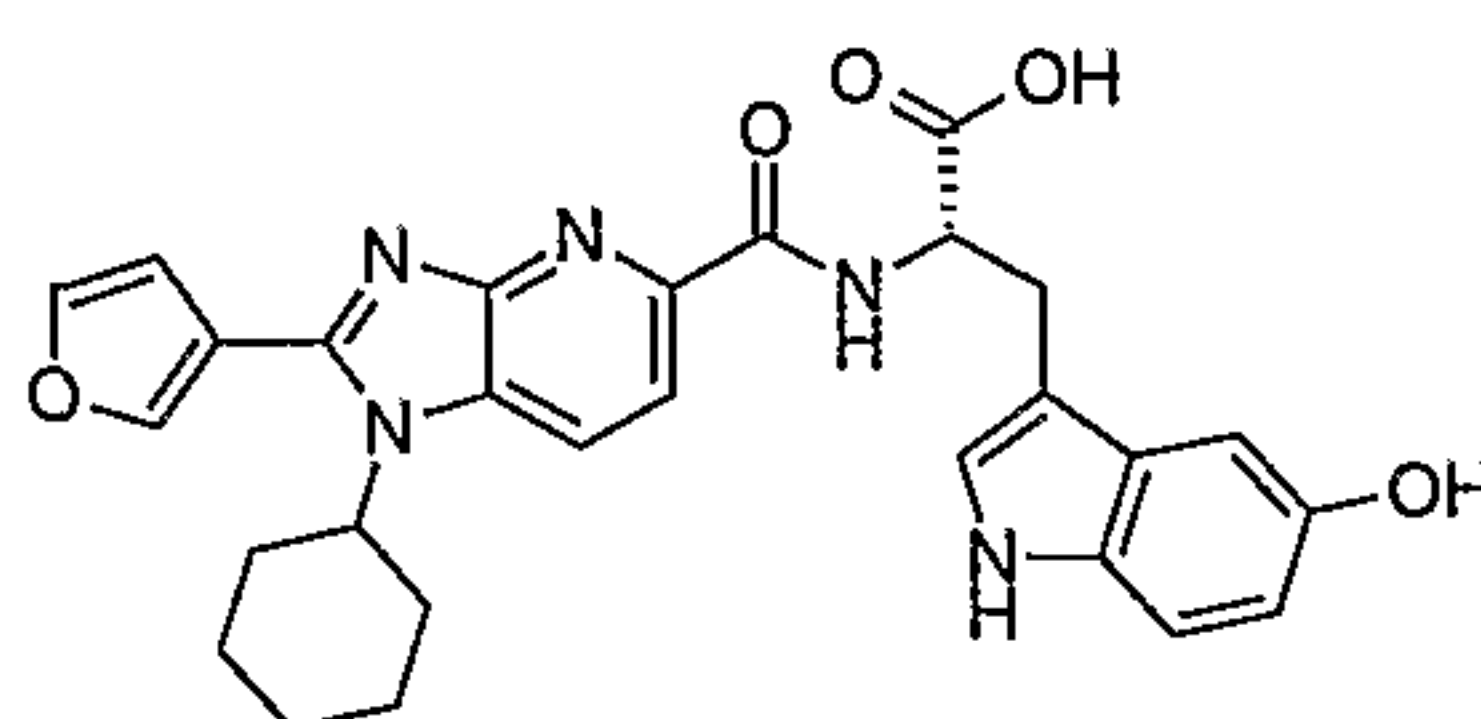
The ester from above (0.058 g, 0.178 mmol) was dissolved in MeOH (2mL) and

165

aqueous LiOH (0.700 mL, 1 M) was added. The solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 h and then purified by C18 reversed phase preparative HPLC to give the title compound of example 148.

5 **Example 149:**

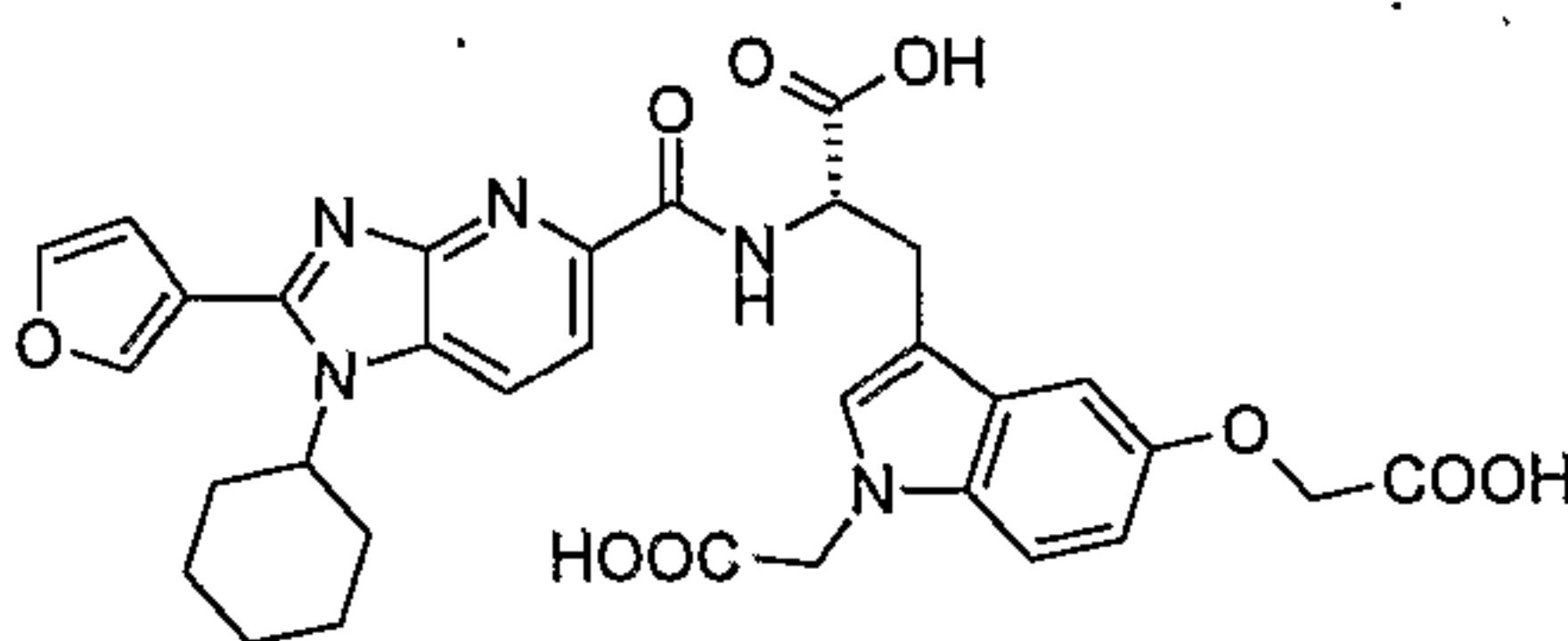
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 5002, Table 5):



10 The carboxylic acid derivative of example 148 was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner. Saponification followed by purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC gave the title compound of example 149.

15 **Example 150:**

(S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1-carboxymethyl-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-imidazo[4,5-b]pyridin-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 5003, Table 5):



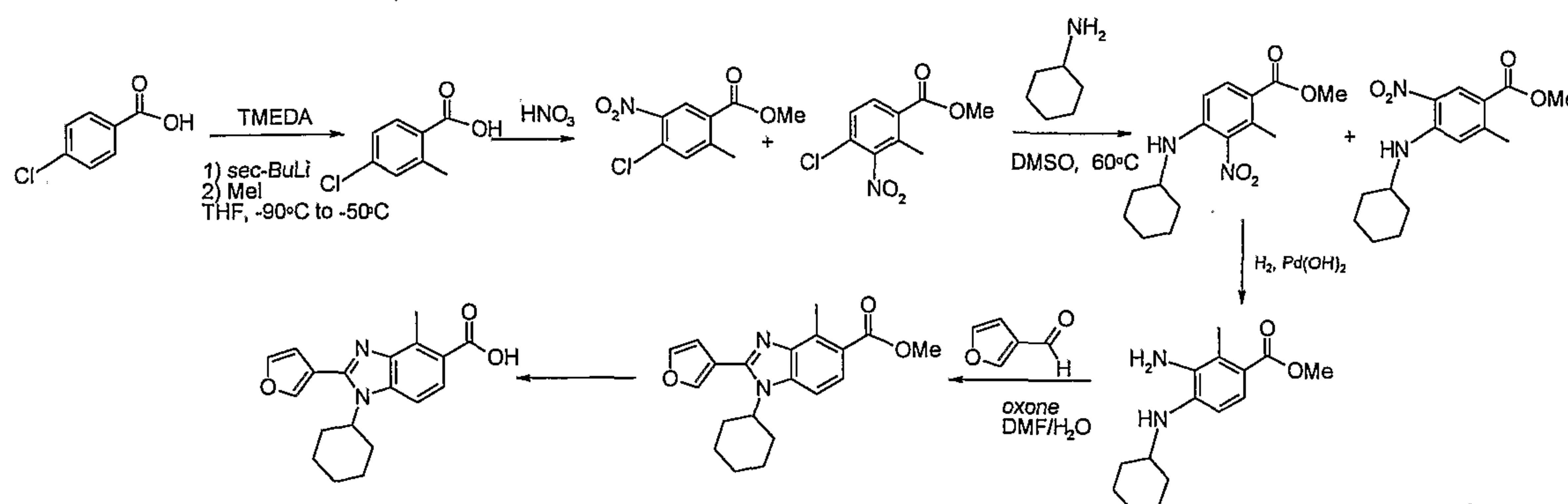
20

The carboxylic acid derivative of example 148 was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner. The material was then alkylated with excess methyl bromoacetate as described previously to give after deprotection by saponification and preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 150.

25

Example 151:

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid (Entry 5004, Table 5):



5 4-Chloro-2-methylbenzoic:

In a dry round-bottomed flask (3L) equipped with a mechanical stirrer under N₂, anhydrous N,N,N',N'-tetramethylethylenediamine (TMEDA, 99.7 mL, 660 mmol, 2.2 eq.) and anhydrous THF (600 mL) were added and the mixture was cooled to –90 °C in a bath of liquid N₂/EtOH. Freshly titrated sec-BuLi (550 mL, 1.2M in cyclohexane, 660 mmol., 2.2 eq.) was added slowly *via* cannula as to maintain the temperature at –50 °C. The solution was cooled to –90 °C and 4-chlorobenzoic acid (47.0 g in 400 mL anhydrous THF, 300 mmol) was added slowly *via* cannula, while stirring carefully to maintain the temperature at –90 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at –90 °C for 1 h before allowed to warm-up to –80 °C and CH₃I (80 mL, 1.28 moles) was added very slowly. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 min at –80 °C, then quenched slowly with H₂O (600 mL) and allowed to warm-up to room temperature. The aqueous layer was separated, washed with Et₂O (2 x 500 mL) and then acidified with HCl (2.5 N, 600 mL) while cooling in an ice bath; cooling was continued for 16 h at 4°C to allow crystallization of the desired product. The crude product was dried under vacuum and over anhydrous P₂O₅ and then re-crystallized from hot toluene (700 mL) to obtain pure 4-chloro-2-methylbenzoic acid (40 g).

Mixture of 4-chloro-2-methyl-5-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester and 4-chloro-2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester:

25 These compounds were prepared using a modification of the procedure reported by M. Baumgarth et al. (*J. Med. Chem.* **1997**, 40, 2017-2034).

4-Chloro-2-methylbenzoic acid (6 g) was added to fuming HNO₃ (100%, 36 g) in small portions over a period of 20 min, at 10 °C, while stirring vigorously. The reaction mixture was stirred vigorously for a period of 1 h and the temperature allowed to warm-up to 20 °C. The reaction mixture was then poured onto ice (100 g) and the yellow precipitate formed was collected, washed with H₂O, dissolved in EtOAc (25 mL) and the solution was dried over Na₂CO₃ and filtered. After concentration of the remaining mother liquor to 1/2 of the original volume, more precipitate was formed, however, the solid formed was always a mixture of 4-chloro-2-methyl-5-nitrobenzoic acid and 4-chloro-2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid. Thus, all of the solid material formed was collected by filtration (~6.5 g), stirred in MeOH/HCl at 0 °C for 1 h to form a mixture of methyl esters. This mixture was used in the following step without further purification.

4-Cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-5-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester and 4-cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester:

The mixture of esters from above (1.1 g, 4.8 mmol) and cyclohexylamine (1.7 mL, 14.4 mmol) in DMSO (2 mL) were stirred at 60 °C for 16 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled and poured onto ice (~5 g) and mixed vigorously to allow the formation of a precipitate. The solid material was filtered, washed with H₂O and dissolved in EtOAc. The solution was washed with H₂O and brine, dried over anhydrous MgSO₄ and evaporated to an oil containing the desired products. The oil was triturated with hexane (~5 mL) to allow precipitation of relatively pure 4-cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-5-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester (600 mg), whereas the mother liquor contained mostly 4-cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester (600 mg).

3-Amino-4-cyclohexylamino-2-methylbenzoic acid methyl ester:

4-Cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester (150 mg) was dissolved in THF/MeOH (30 mL, 1:2 ratio) and stirred in the presence of H₂ (1 atm) and a catalytic amount of Pd(OH)₂ (20 mg) at room temperature for 14 h. The reaction mixture was then filtered, evaporated to dryness and purified by flash column chromatography, using 25% EtOAc in hexane with 0.2% NH₄OH as the eluent, to give the pure aniline (106 mg).

1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid:

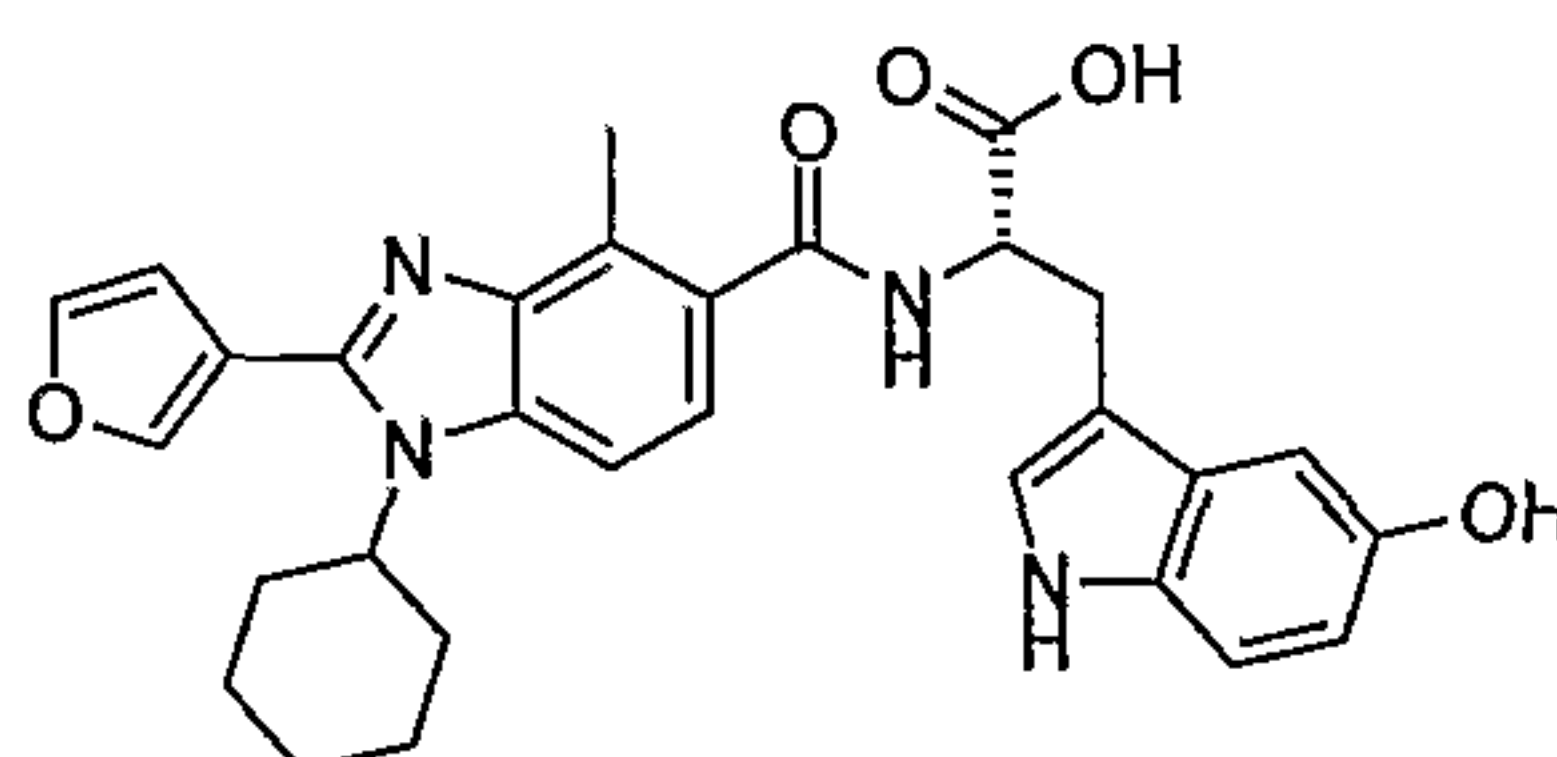
To a solution of the diamine from above (500 mg, 1.9 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) and H₂O (0.15 mL), 3-furaldehyde (0.22 mL, 2.5 mmol) and oxone® (1.29 g, 2.1 mmol) were added and the reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 h.

5 Subsequently, H₂O (60 mL) was added and the pH was adjusted to 8 with aqueous NaHCO₃. The reaction mixture was then extracted with DCM, the organic layer was washed with brine, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and evaporated to dryness. The desired benzimidazole methyl ester (446 mg) was obtained pure after column chromatography, using 25% EtOAc in hexane.

10 Hydrolysis of the methyl ester was achieved with an aqueous solution of NaOH (1.0 N, 0.66 mL, 6.6 mmol) in a solution of MeOH/THF (10 mL, 1:1 ratio) at 60 °C for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to room temperature, the pH was adjusted to 4 with AcOH and the organic solvents were evaporated to dryness. The remaining aqueous mixture was extracted with DCM (3 x 15 mL) and the combined
 15 organic layers were washed with H₂O, dried over anhydrous Na₂SO₄ and evaporated to dryness to give the desired title compound of example 151, 1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid (392 mg).

Example 152:

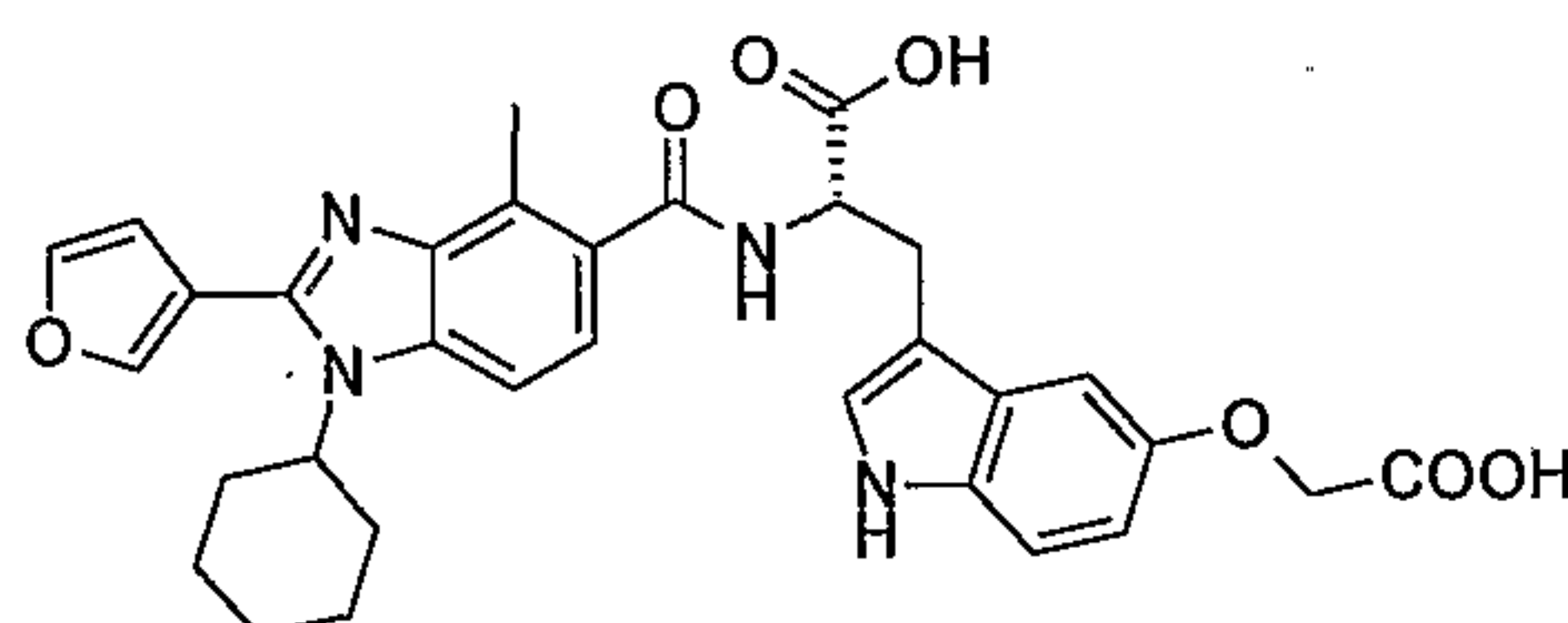
20 **(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 5007, Table 5):**



25 The carboxylic acid derivative of example 151 was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner. Saponification followed by purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC gave the title compound of example 152.

30 **Example 153:**

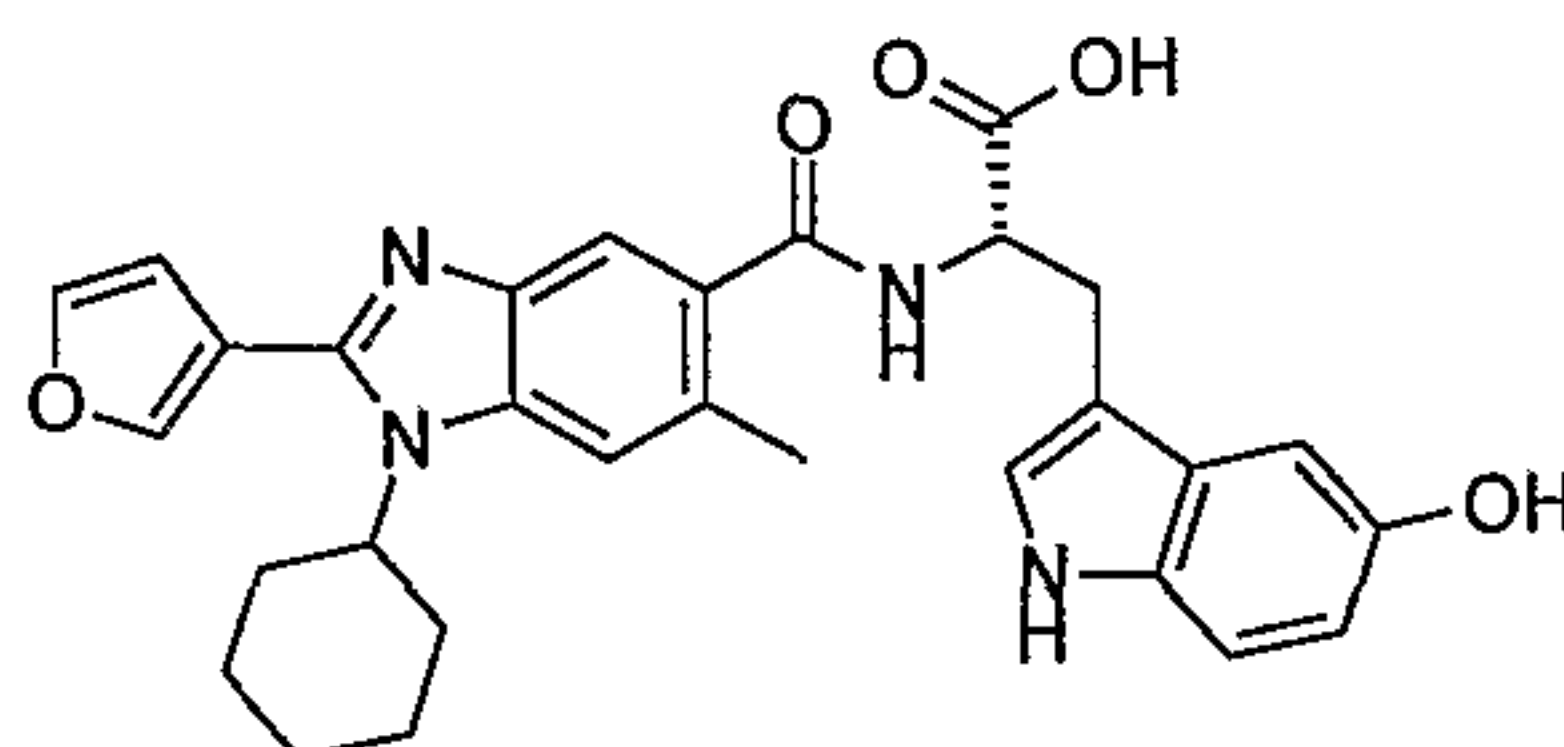
(S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-4-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 5008, Table 5):



5 The carboxylic acid derivative of example 152 was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner. The material was then alkylated with methyl bromoacetate as described previously to give after deprotection by saponification and preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title
10 compound of example 153.

Example 154:

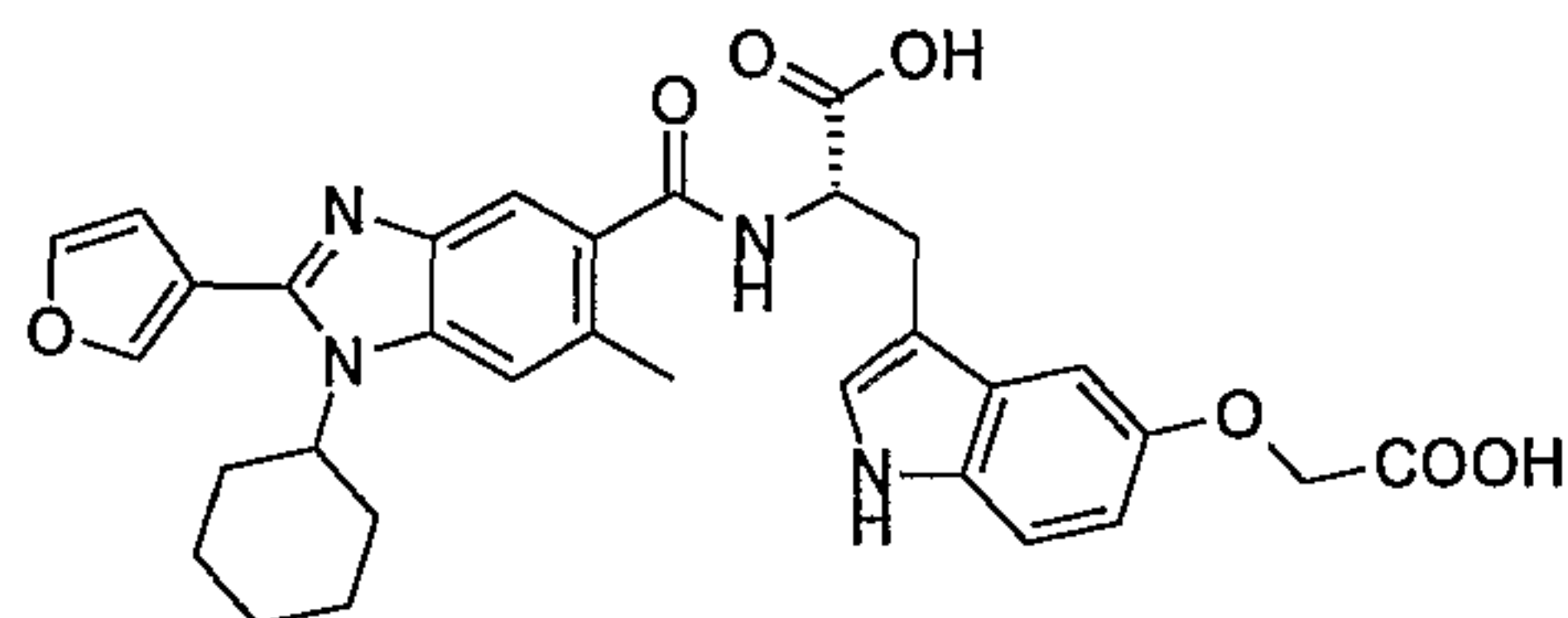
(S)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-6-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-3-(5-hydroxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-propionic acid (Entry 5006, Table 5):



1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-6-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid was prepared from 4-cyclohexylamino-2-methyl-5-nitrobenzoic acid methyl ester (Example 151) as described for the 4-methyl derivative (Example 151). The acid
20 was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner and following saponification of the methyl ester and purification by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 154 was obtained.

Example 155:

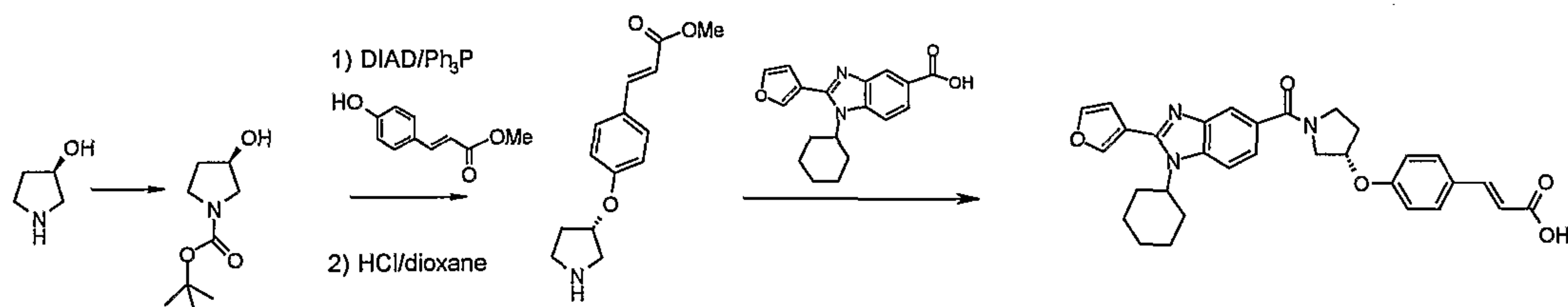
(S)-3-(5-Carboxymethoxy-1H-indol-3-yl)-2-[[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-6-methyl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino}-propionic acid (Entry 5009, Table 5):



1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-6-methyl-1H-benzimidazole-5-carboxylic acid was coupled to 5-hydroxy-(S)-tryptophan methyl ester hydrochloride in the usual manner (Example 154). The material was then alkylated with methyl bromoacetate as described previously to give after deprotection by saponification and preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC, the title compound of example 155.

Example 156:

(E)-3-(4-((S)-1-[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-pyrrolidin-3-yloxy)-phenyl)-acrylic acid (Entry 6004, Table 6):



To a solution of (*R*)-(-)-3-pyrrolidinol hydrochloride (1.12 g, 9.1 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 mL), a solution of di-*tert*-butyldicarbonate (2.07 g, 9.5 mmol) in THF (15 mL), followed by DIEA (4.74 mL, 27.2 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 18 h then the solvent was evaporated. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc and the solution was washed with 10% aqueous HCl, saturated NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄ and then evaporated to dryness to give the (*R*)-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester as a white solid (1.54 g).

To a solution of 4-hydroxycinnamic acid (0.407 g, 2.48 mmol) in EtOAc, a solution of diazomethane in Et₂O was added until the yellow color persisted. Excess diazomethane was quenched by the addition of AcOH and the reaction mixture was evaporated to dryness. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc and washed with 10% aqueous HCl, saturated NaHCO₃ and brine. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous MgSO₄ and evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash

171

column chromatography, using a gradient from 10% -20% EtOAc in hexane, to give E-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)acrylic acid methyl ester as a white solid (0.362 g).

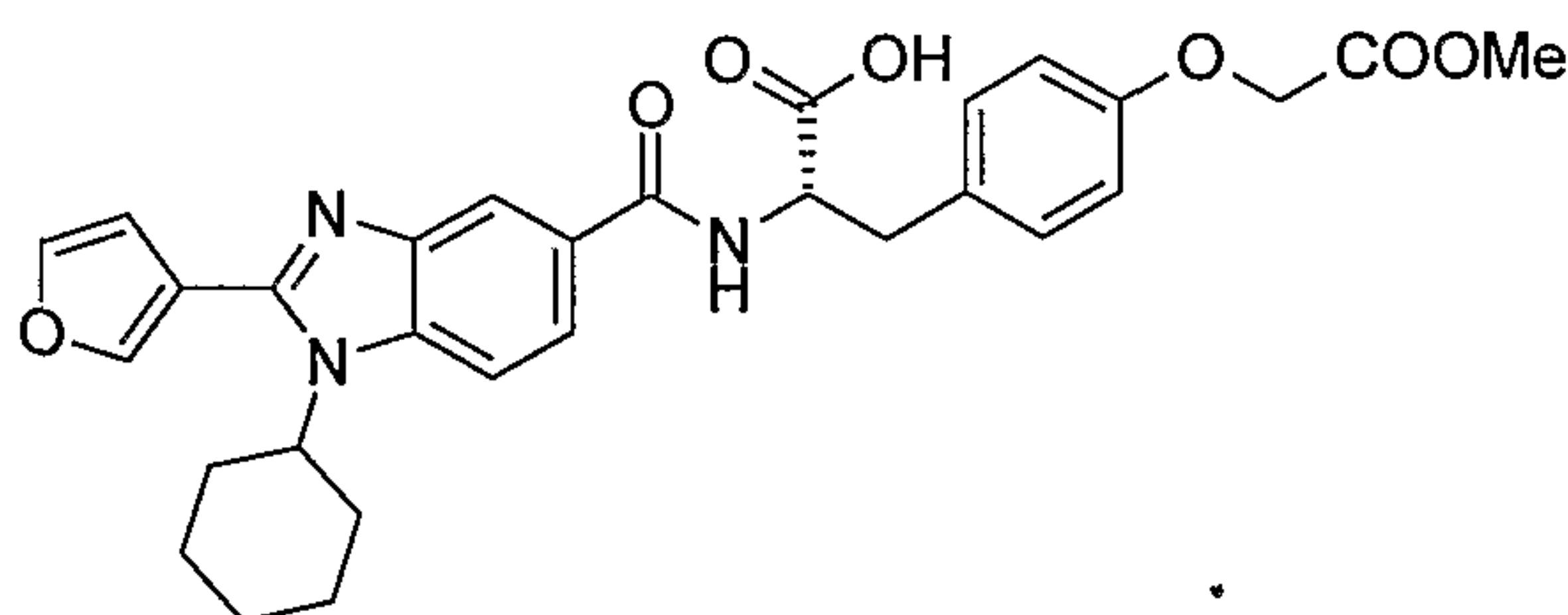
To a solution of (*R*)-3-hydroxypyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester (0.215 g, 1.15 mmol) in THF at 0°C, triphenylphosphine (0.316 g, 1.21 mmol), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (236 µL, 1.21 mmol) and E-3-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acrylic acid methyl ester (0.215 g, 1.21 mmol) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h at 0 °C, followed by 4 h at room temperature and then the solvent was evaporated in vacuo. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography, using 20%-30% EtOAc in hexane, to give crude (*S*)-3-[4-(*E*)-2-methoxycarbonylvinyl]phenoxy]pyrrolidine-1-carboxylic acid *tert*-butyl ester as a yellow solid.

The product from above was dissolved in 4 N HCl in dioxane (4 mL) and stirred 30 min at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated to dryness and the solid residue was triturated with EtOAc (3x) to give the amine hydrochloride product as a white solid (0.260 g).

The amine hydrochloride from above was coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. Following ester hydrolysis under basic conditions and purification using reversed phase C18 HPLC the title compound of example 155 was obtained.

Example 157:

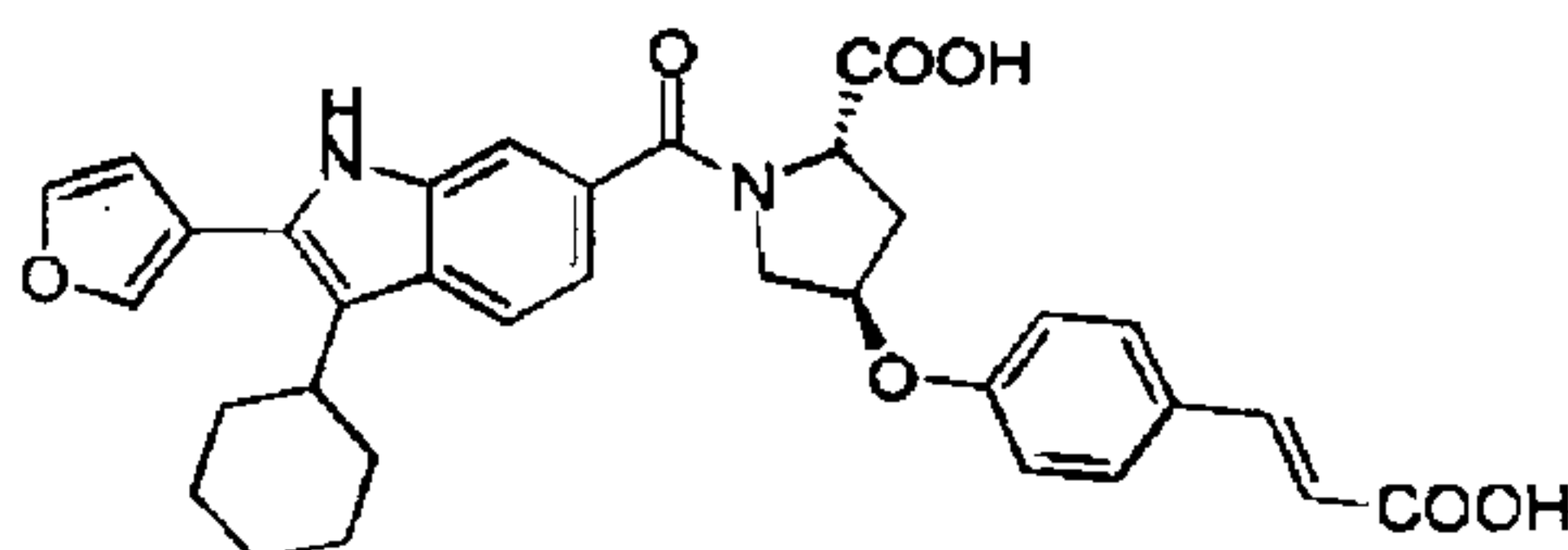
(*S*)-2-[[1-(1-Cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1*H*-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-amino]-3-(4-methoxycarbonylmethoxy-phenyl)-propionic acid (Entry 1124, Table 1):



The *N*-Boc-*O*-alkylated-*L*-tyrosine benzyl ester intermediate described in example 98 was deprotected on nitrogen using 4 N HCl in dioxane and coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2. Following hydrogenolysis of the benzyl ester with Pd(OH)₂ and H₂ (gas), the title compound of example 157 was purified by preparative C18 reversed-phase HPLC.

Example 158:

(2S,4R)-4-[4-((Z)-2-Carboxy-vinyl)-phenoxy]-1-[1-(1-cyclohexyl-2-furan-3-yl-1H-benzimidazol-5-yl)-methanoyl]-pyrrolidine-2-carboxylic acid (Entry 6003, Table 6):



5

To a solution of *N*-Boc-protected *cis*-3-hydroxy-L-proline methyl ester (0.202 g, 0.82 mmol) in THF at 0 °C, triphenylphosphine (0.433 g), diisopropylazodicarboxylate (333 uL) and *E*-3-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acrylic acid methyl ester (0.294 g) were added. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h at 0 °C, followed by 4 h at room temperature and then the solvent was evaporated to dryness. The residue was purified by flash column chromatography, using 10%-50% EtOAc in hexane, to give the crude *O*-alkylated proline derivative as a yellow solid.

10

The material from above was dissolved in a 4N HCl in dioxane (10 mL) and stirred 30 min at room temperature. The solvent was evaporated to dryness and the solid residue coupled to the carboxylic acid of example 2 in the usual manner. Following saponification of ester protecting groups the title compound of example 158 was purified by reversed phase C18 HPLC.

15

The compounds of formula (I) can be obtained in the form of therapeutically acceptable salts. (see, for example Pharmaceutical salts, Birge, S.M. et al., J. Pharm. Sci. (1977), 66, 1-19).

20

EXAMPLE 159: INHIBITION OF NS5B RNA DEPENDENT RNA POLYMERASE ACTIVITY

The compounds of the invention were tested for inhibitory activity against the hepatitis C virus RNA dependant polymerase (NS5B), according to the following assay:

25

The substrates are:

173

a 12 nucleotide RNA oligo-uridylate (or oligo-uridine-monophosphate) (oligo-U) primer modified with biotin at the free 5' end position;

a complementary poly-adenylate (or adenosine monophosphate) (polyA) template of heterogeneous length (1000-10000 nucleotides); and

5 UTP-[5,6 ³H].

Polymerase activity is measured as the incorporation of UTP-[5,6 ³H] into the chain elongated from the oligo-U primer. The ³H-labelled reaction product is captured by SPA-beads coated with streptavidin and quantified on the TopCount.

10 All solutions were made from DEPC treated MilliQ water [2 ml of DEPC is added to 1 l of MilliQ water; the mixture is shaken vigorously to dissolve the DEPC, then autoclaved at 121°C for 30 minutes].

Enzyme: The full length HCV NS5B (**SEQ ID NO.1**) was purified as an N-terminal
15 hexa-histidine fusion protein from baculovirus infected insect cells. The enzyme can be stored at -20°C in storage buffer (see below). Under these conditions, it was found to maintain activity for at least 6 months.

Substrates: The biotinylated oligo-U₁₂ primer, the Poly(A) template, and the UTP-[5,6 ³H] were dissolved in water. The solutions can be stored at -80°C.

20

Assay buffer:	20 mM Tris-HCl pH 7.5
	5 mM MgCl ₂
	25 mM KCl
	1 mM EDTA
25	1 mM DTT

NS5B storage buffer:	0.1 μM NS5B
	25 mM Tris-HCl pH 7.5

174

300 mM NaCl

5 mM DTT

1 mM EDTA

0.1 % n-Dodecyl maltoside

5

30 % glycerol

Test compound cocktail: Just prior to assay, test compounds of the invention were dissolved in assay buffer containing 15% DMSO.

- 10 **Substrate cocktail:** Just prior to assay, the substrates were mixed in assay buffer to the following concentrations:

Component	Concentration in substrate cocktail	Final Concentration in assay
RNAasin TM	0.5 U/ μ l	1.67 U/ μ l
Biotin-oligo-U ₁₂ primer	3 ng/ μ l	1 ng/ μ l
PolyA template	30 ng/ μ l	10 ng/ μ l
UTP-[5,6- ³ H] 35 Ci/mmol	0.025 μ Ci/ μ l	0.0083 μ Ci/ μ l 0.25 μ M
UTP	2.25 μ M	0.75 μ M

- 15 **Enzyme cocktail:** Just prior to assay, the RNA polymerase (NS5B) cocktail was prepared in assay buffer to the following specifications:

Component	Concentration in cocktail
Tris-HCl at pH 7.5	20 mM
MgCl ₂	5 mM

KCl	25 mM
EDTA	1 mM
DTT	1 mM
n- Dodecyl maltoside	1%
NS5B	30 nM

Protocol:

The assay reaction was performed in a Microfluor™ white “U” bottom plate (Dynatech™ #7105), by successively adding:

- 5 20 µl of test compound cocktail;
20 µl of substrate cocktail; and
20 µl of enzyme cocktail

(final [NS5B] in assay = 10 nM; final [n-dodecyl maltoside] in assay = 0.33%; final DMSO in assay = 5%).

- 10 The reaction was incubated at room temperature for 1.5 hours. STOP solution (20 µl; 0.5 M EDTA, 150 ng/ µl tRNA) was added, followed by 30 µl streptavidin coated PVT beads (8mg/ml in 20 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.5, 25 mM KCl, 0.025% NaN₃). The plate was then shaken for 30 minutes. A solution of CsCl was added (70 µl, 5 M), to bring the CsCl concentration to 1.95 M. The mixture was then allowed to stand for 1
15 hour. The beads were then counted on a Hewlett Packard TopCount™ instrument using the following protocol:

Data mode: counts per minute

Scintillator: liq/plast

Energy range: low

- 20 Efficiency mode: normal

Region: 0-50

Count delay: 5 Minutes

Count time: 1 minute

Expected results: 6000 cpm/well

200 cpm/well no enzyme control

Based on the results at ten different concentrations of test compound, standard
5 concentration-% inhibition curves were plotted and analysed to determine IC_{50} 's for
the compounds of the invention. For some compounds the IC_{50} was estimated from
two points.

**EXAMPLE 160: SPECIFICITY FOR NS5B RNA DEPENDENT RNA
POLYMERASE INHIBITION**

10 The compounds of the invention were tested for inhibitory activity against polio virus
RNA dependent RNA polymerase and calf thymus DNA dependent RNA
polymerase II in the format that is described for the HCV polymerase with the
exception that poliovirus polymerase was used in place of the HCV NS5B
polymerase.

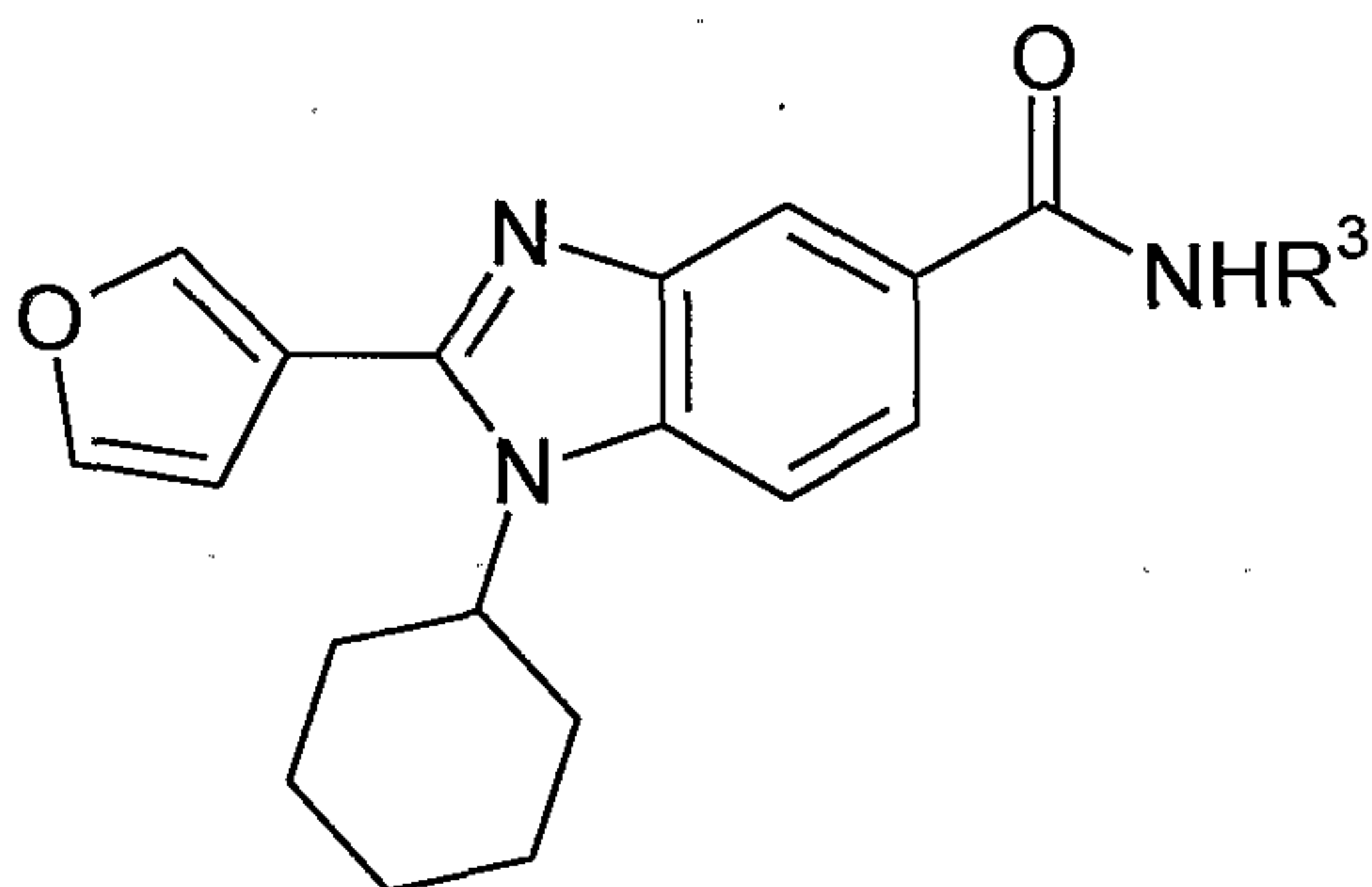
15

TABLE OF COMPOUNDS

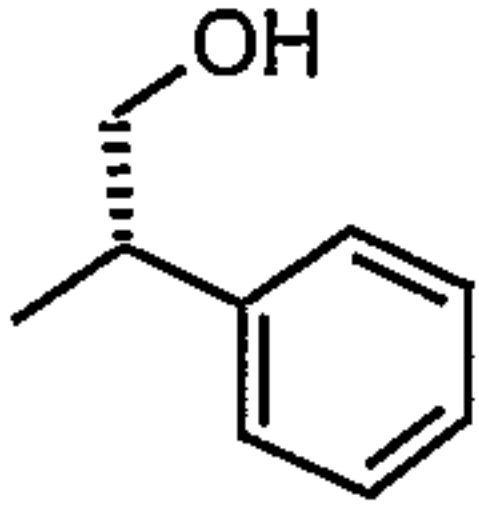
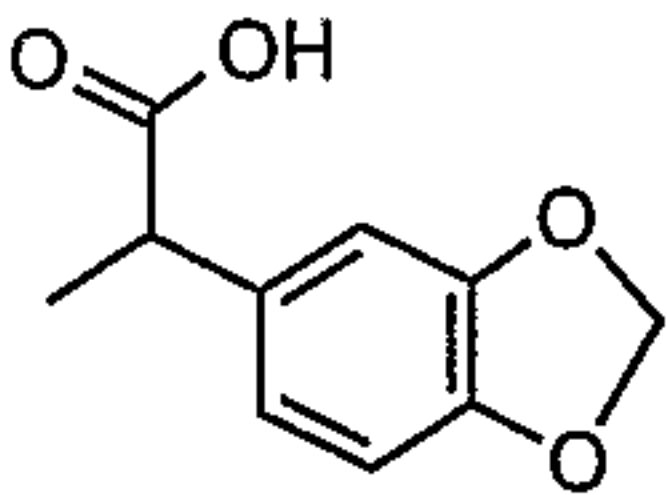
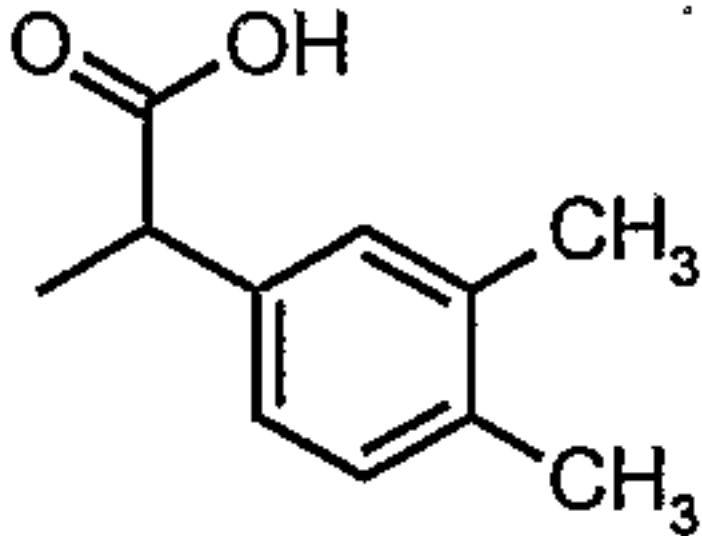
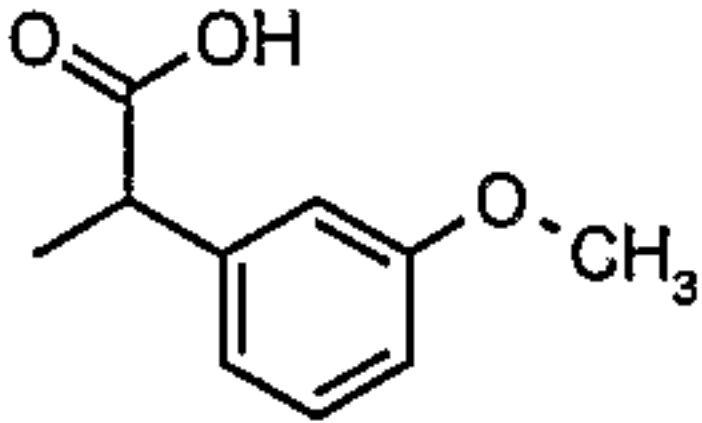
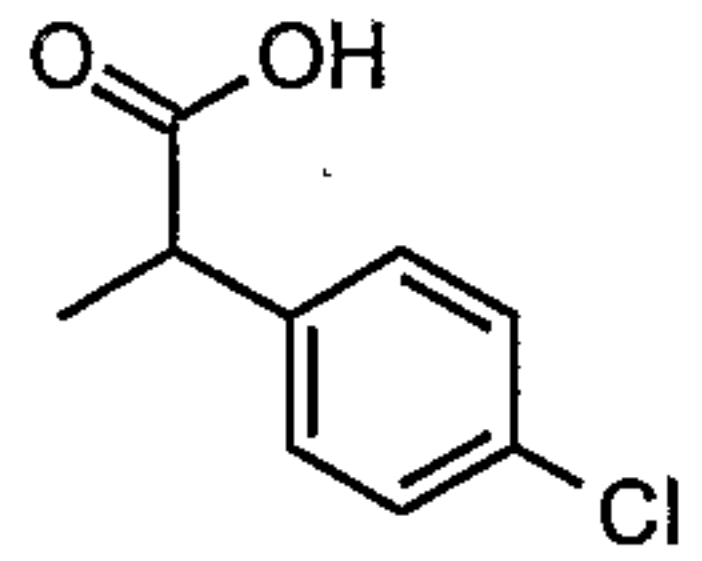
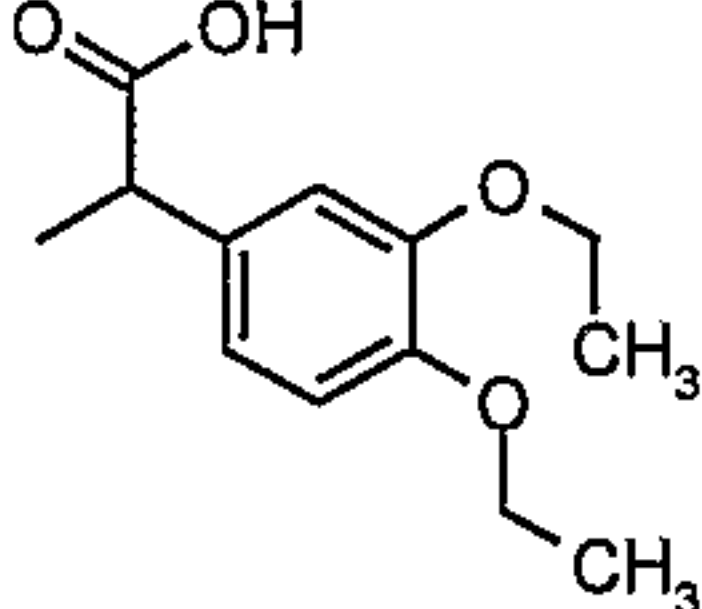
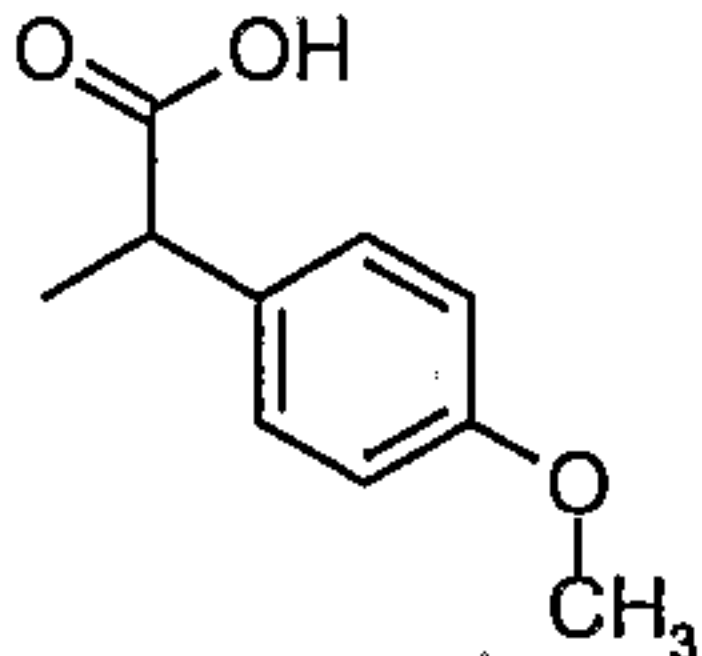
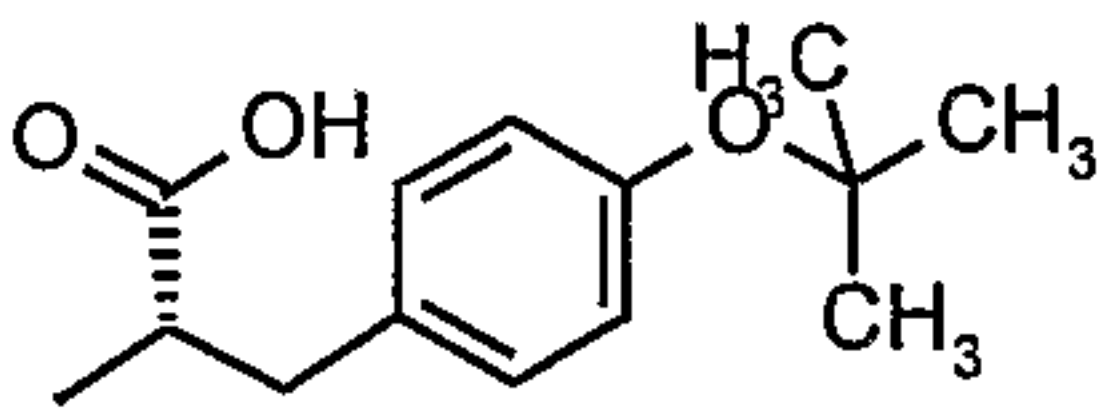
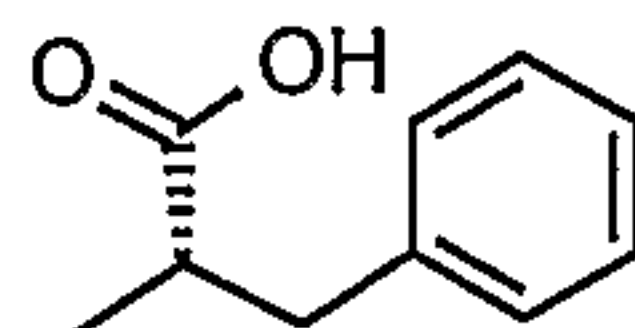
The compounds listed in Tables 1 to 22 were found to be active in the above-
described NS5B assay, with IC_{50} 's of less than 25 μ M. None of these compounds
were found to exhibit significant inhibition of poliovirus RNA dependent RNA
20 polymerase or calf thymus DNA dependent RNA polymerase II at 25 μ M
concentration.

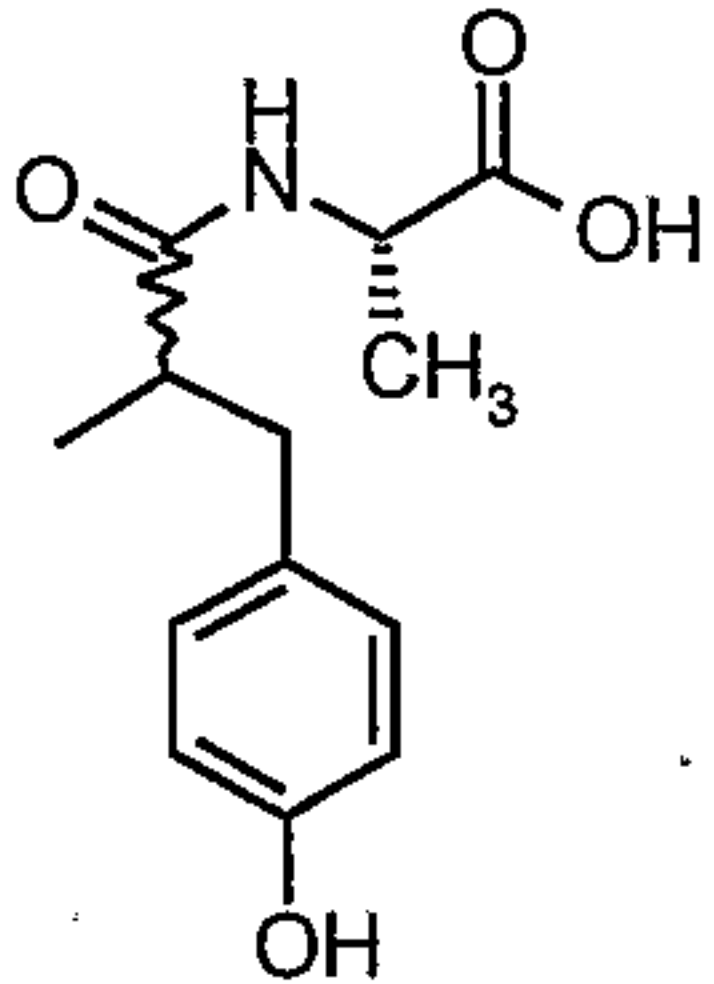
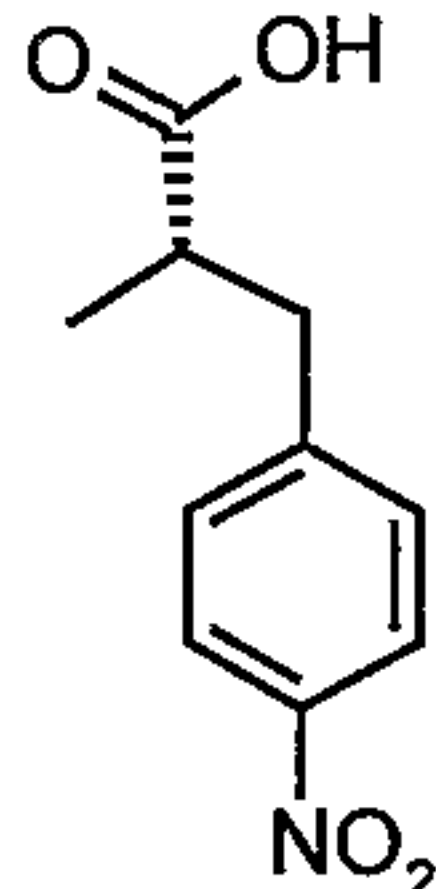
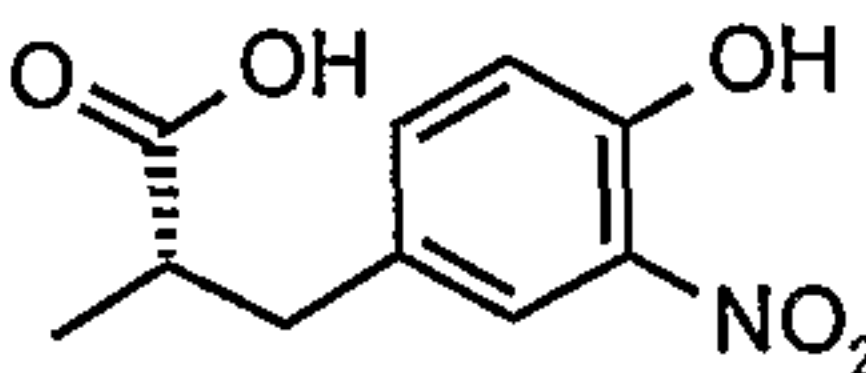
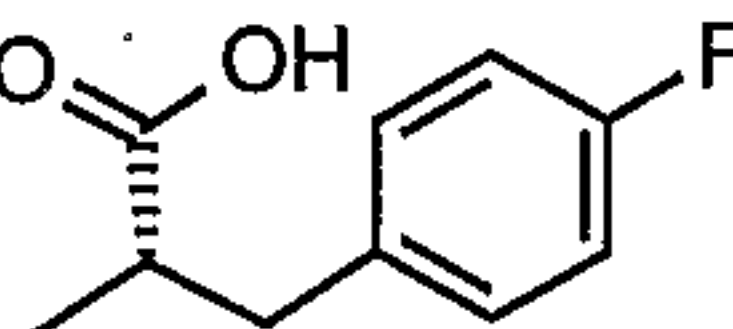
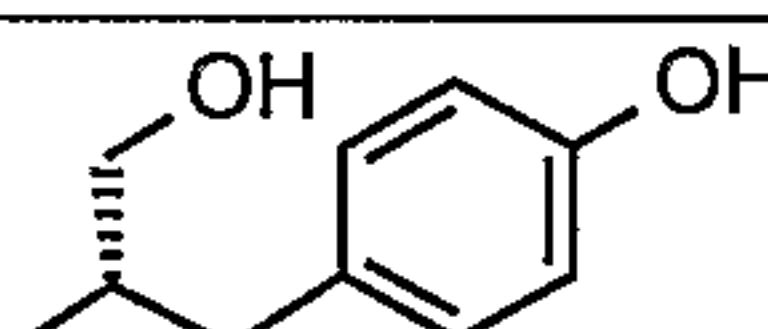
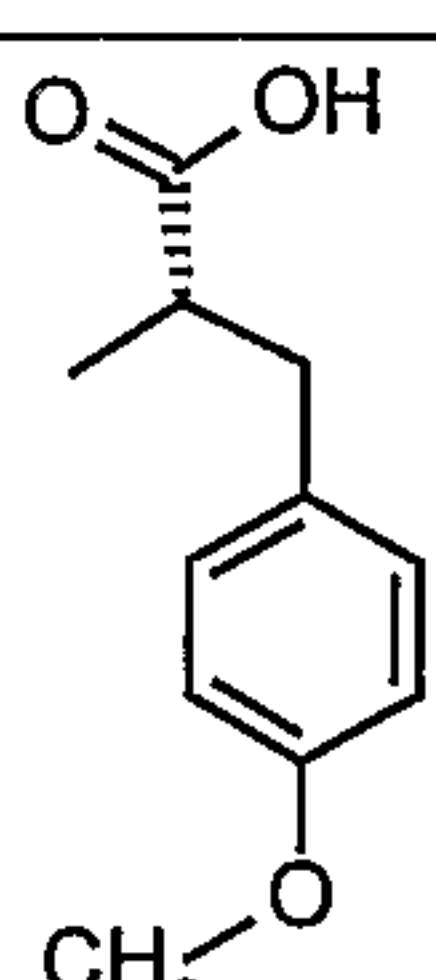
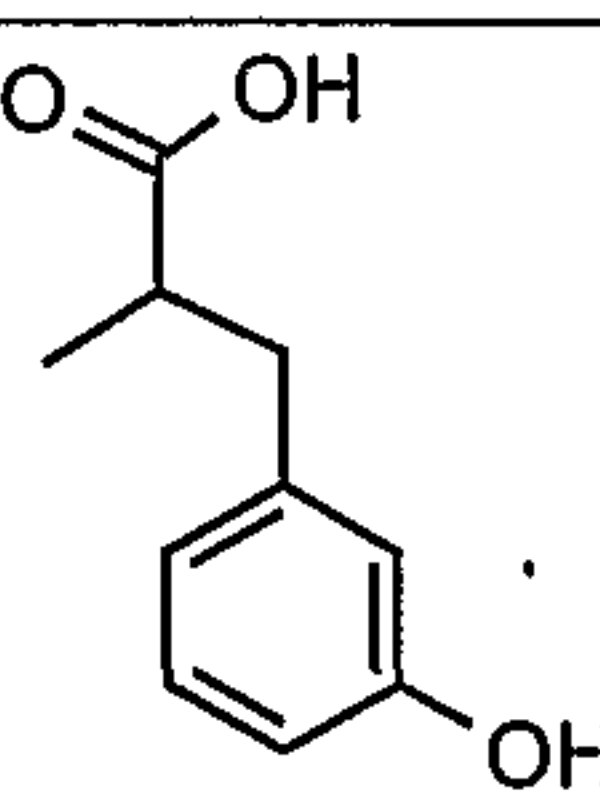
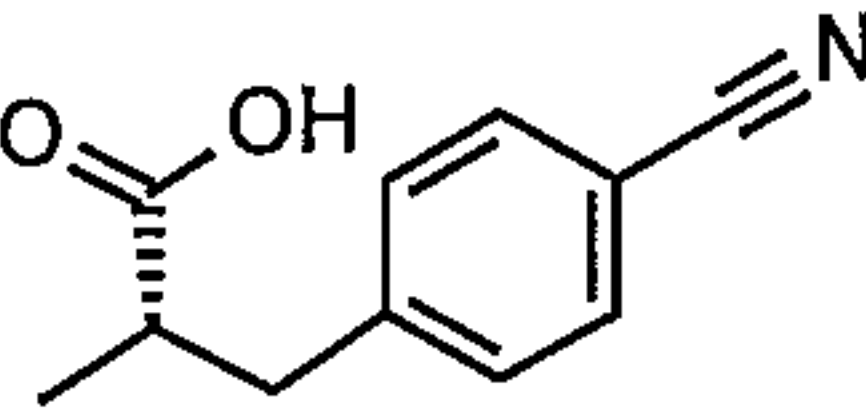
In Tables 1 to 22, the following ranges apply: A:-25-10 μ M; B: 10-5 μ M; C: 5-1 μ M;
and D: < 1 μ M

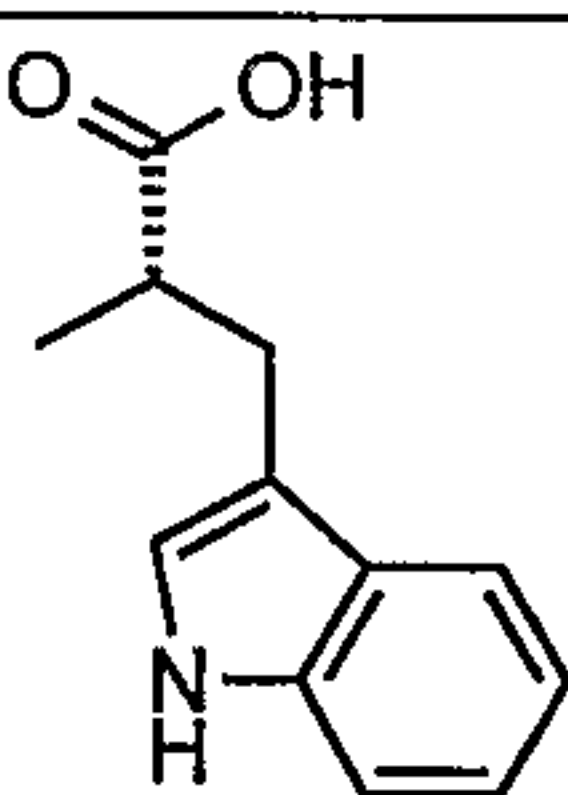
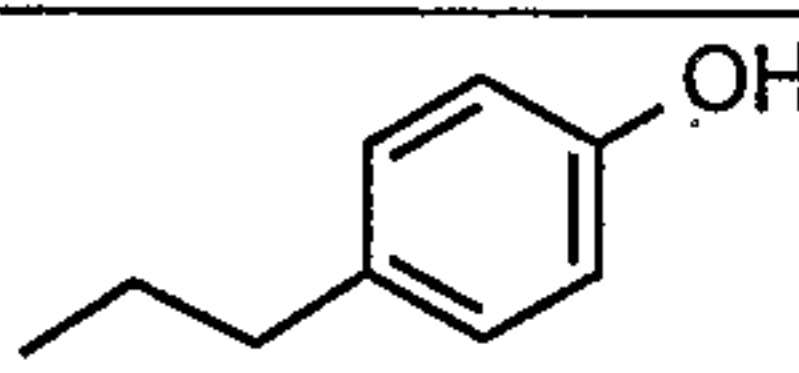
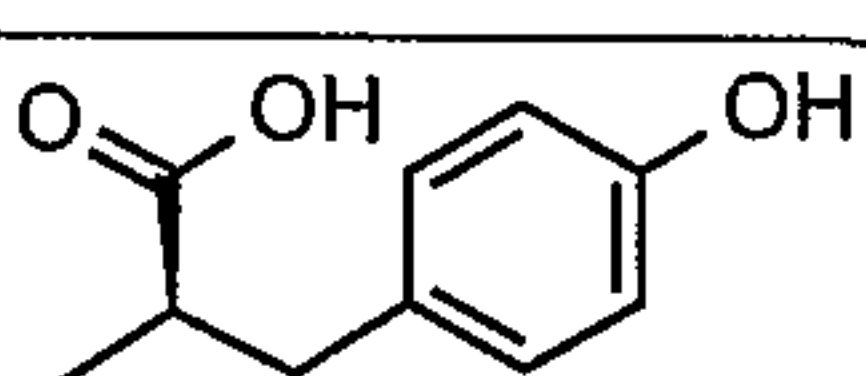
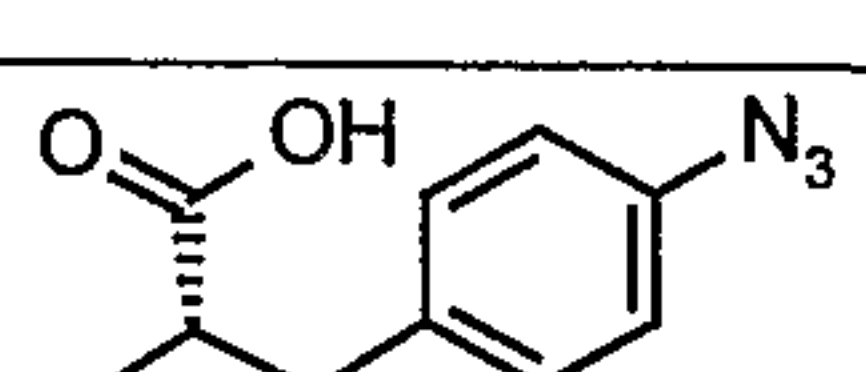
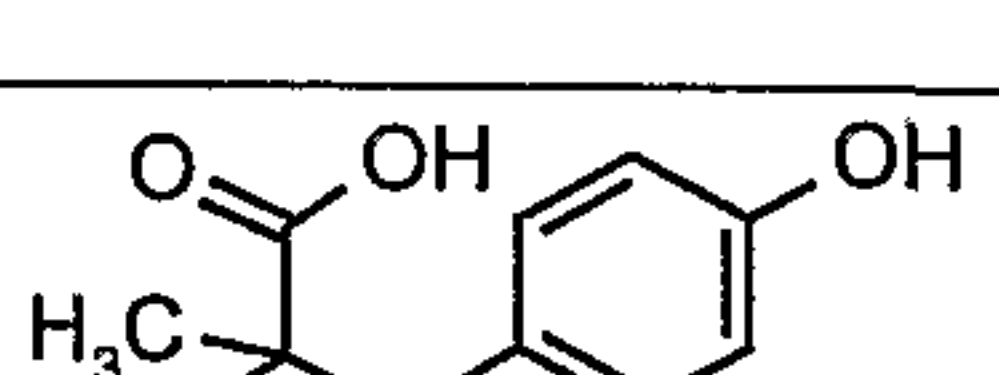
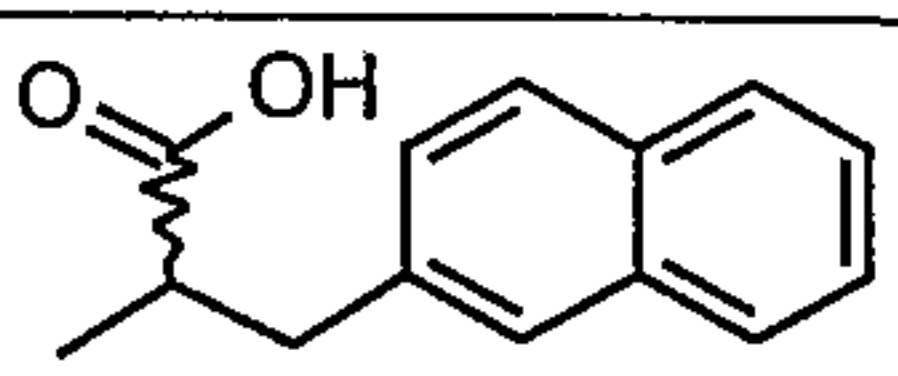
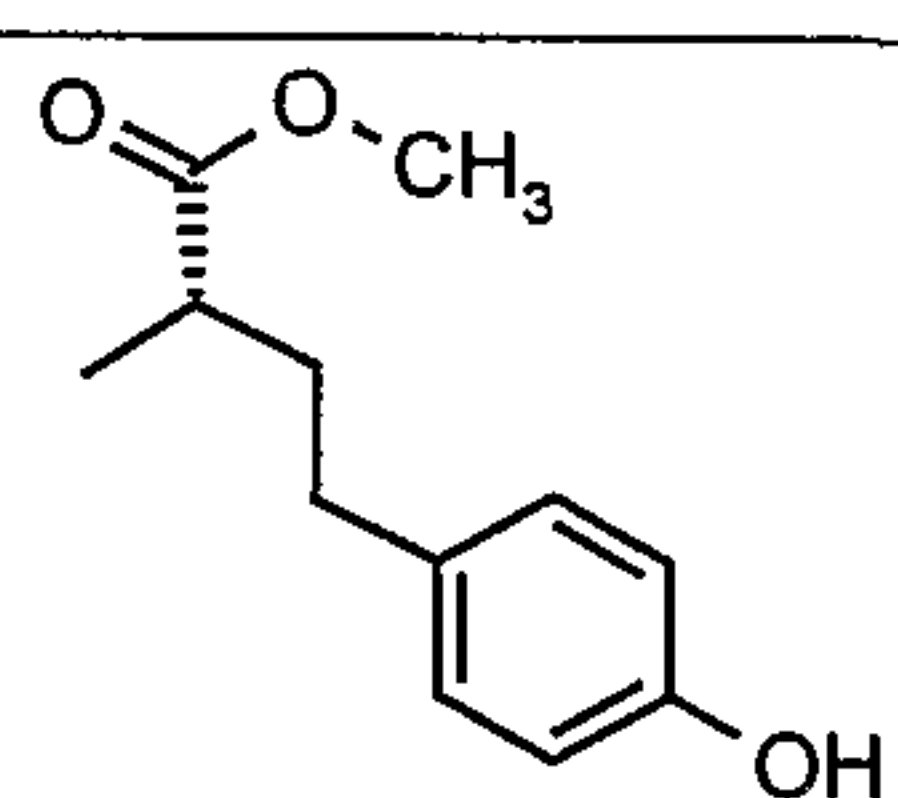
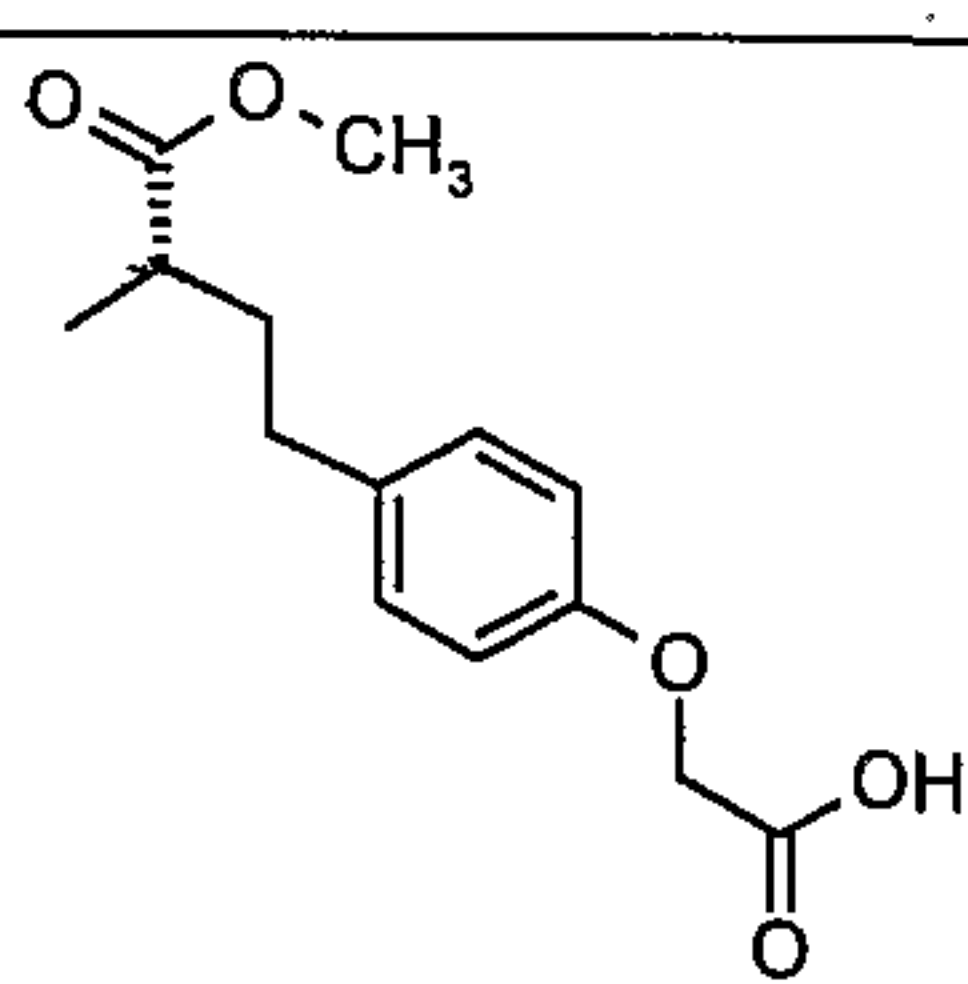
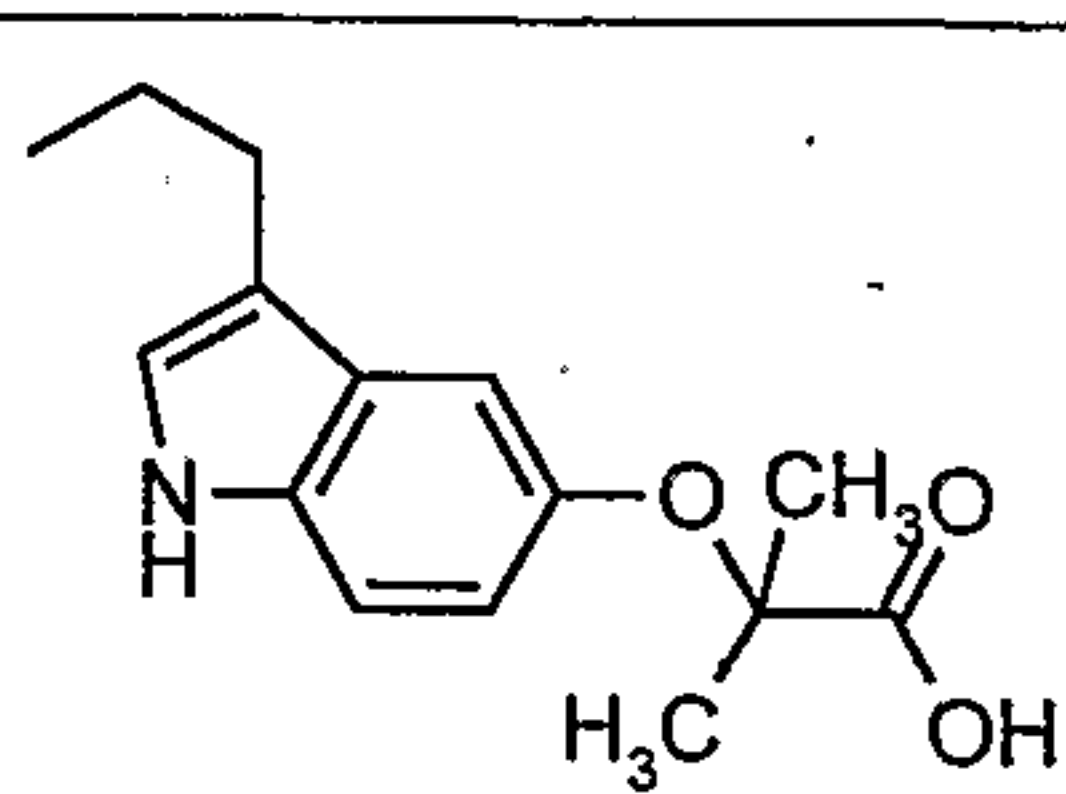
Table 1

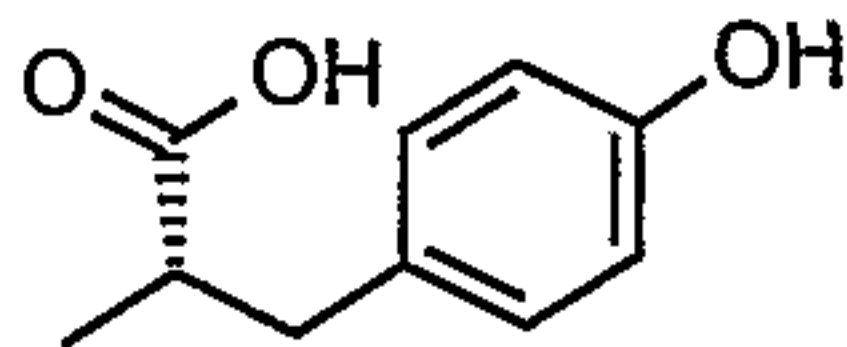
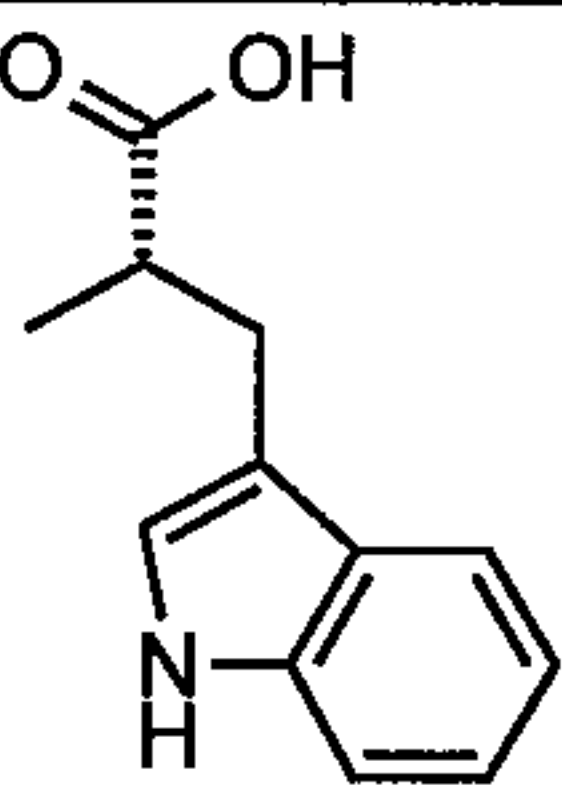
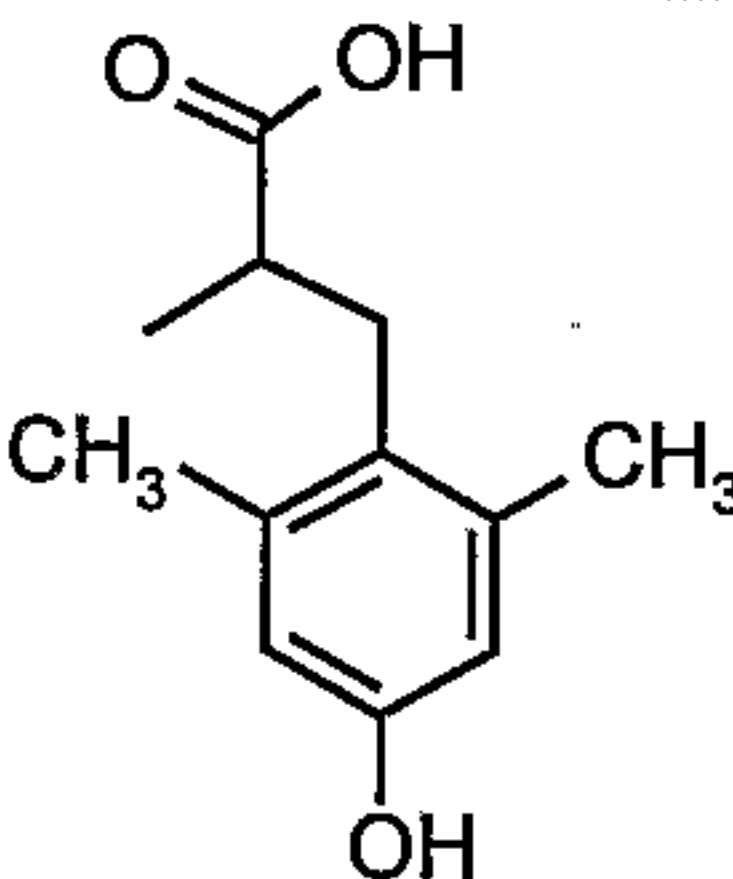
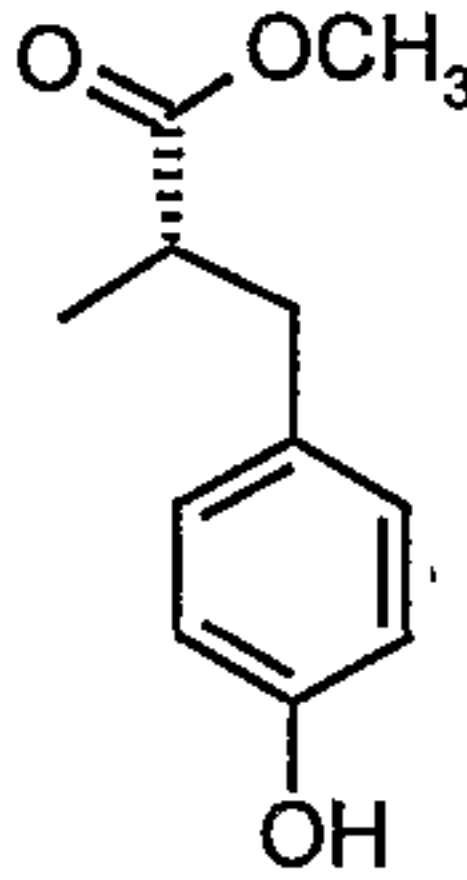
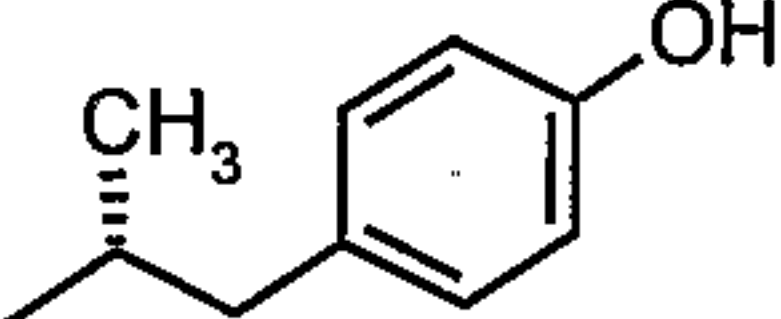
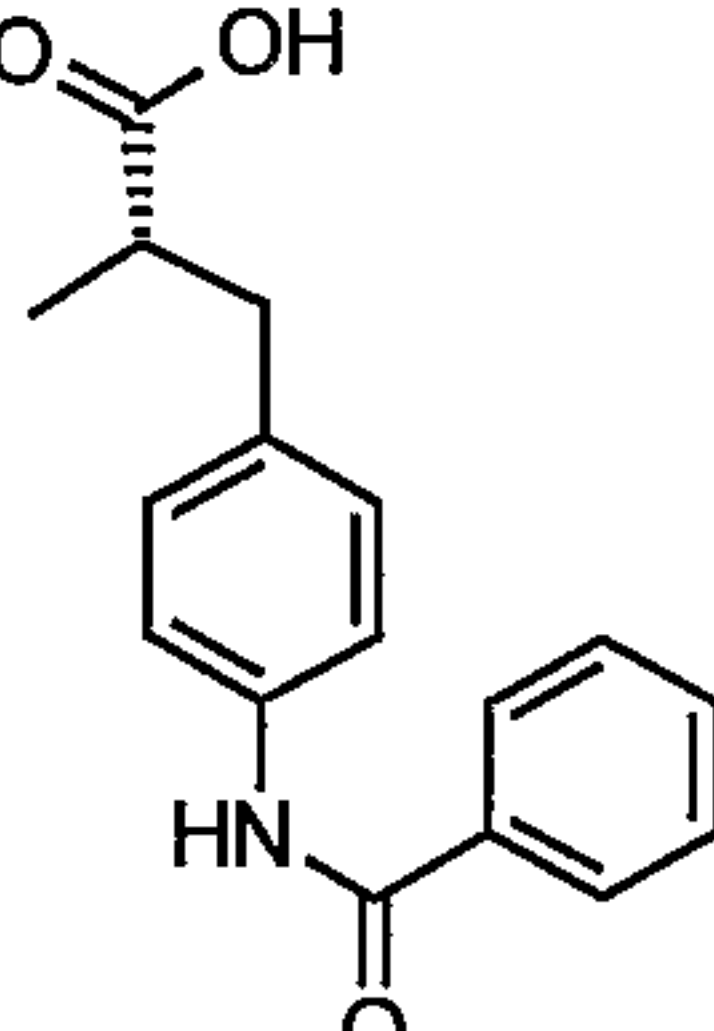
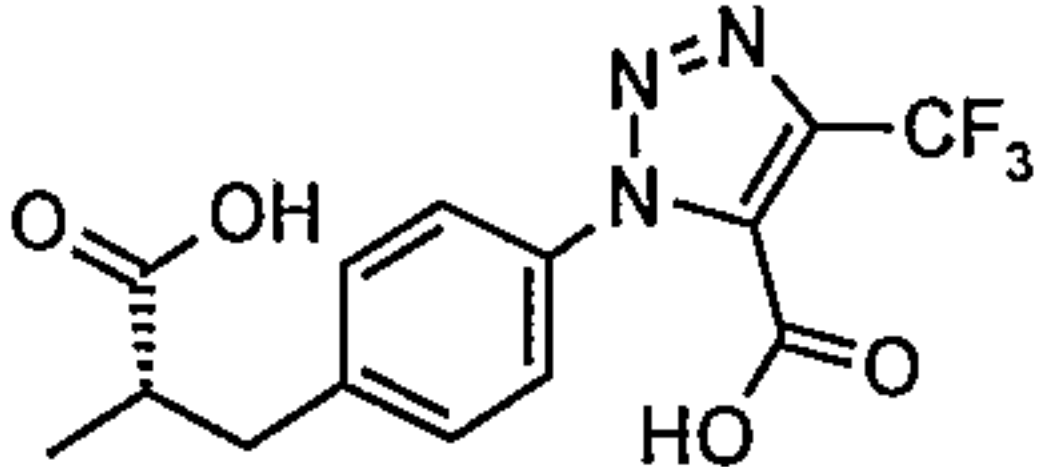
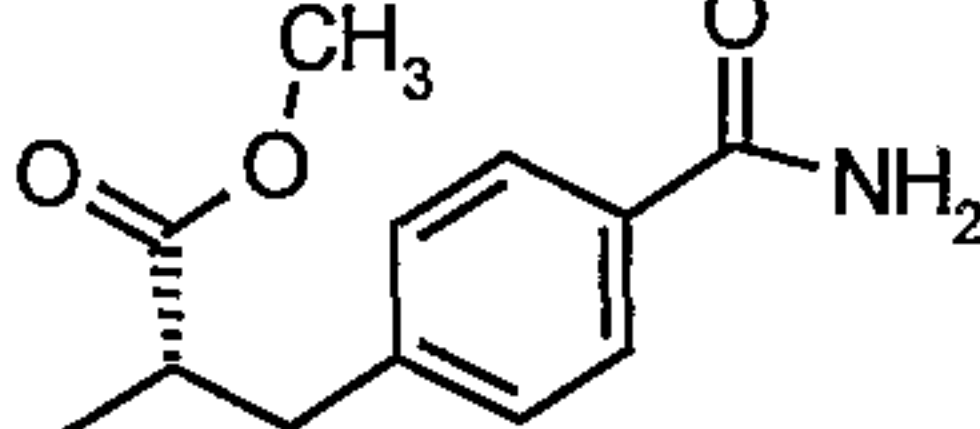


Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1001	A		486(MH ⁺)
1002	A		512(MH ⁺)
1003	B		518(MH ⁺)
1004	C		474(MH ⁺)
1005	C		400(MH ⁺)
1006	B		502(MH ⁺)
1007	C		386(MH ⁺)

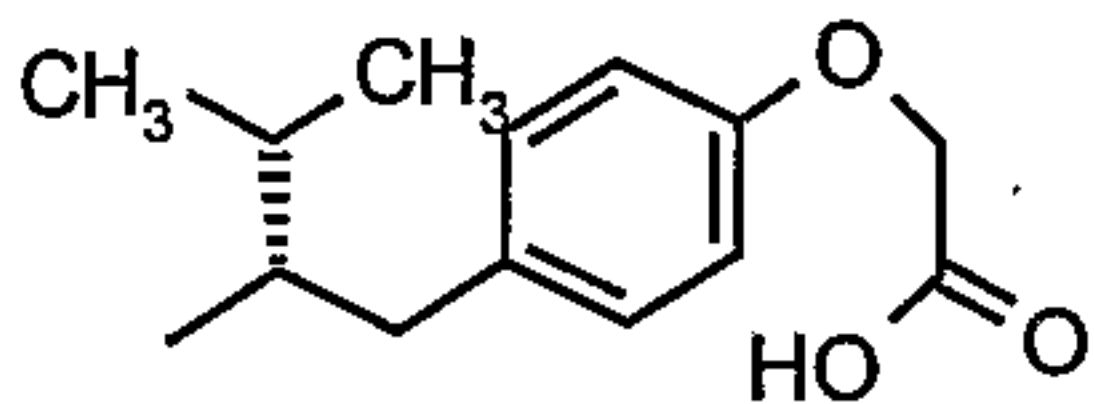
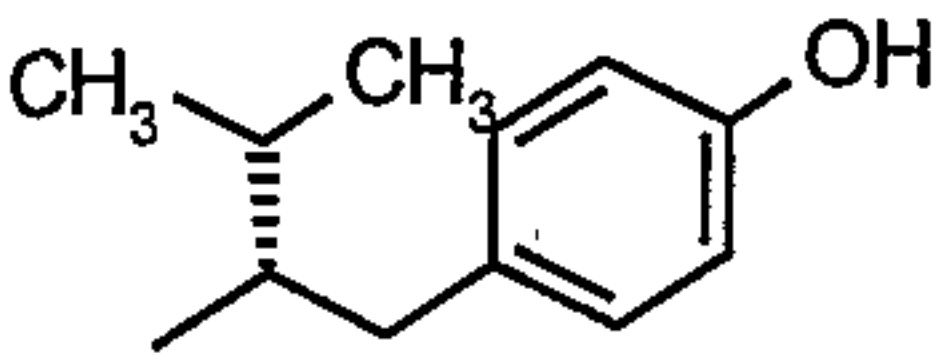
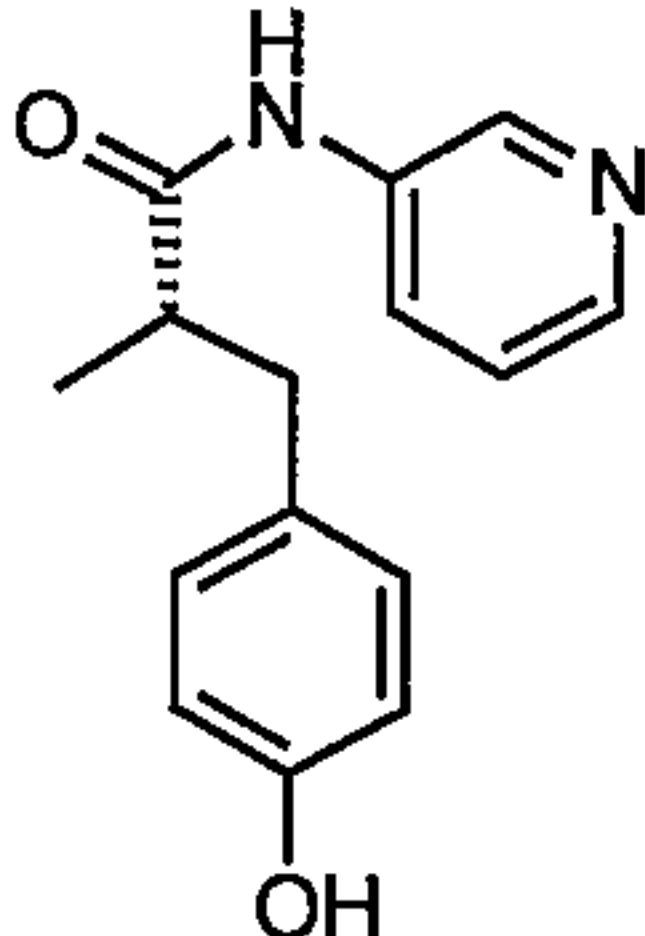
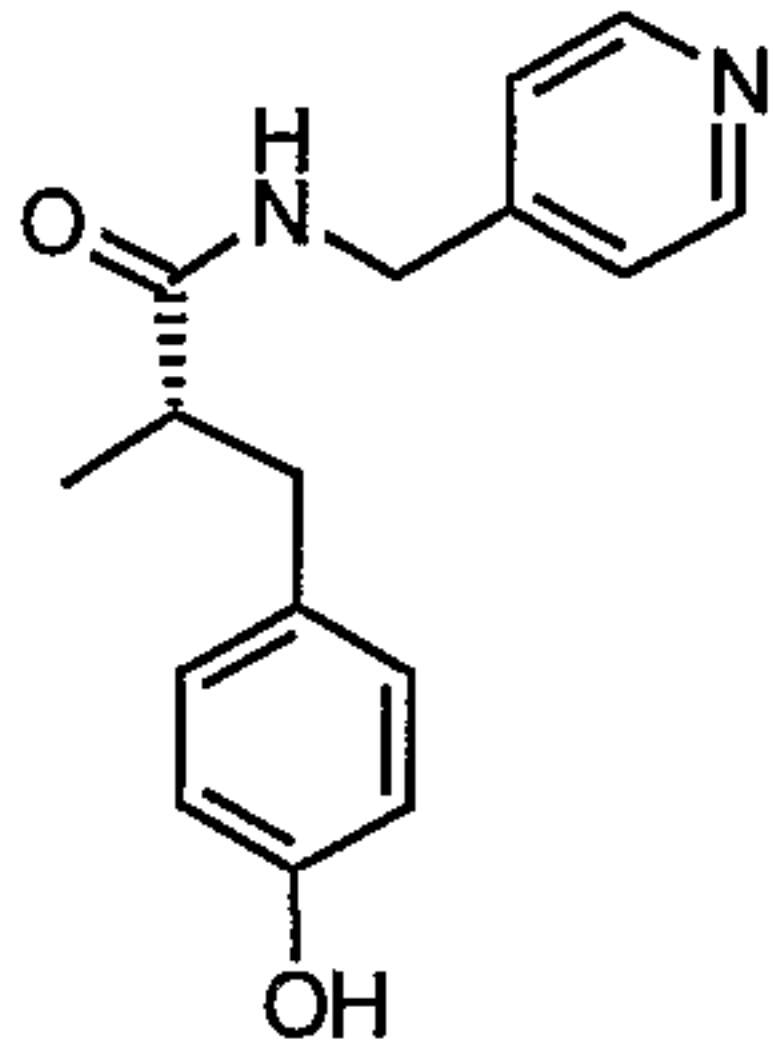
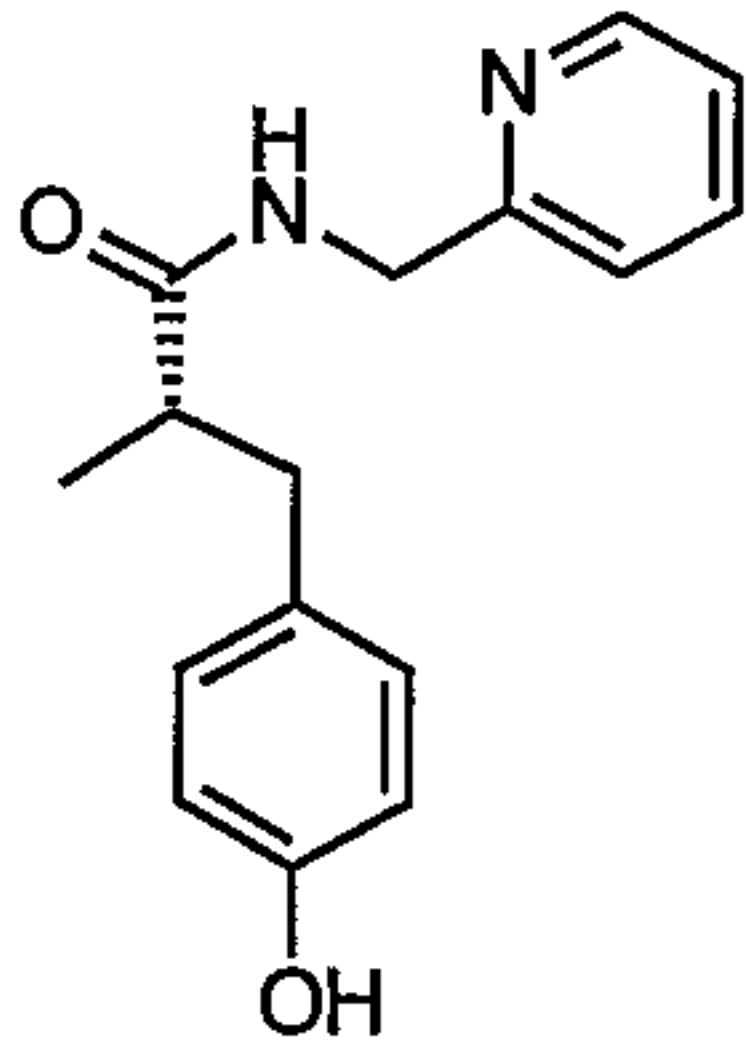
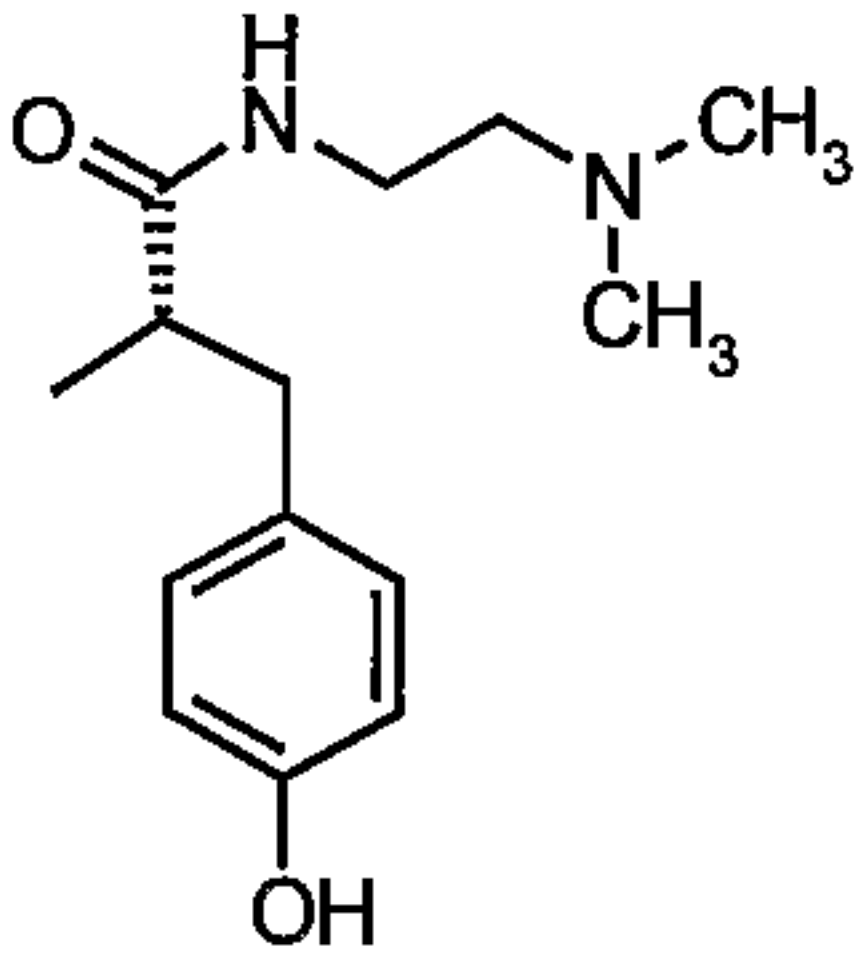
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1008	C		430(MH ⁺)
1009	C		488(MH ⁺)
1010	C		472(MH ⁺)
1011	C		474(MH ⁺)
1012	C		478(MH ⁺)
1013	C		532(MH ⁺)
1014	C		474(MH ⁺)
1030	B		530(MH ⁺)
1015	B		458(MH ⁺)

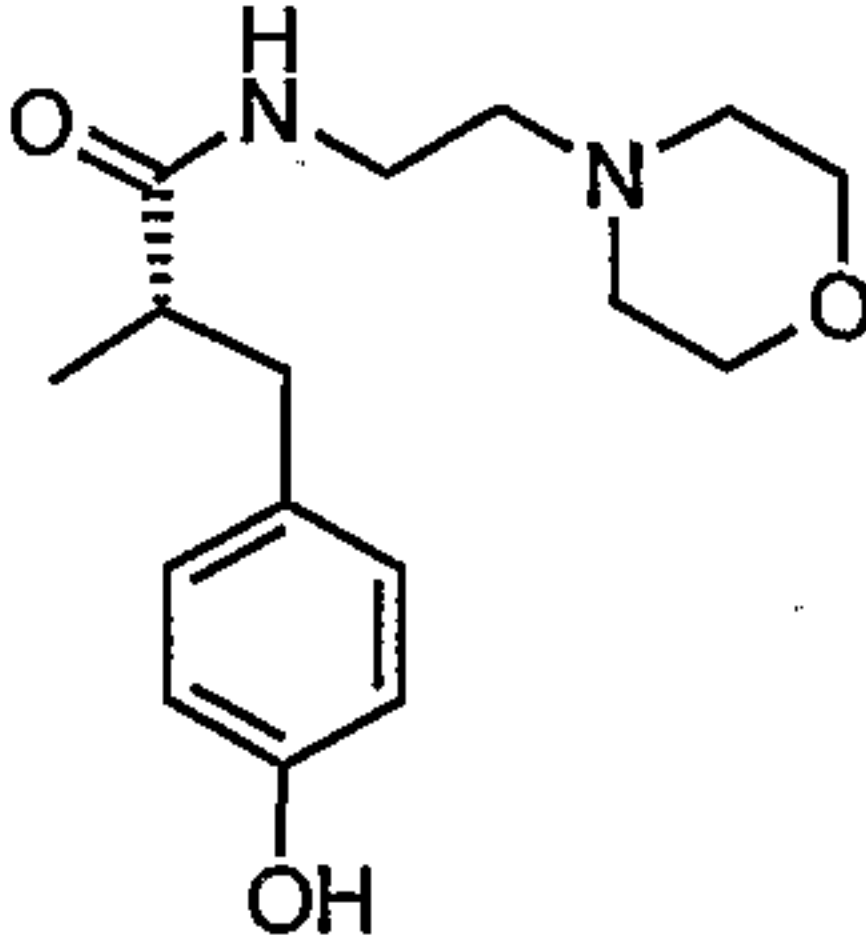
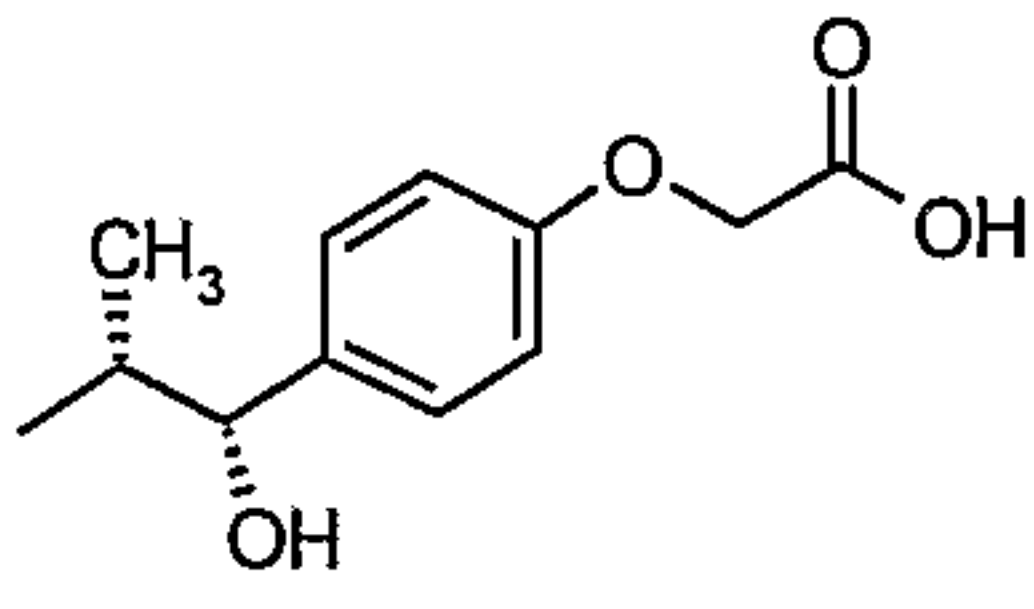
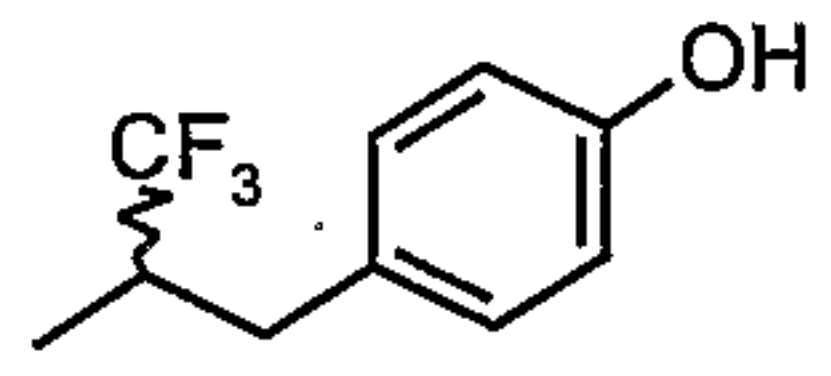
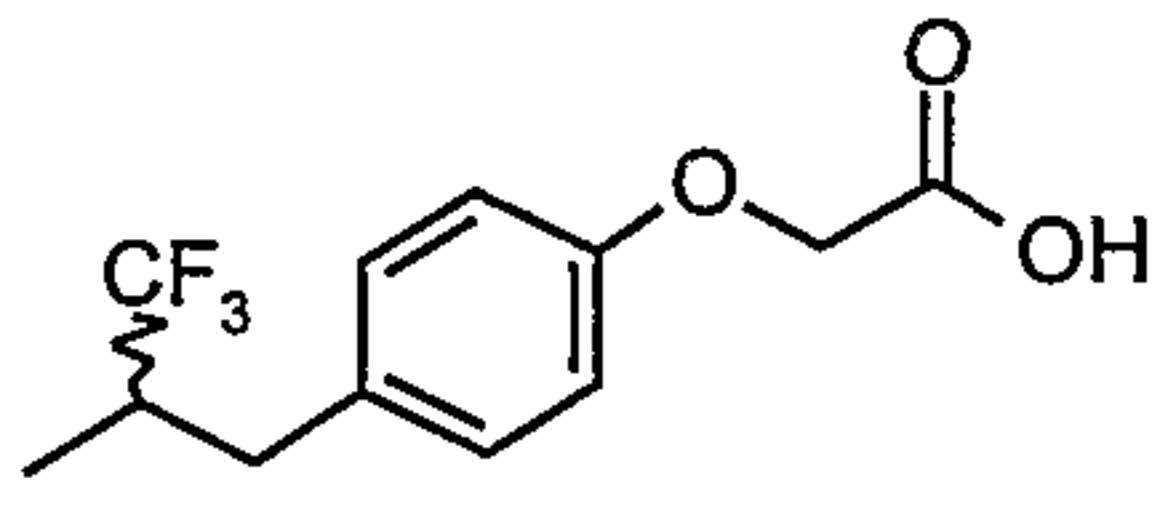
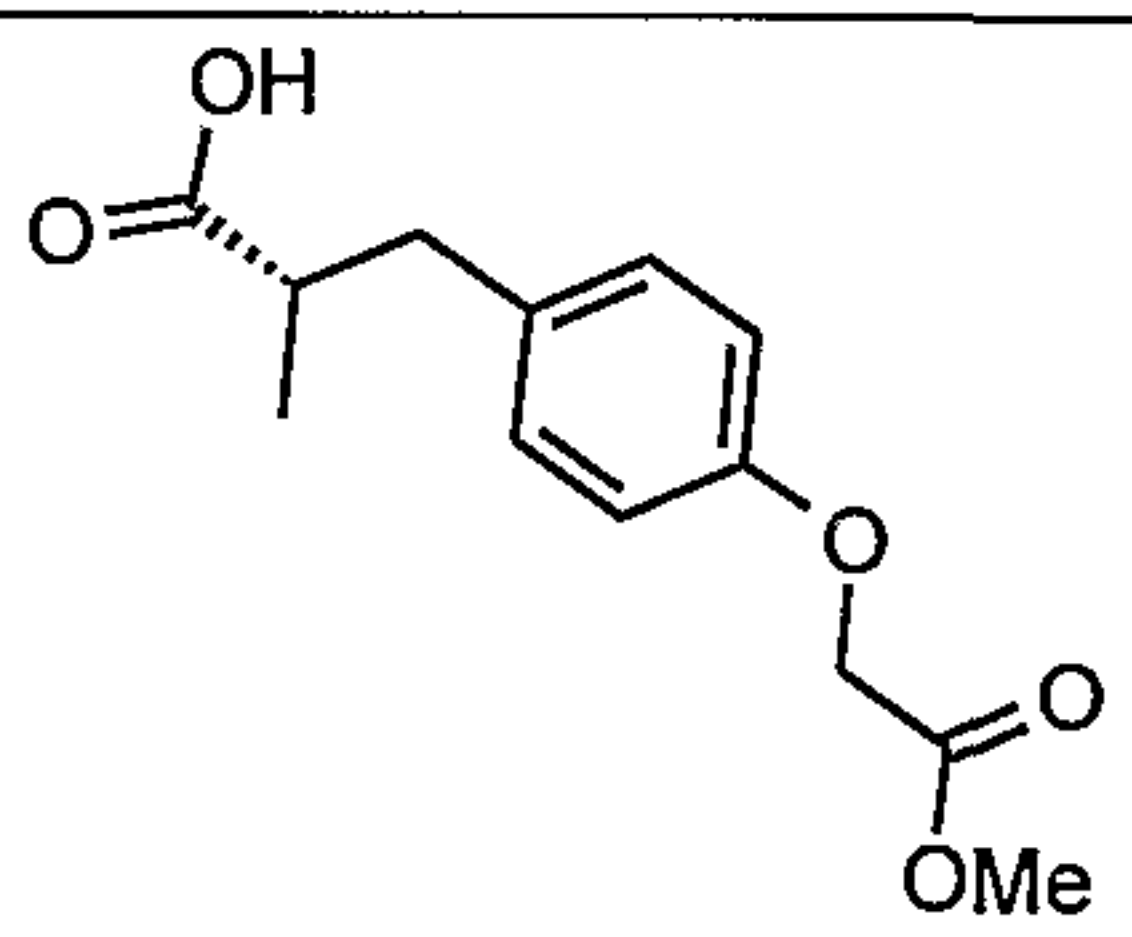
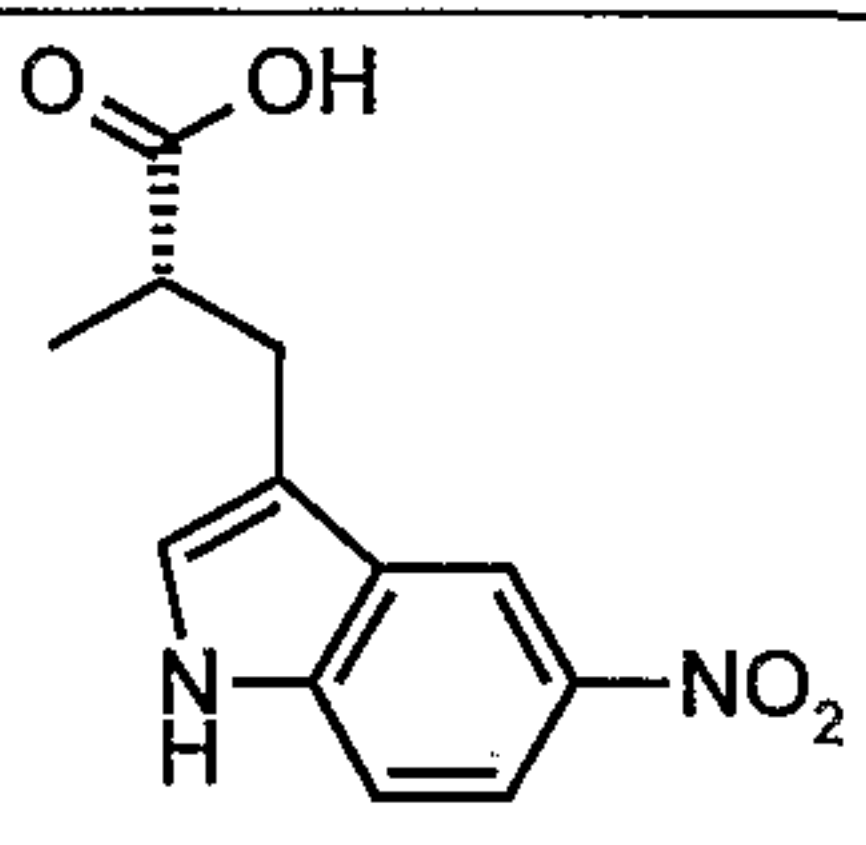
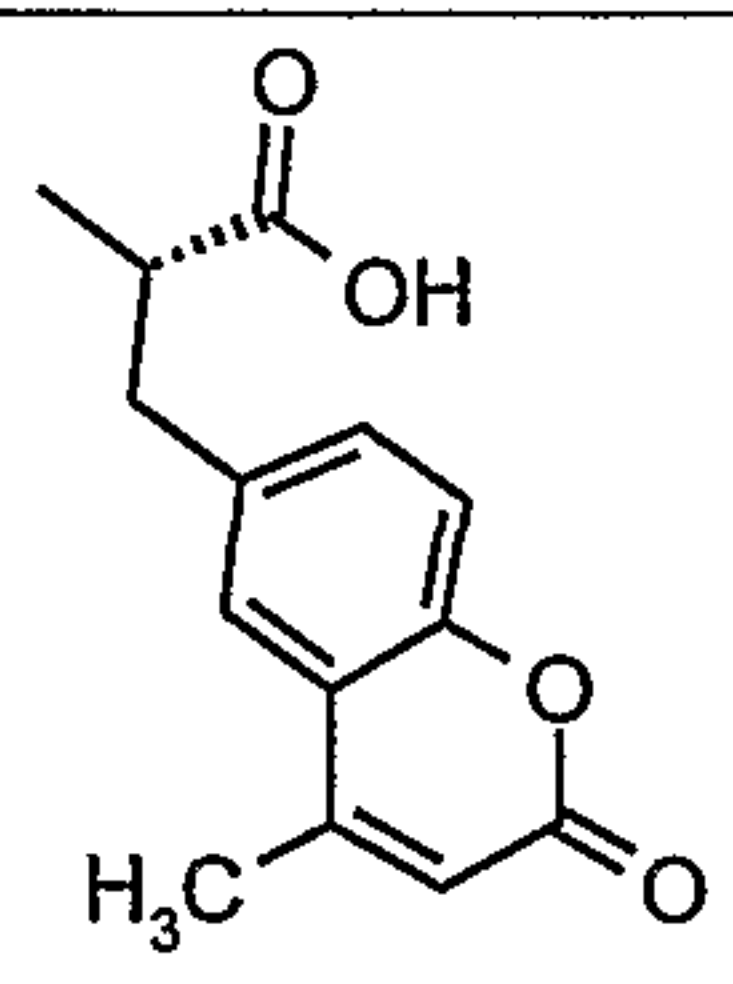
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1016	C		545(MH ⁺)
1017	B		503(MH ⁺)
1019	C		519(MH ⁺)
1020	C		476(MH ⁺)
1021	C		460(MH ⁺)
1022	C		488(MH ⁺)
1023	C		474(MH ⁺)
1024	C		483(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
	D		497(MH ⁺)
1025	B		430(MH ⁺)
1026	C		474(MH ⁺)
1027	C		499(MH ⁺)
1028	C		488(MH ⁺)
1029	B		508(MH ⁺)
1031	C		502(MH ⁺)
1033	C		560(MH ⁺)
1034	C		555(MH ⁺)

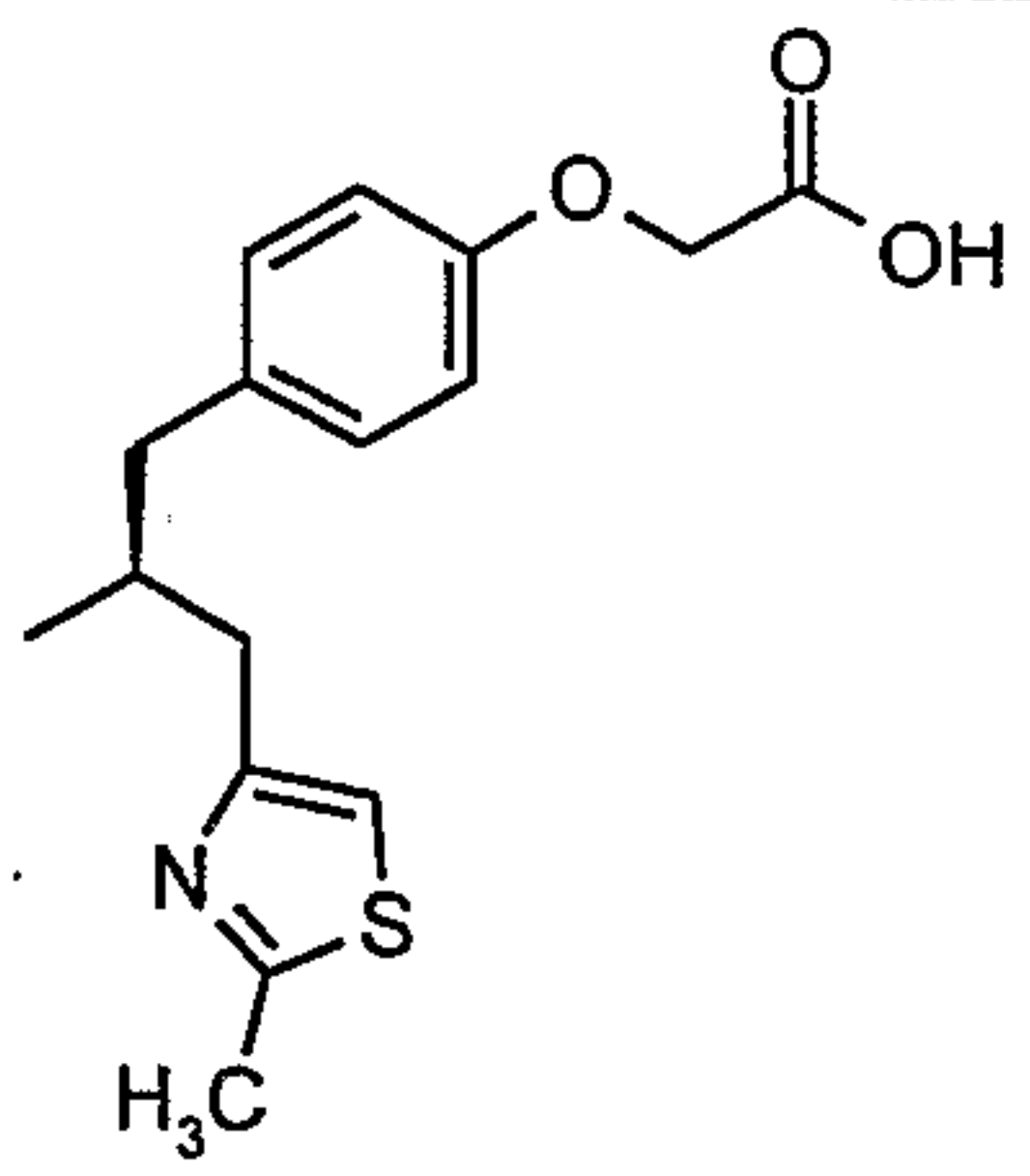
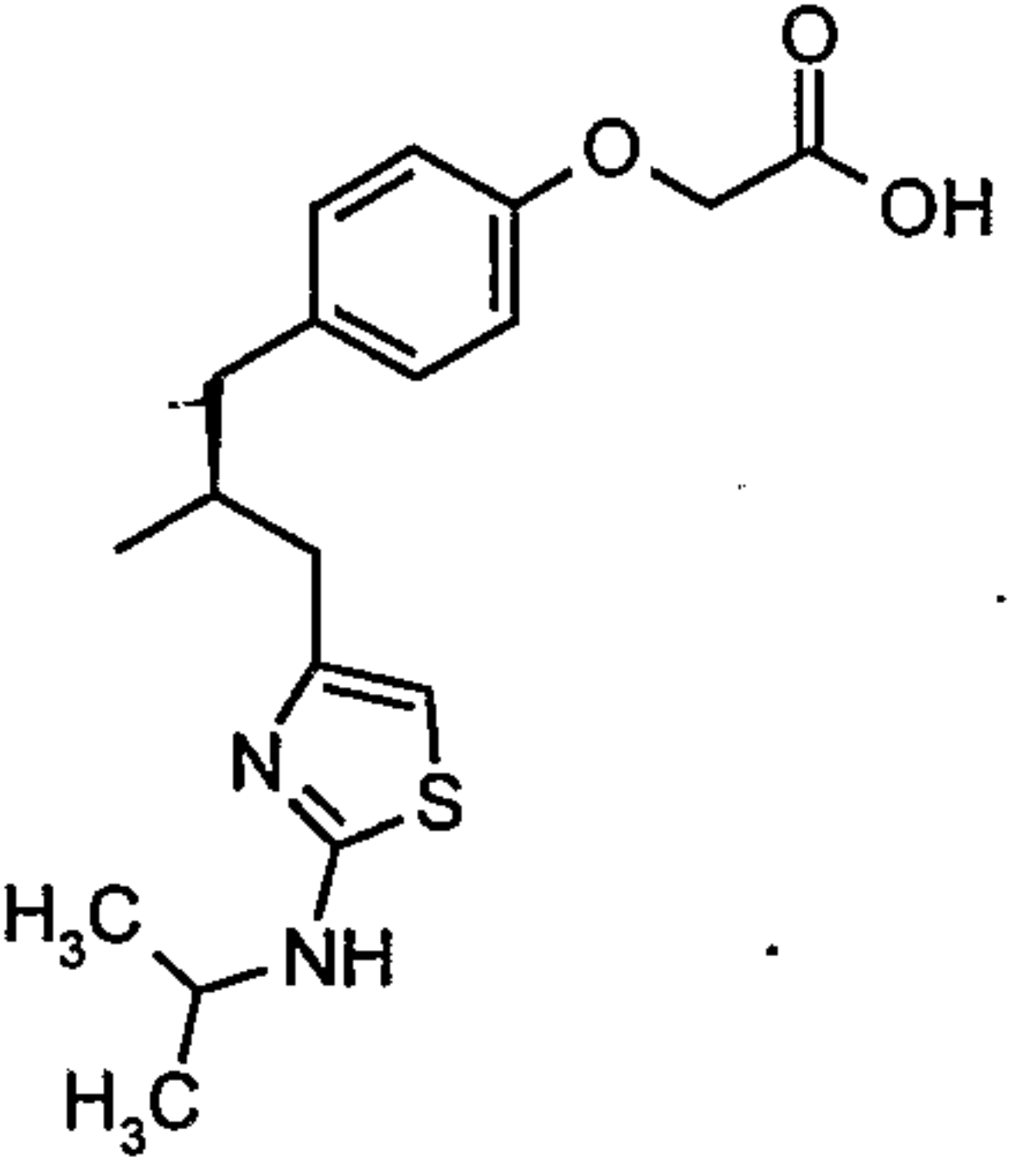
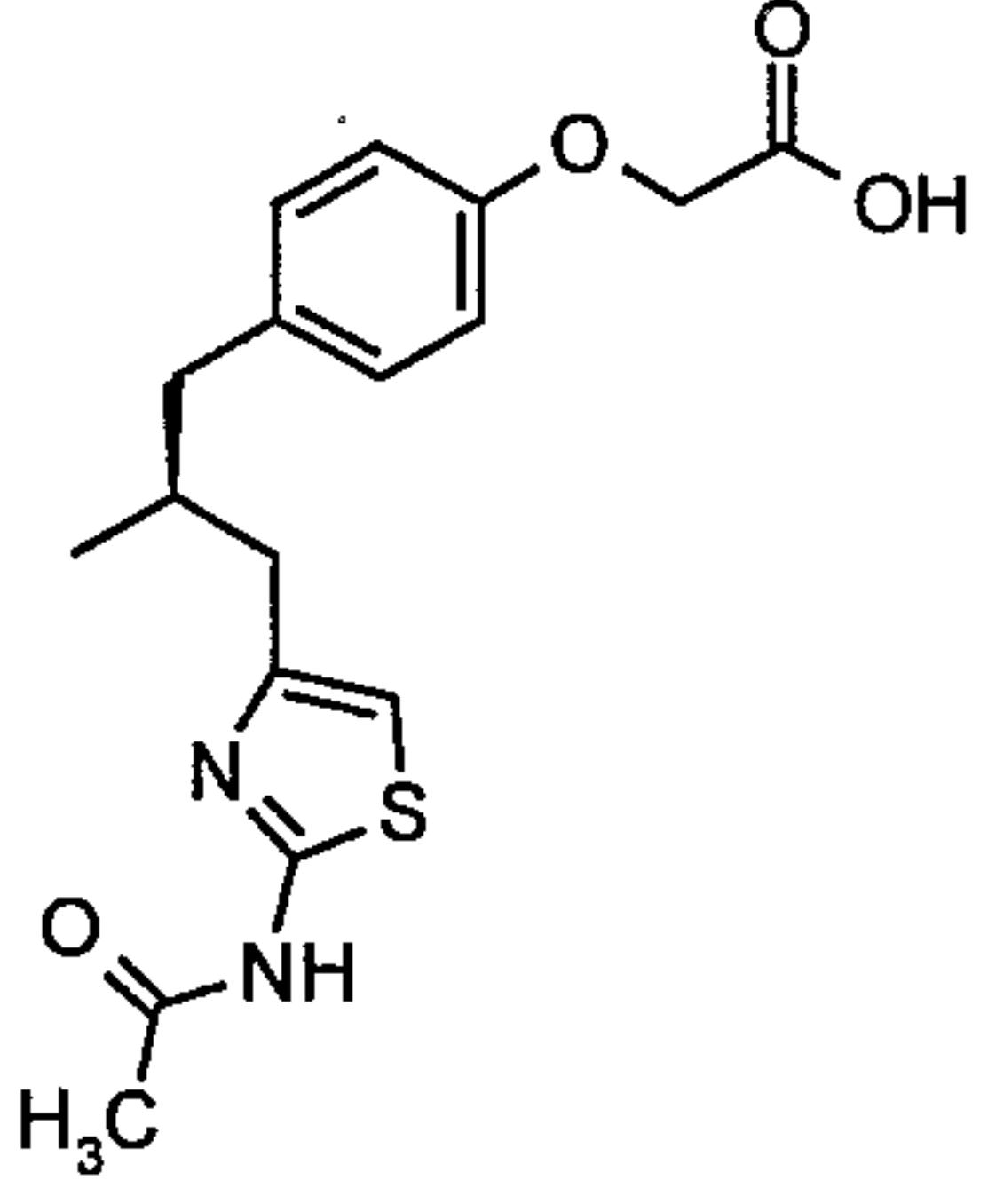
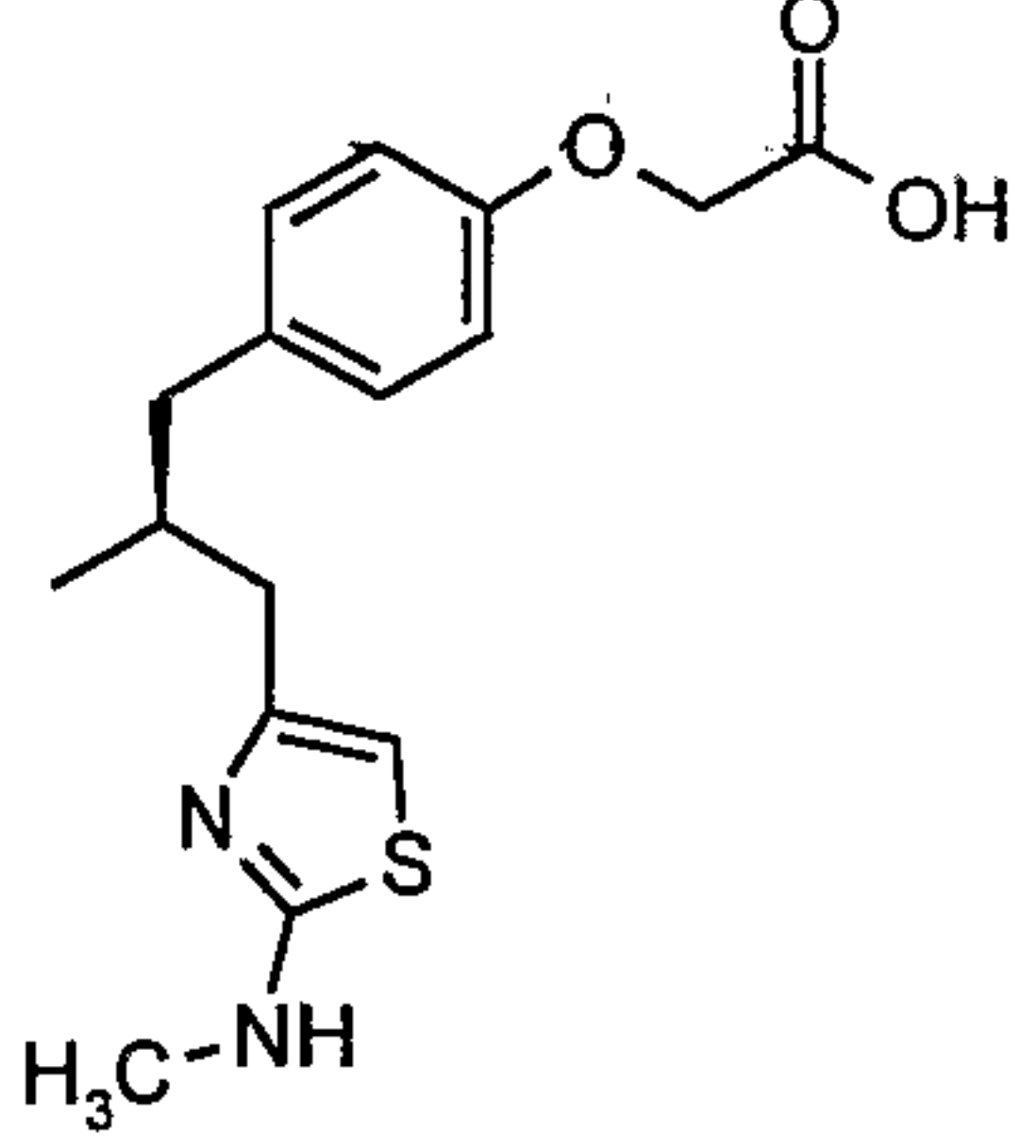
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1040	D		474(MH ⁺)
1063	C		511(MH ⁺)
1069	C		502(MH ⁺)
1071	C		488(MH ⁺)
1072	C		444(MH ⁺)
1080	C		577(MH ⁺)
1083	A		637(MH ⁺)
1086	C		515(MH ⁺)

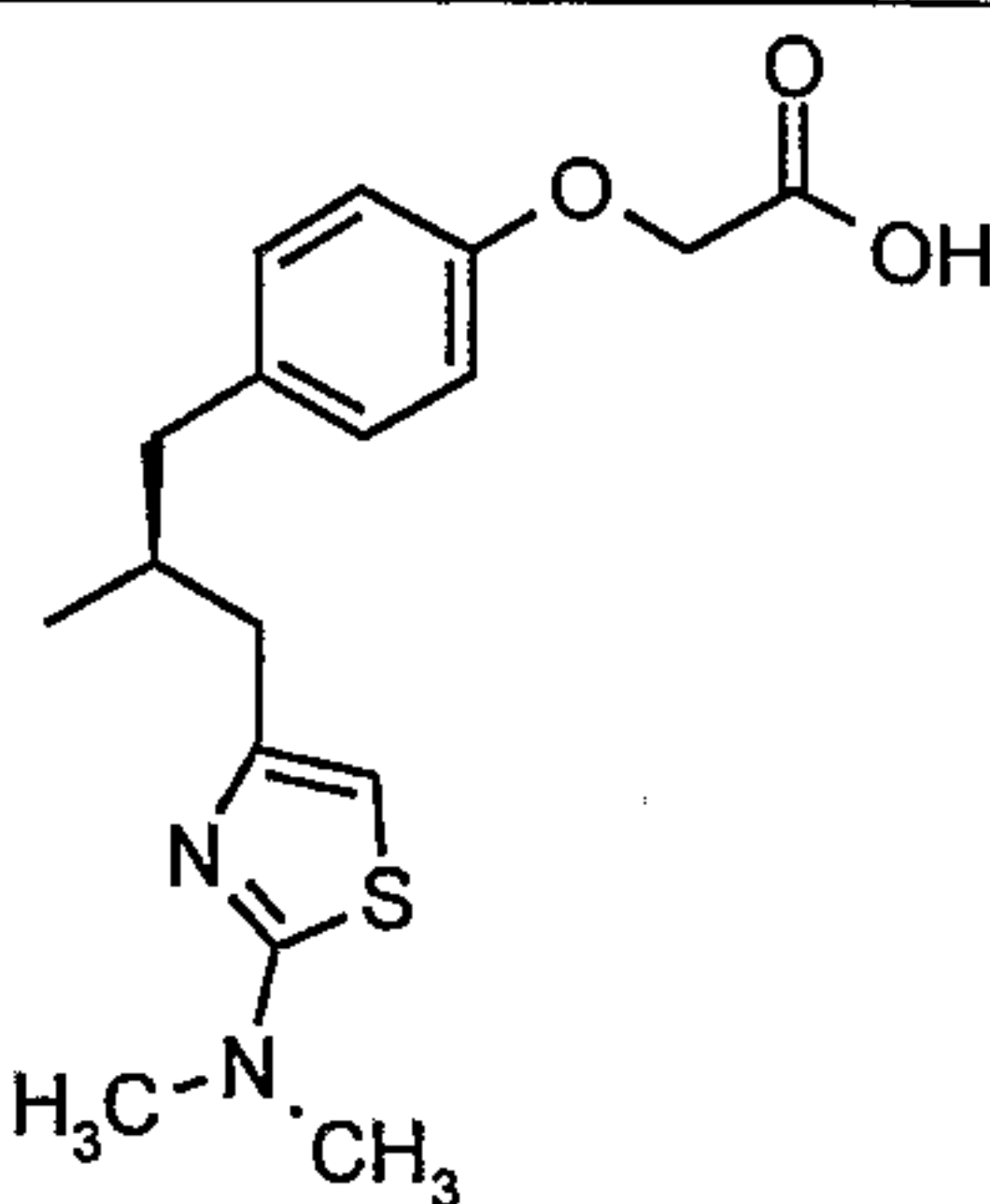
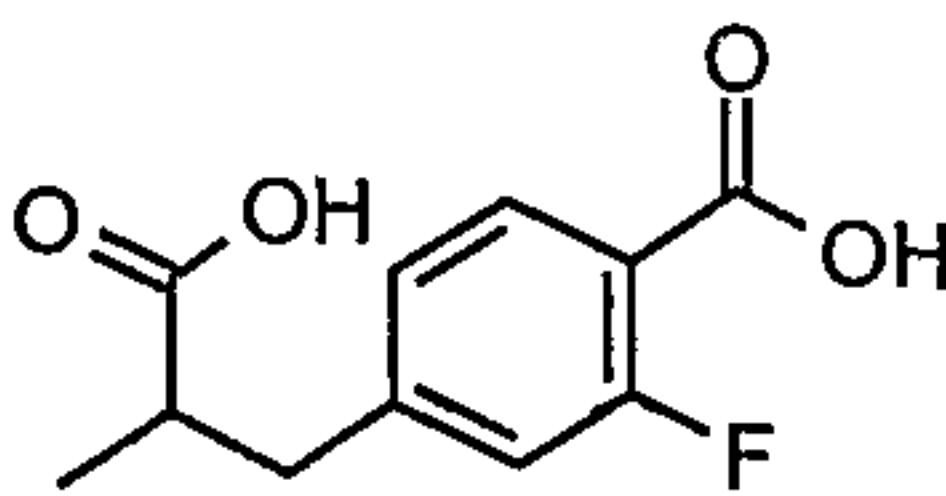
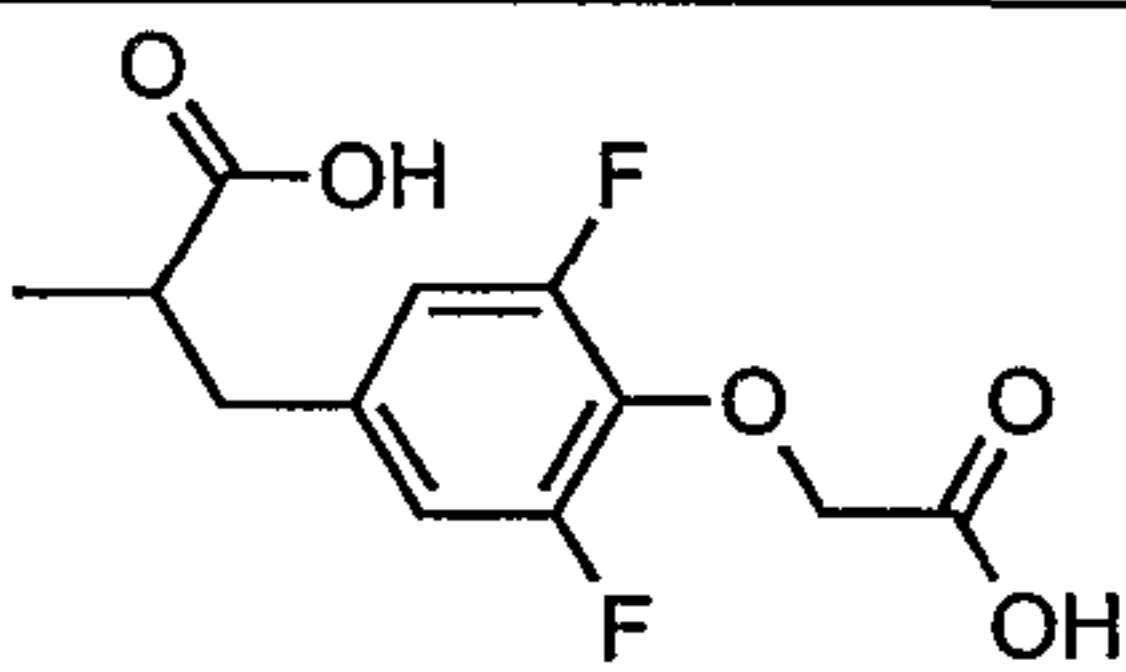
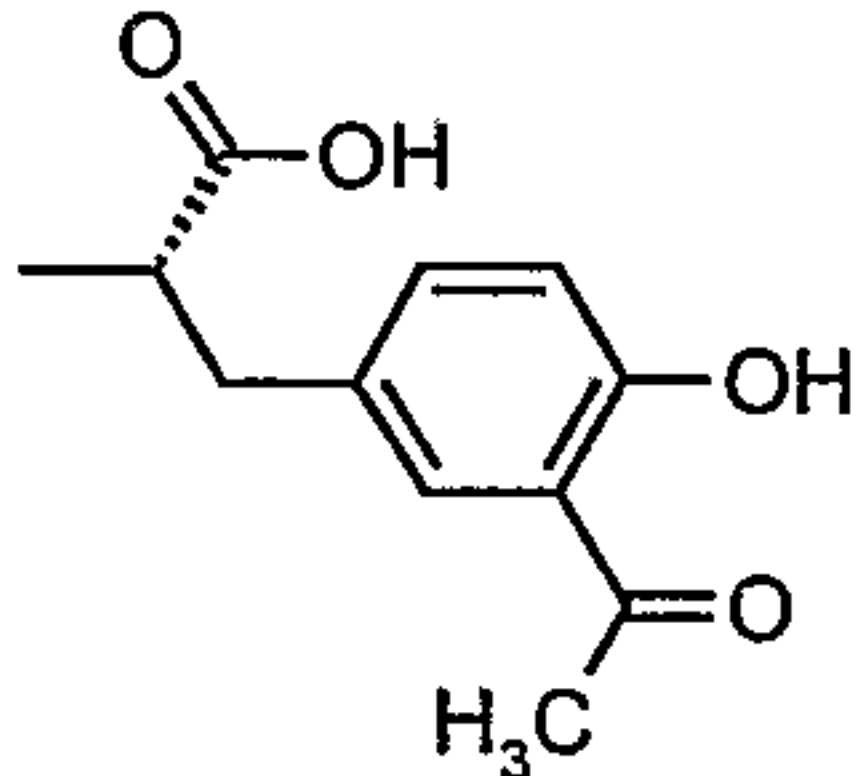
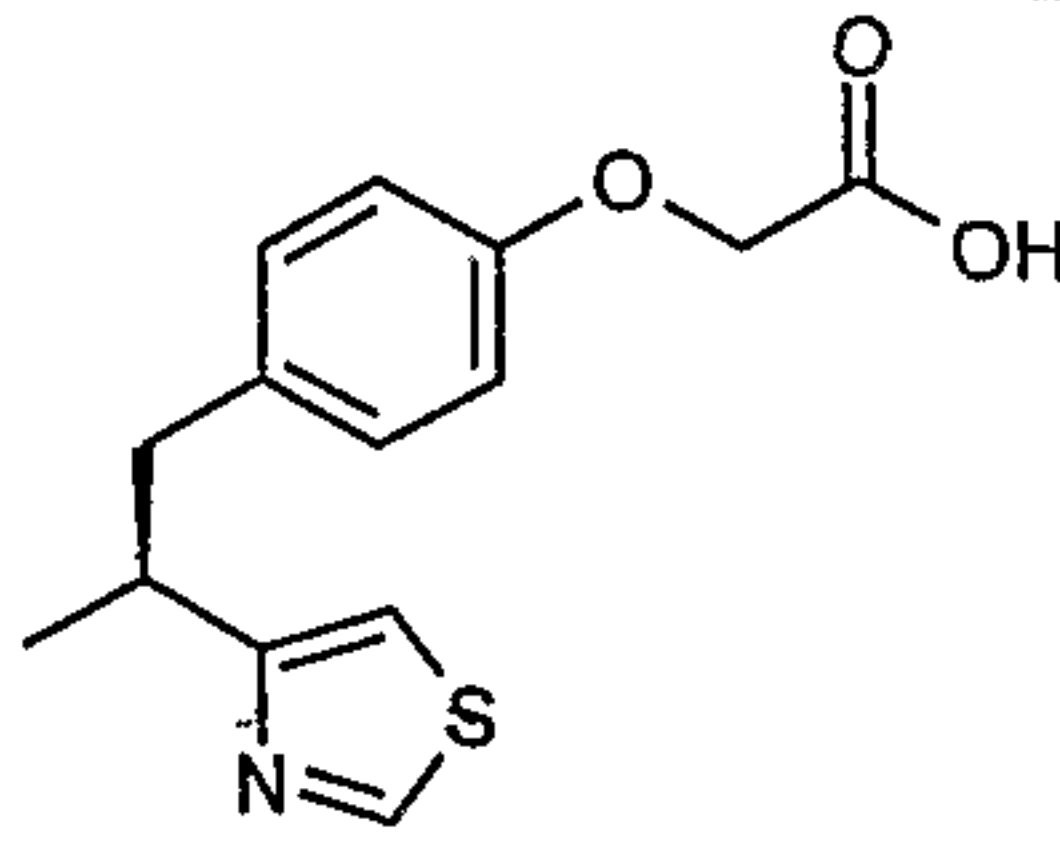
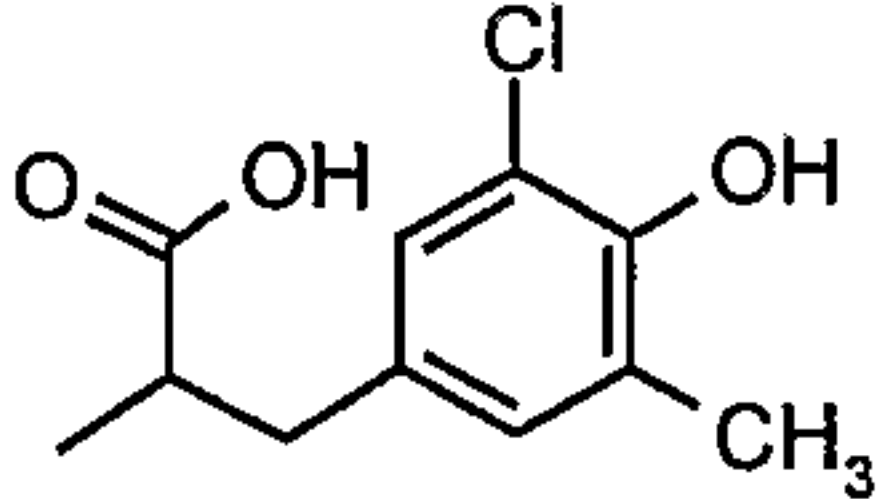
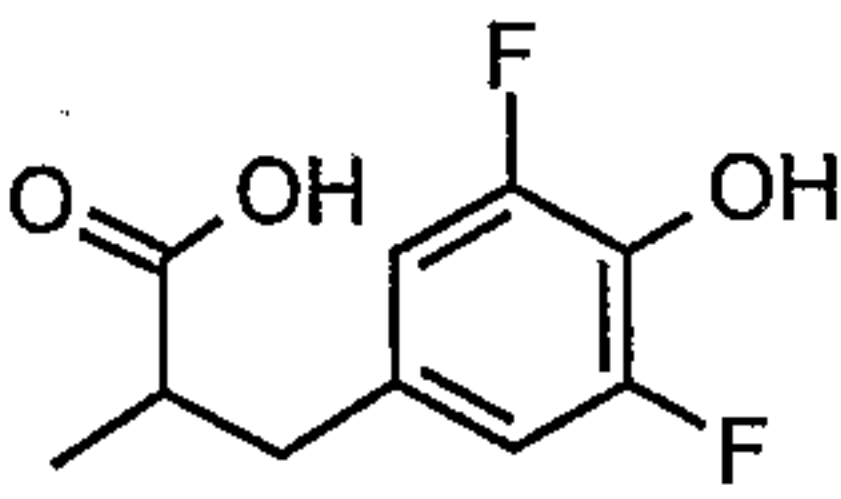
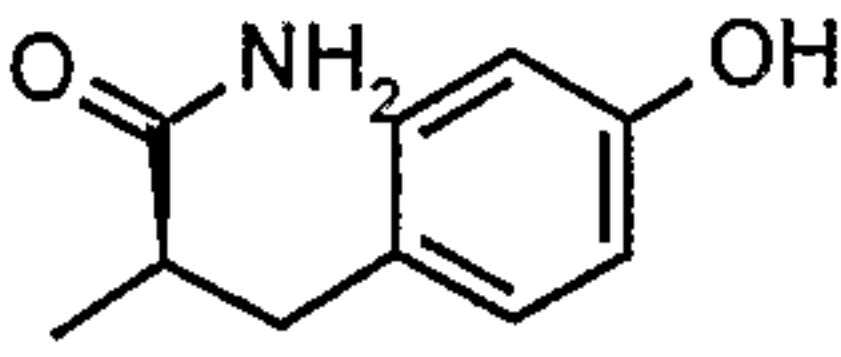
182

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1088	C		530(MH ⁺)
1089	C		472(MH ⁺)
1111	C		550(MH ⁺)
1112	C		564(MH ⁺)
1114	C		564(MH ⁺)
1117	C		544(MH ⁺)

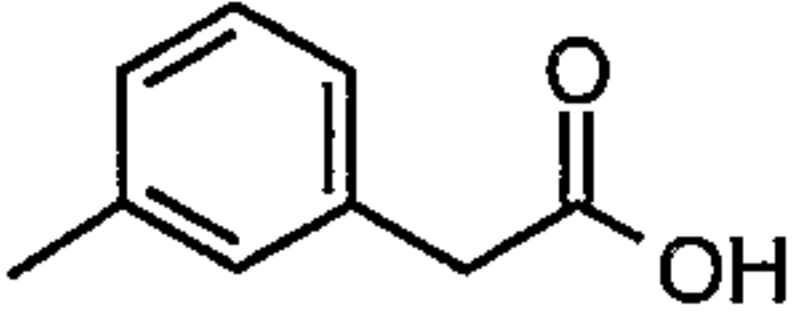
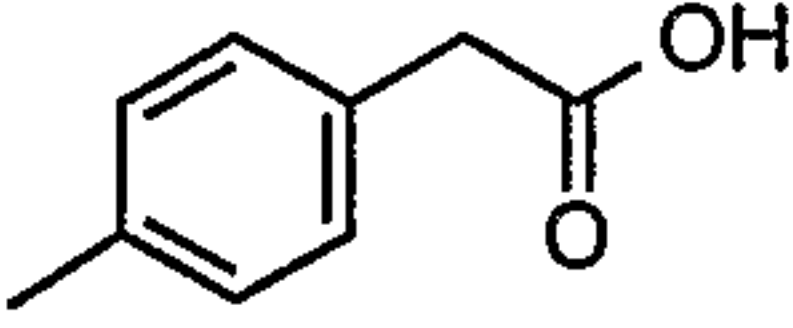
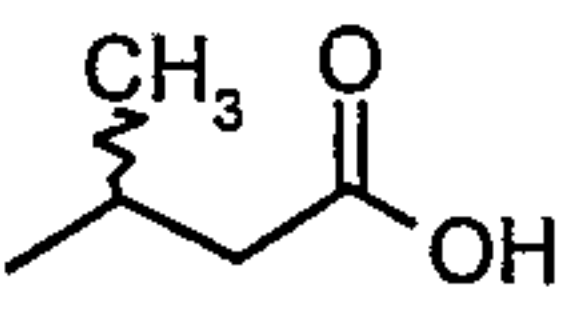
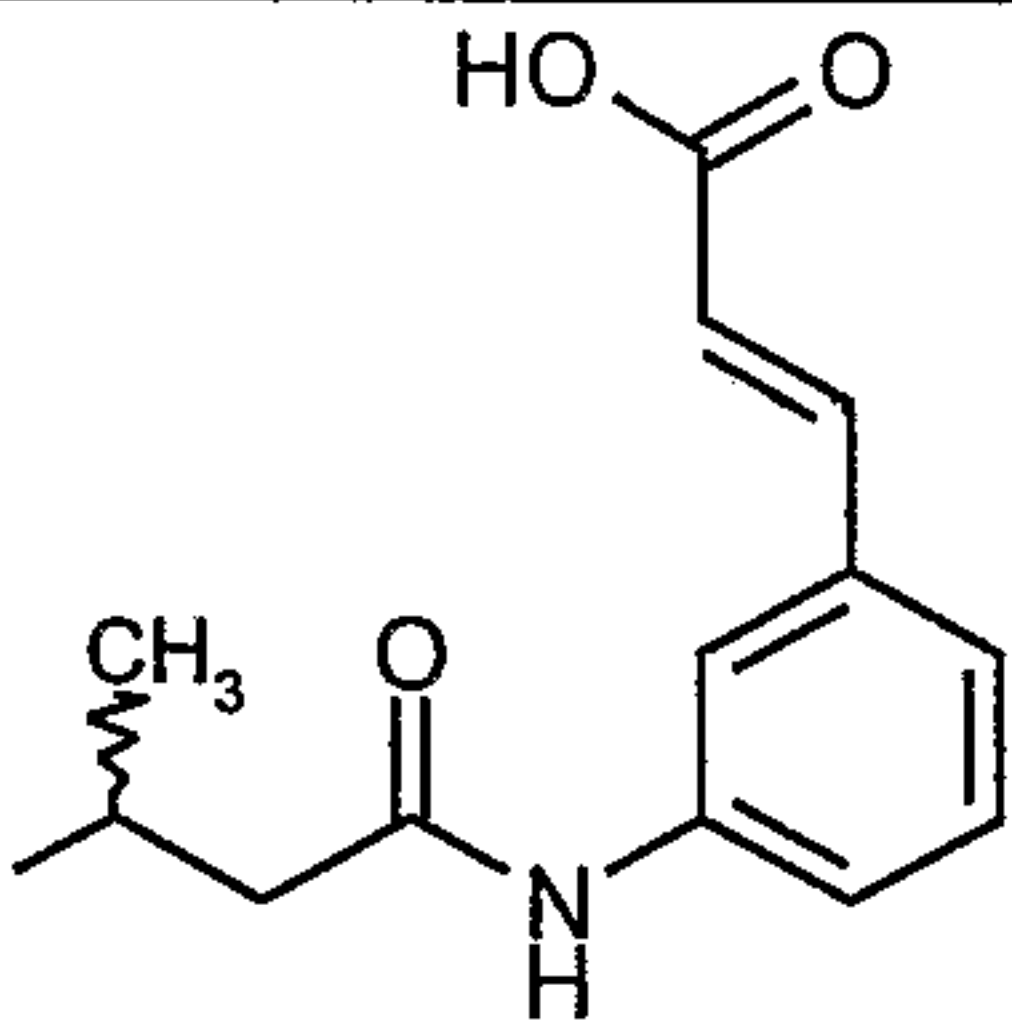
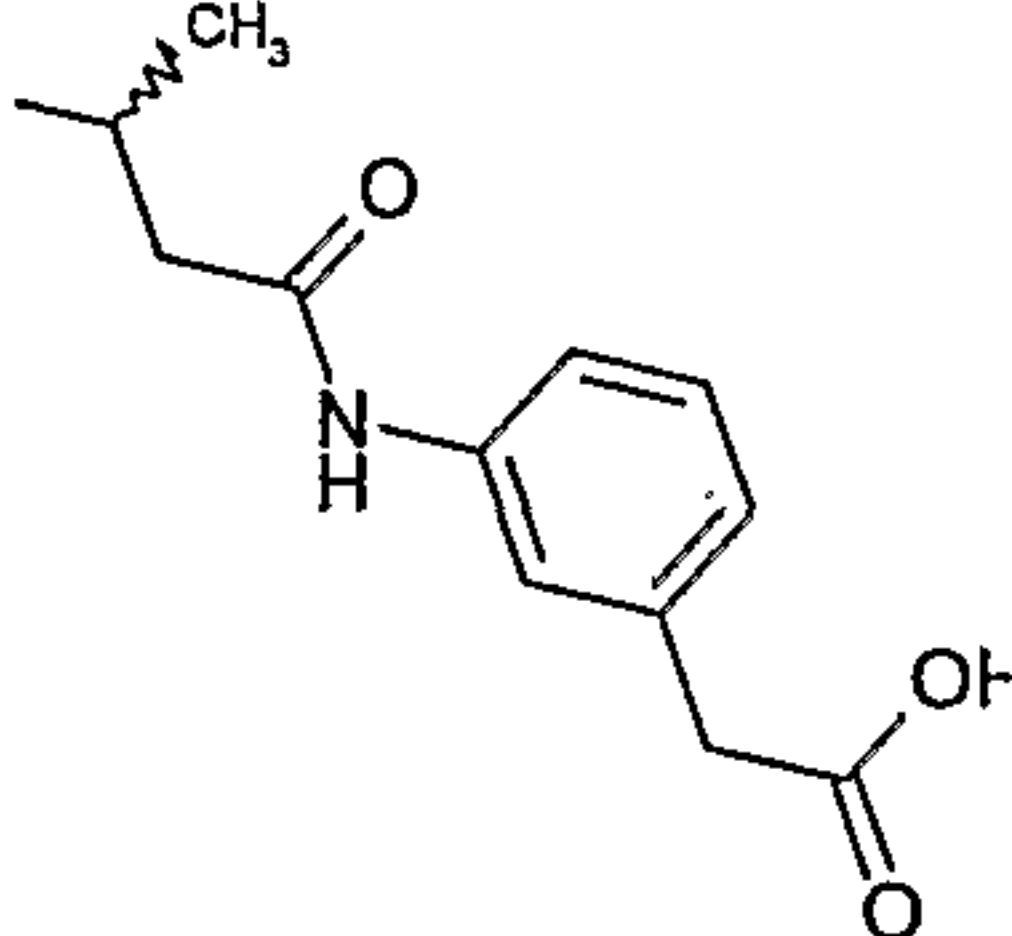
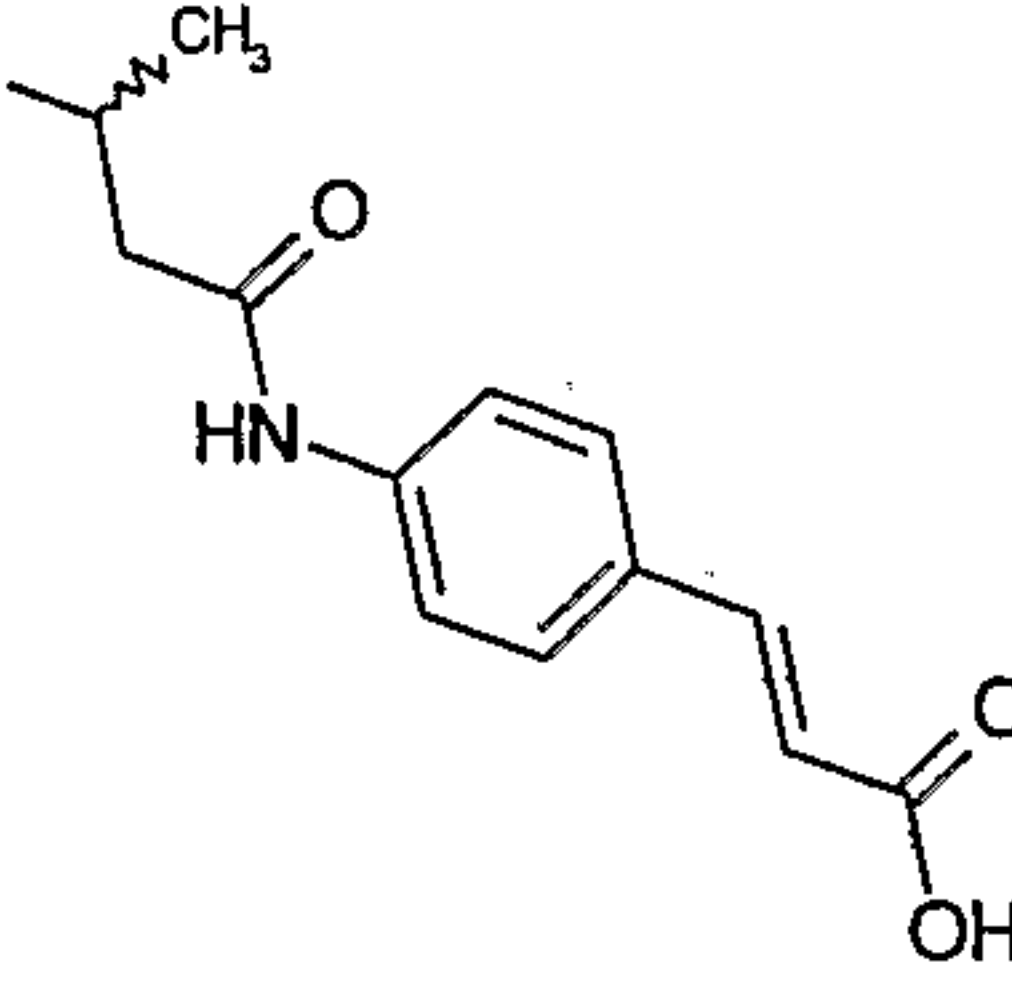
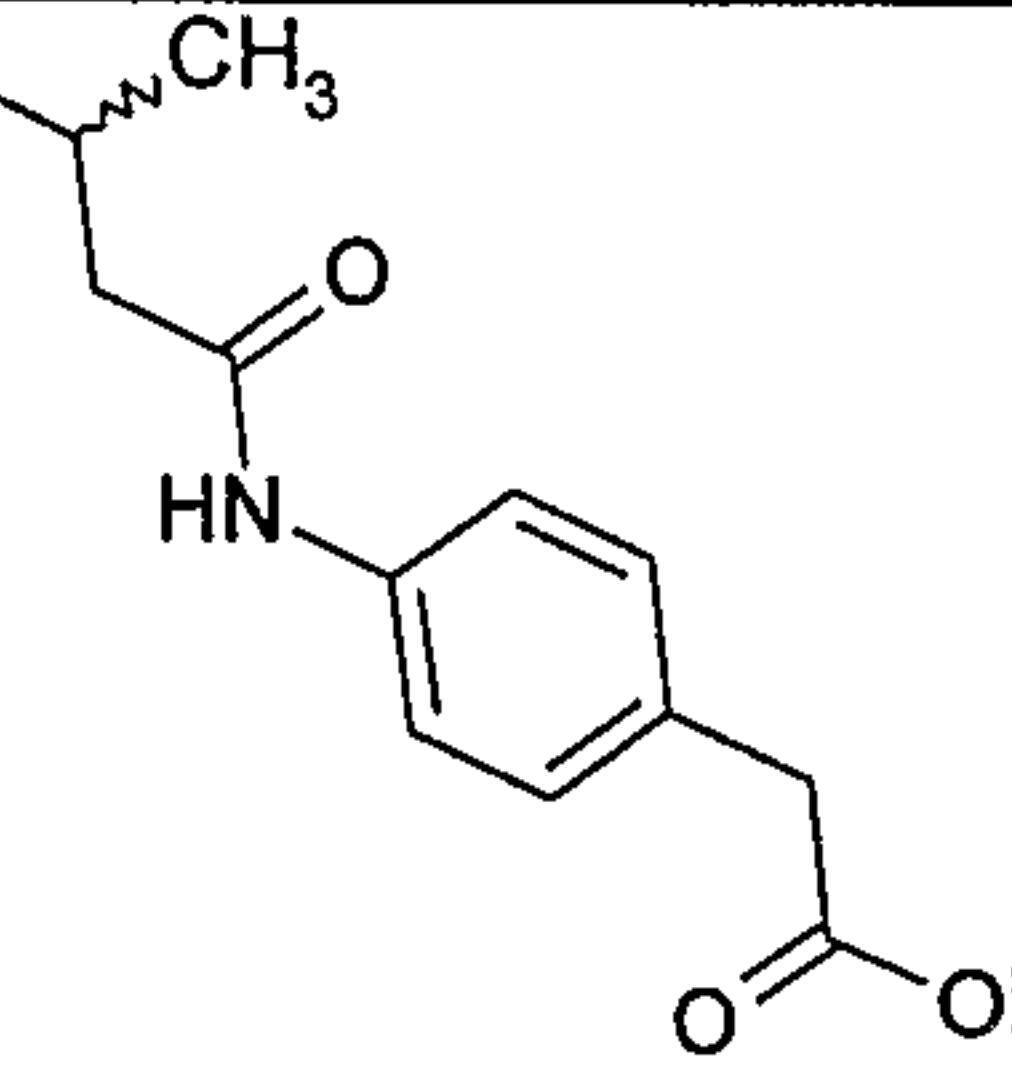
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1118	C		586(MH ⁺)
1119	C		518(MH ⁺)
1122	B		498(MH ⁺)
1123	C		556(MH ⁺)
1124	C		546(MH ⁺)
1125	C		540(MH ⁺)
1126	C		540(MH ⁺)

184

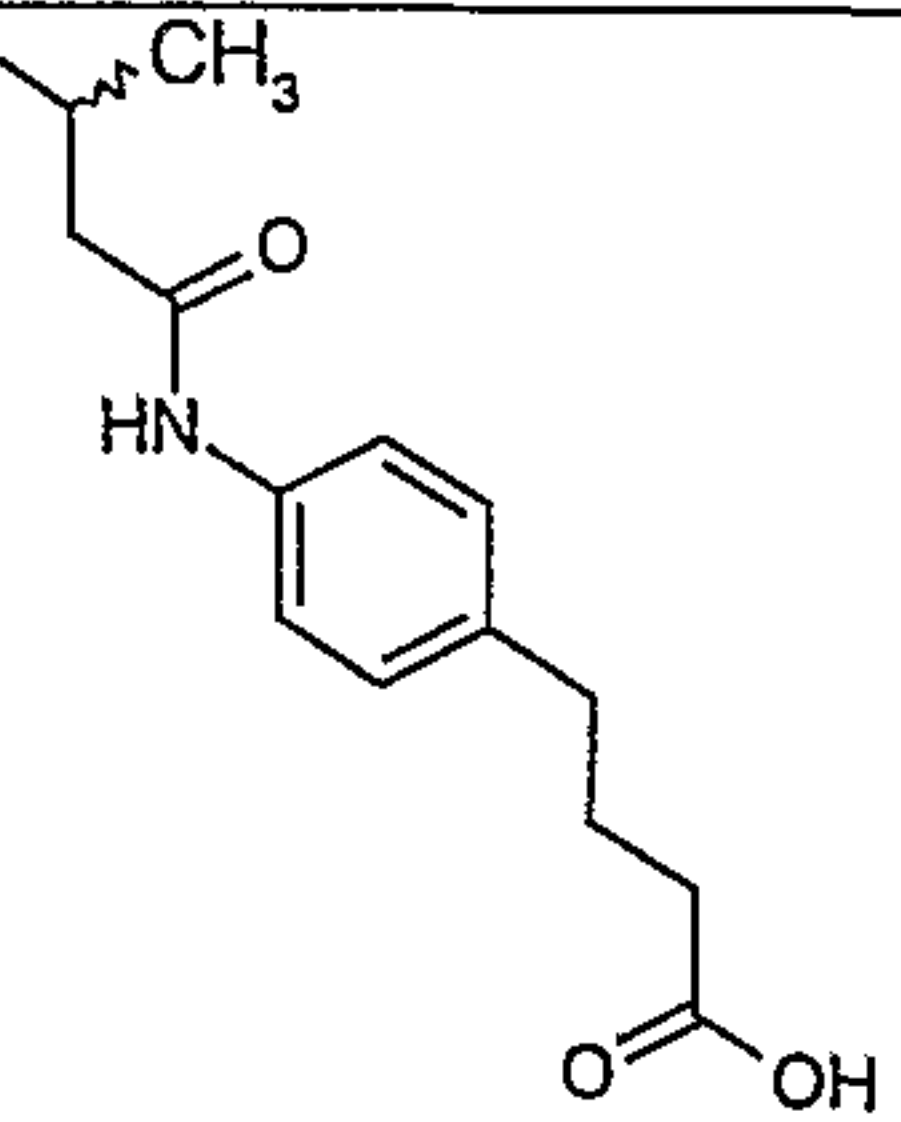
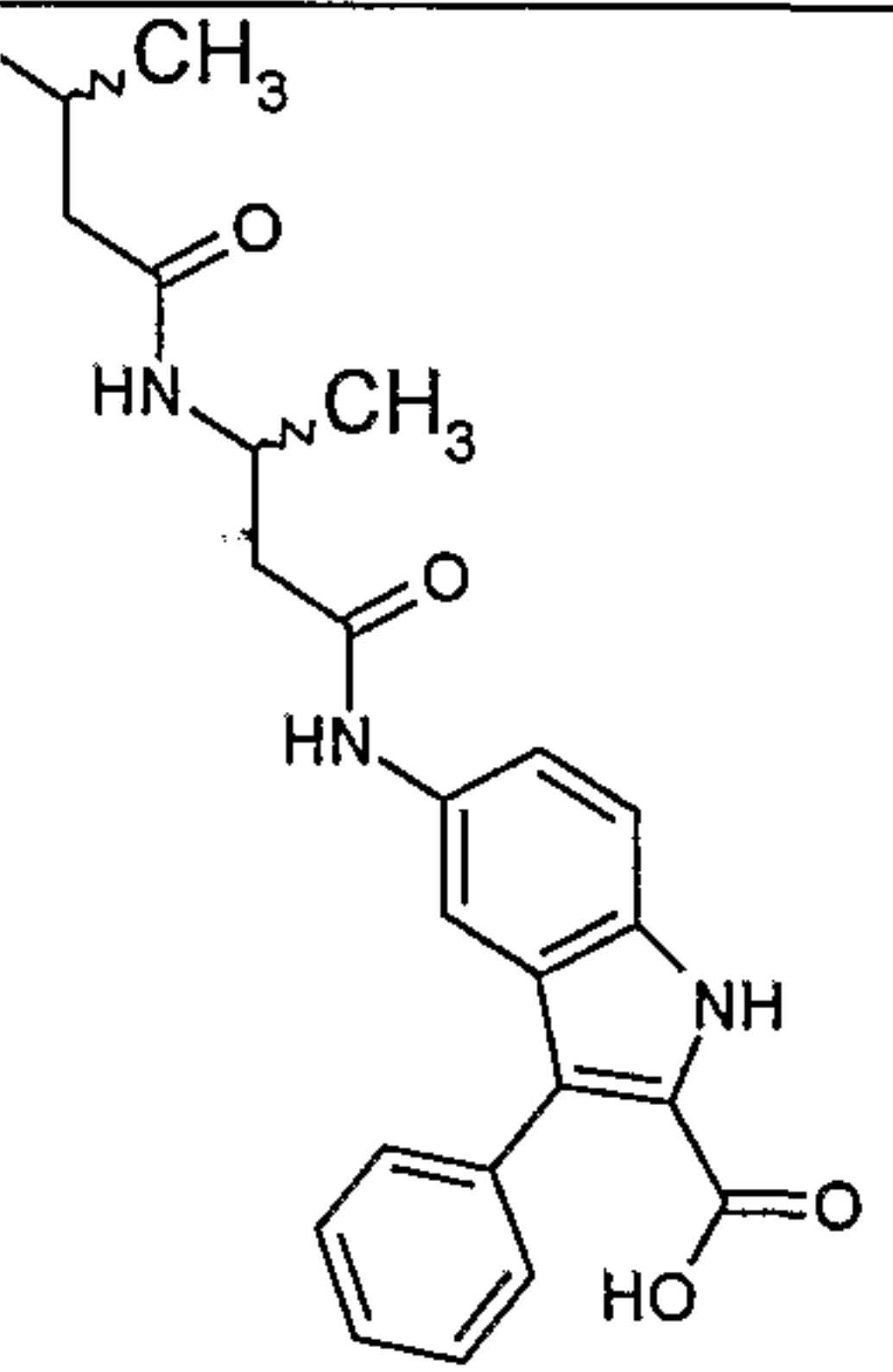
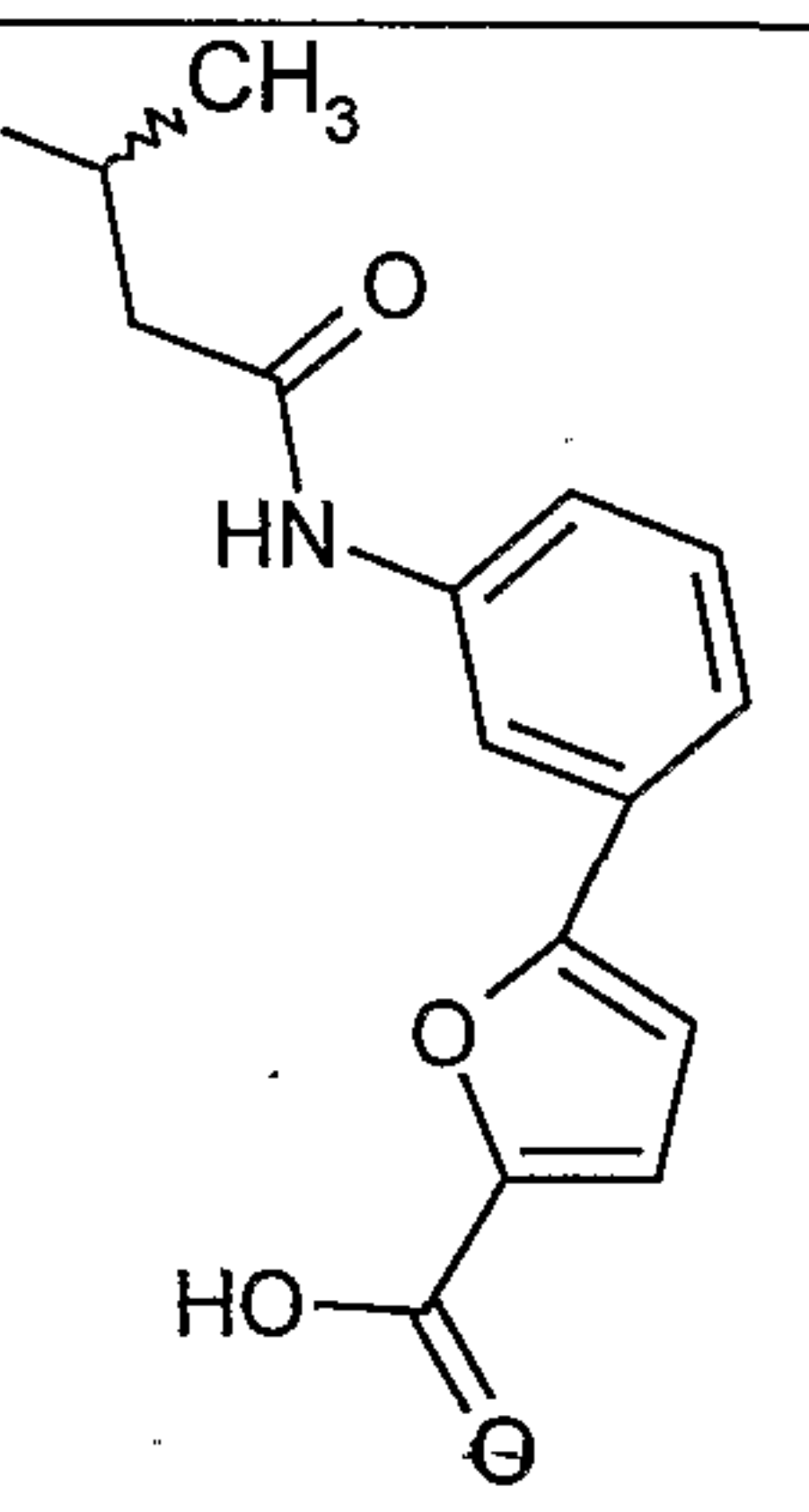
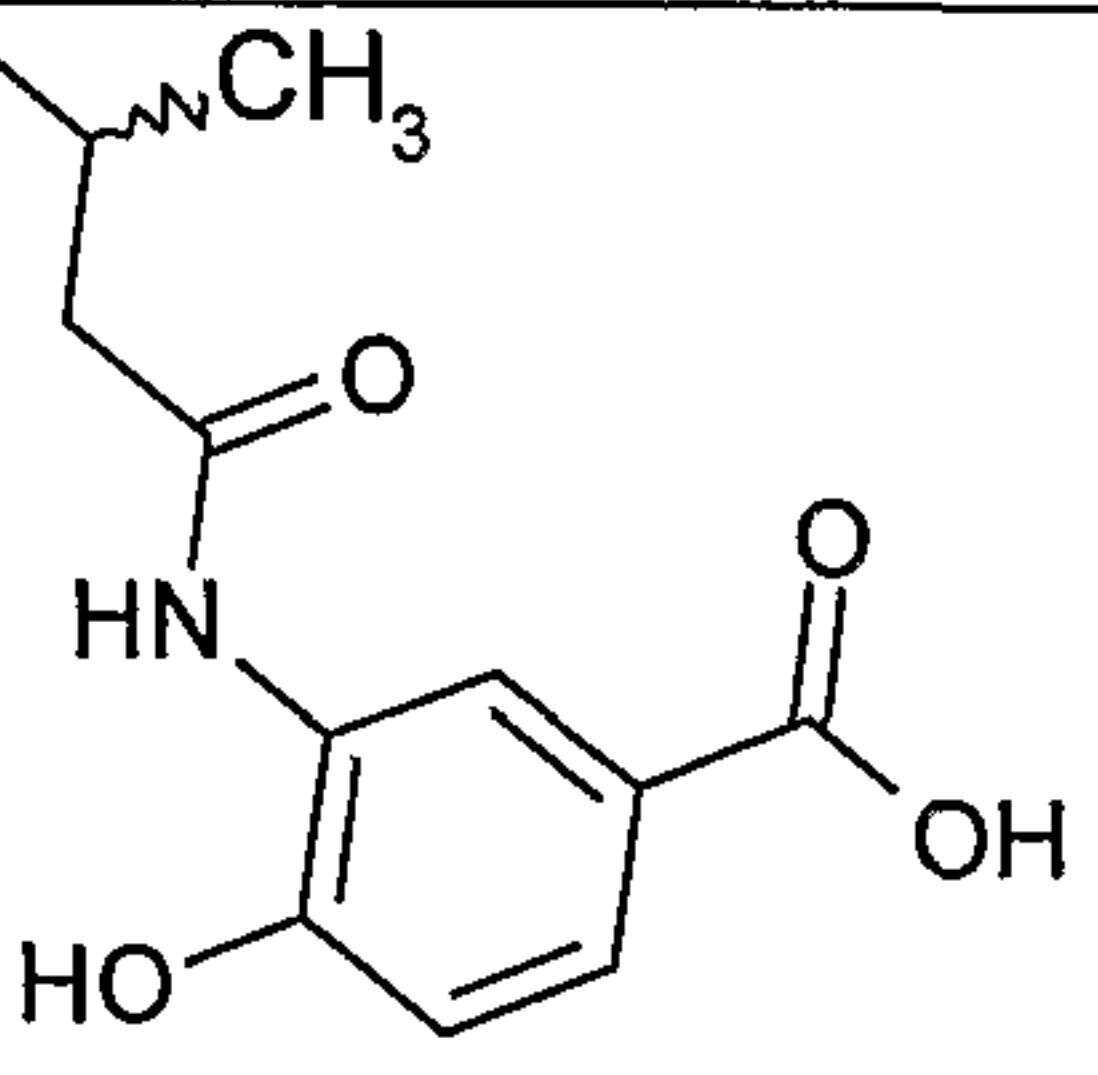
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1131	C		585(MH ⁺)
1133	C		628(MH ⁺)
1134	C		628(MH ⁺)
1140	C		600(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1141	C		614(MH ⁺)
1142	C		520(MH ⁺)
1144	C		568(MH ⁺)
1147	C		516(MH ⁺)
1150	C		571(MH ⁺)
1152	C		522(MH ⁺)
1153	C		510(MH ⁺)
1156	B		473(MH ⁺)

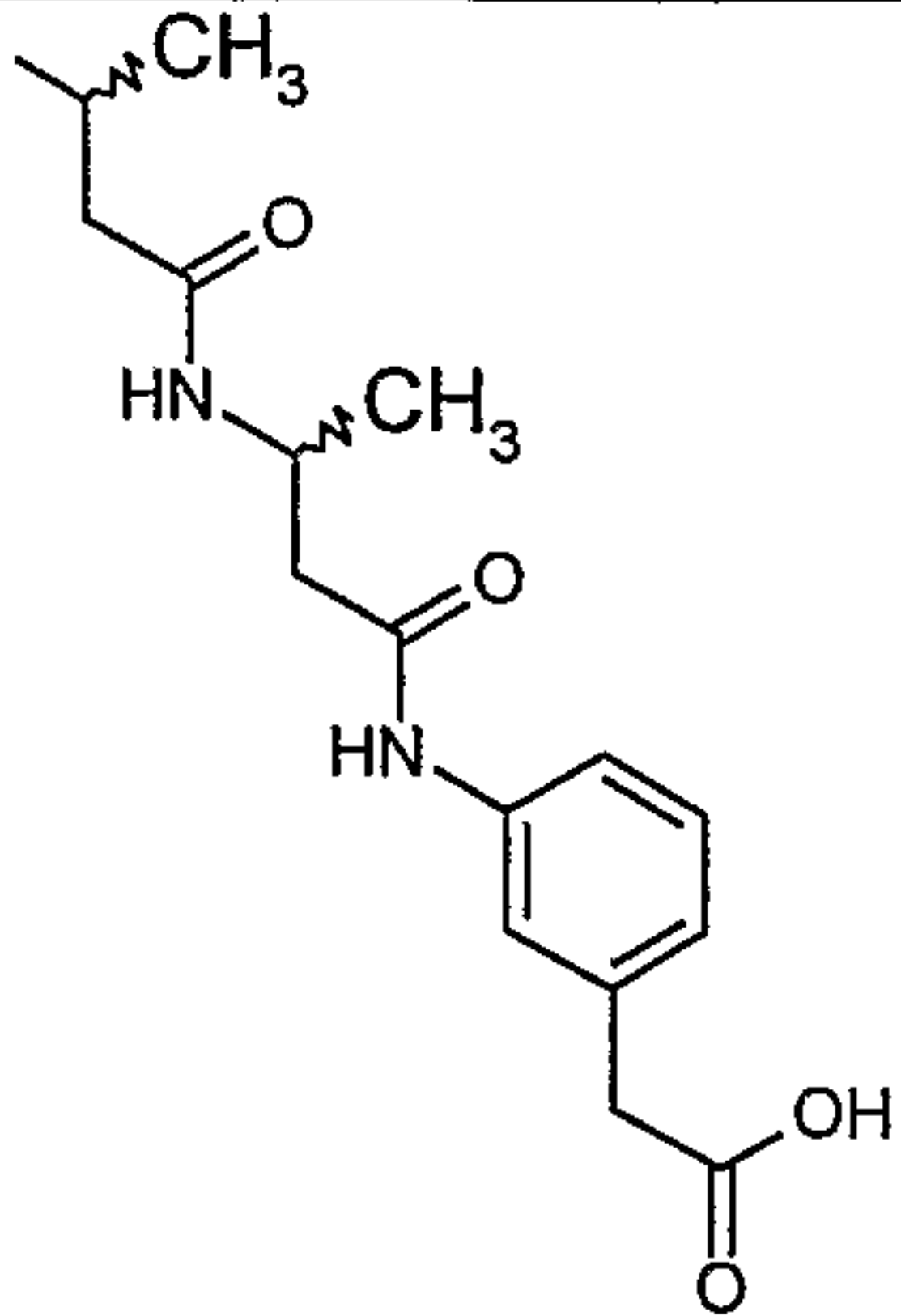
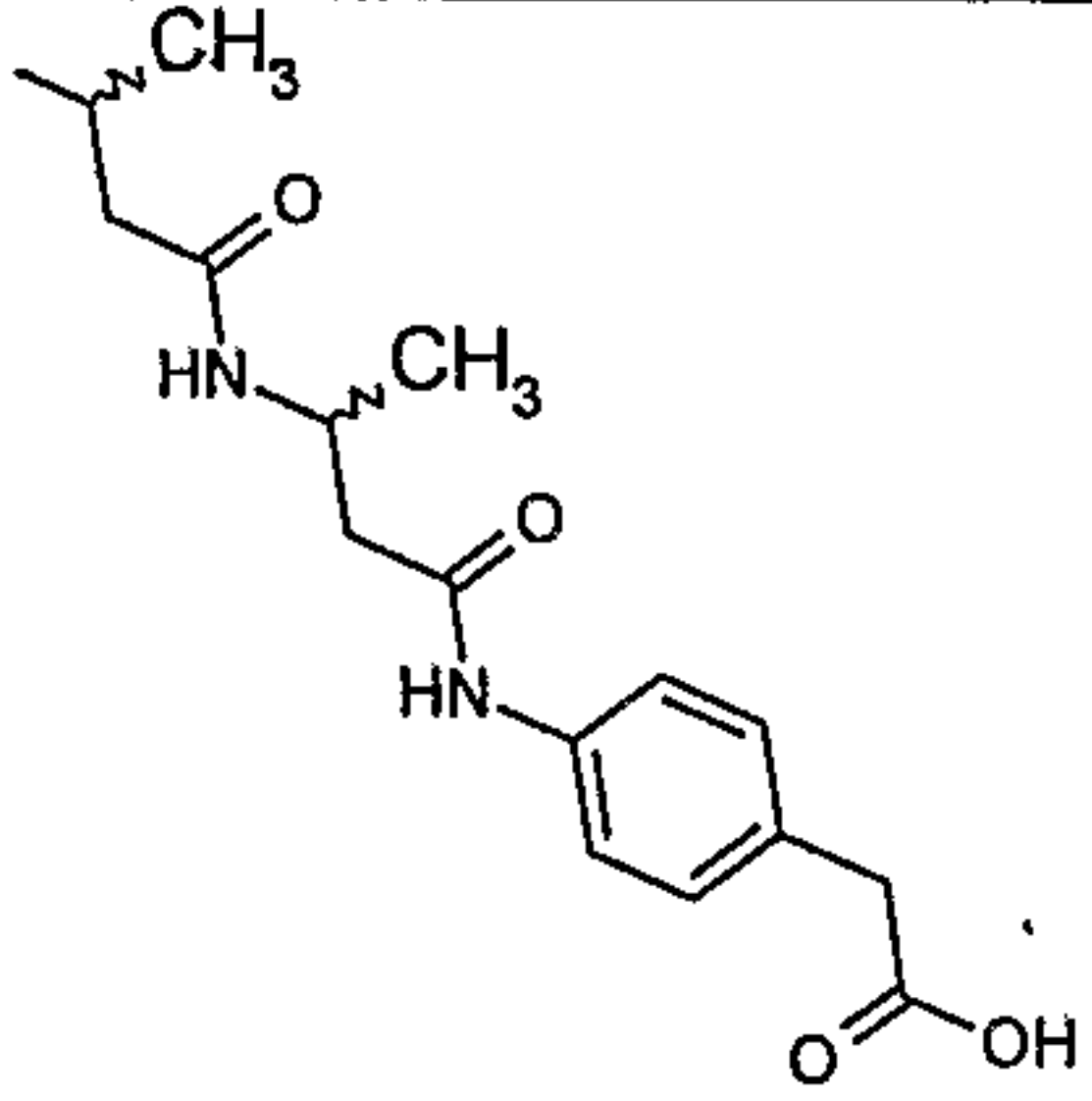
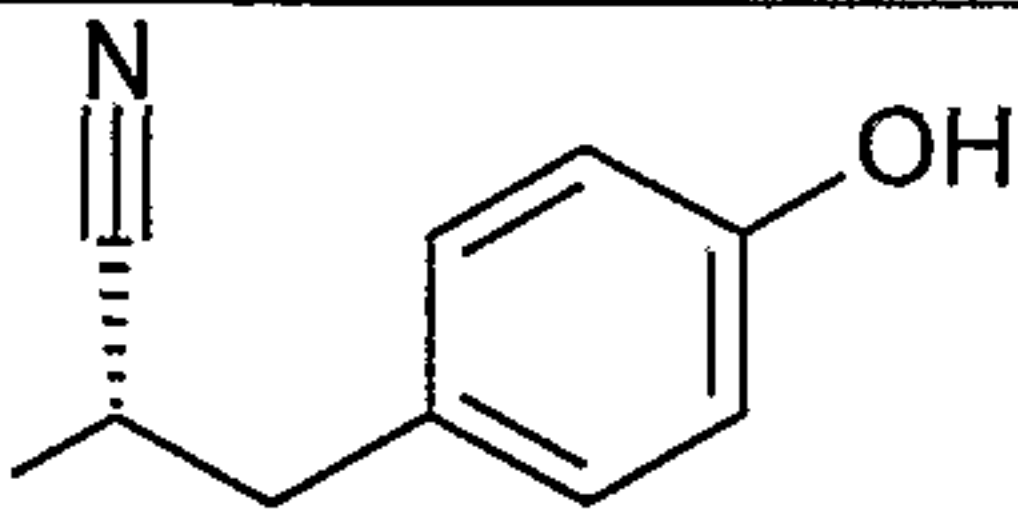
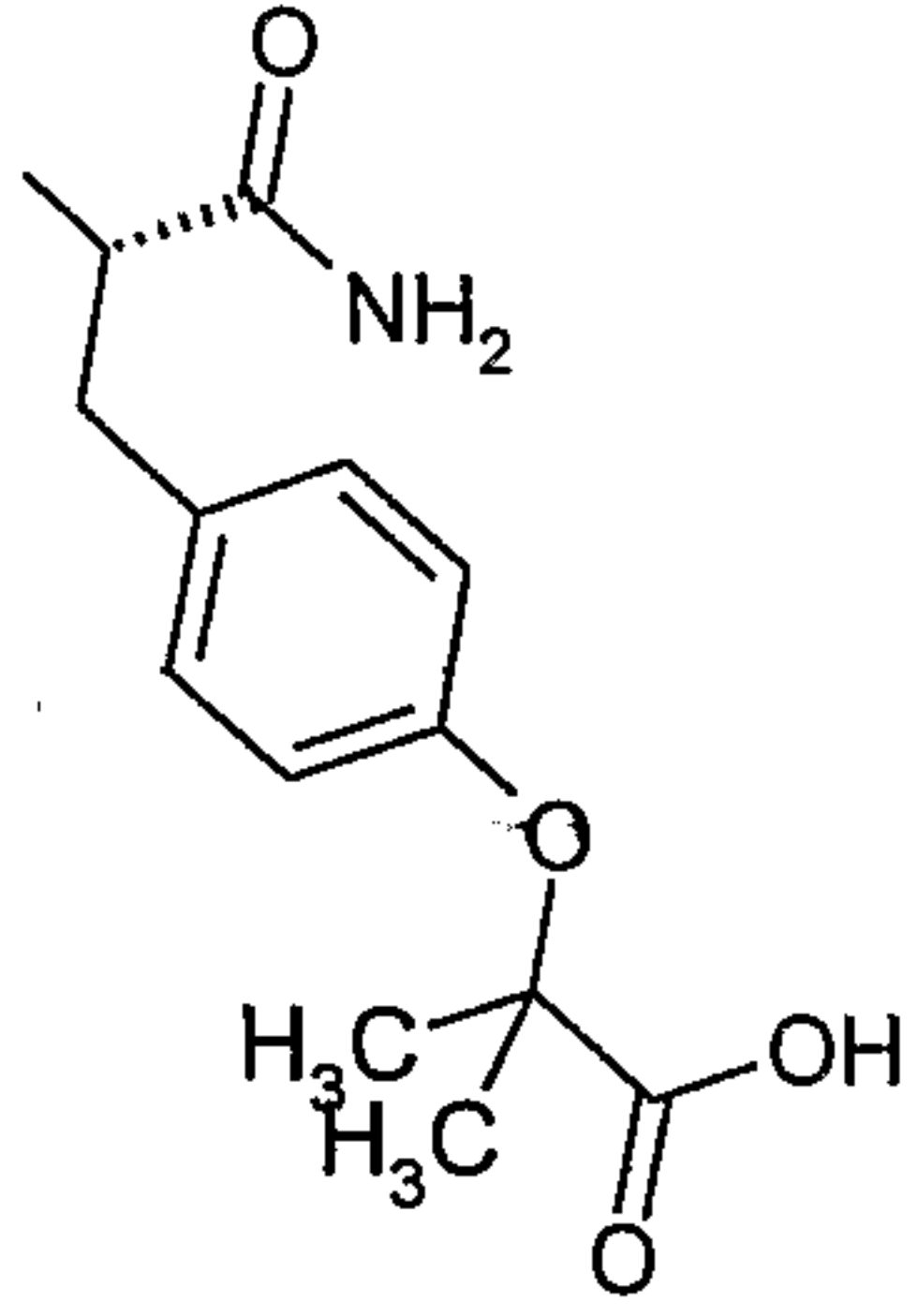
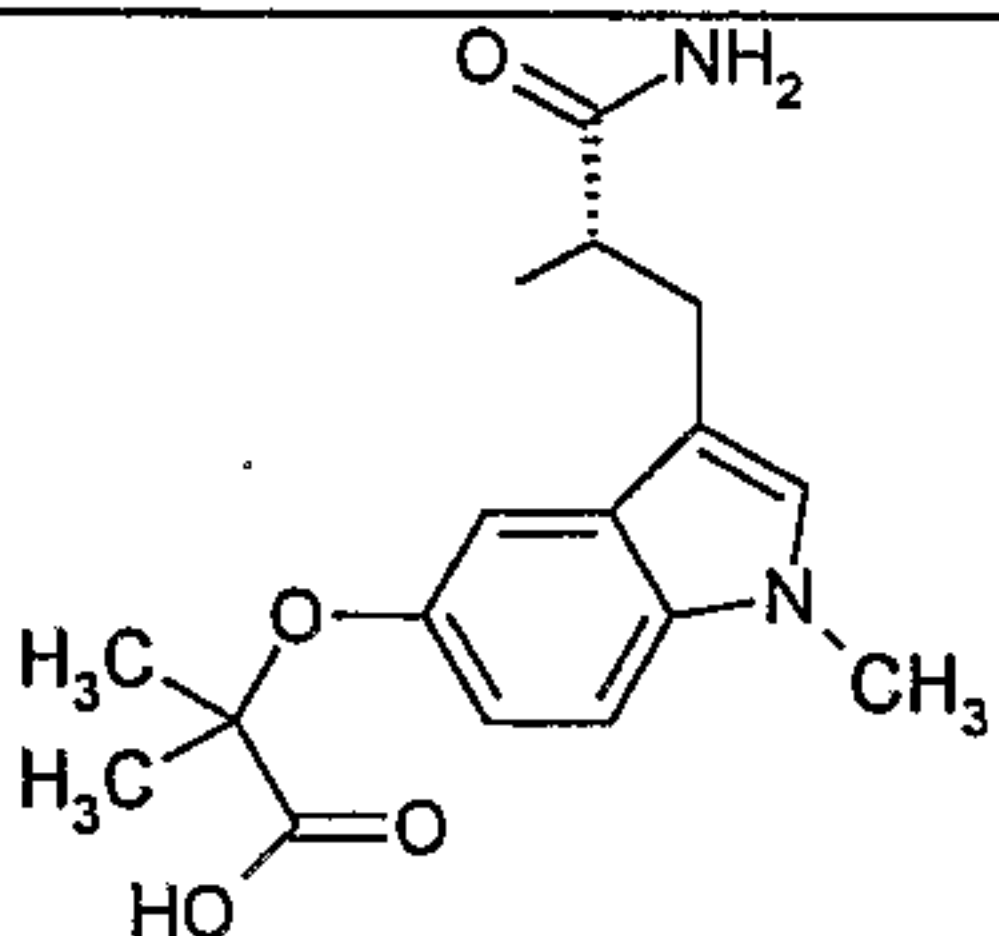
186

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1157	A		442.2(MH ⁺)
1158	A		442.2(MH ⁺)
1159	A		396.1(MH ⁺)
1160	C		541.2(MH ⁺)
1161	C		529.2(MH ⁺)
1162	C		541.2(MH ⁺)
1163	B		529.3(MH ⁺)

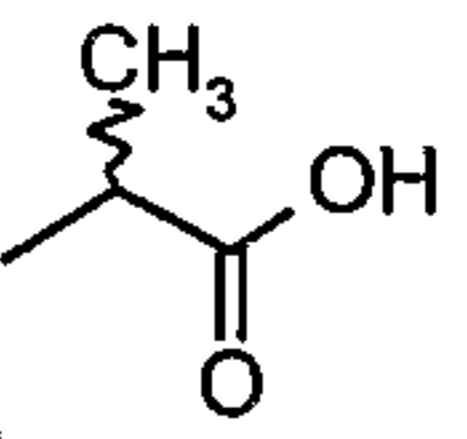
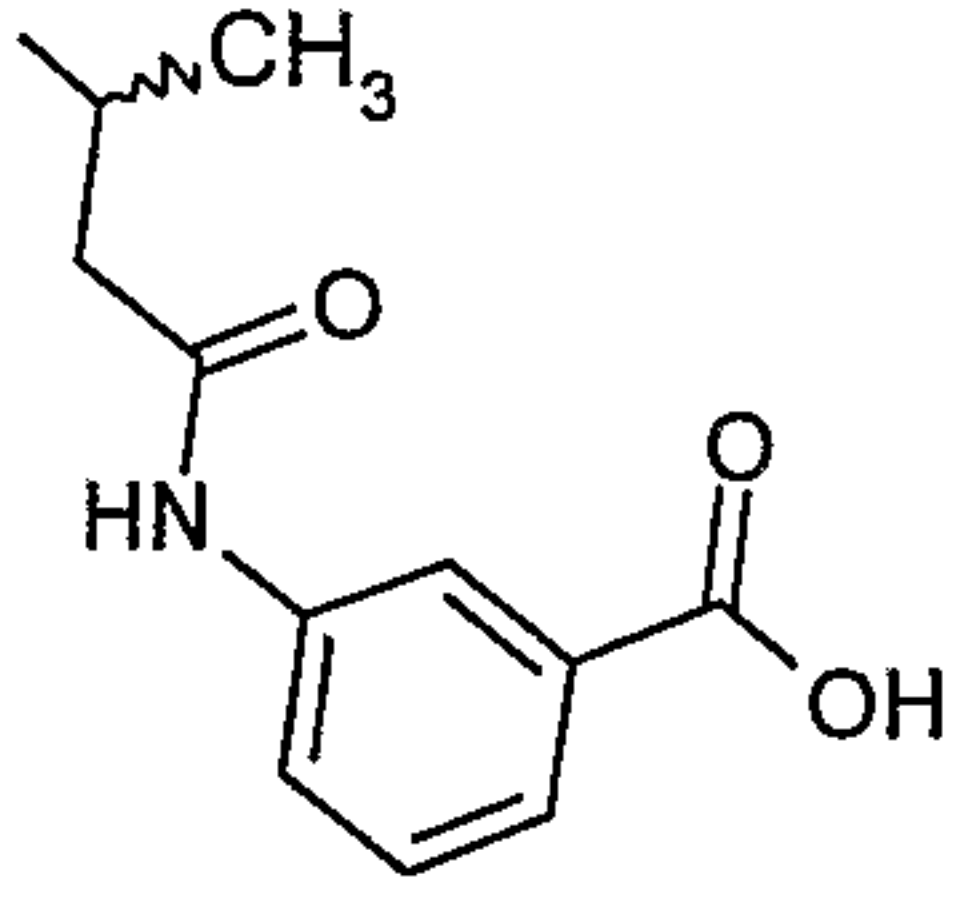
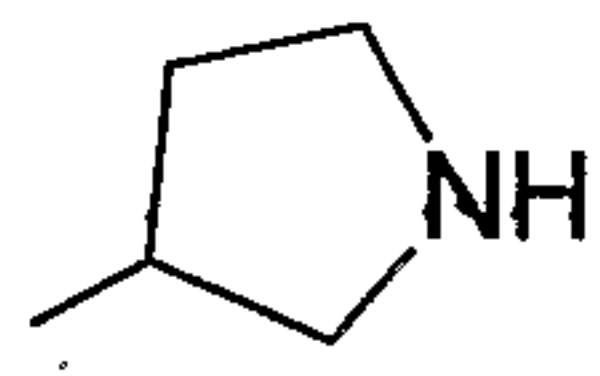
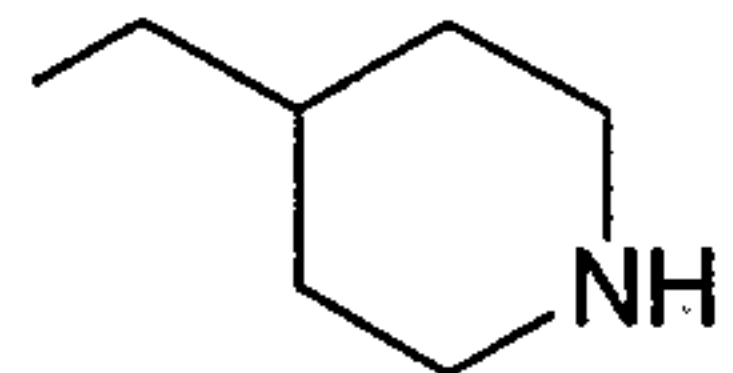
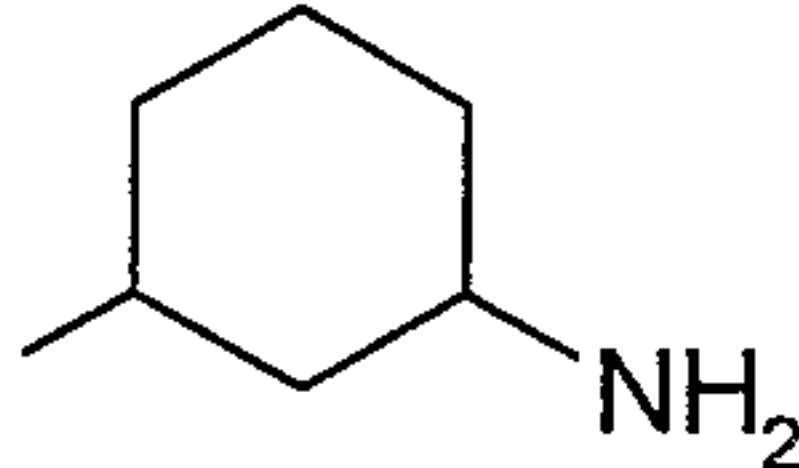
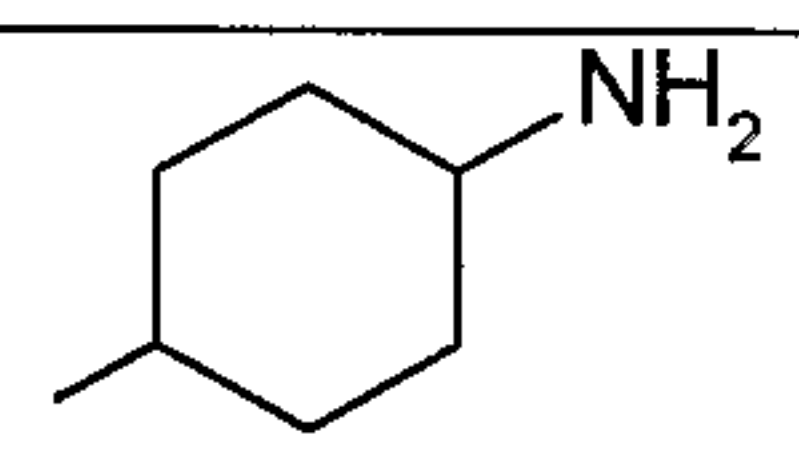
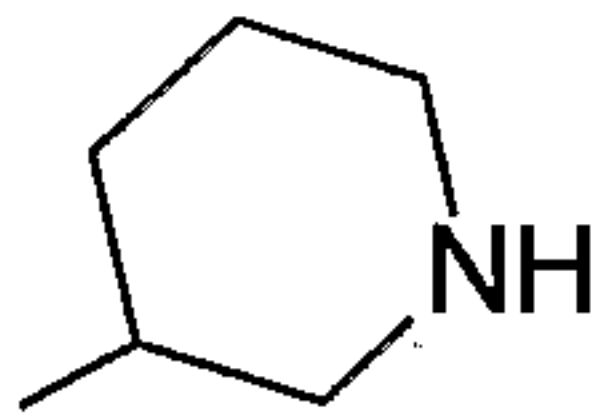
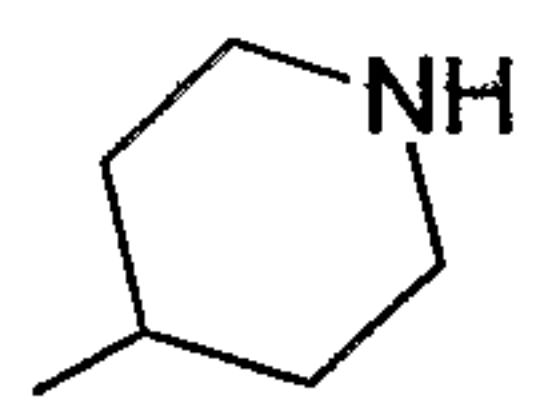
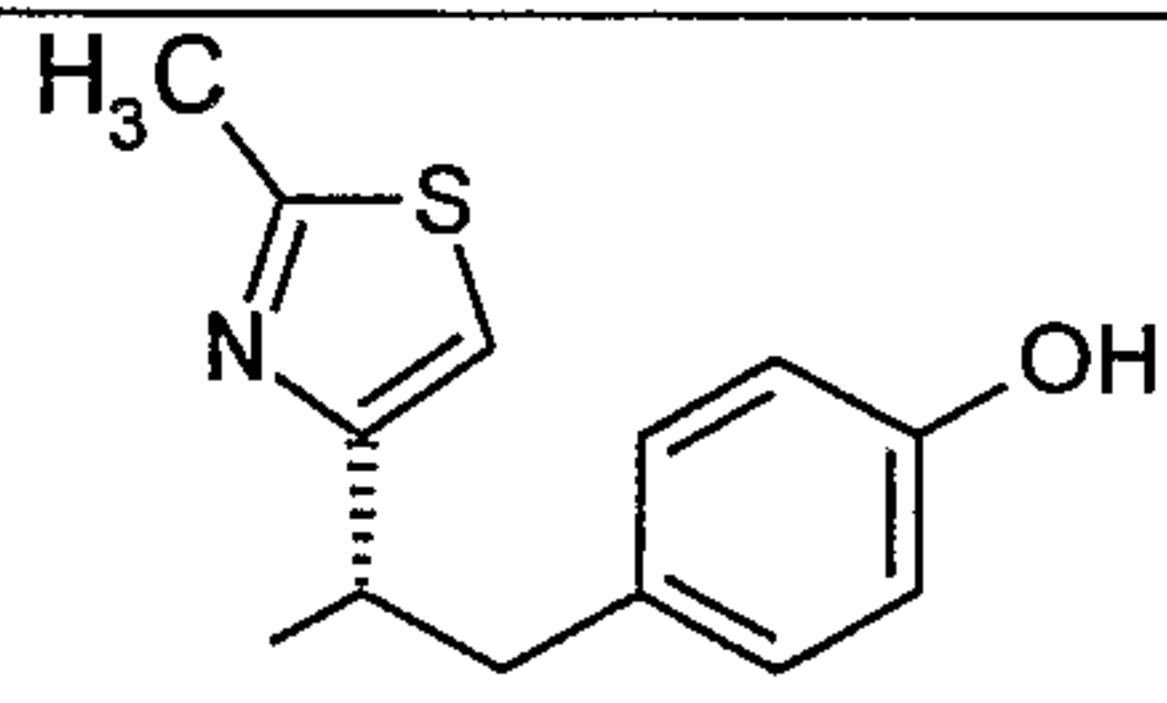
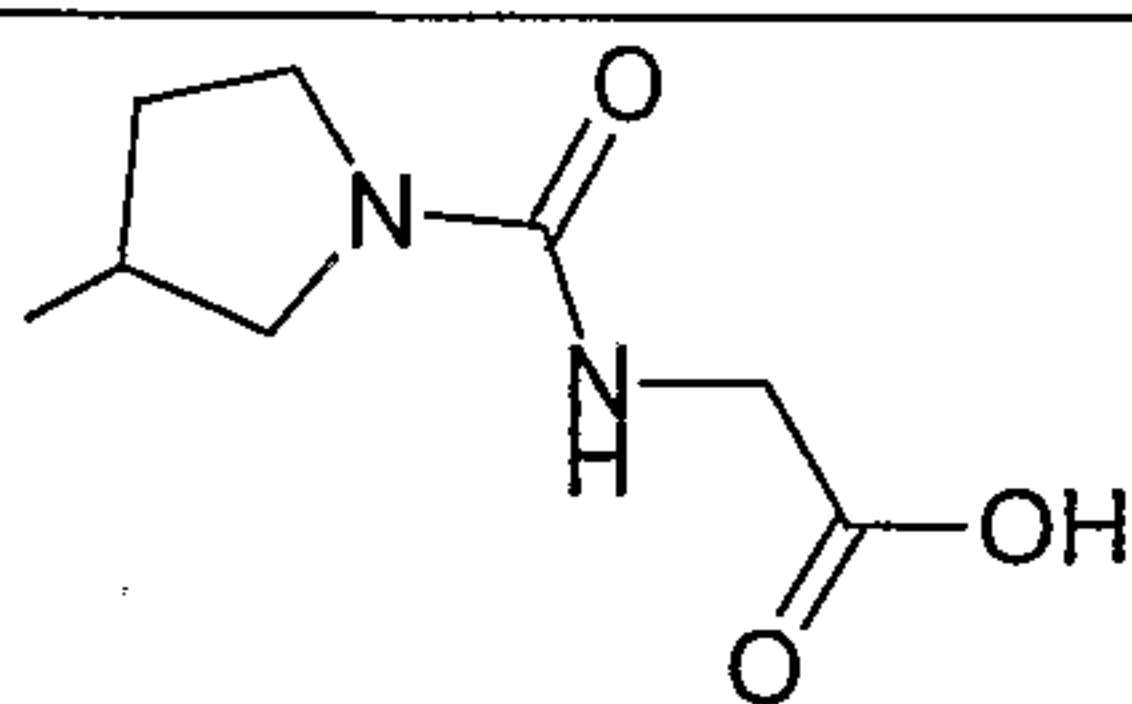
187

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1164	A		557.3(MH ⁺)
1165	A		715.3(MH ⁺)
1166	B		581.3(MH ⁺)
1167	C		531.2(MH ⁺)

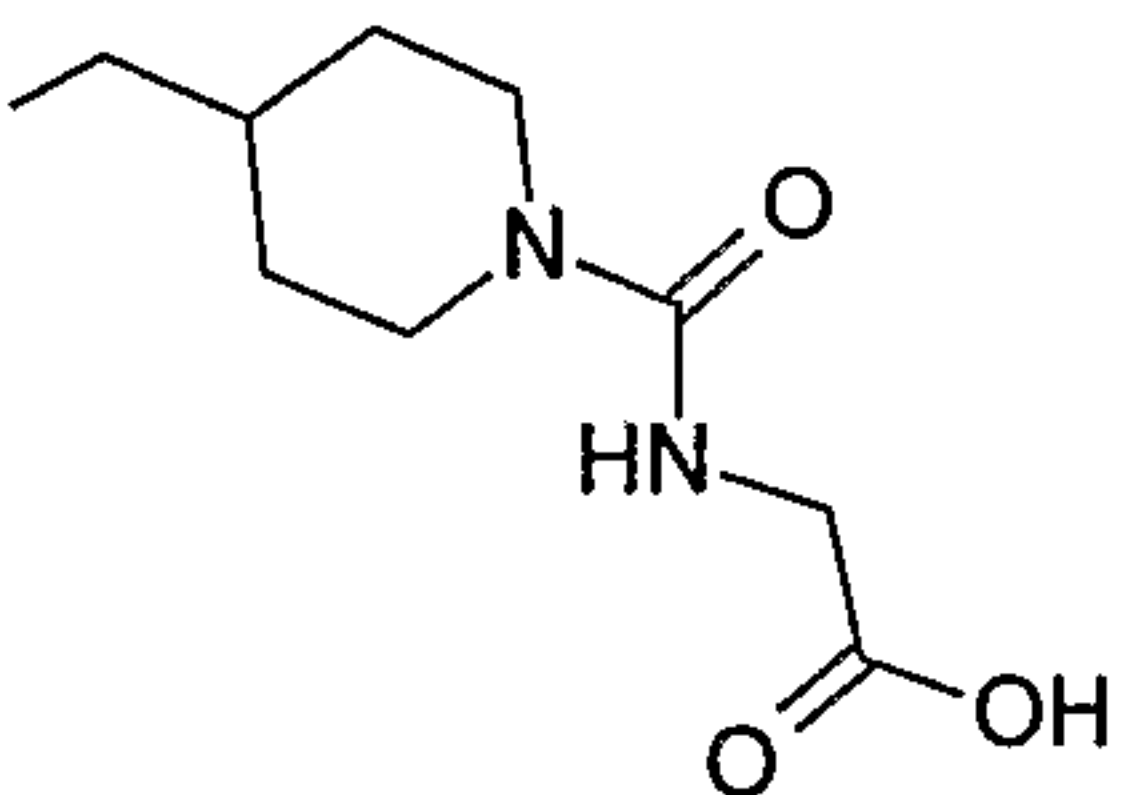
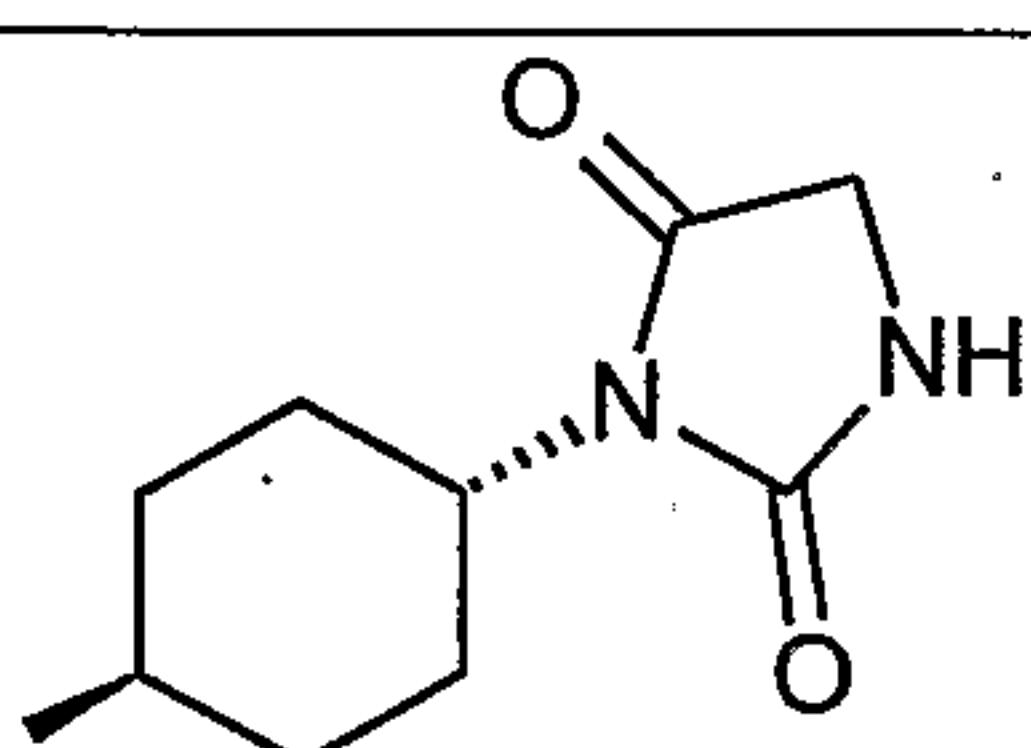
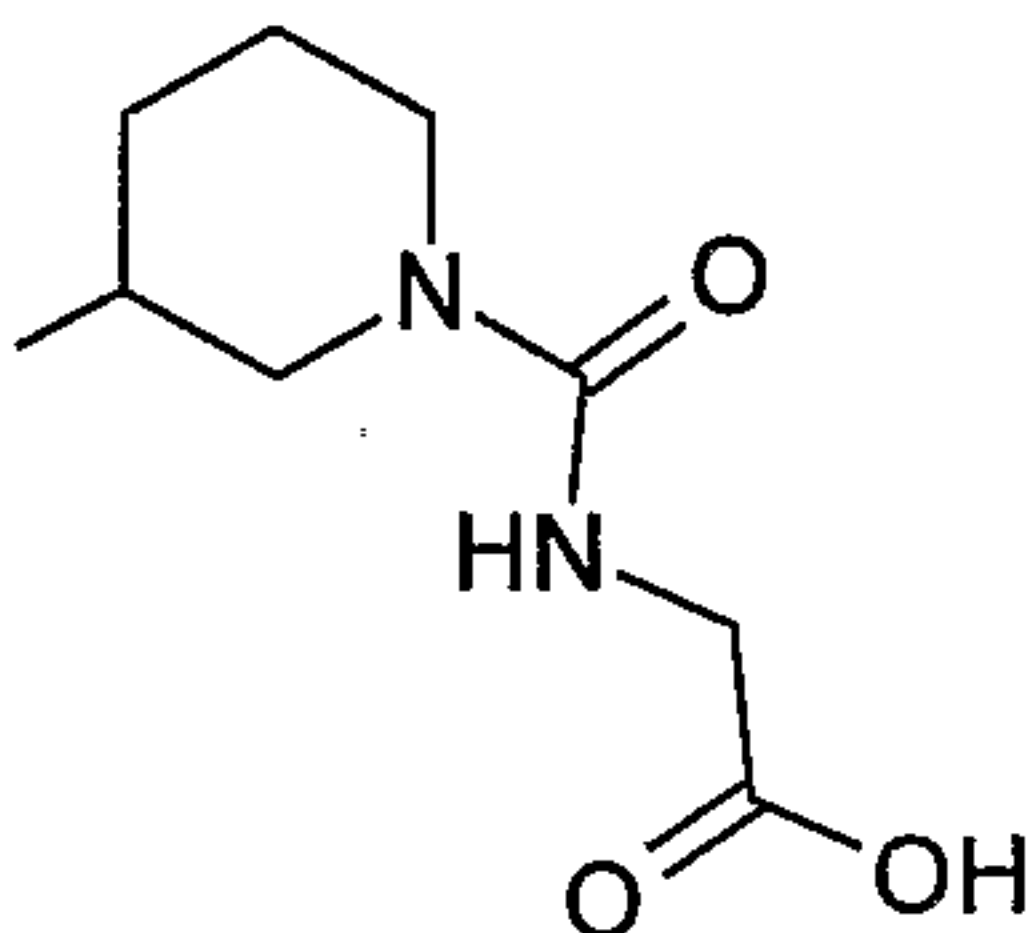
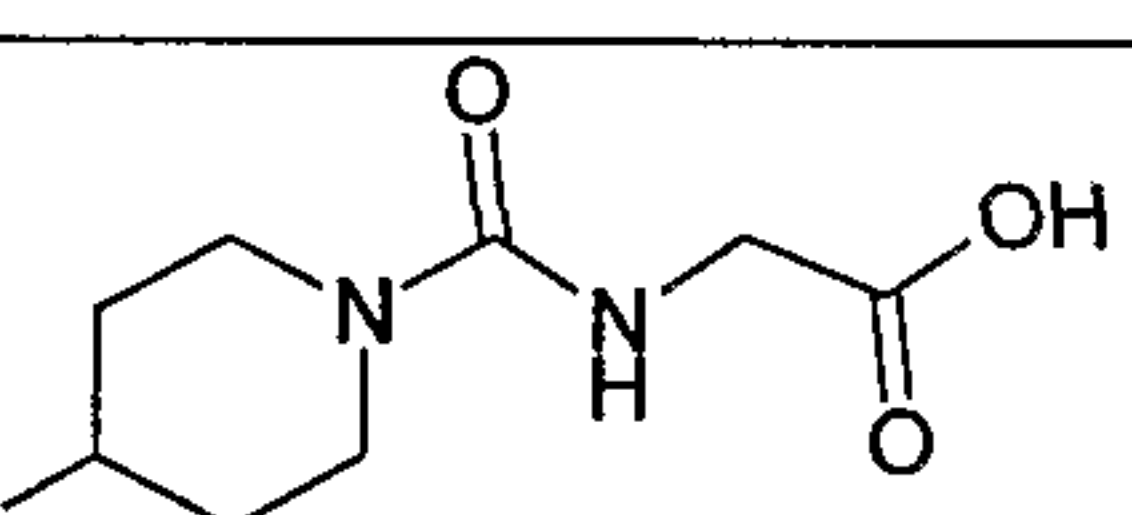
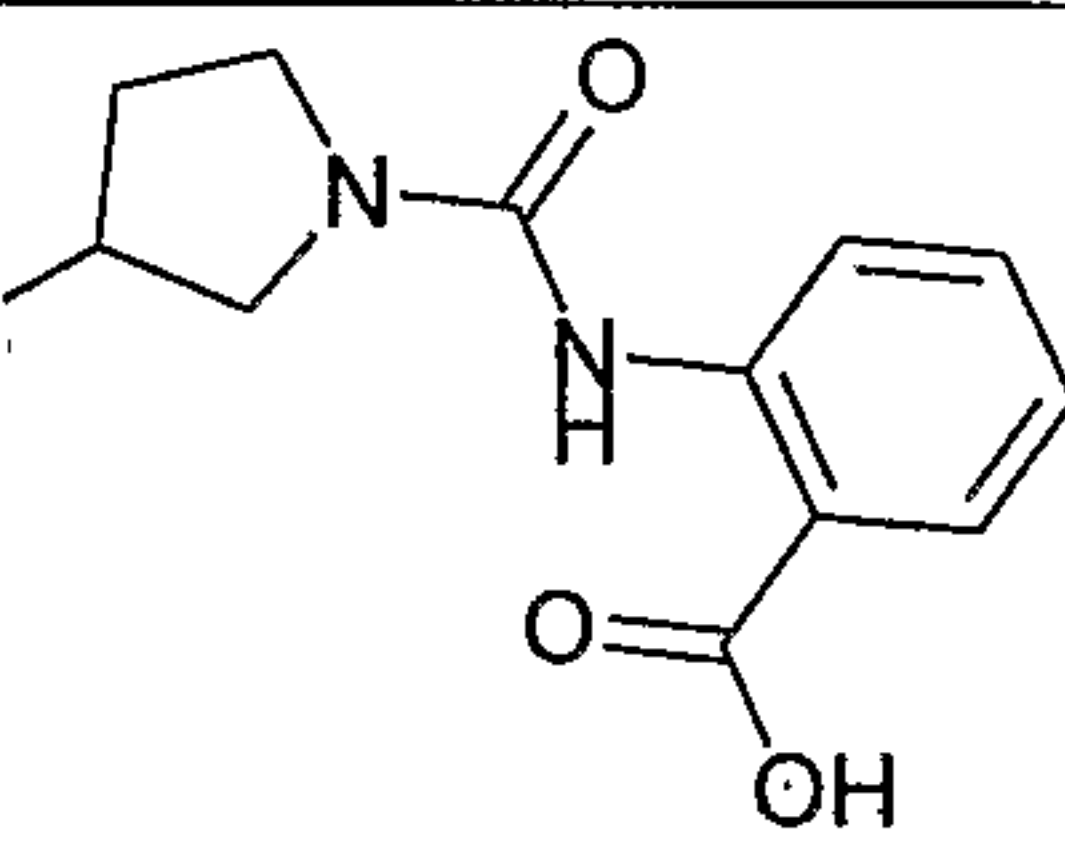
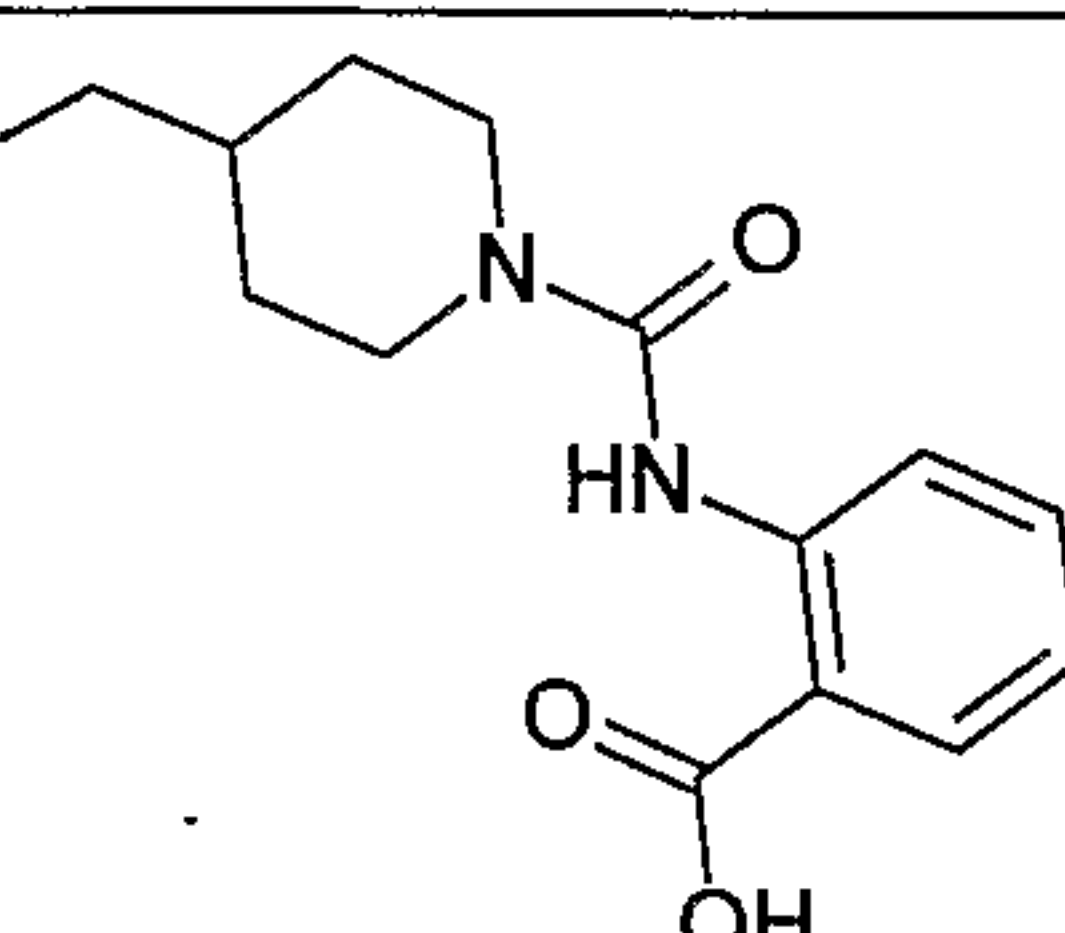
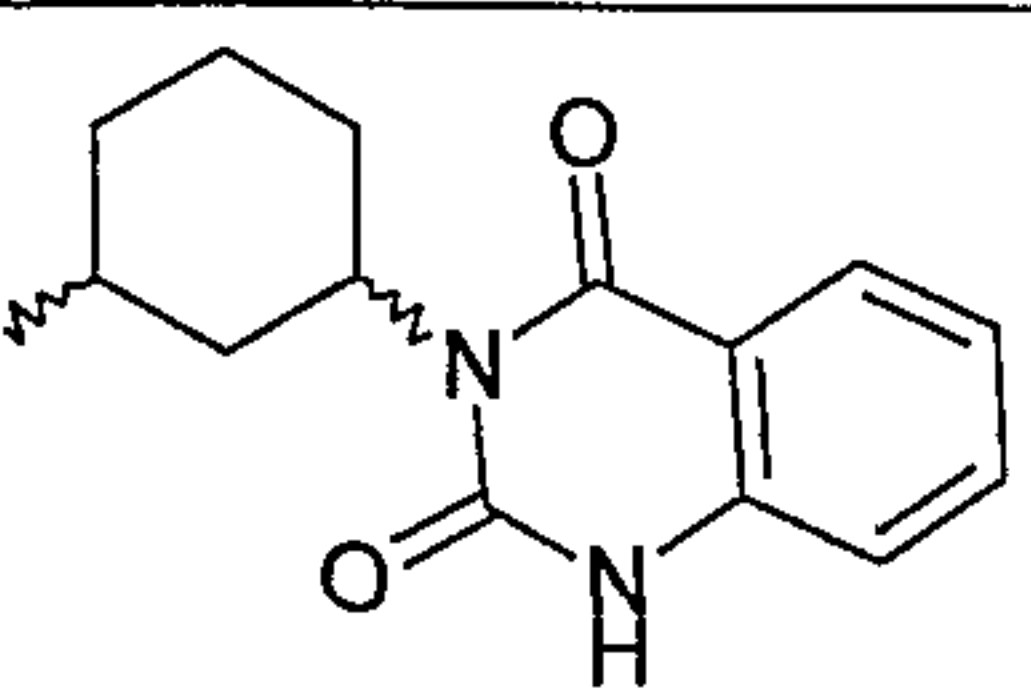
188

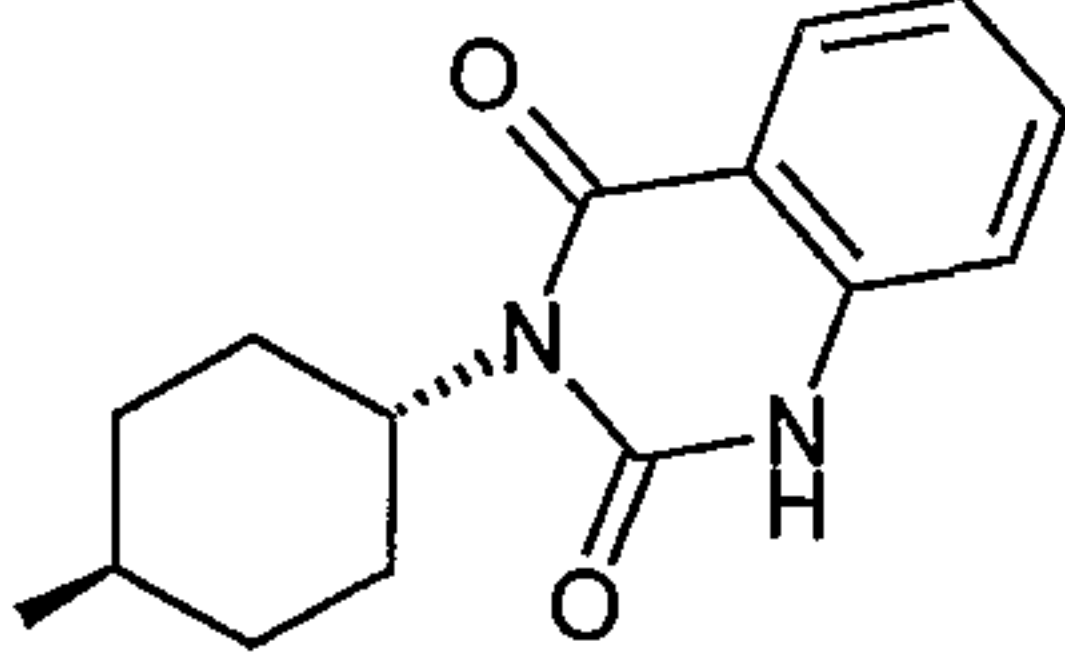
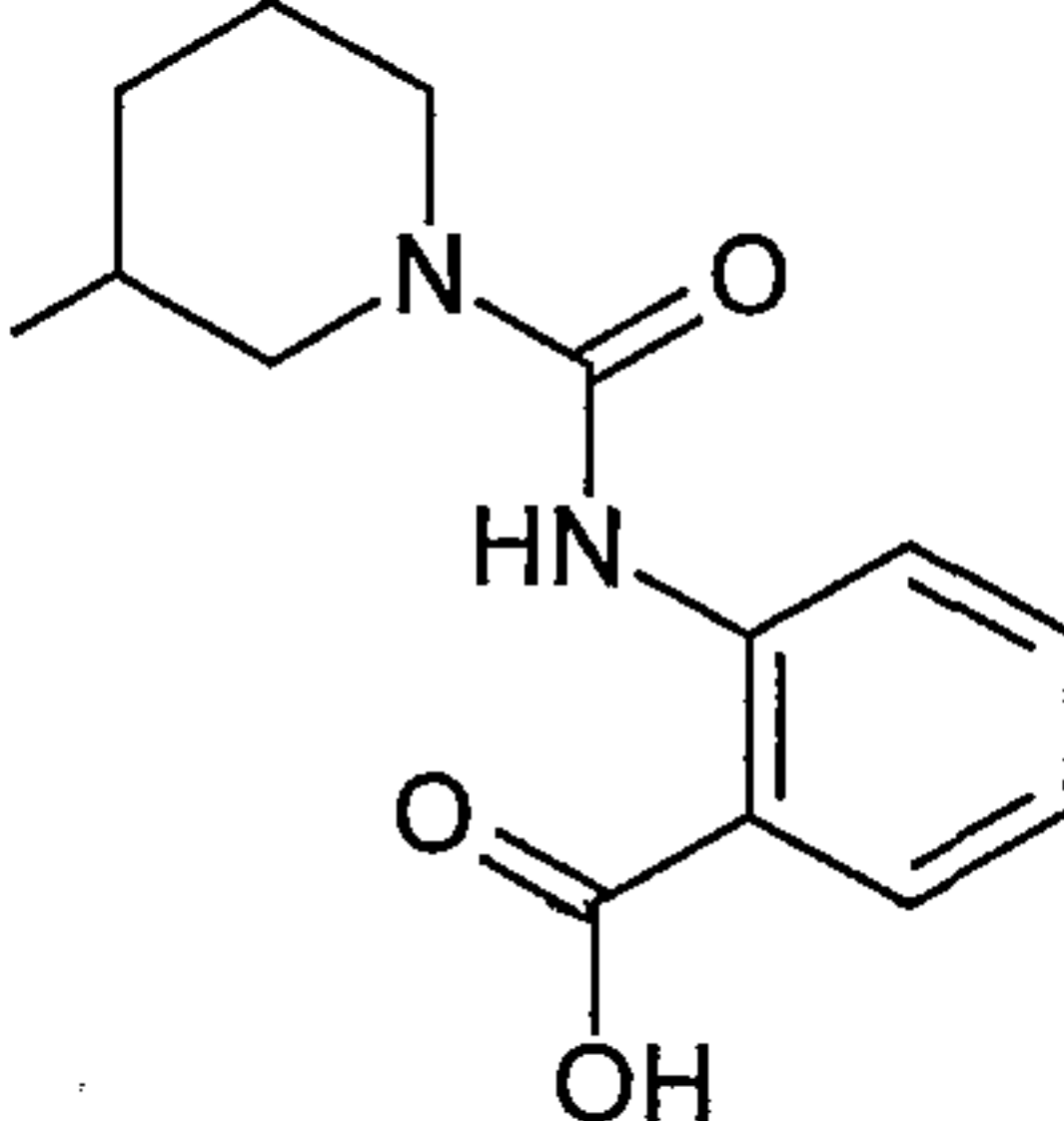
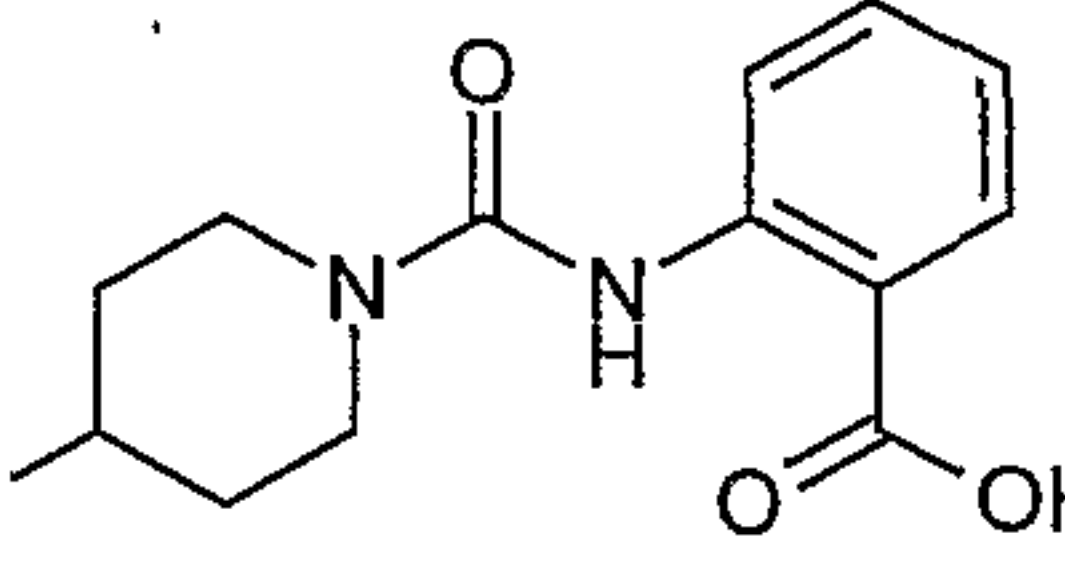
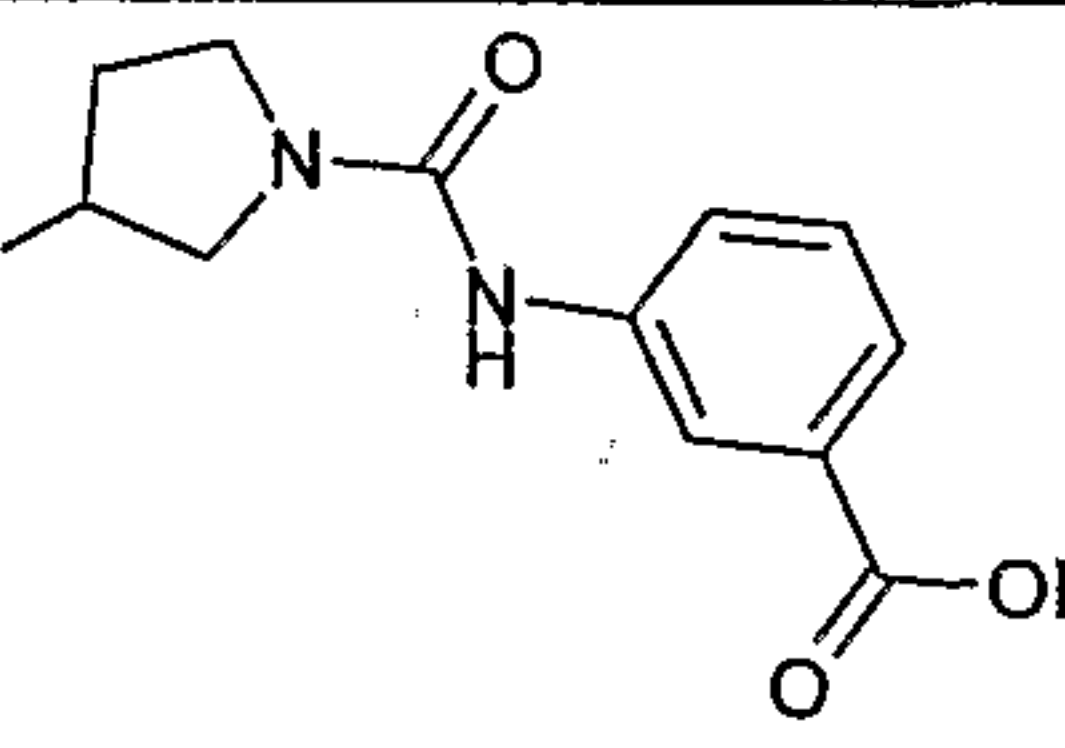
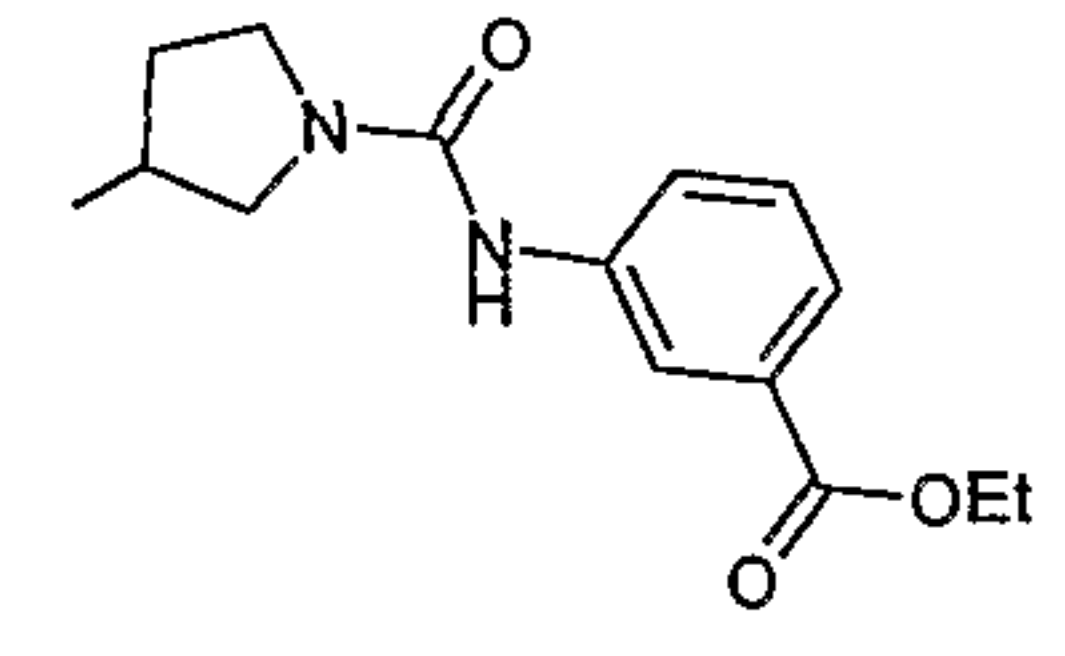
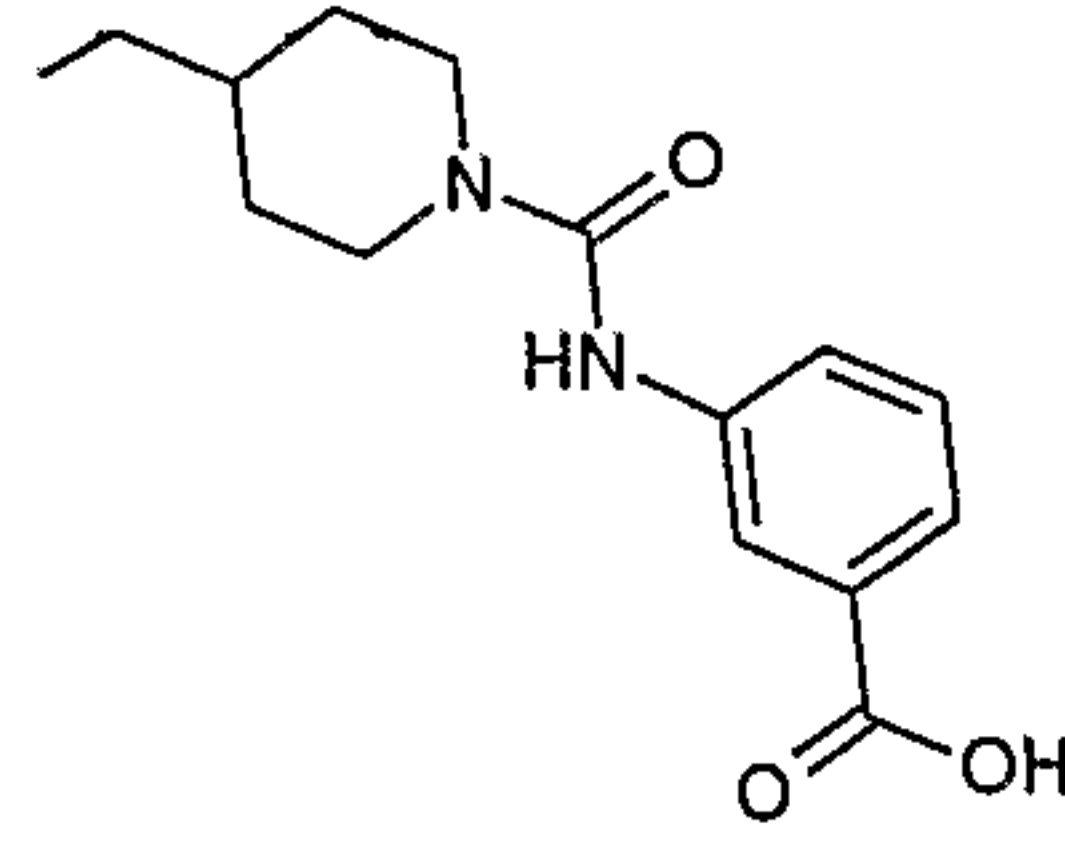
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1168	A		614.3(MH ⁺)
1169	A		614.3(MH ⁺)
1170	A		455(MH ⁺)
1171	A		559(MH ⁺)
1176	C		612(MH ⁺)

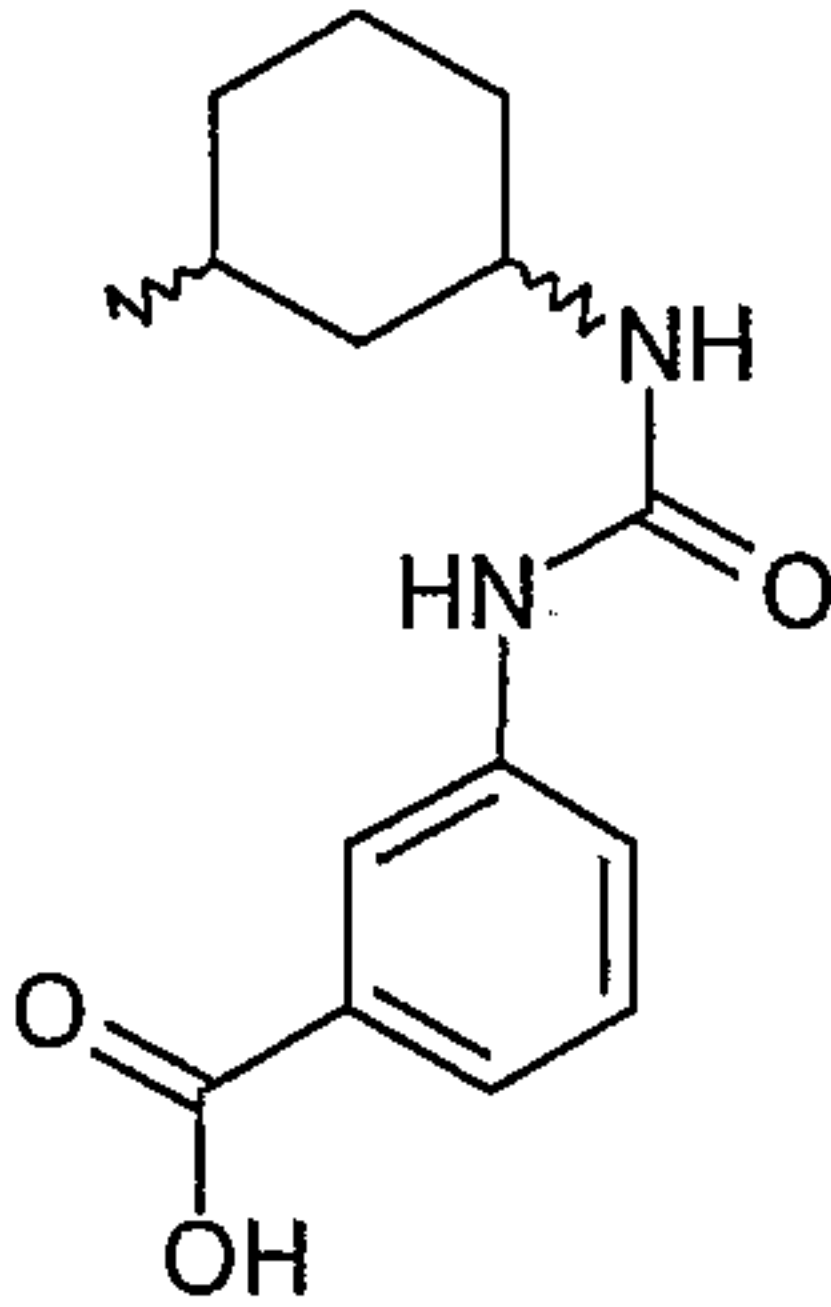
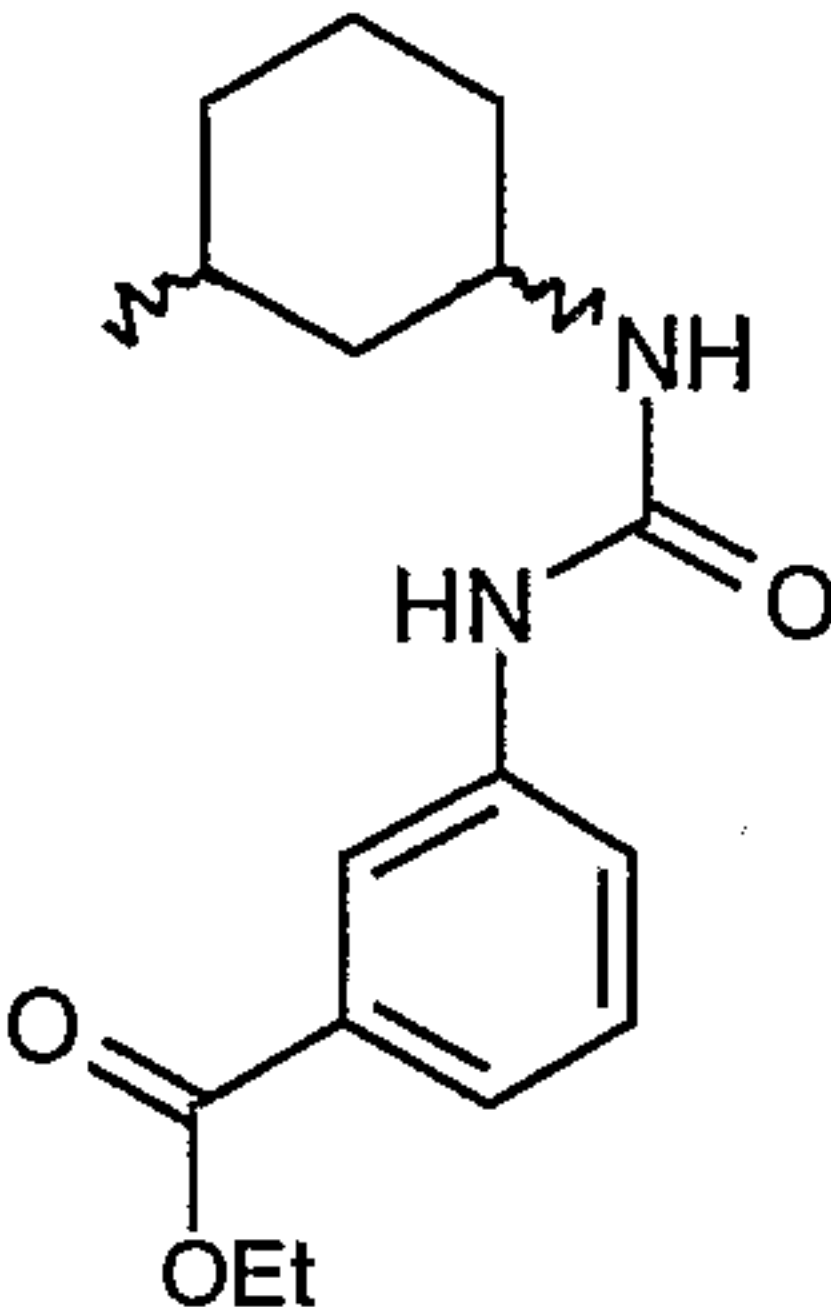
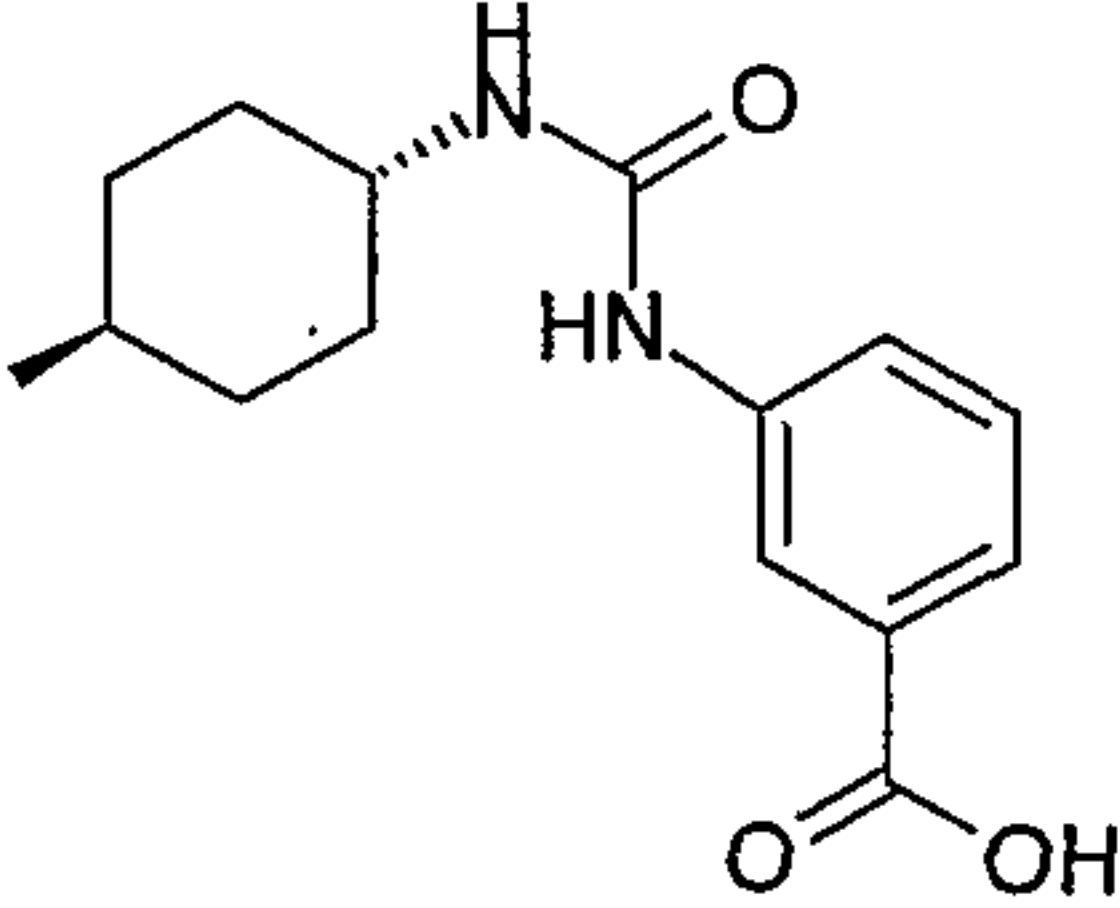
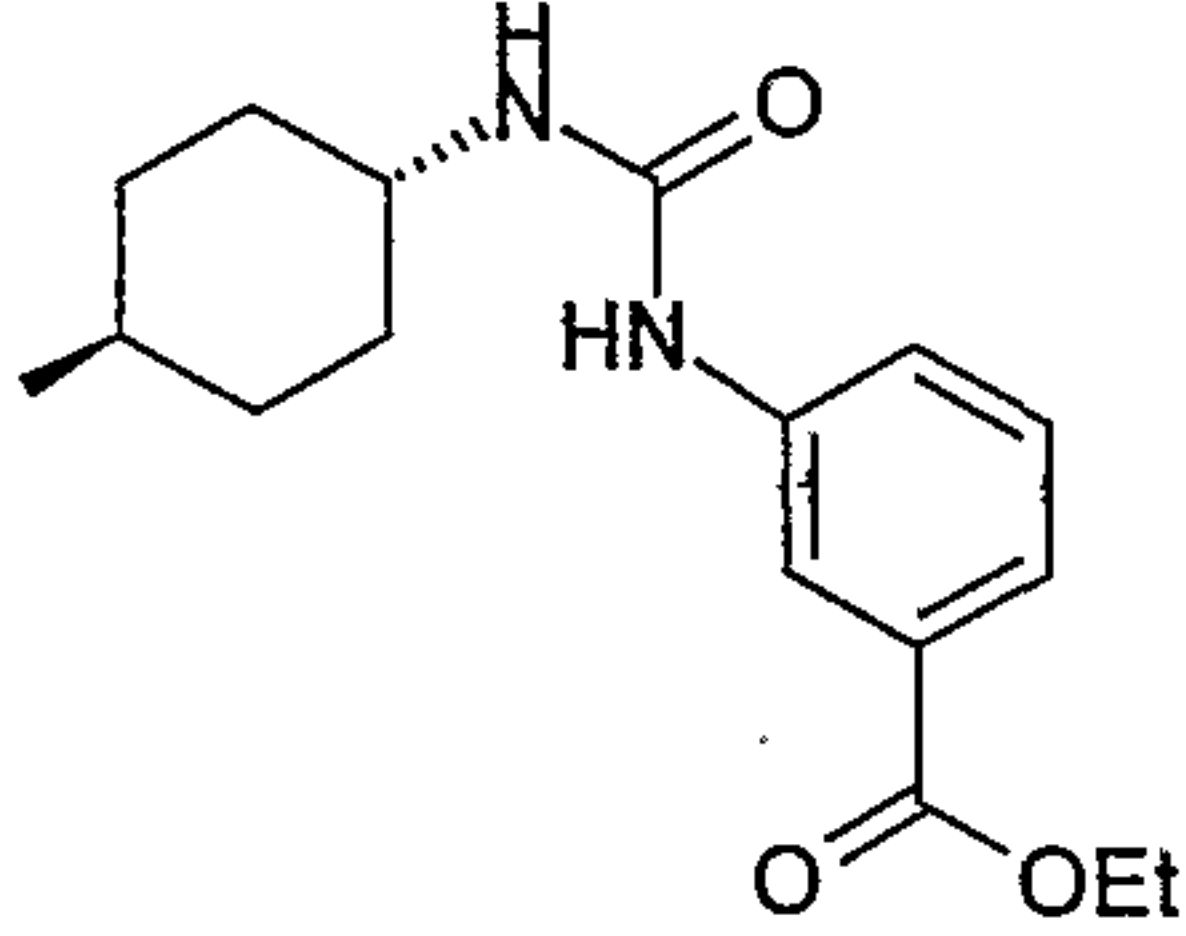
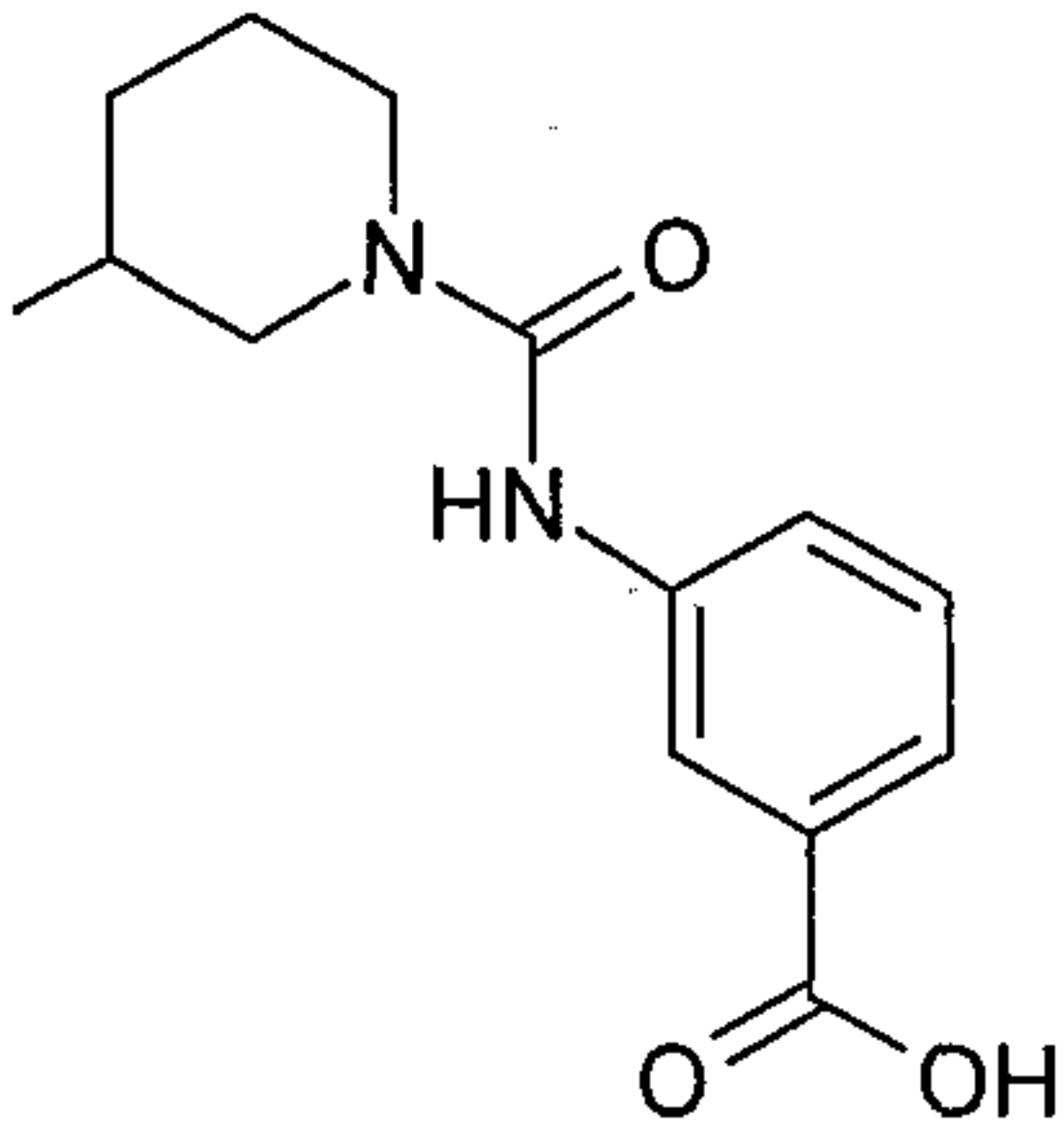
189

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1178	C		382.1(MH ⁺)
1179	C		515.1(MH ⁺)
1180	B		379.2(MH ⁺)
1181	B		407.3(MH ⁺)
1182	B		407.3(MH ⁺)
1183	C		407.3(MH ⁺)
1184	B		393.2(MH ⁺)
1185	B		393.2(MH ⁺)
1187	C		527(MH ⁺)
1191	A		480.2(MH ⁺)

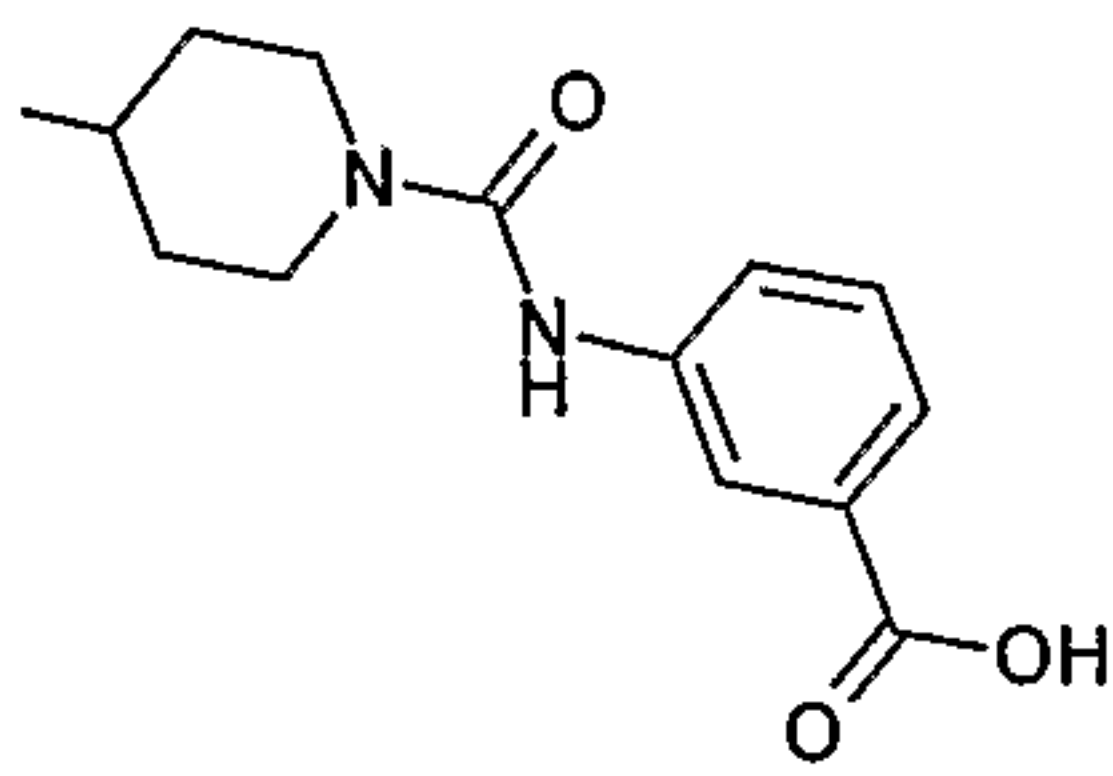
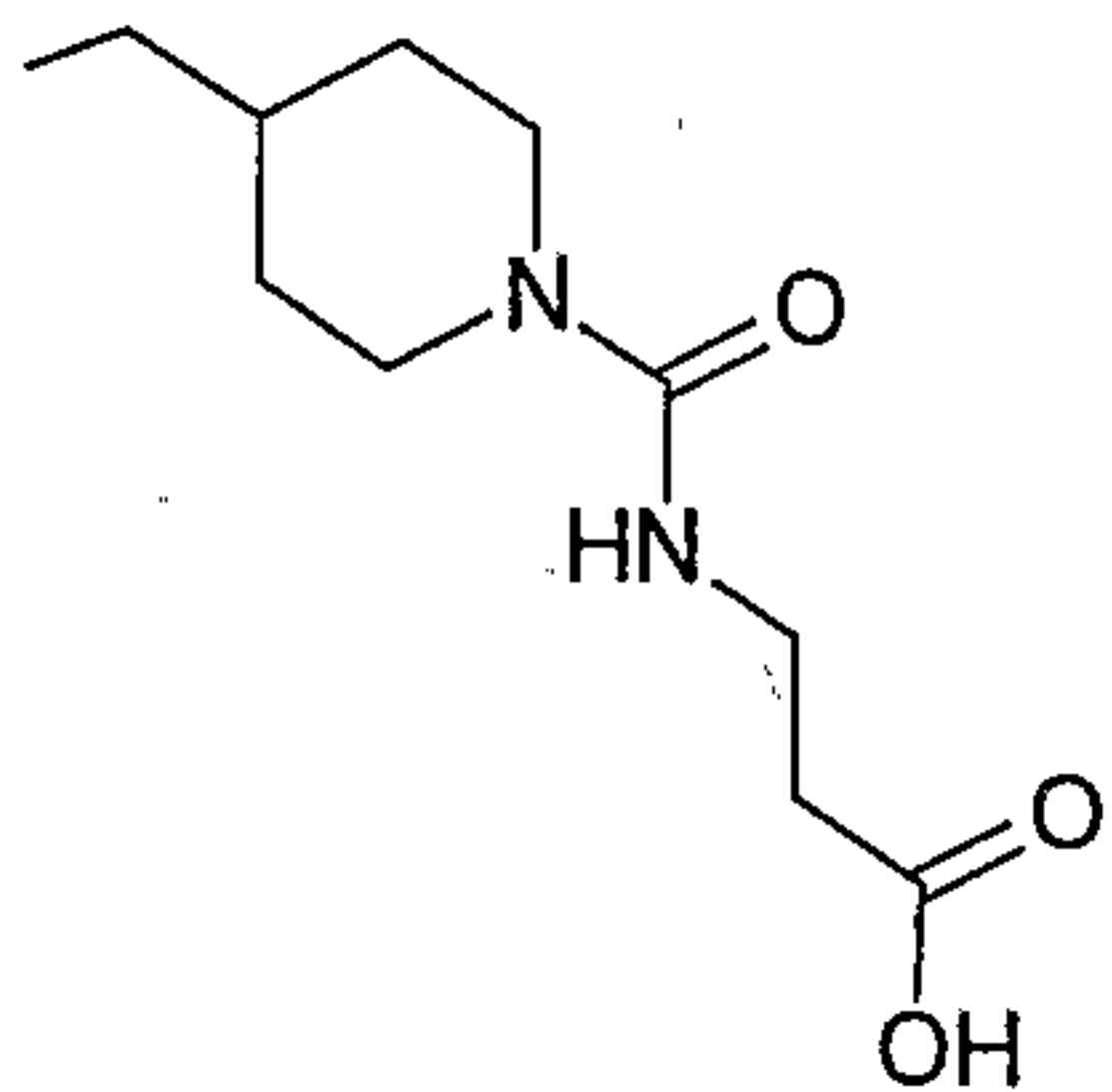
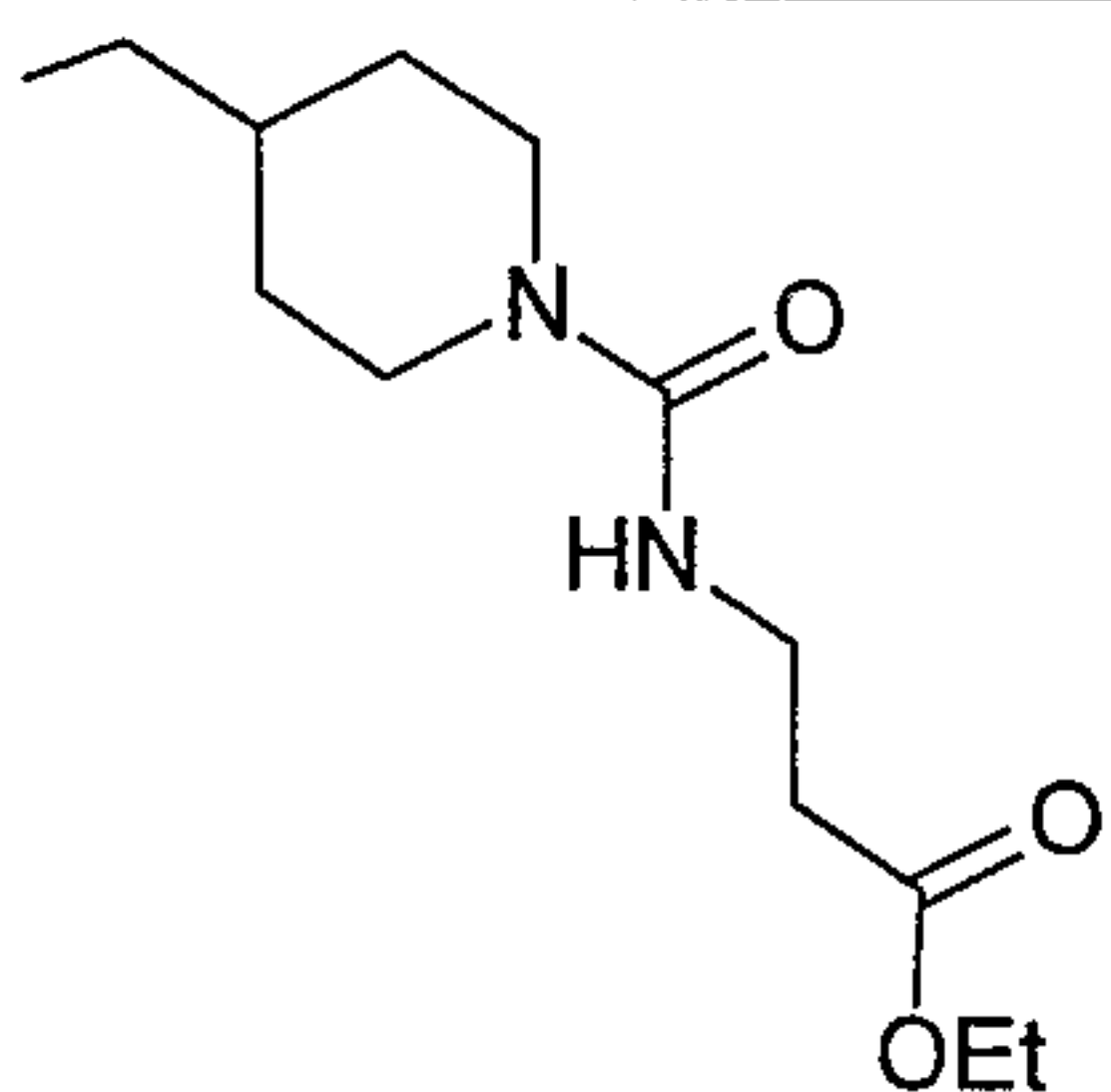
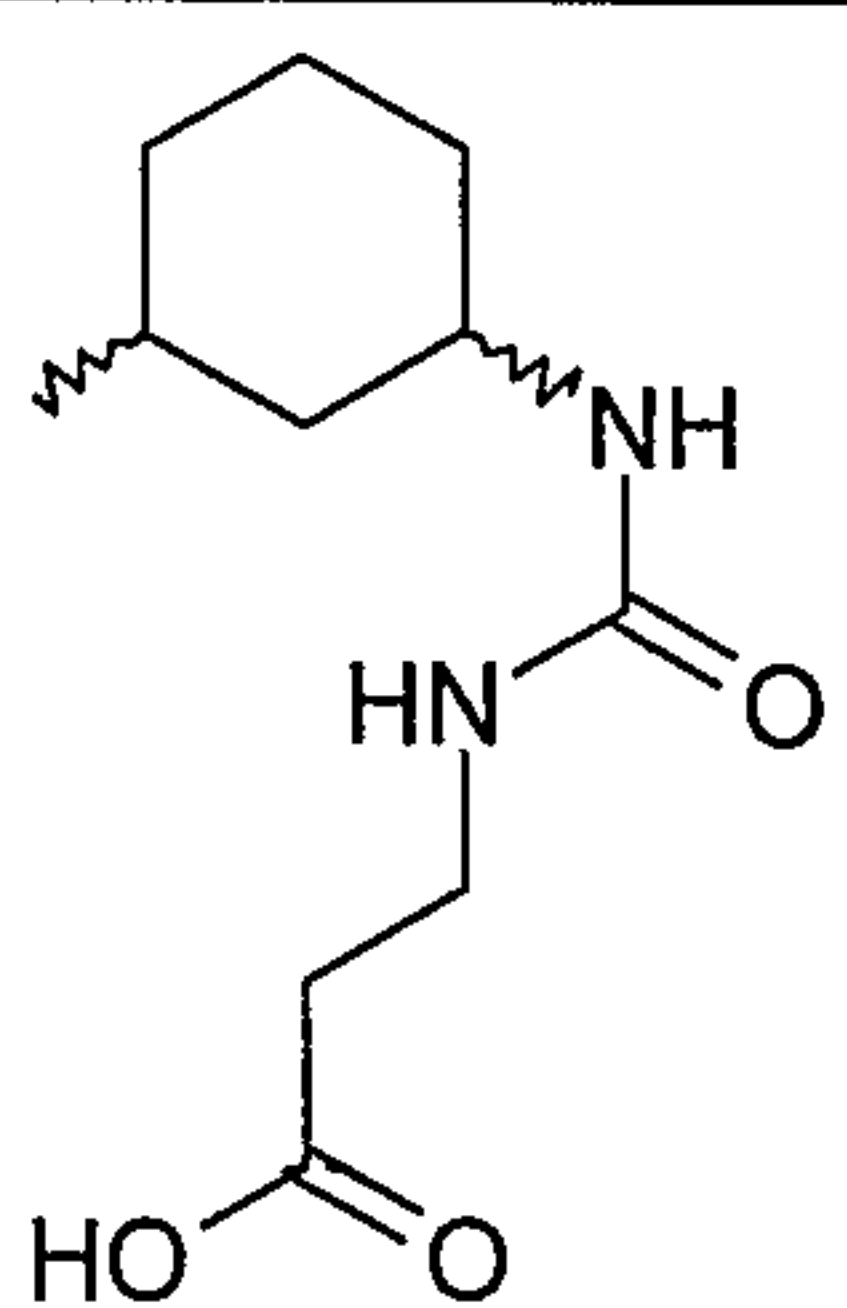
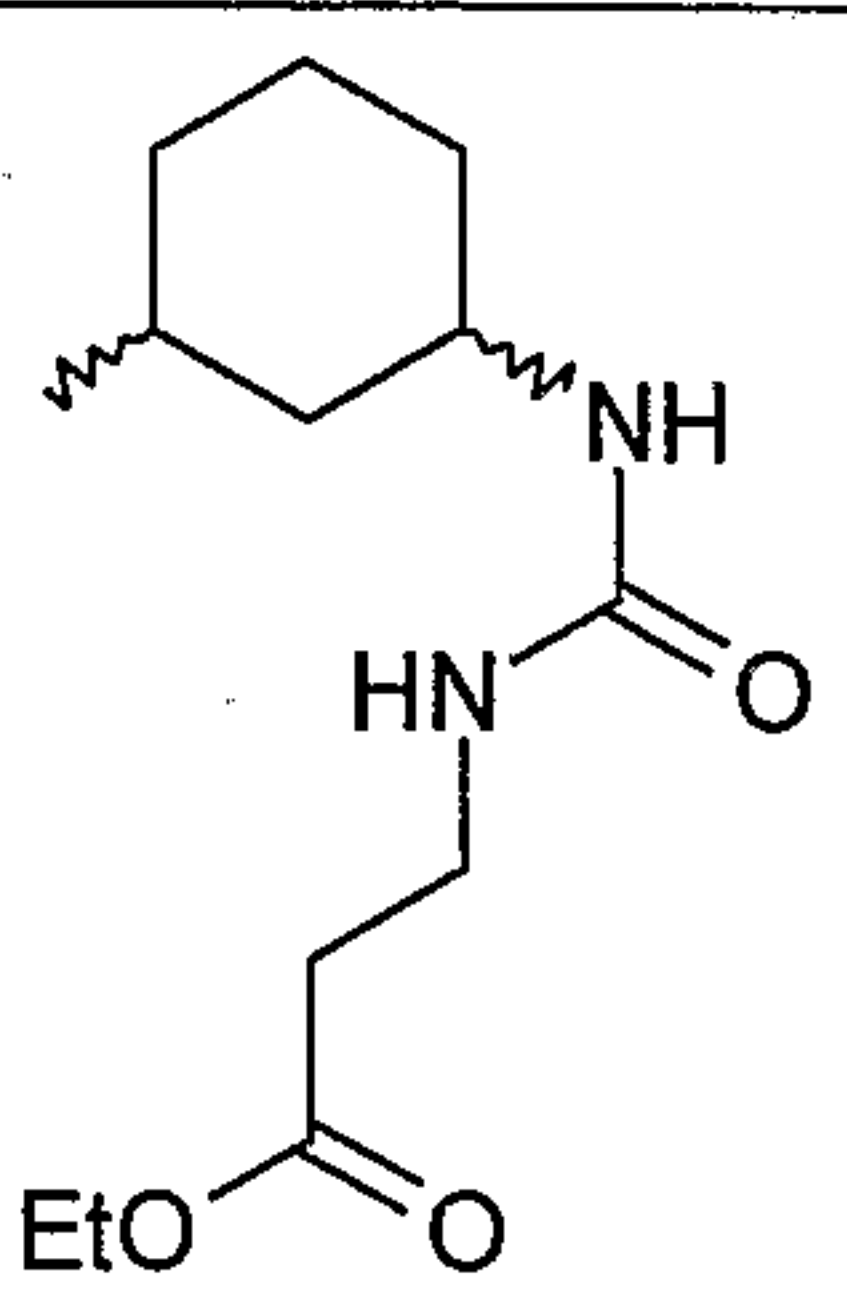
190

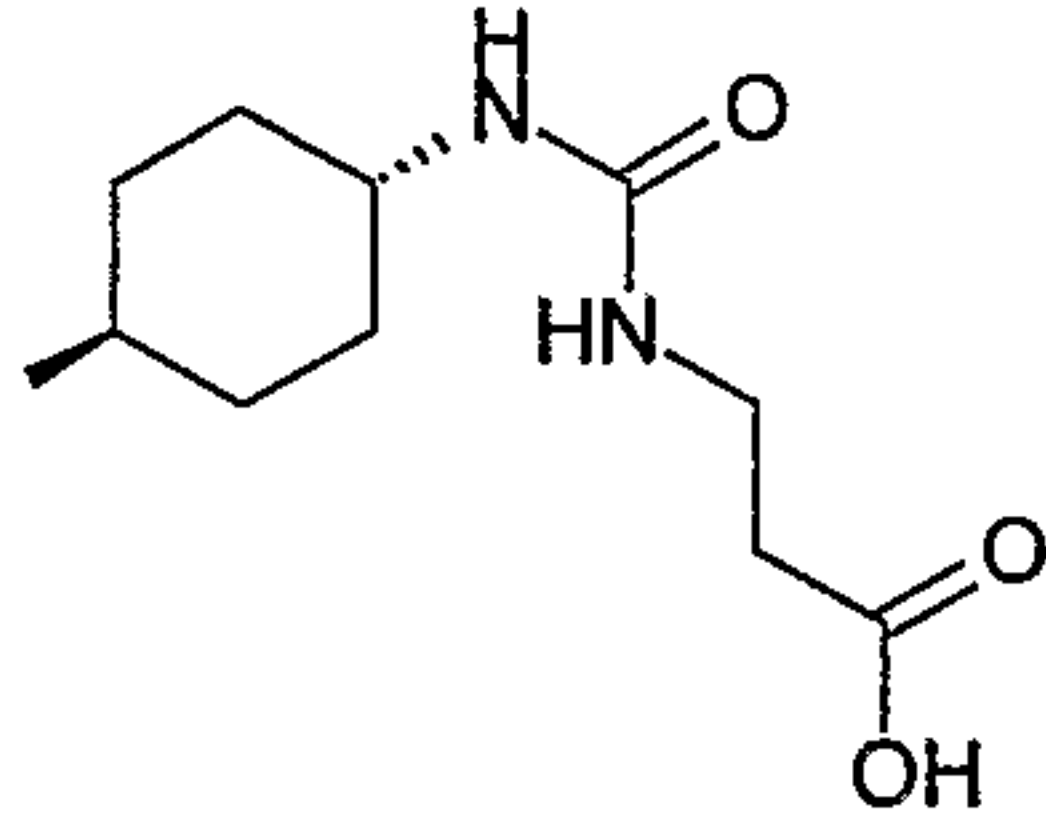
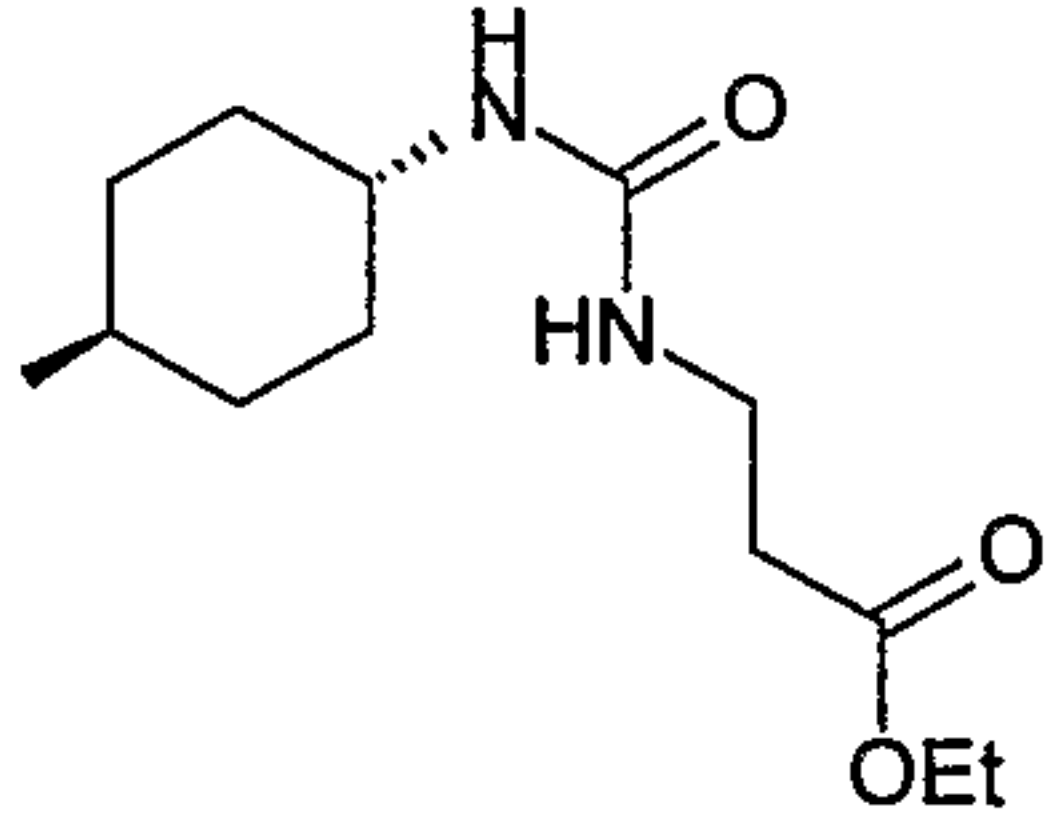
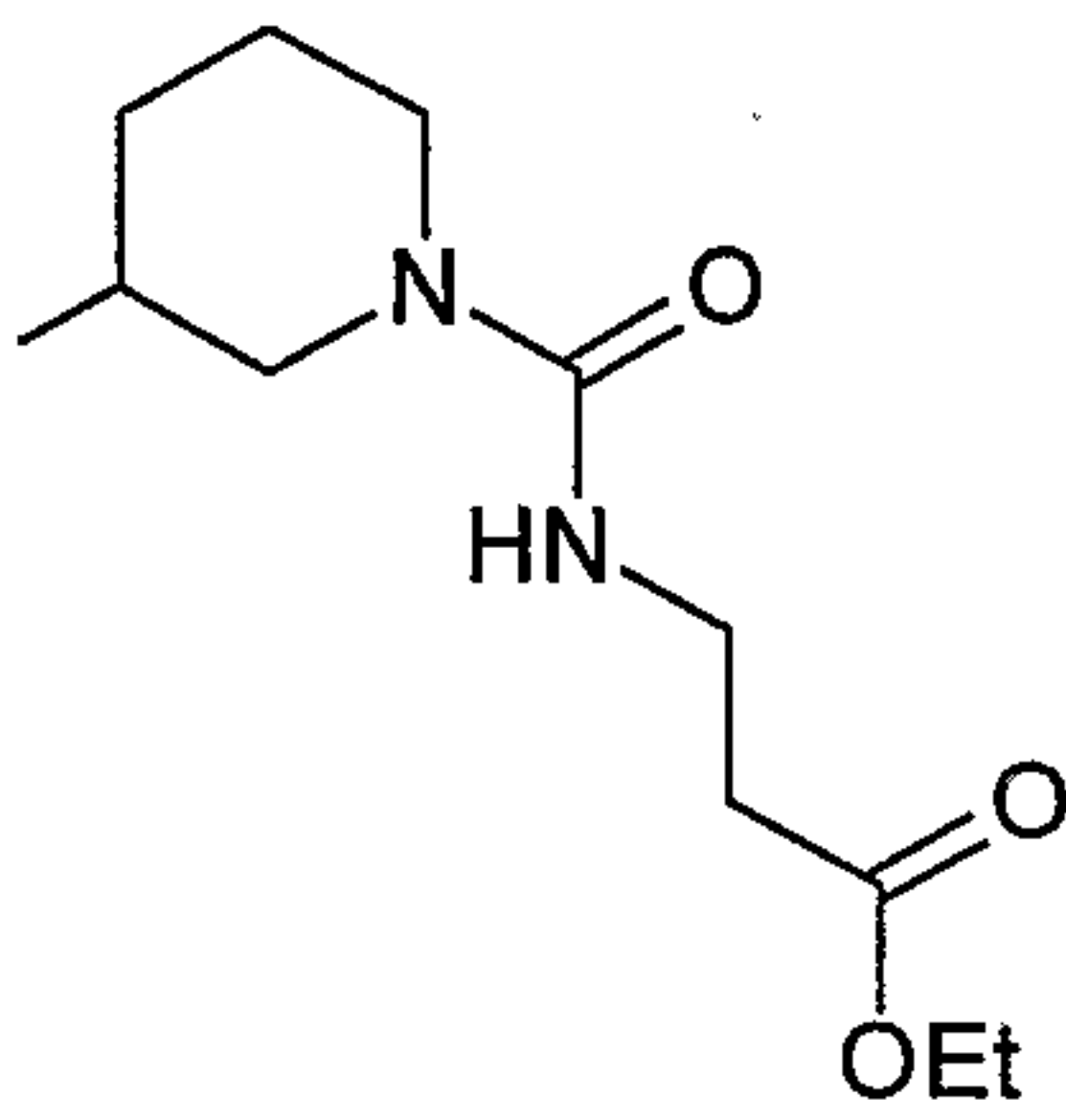
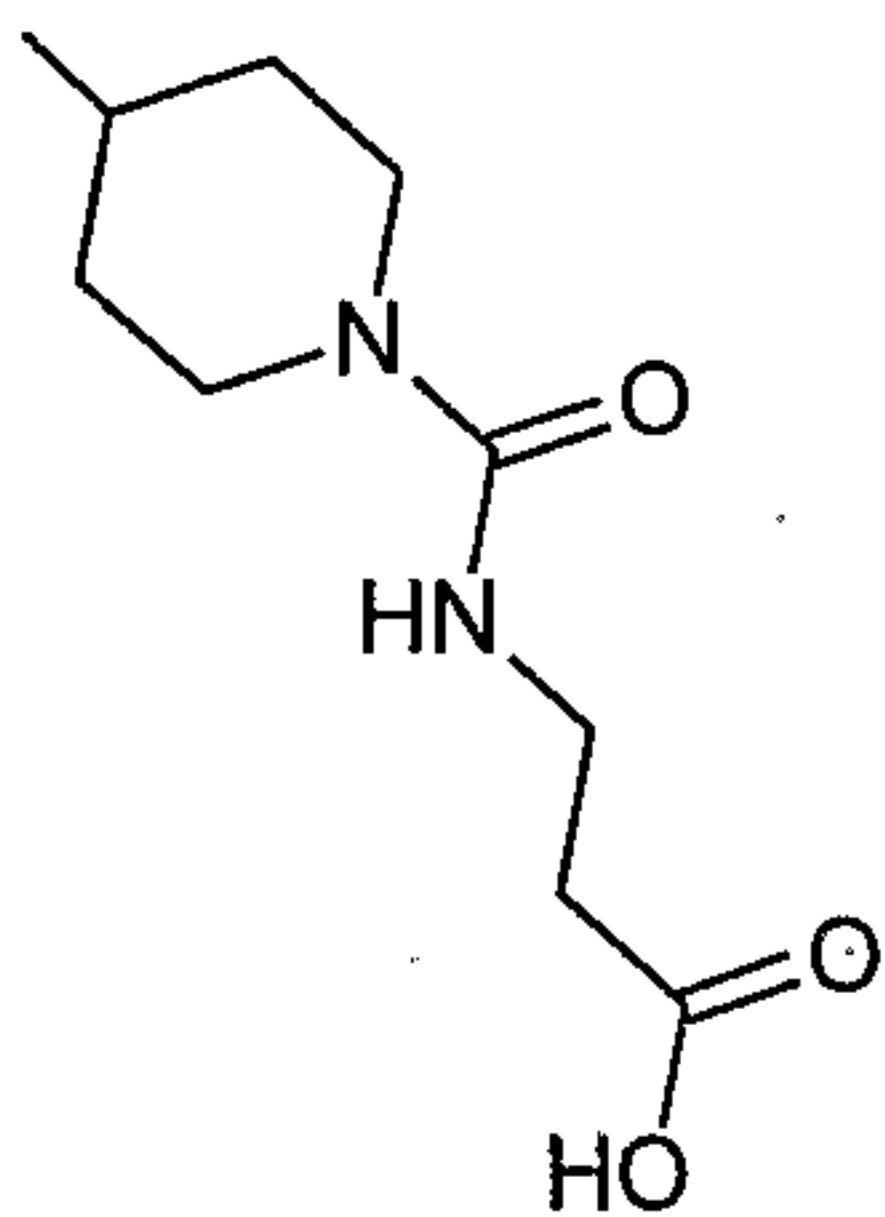
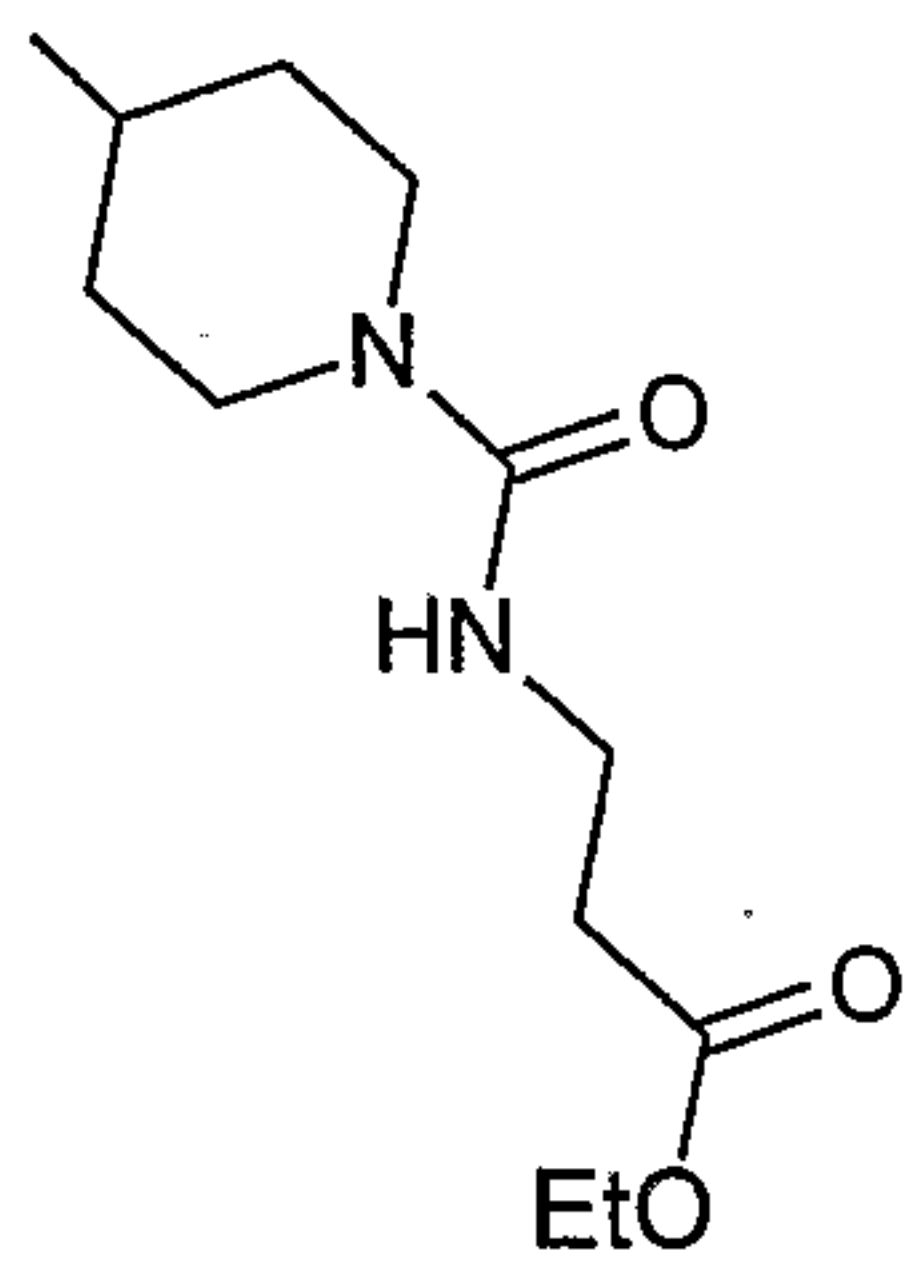
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1192	A		508.3(MH ⁺)
1193	A		490.4(MH ⁺)
1194	A		494.3(MH ⁺)
1195	A		494.3(MH ⁺)
1196	C		542.3(MH ⁺)
1197	A		570.3(MH ⁺)
1198	A		552.3(MH ⁺)

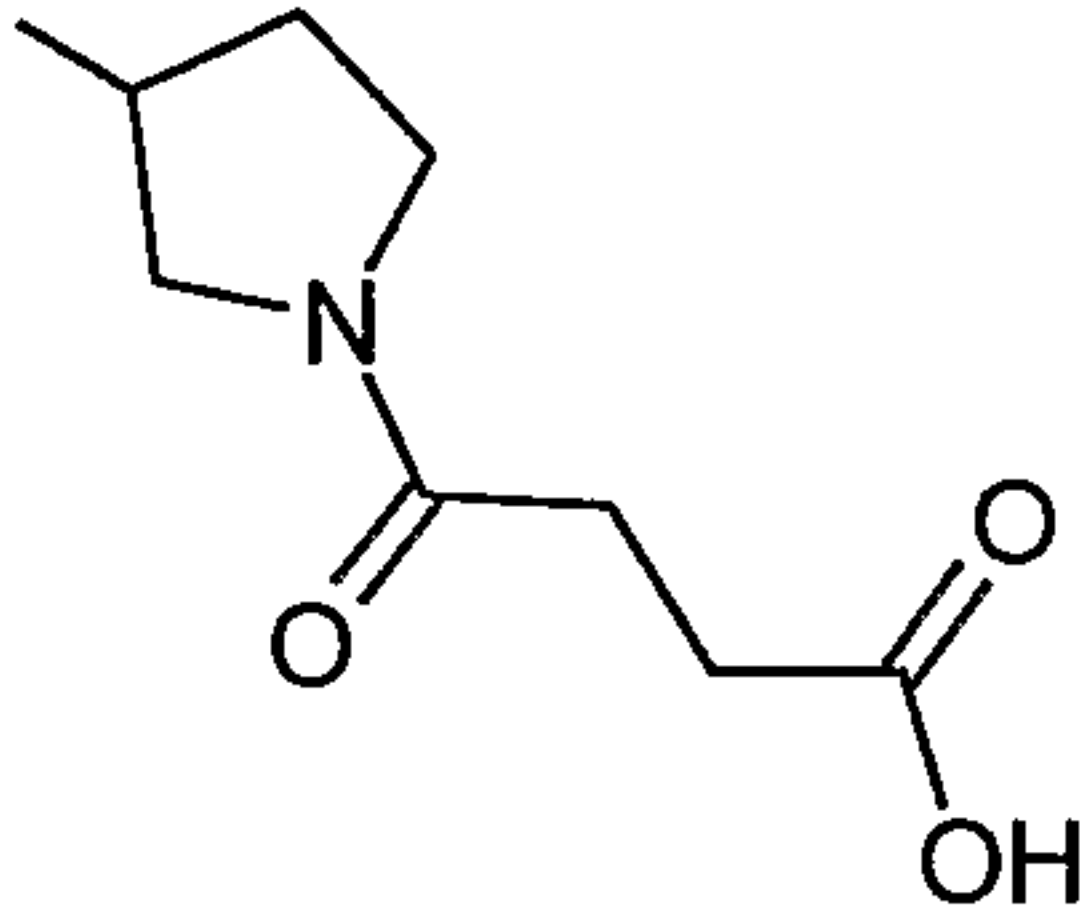
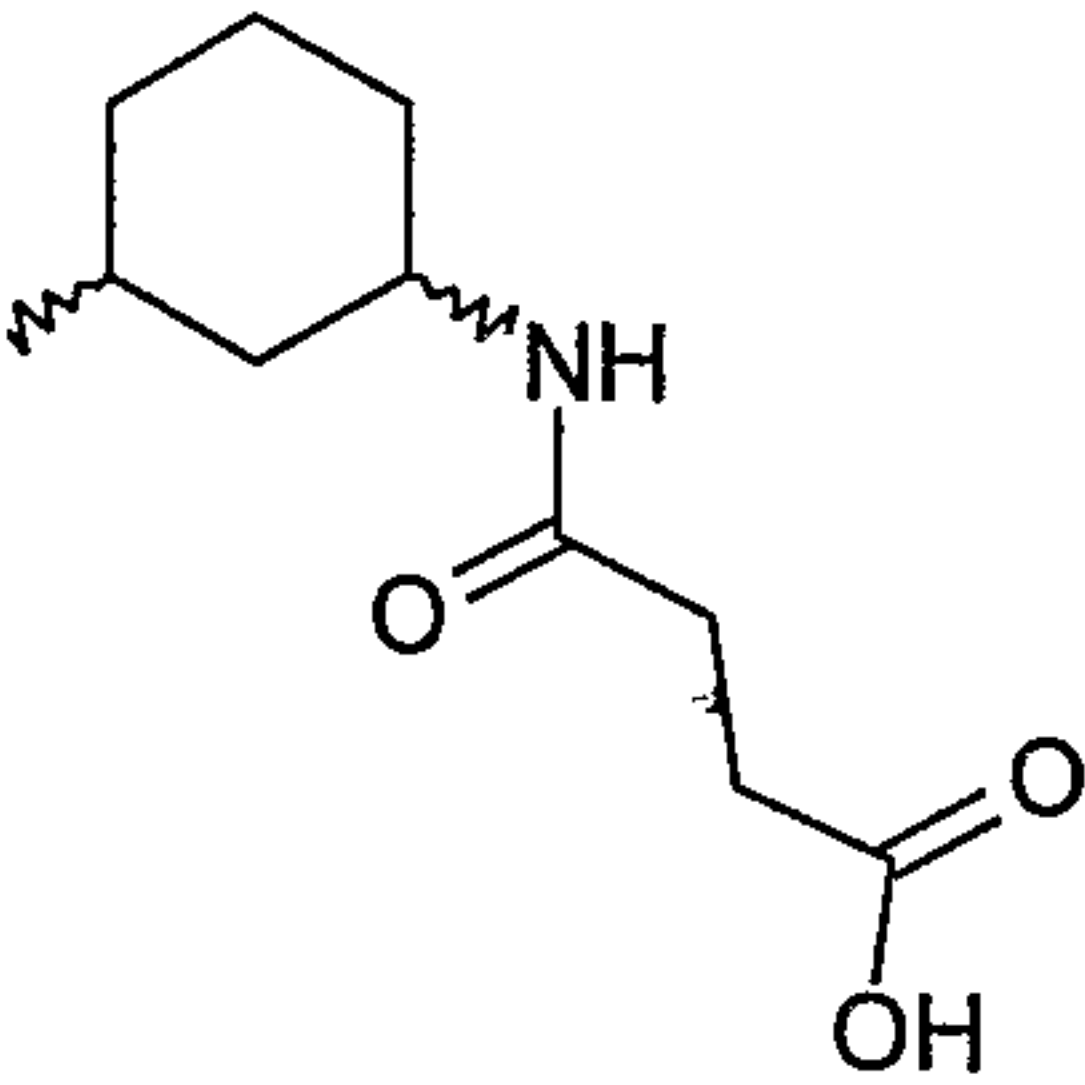
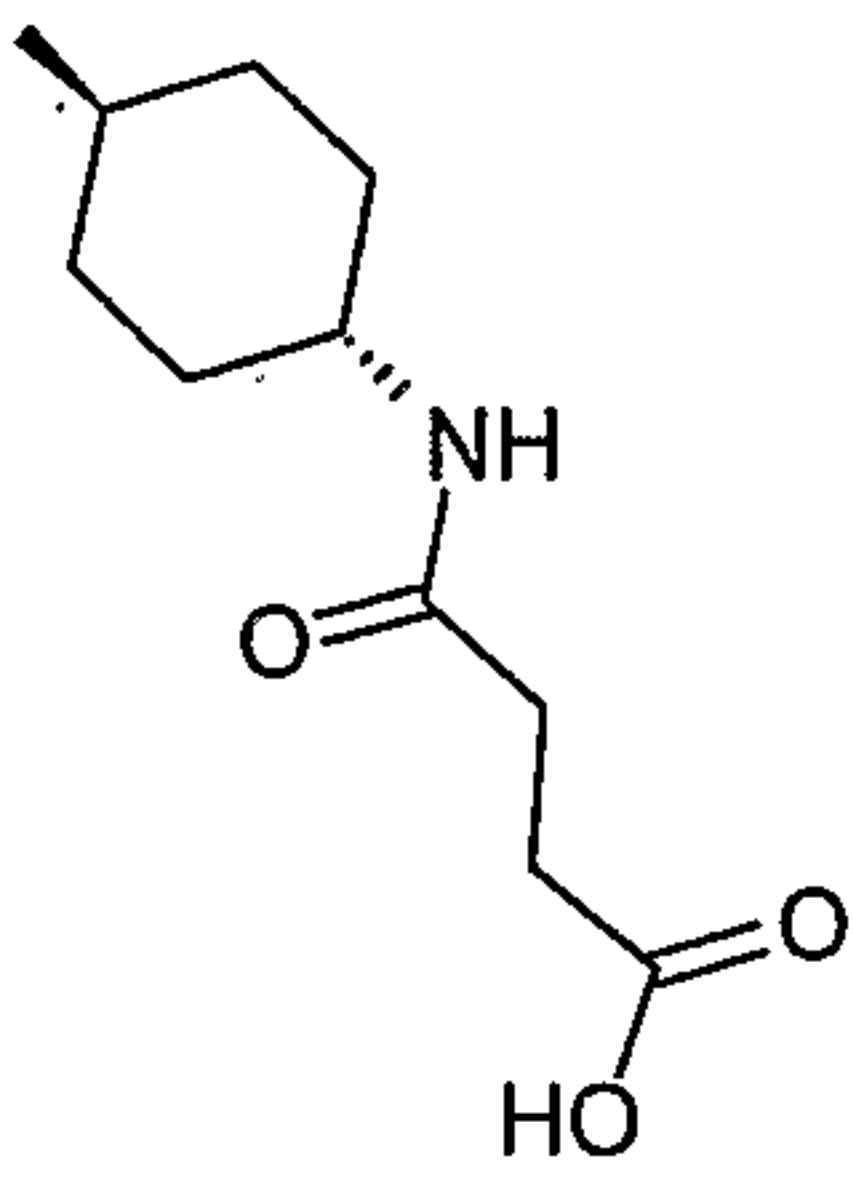
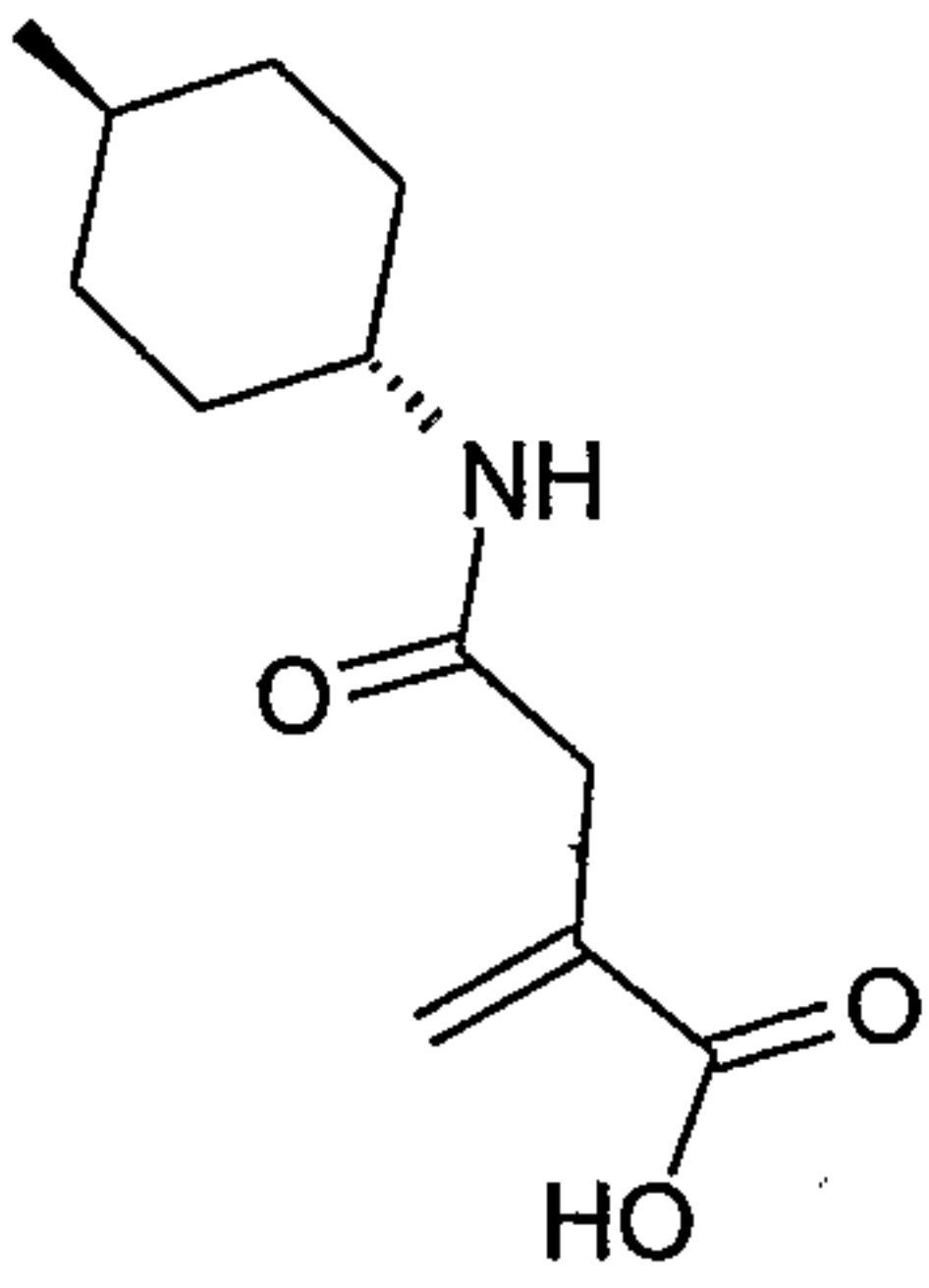
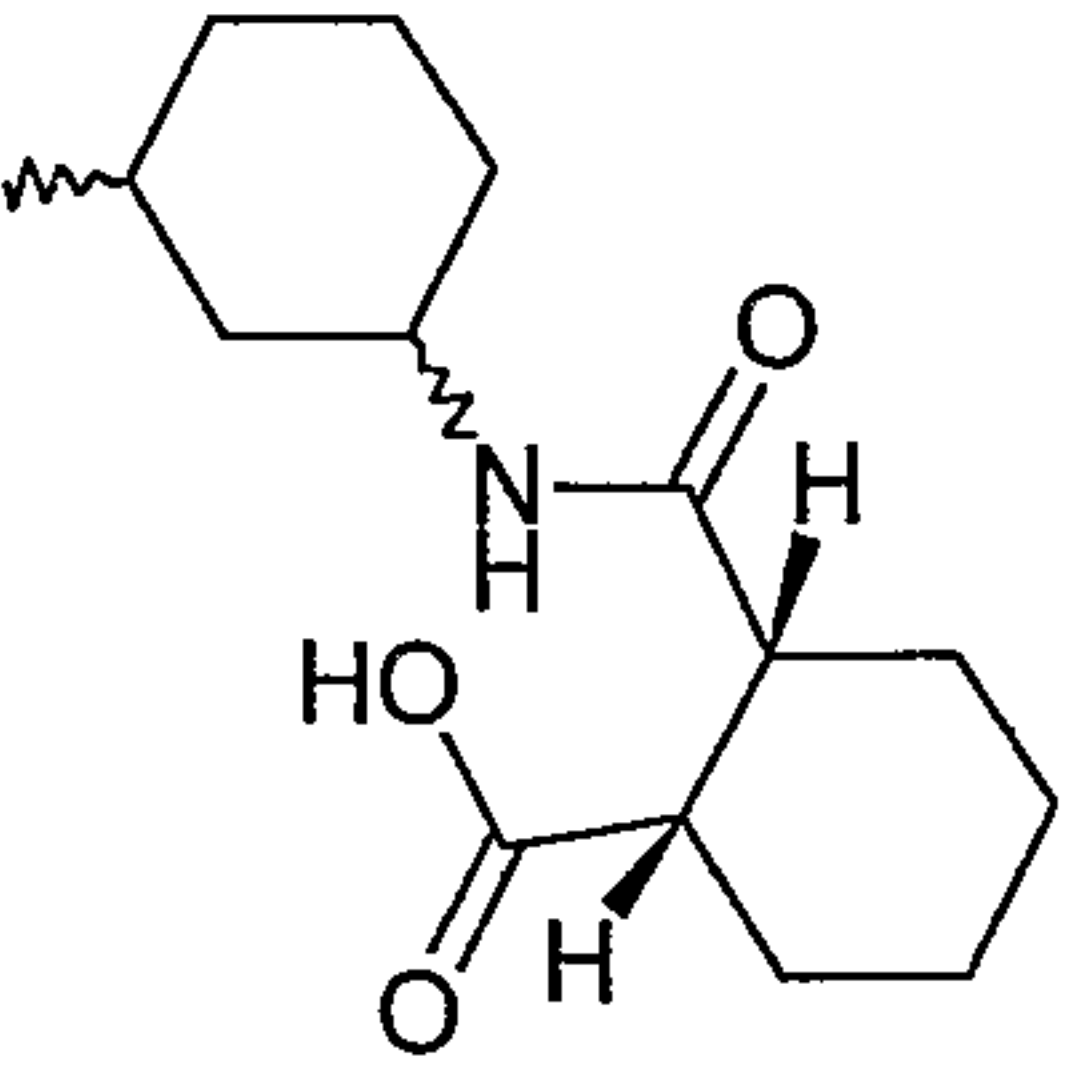
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1199	A		552.3(MH ⁺)
1200	A		556.2(MH ⁺)
1201	A		556.2(MH ⁺)
1202	C		542.3(MH ⁺)
1203	A		570.3(MH ⁺)
1204	B		570.3(MH ⁺)

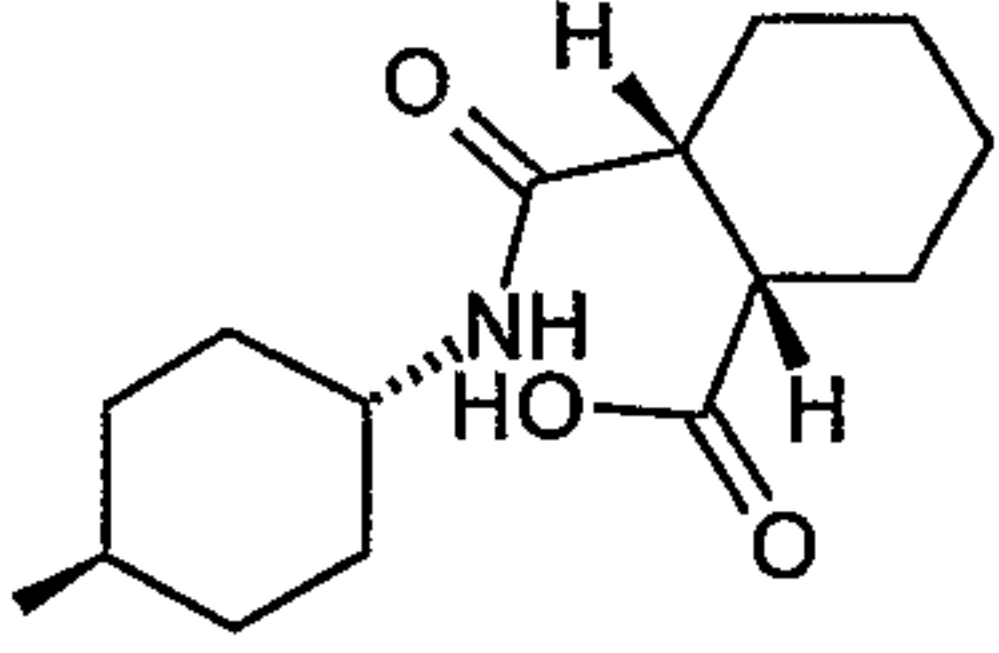
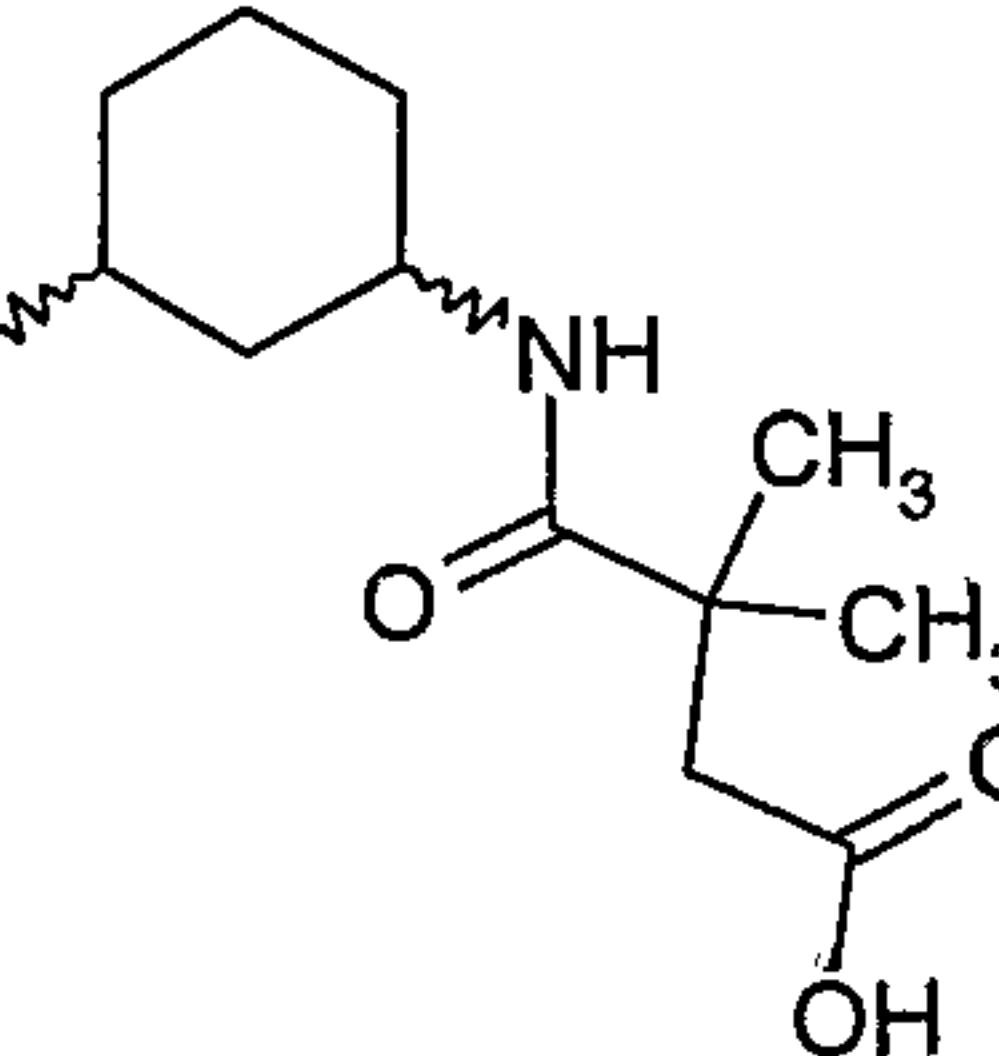
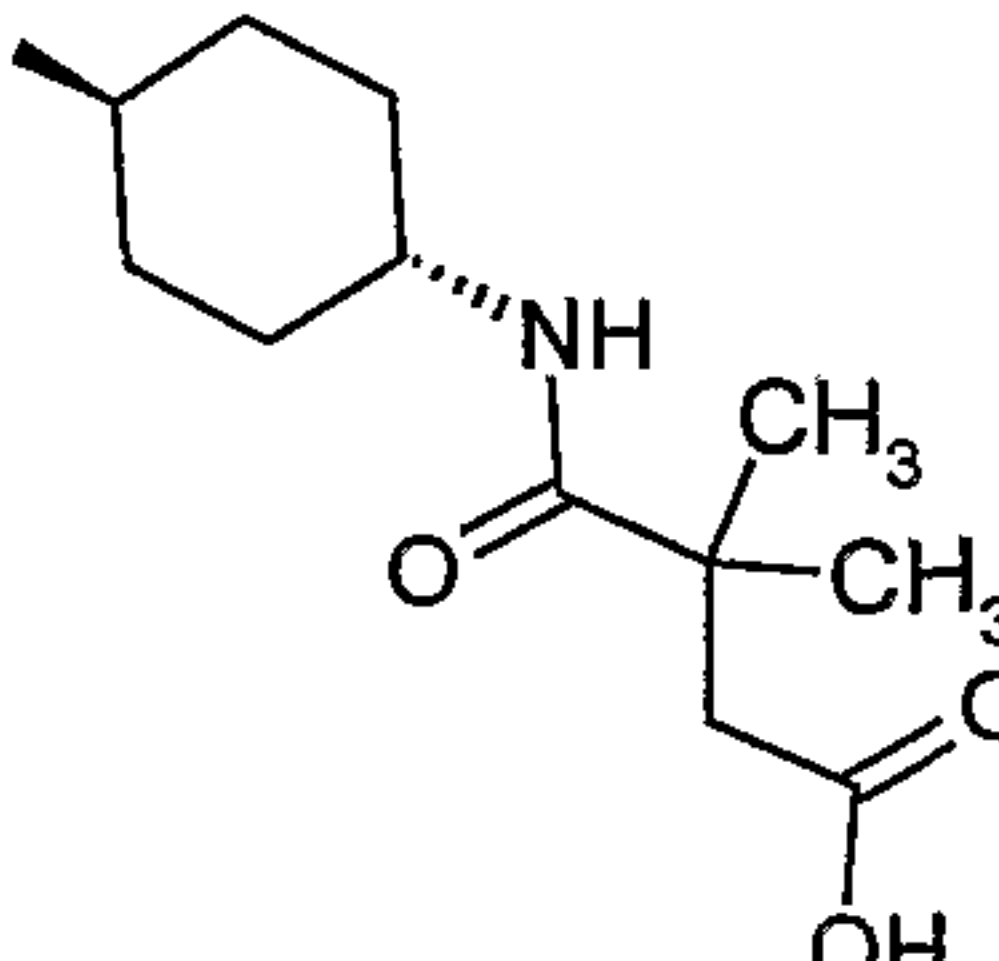
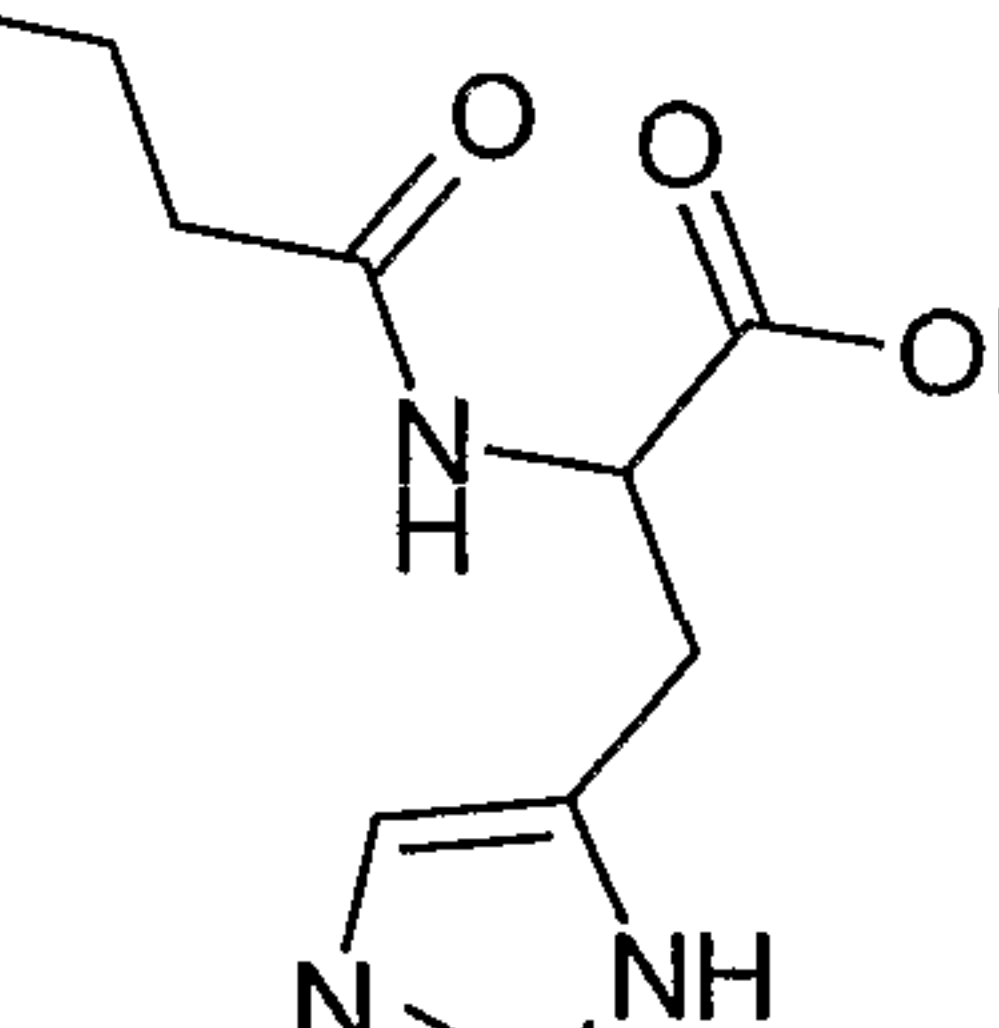
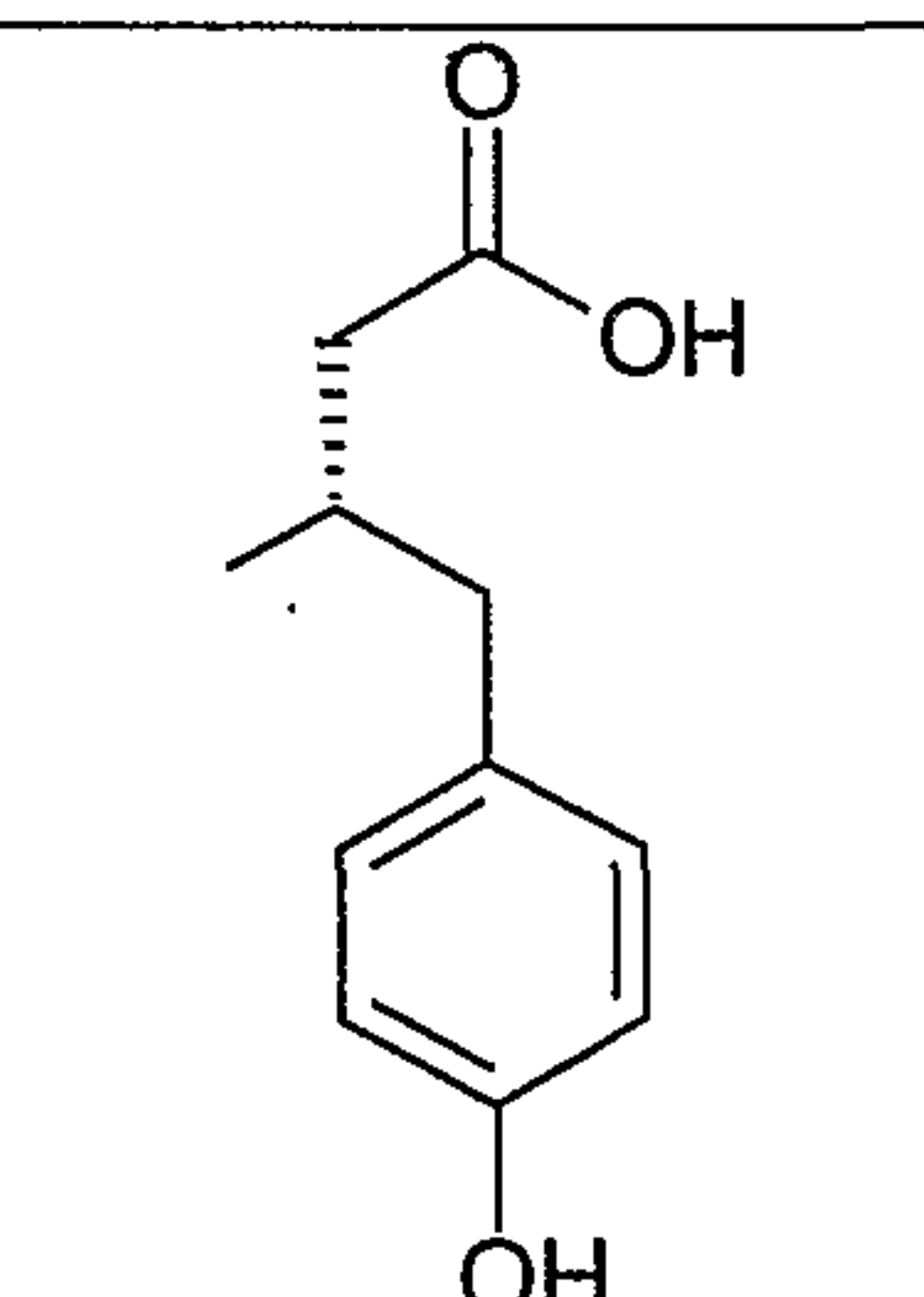
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1205	C		570.3(MH ⁺)
1206	A		598.4(MH ⁺)
1207	B		570.3(MH ⁺)
1208	A		598.4(MH ⁺)
1209	C		556.2(MH ⁺)

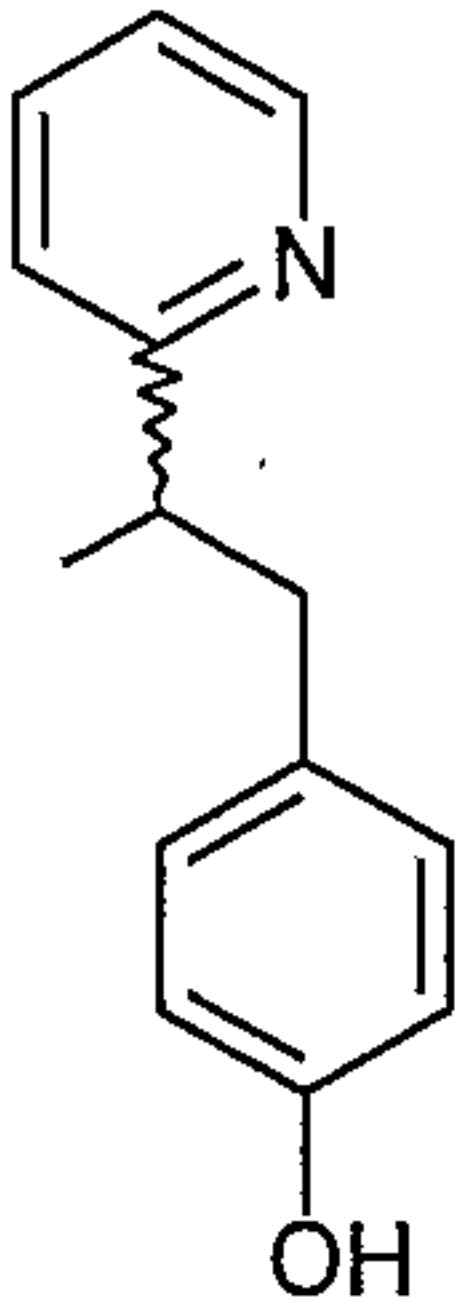
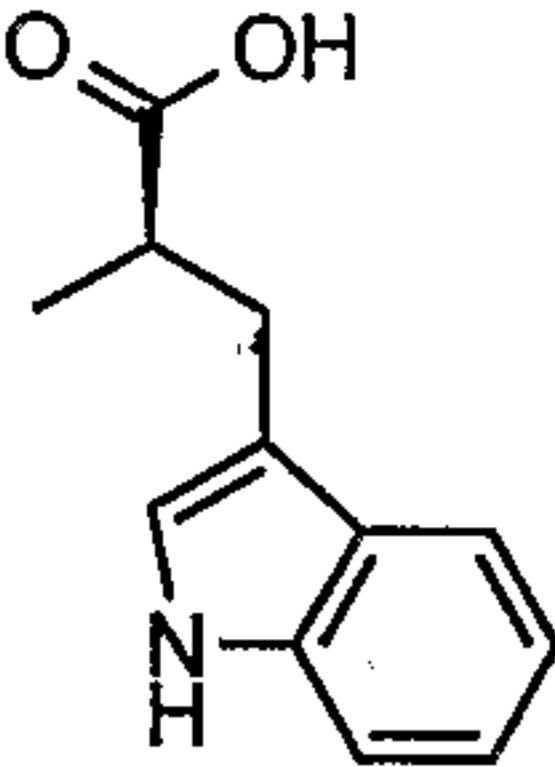
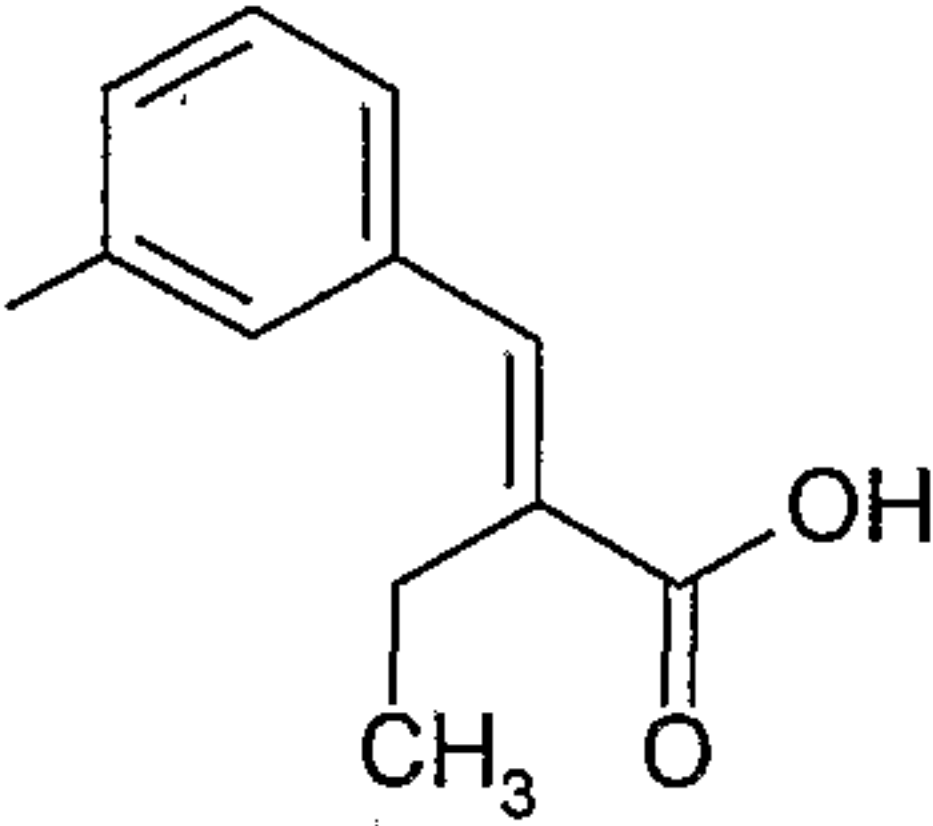
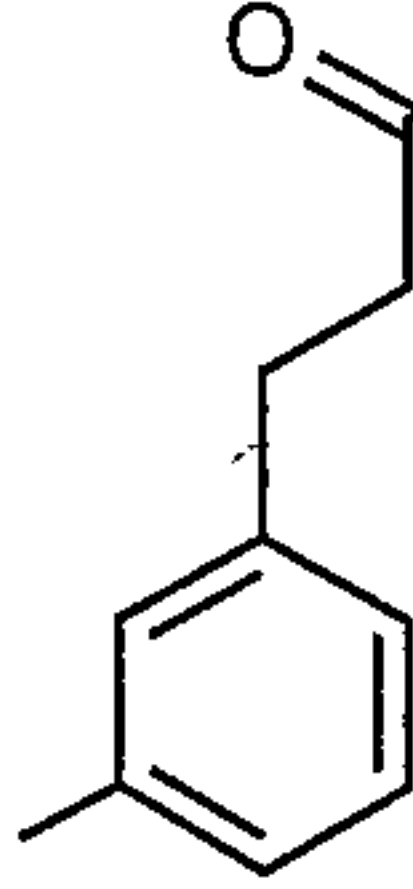
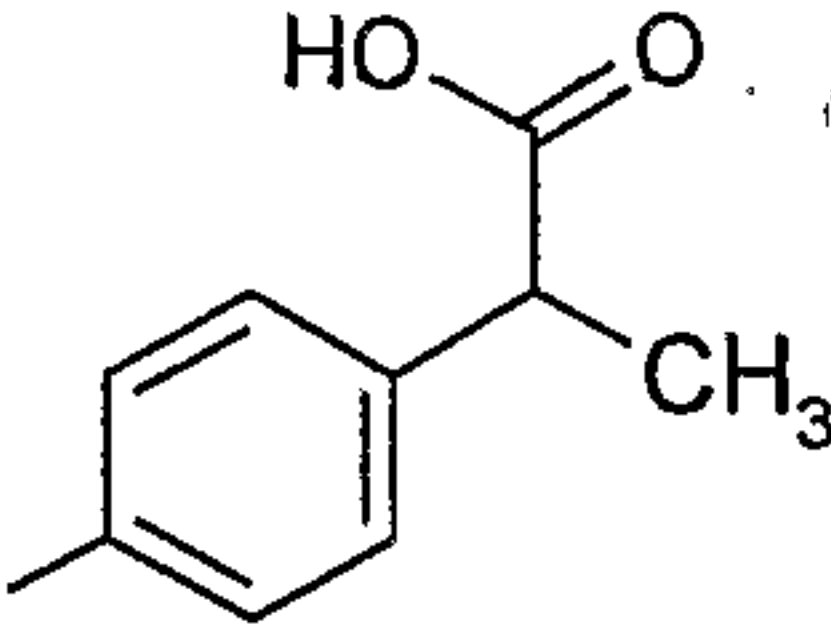
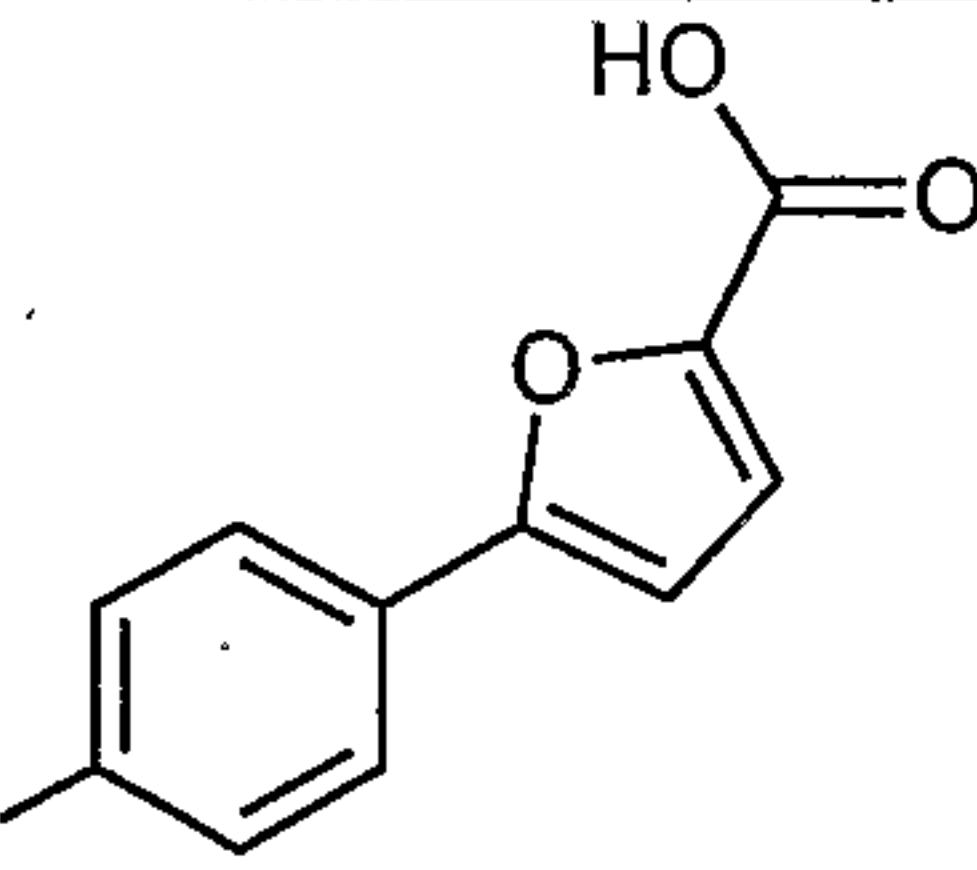
193

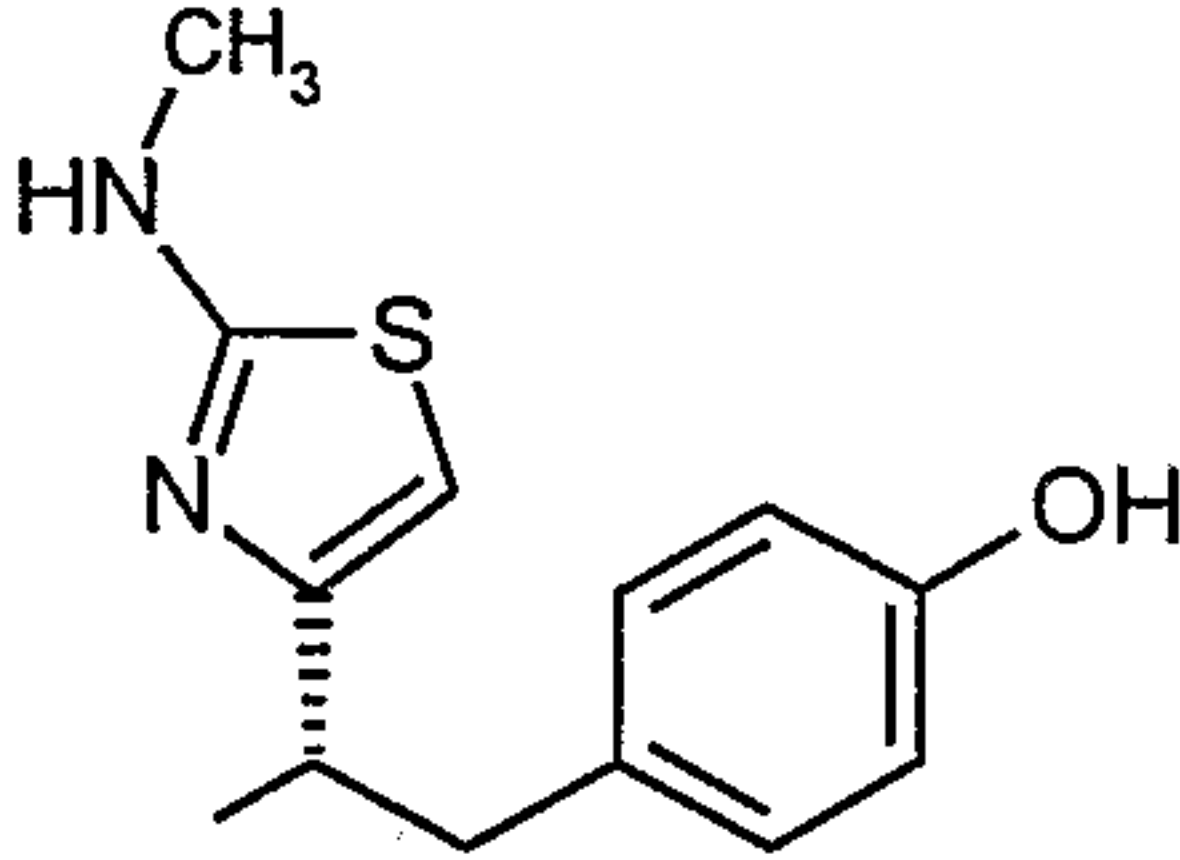
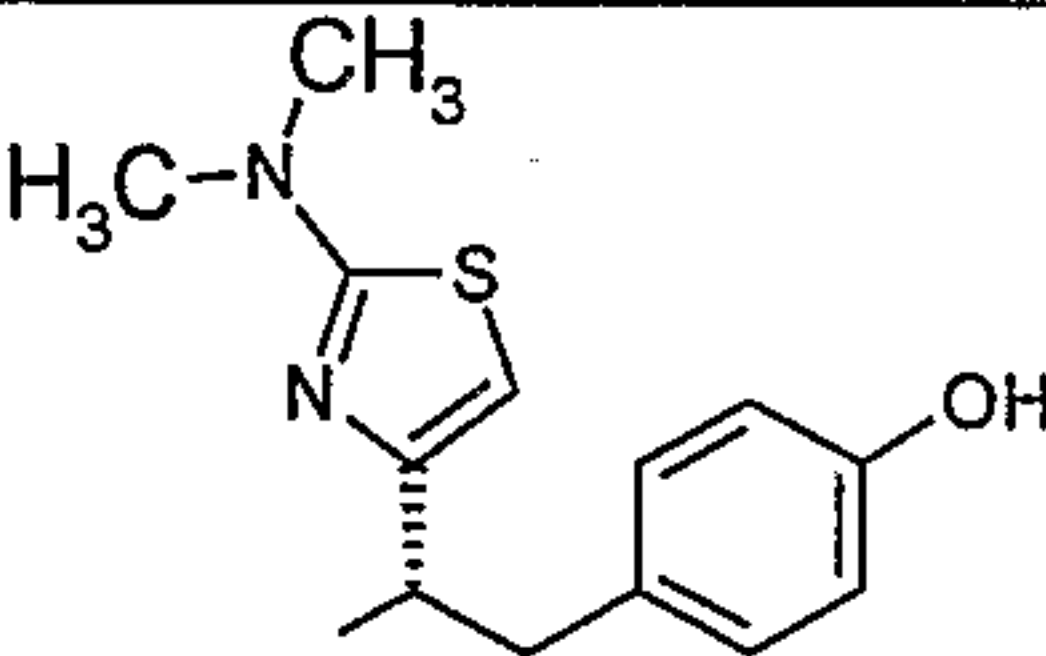
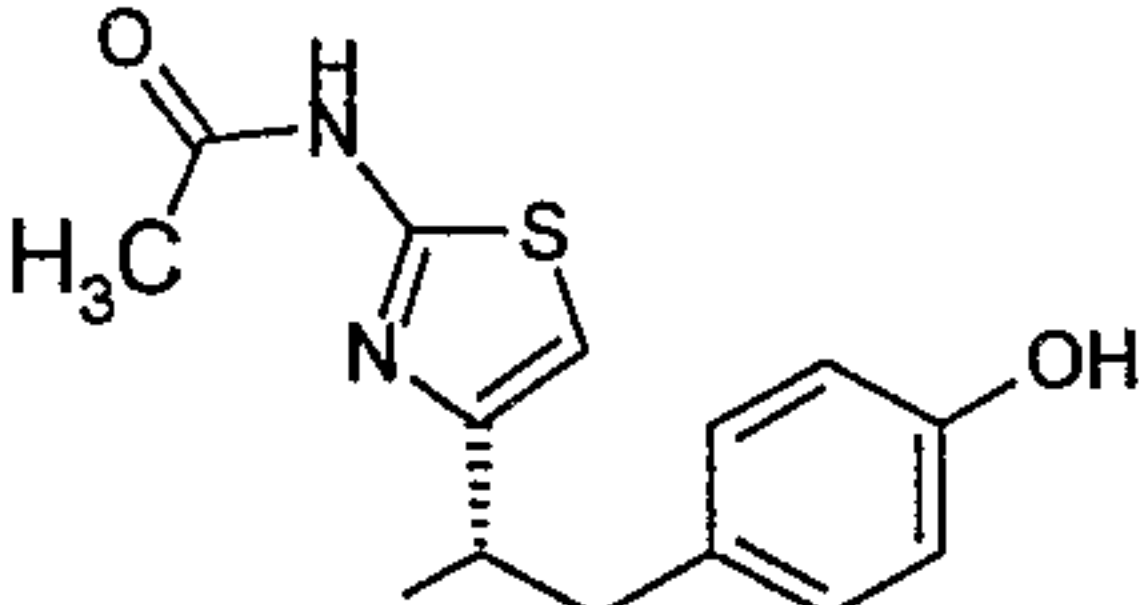
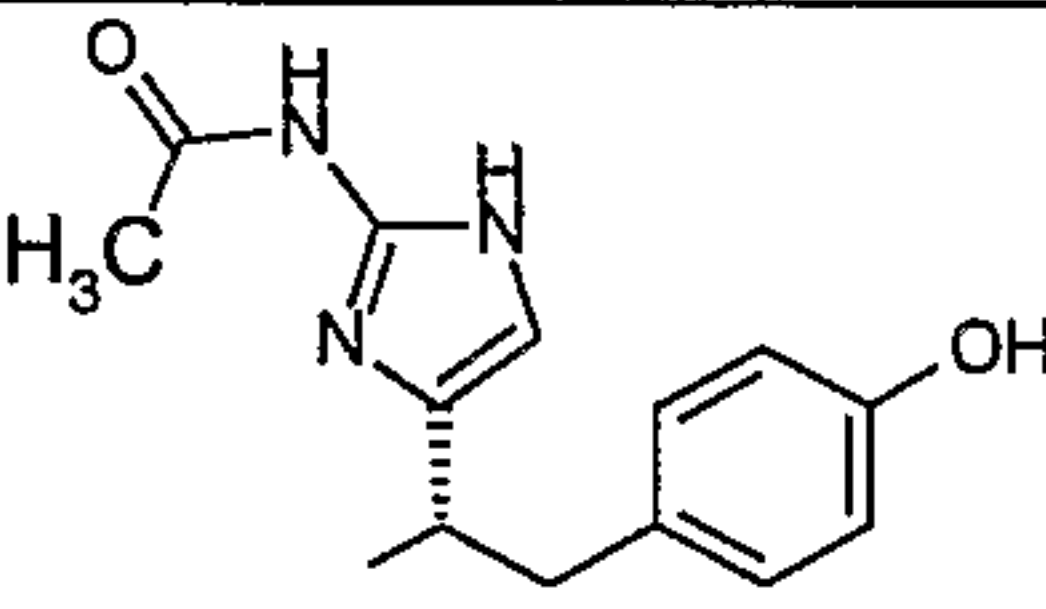
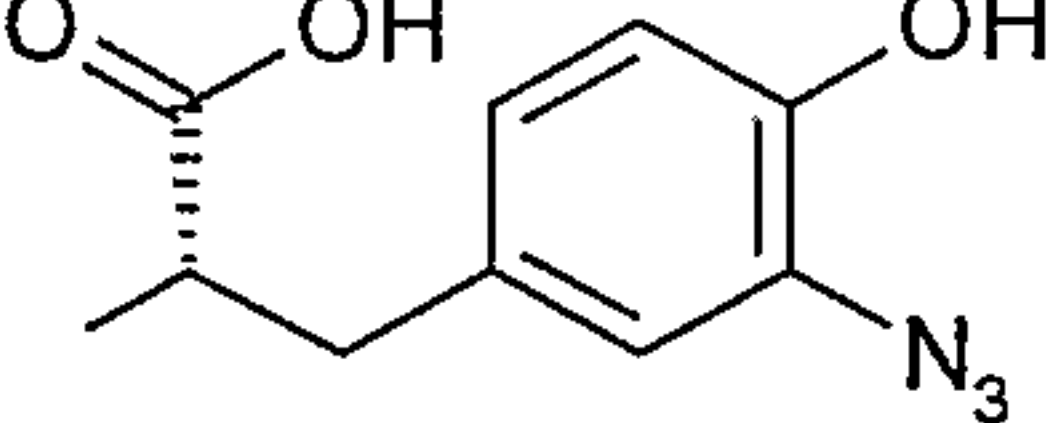
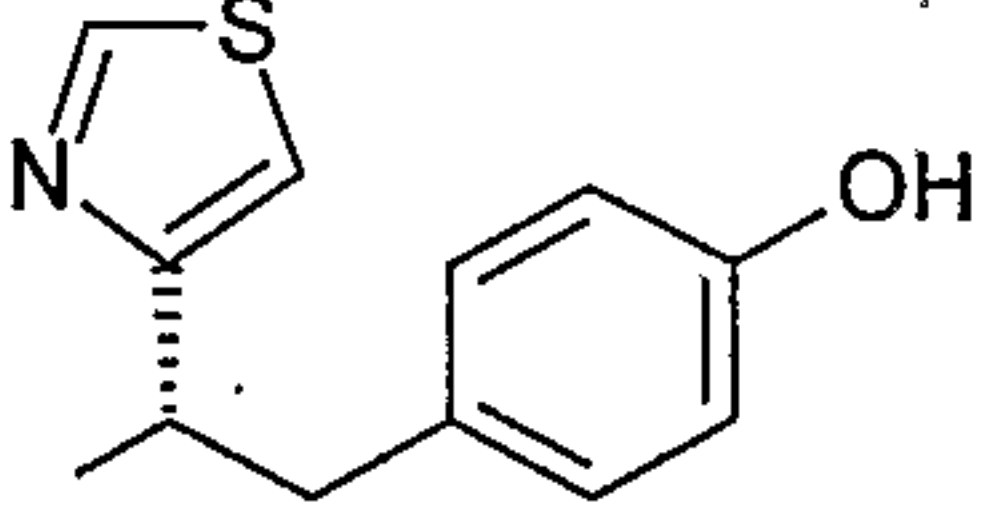
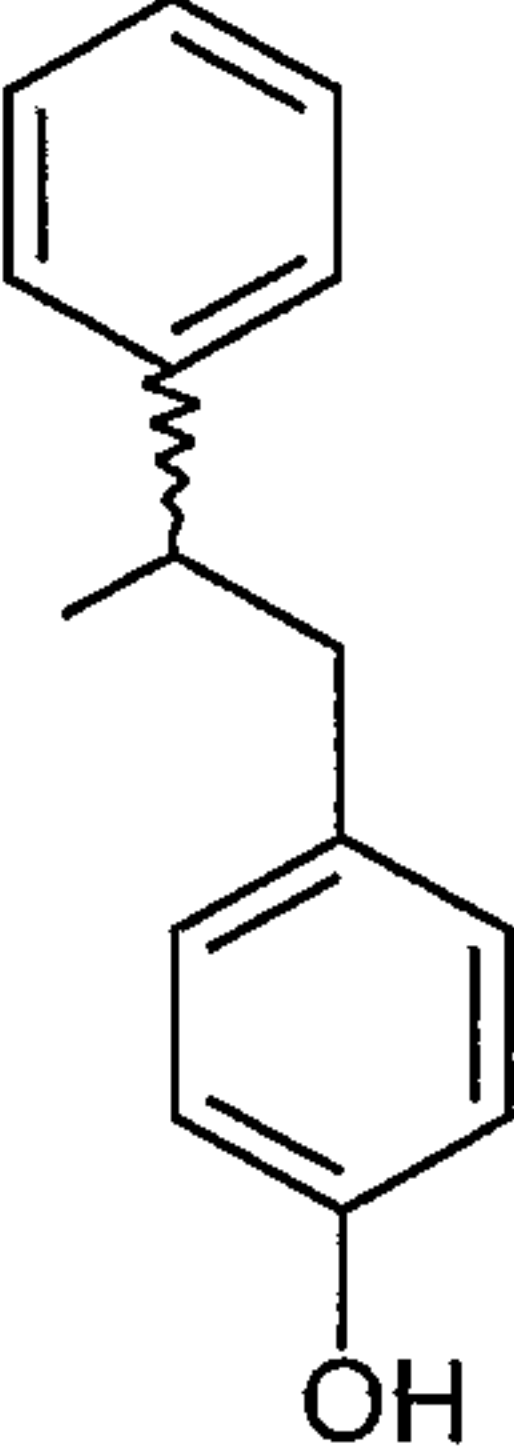
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1210	A		556.2(MH ⁺)
1211	A		522.3(MH ⁺)
1212	A		550.3(MH ⁺)
1213	A		522.3(MH ⁺)
1214	A		550.3(MH ⁺)

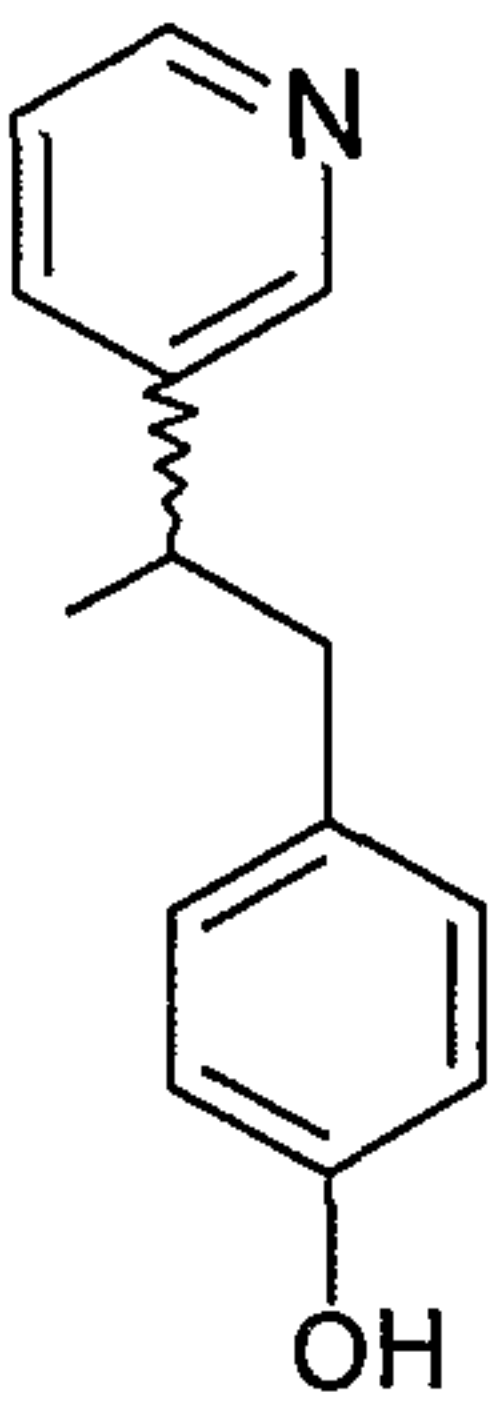
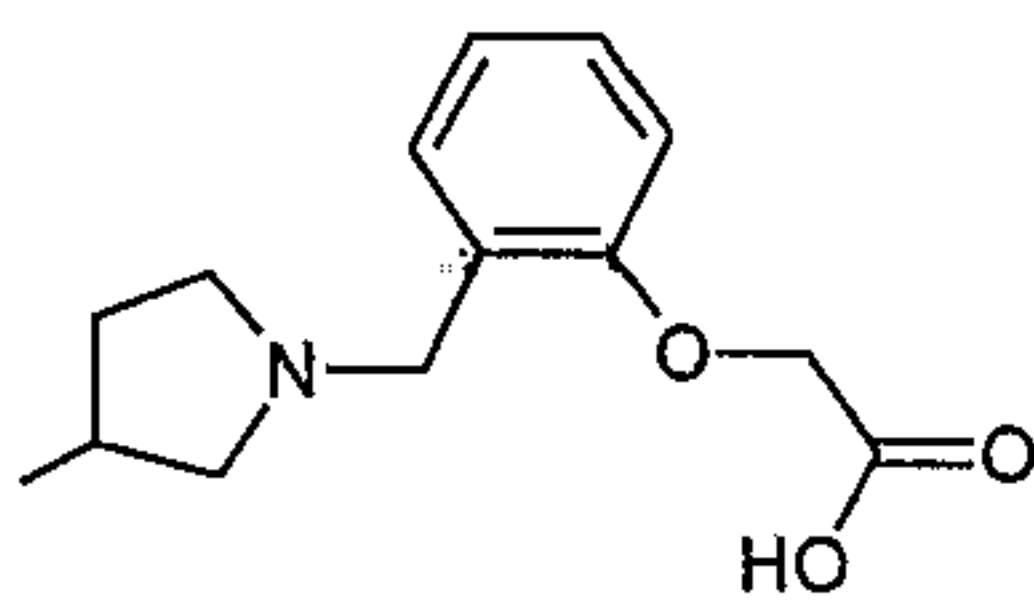
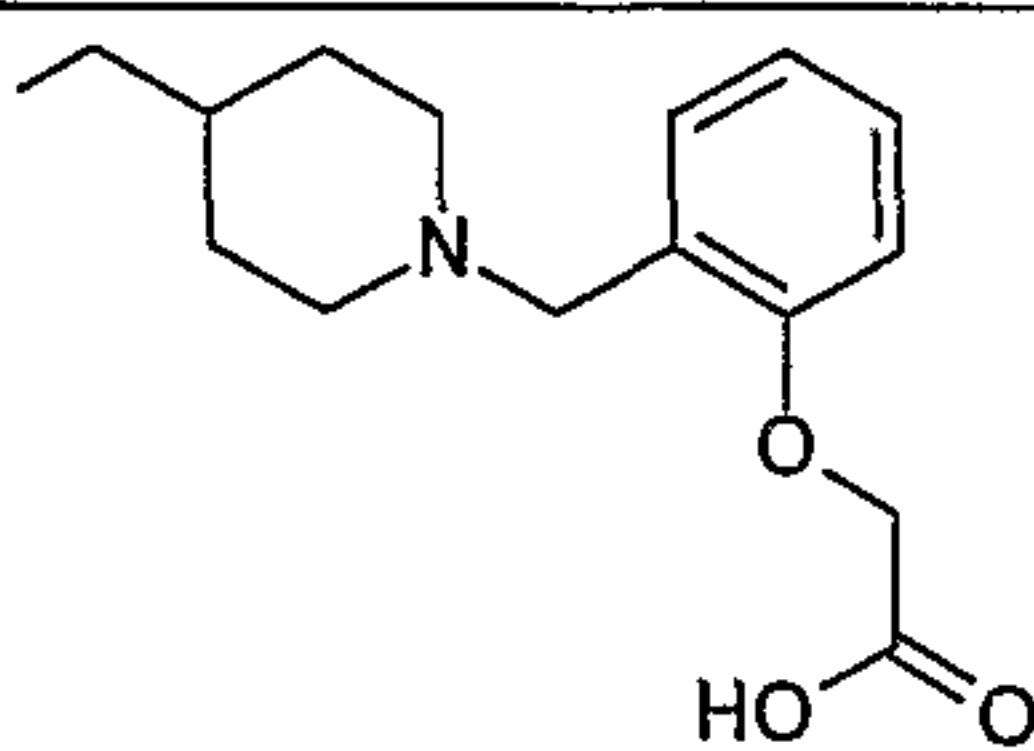
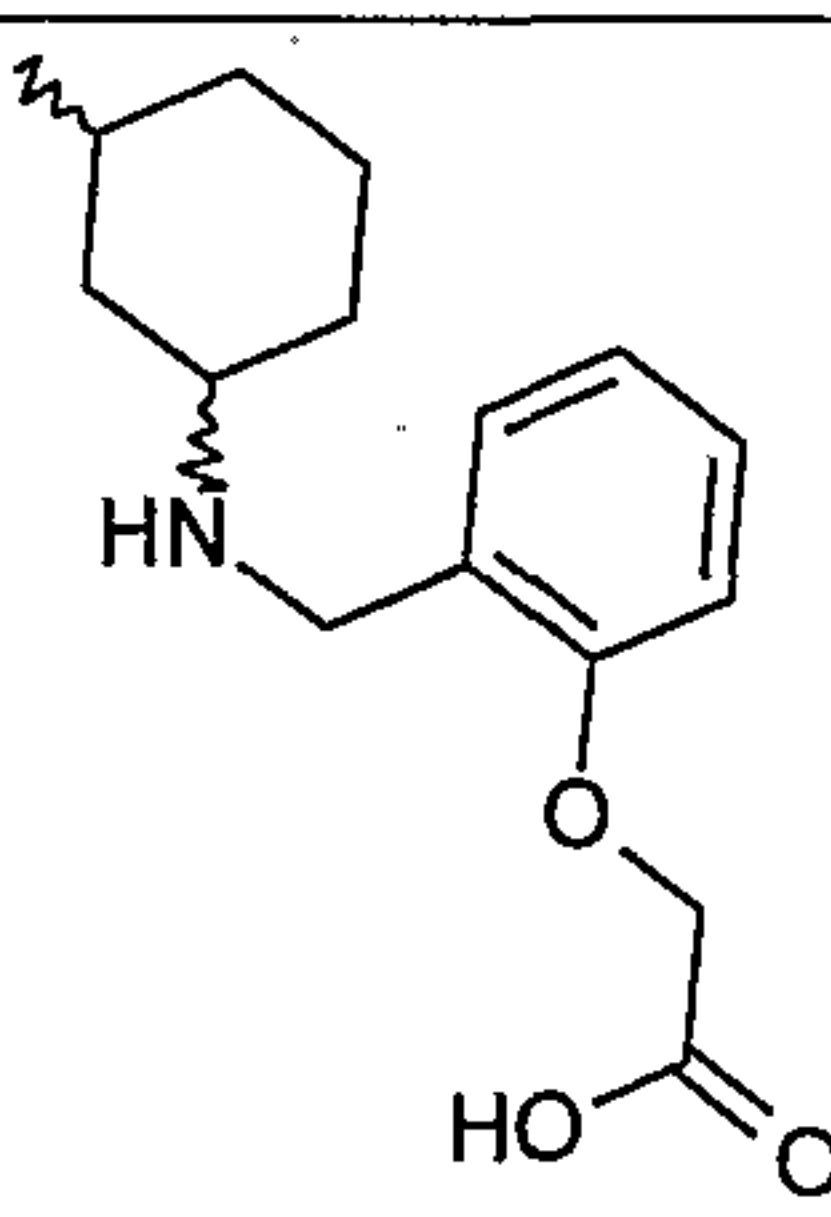
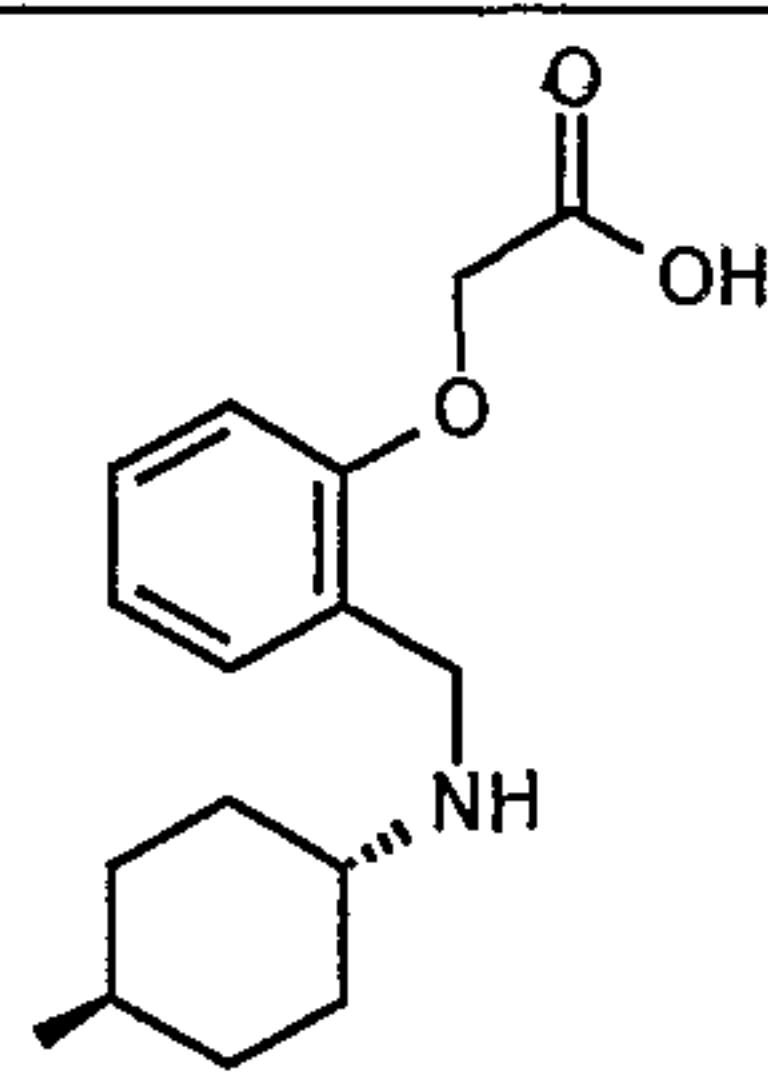
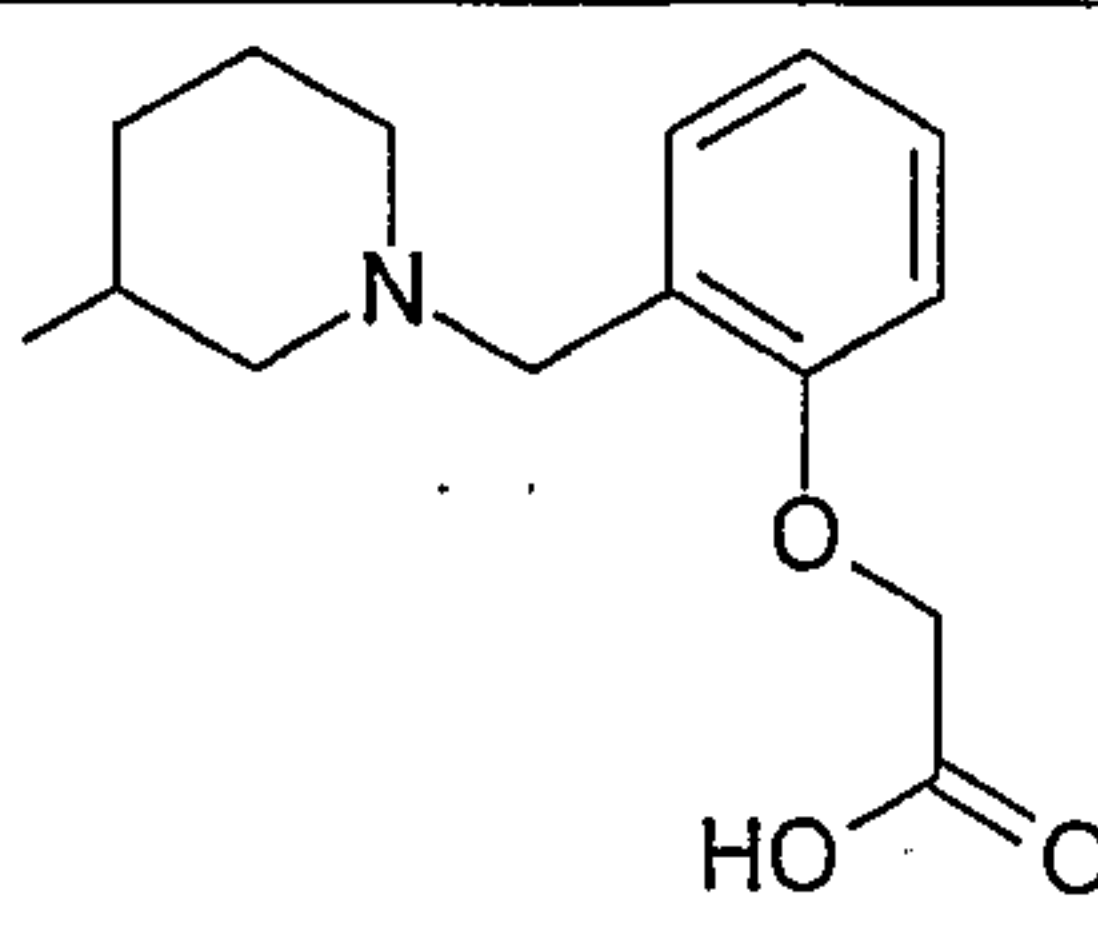
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1215	A		522.3(MH ⁺)
1216	A		550.3(MH ⁺)
1217	A		536.3(MH ⁺)
1218	A		508.3(MH ⁺)
1219	A		536.3(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1220	A		479.3(MH ⁺)
1221	A		507.3(MH ⁺)
1222	A		507.3(MH ⁺)
1223	A		519.3(MH ⁺)
1224	A		561.3(MH ⁺)

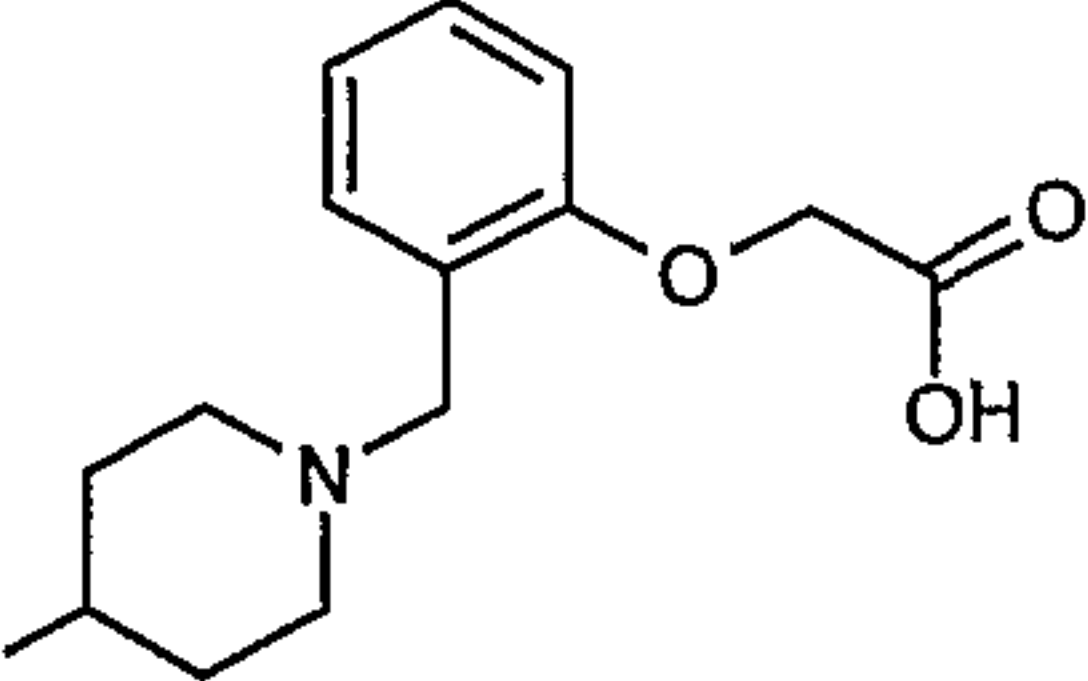
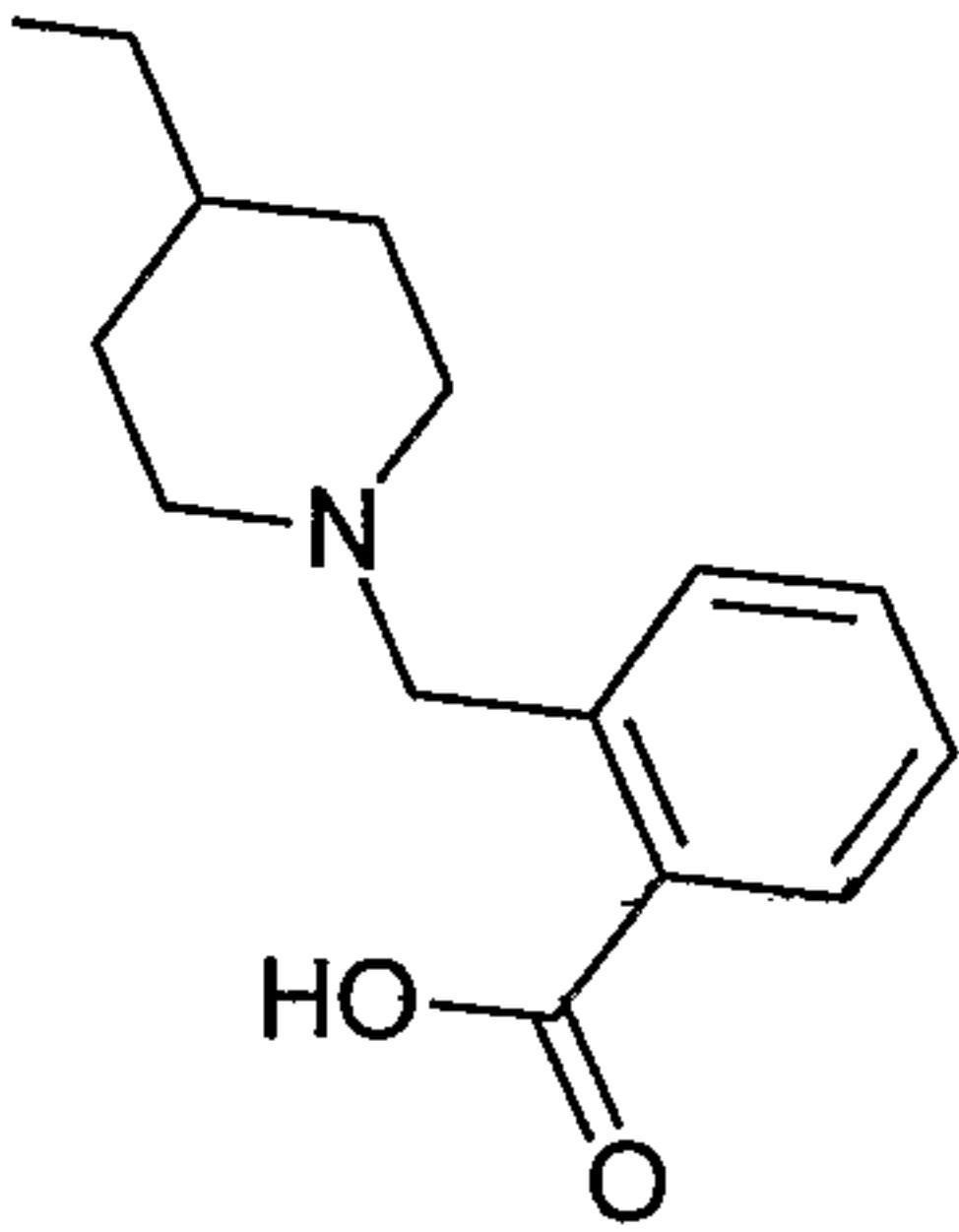
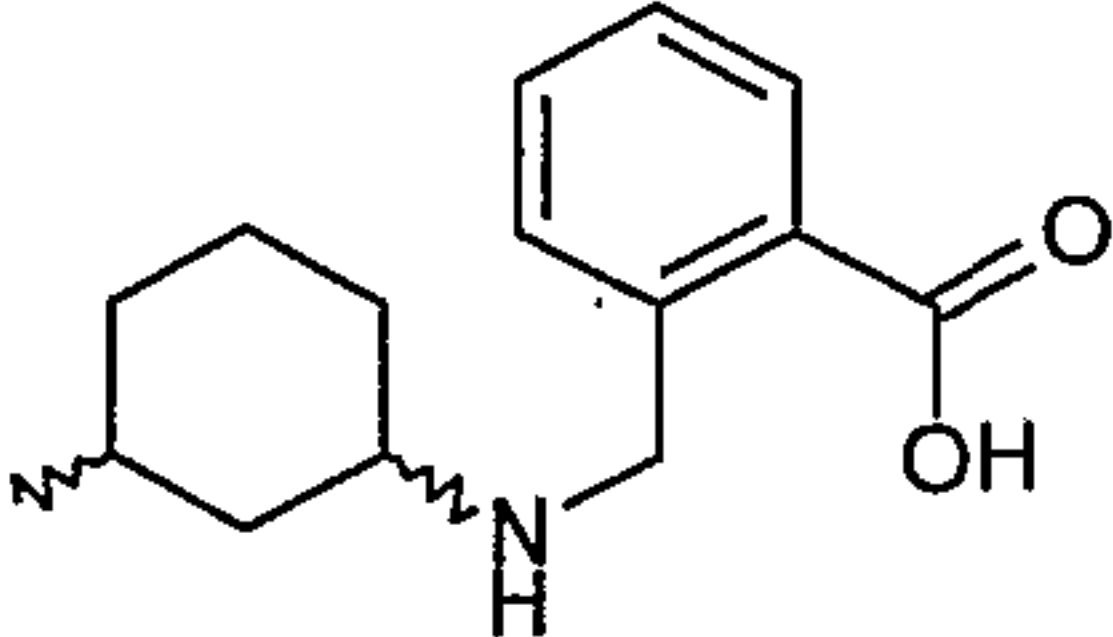
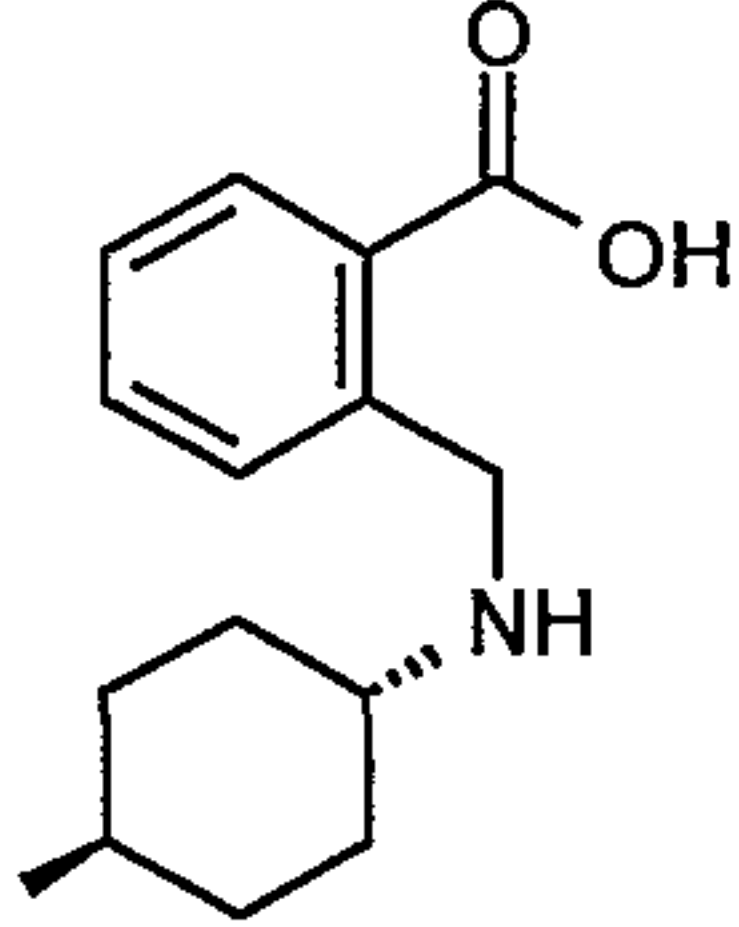
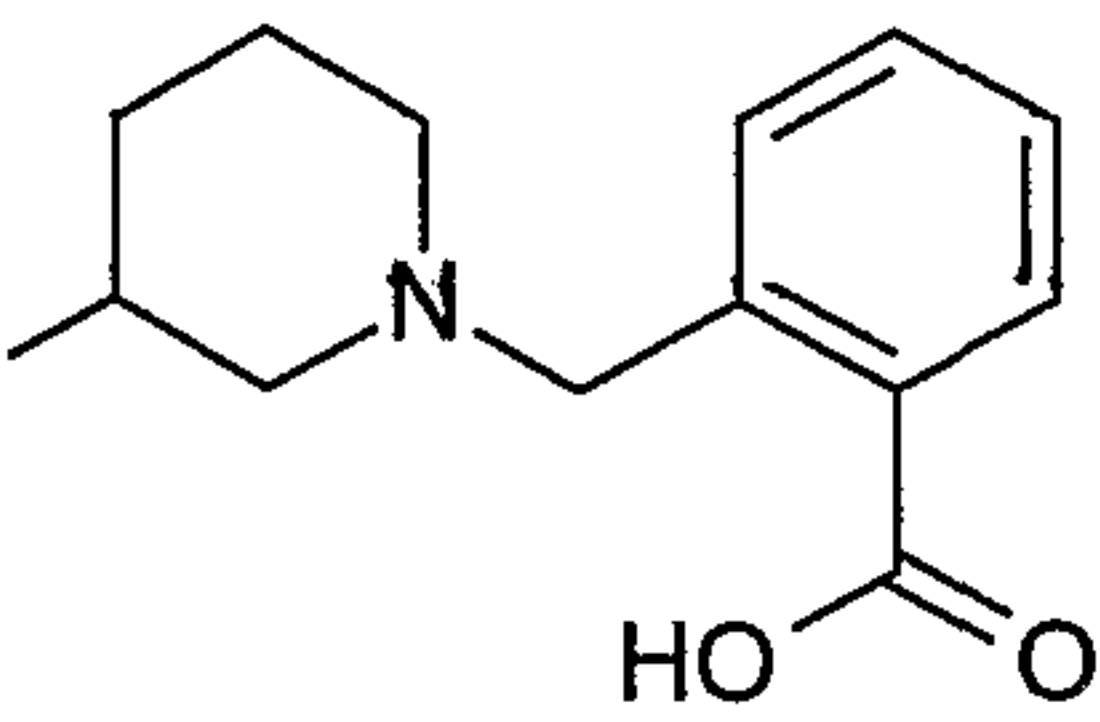
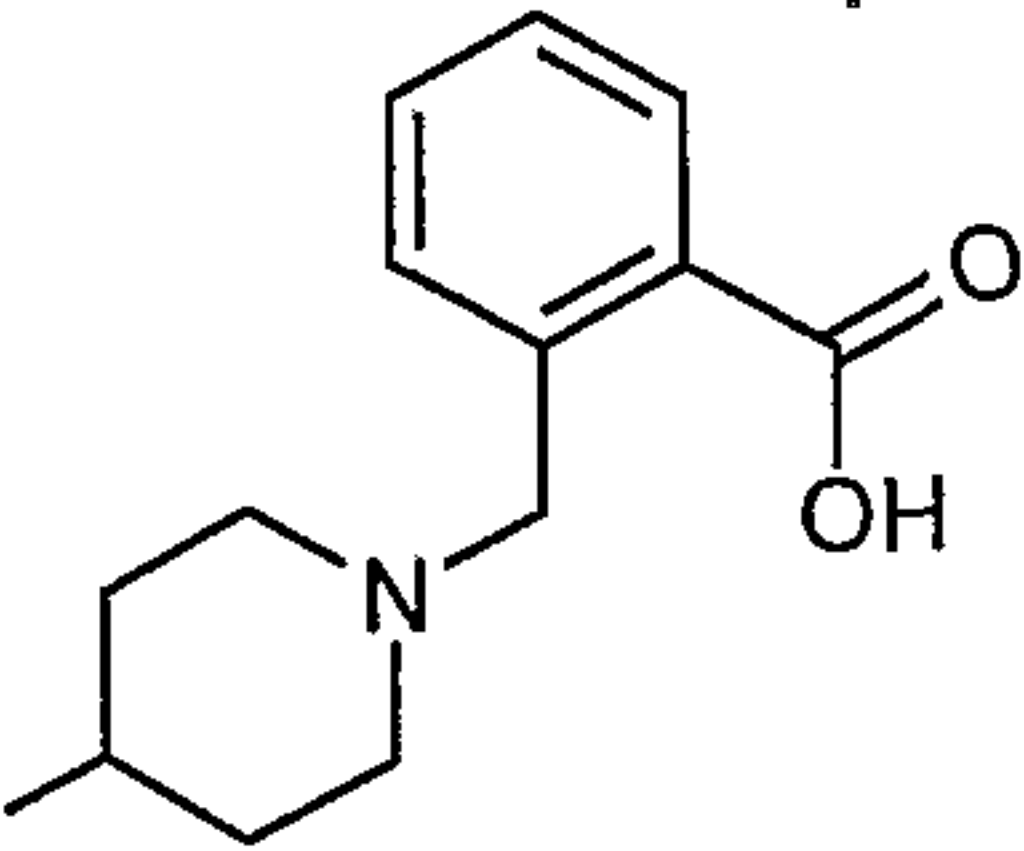
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1225	B		561.3(MH ⁺)
1226	B		535.4(MH ⁺)
1227	A		535.4(MH ⁺)
1228	A		519(MH ⁺)
1230	C		488(MH ⁺)

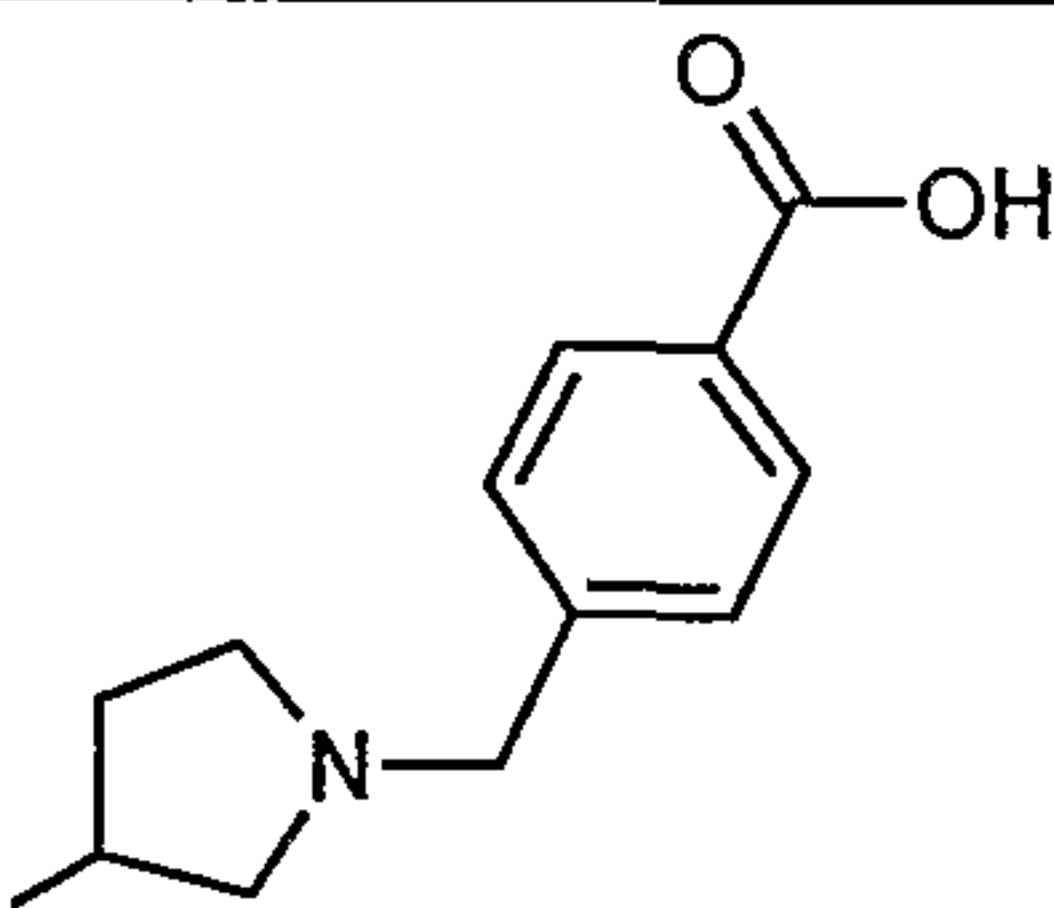
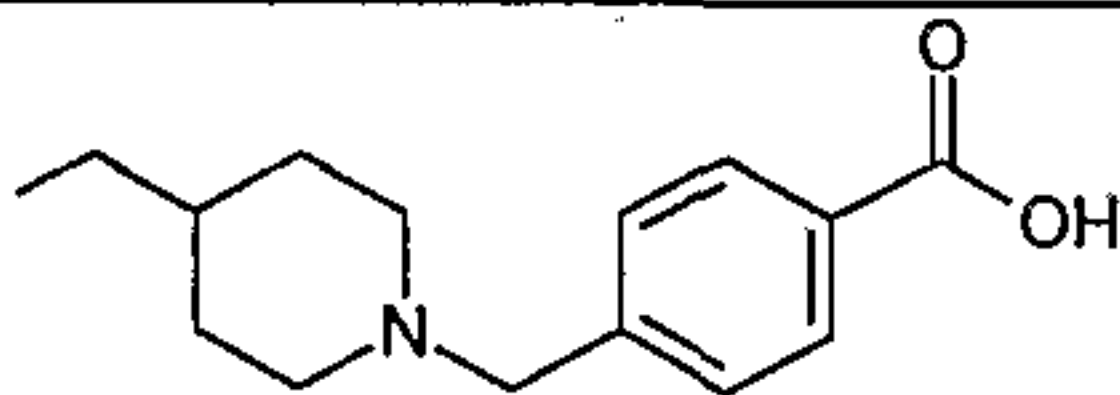
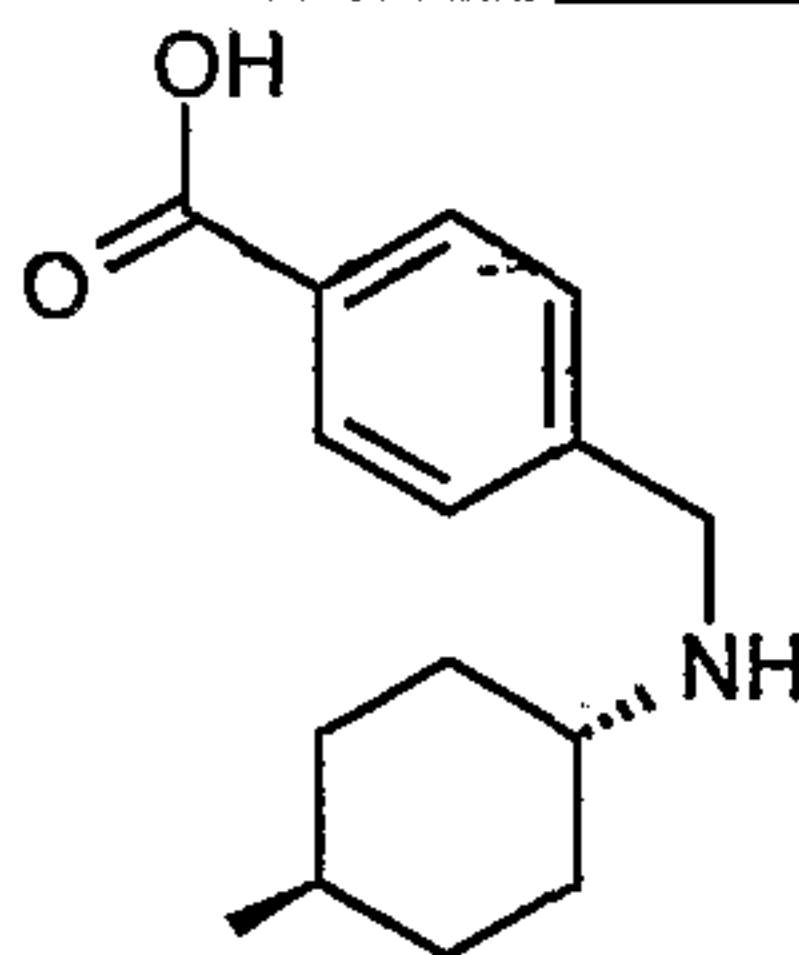
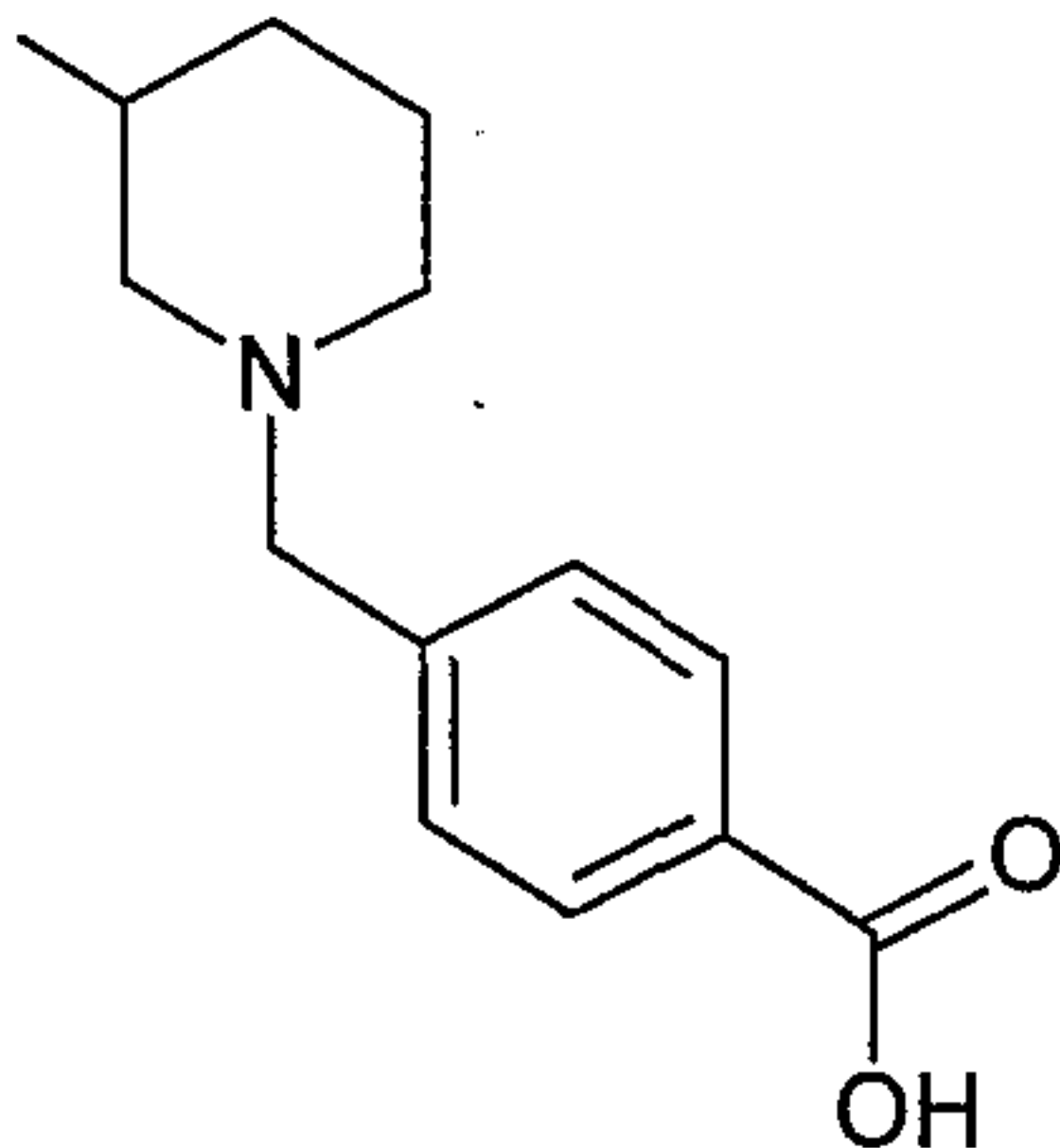
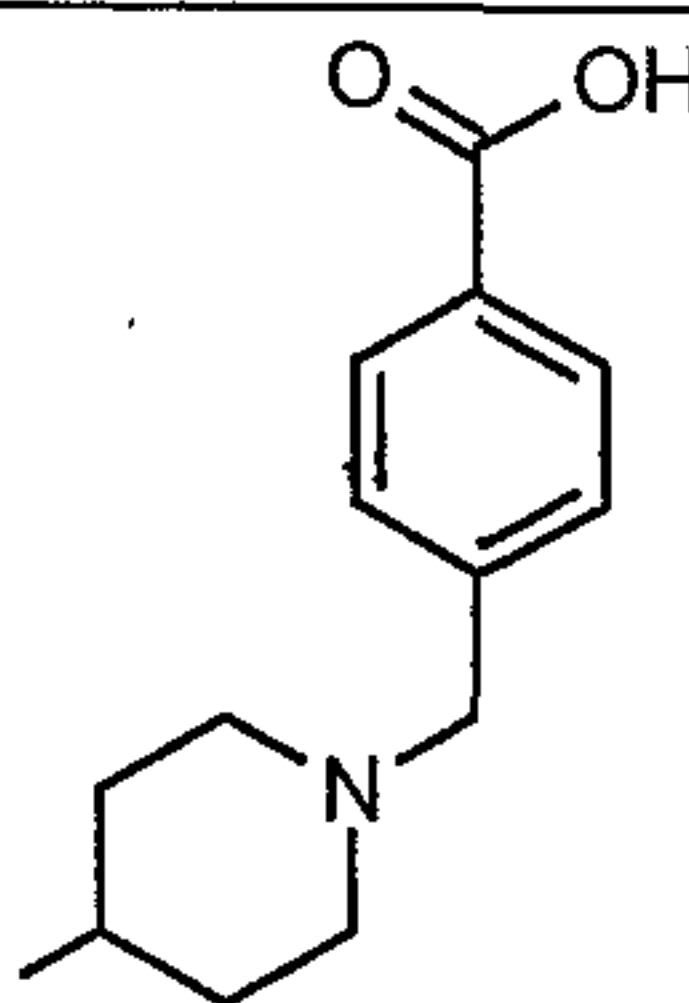
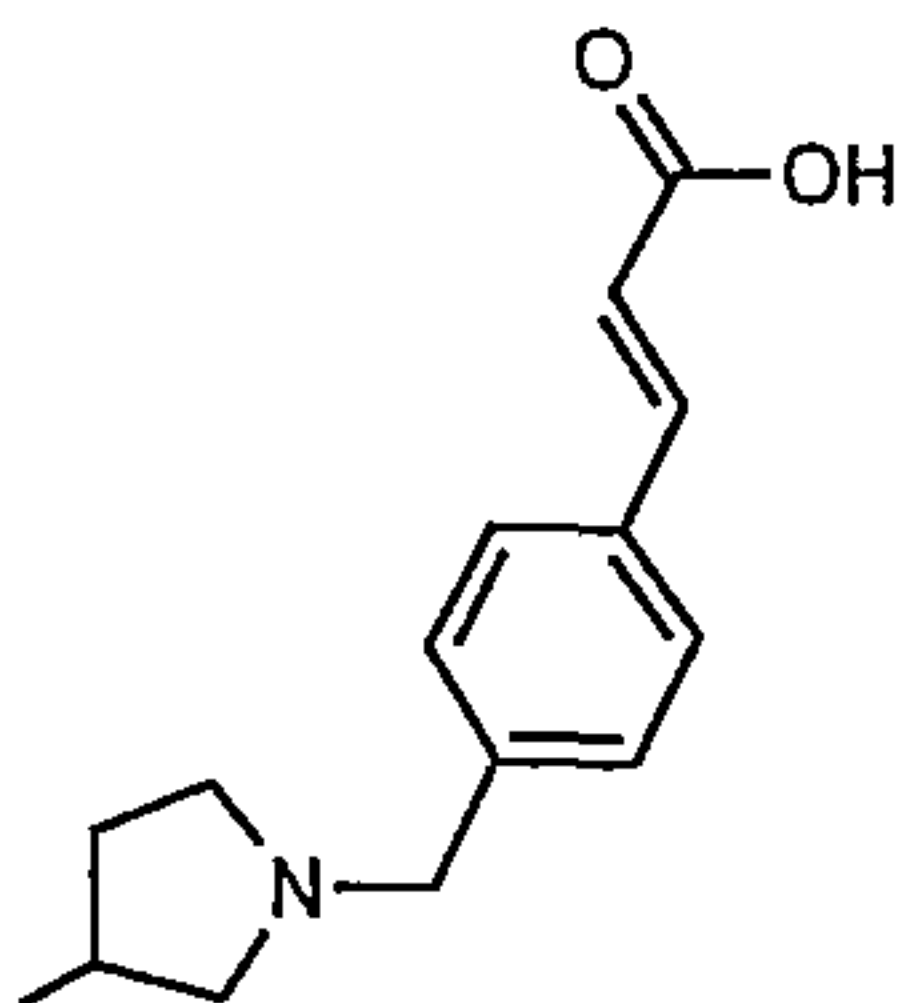
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1231	C		507(MH ⁺)
1233	B		497(MH ⁺)
1236	B		484.3(MH ⁺)
1237	B		458.2(MH ⁺)
1238	A		458.2(MH ⁺)
1239	C		496.2(MH ⁺)

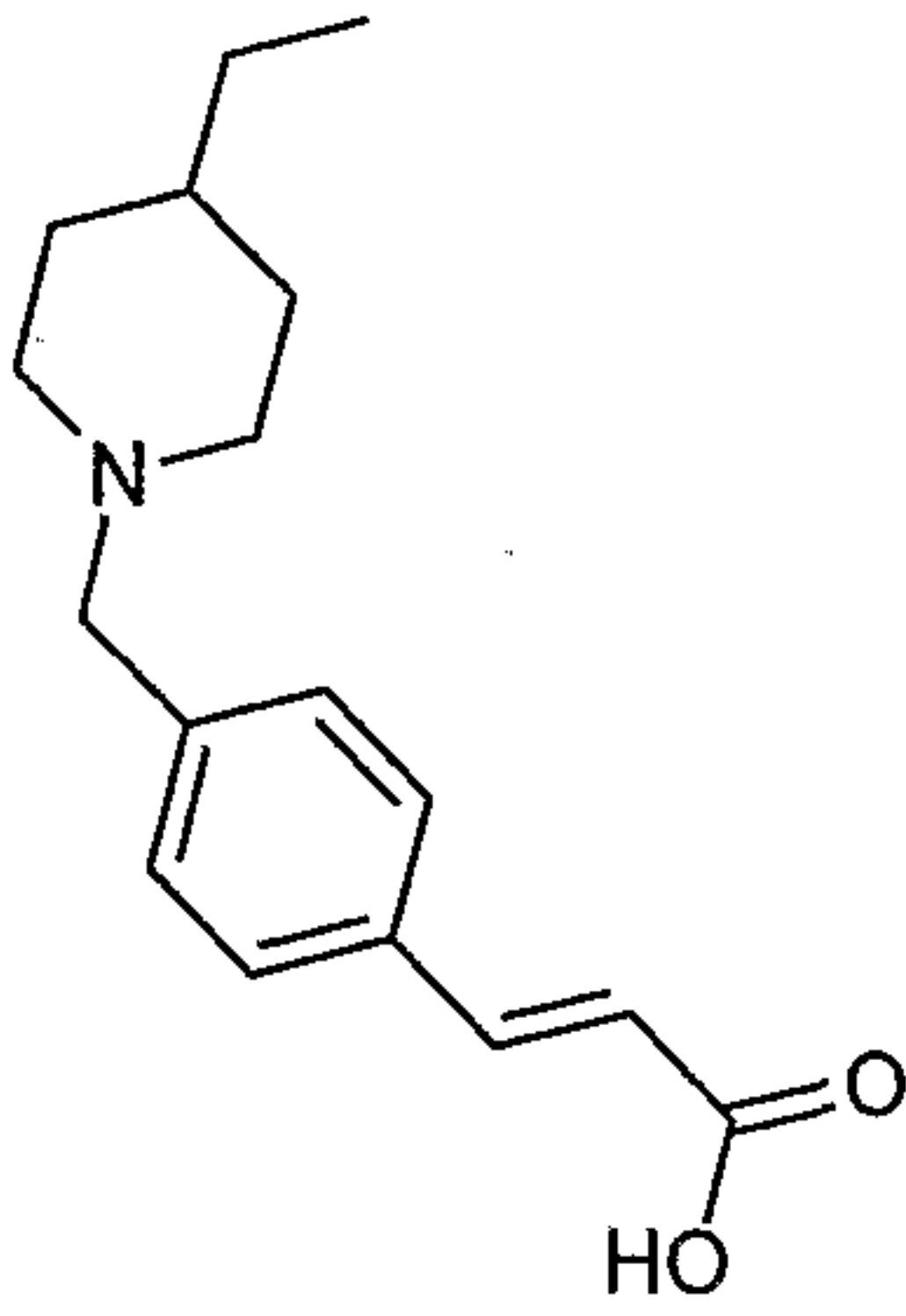
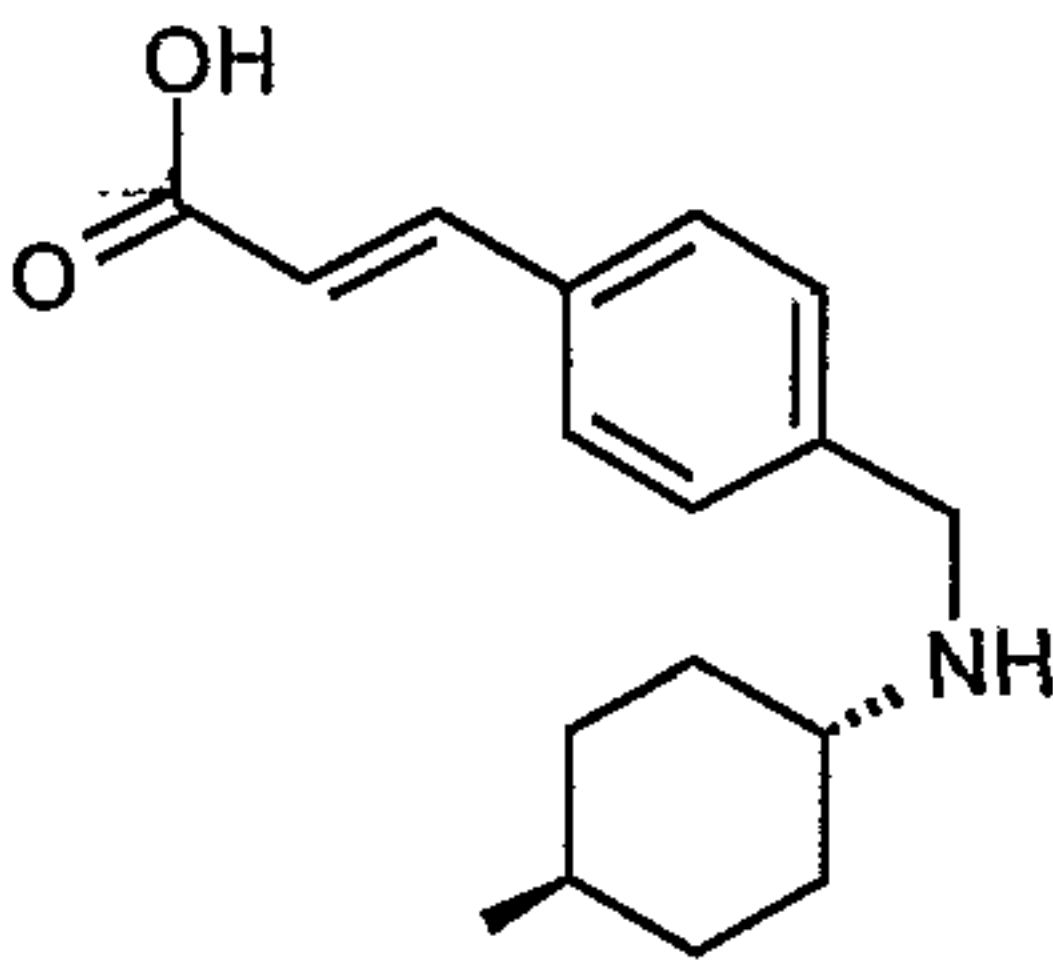
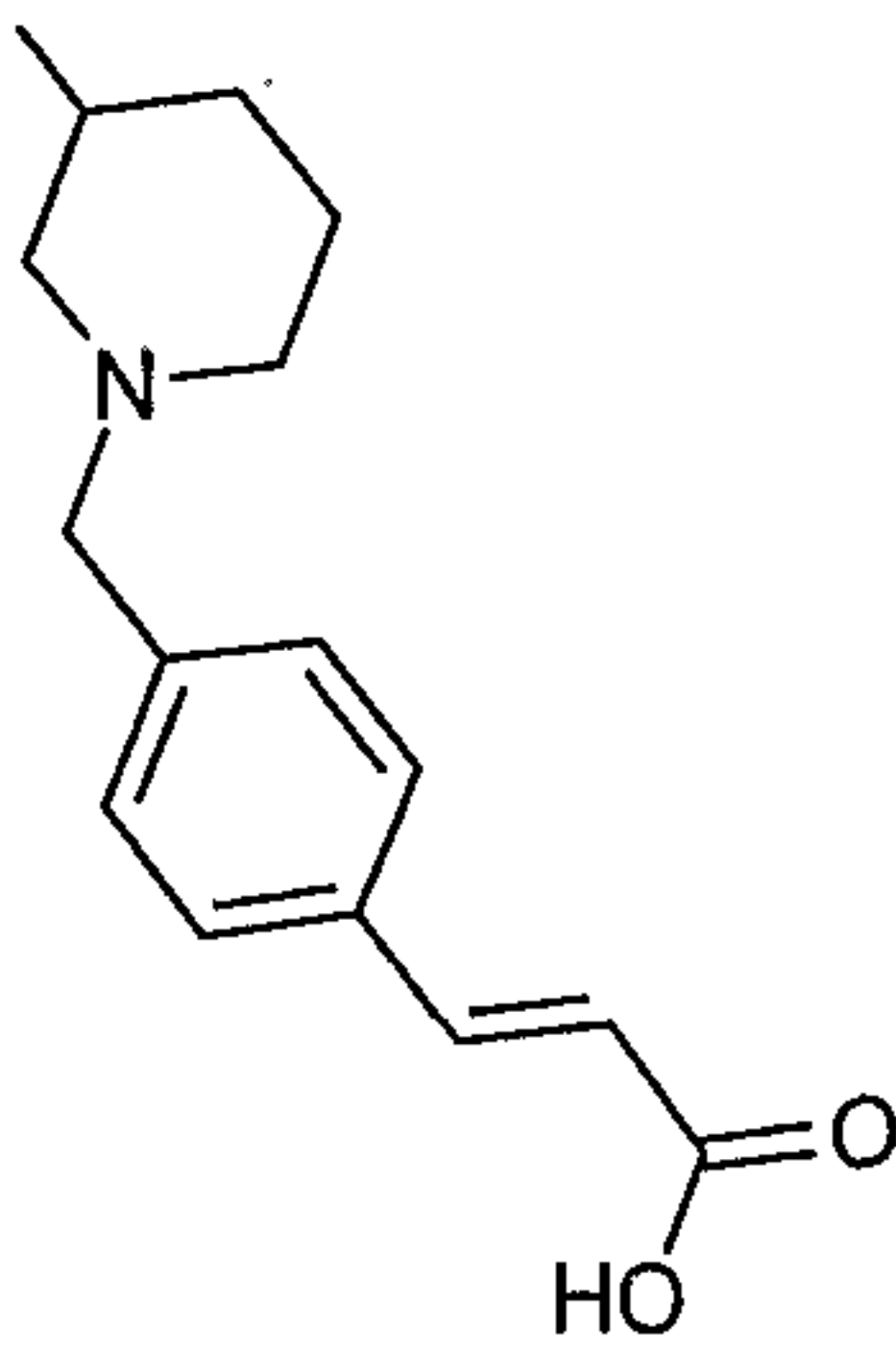
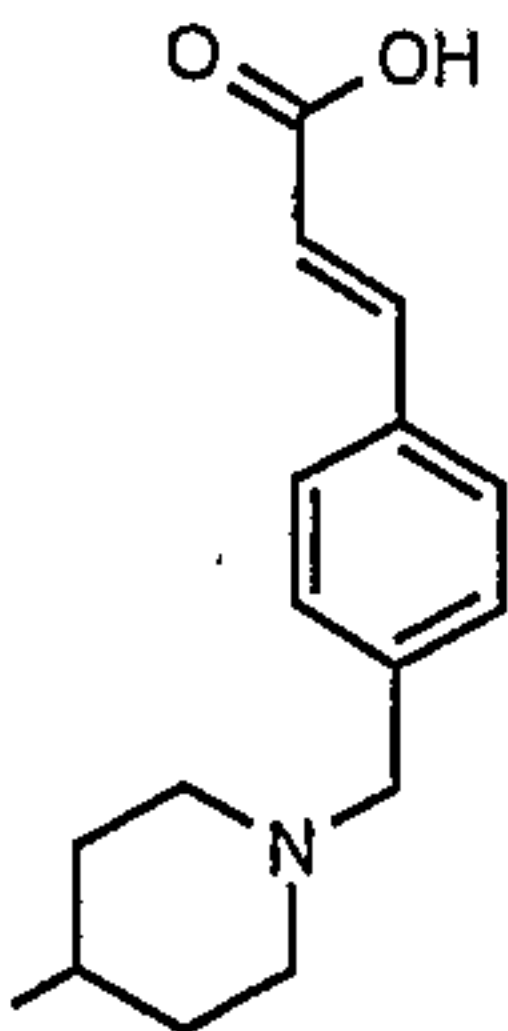
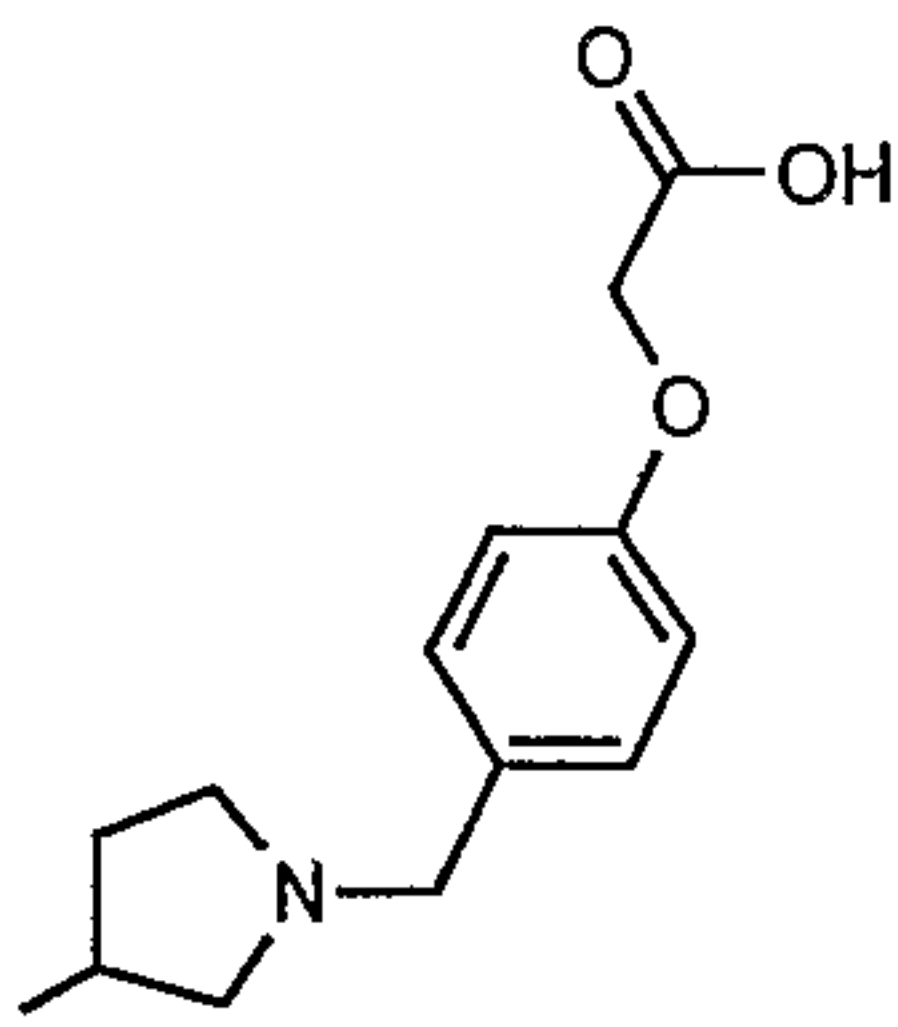
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1240	C		542(MH ⁺)
1241	C		556(MH ⁺)
1242	C		570(MH ⁺)
1243	B		553(MH ⁺)
1248	C		515(MH ⁺)
1250	C		513(MH ⁺)
1259	B		506(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1260	C		507(MH ⁺)
1261	A		543.2(MH ⁺)
1262	A		571.3(MH ⁺)
1263	B		571.3(MH ⁺)
1264	B		571.3(MH ⁺)
1265	C		557.3(MH ⁺)

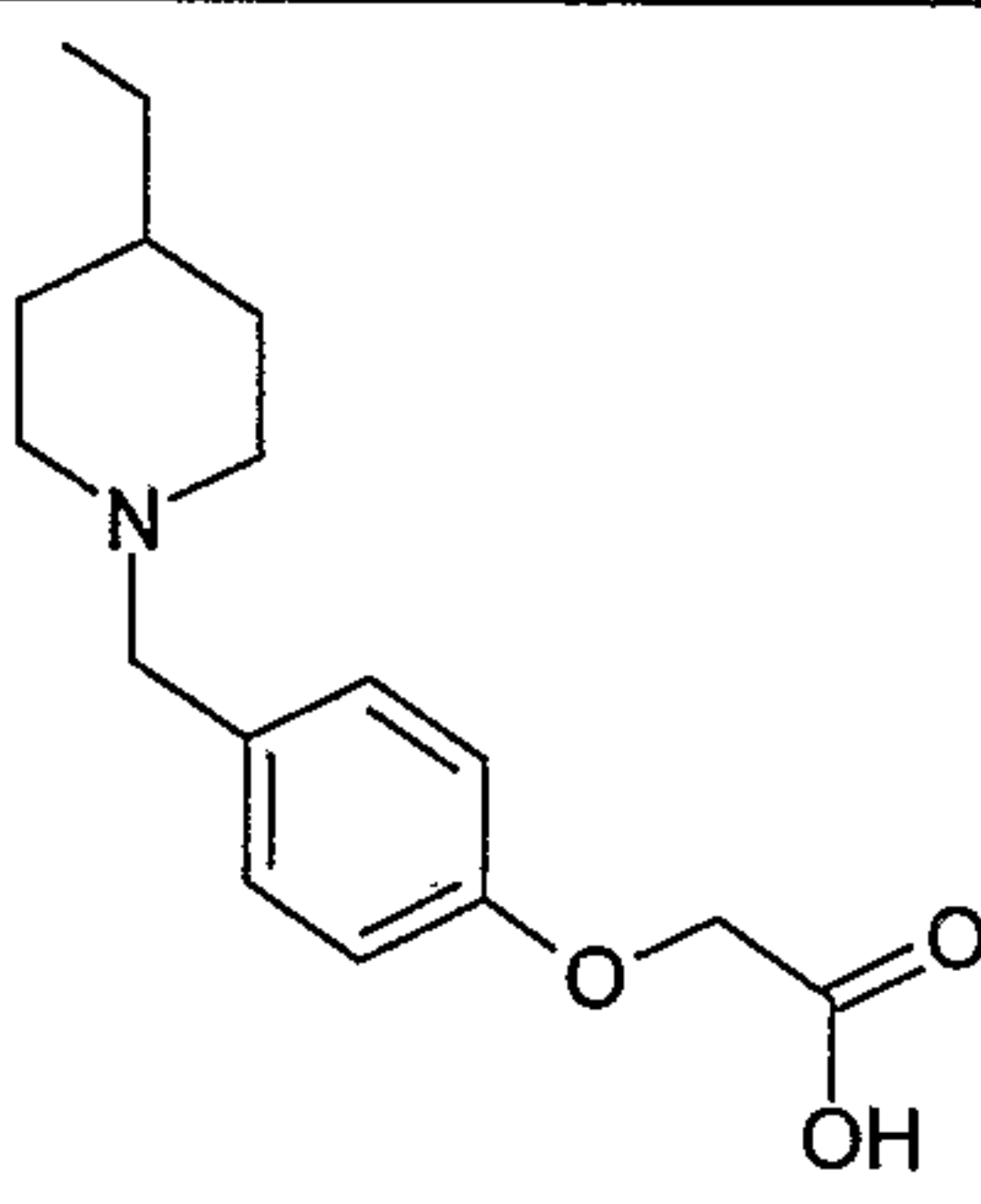
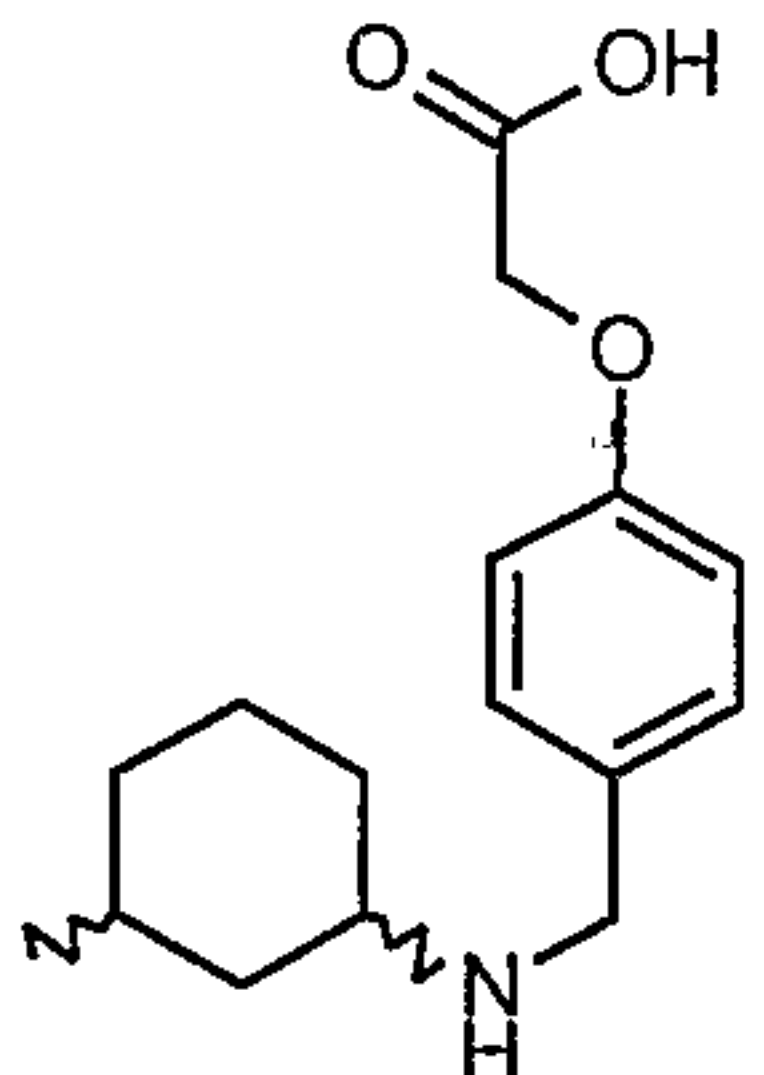
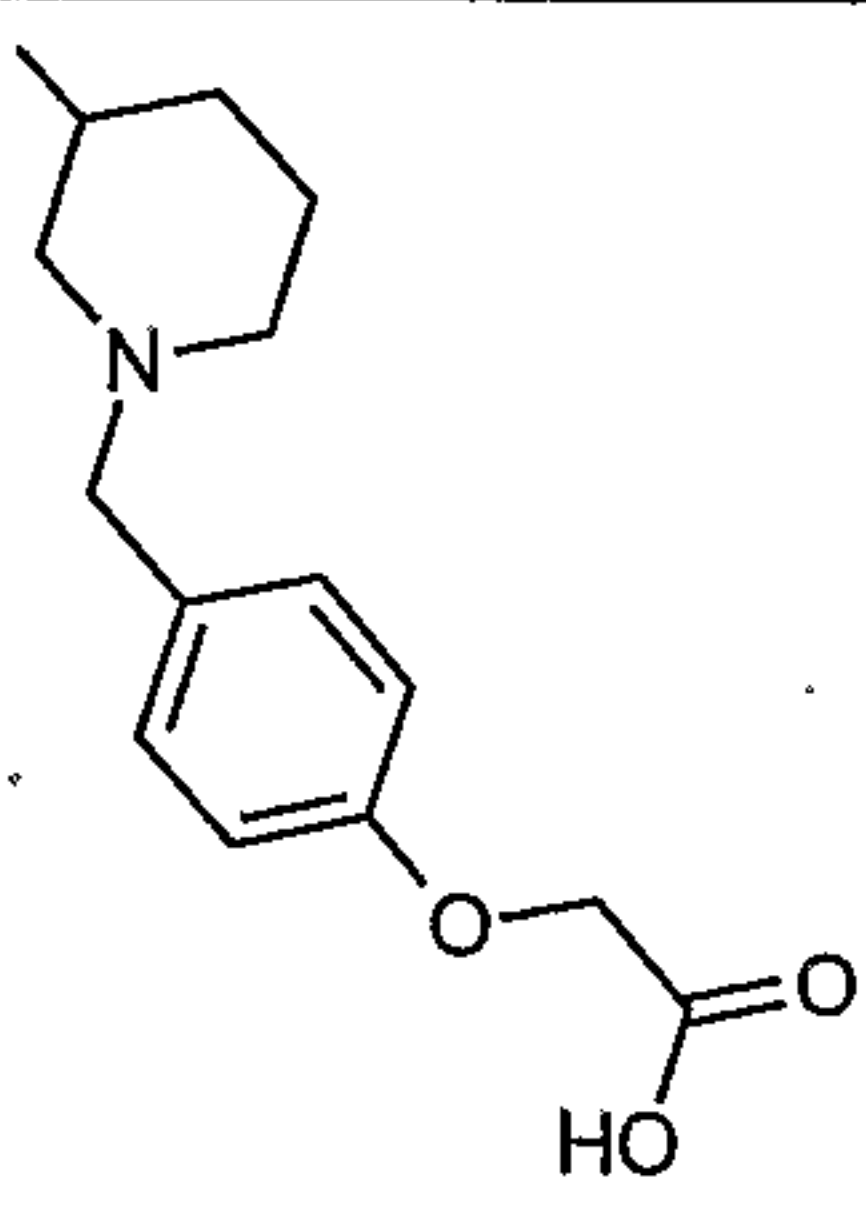
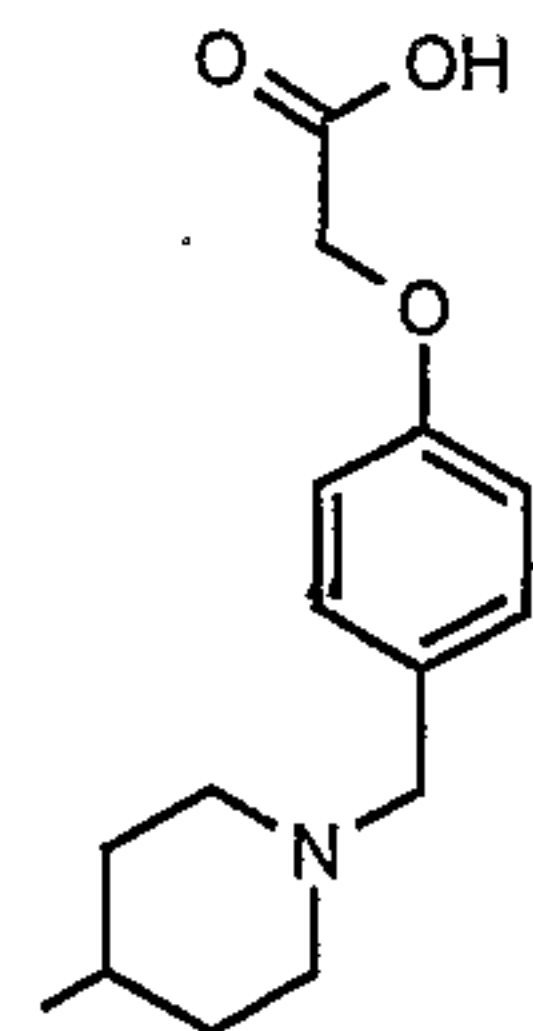
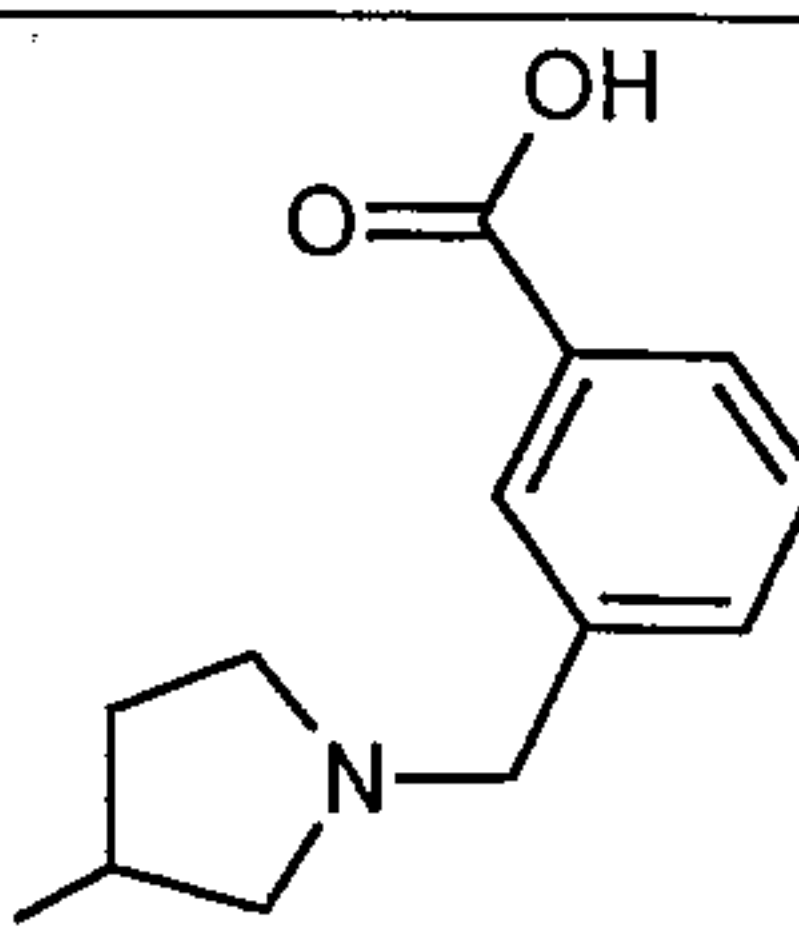
200

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1266	B		557.3(MH ⁺)
1267	A		541.3(MH ⁺)
1268	A		541.3(MH ⁺)
1269	A		541.3(MH ⁺)
1270	A		527.3(MH ⁺)
1271	A		527.3(MH ⁺)

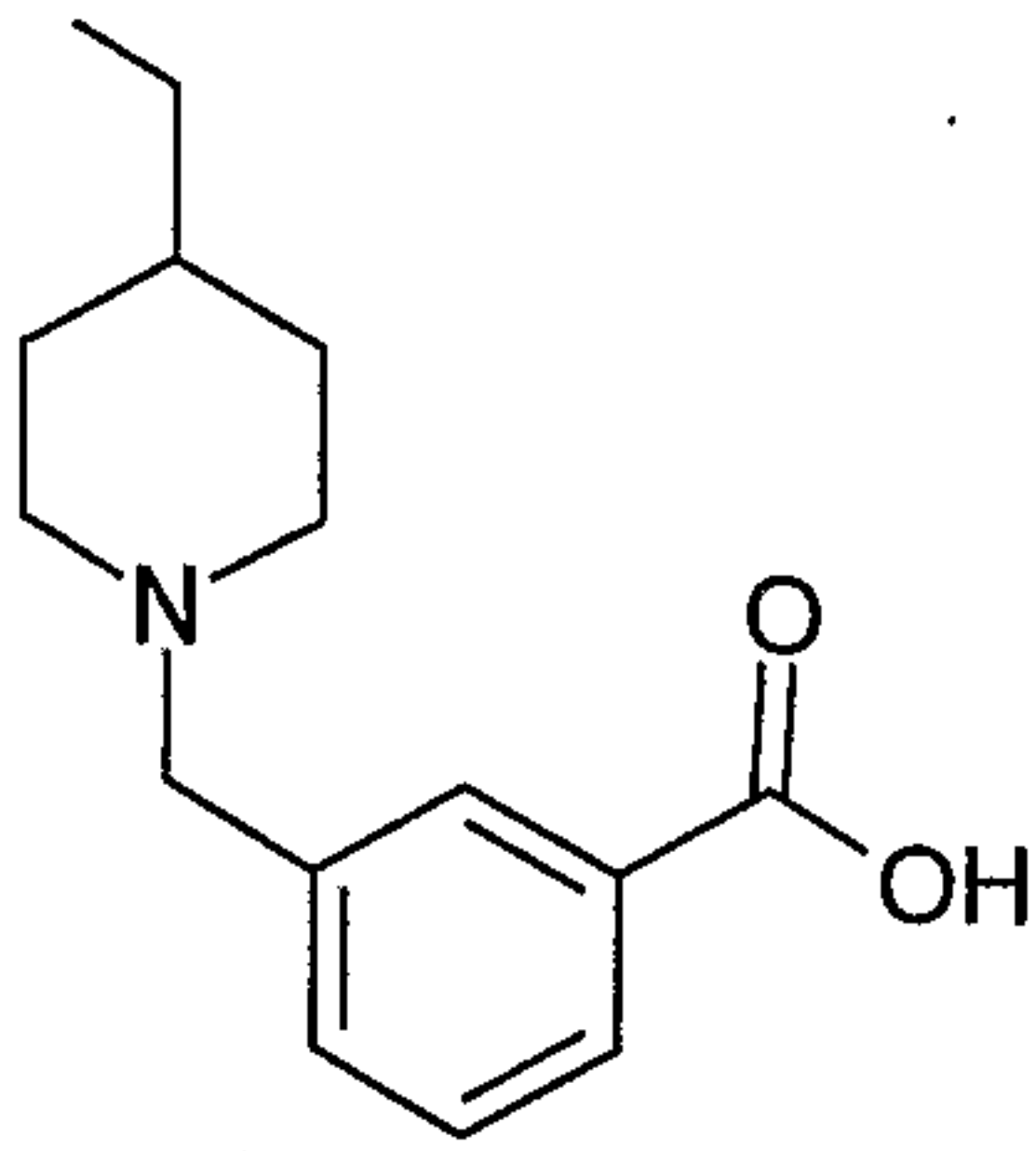
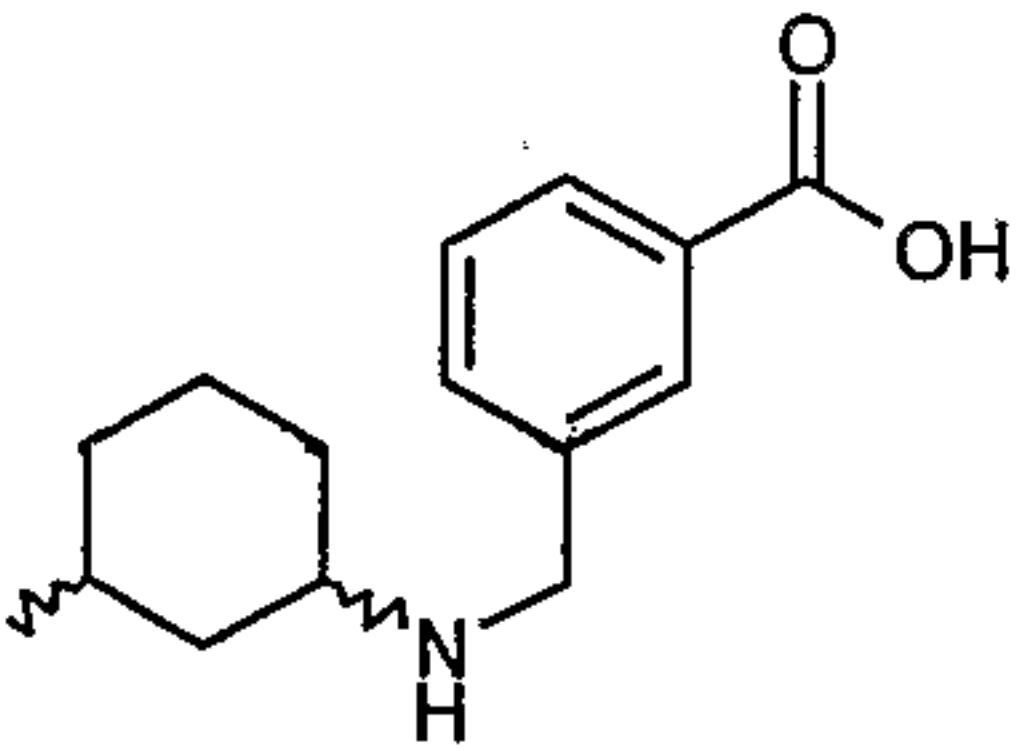
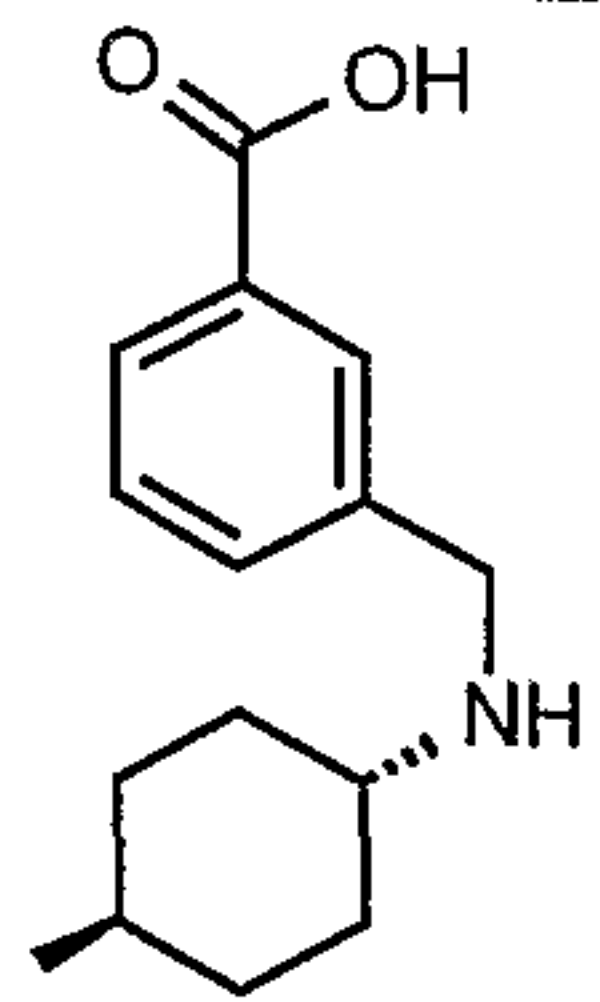
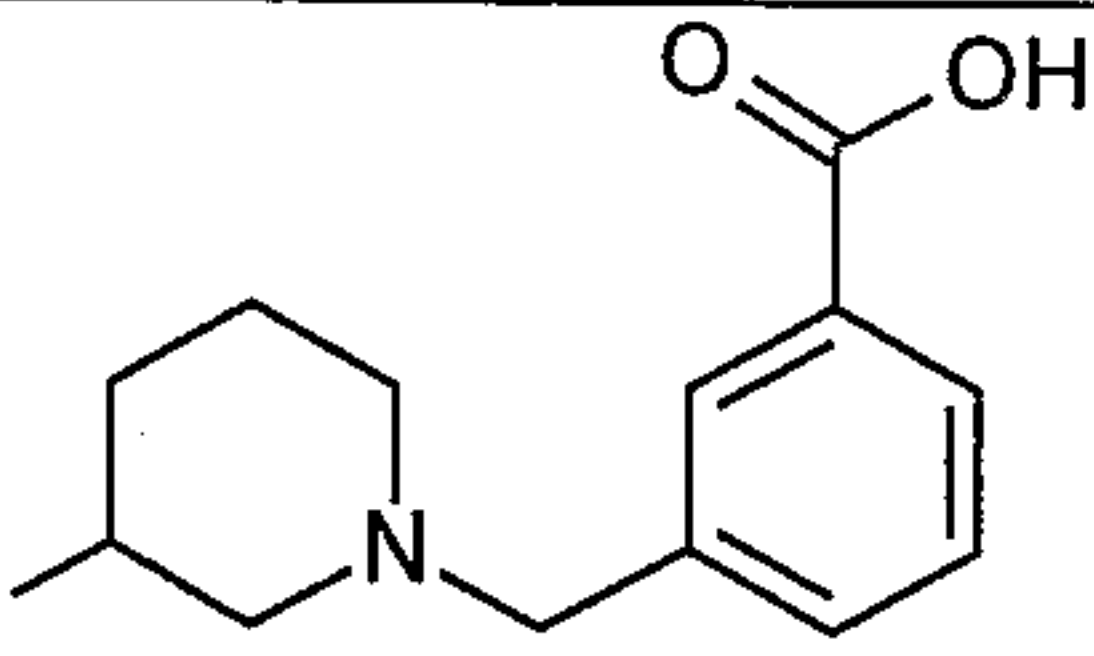
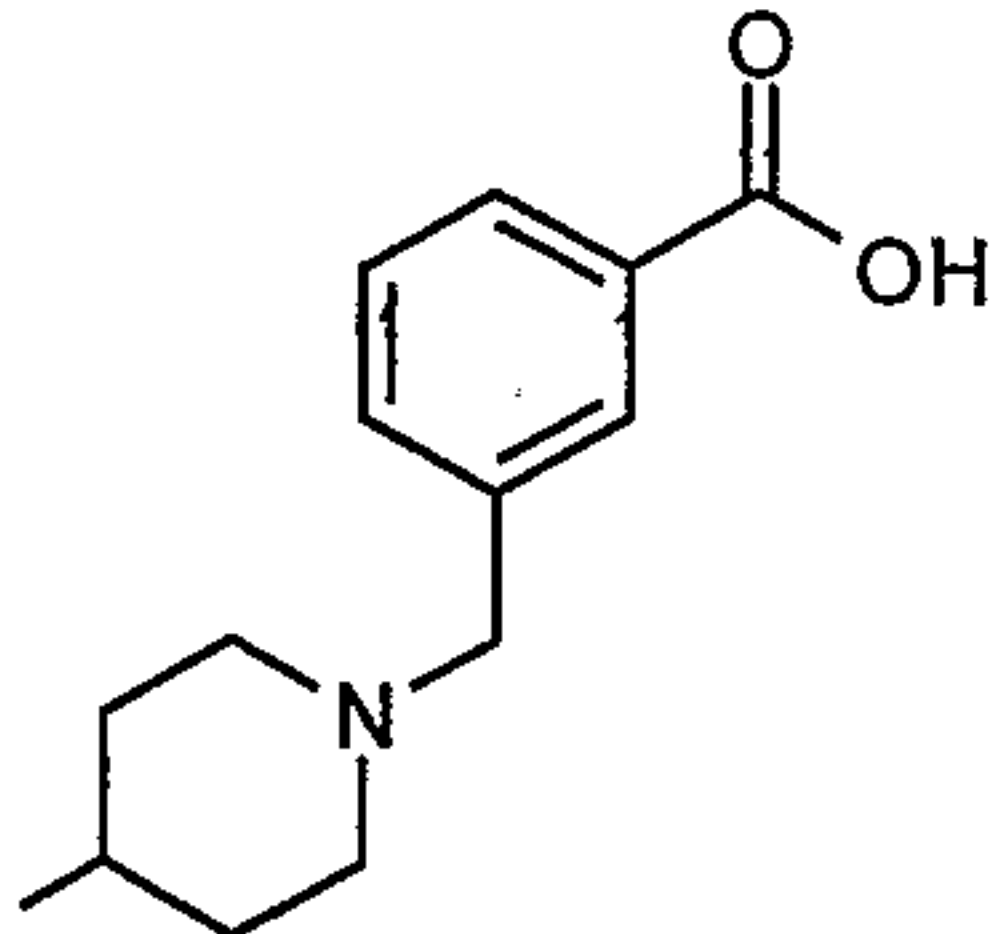
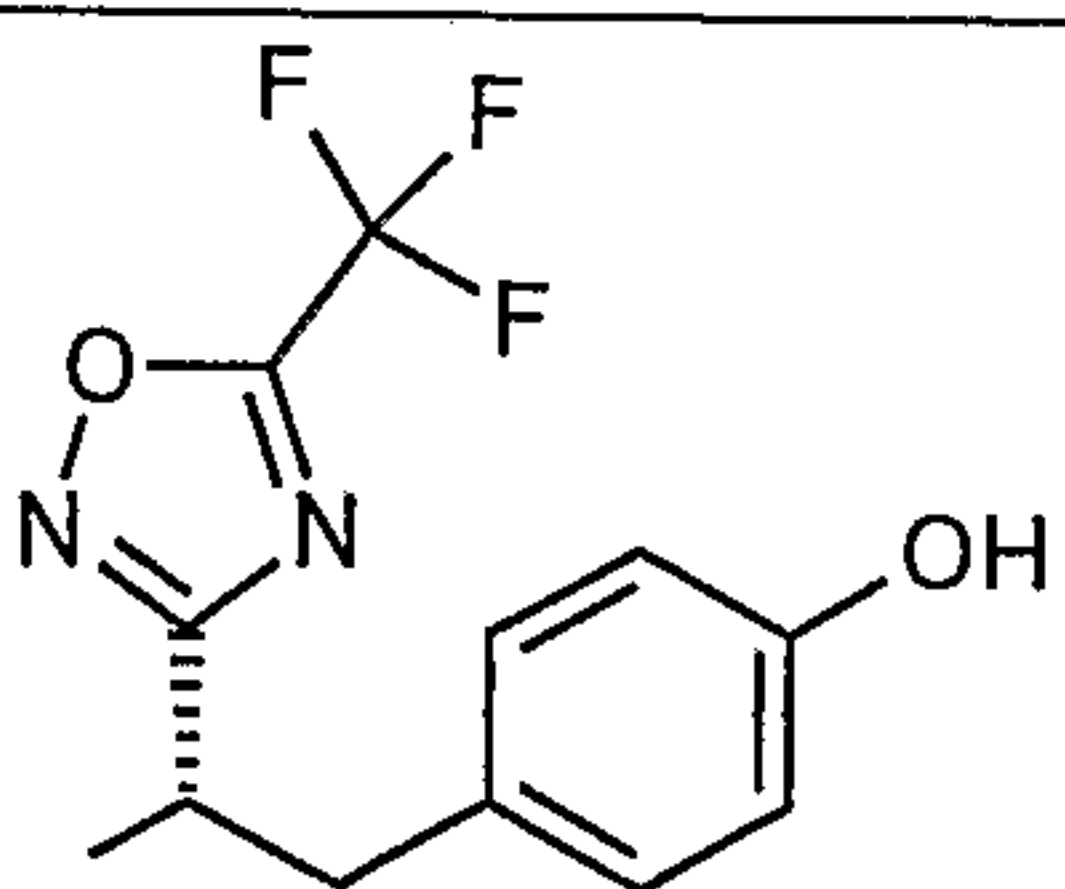
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1272	A		513.2(MH ⁺)
1273	A		541.3(MH ⁺)
1274	A		541.3(MH ⁺)
1275	B		527.3(MH ⁺)
1276	A		527.3(MH ⁺)
1277	C		539.3(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1278	C		567.4(MH ⁺)
1279	C		567.4(MH ⁺)
1280	C		553.3(MH ⁺)
1281	A		553.3(MH ⁺)
1282	B		543.2(MH ⁺)

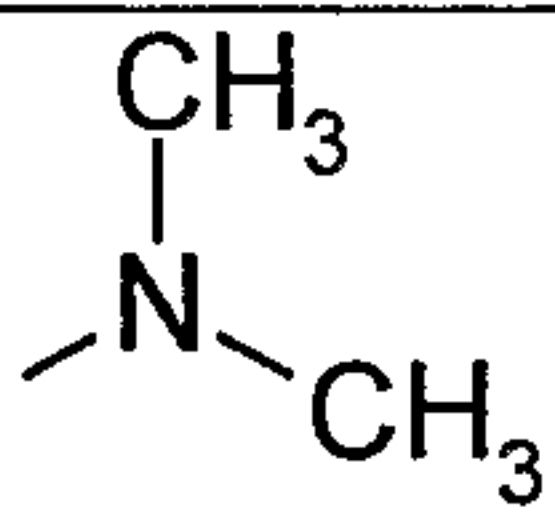
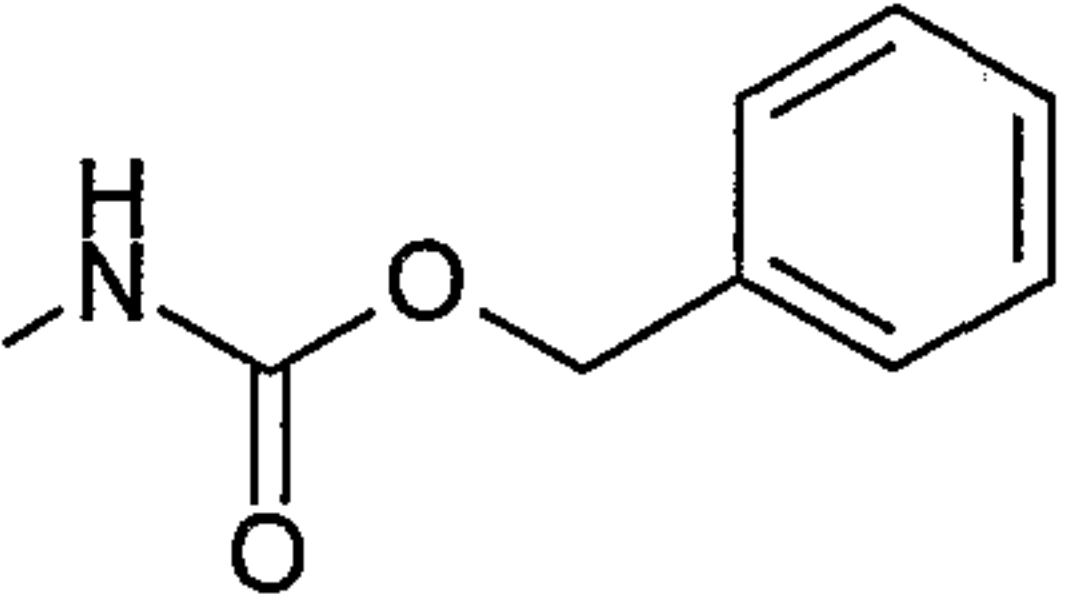
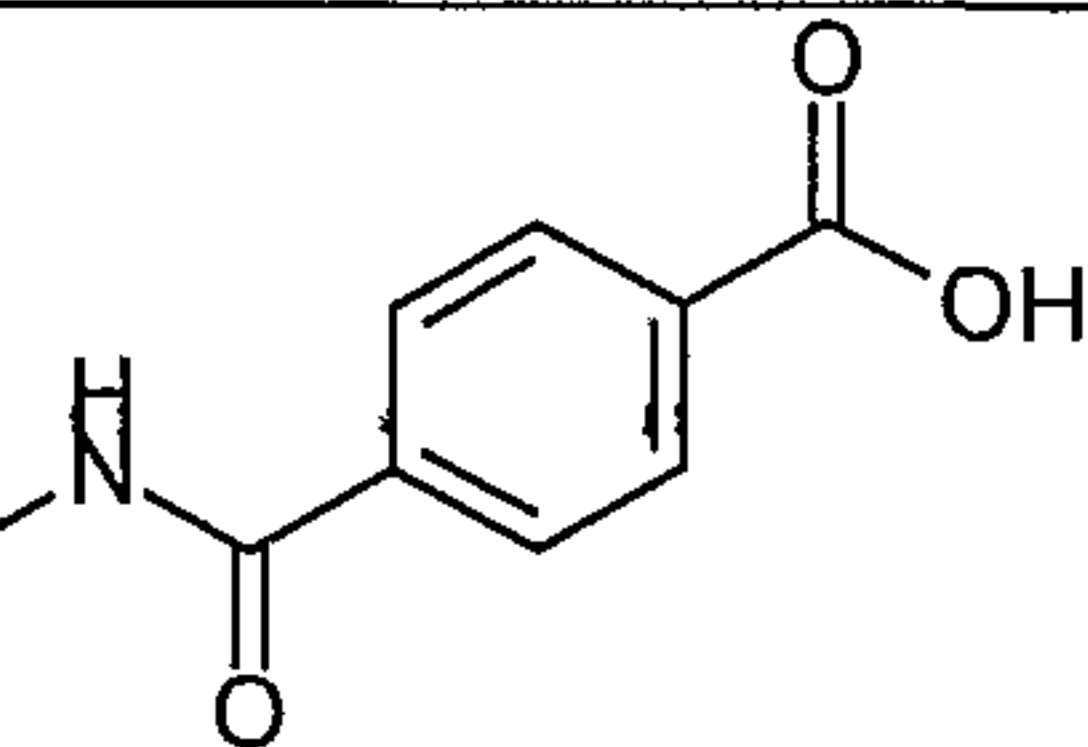
203

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1283	A		571.3(MH ⁺)
1284	A		571.3(MH ⁺)
1285	B		557.3(MH ⁺)
1286	A		557.3(MH ⁺)
1287	C		513.2(MH ⁺)

204

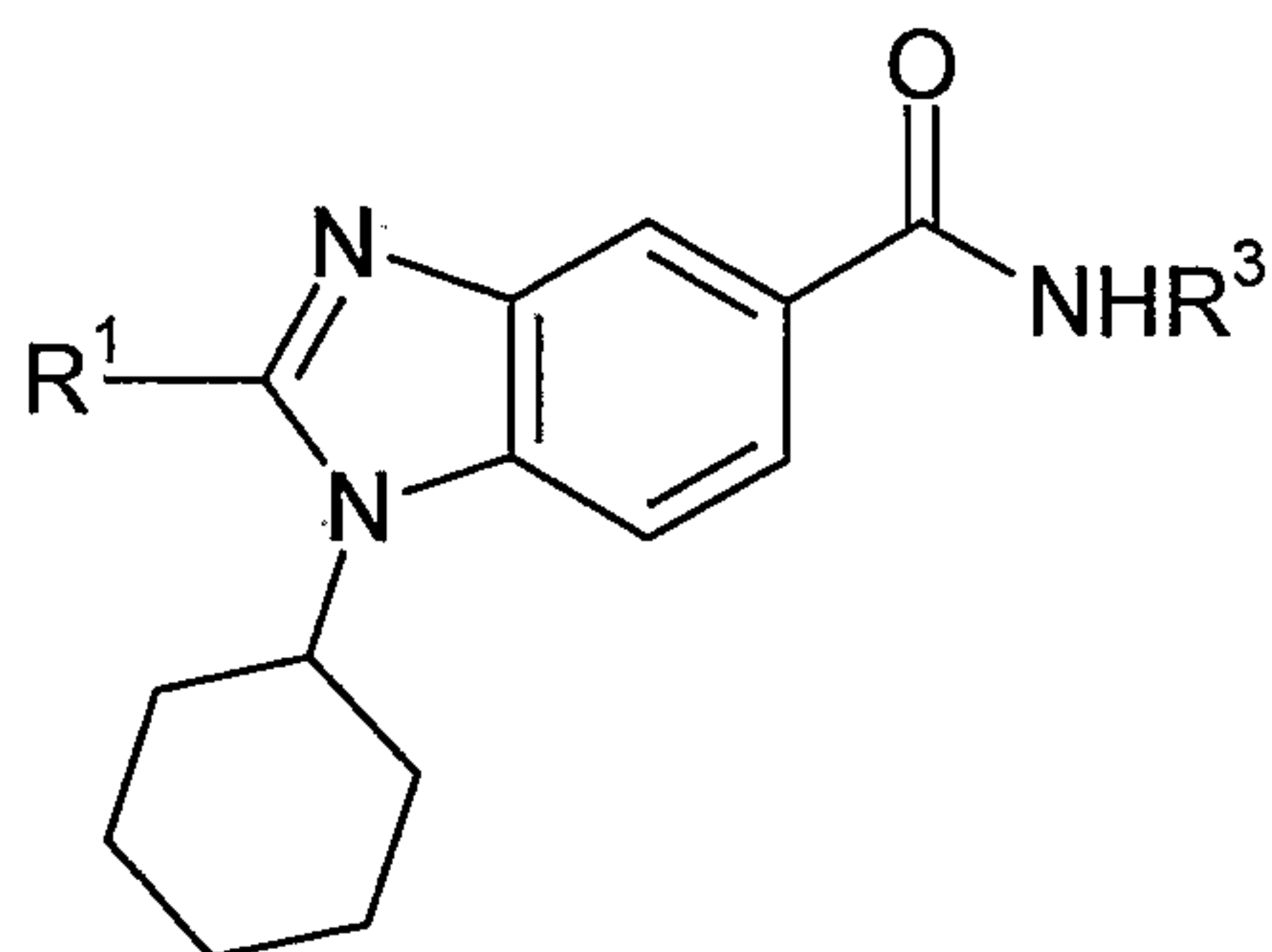
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1288	C		541.3(MH ⁺)
1289	C		541.3(MH ⁺)
1290	C		541.3(MH ⁺)
1291	C		527.3(MH ⁺)
1292	A		527.3(MH ⁺)
1298	B		566(MH ⁺)

205

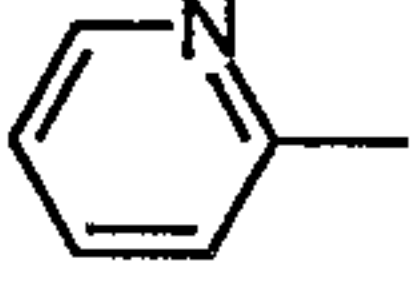
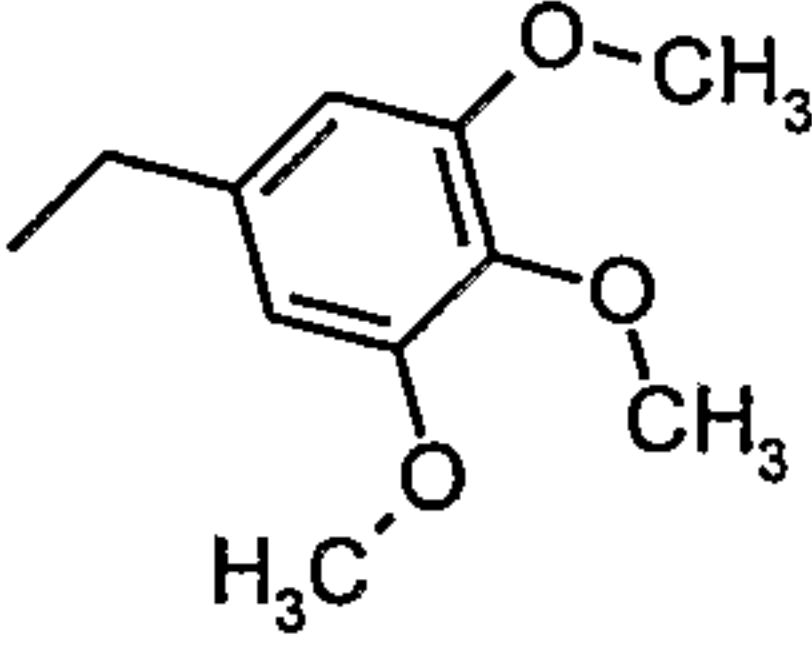
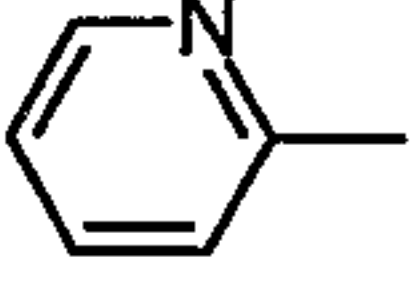
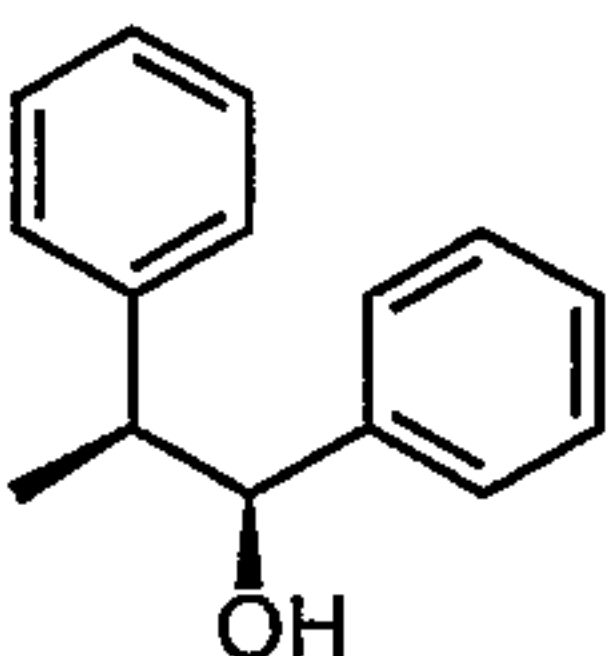
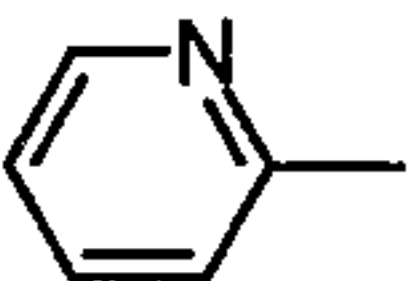
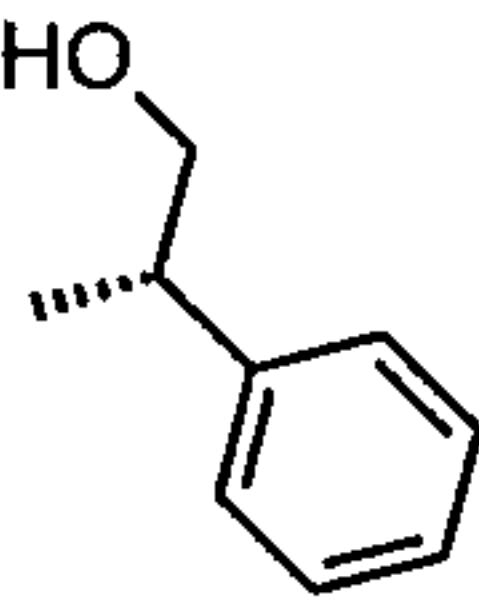
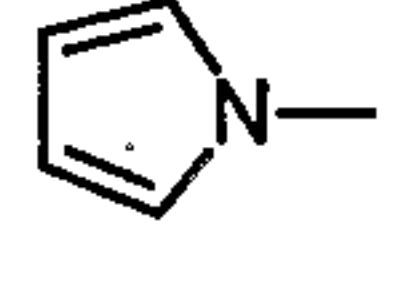
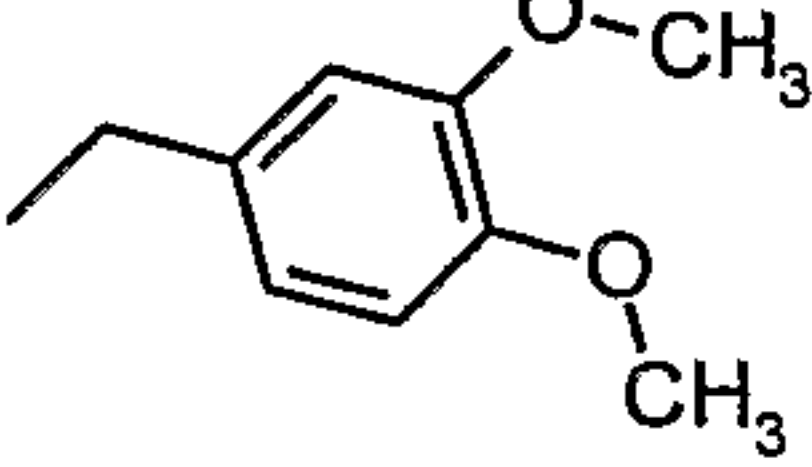
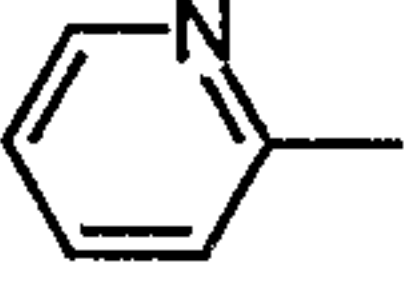
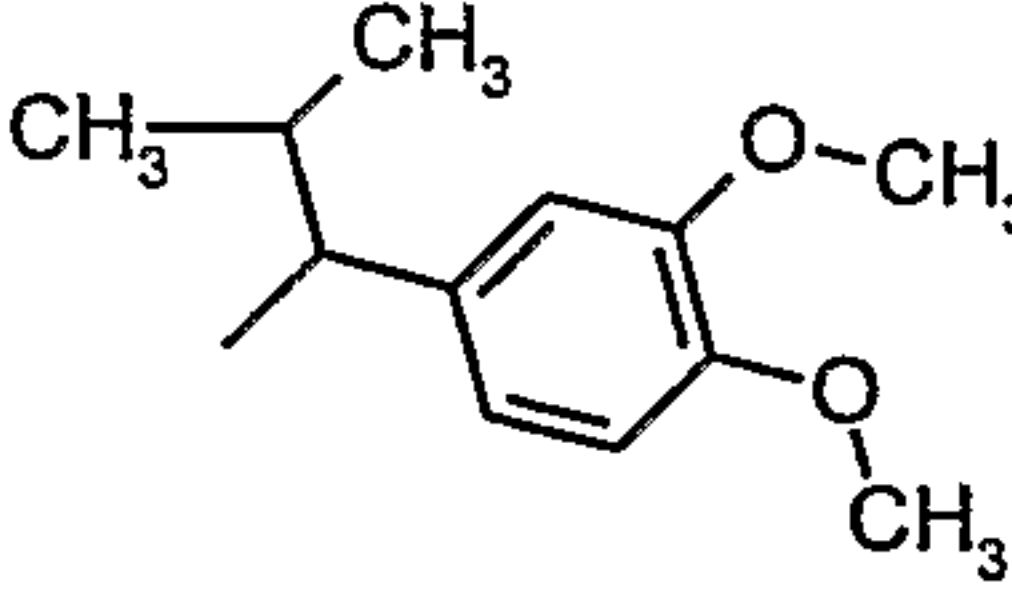
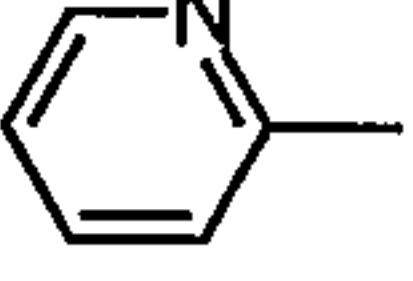
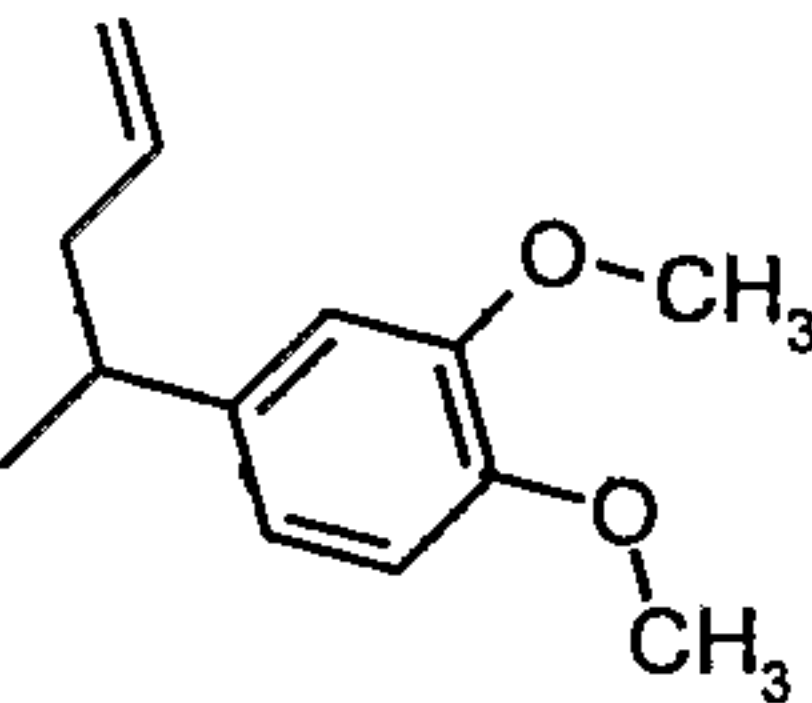
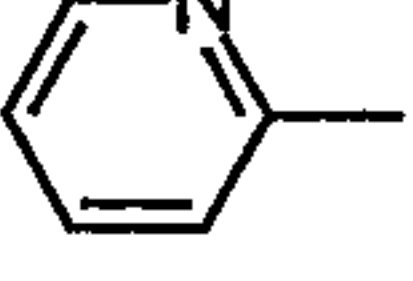
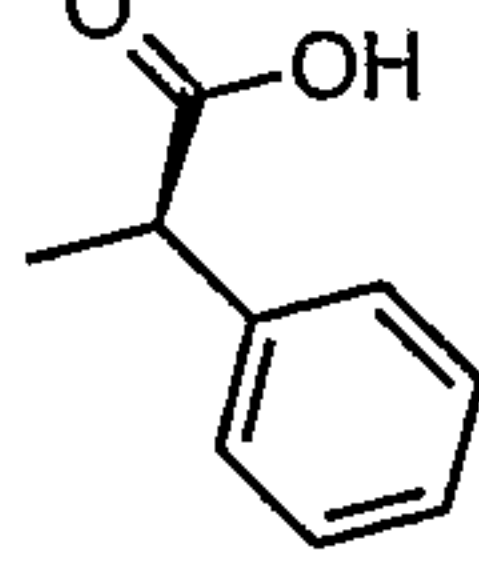
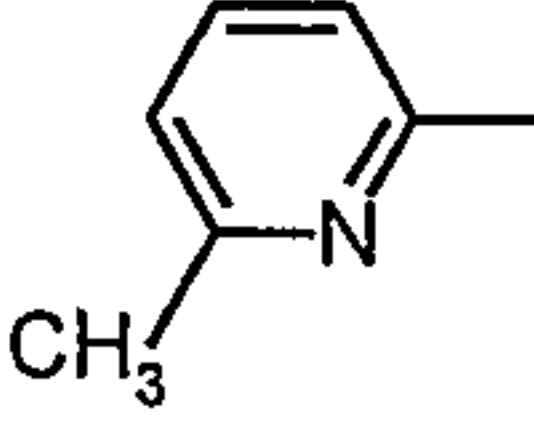
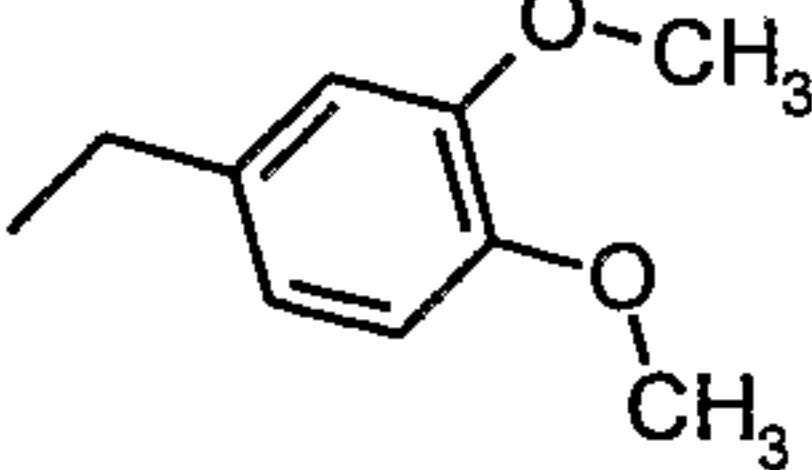
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
1300	B		353(MH ⁺)
1301	B		459(MH ⁺)
1302	C		473(MH ⁺)

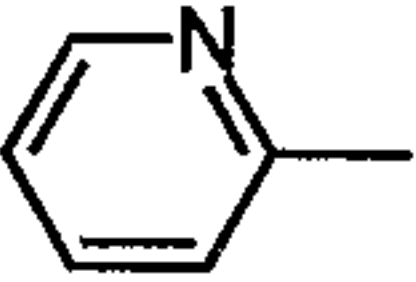
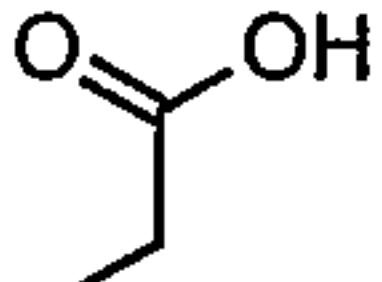
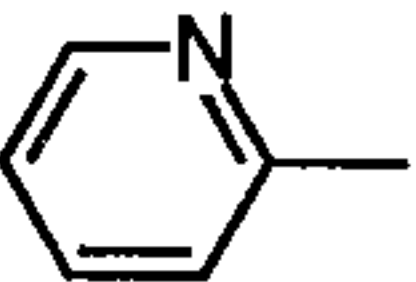
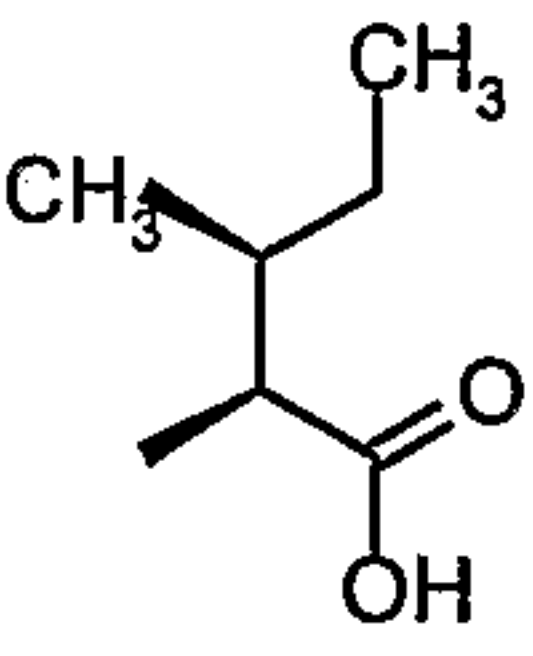
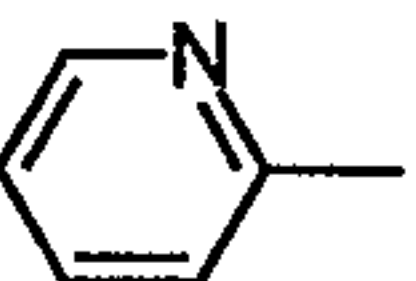
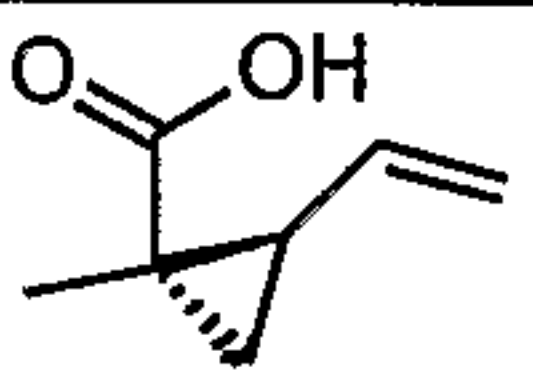
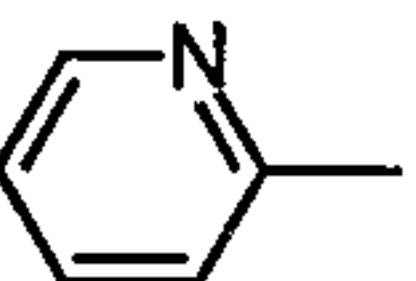
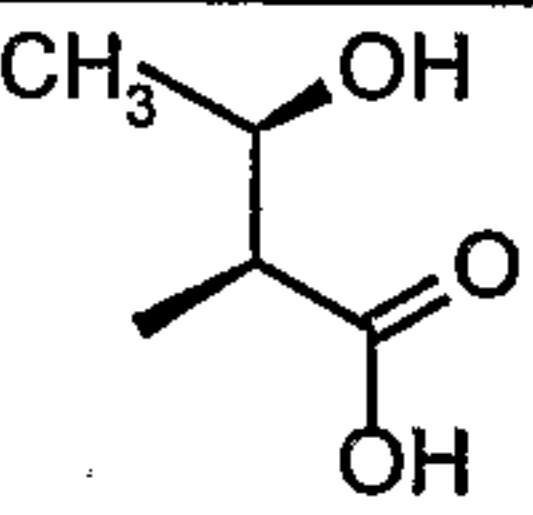
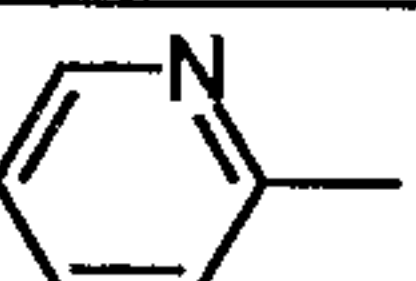
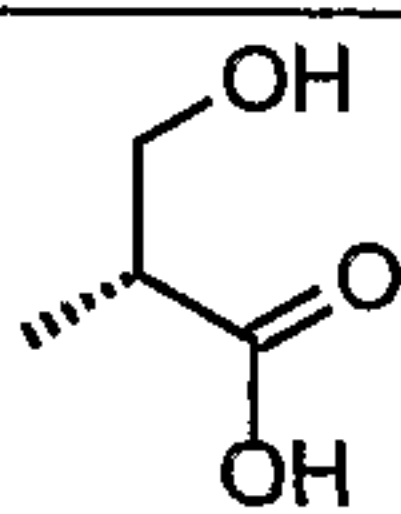
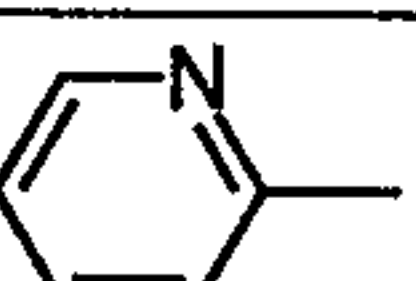
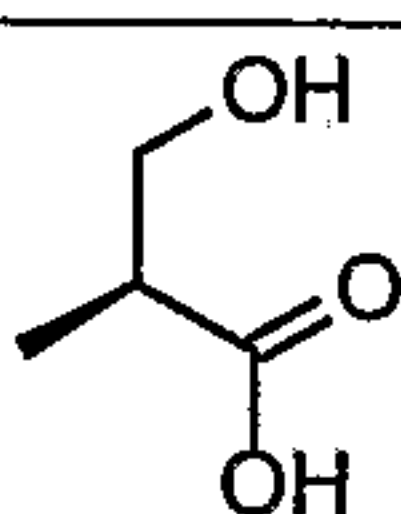
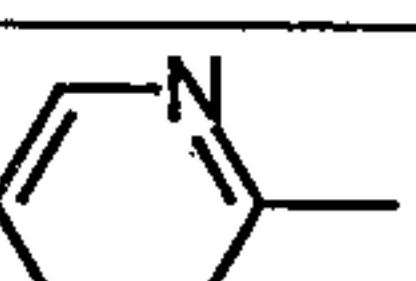
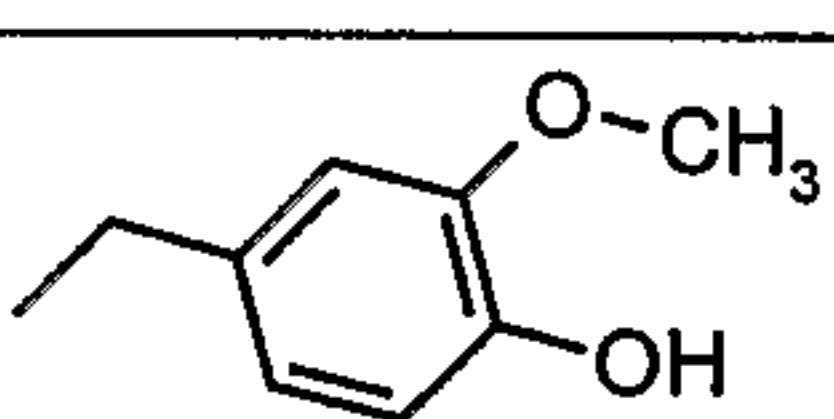
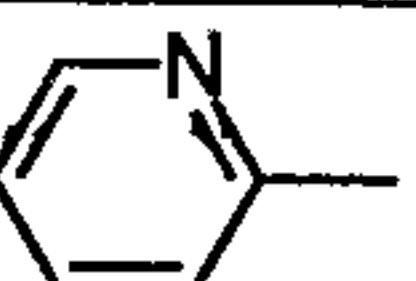
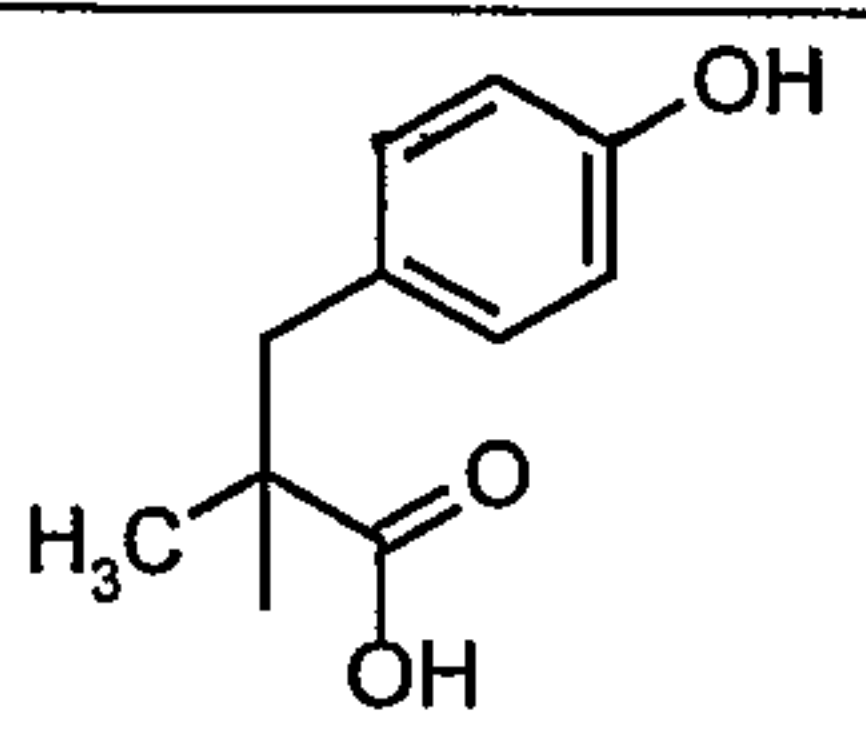
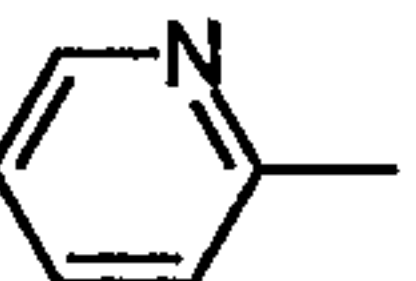
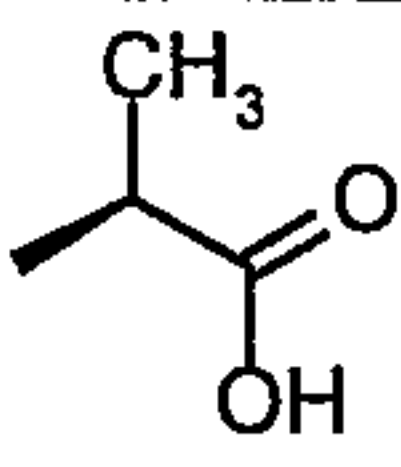
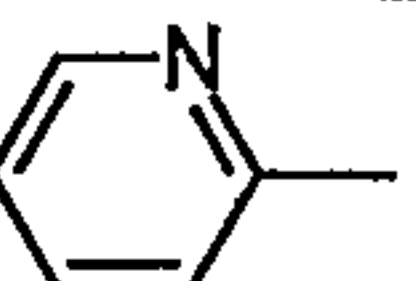
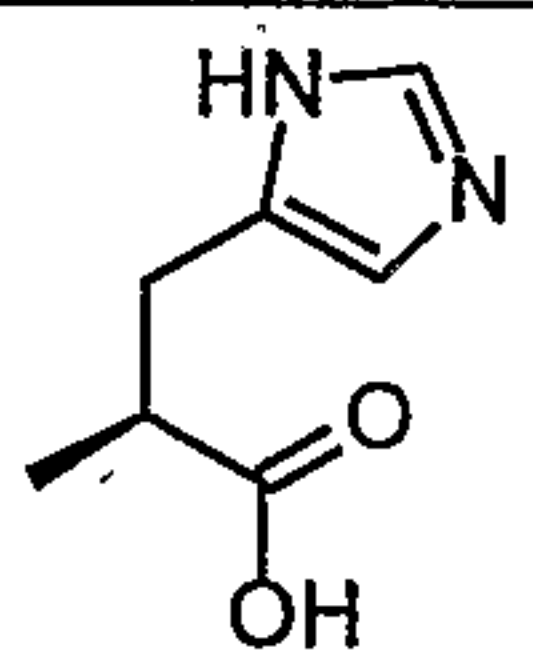
206

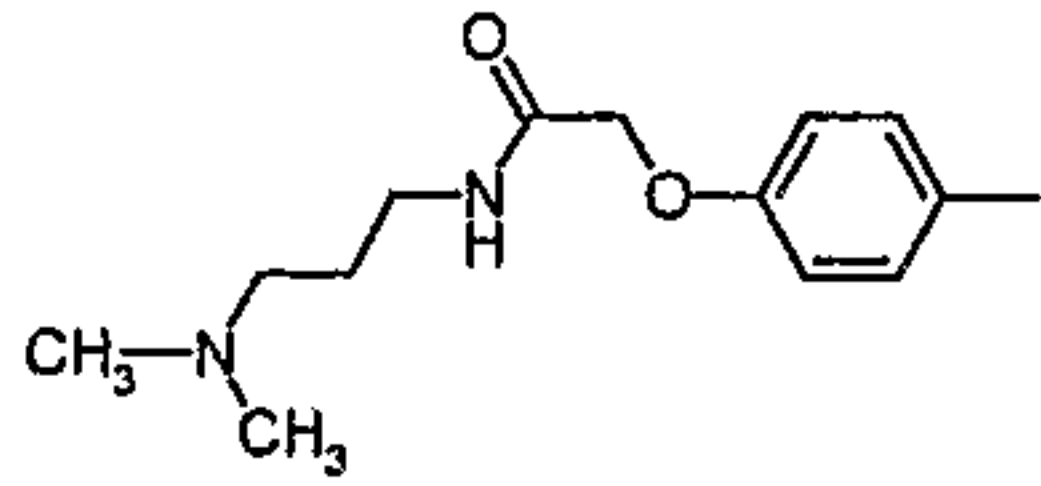
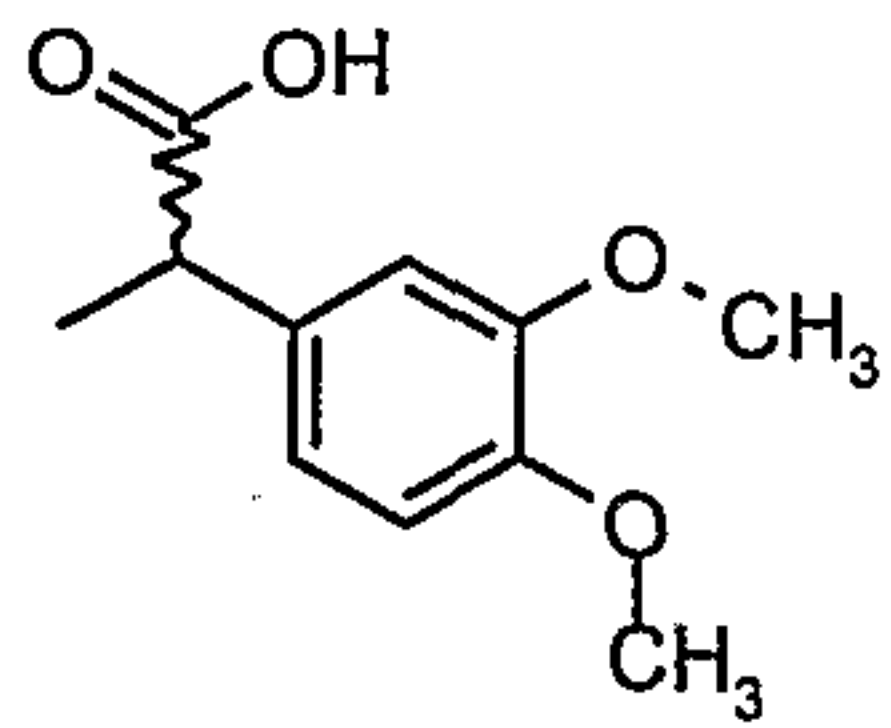
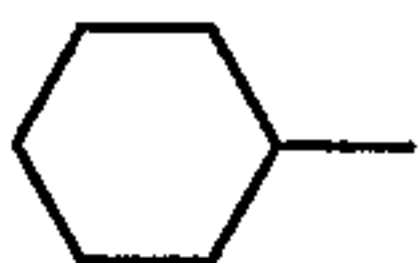
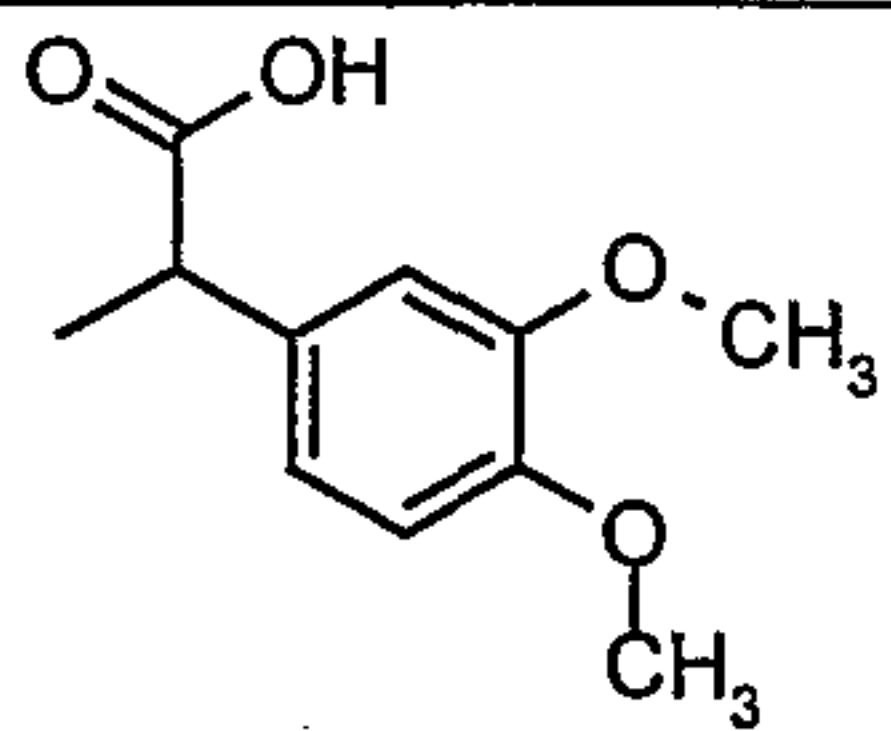
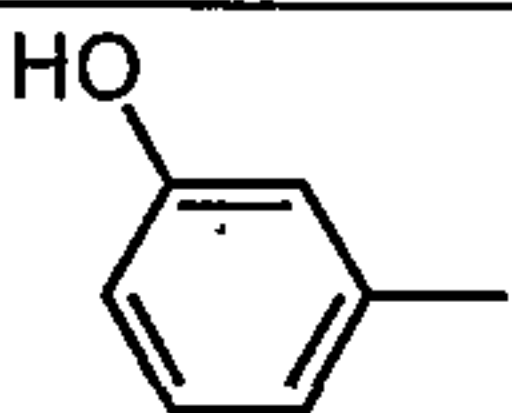
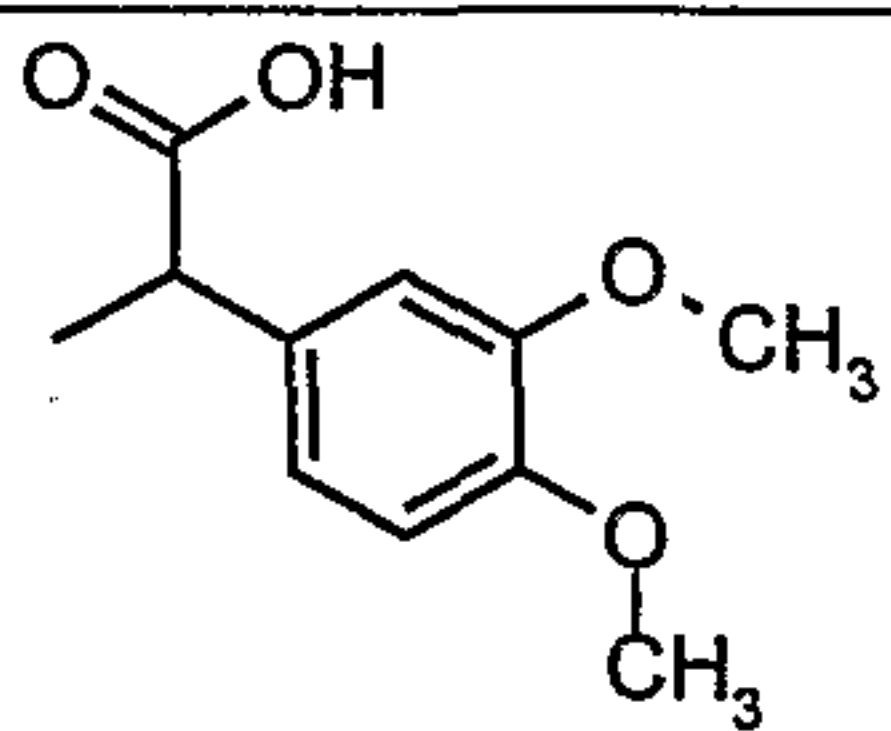
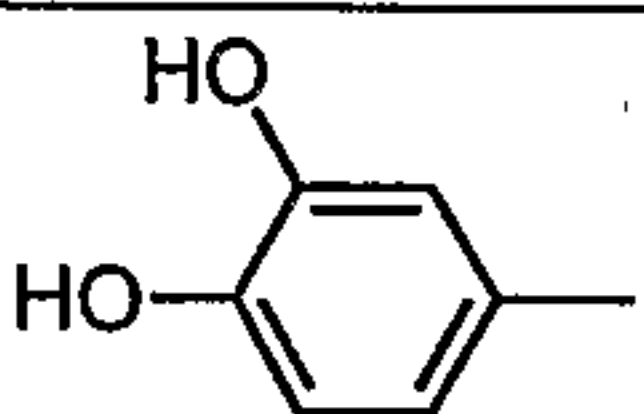
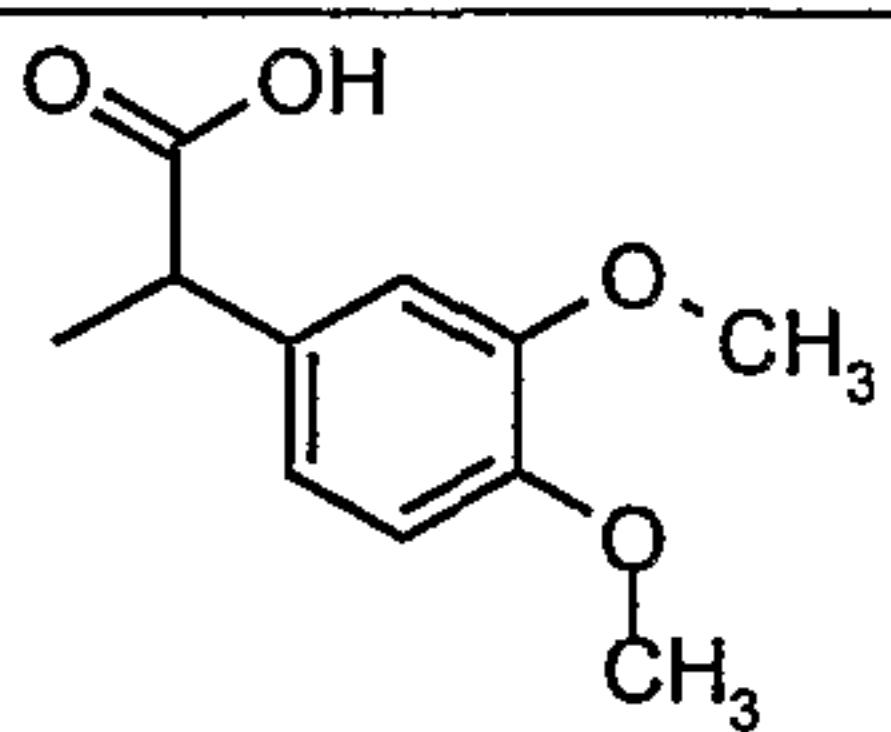
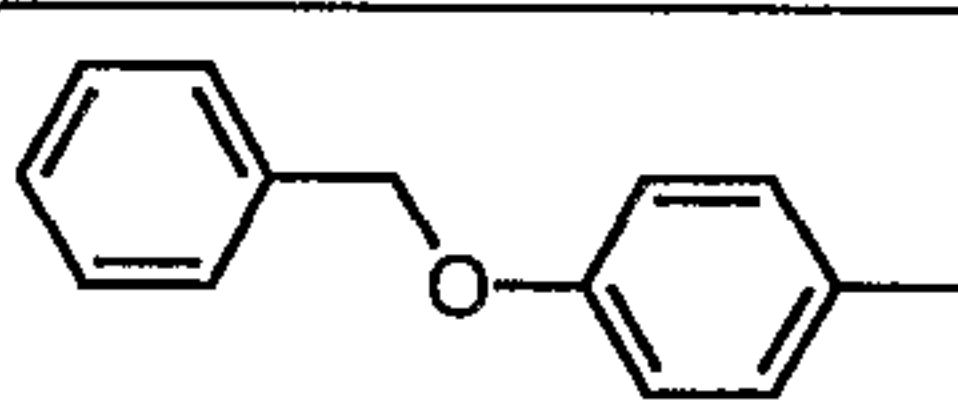
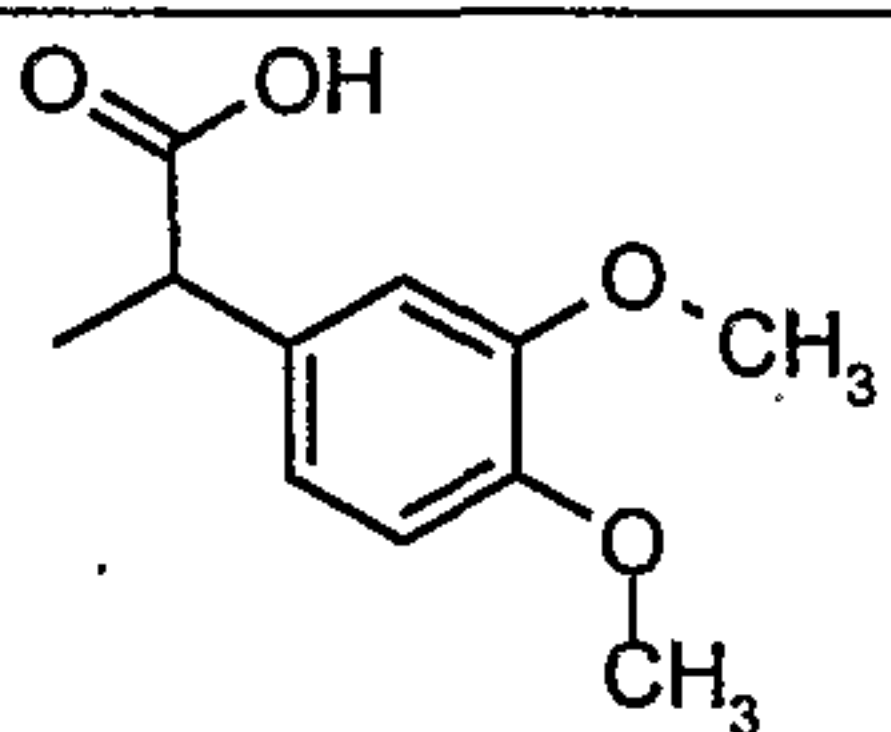
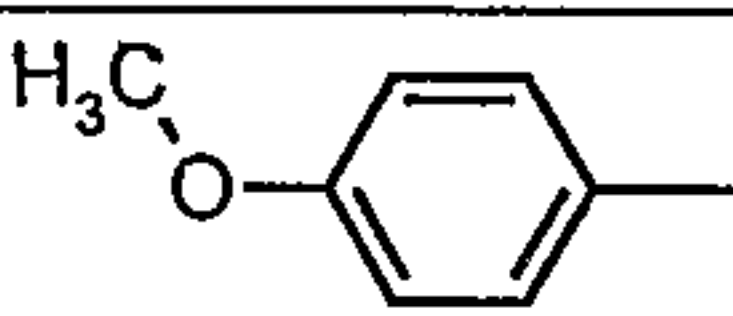
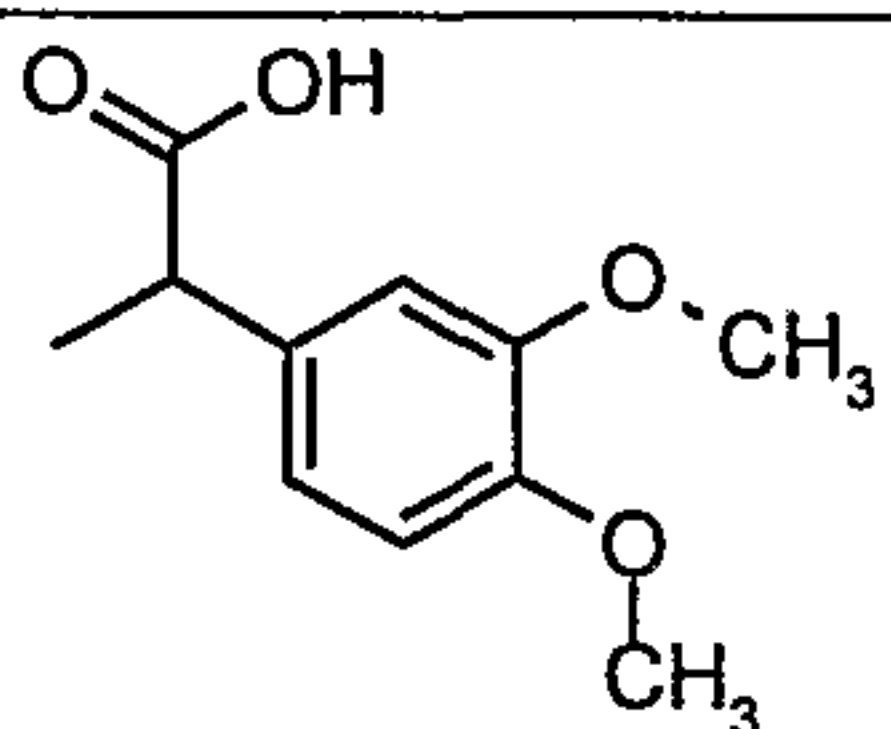
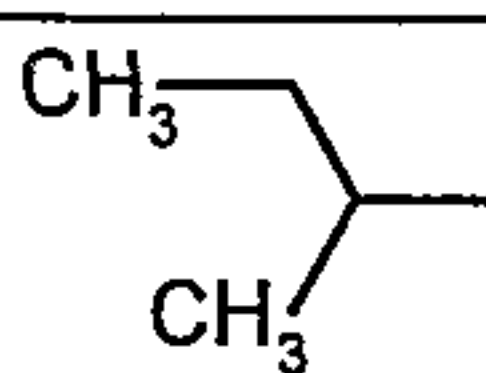
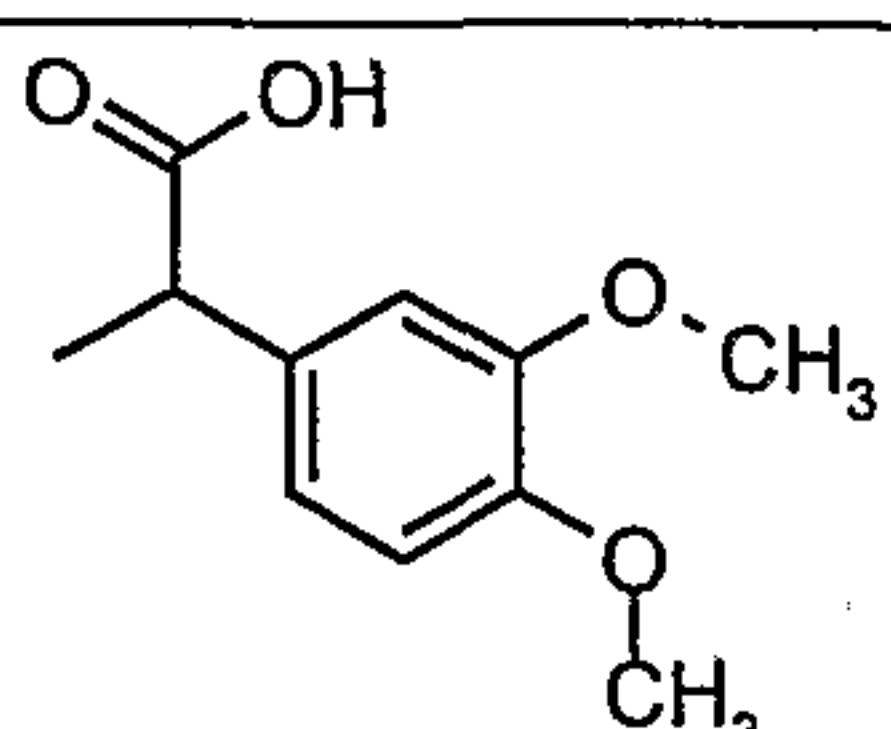
TABLE 2

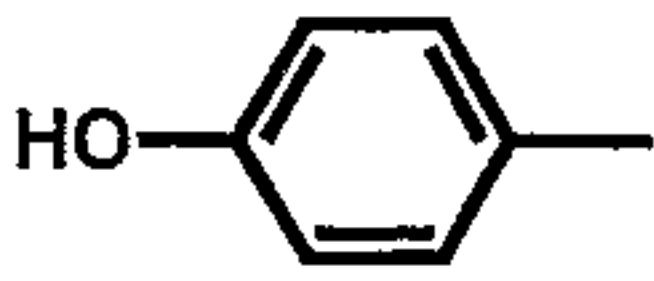
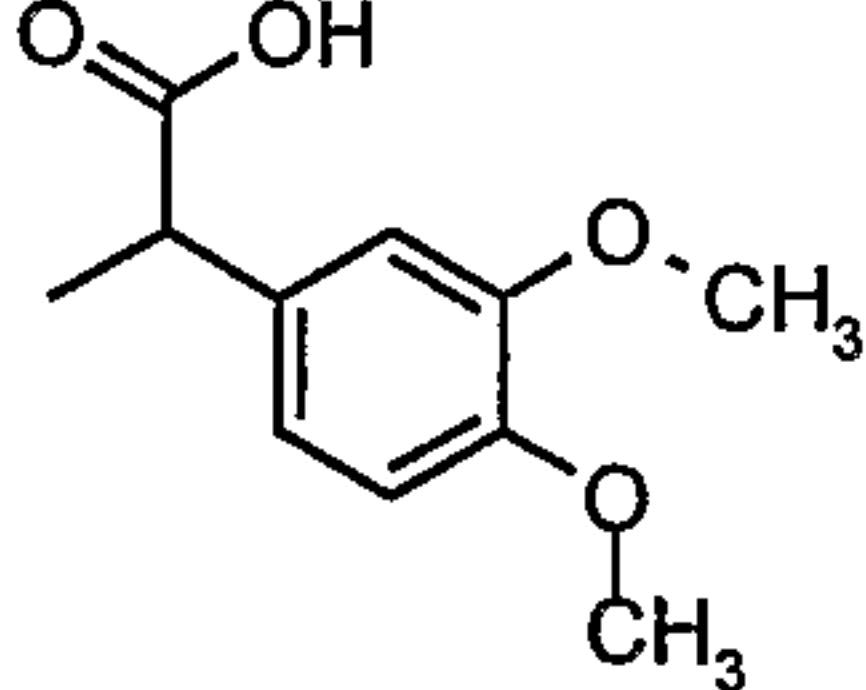
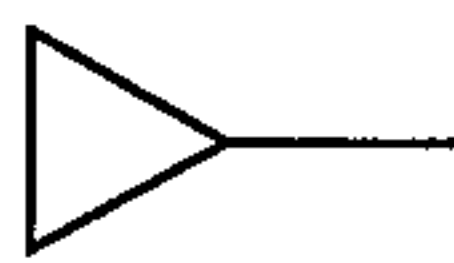
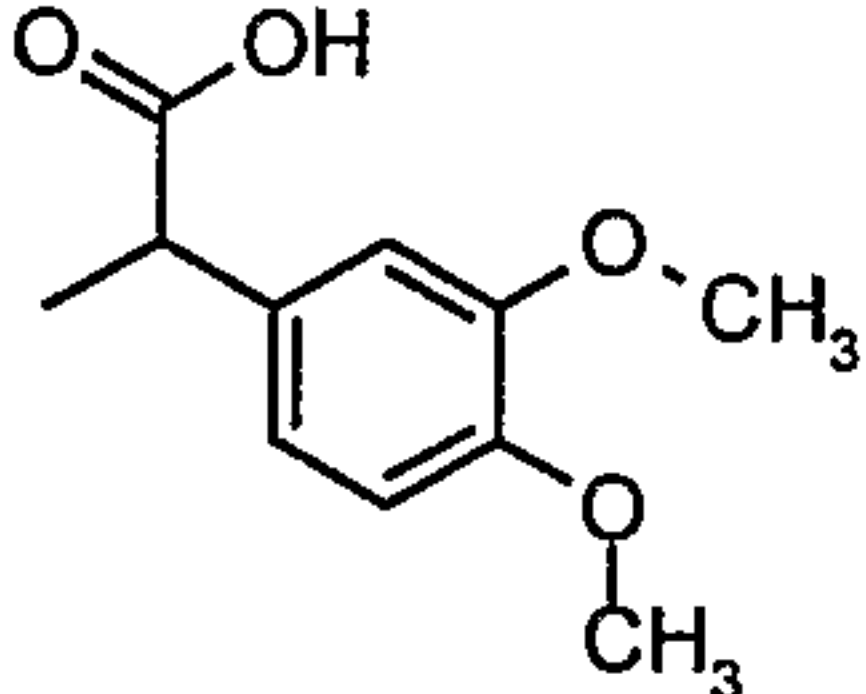
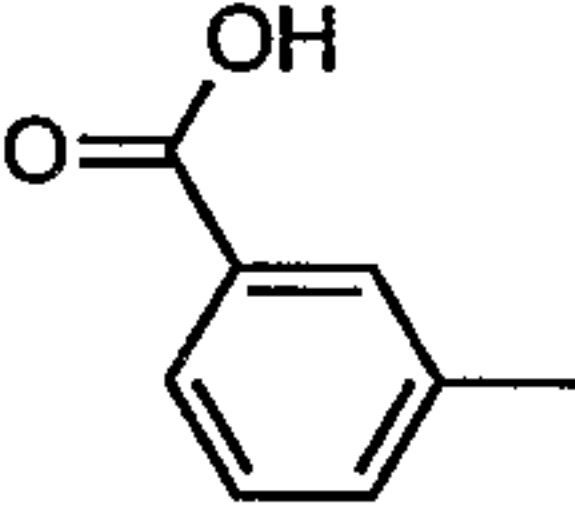
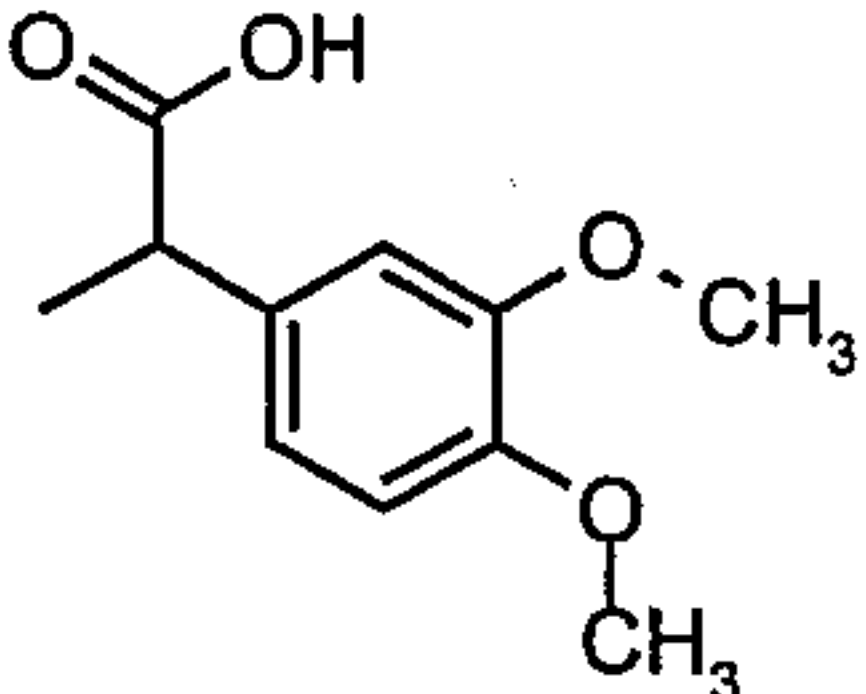
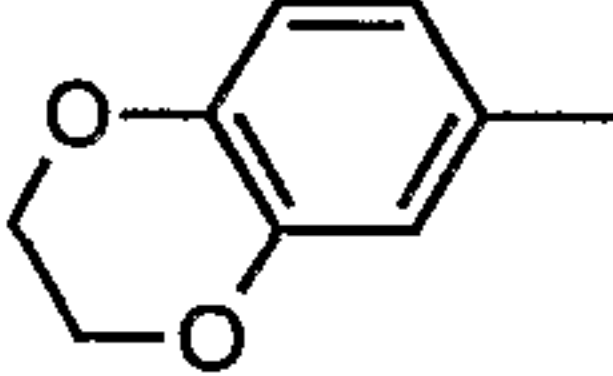
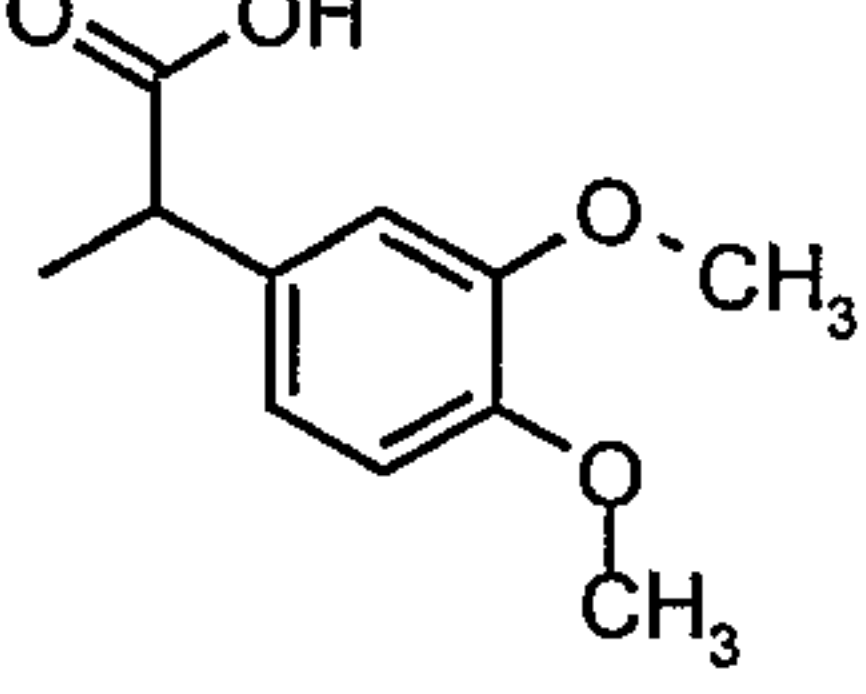
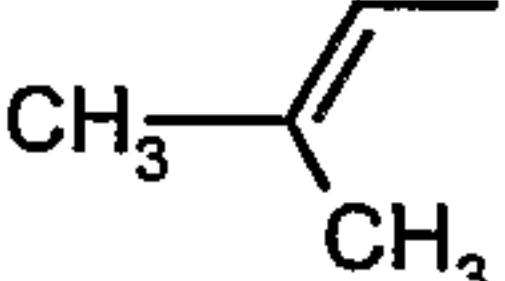
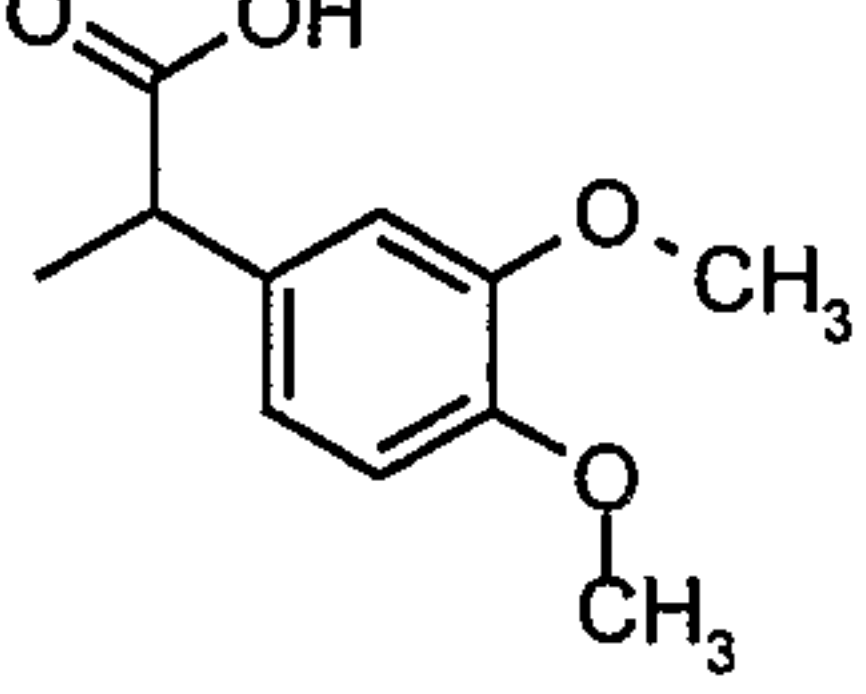
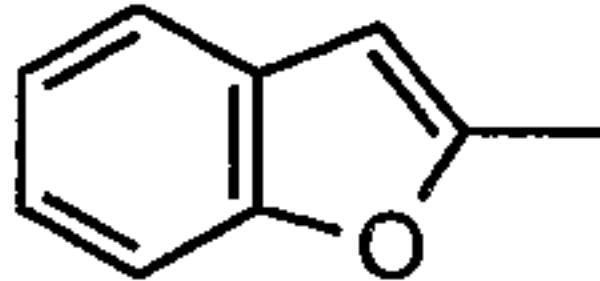
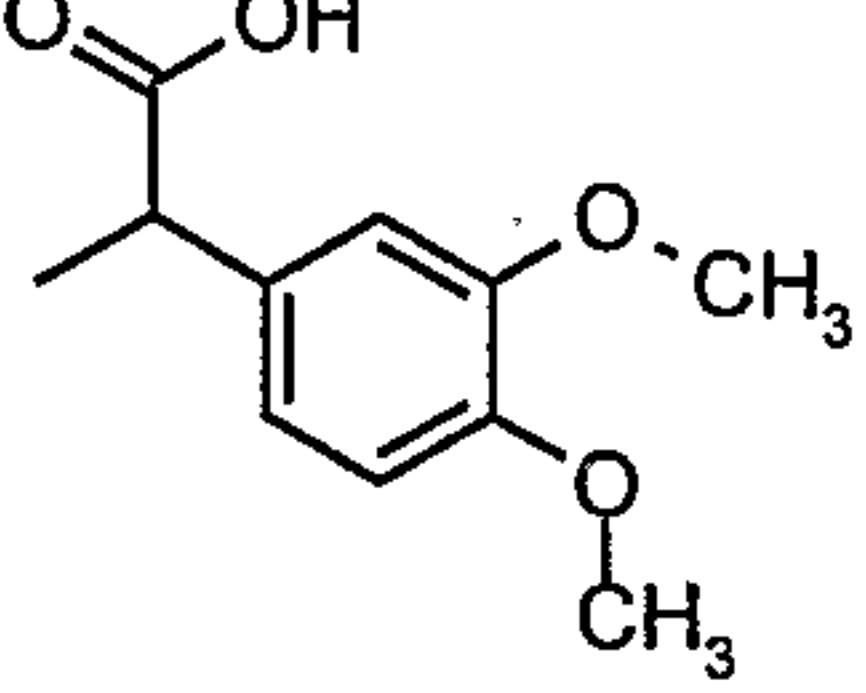
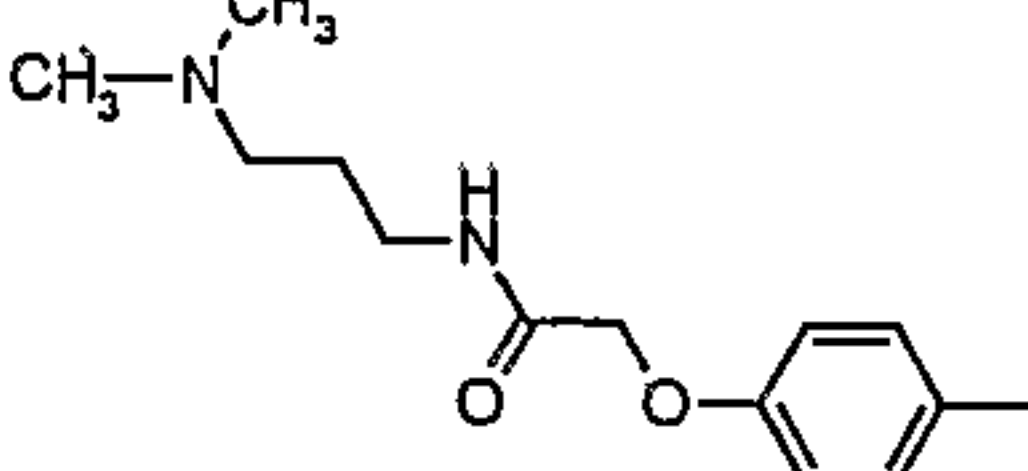
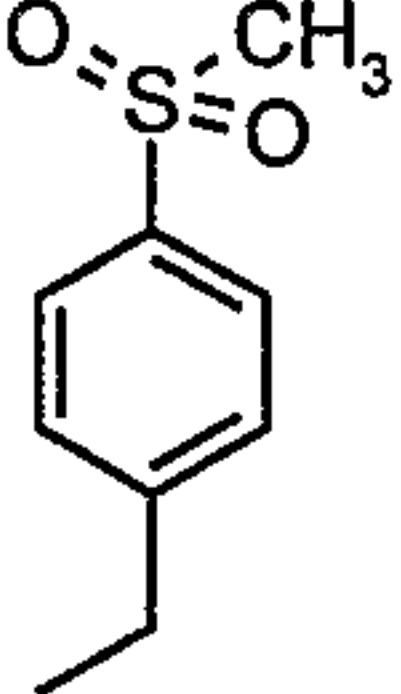


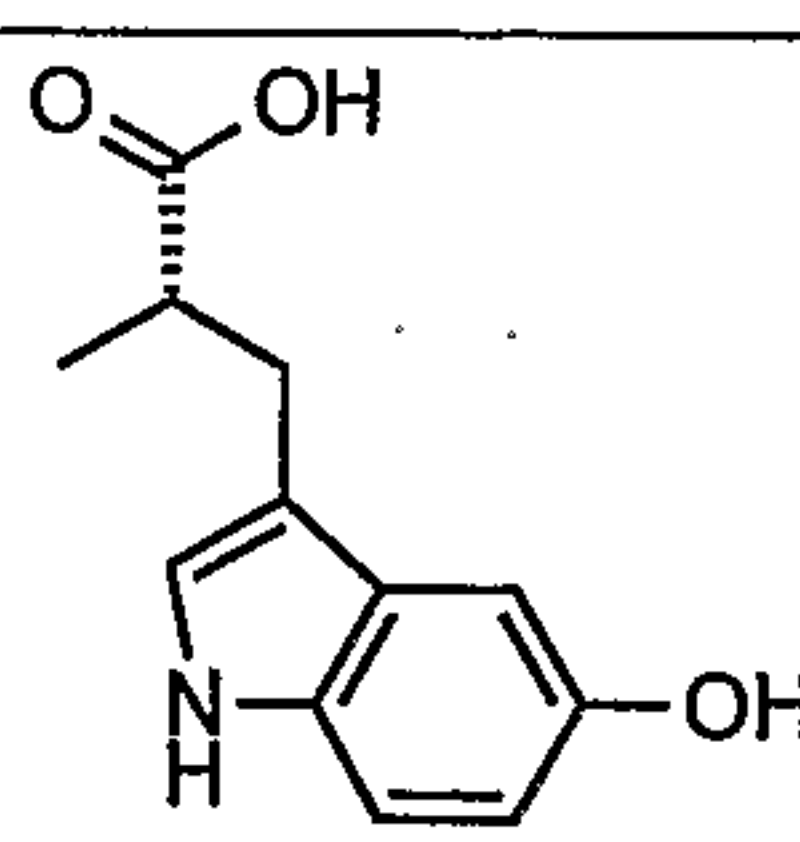
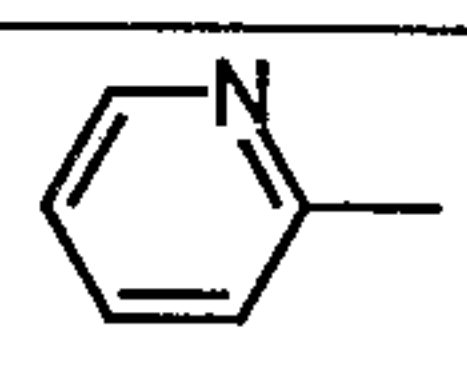
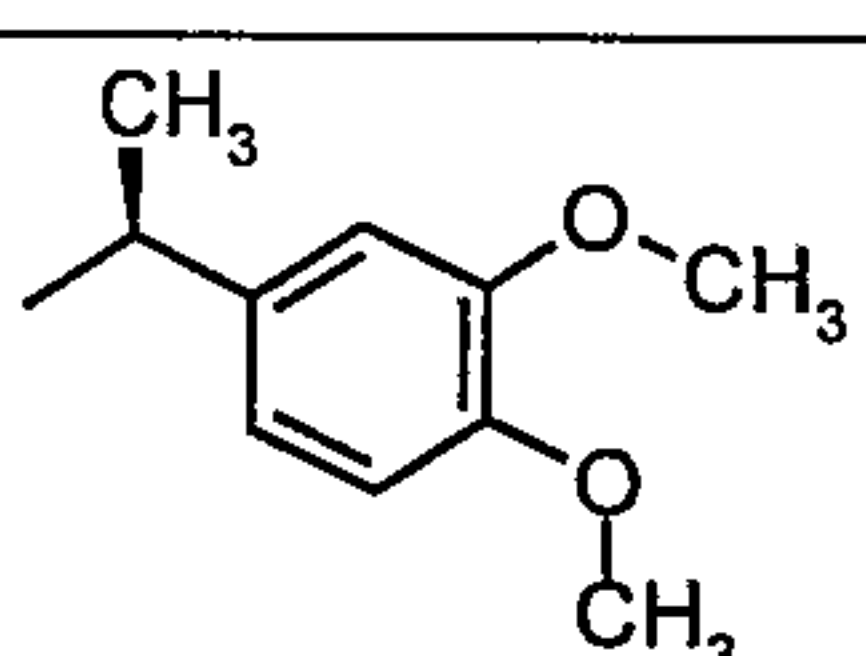
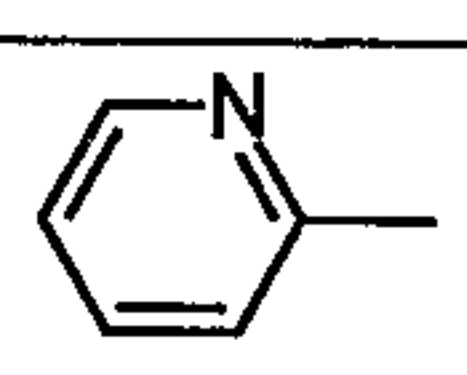
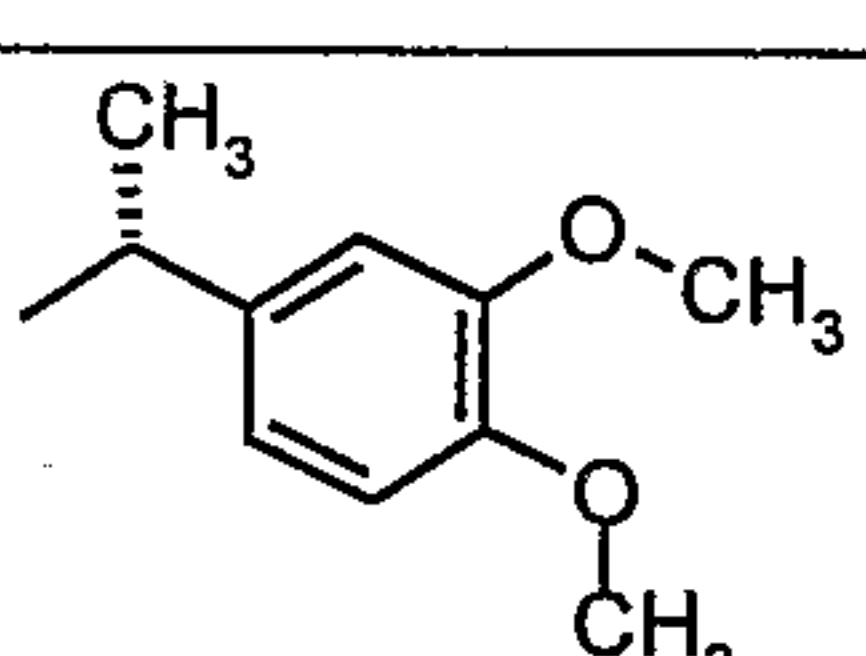
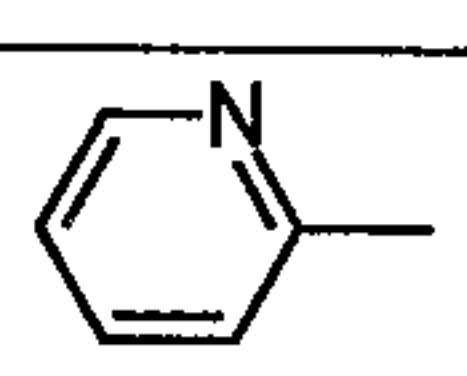
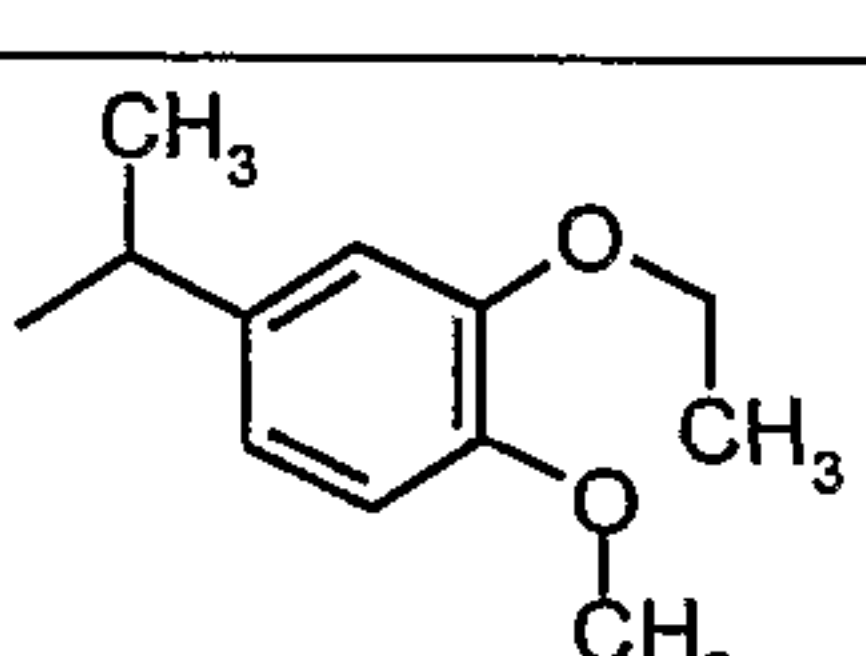
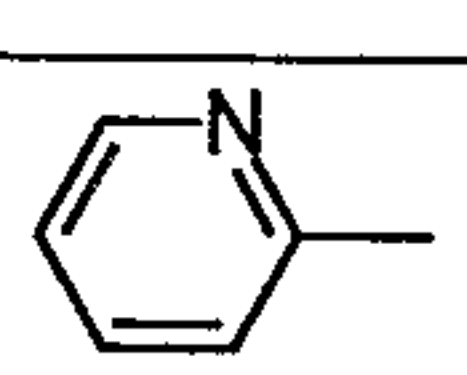
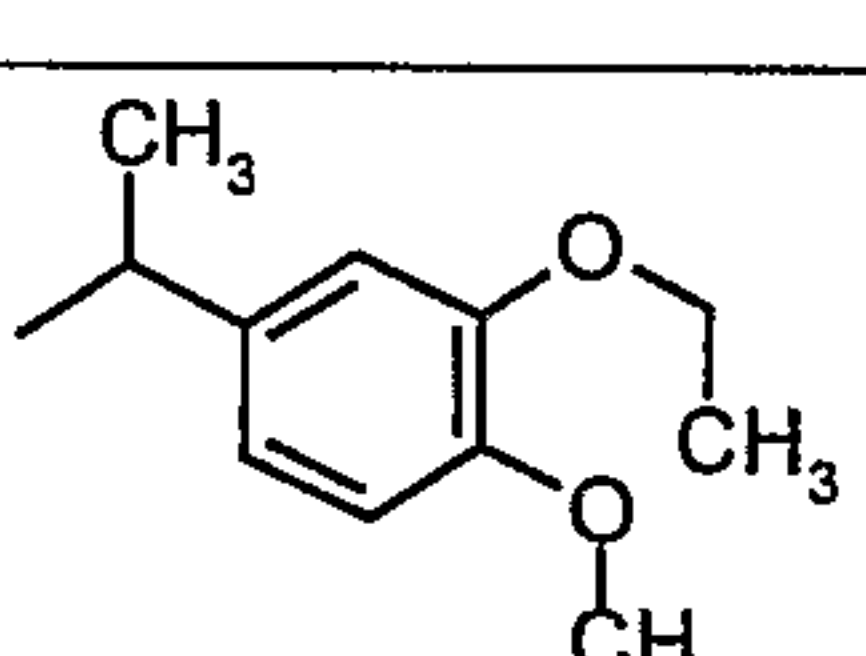
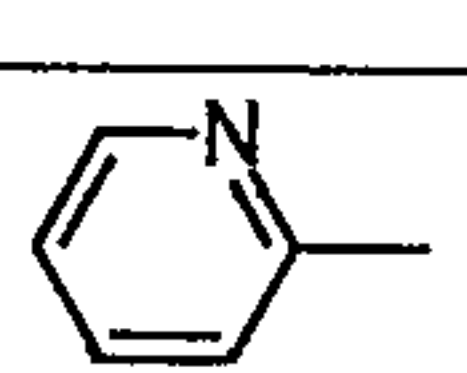
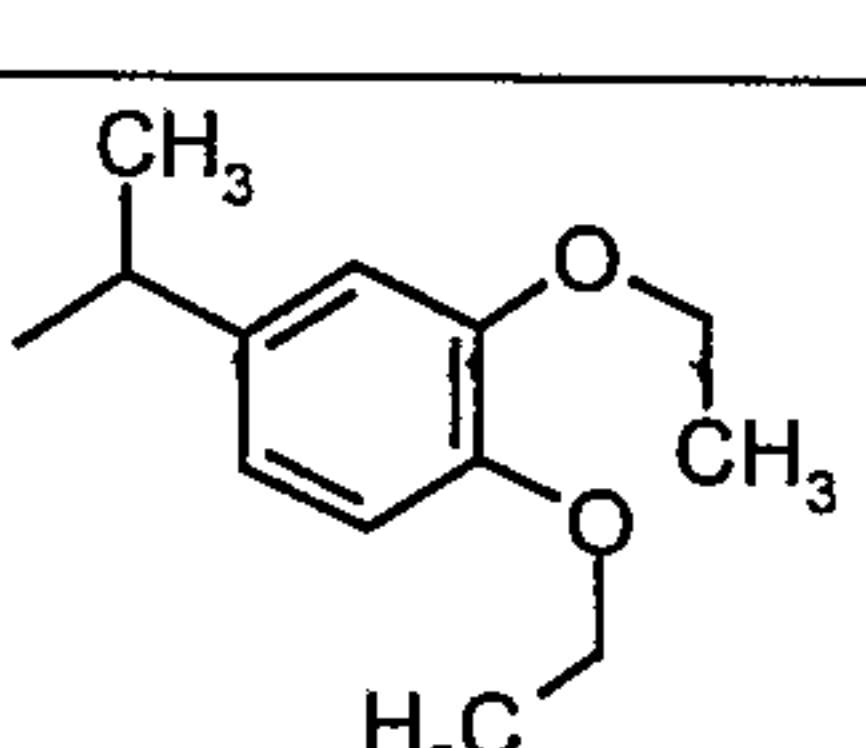
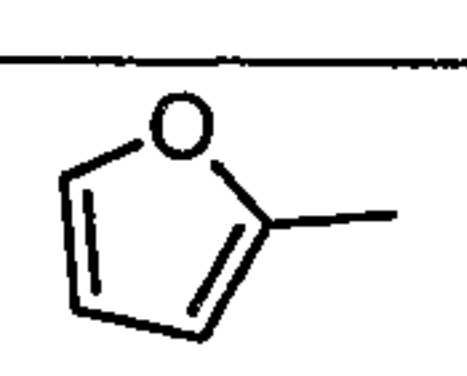
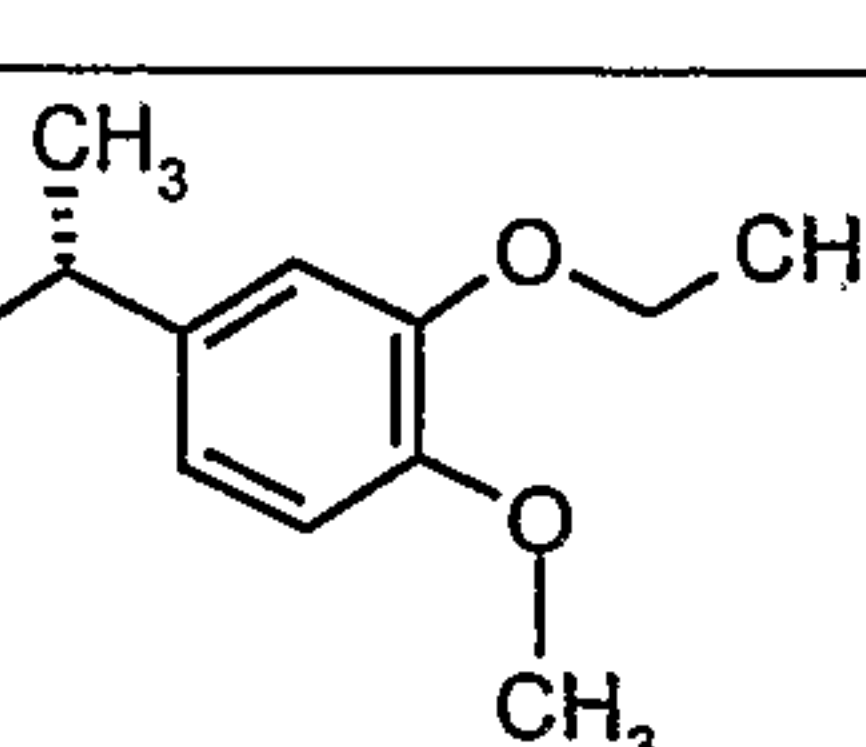
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2001	A			500(MH ⁺)
2002	A			500(MH ⁺)
2003	A			485(MH ⁺)
2004	A			484(MH ⁺)
2005	A			502(MH ⁺)
2006	A			421(MH ⁺)
2007	A			471(MH ⁺)

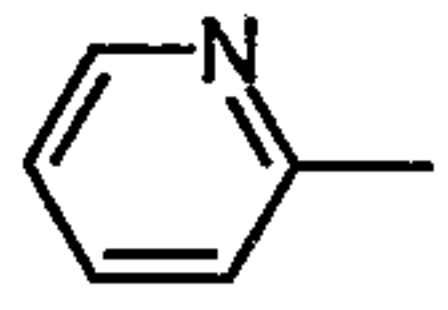
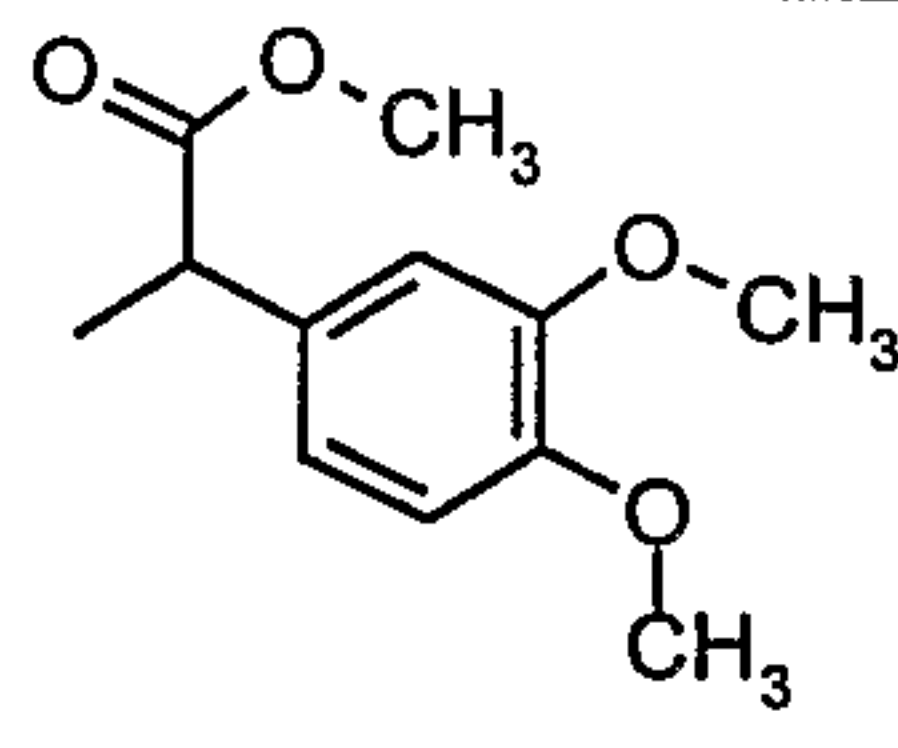
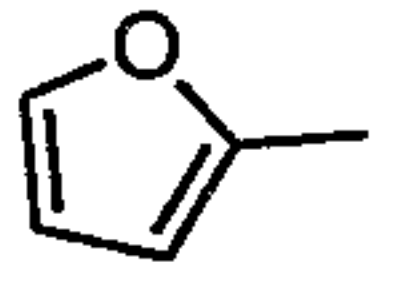
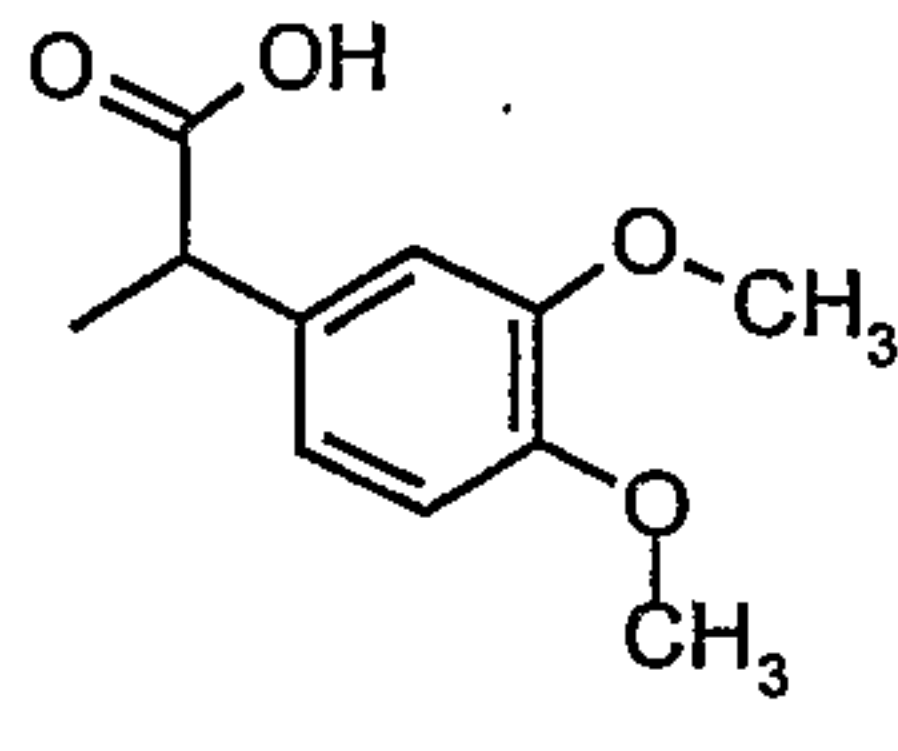
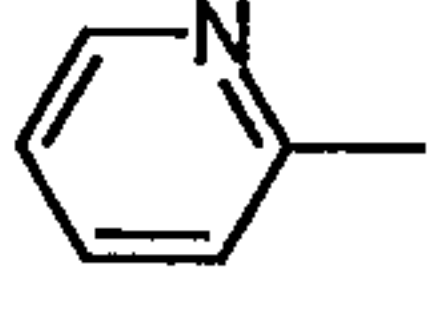
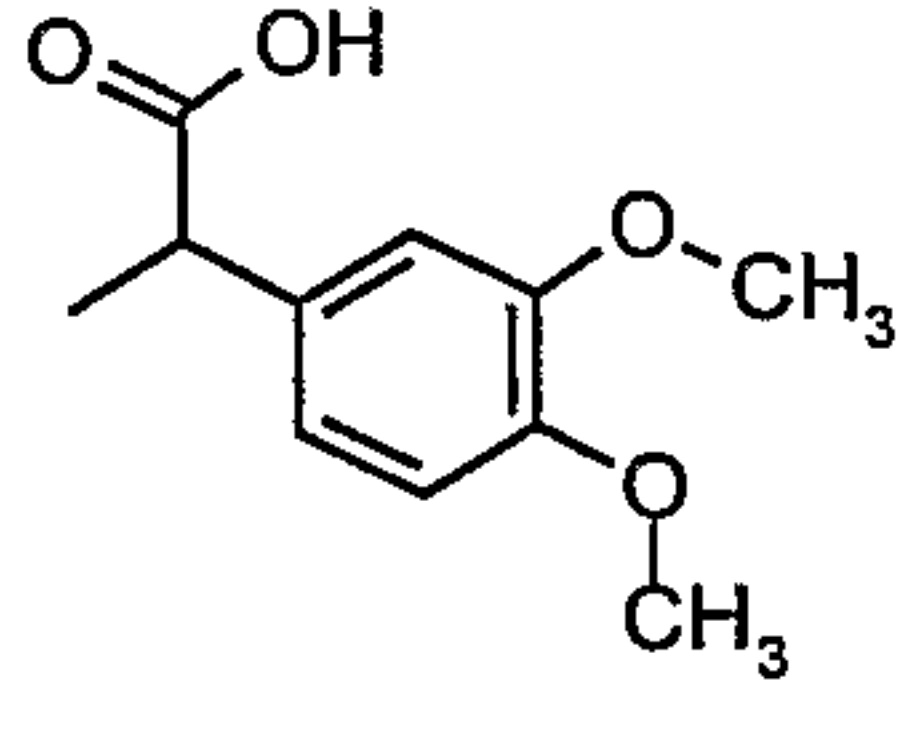
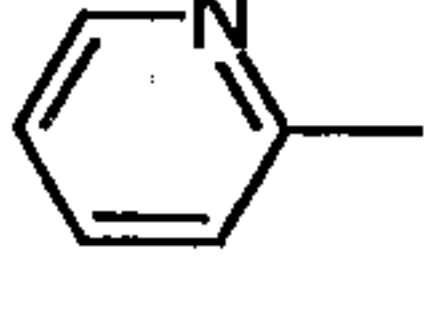
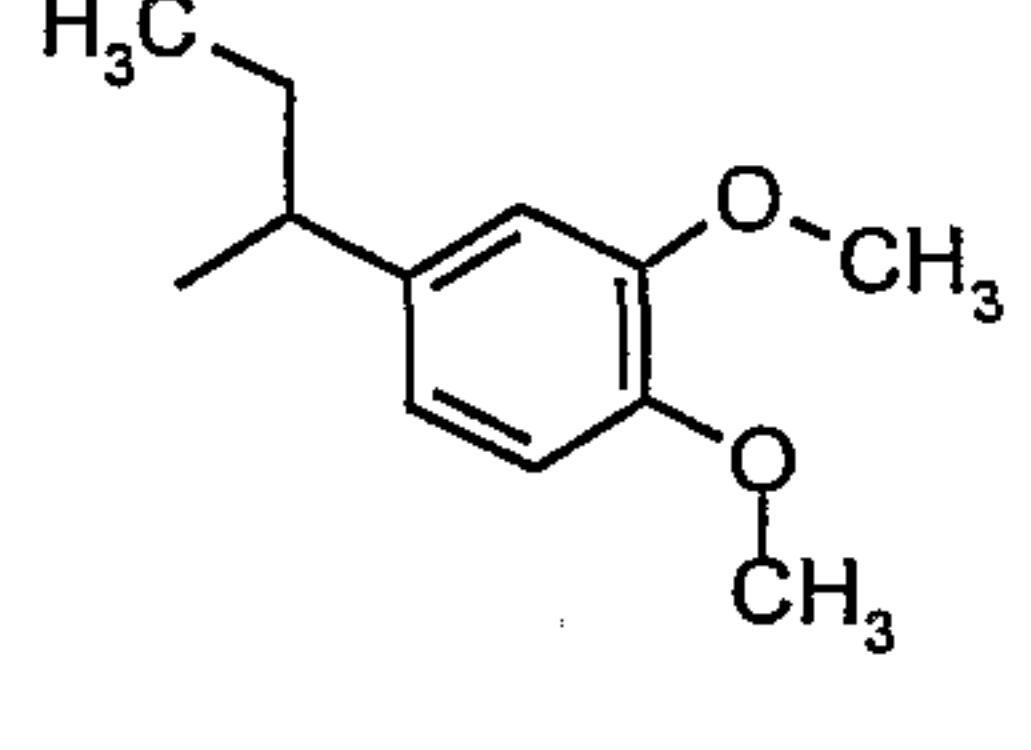
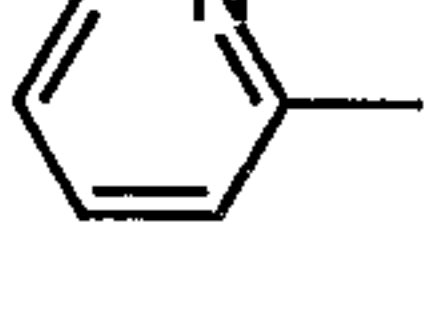
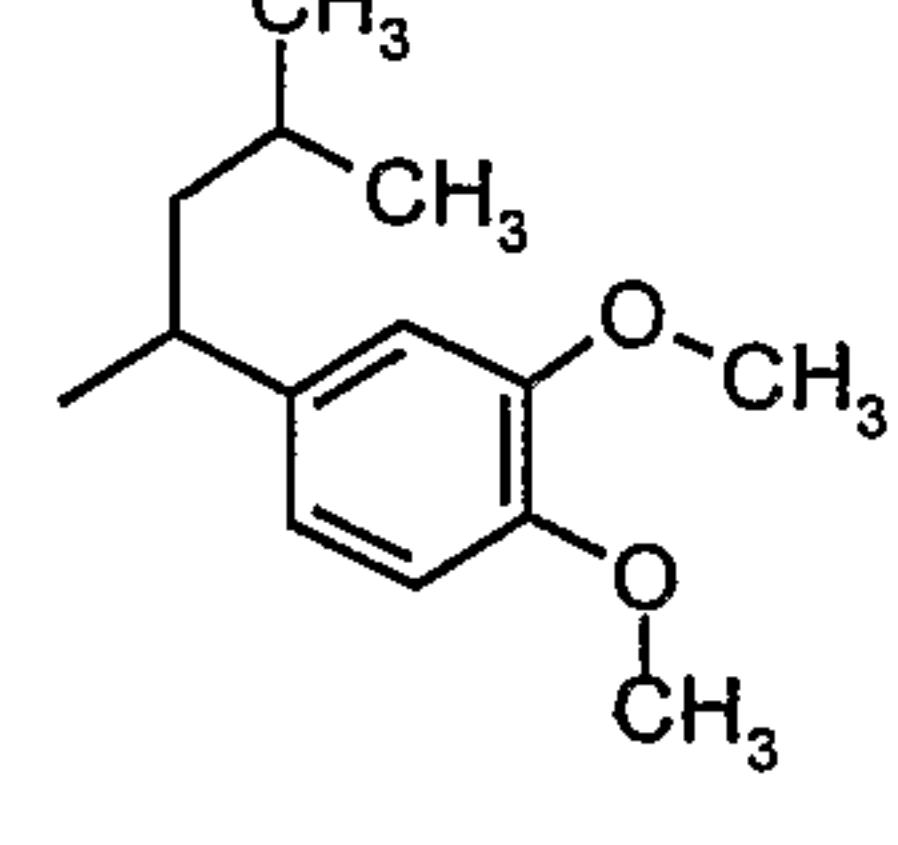
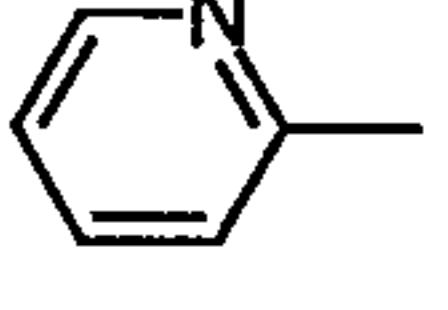
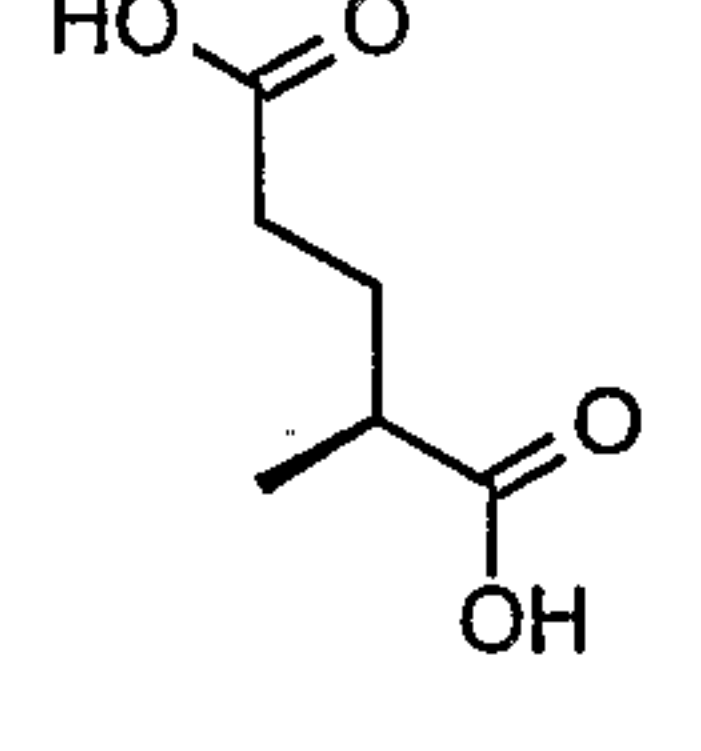
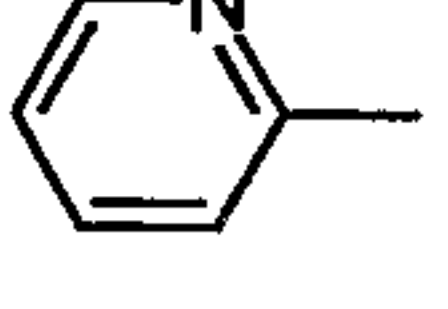
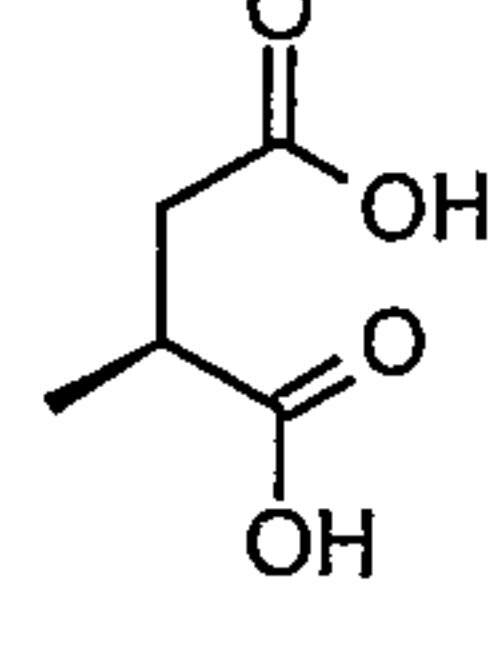
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2008	A			501(MH ⁺)
2009	A			517(MH ⁺)
2010	A			441(MH ⁺)
2011	A			459(MH ⁺)
2012	A			513(MH ⁺)
2013	A			511(MH ⁺)
2014	A			455(MH ⁺)
2015	A			485(MH ⁺)

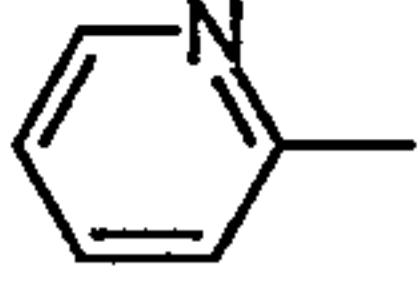
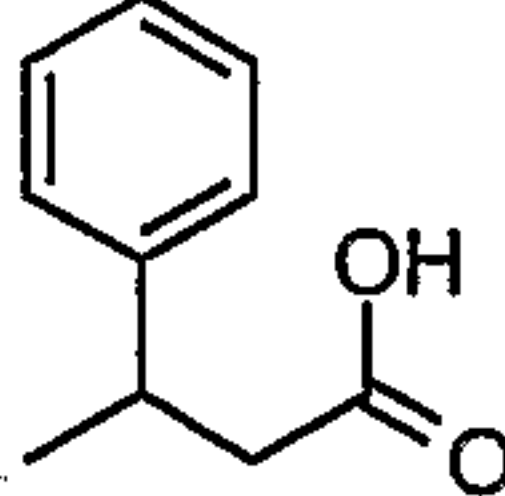
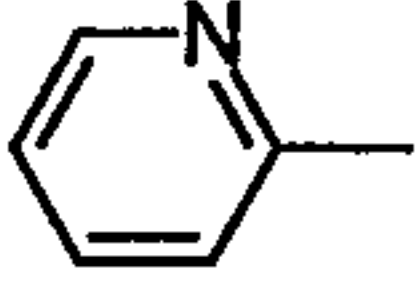
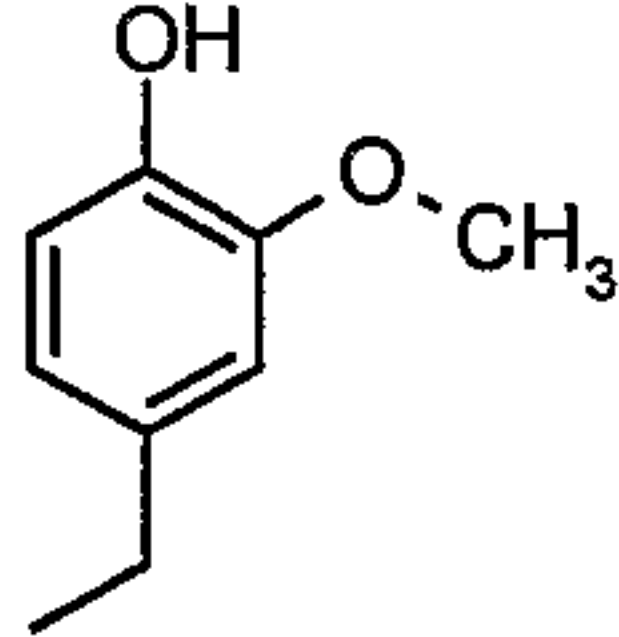
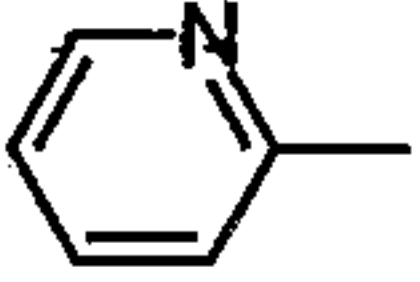
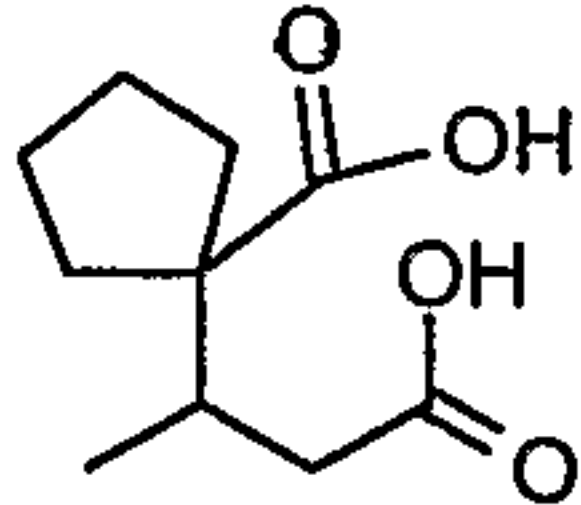
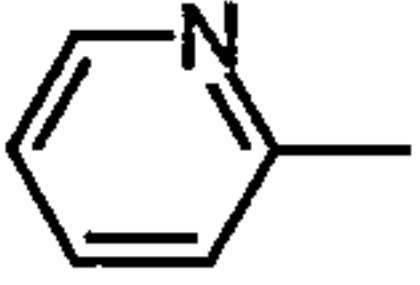
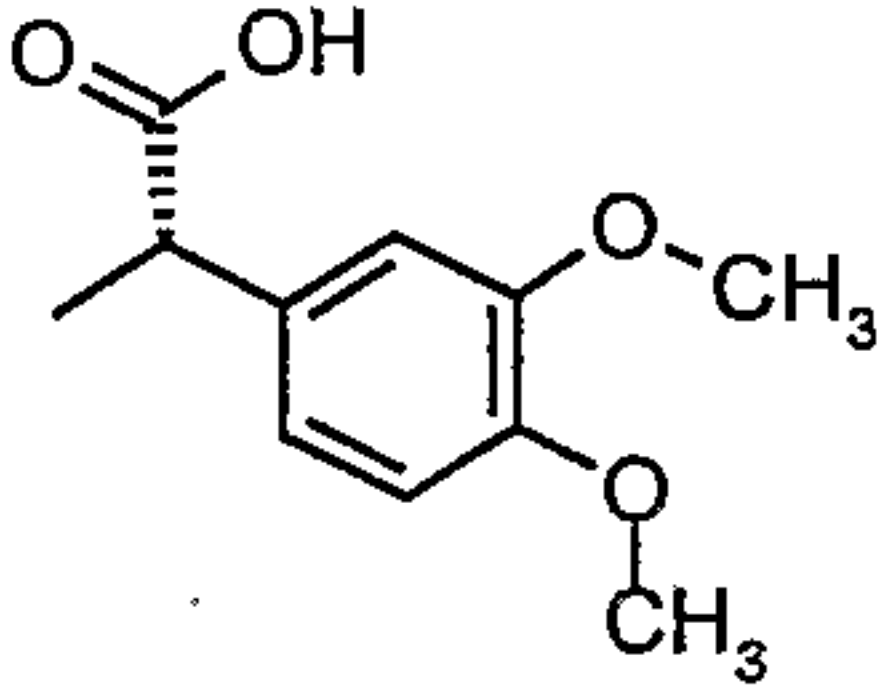
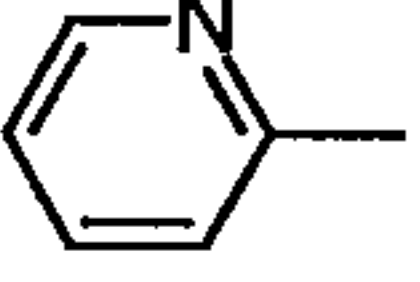
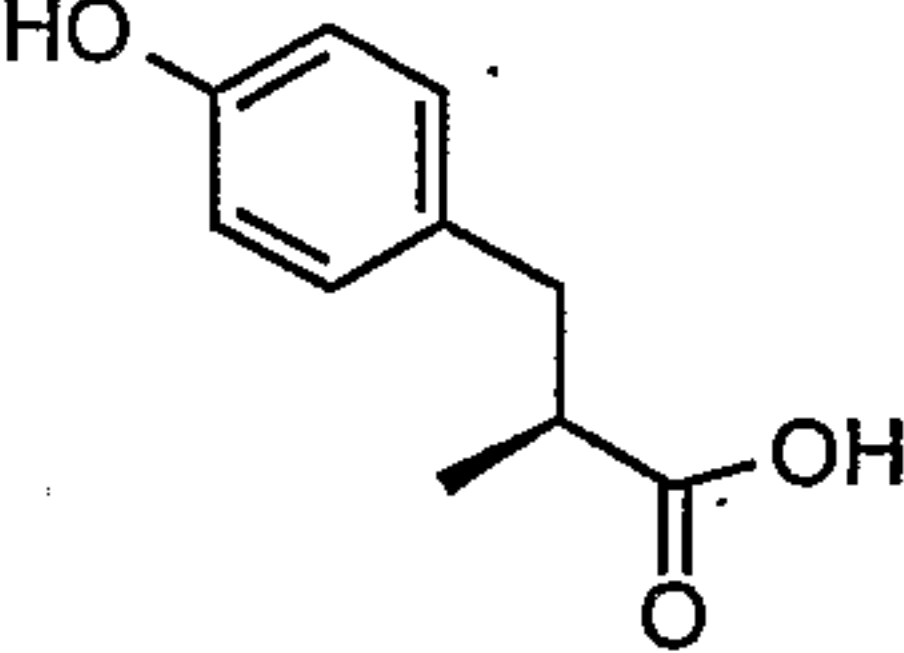
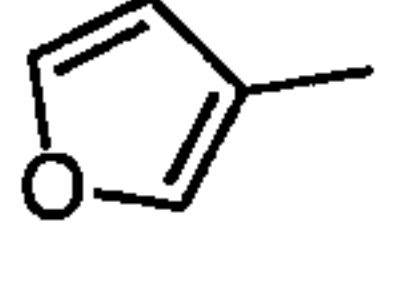
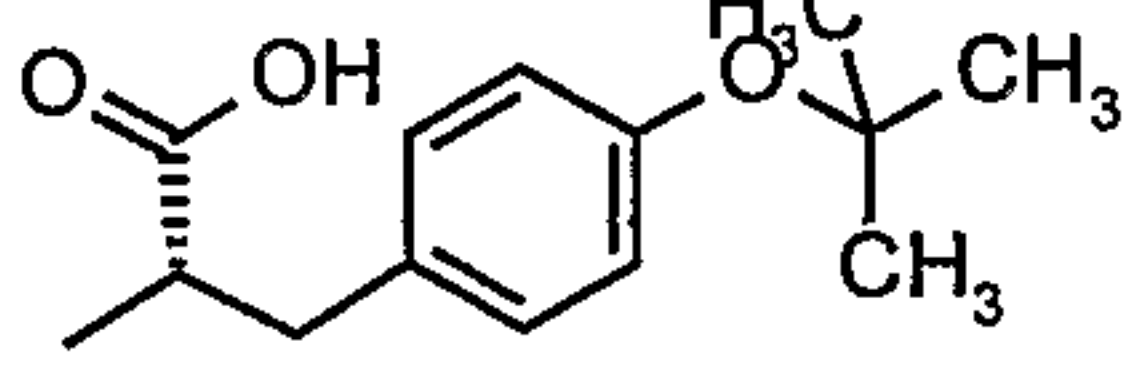
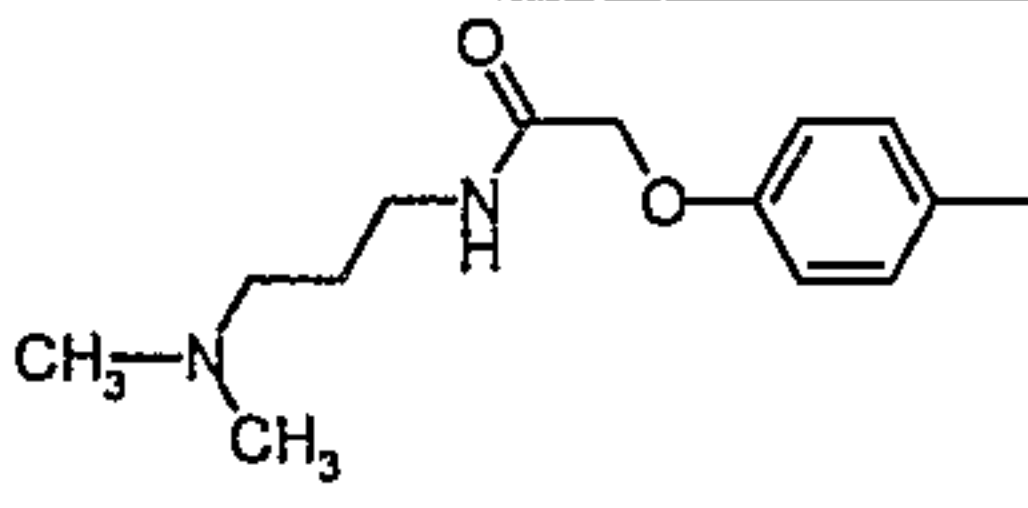
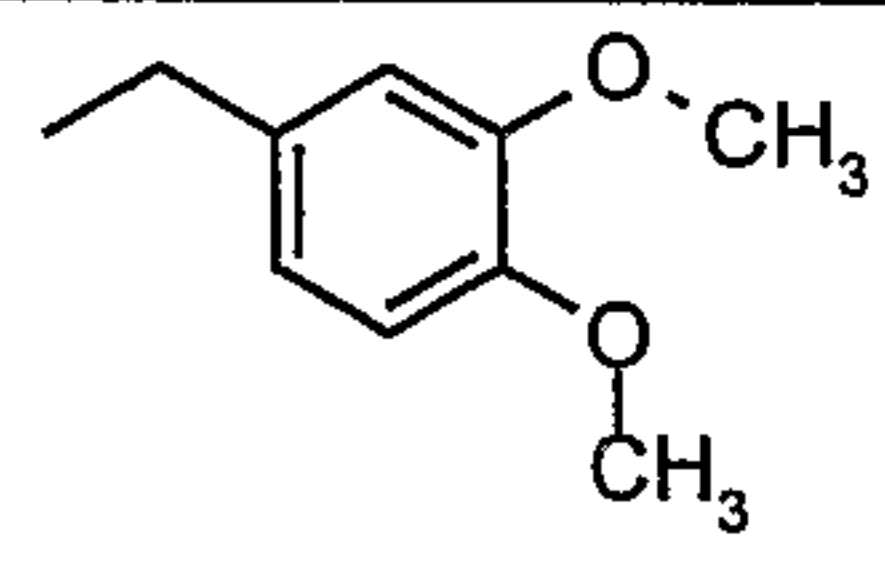
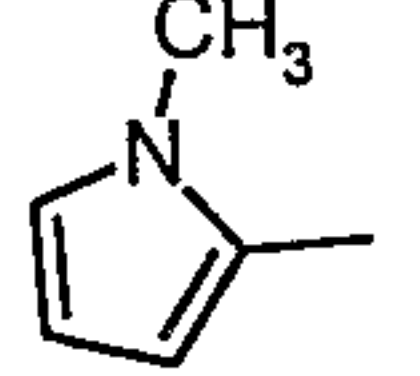
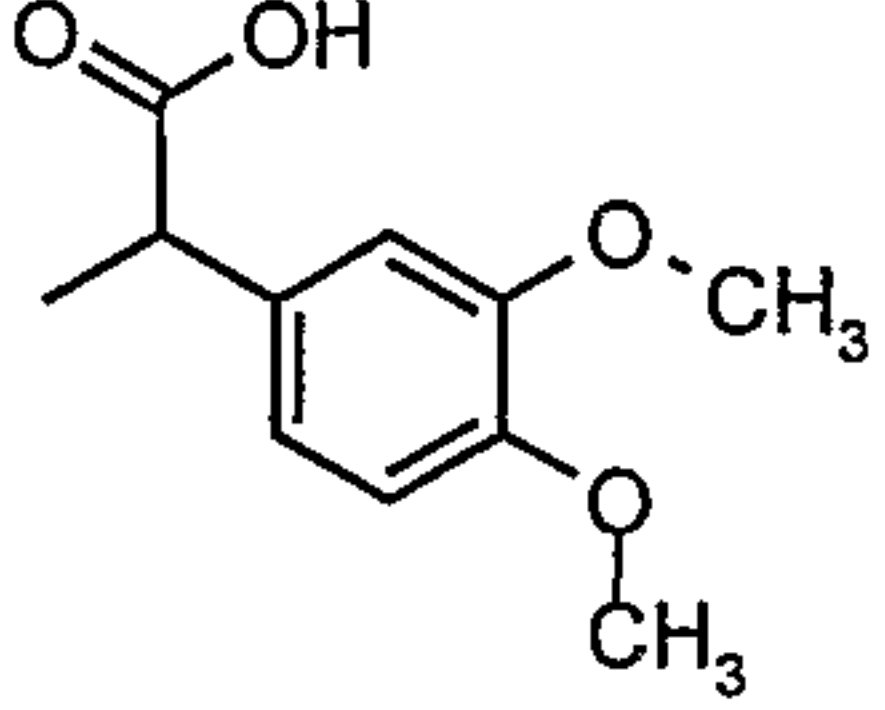
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2016	A			379(MH ⁺)
2017	A			435(MH ⁺)
2018	A			431(MH ⁺)
2019	A			423(MH ⁺)
2020	A			409(MH ⁺)
2021	A			409(MH ⁺)
2022	B			457(MH ⁺)
2023	A			499(MH ⁺)
2024	A			393(MH ⁺)
2025	B			459(MH ⁺)

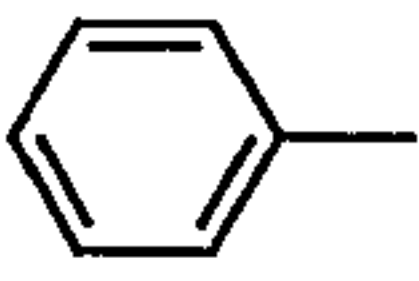
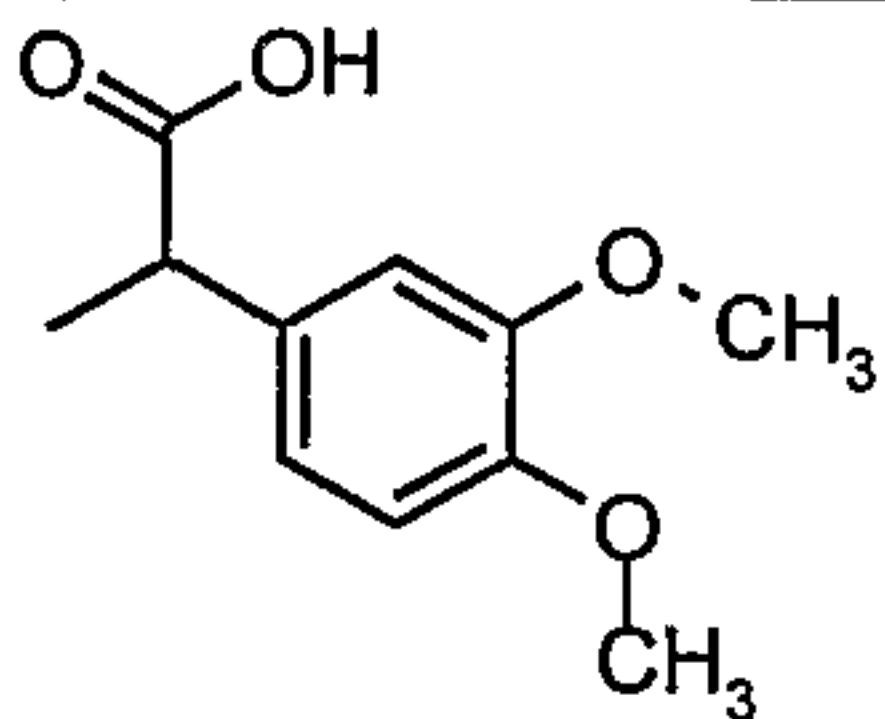
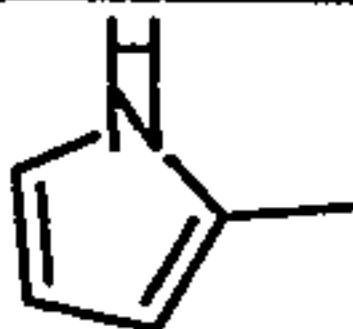
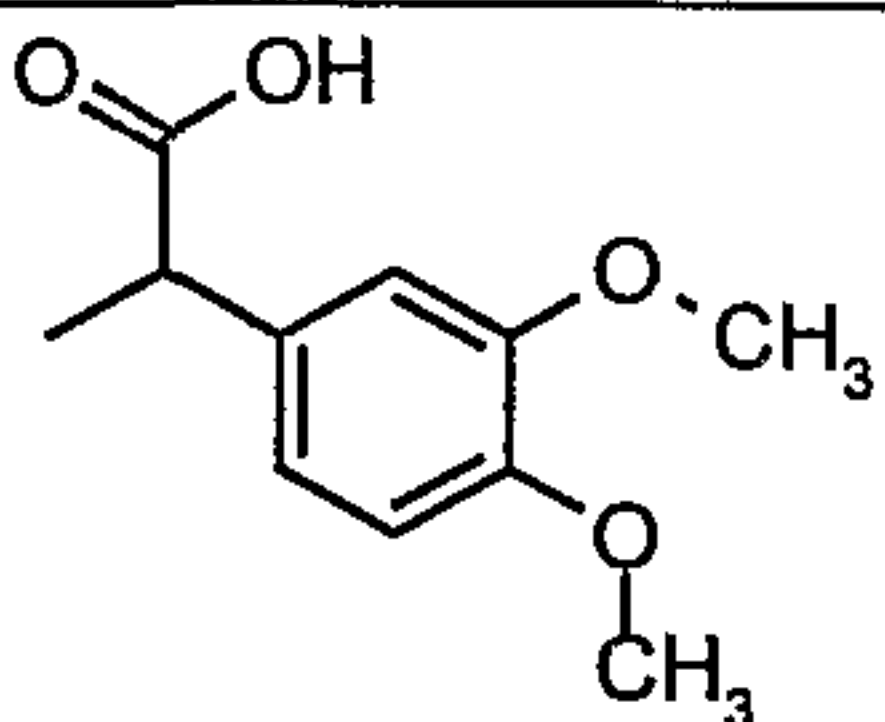
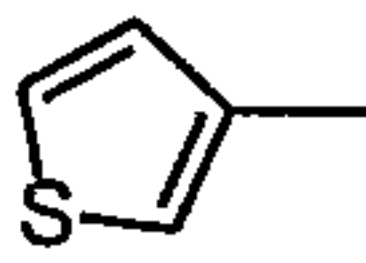
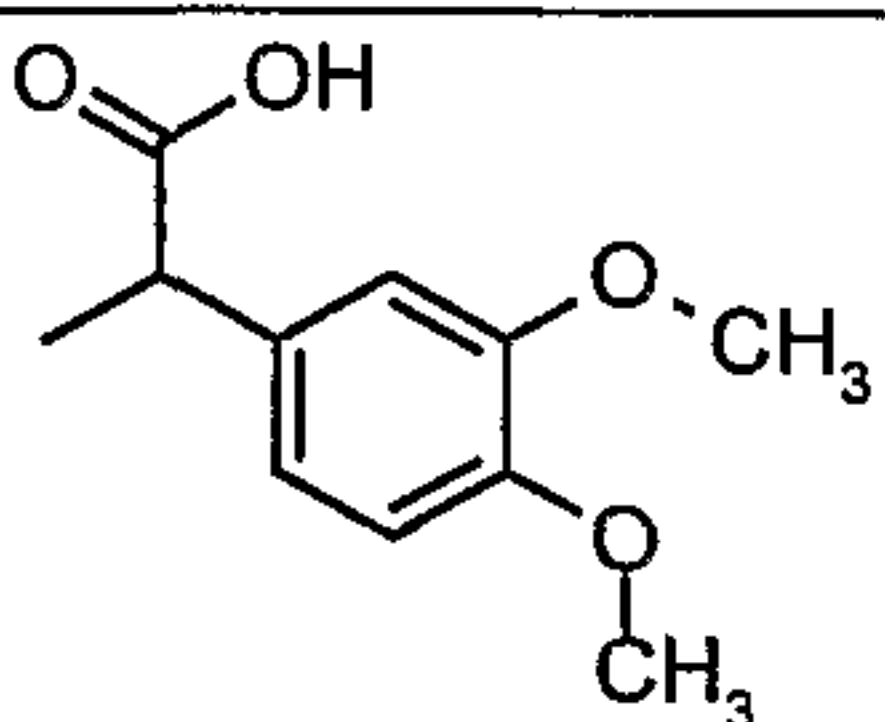
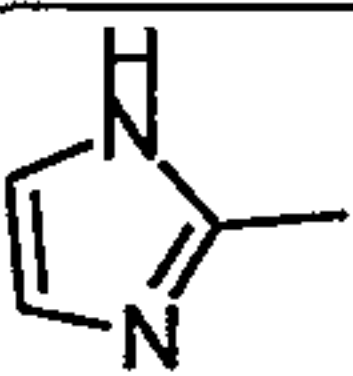
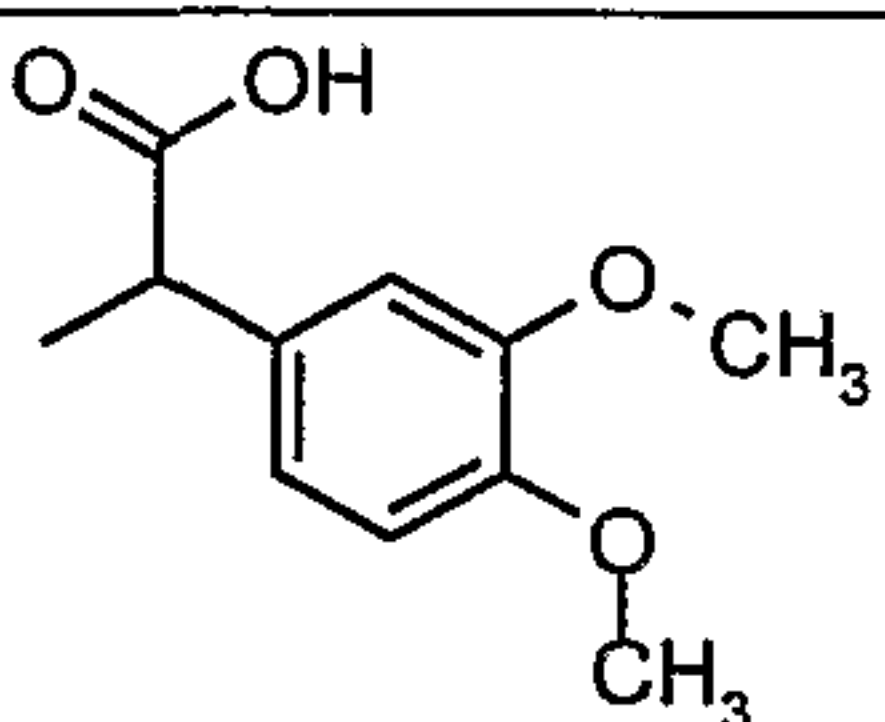
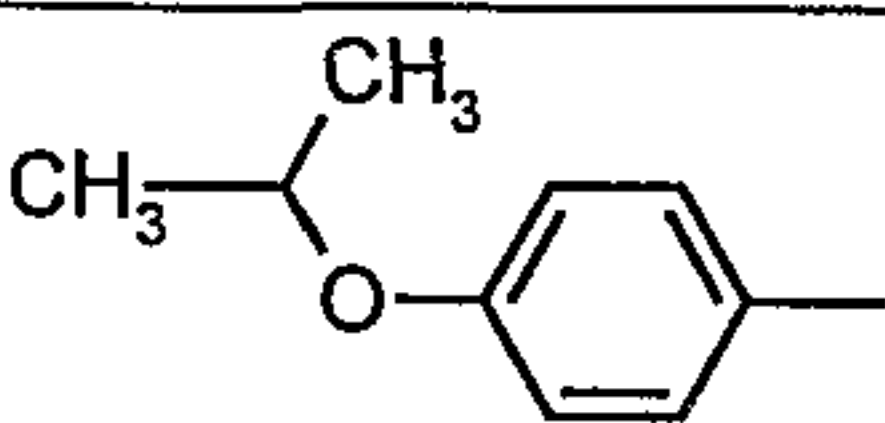
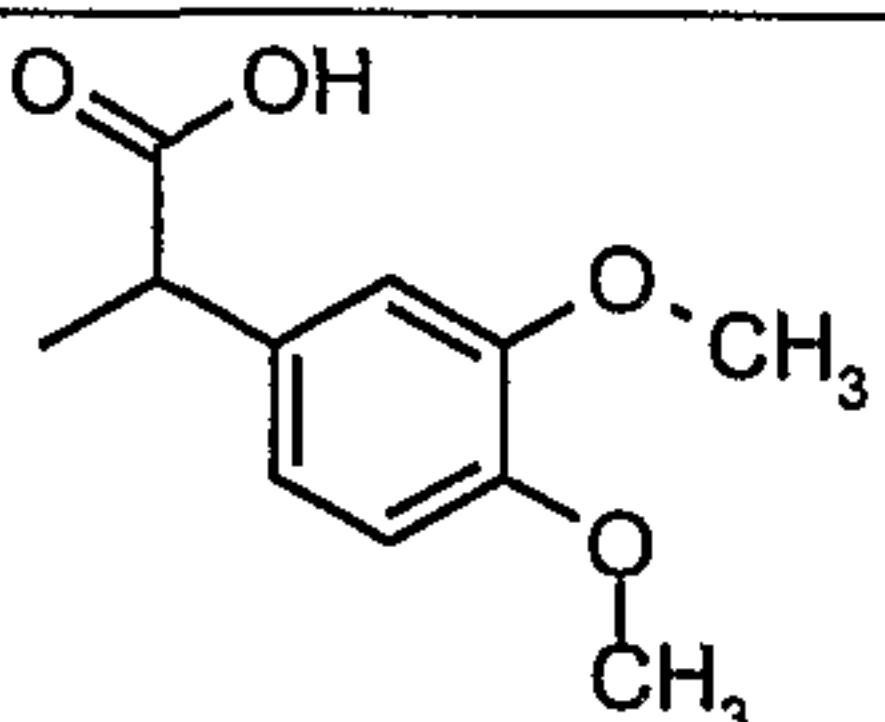
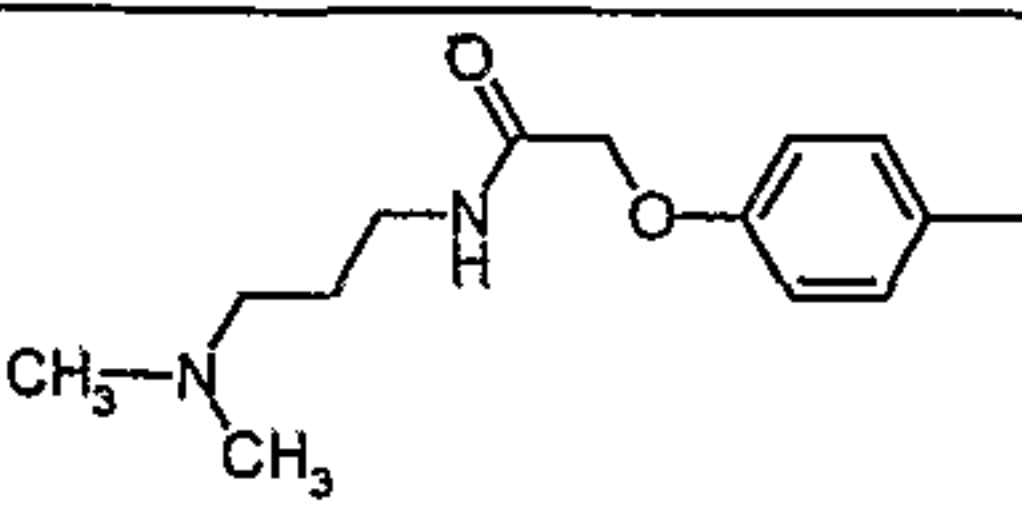
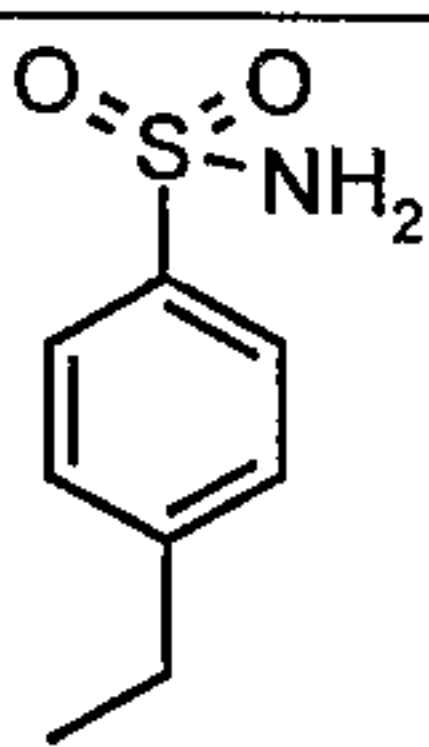
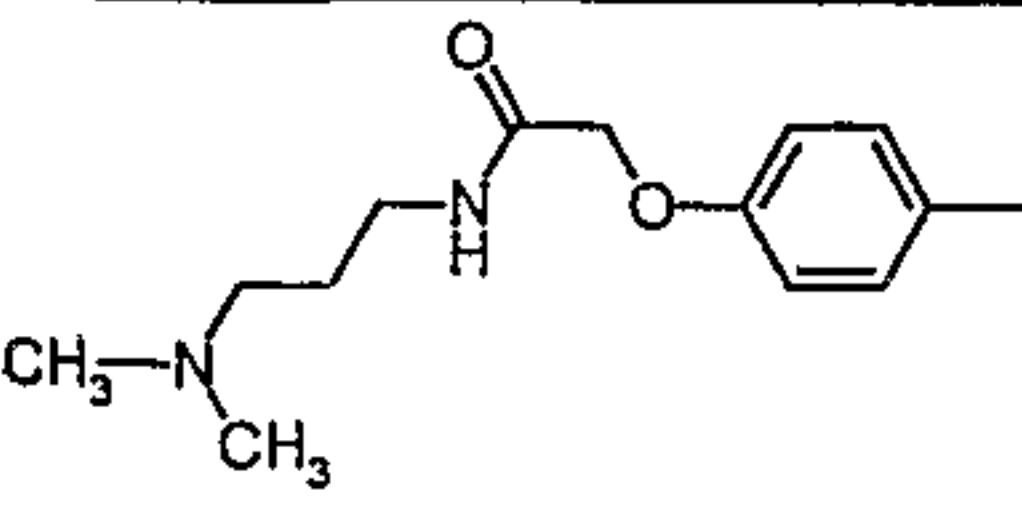
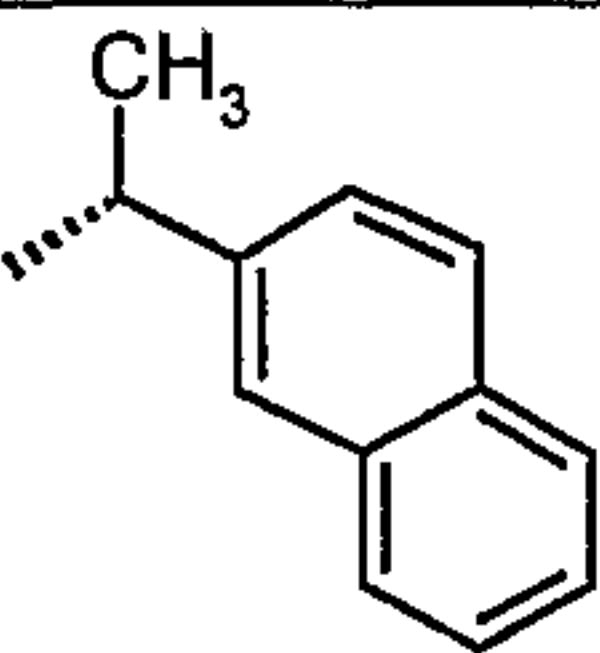
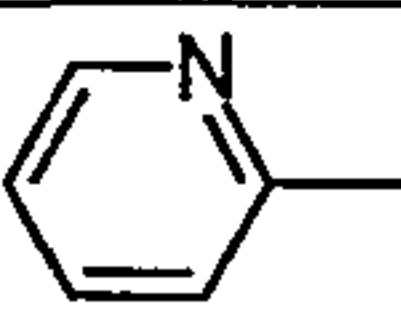
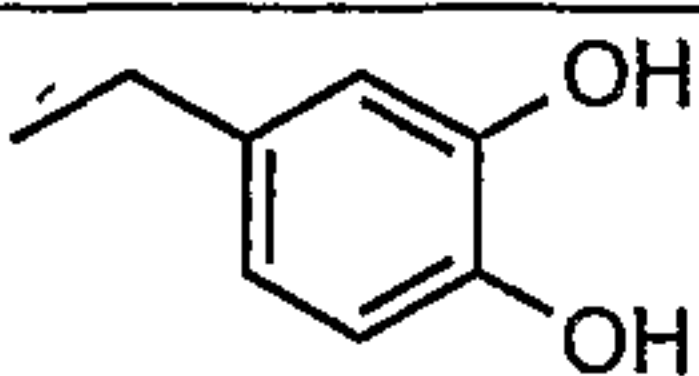
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2026	A			672(MH ⁺)
2027	A			520(MH ⁺)
2028	A			530(MH ⁺)
2029	A			546(MH ⁺)
2030	A			620(MH ⁺)
2031	A			544(MH ⁺)
2032	A			494(MH ⁺)

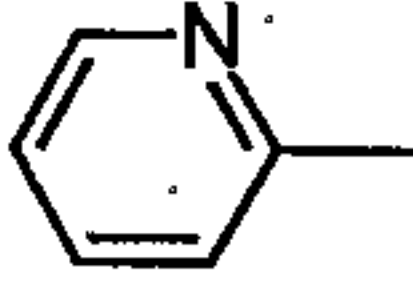
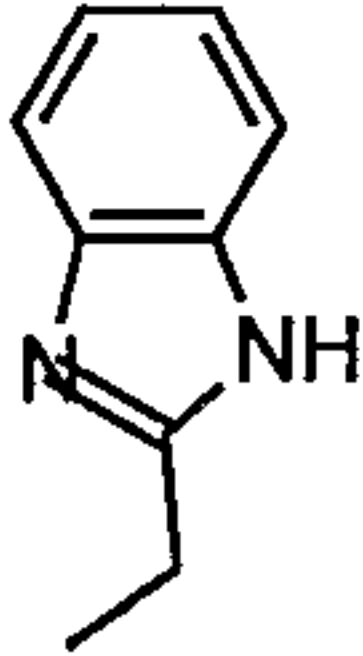
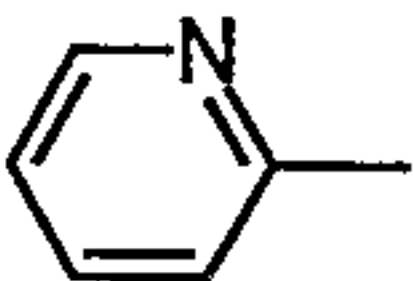
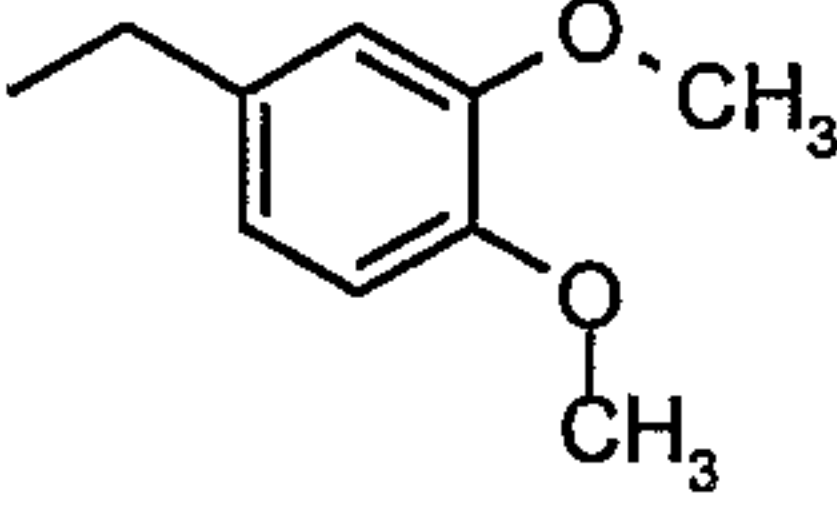
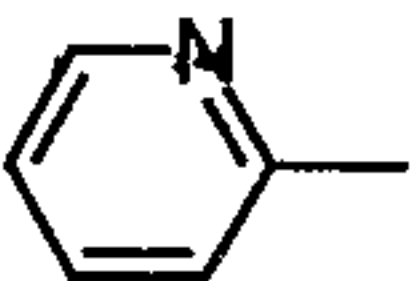
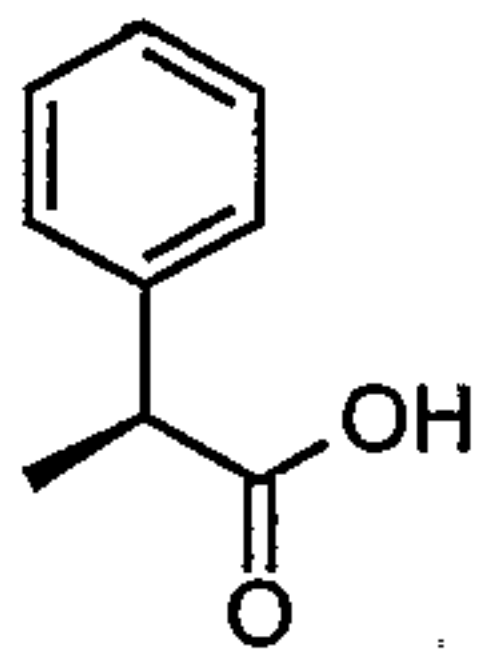
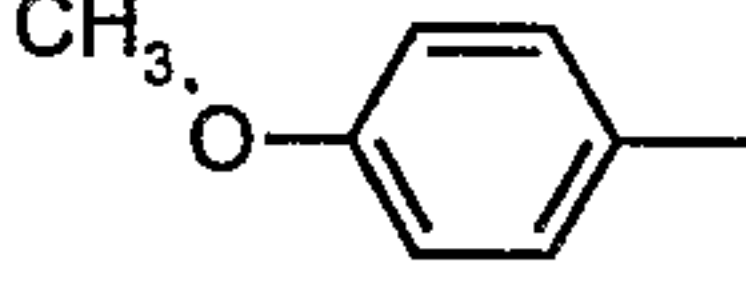
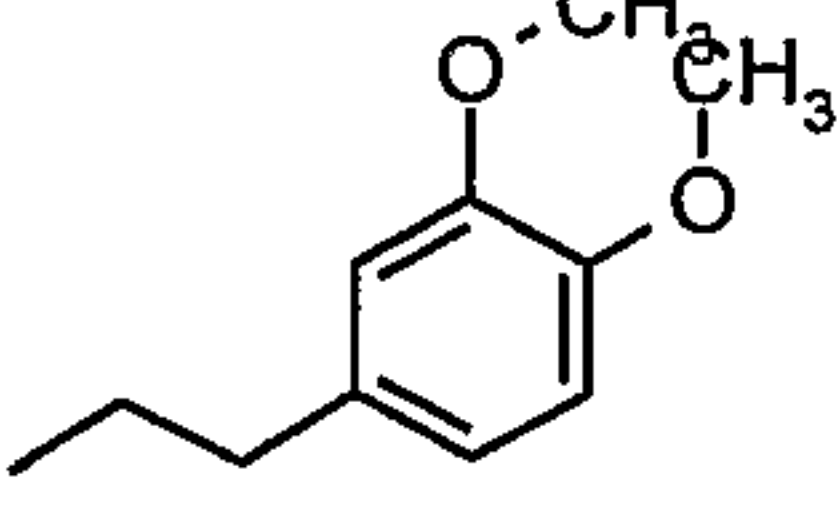
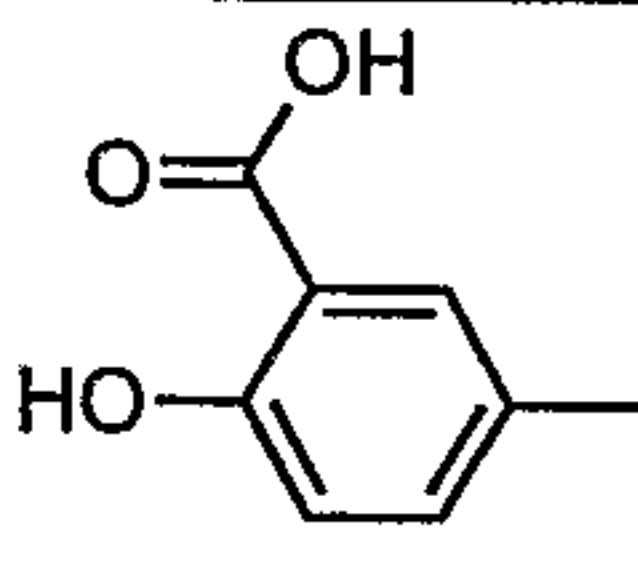
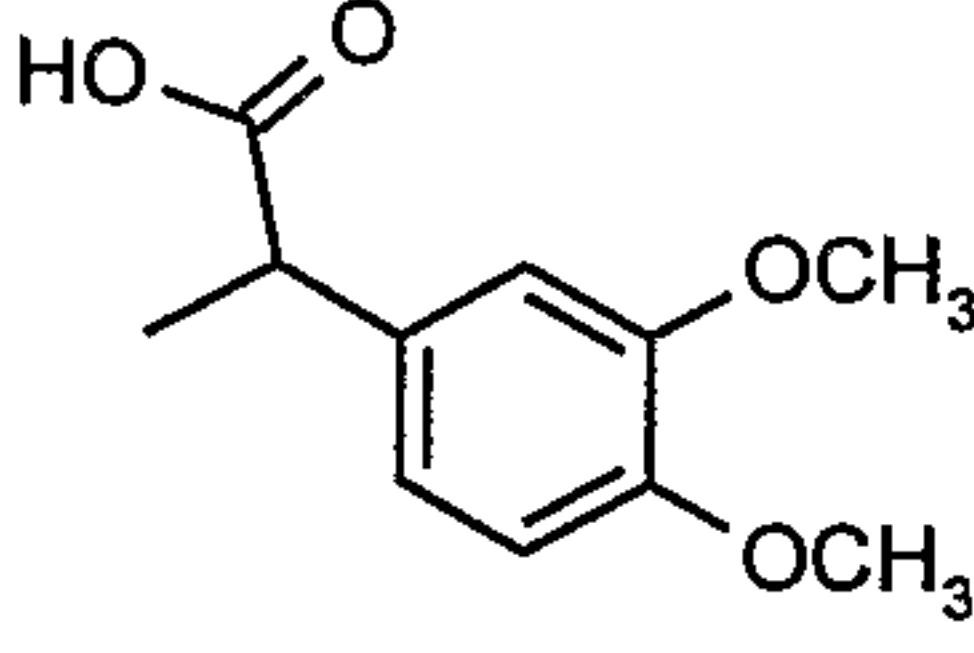
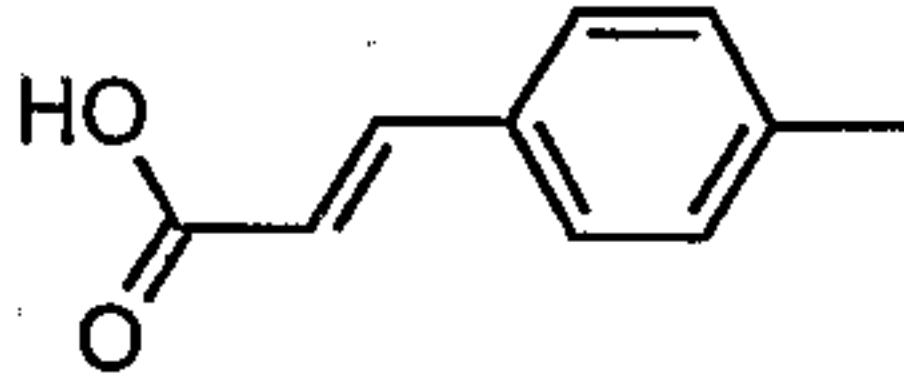
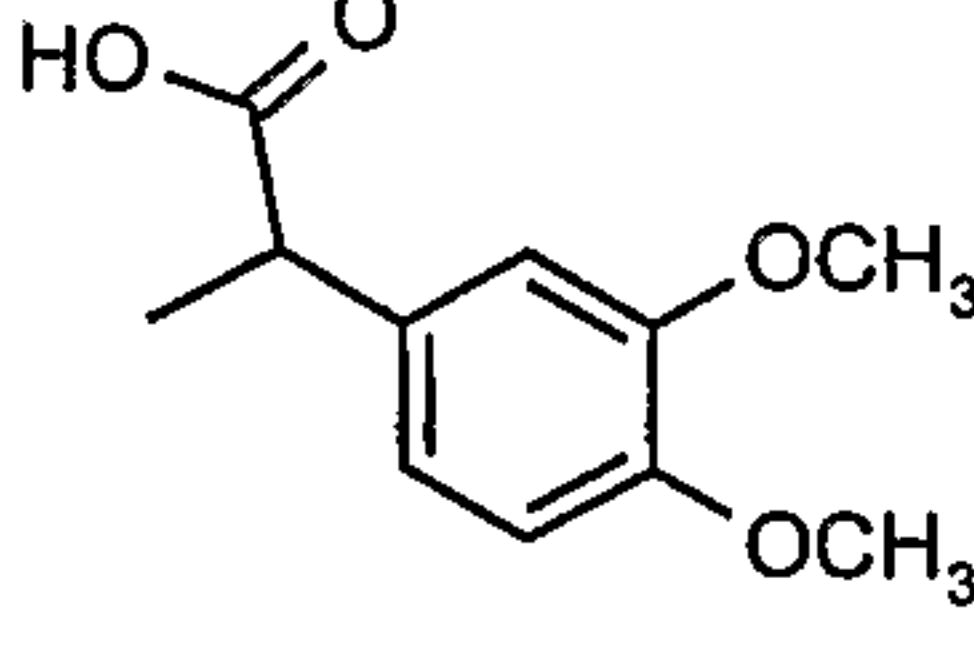
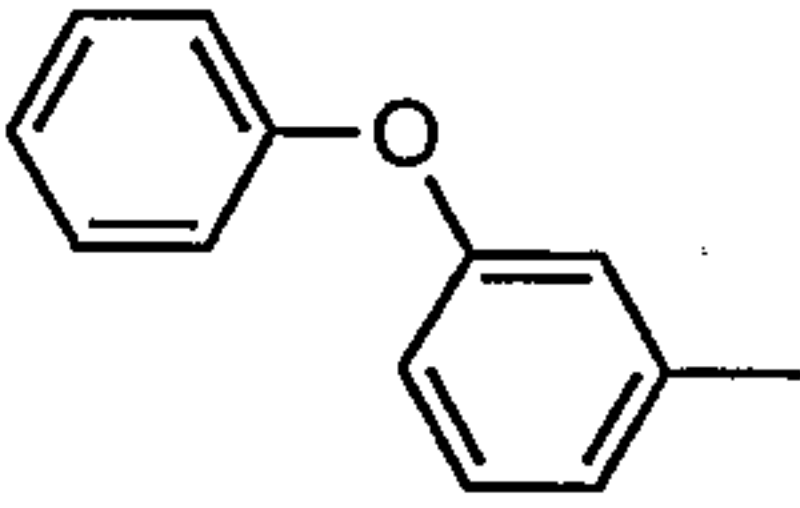
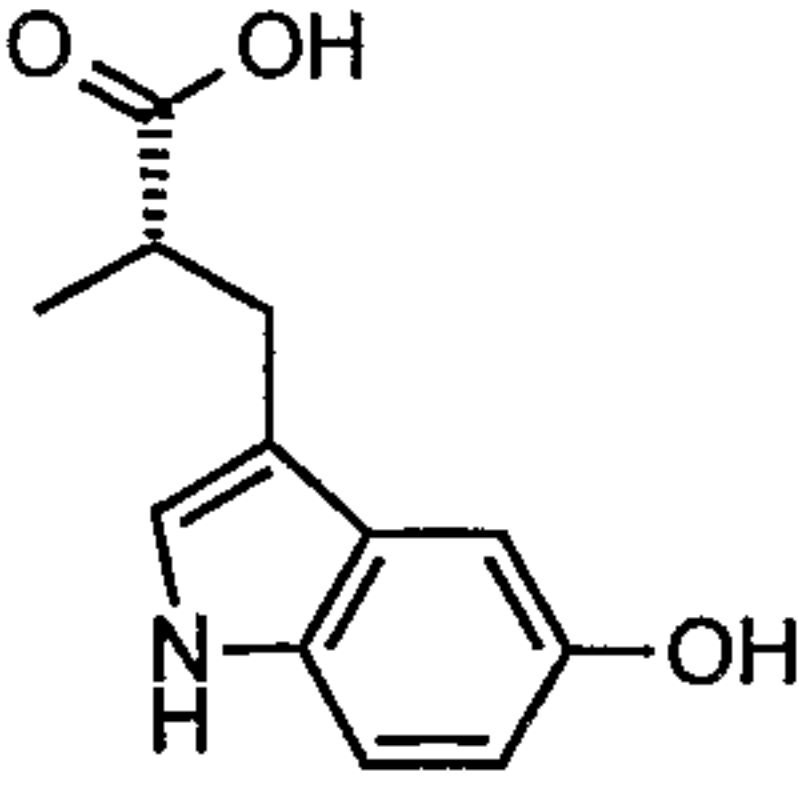
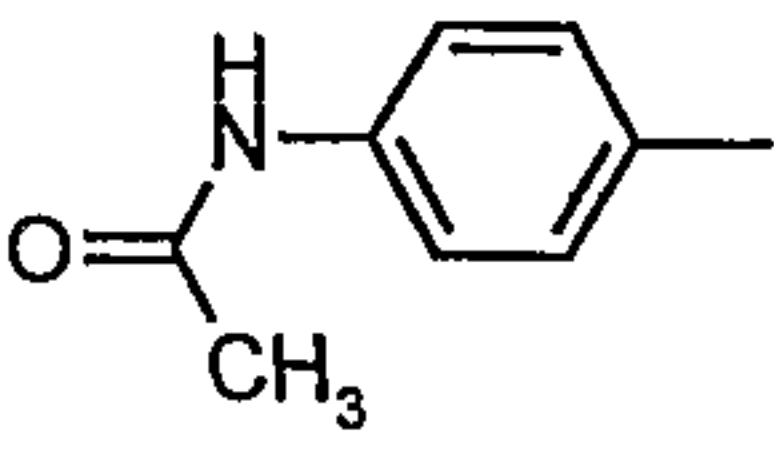
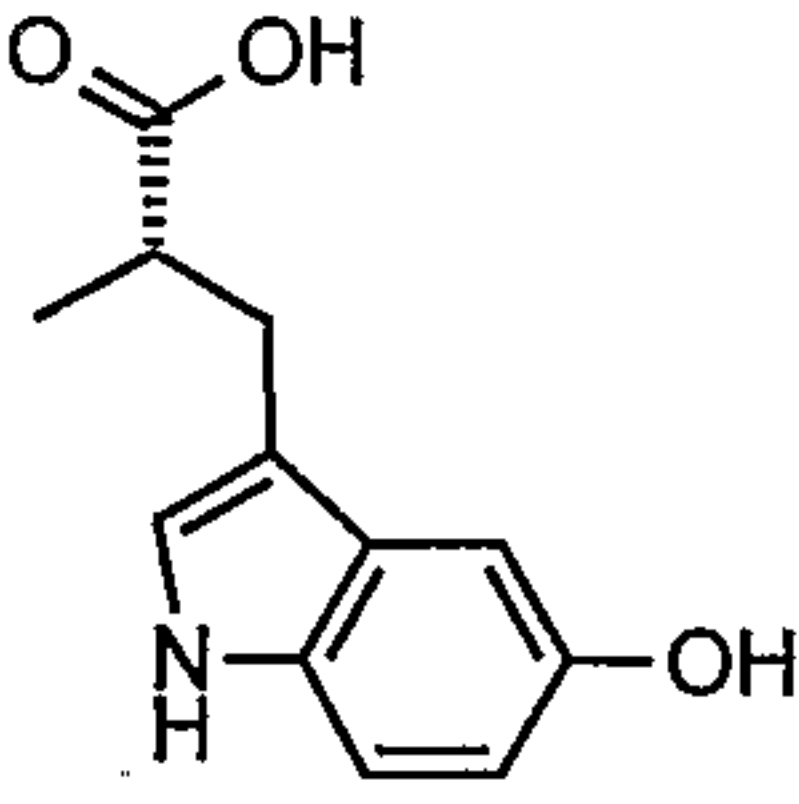
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2033	A			530(MH ⁺)
2034	A			478(MH ⁺)
2035	A			558(MH ⁺)
2036	A			572(MH ⁺)
2037	A			492(MH ⁺)
2038	A			554(MH ⁺)
2039	A			646(MH ⁺)

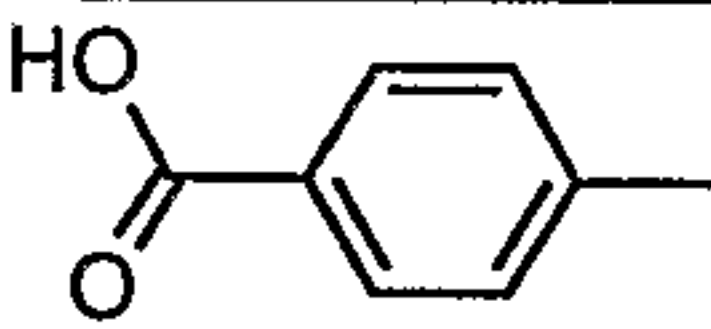
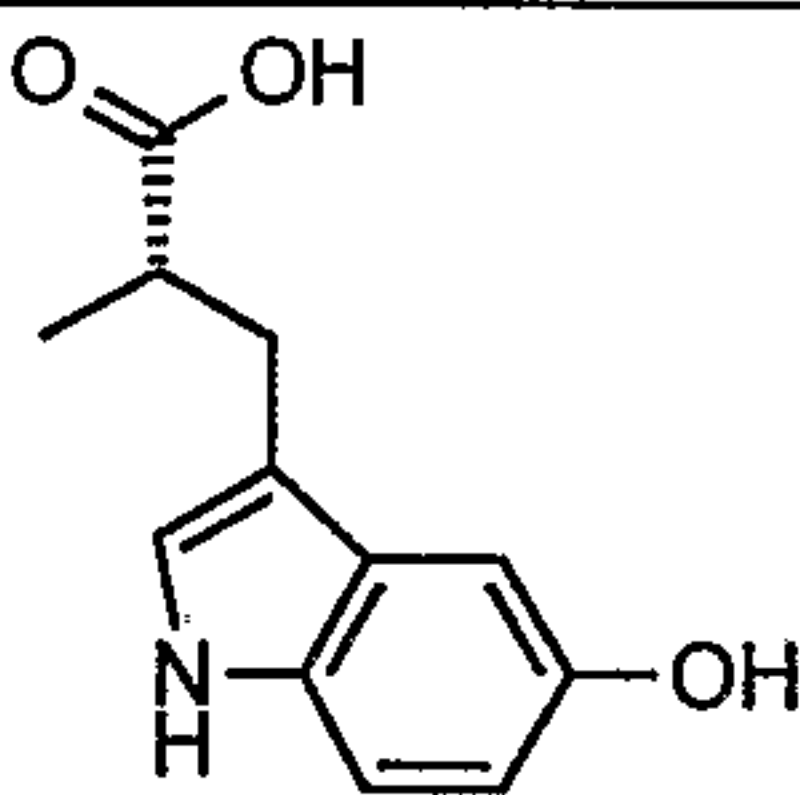
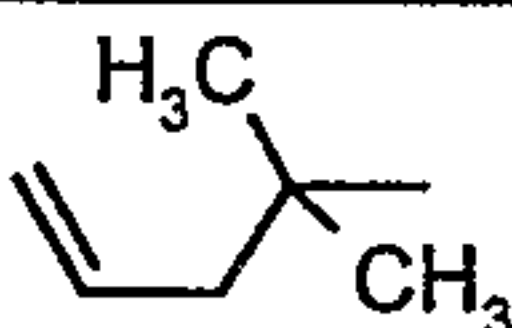
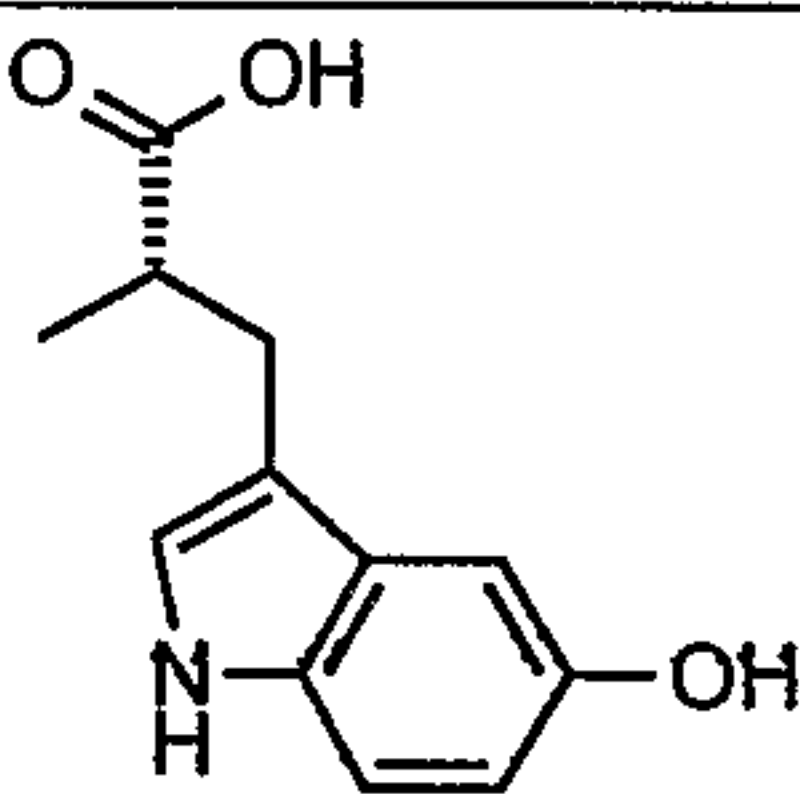
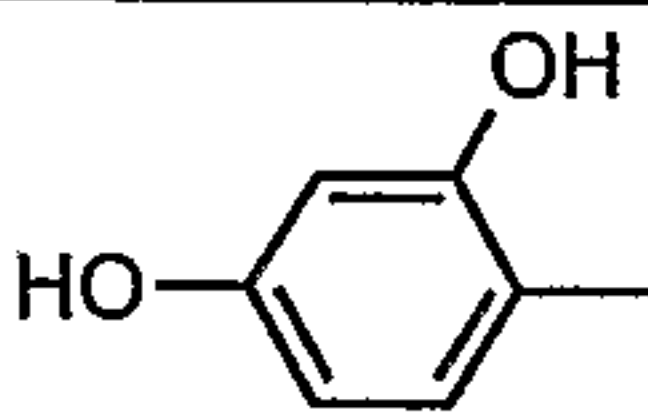
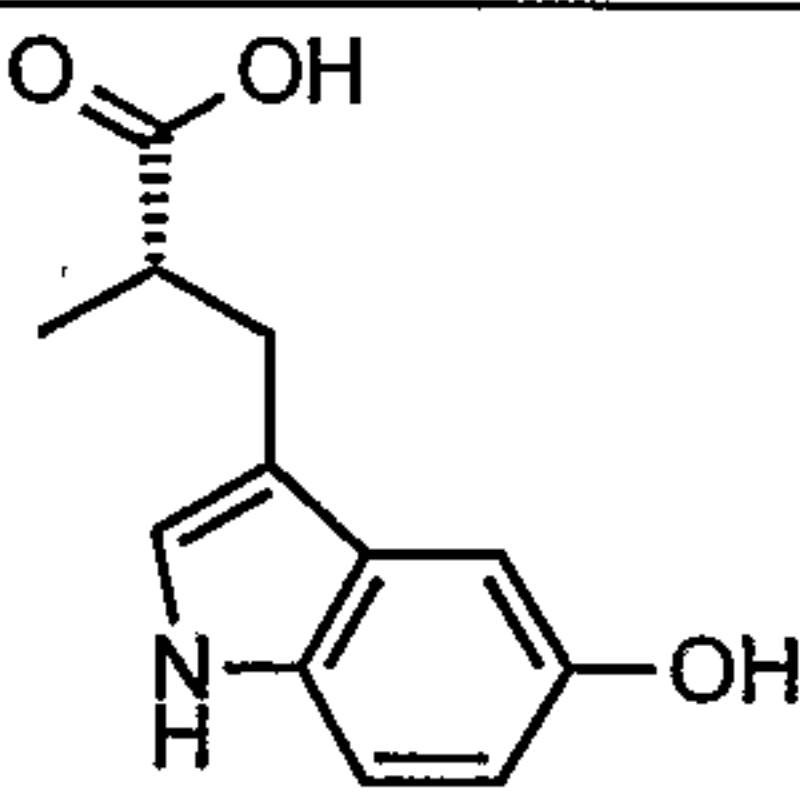
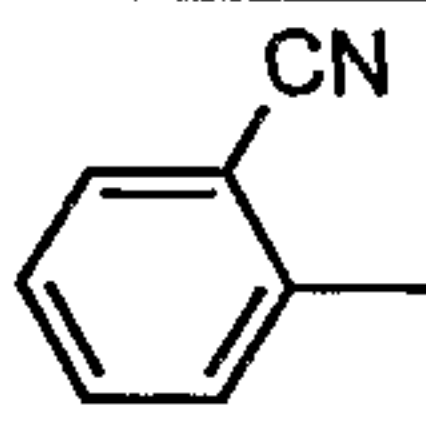
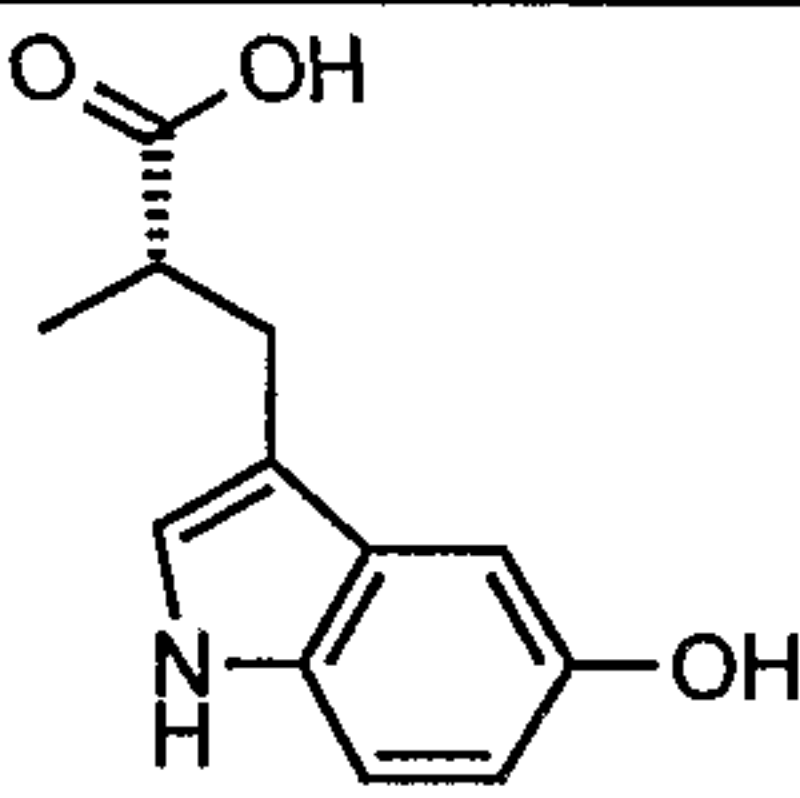
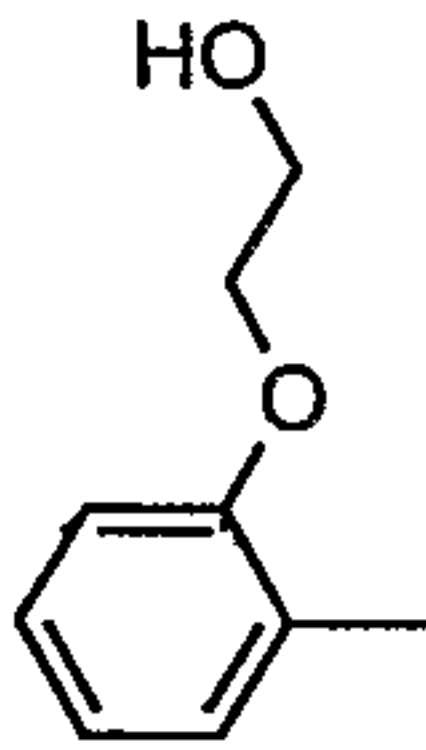
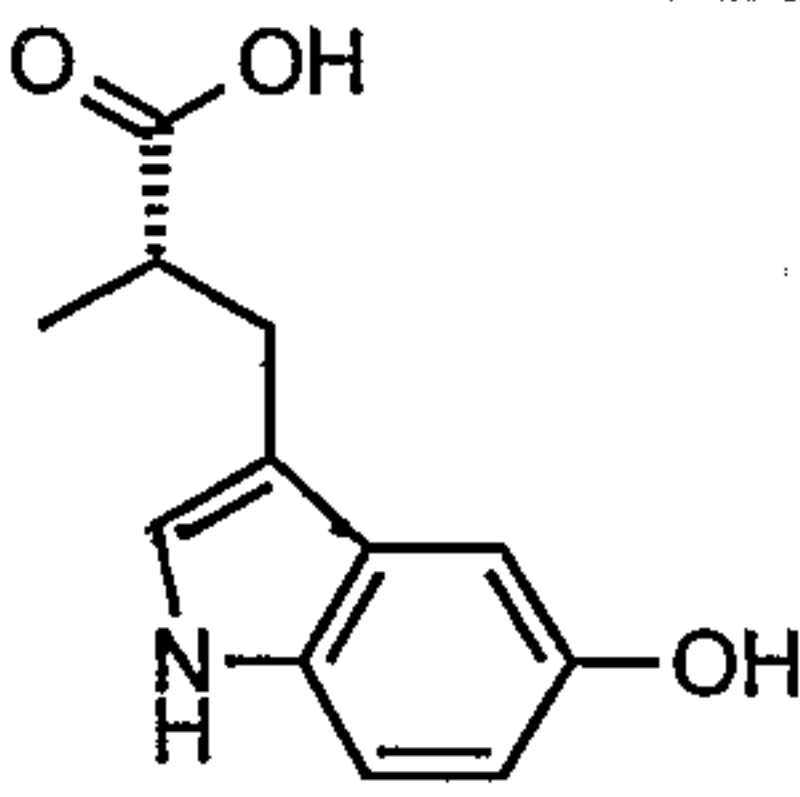
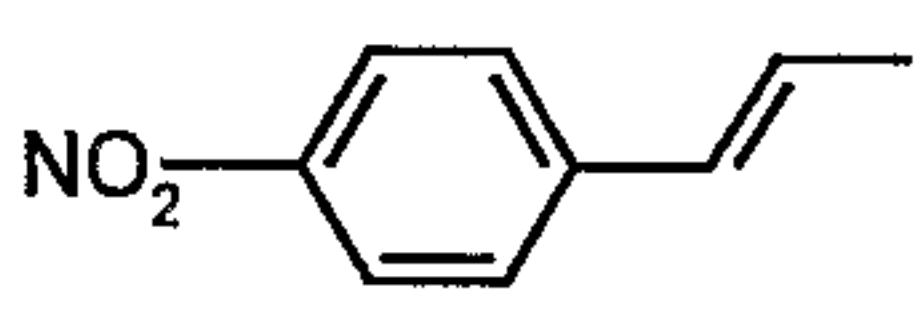
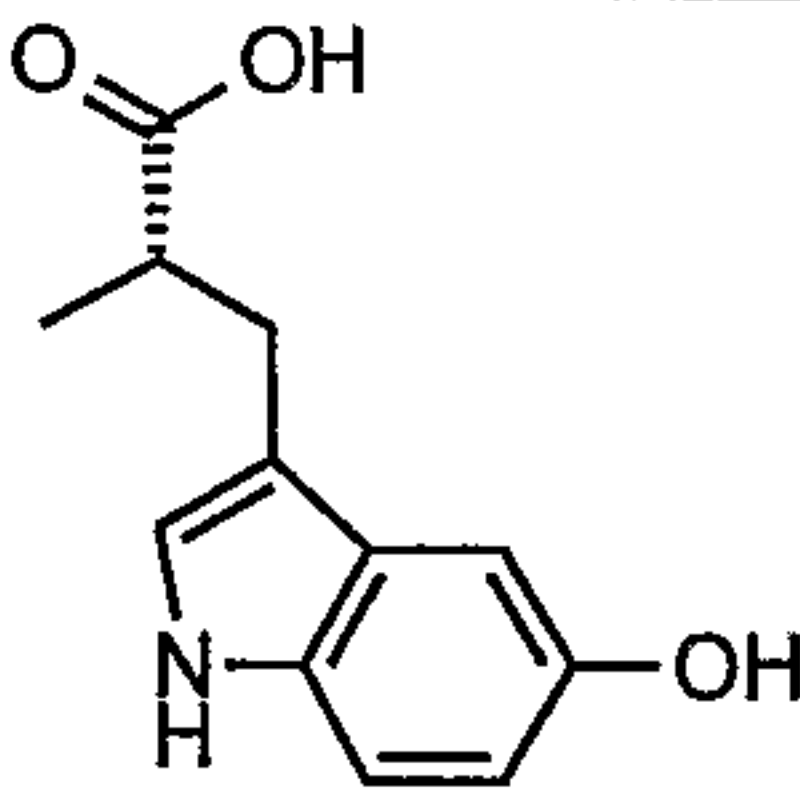
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2040	A	CH ₃		461(MH ⁺)
2041	C			485(MH ⁺)
2042	C			485(MH ⁺)
2043	B			499(MH ⁺)
2044	B			499(MH ⁺)
2045	C			513(MH ⁺)
2046	B			474(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2047	B			529(MH ⁺)
2048	C			504(MH ⁺)
2049	C			515(MH ⁺)
2050	B			499(MH ⁺)
2051	B			527(MH ⁺)
2054	B			451(MH ⁺)
2055	C			437(MH ⁺)

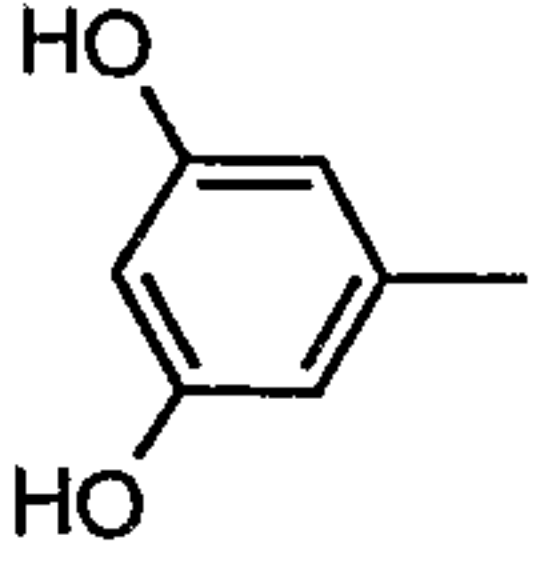
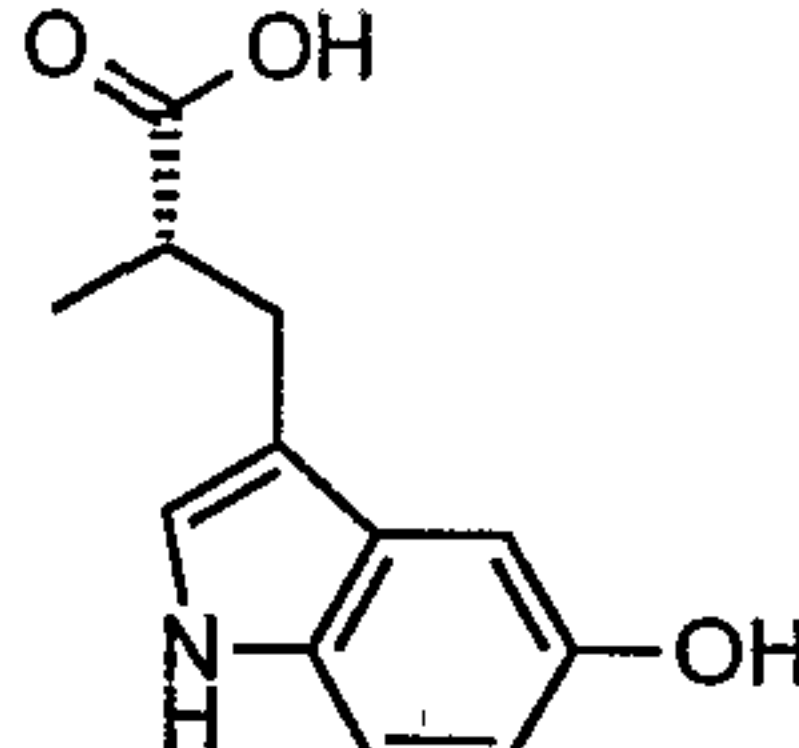
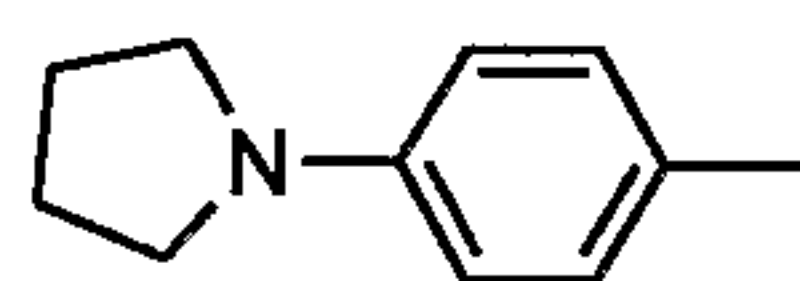
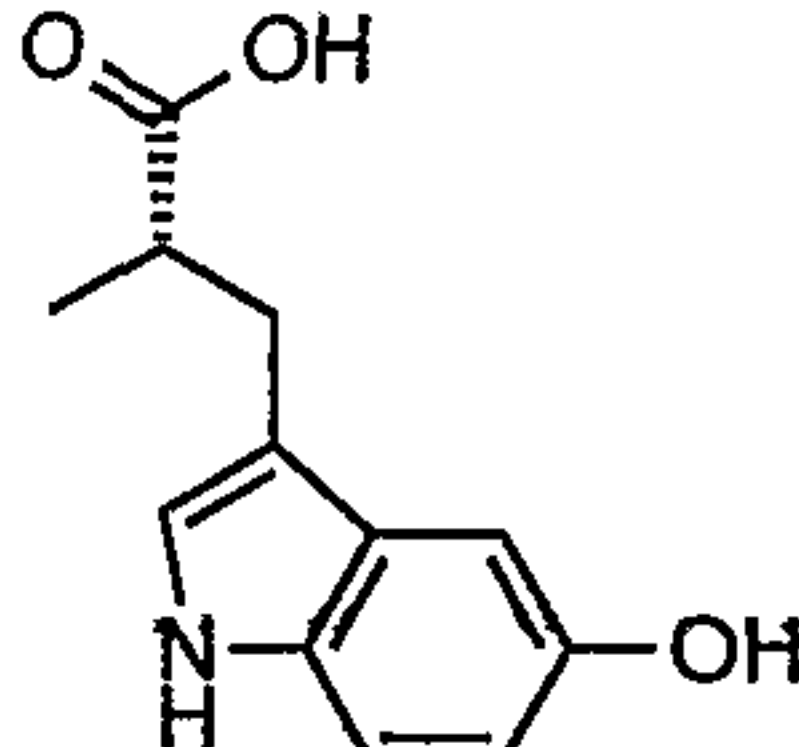
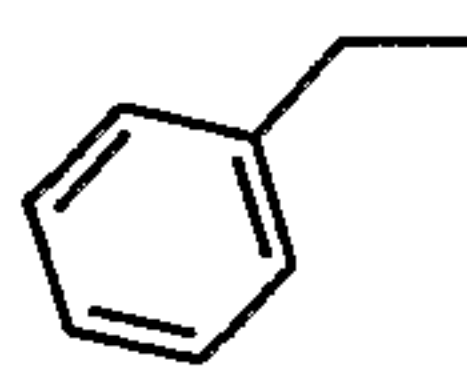
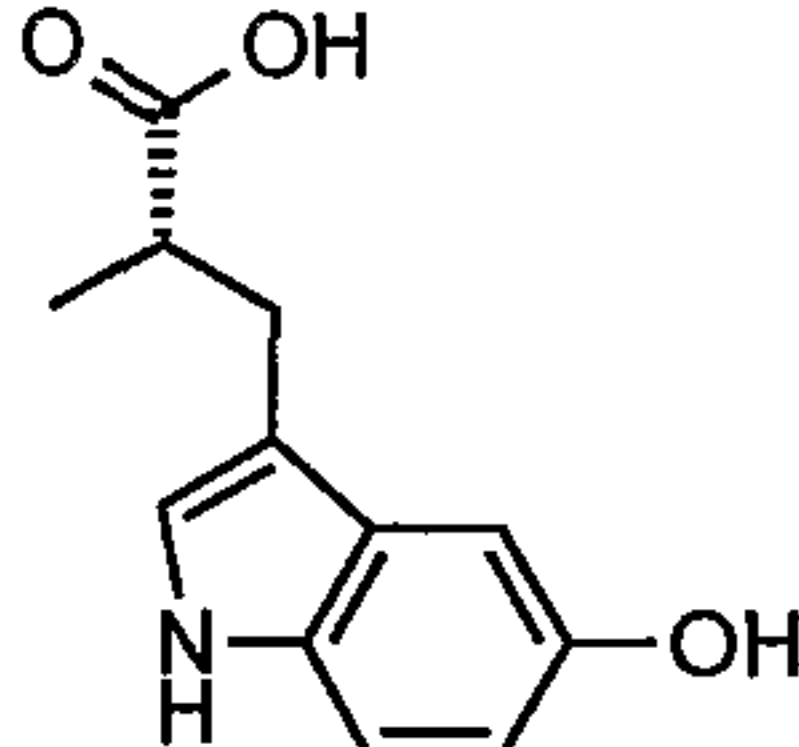
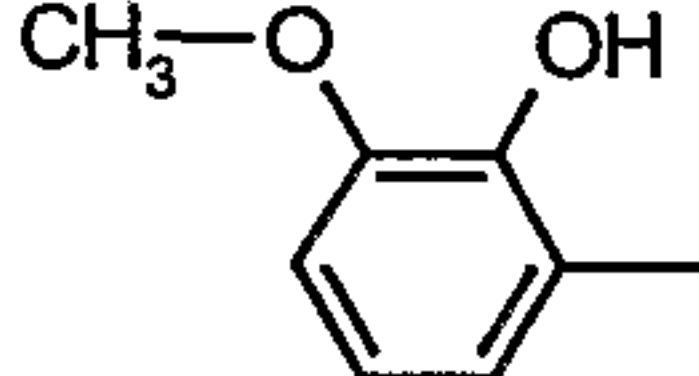
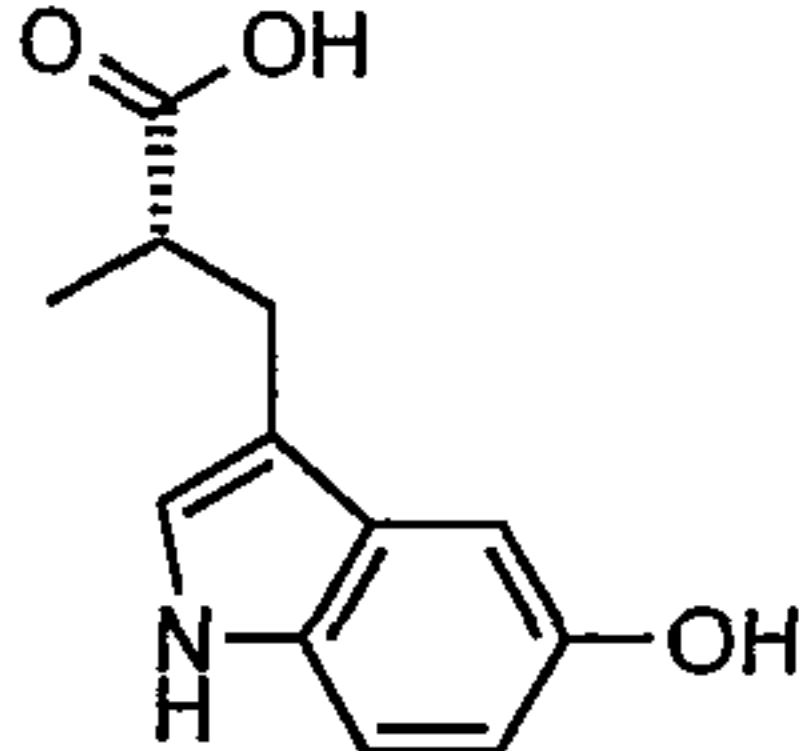
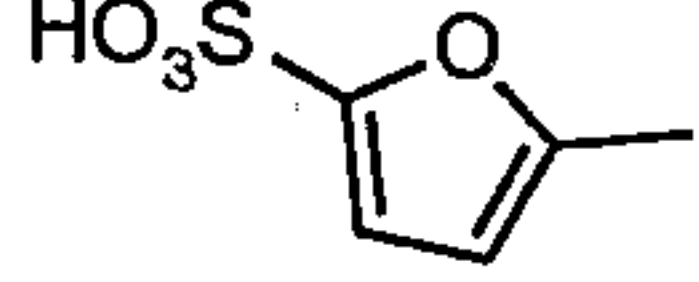
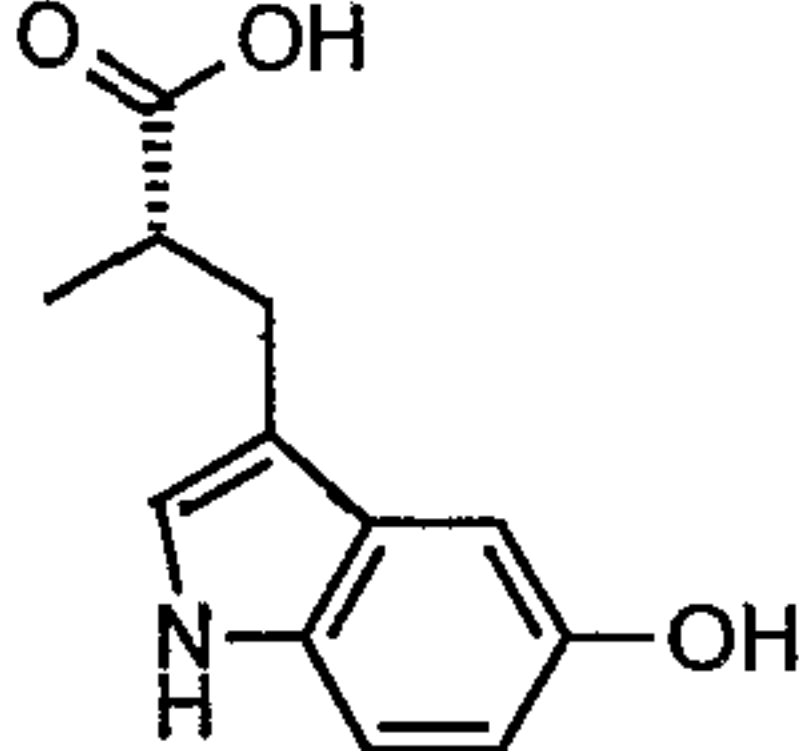
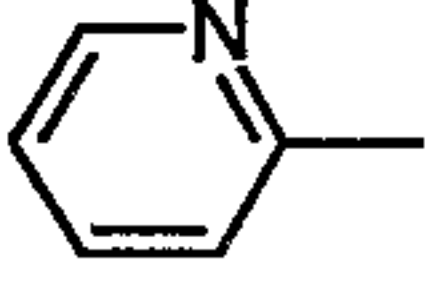
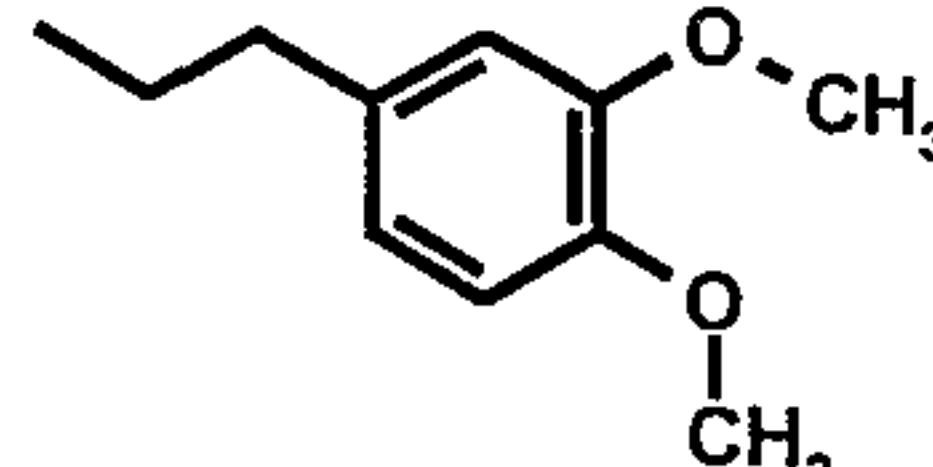
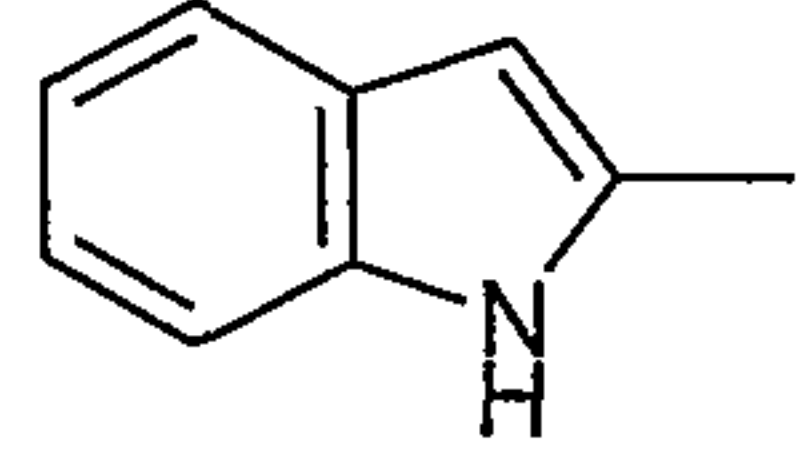
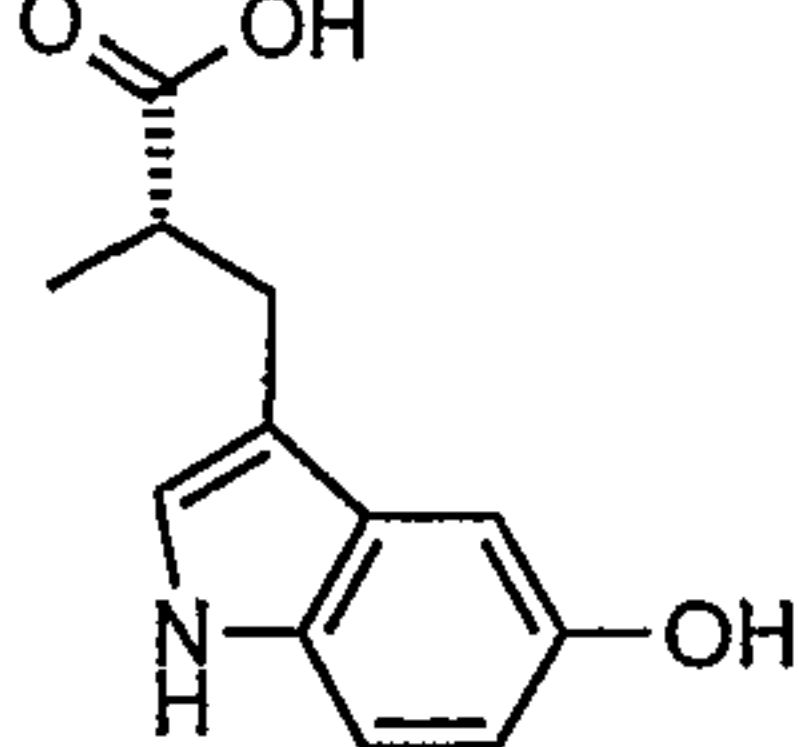
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2056	B			469(MH ⁺)
2057	B			457(MH ⁺)
2058	C			491(MH ⁺)
2059	C			515(MH ⁺)
2060	C			485(MH ⁺)
2061	B			530
2062	B			628(MH ⁺)
2063	C			517(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2064	C			514(MH ⁺)
2065	C			503(MH ⁺)
2067	C			520(MH ⁺)
2068	B			504(MH ⁺)
2069	C			572(MH ⁺)
2070	B			647(MH ⁺)
2071	C			632(MH ⁺)
2073	B			443(MH ⁺)

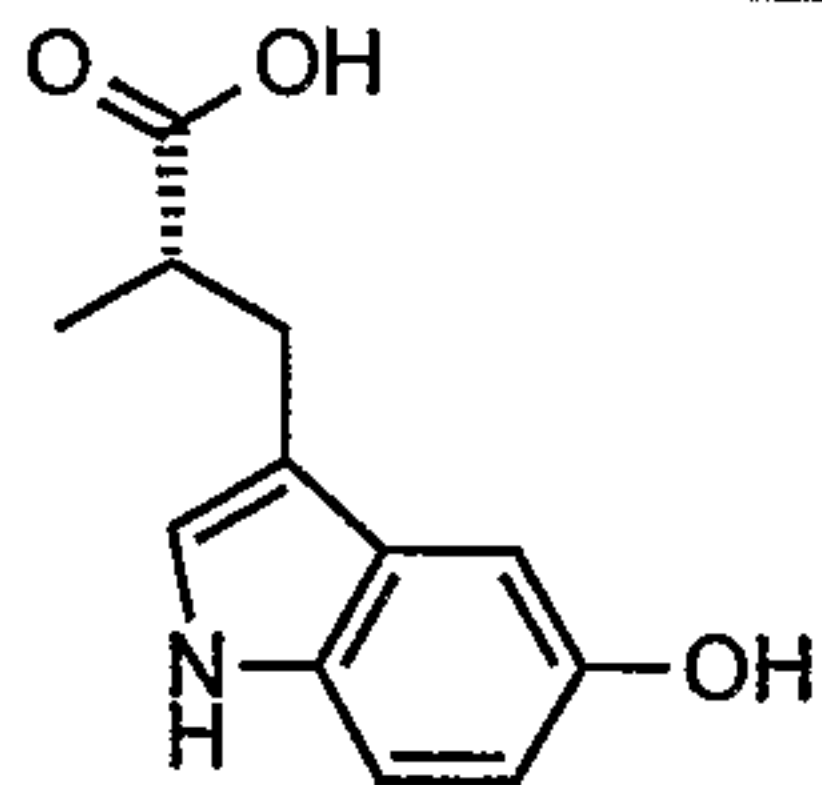
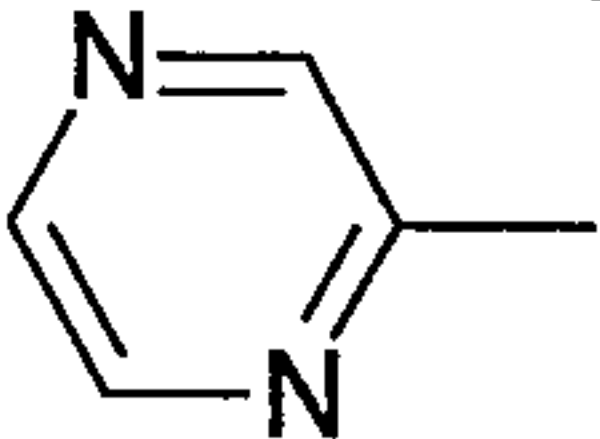
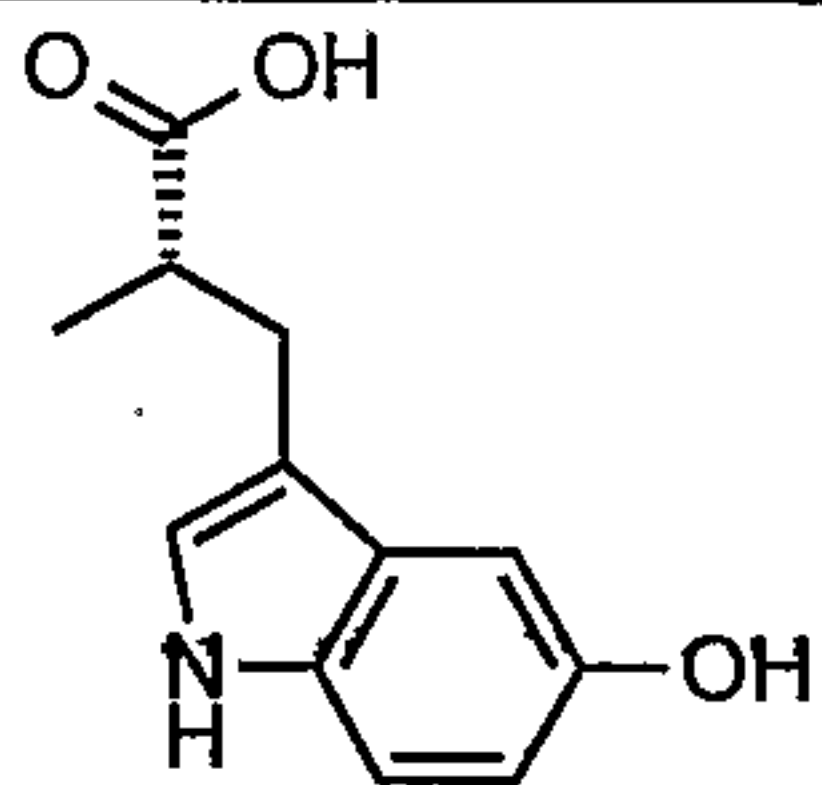
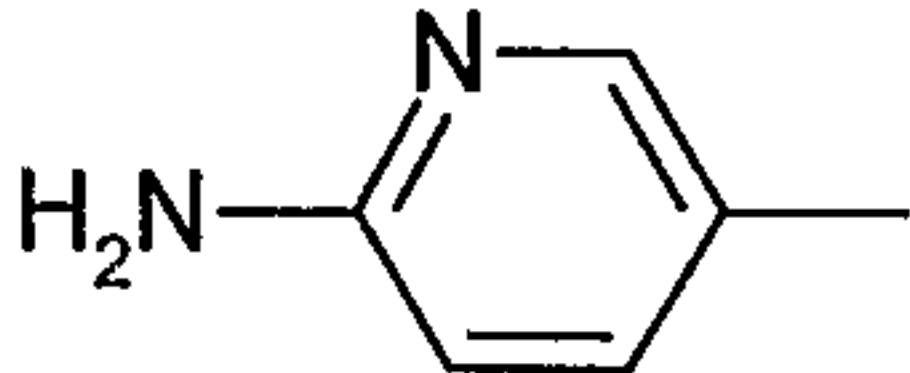
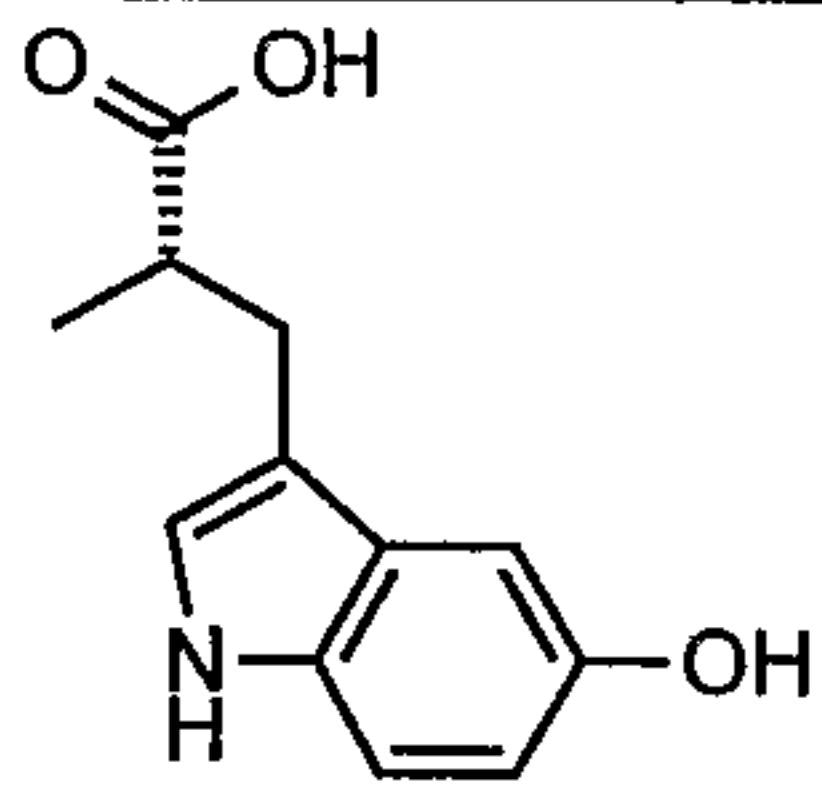
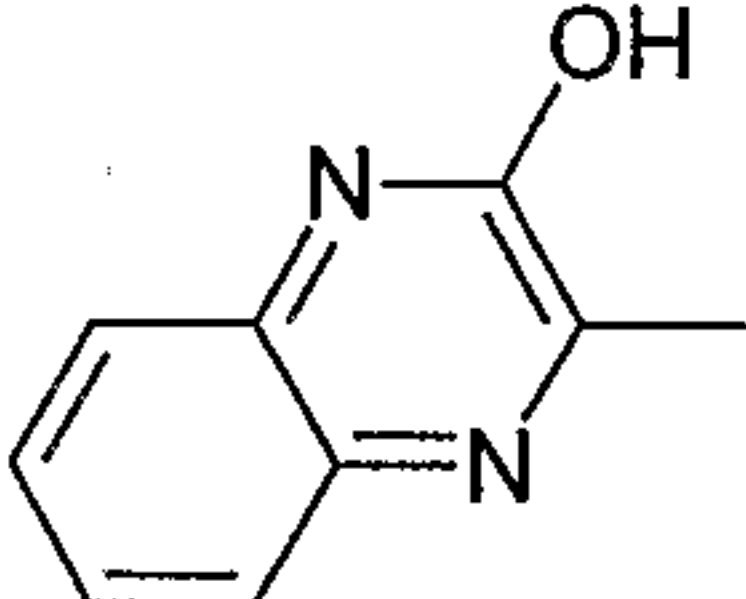
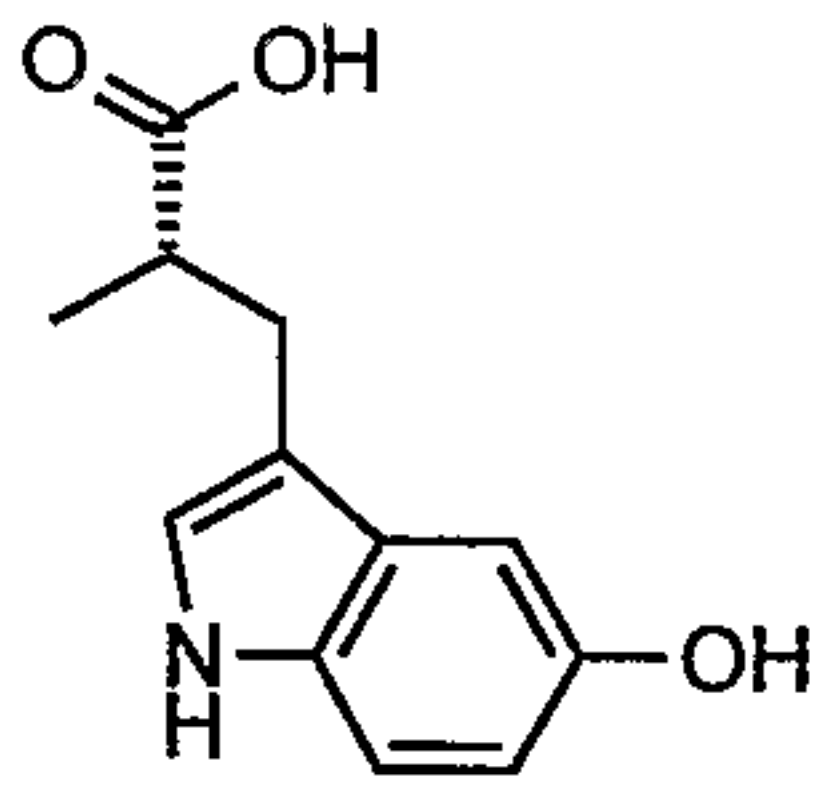
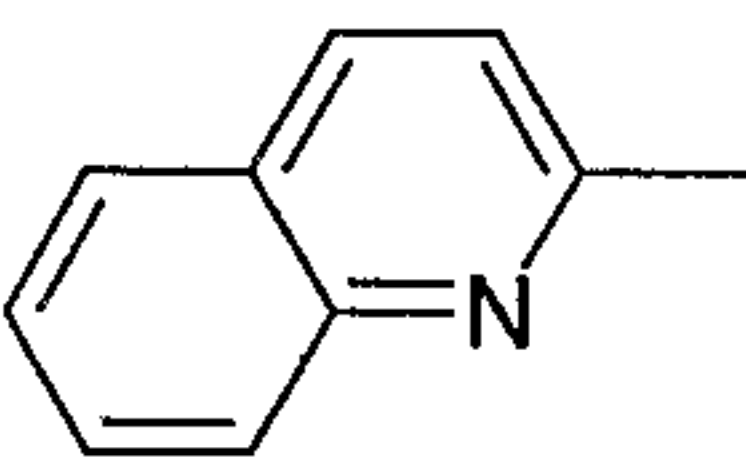
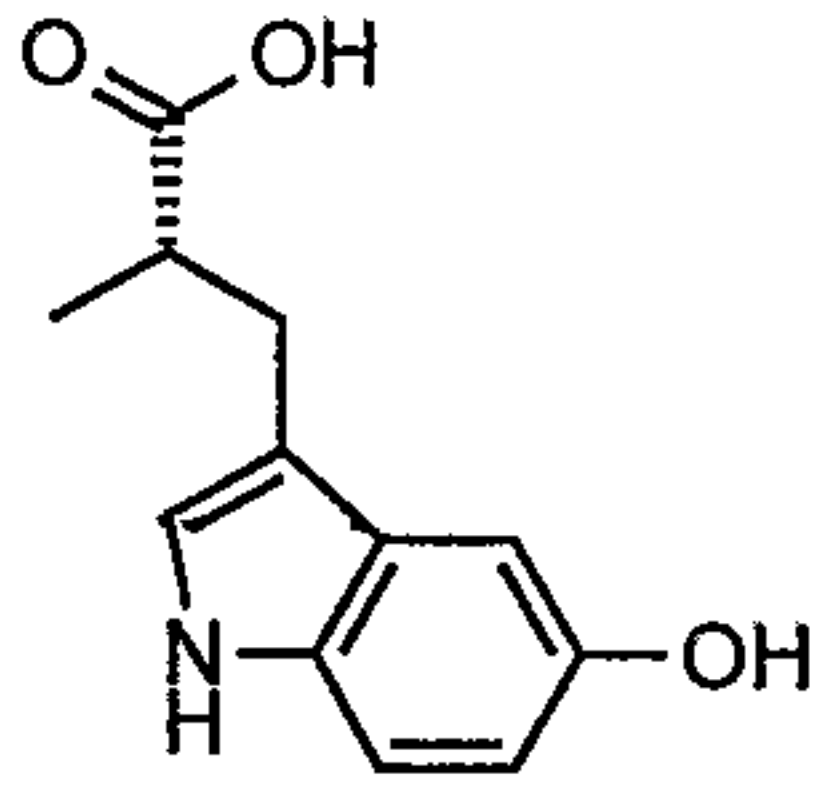
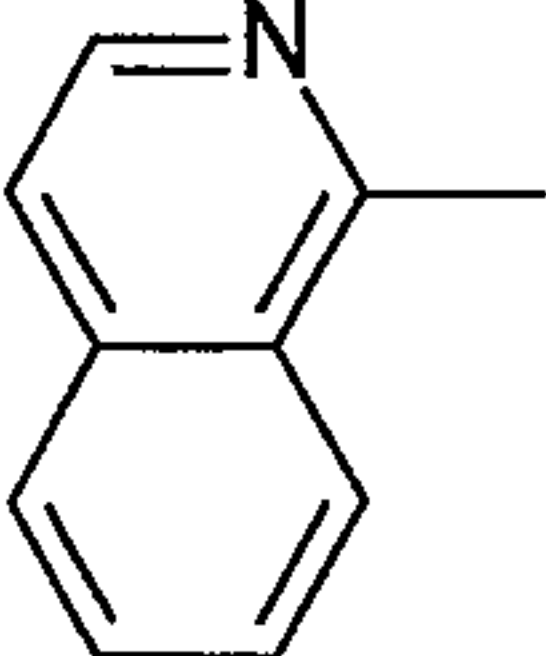
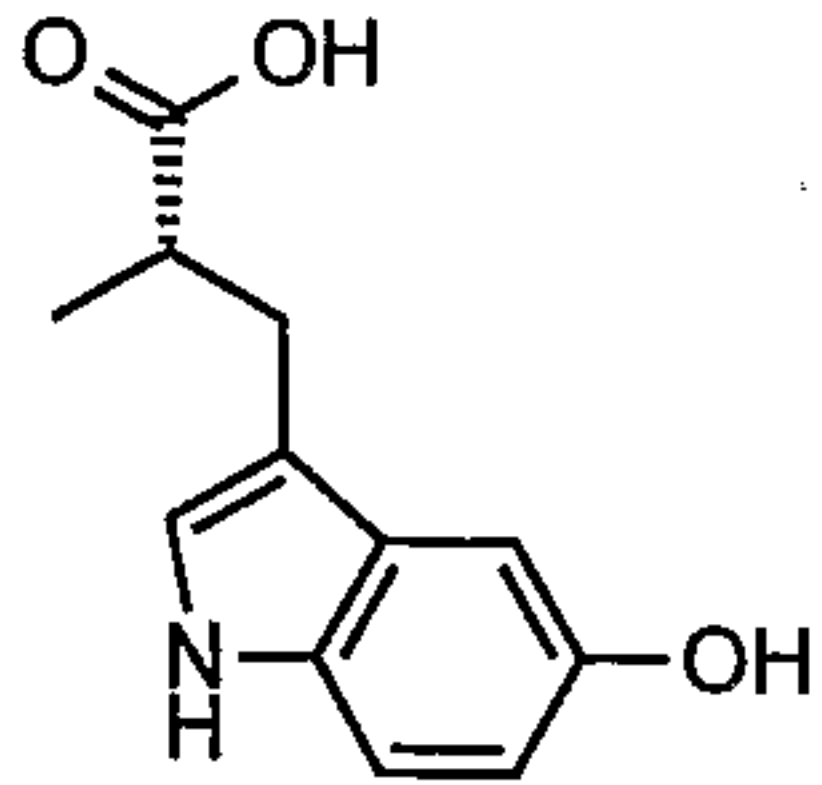
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2074	B			451(MH ⁺)
2075	C			471(MH ⁺)
2076	B			455(MH ⁺)
2077	B			514(MH ⁺)
2082	B			574(MH ⁺)
2083	A			584(MH ⁺)
2084	C			615(MH ⁺)
2085	C			580(MH ⁺)

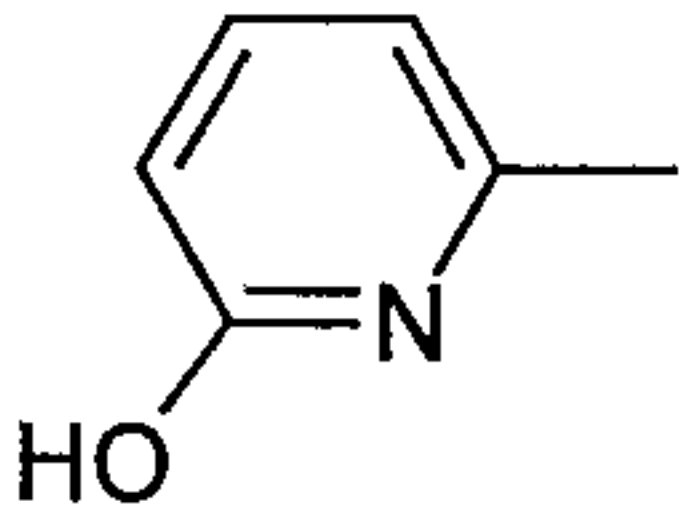
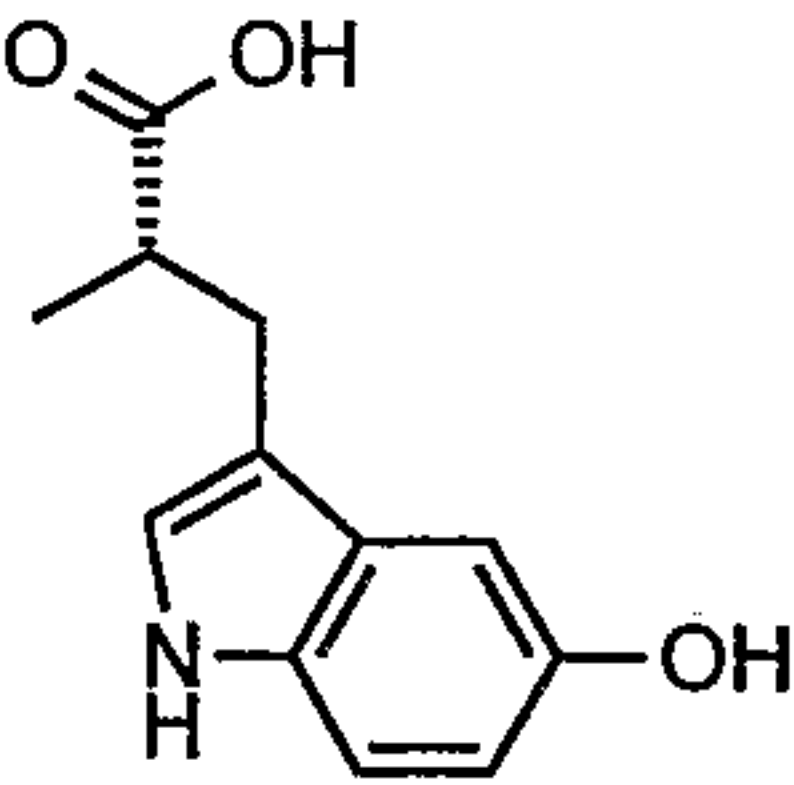
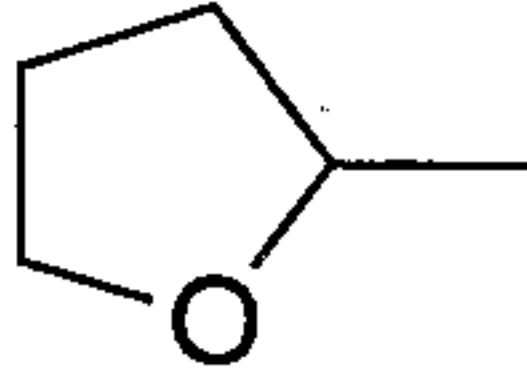
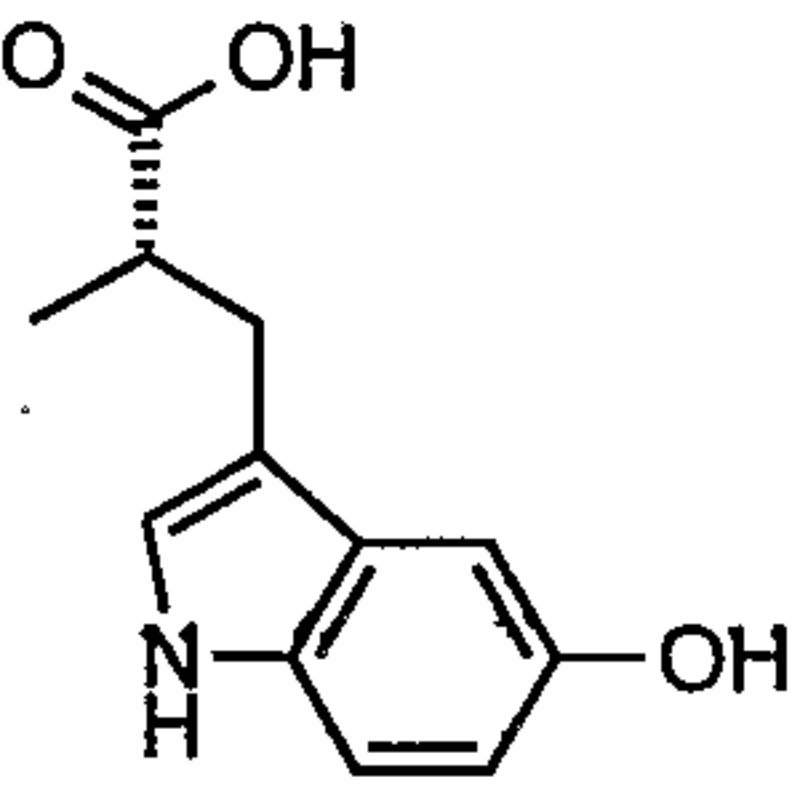
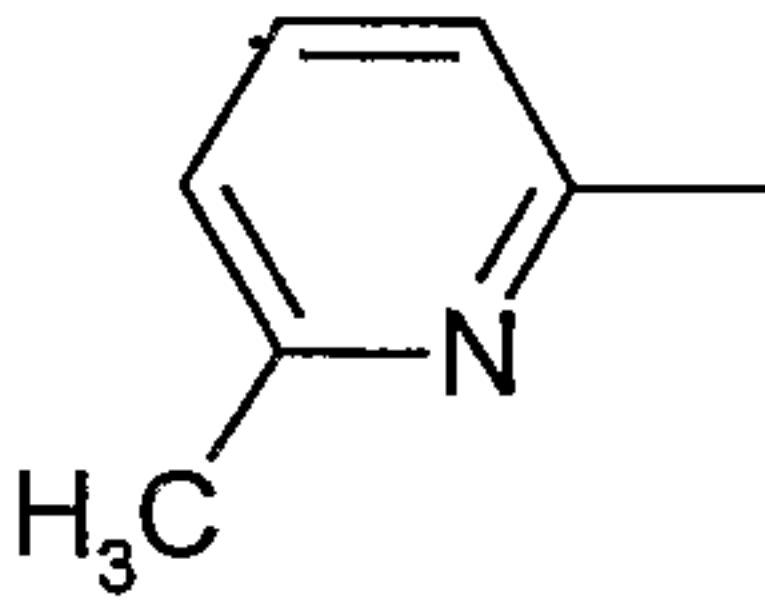
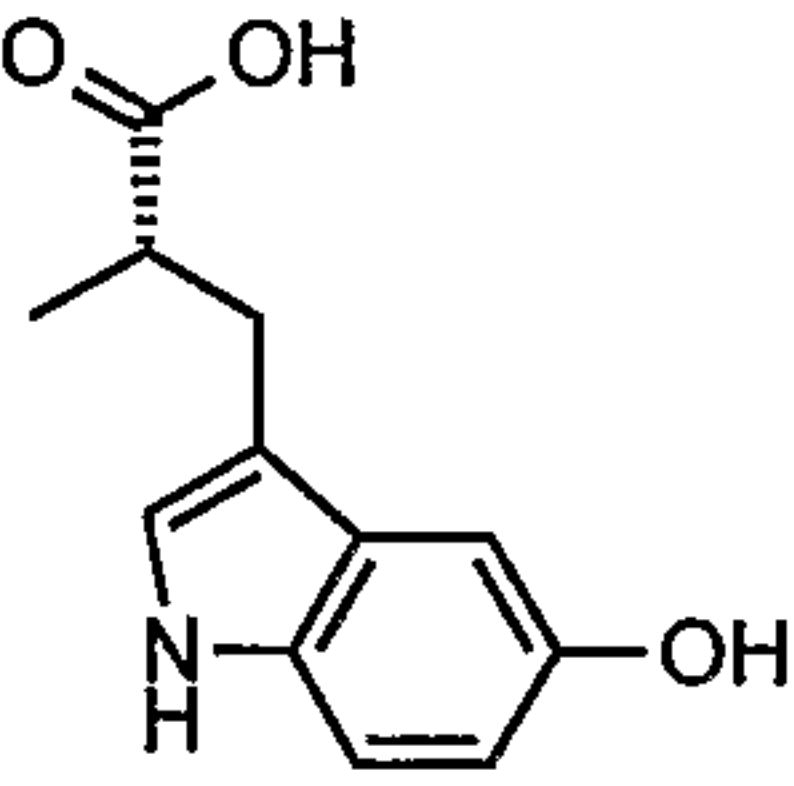
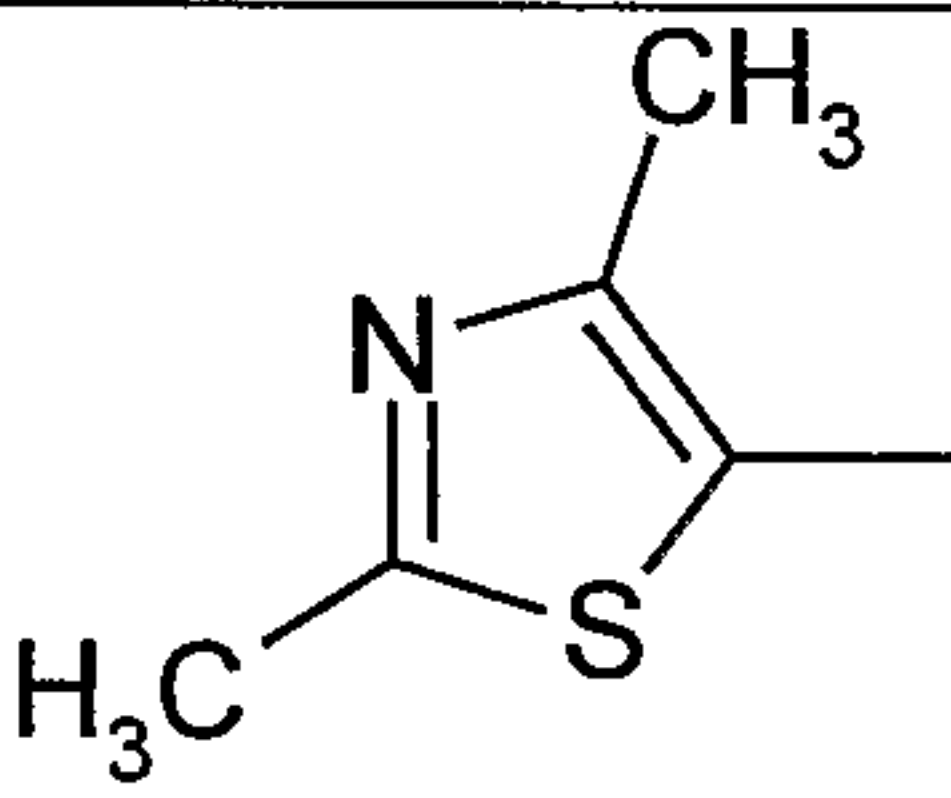
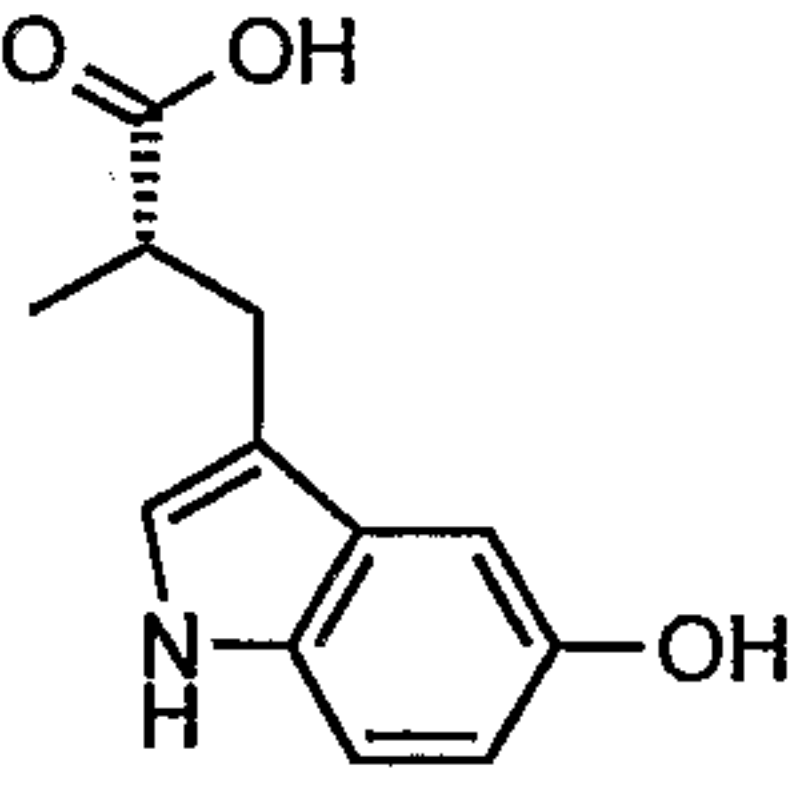
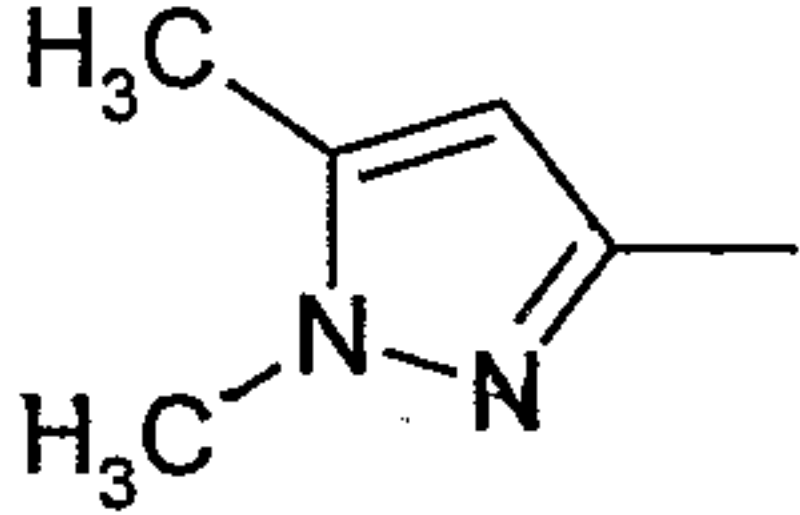
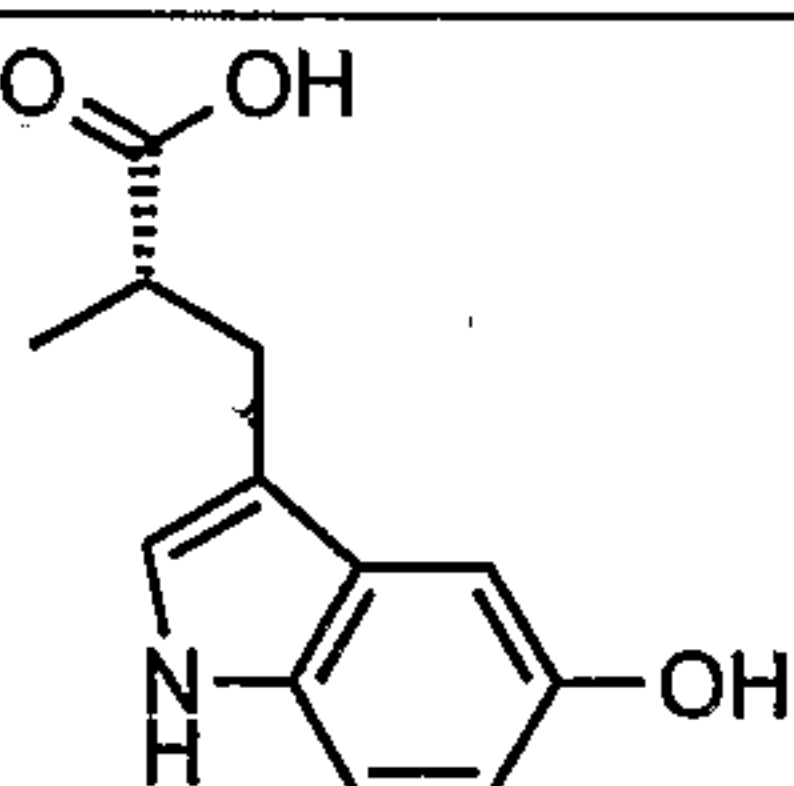
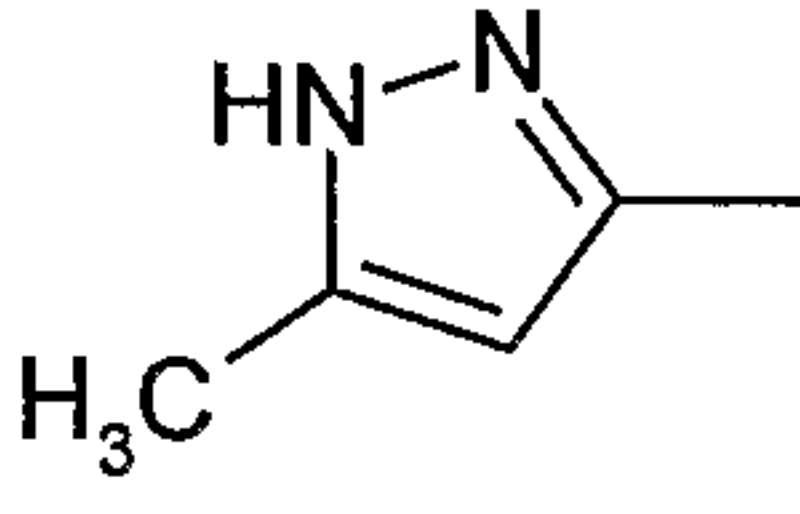
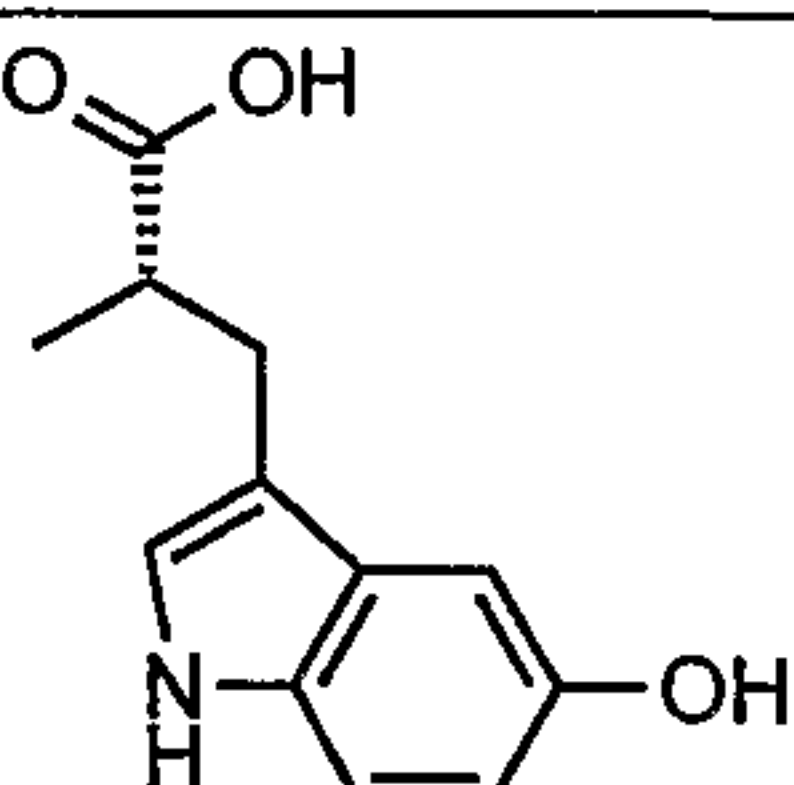
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2087	C			567(MH ⁺)
2088	A			529(MH ⁺)
2089	C			555(MH ⁺)
2091	C			548(MH ⁺)
2093	C			583(MH ⁺)
2097	C			594(MH ⁺)

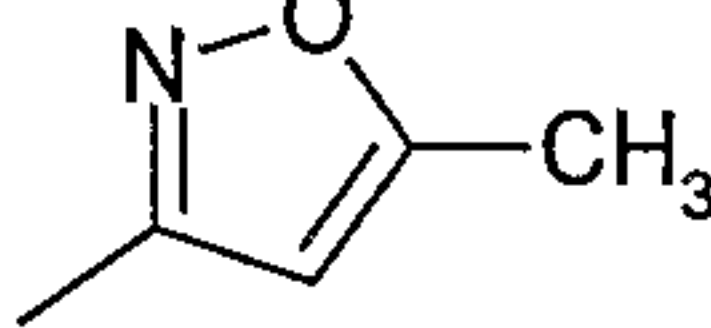
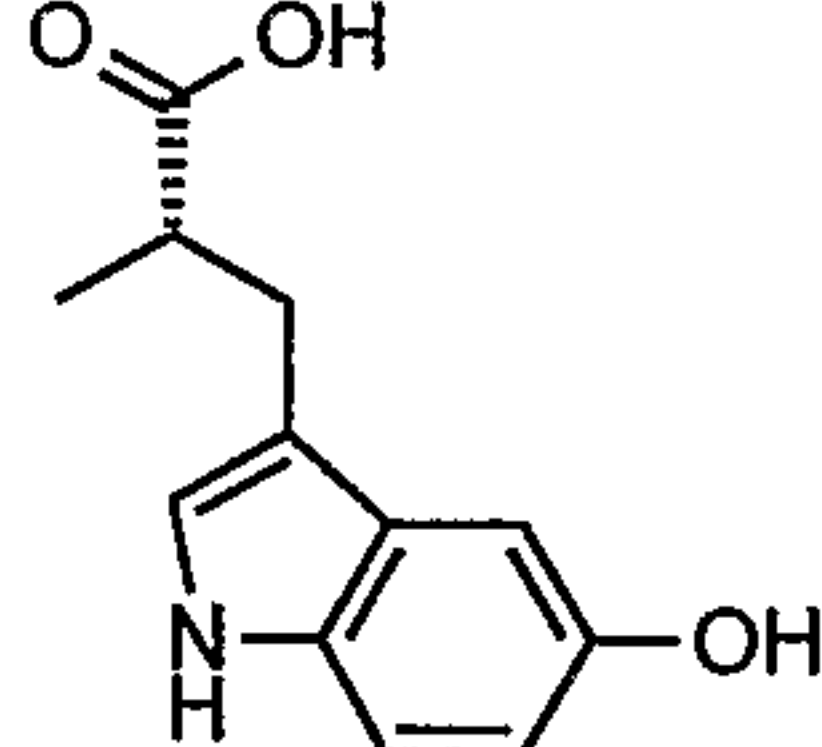
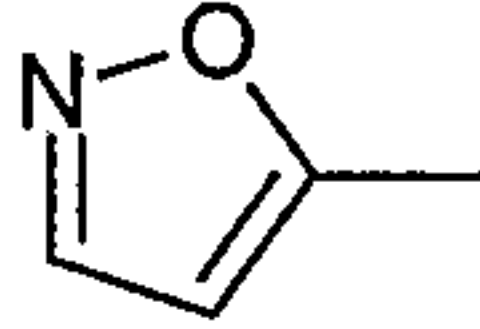
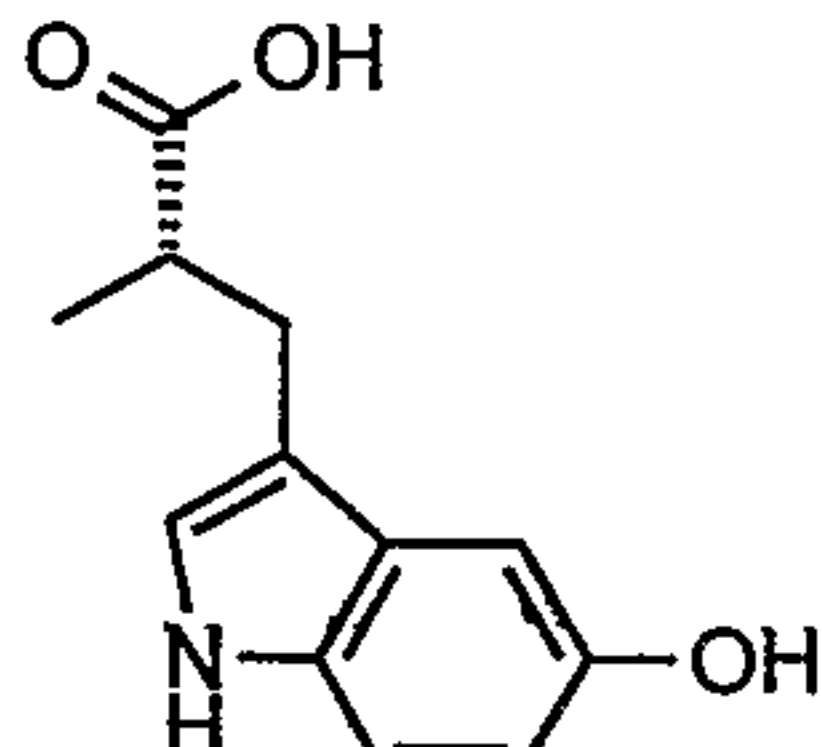
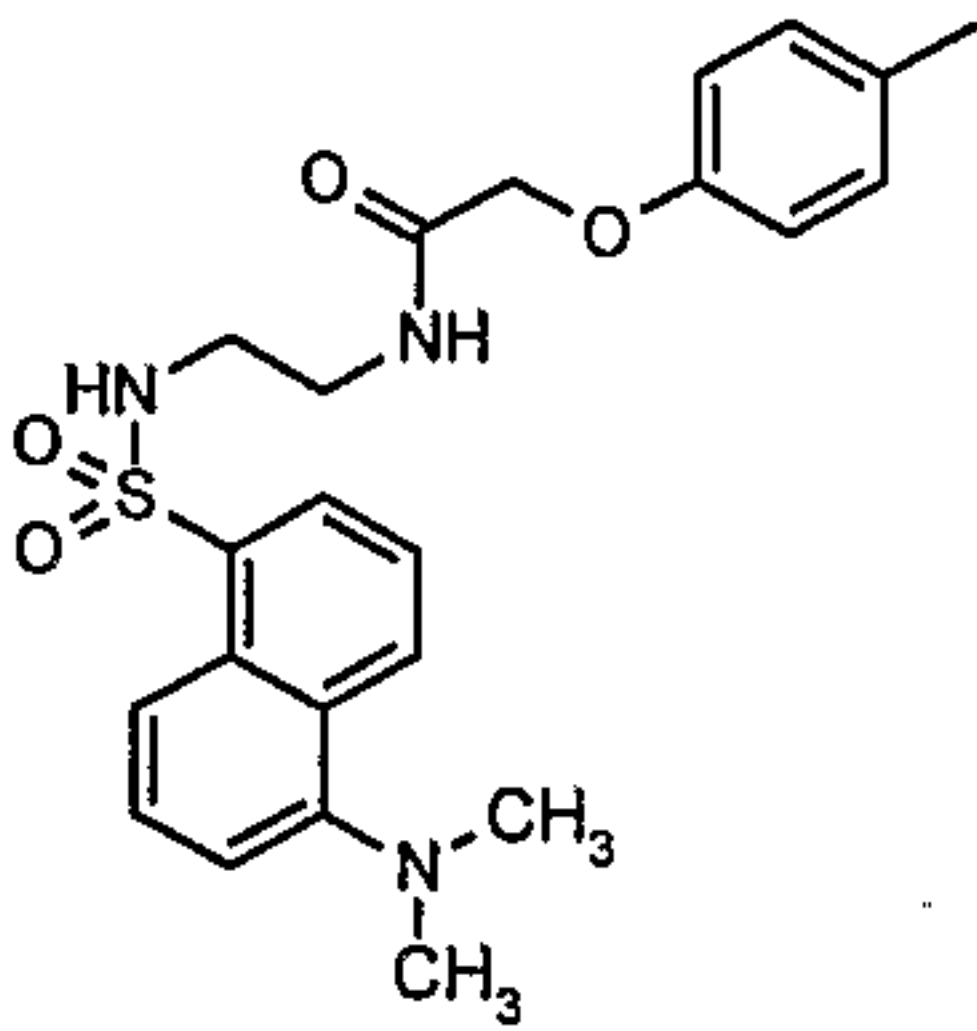
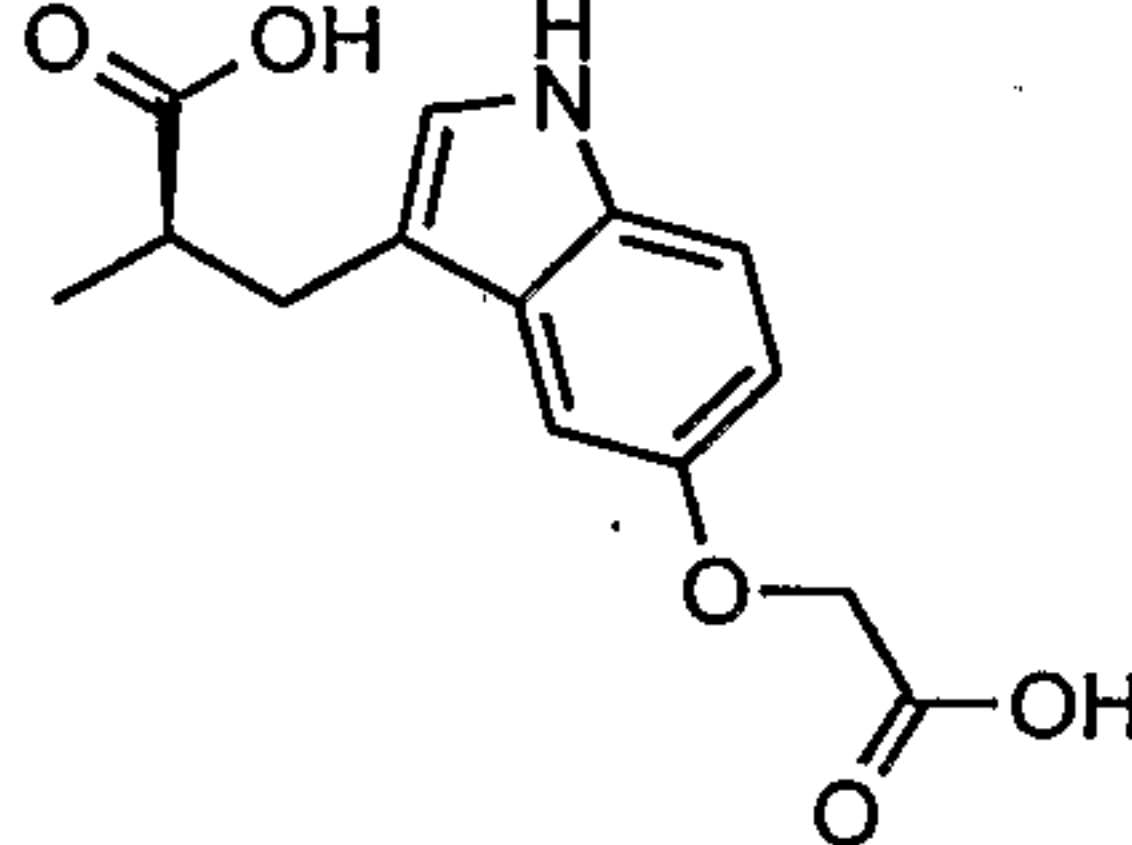
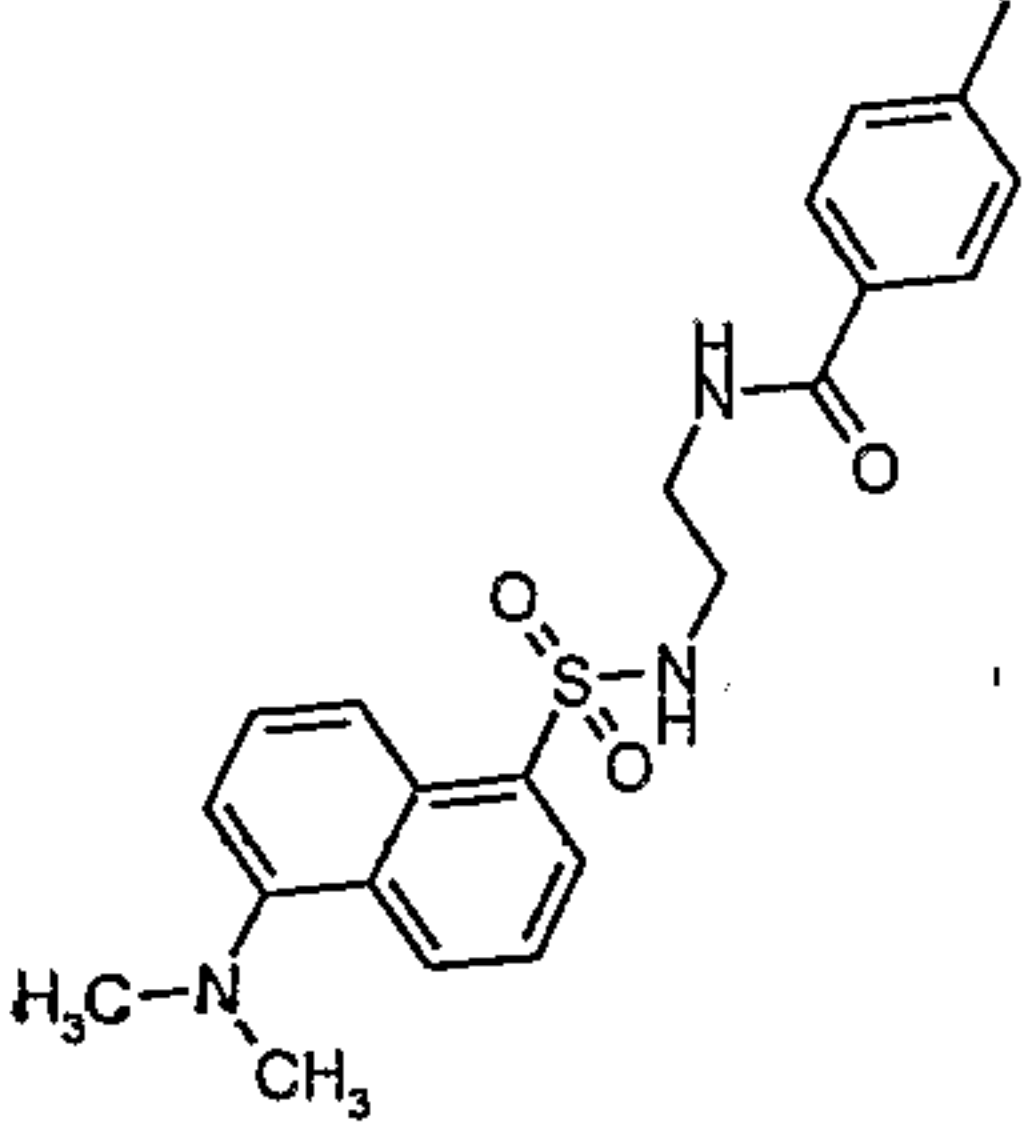
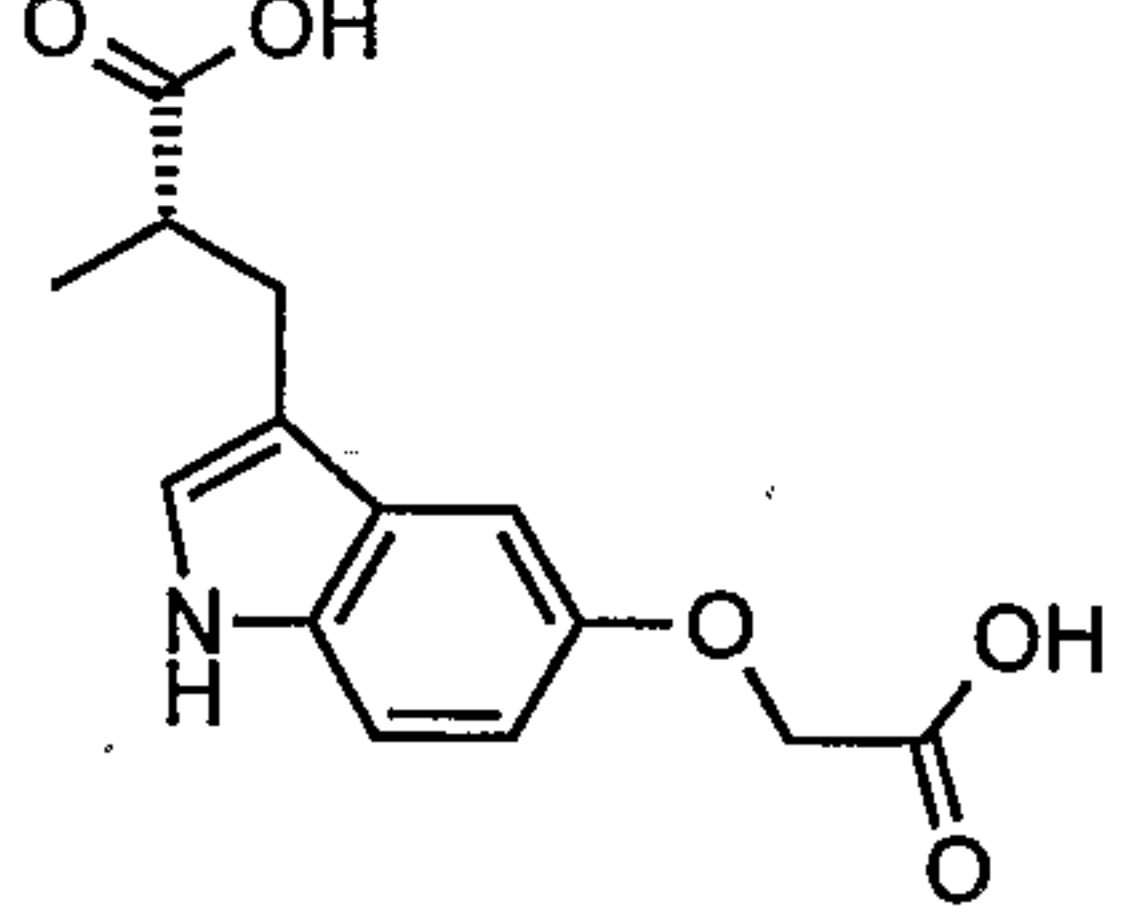
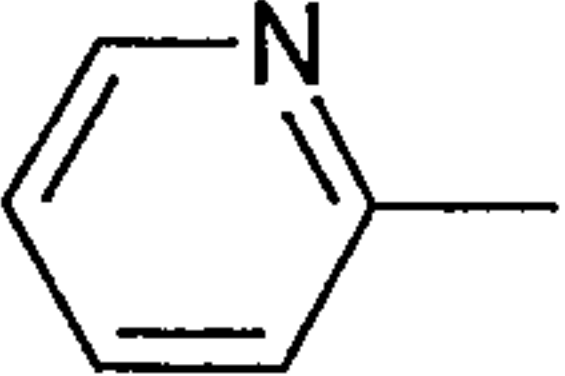
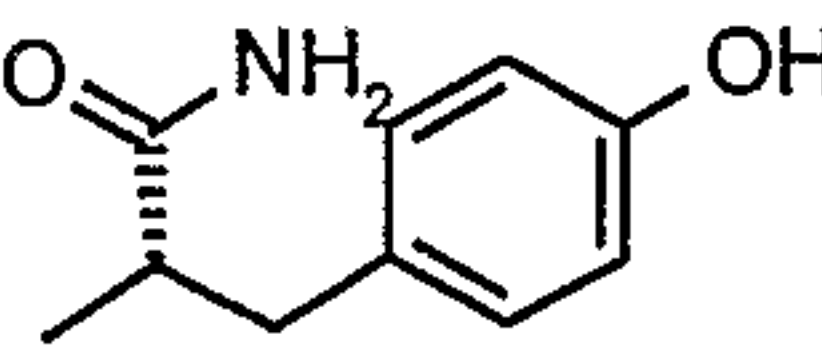
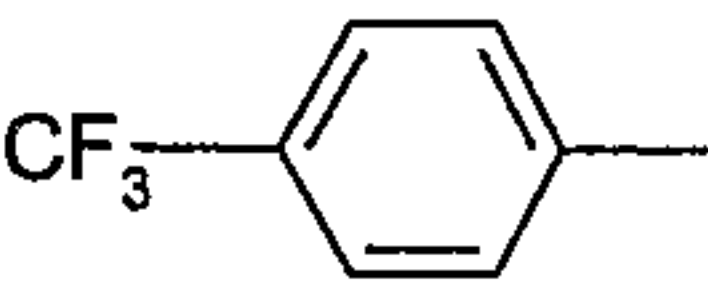
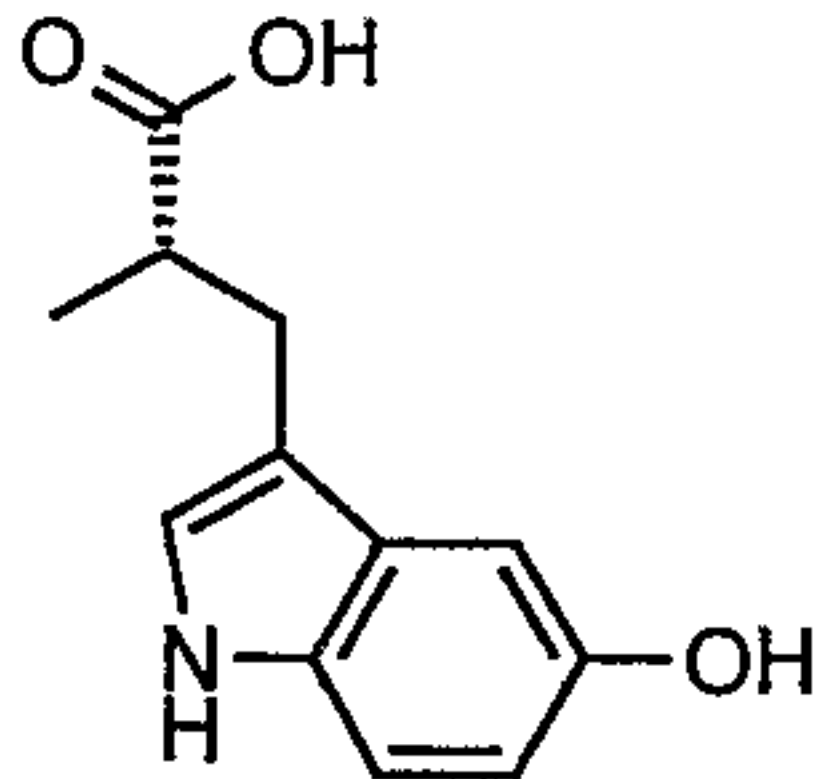
217

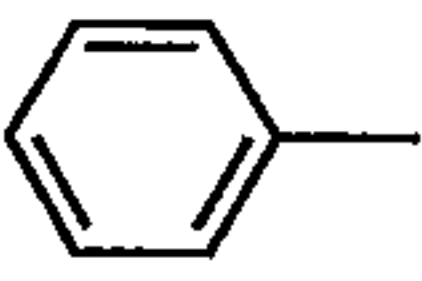
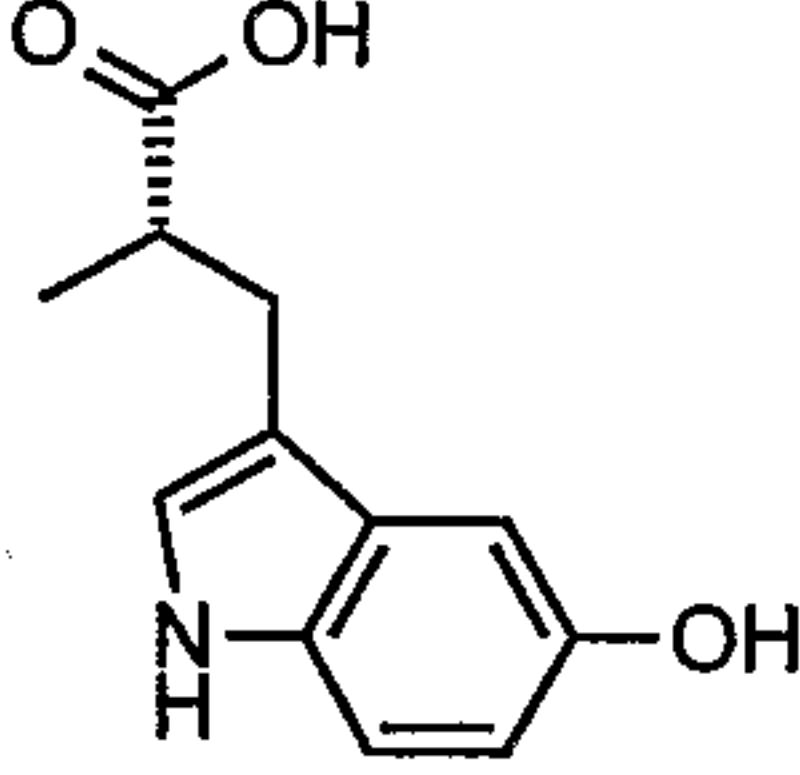
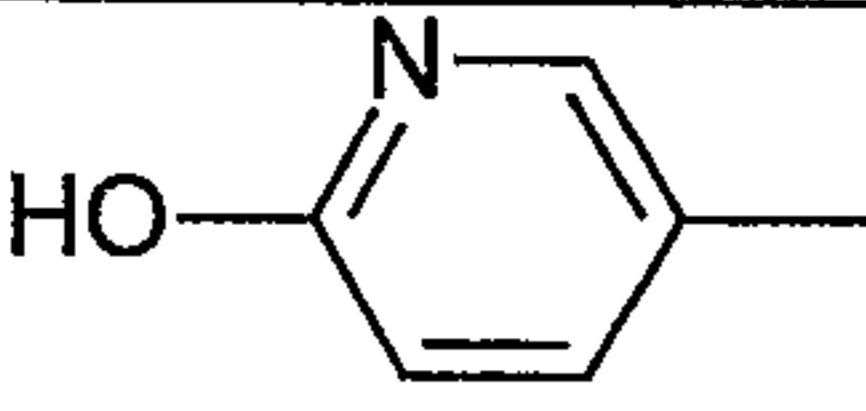
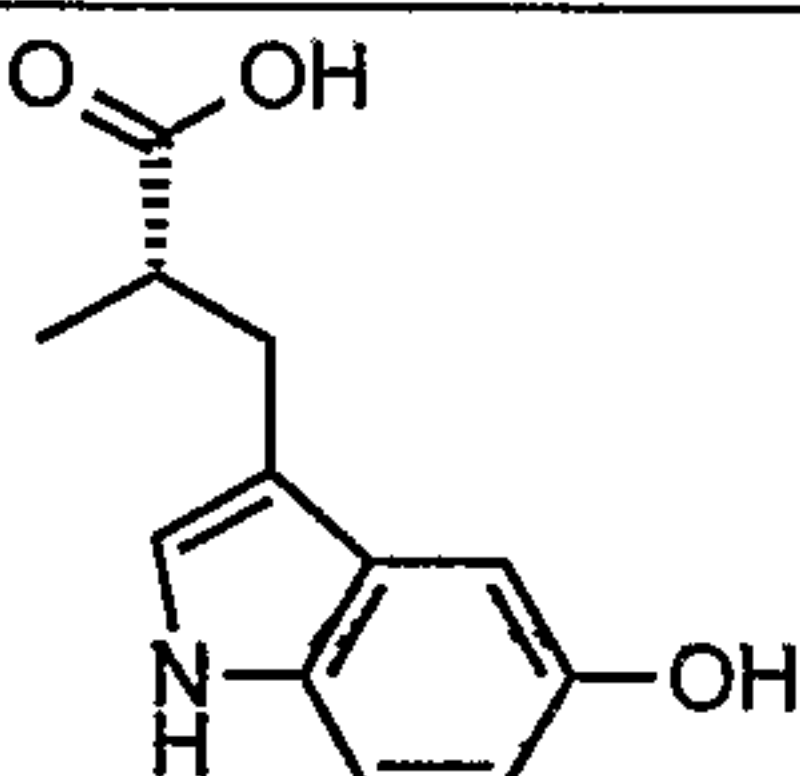
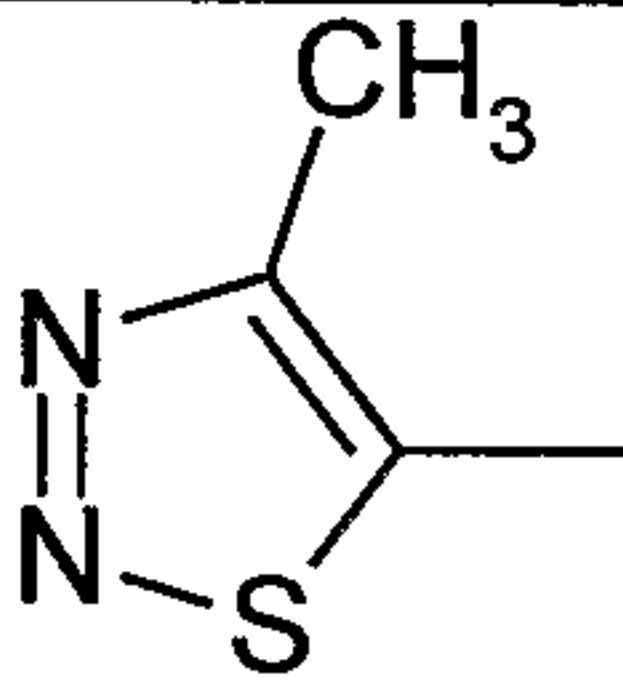
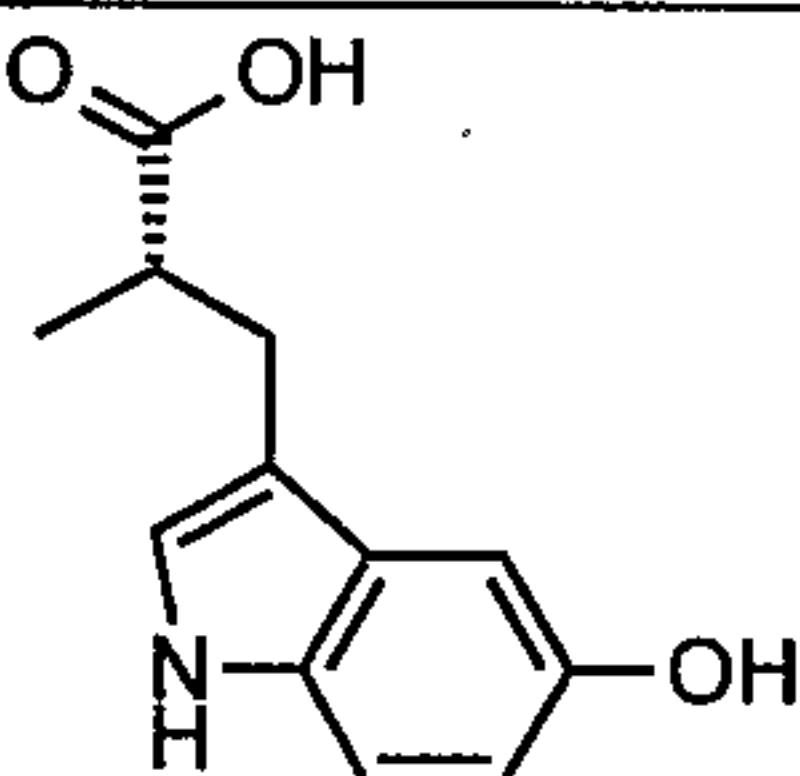
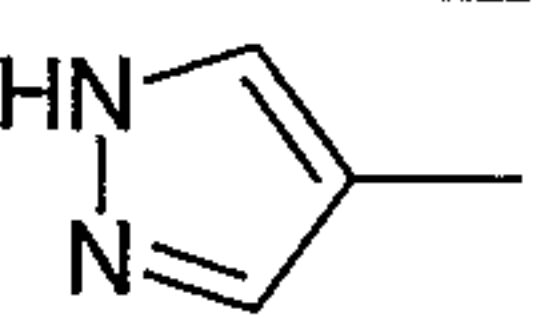
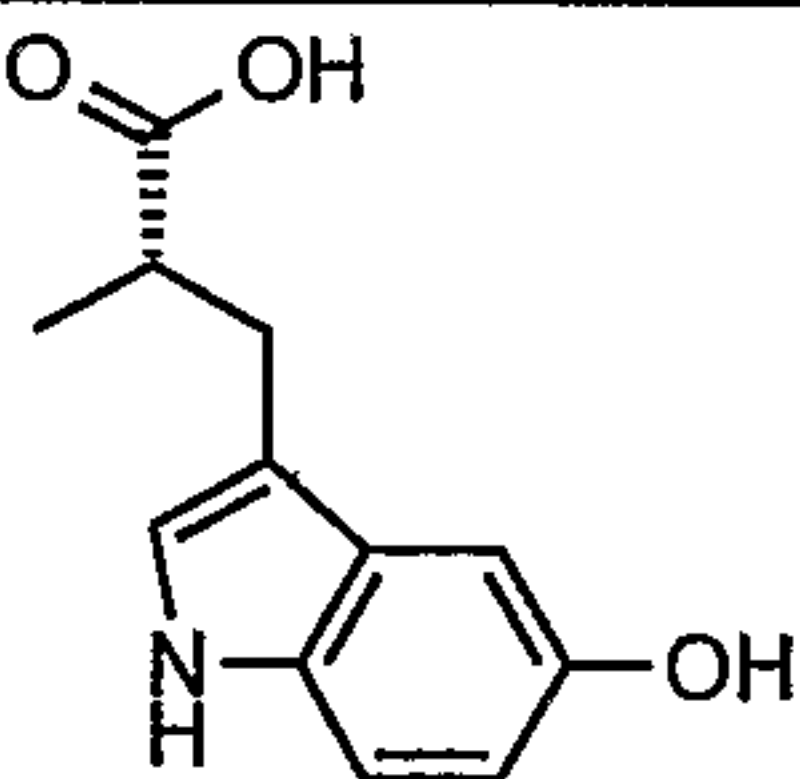
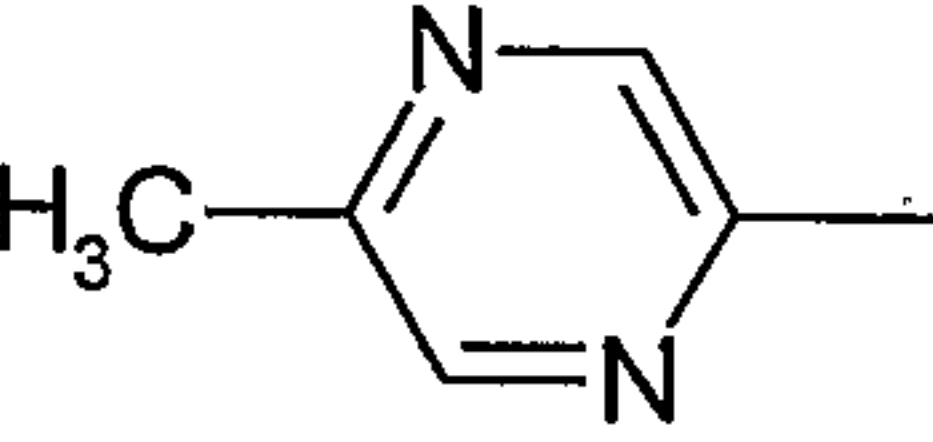
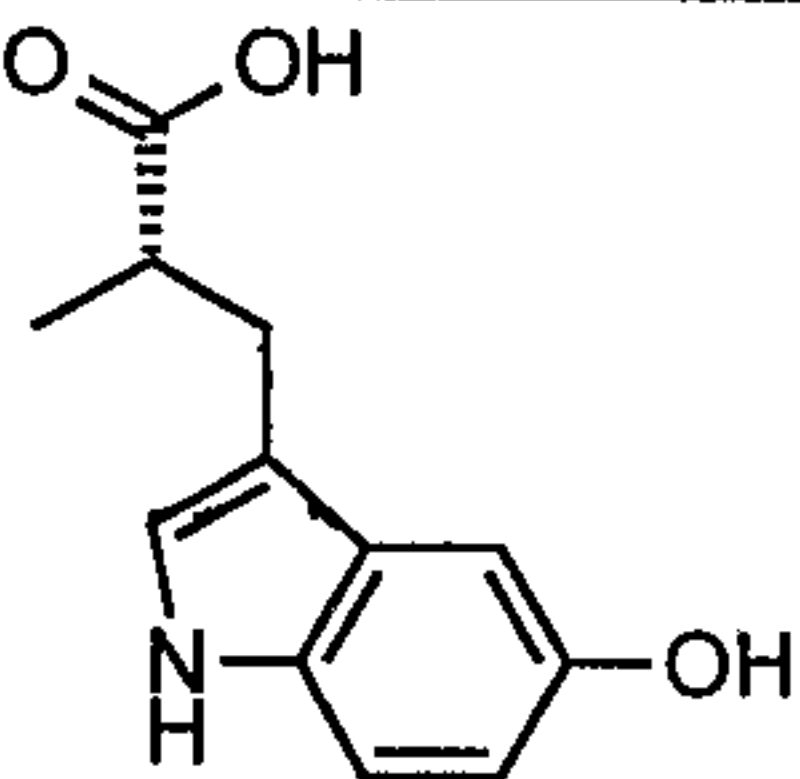
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2100	C			555(MH ⁺)
2101	C			592(MH ⁺)
2102	C			537(MH ⁺)
2105	C			569(MH ⁺)
2107	C			593(MH ⁺)
2108	A			485(MH ⁺)
2110	C			562.2(MH ⁺)

218

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2111	C	CF ₃		515.1(MH ⁺)
2112	D			525.3(MH ⁺)
2114	C			539.2(MH ⁺)
2115	B			591.2(MH ⁺)
2116	B			574.2(MH ⁺)
2117	C			574.2(MH ⁺)

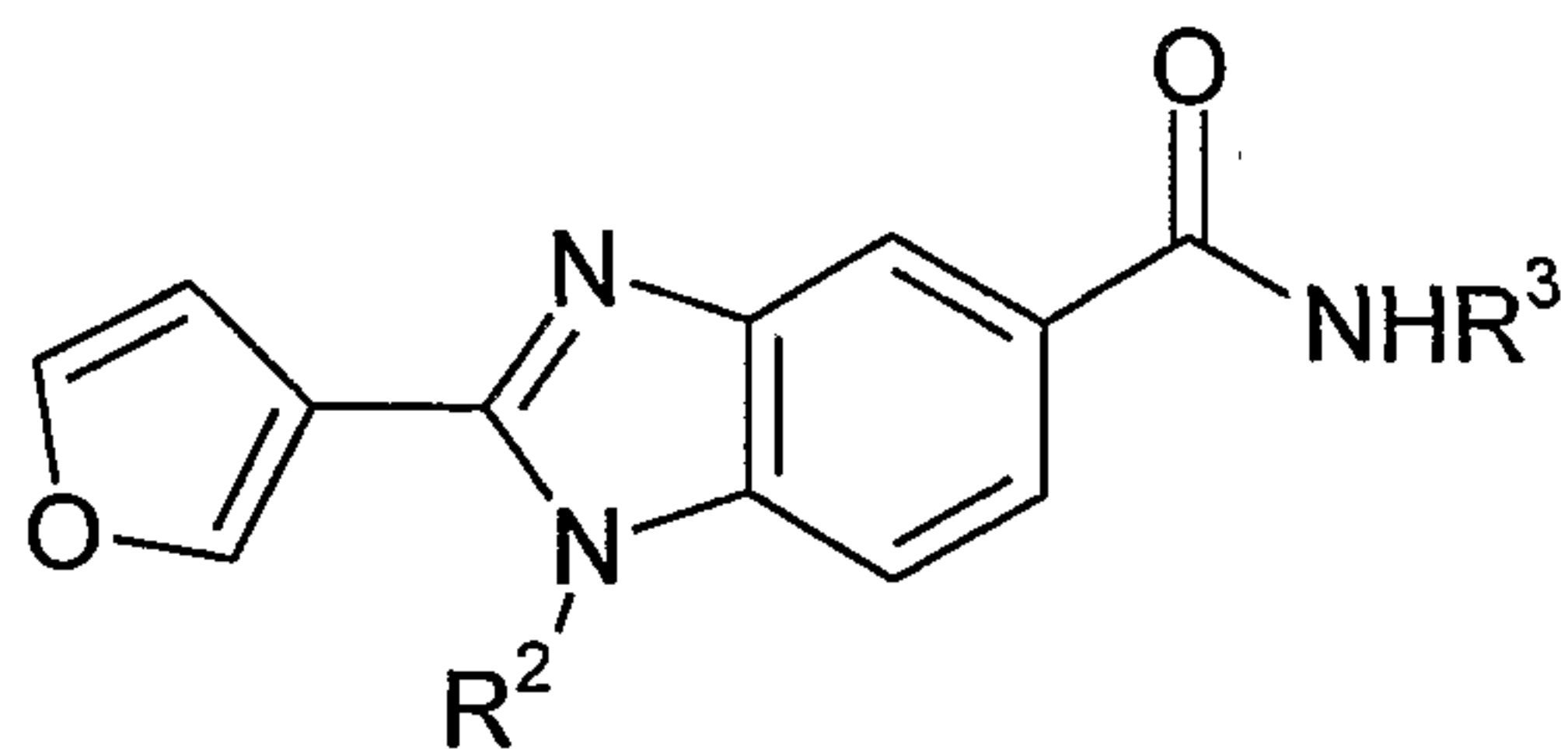
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2120	C			540.2(MH ⁺)
2121	C			517.2(MH ⁺)
2122	B			538.2(MH ⁺)
2123	C			558.1(MH ⁺)
2125	B			541.2(MH ⁺)
2126	C			527.2(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2127	D			528.2(MH ⁺)
2128	C			514.1(MH ⁺)
2129	C			930(MH ⁺)
2130	C			900(MH ⁺)
2135	C			484(MH ⁺)
2138	C			591(MH ⁺)

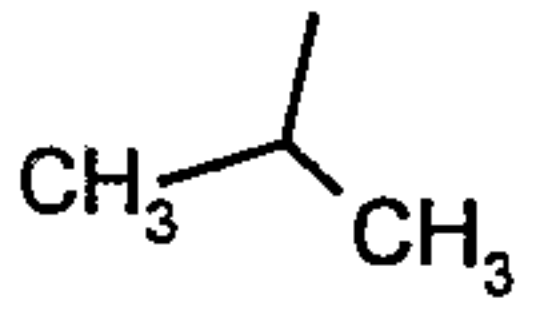
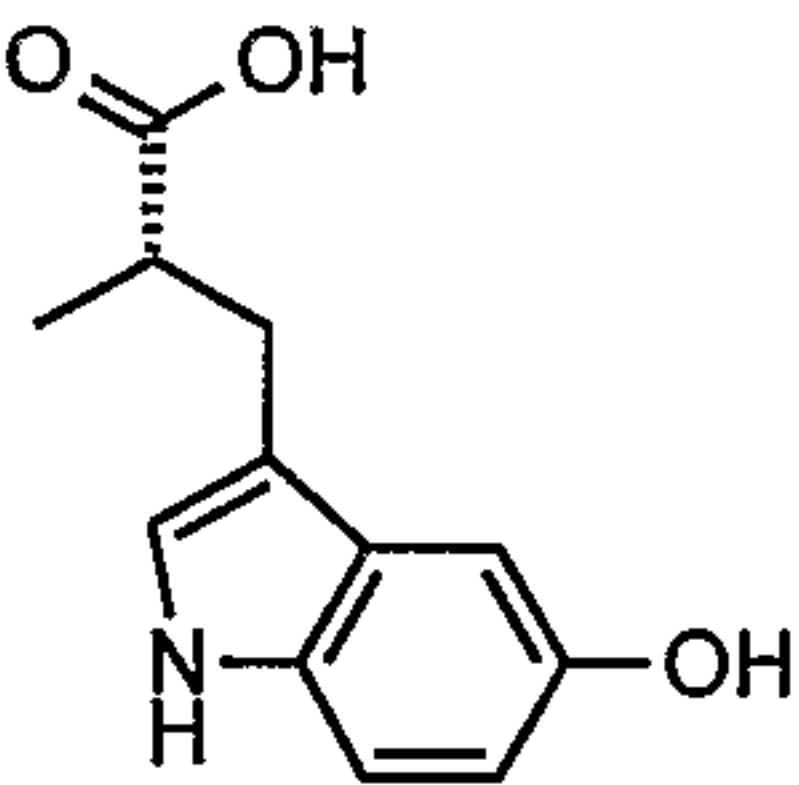
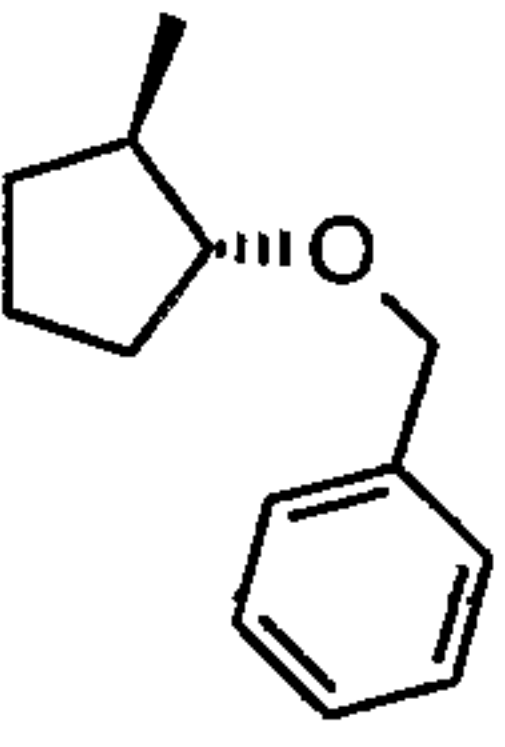
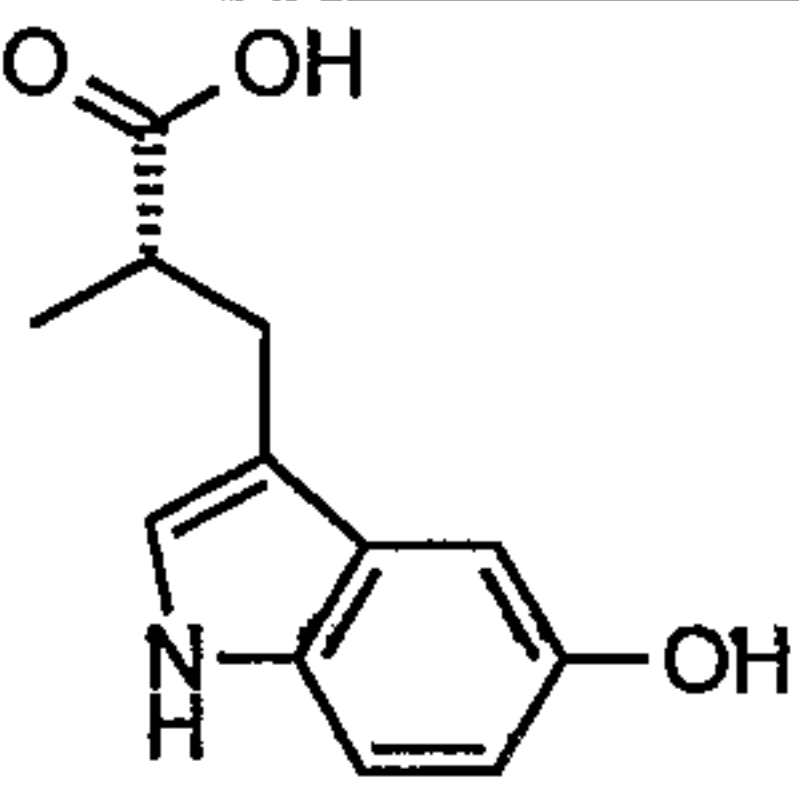
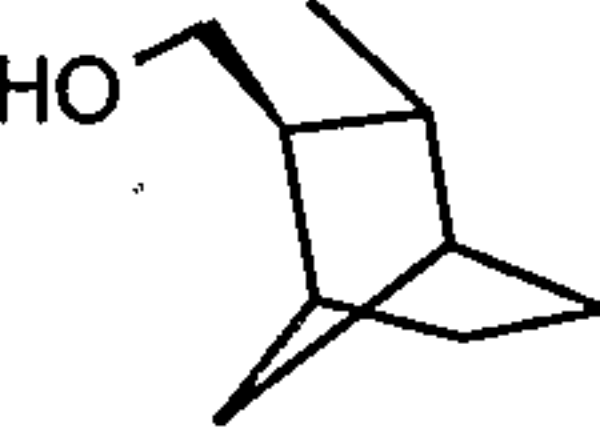
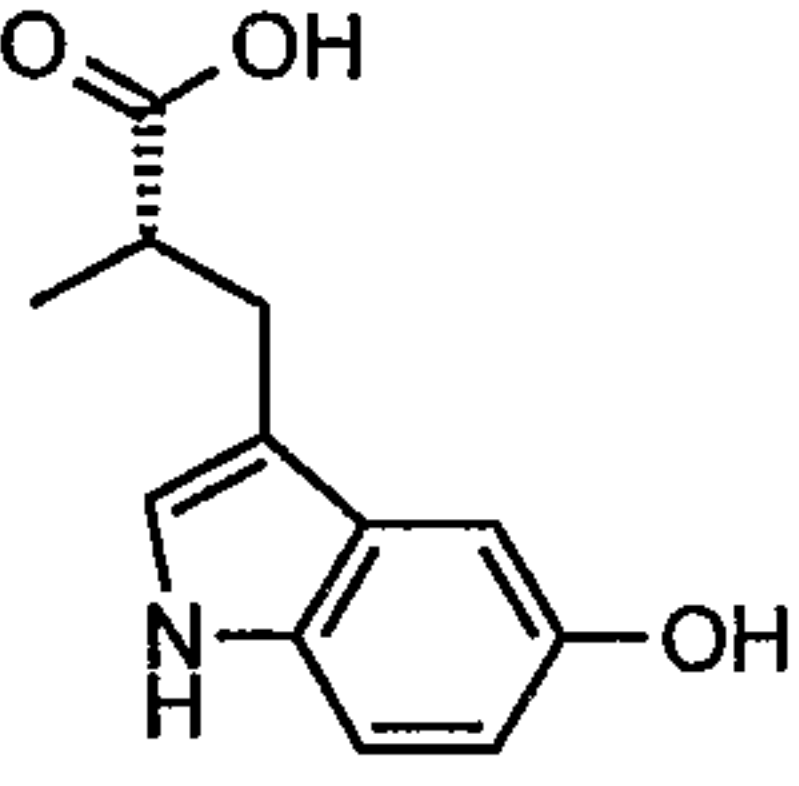
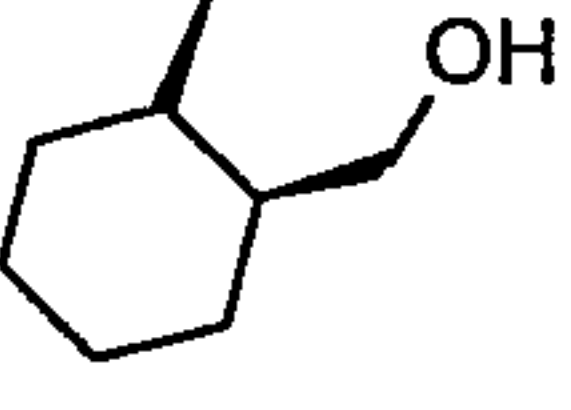
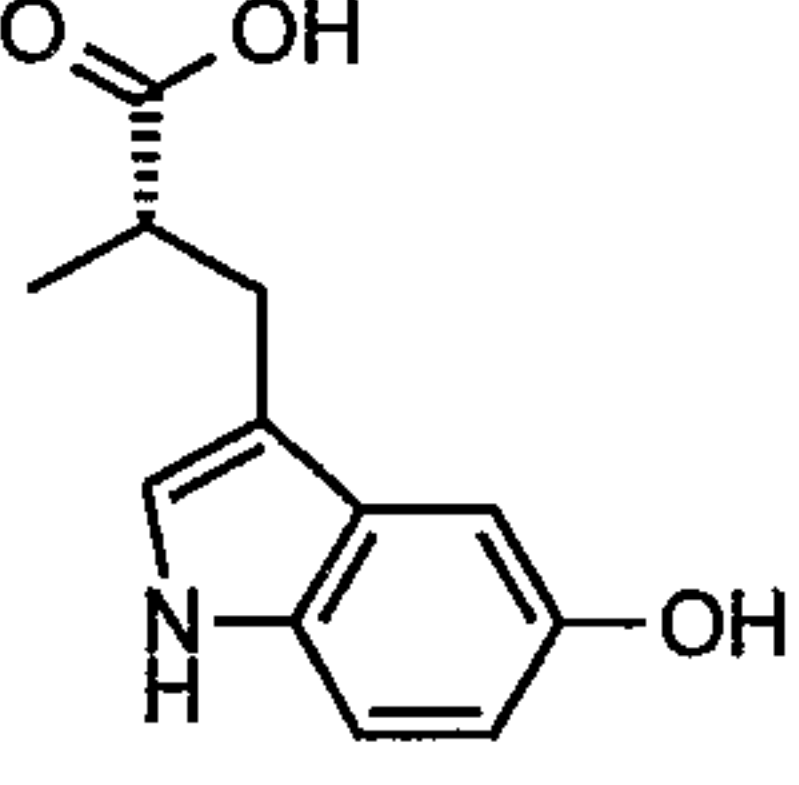
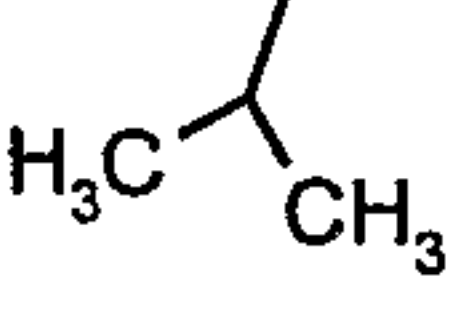
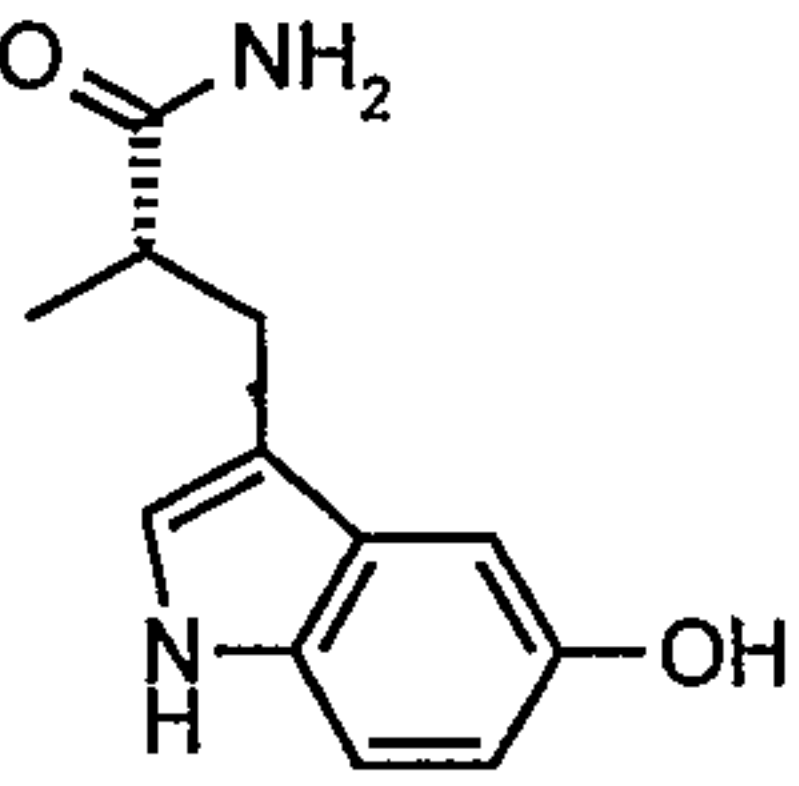
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ¹	R ³	m/z
2139	D			523.2(MH ⁺)
2140	D			540.2(MH ⁺)
2141	D			545.1(MH ⁺)
2142	D			513.2(MH ⁺)
2143	D			539.2(MH ⁺)

222

Table 3

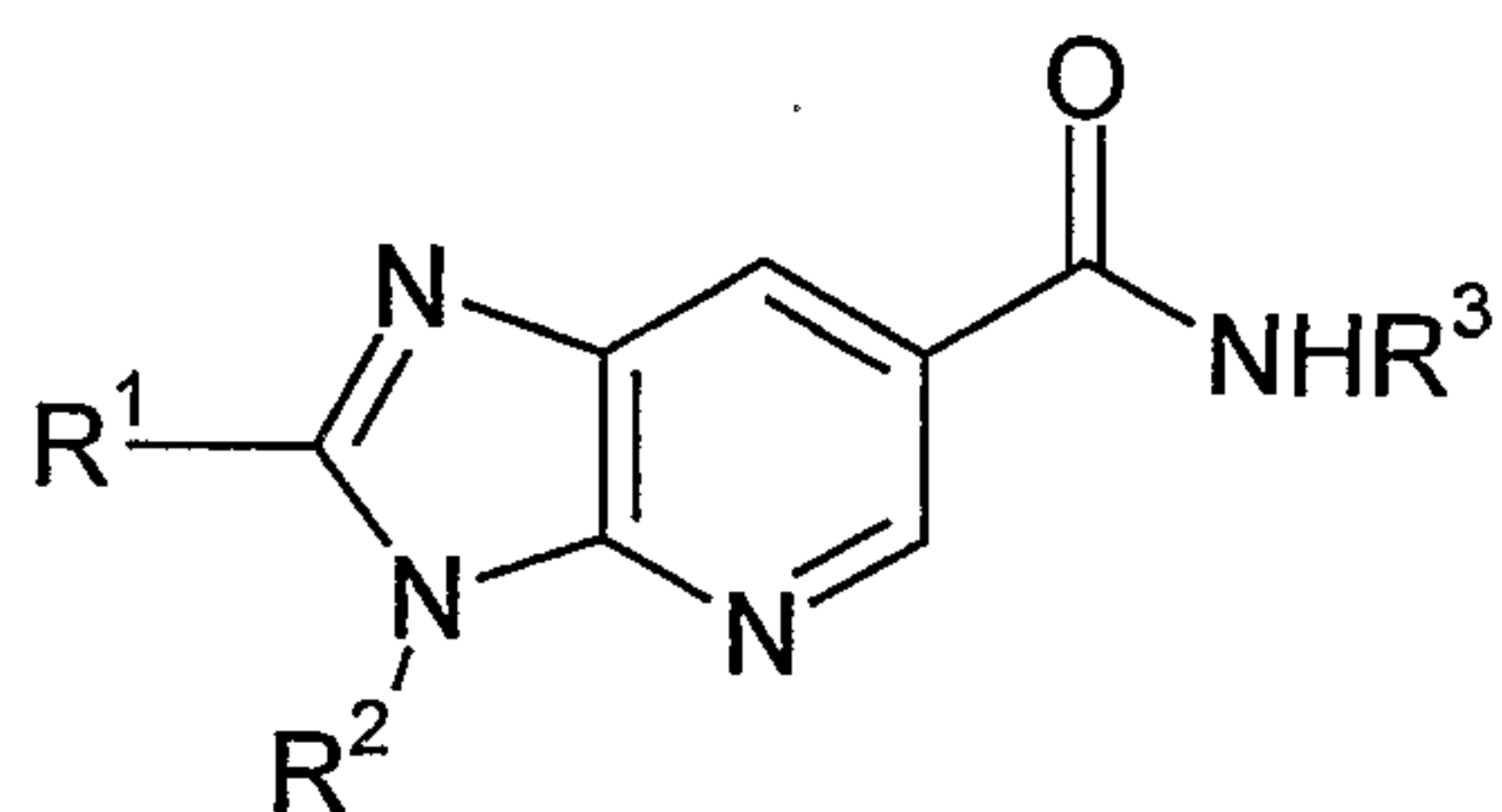


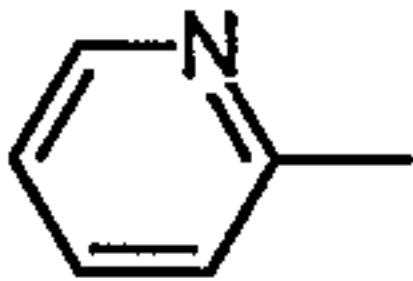
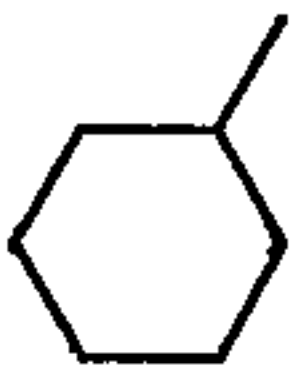
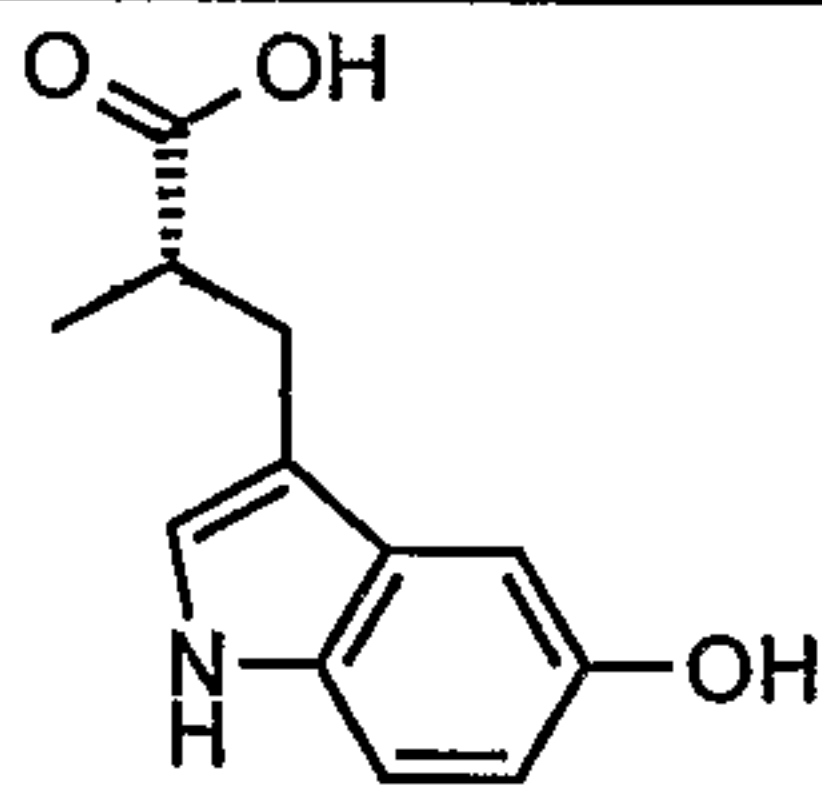
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R^2	R^3	m/z
3001	B			520(MH ⁺)
3002	D			490(MH ⁺)
3005	C			545(MH ⁺)
3024	C			527(MH ⁺)
3029	C			531(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ²	R ³	m/z
3033	C			473(MH ⁺)
3034	B			605(MH ⁺)
3035	C			555(MH ⁺)
3037	B			543(MH ⁺)
3040	C			472(MH ⁺)

224

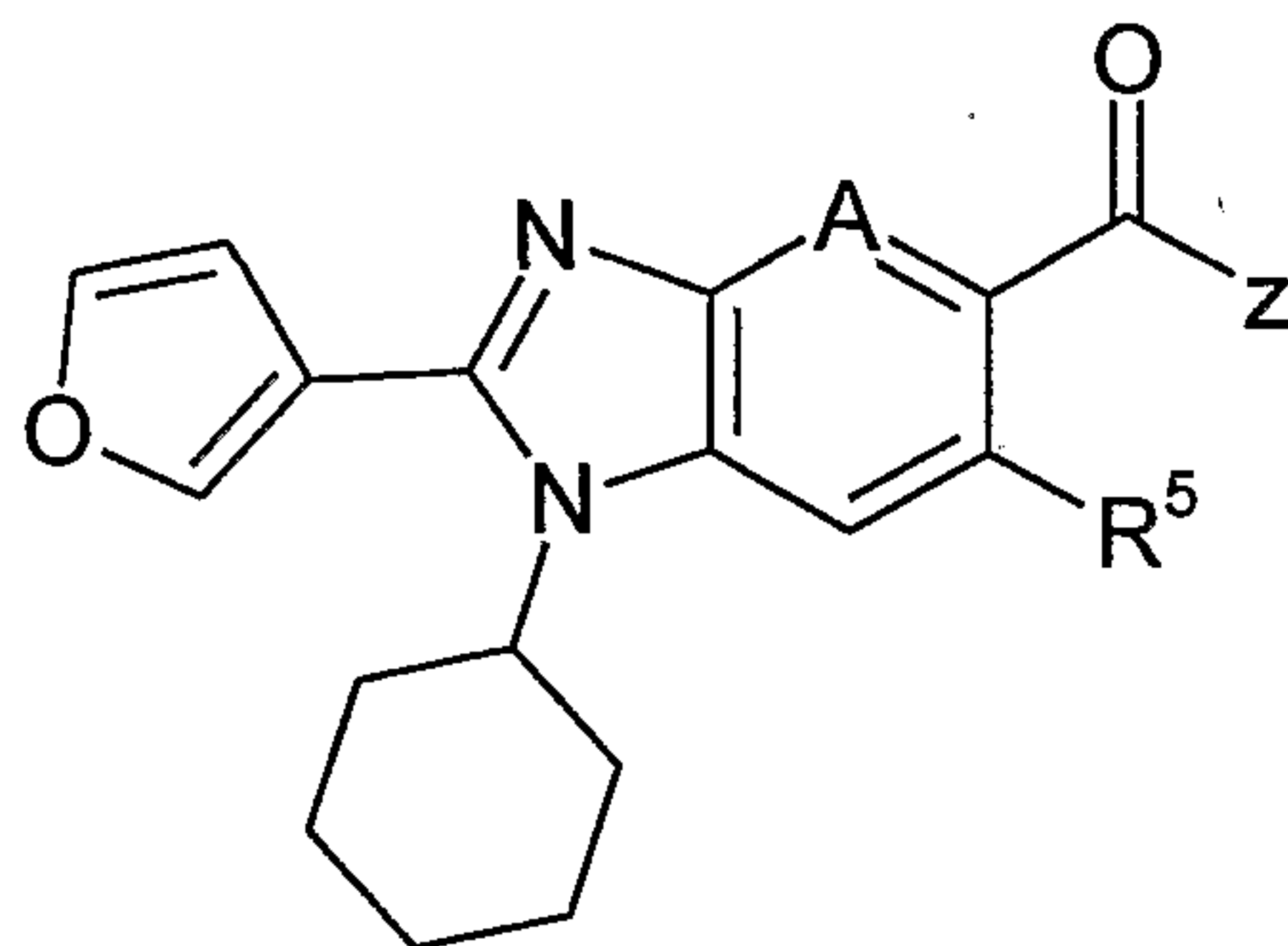
Table 4



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ¹	R ²	R ³	m/z
4001	D				525(MH ⁺)

225

Table 5



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	A	R ⁵	Z	R ³	m/z
5001	B	N	H	OH	-	312(MH ⁺)
5002	D	N	H	NHR ³		514(MH ⁺)
5003	D	N	H	NHR ³		630(MH ⁺)
5004	C	CMe	H	OH	-	325(MH ⁺)
5005	D	CH	H	OR ³		533(MH ⁺)
5006	C	CH	CH ₃	NHR ³		527(MH ⁺)

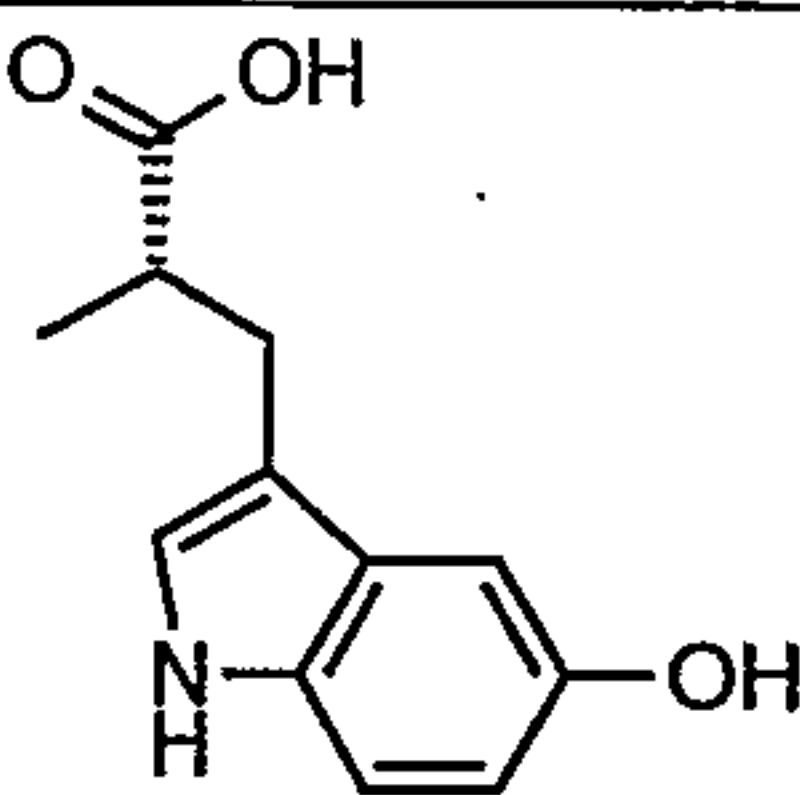
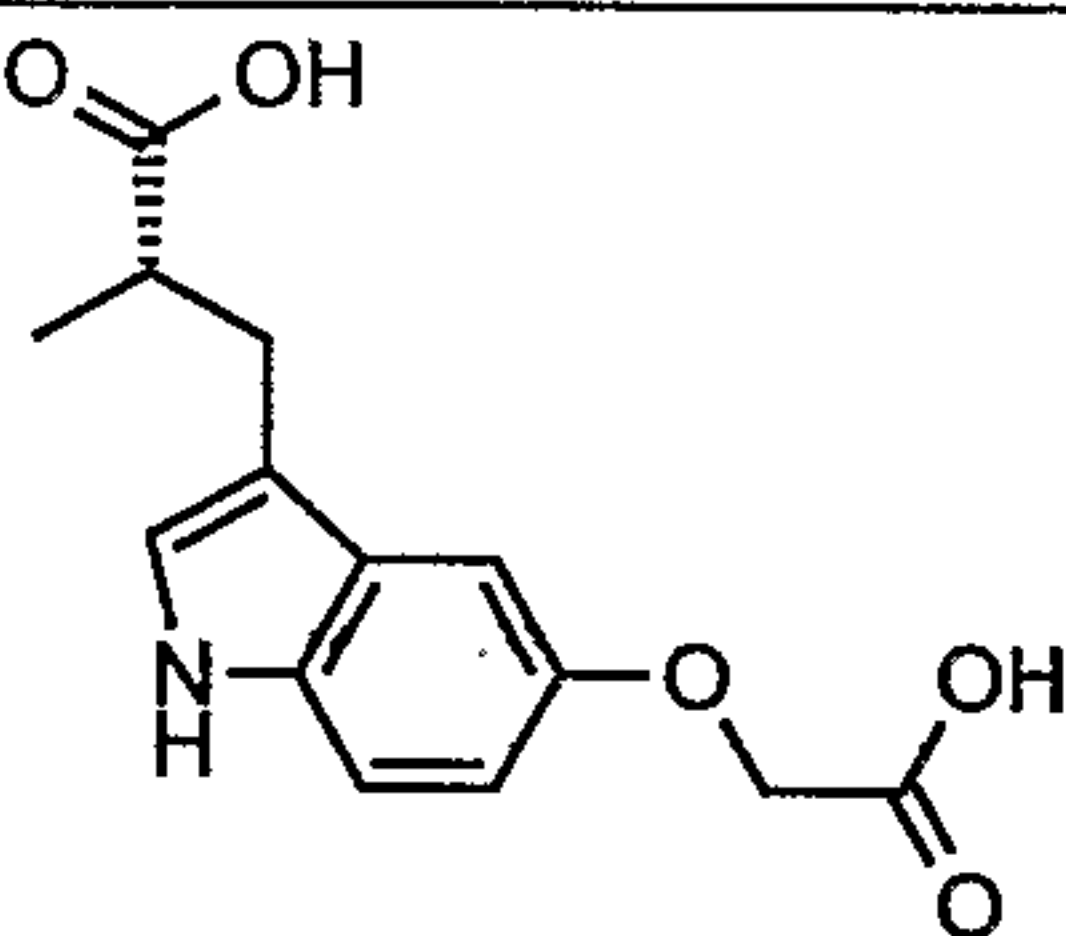
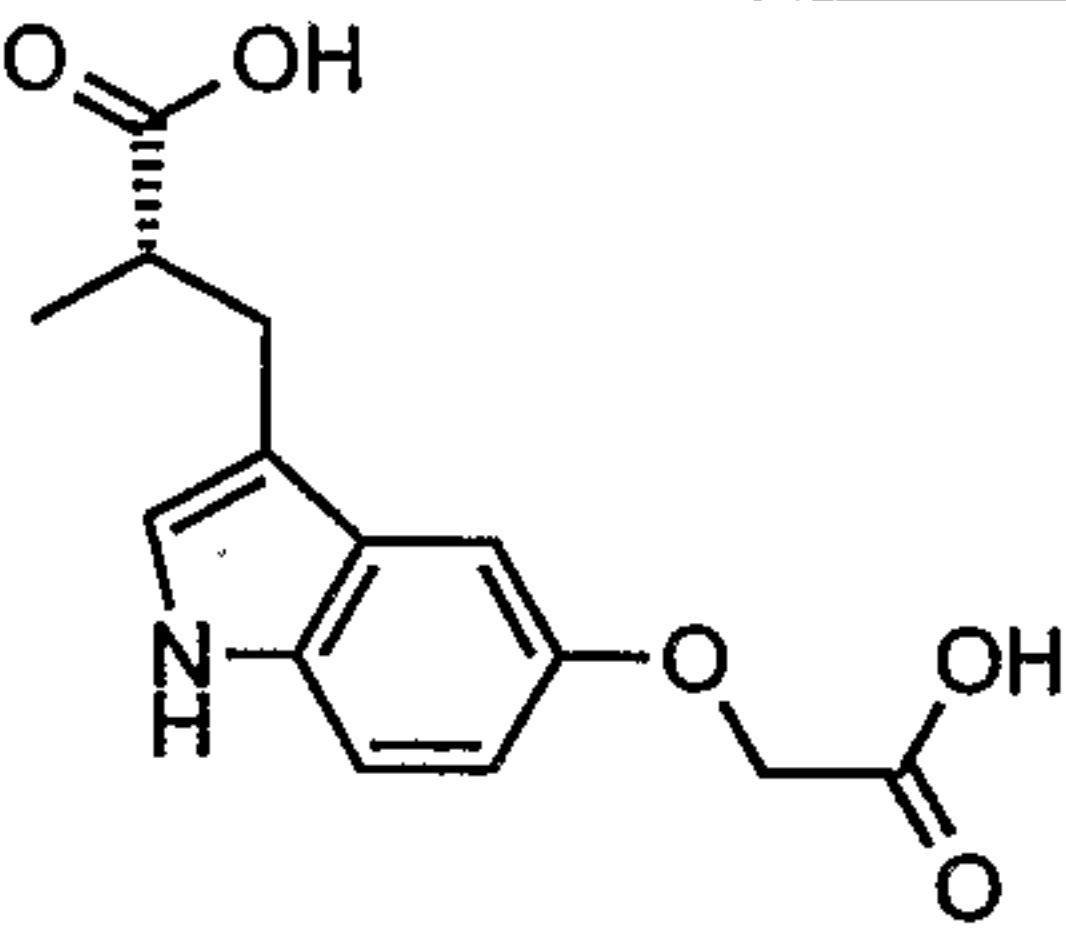
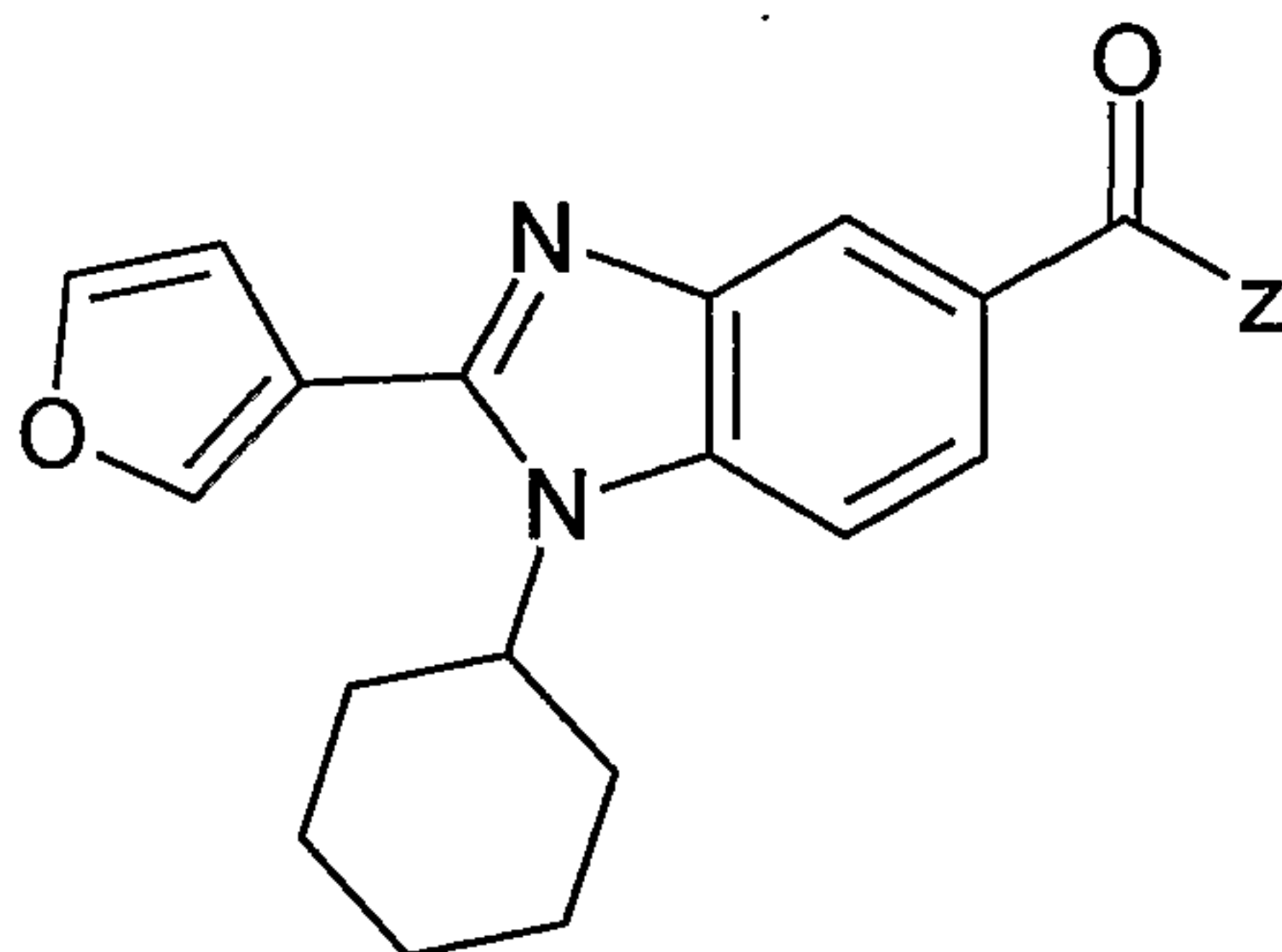
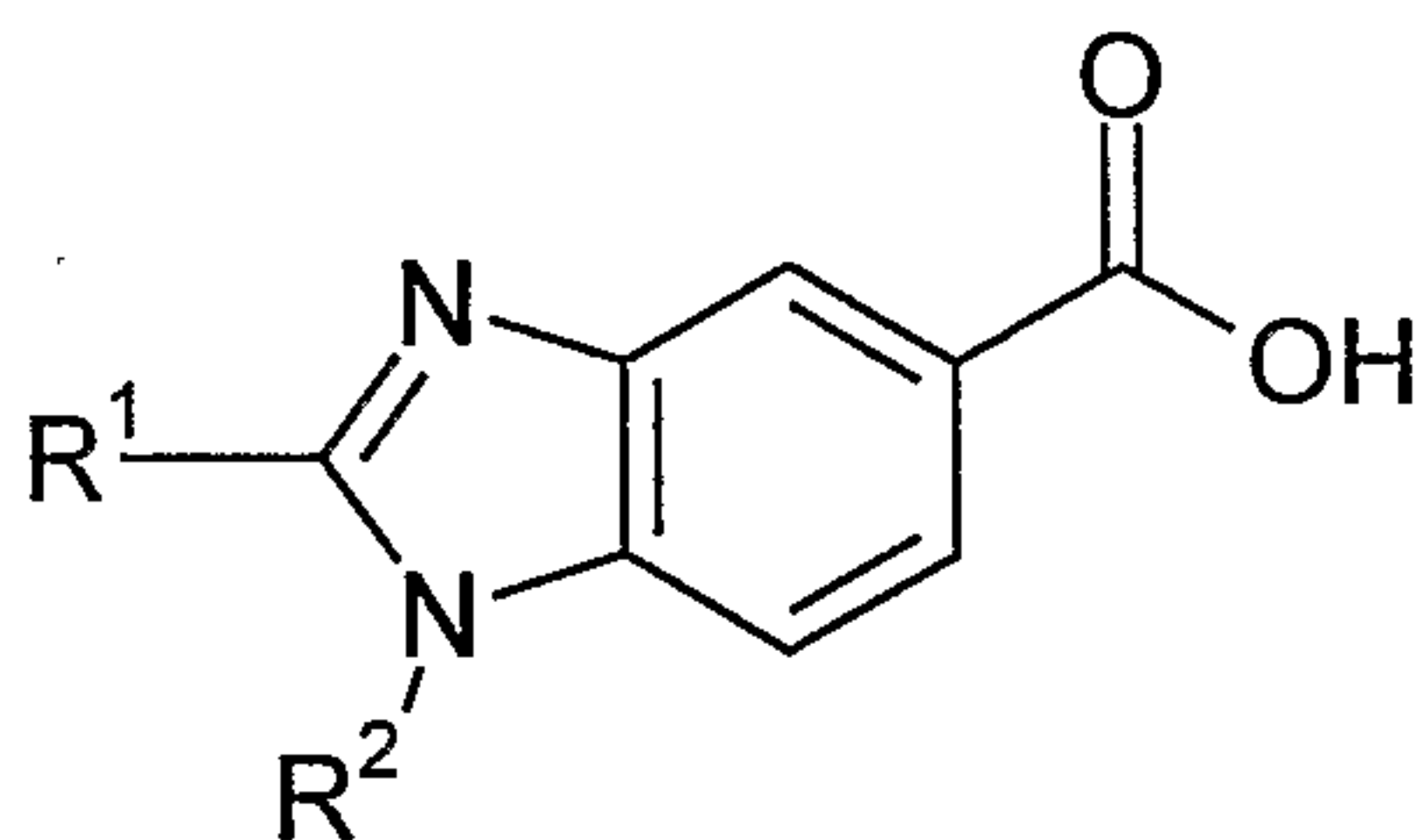
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	A	R ⁵	Z	R ³	m/z
5007	D	CMe	H	NHR ³		527(MH ⁺)
5008	D	CMe	H	NHR ³		583(M-H)
5009	C	CH	CH ₃	NHR ³		583(M-H)

Table 6

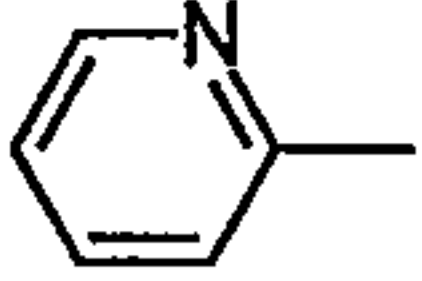
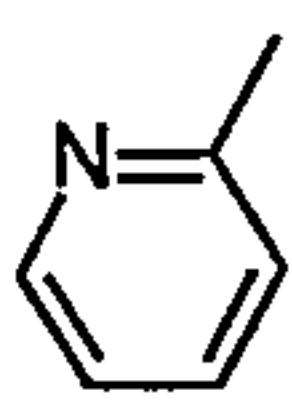
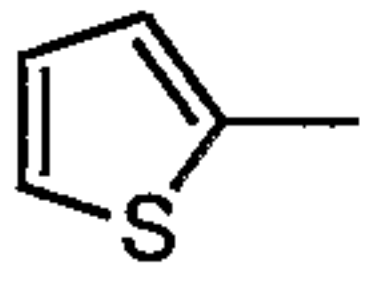
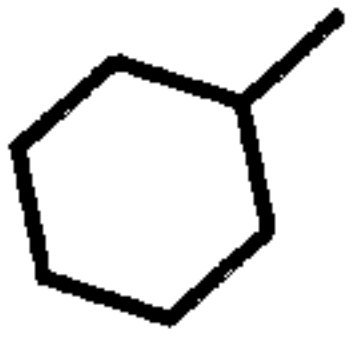
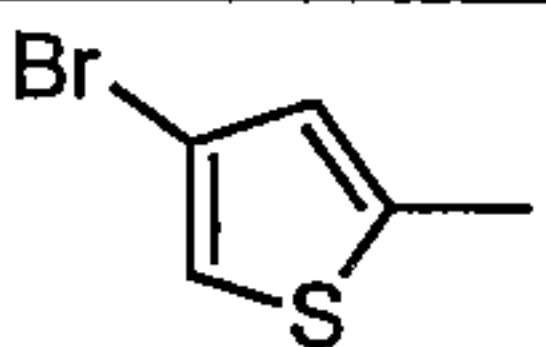
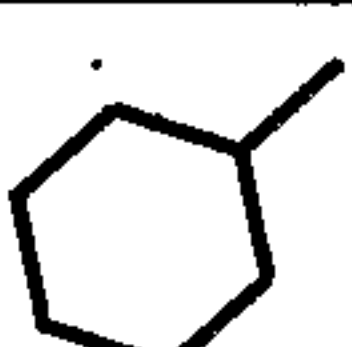
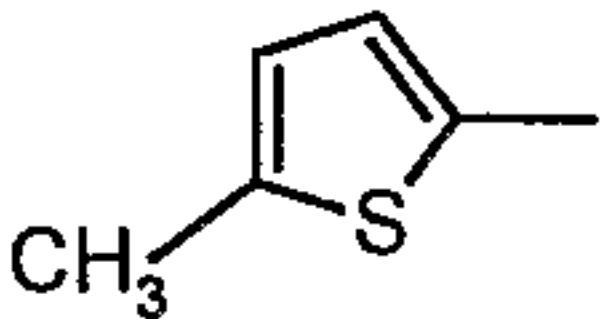
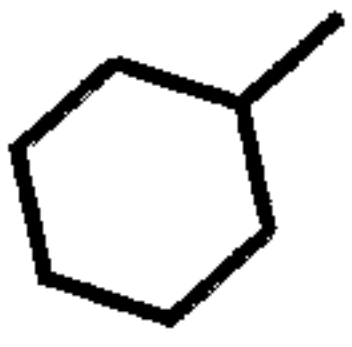
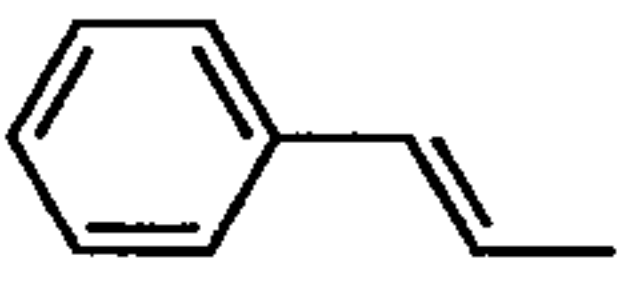
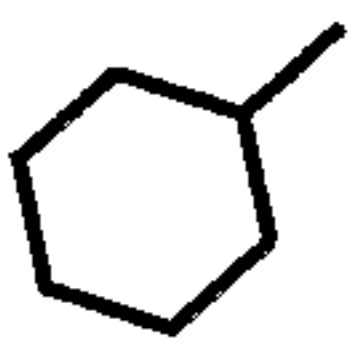
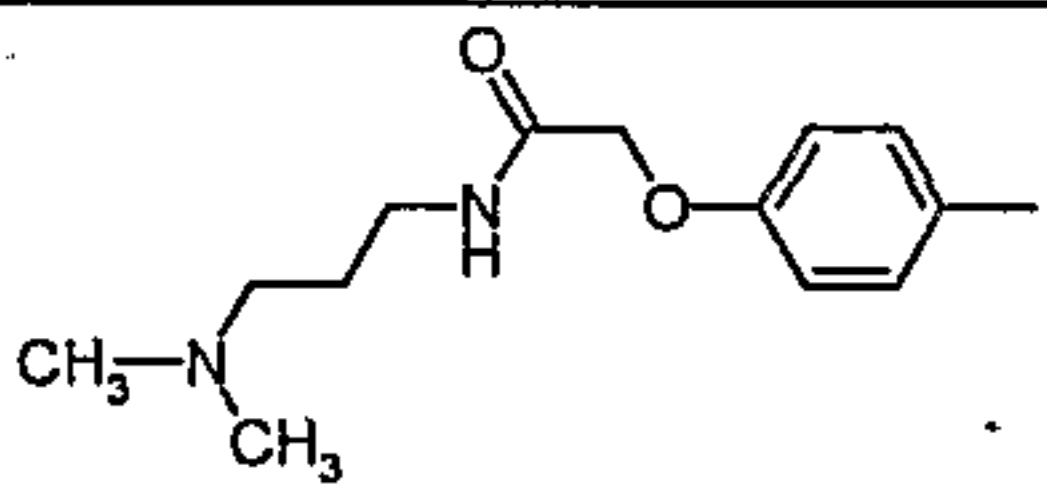
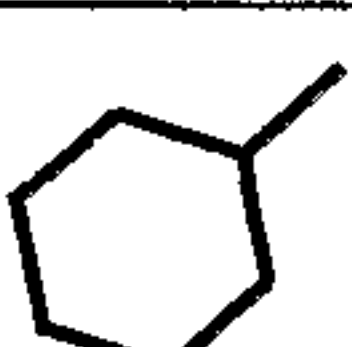
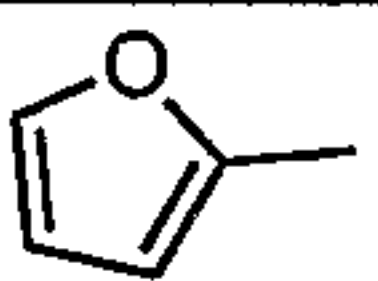
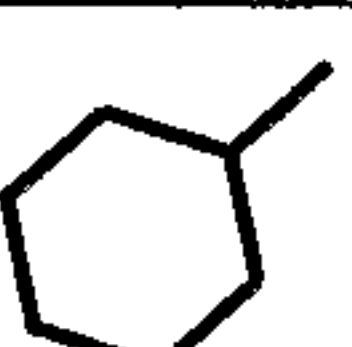
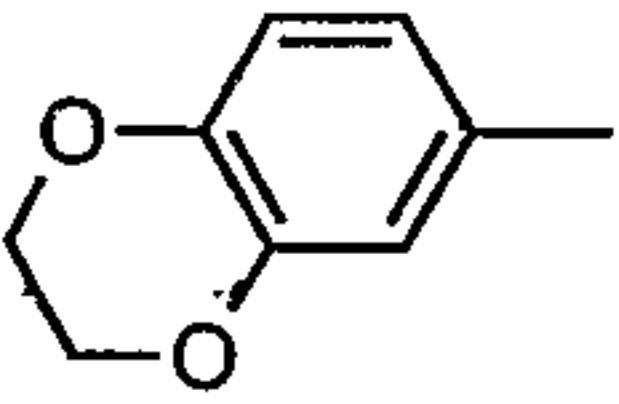
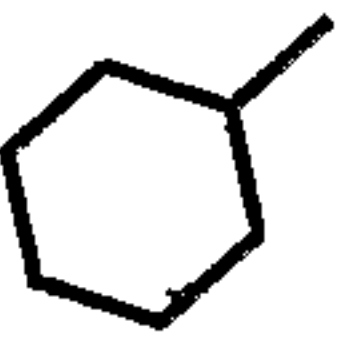
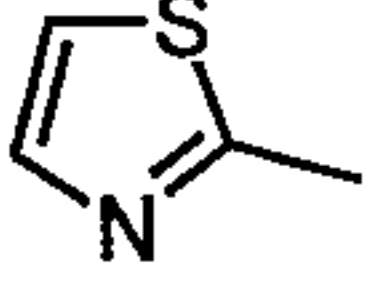
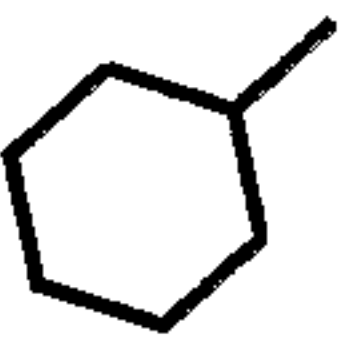
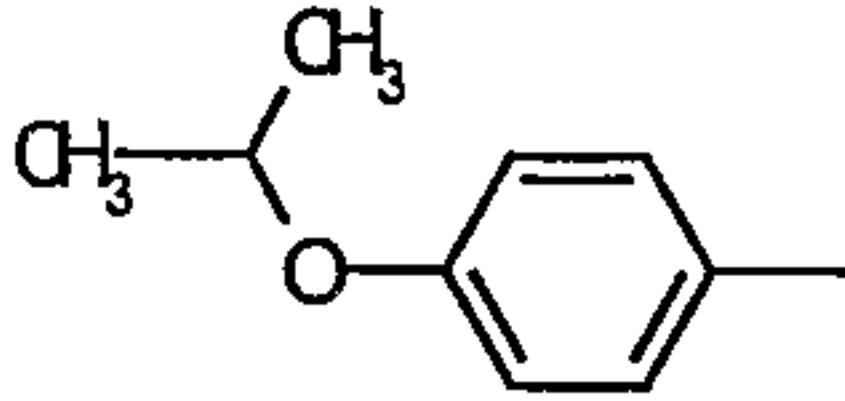
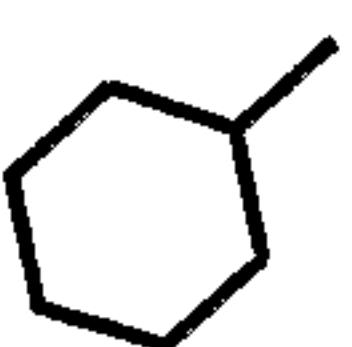
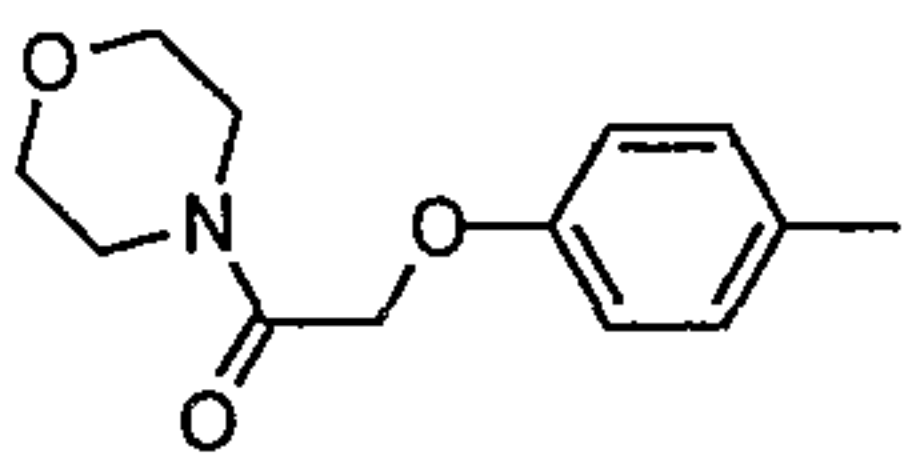
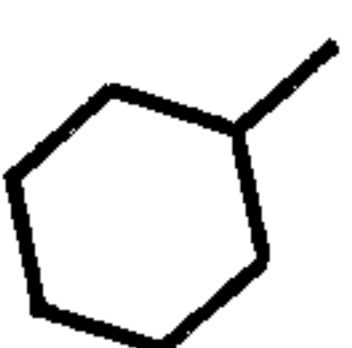


Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	Z	m/z
6001	A		424(MH ⁺)
6002	A		424(MH ⁺)
6003	B		570(MH ⁺)
6004	B		526(MH ⁺)
6005	B		525(MH ⁺)

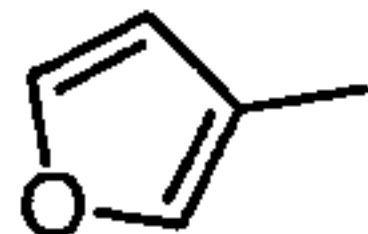
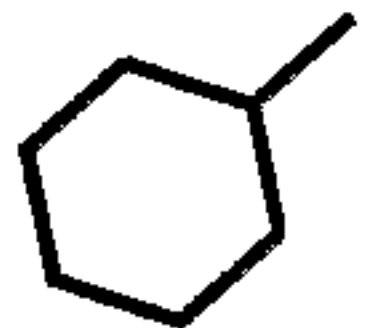
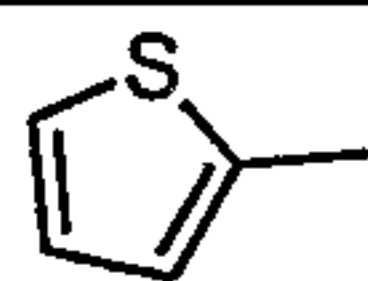
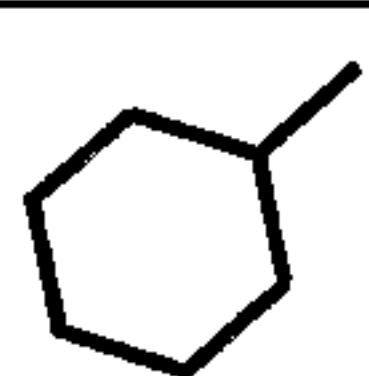
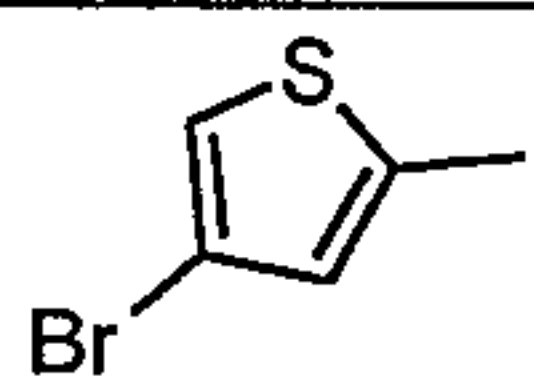
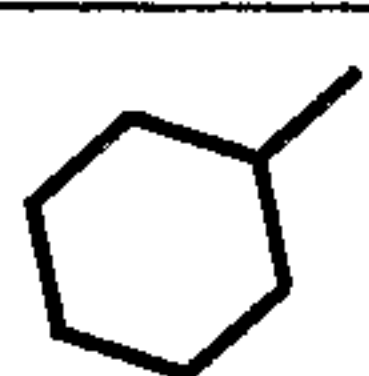
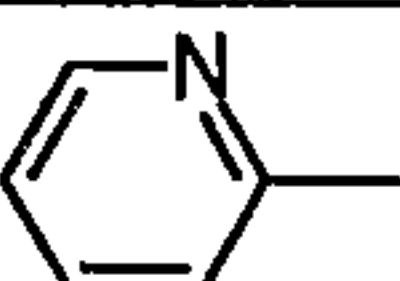
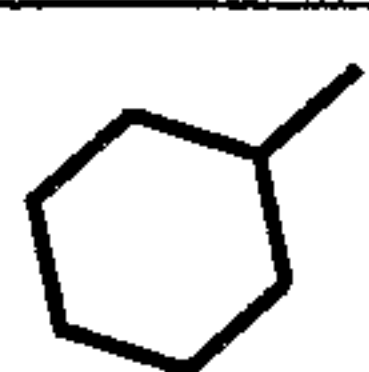
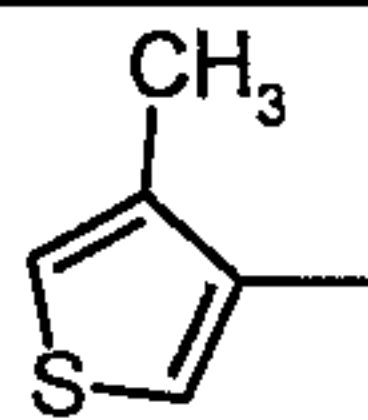
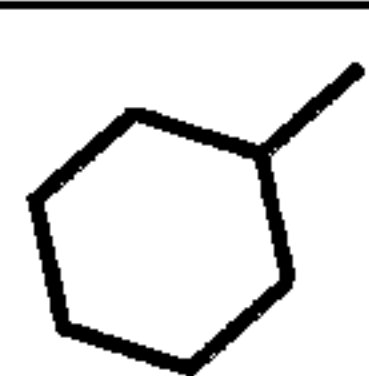
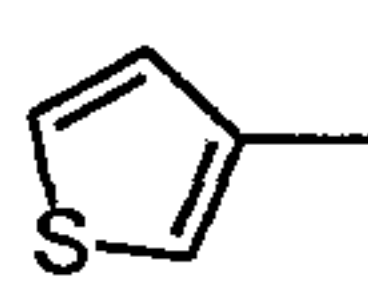
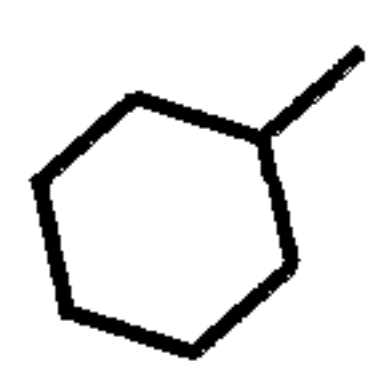
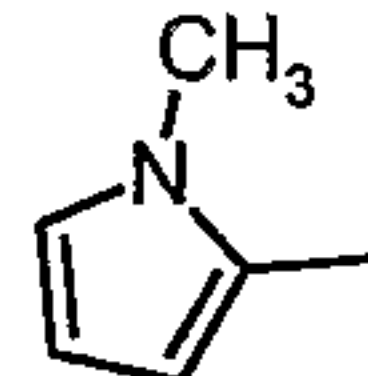
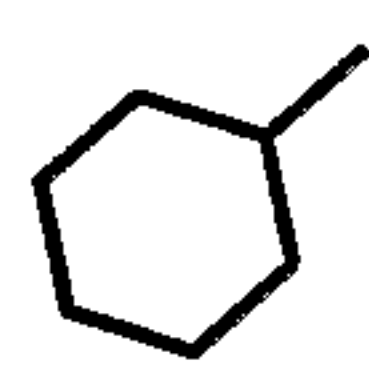
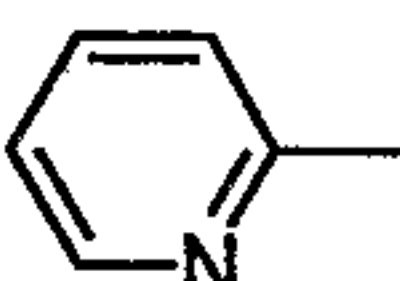
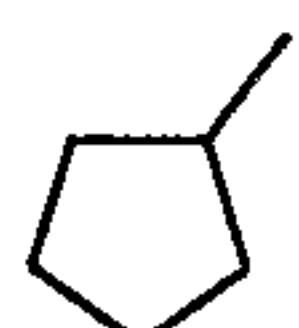
Table 7



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ²	m/z
7001	A			336(MH ⁺)
7002	A			346(MH ⁺)
7003	A			299(MH ⁺)
7004	A			311(MH ⁺)
7005	A			427(MH ⁺)
7006	A			321(MH ⁺)
7007	A			365(MH ⁺)
7008	A			484(MH ⁺)

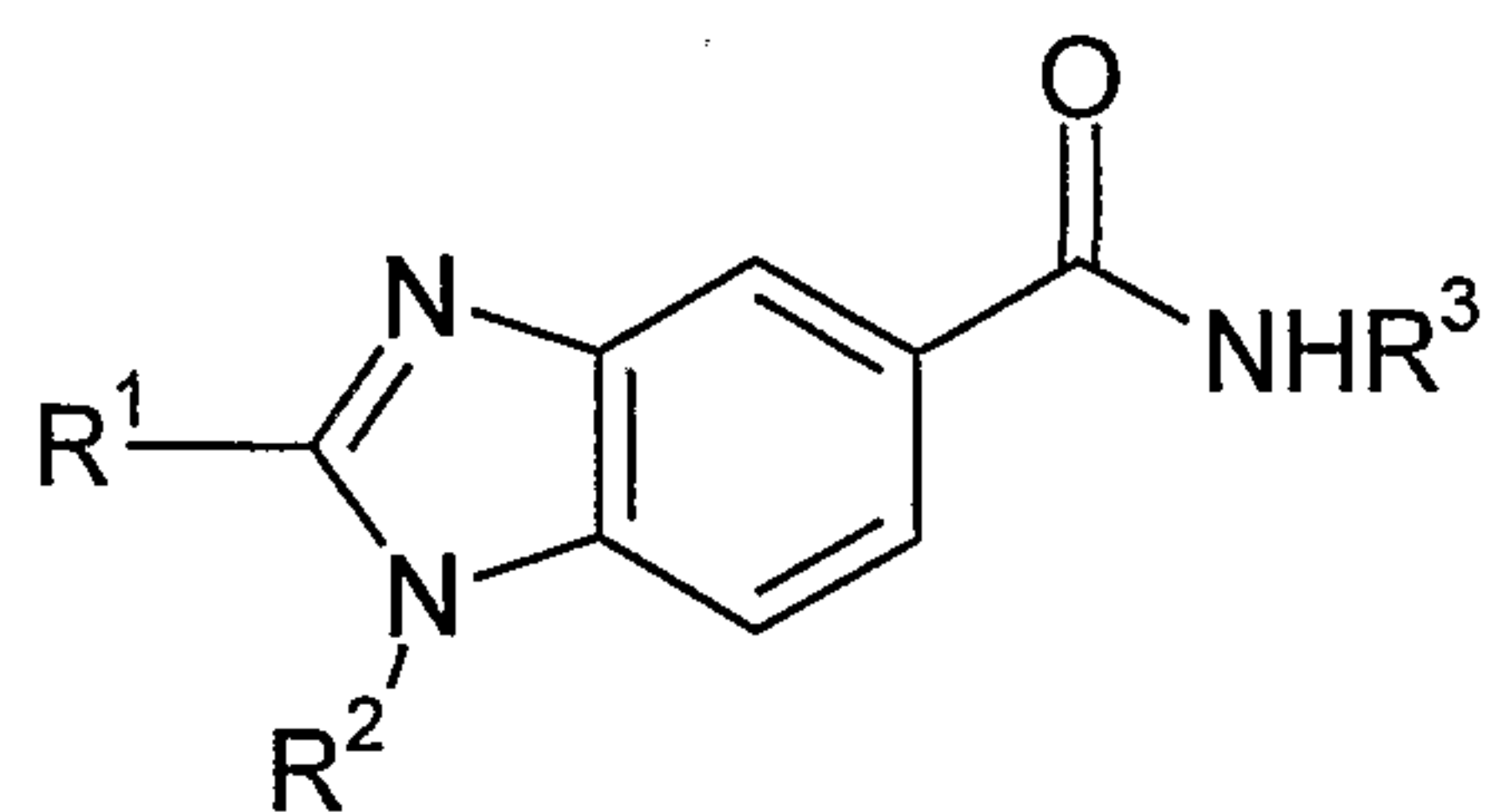
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ²	m/z
7009	A			317(MH ⁺)
7026	C			327(MH ⁺)
7027	B			406(MH ⁺)
7010	A			341(MH ⁺)
7011	A			347(MH ⁺)
7012	A			478(MH ⁺)
7013	C			311(MH ⁺)
7014	C			379(MH ⁺)
7015	C			328(MH ⁺)
7016	B			379(MH ⁺)
7017	B			464(MH ⁺)

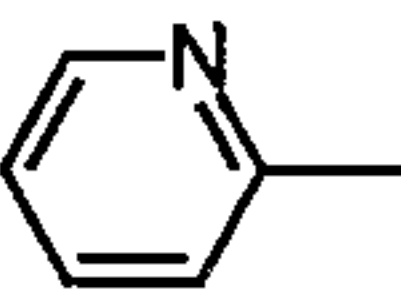
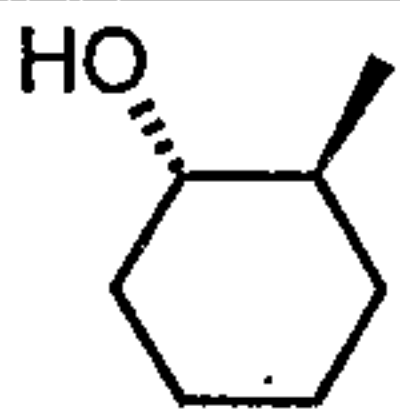
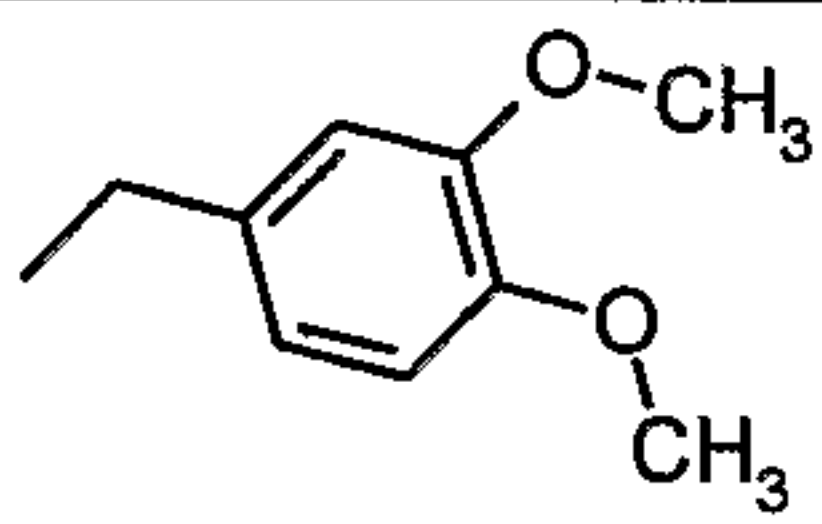
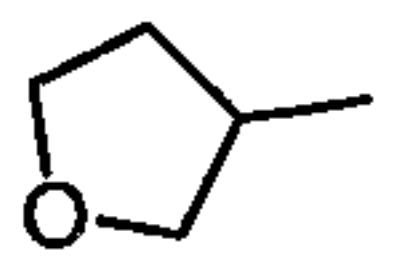
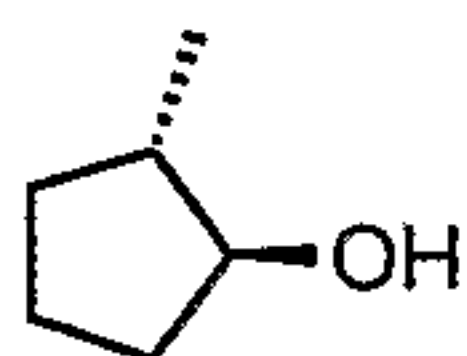
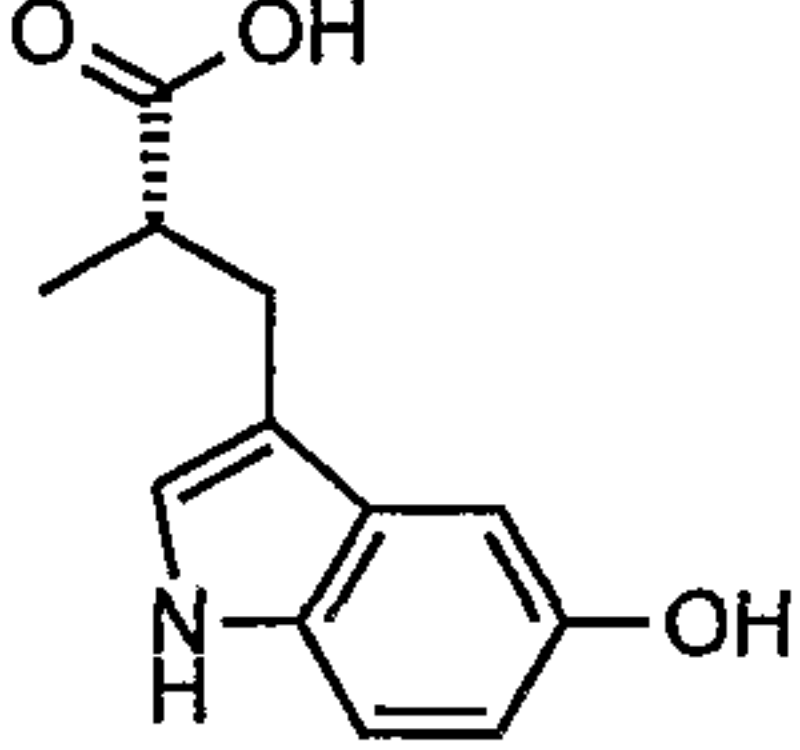
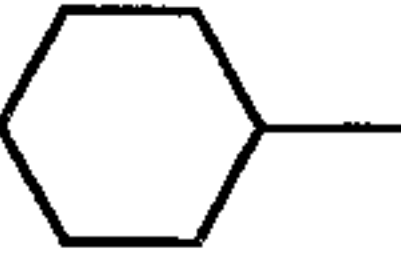
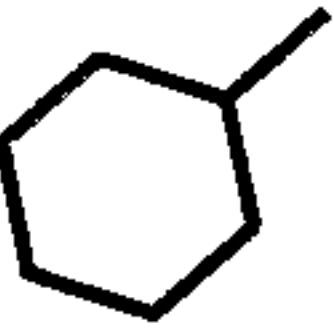
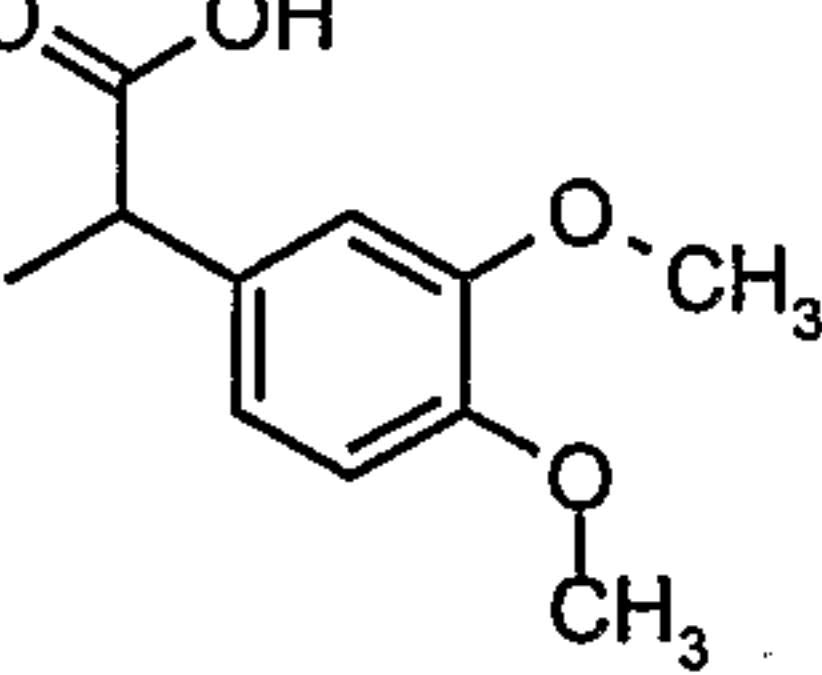
230

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ¹	R ²	m/z
7018	C			311(MH ⁺)
7019	C			327(MH ⁺)
7020	B			406(MH ⁺)
7021	C			322(MH ⁺)
7022	B			341(MH ⁺)
7023	A			327(MH ⁺)
7024	C			324(MH ⁺)
7025	A			308(MH ⁺)

231

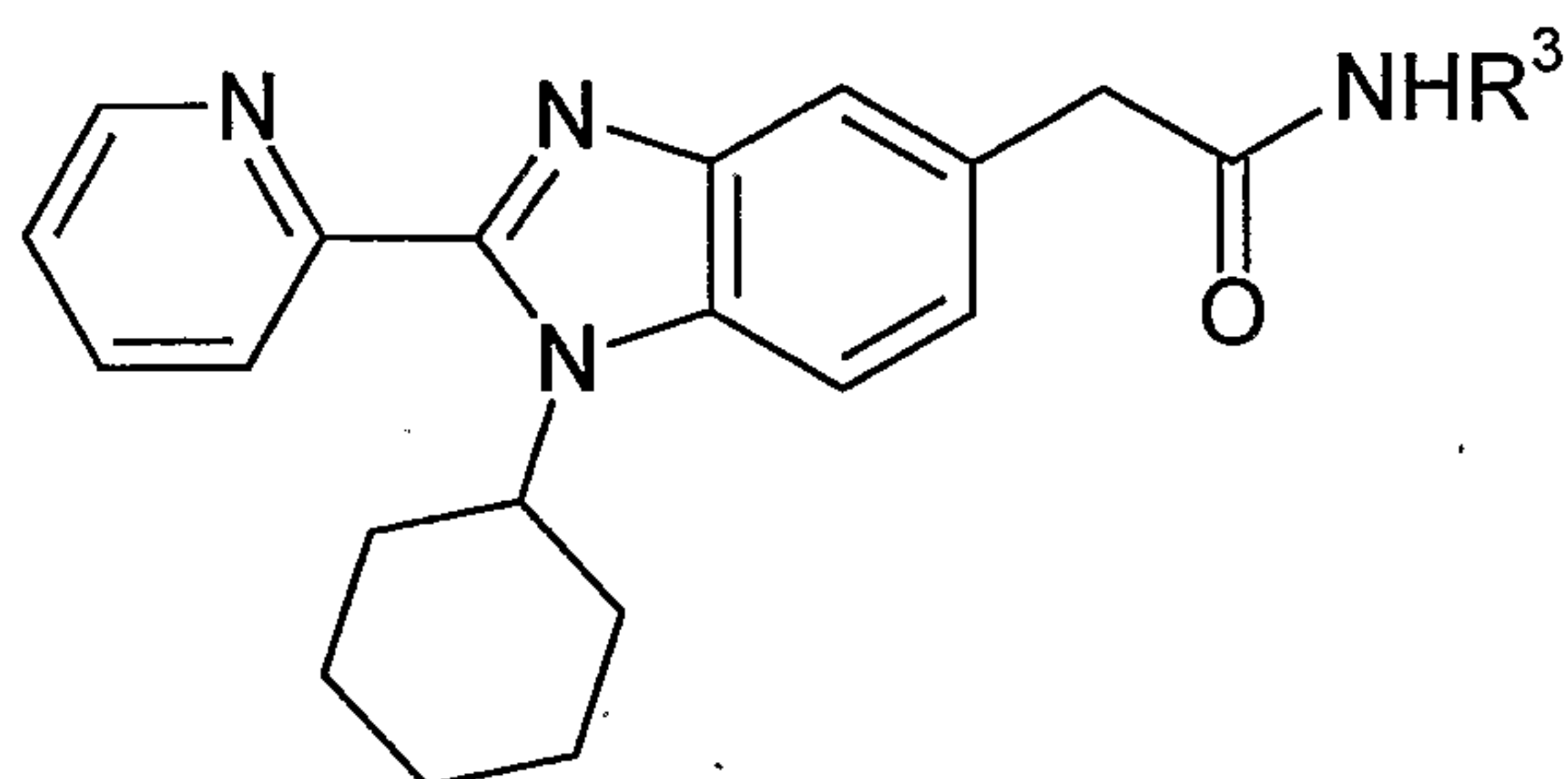
Table 8



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ¹	R ²	R ³	m/z
8001	A				487(MH ⁺)
8002	B				519(MH ⁺)
8003	A				520(MH ⁺)

232

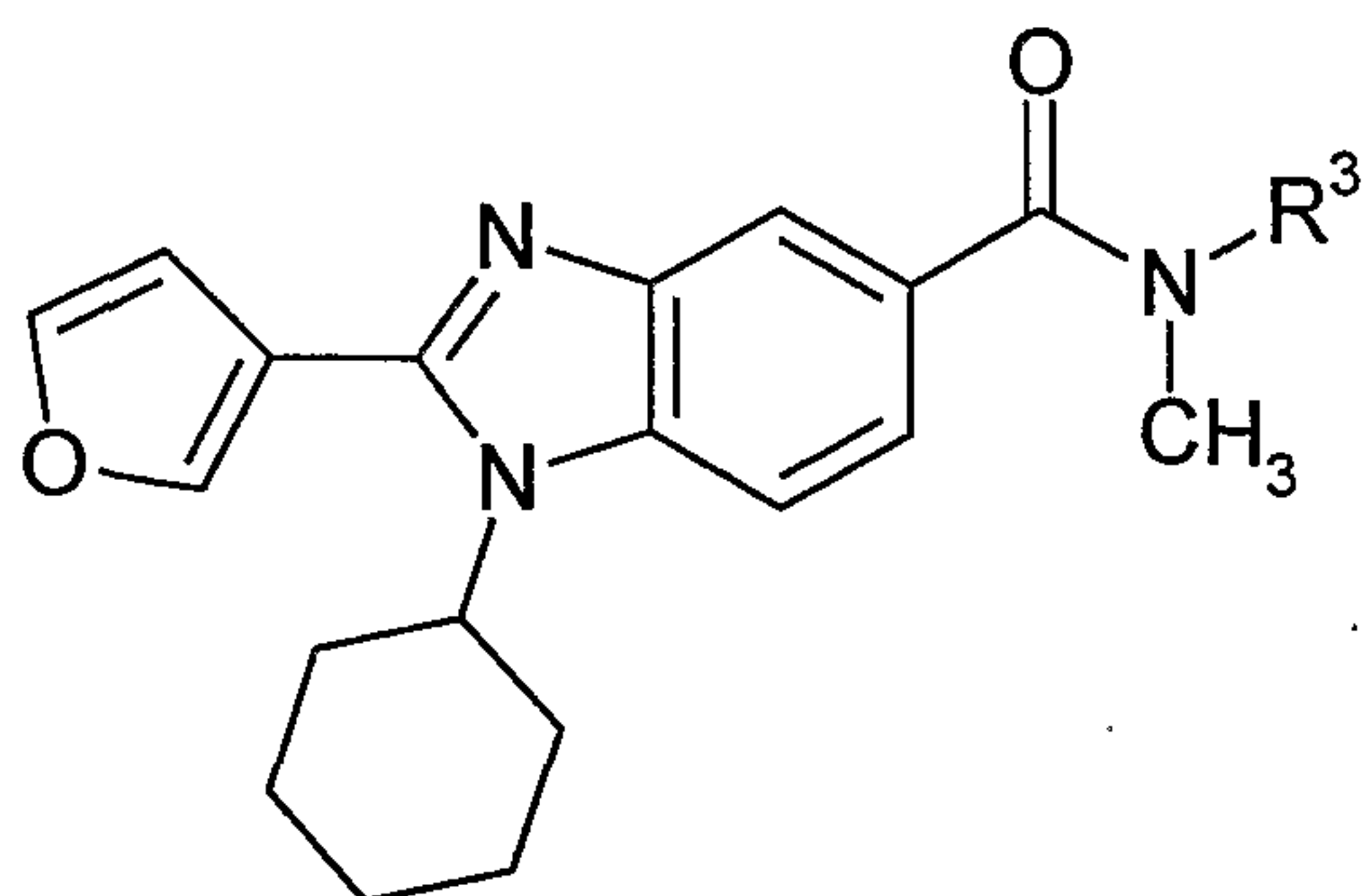
Table 9



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
9001	B	Chemical structure of R³ for entry 9001: A 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-phenylethan-1-one derivative, specifically 4-hydroxy-2-methyl-1-phenylethan-1-one.	499(MH ⁺)
9002	B	Chemical structure of R³ for entry 9002: A 4-(2-hydroxy-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-phenylethan-1-one derivative, specifically 4-(2-hydroxy-2-oxoethoxy)-2-methyl-1-phenylethan-1-one.	557(MH ⁺)

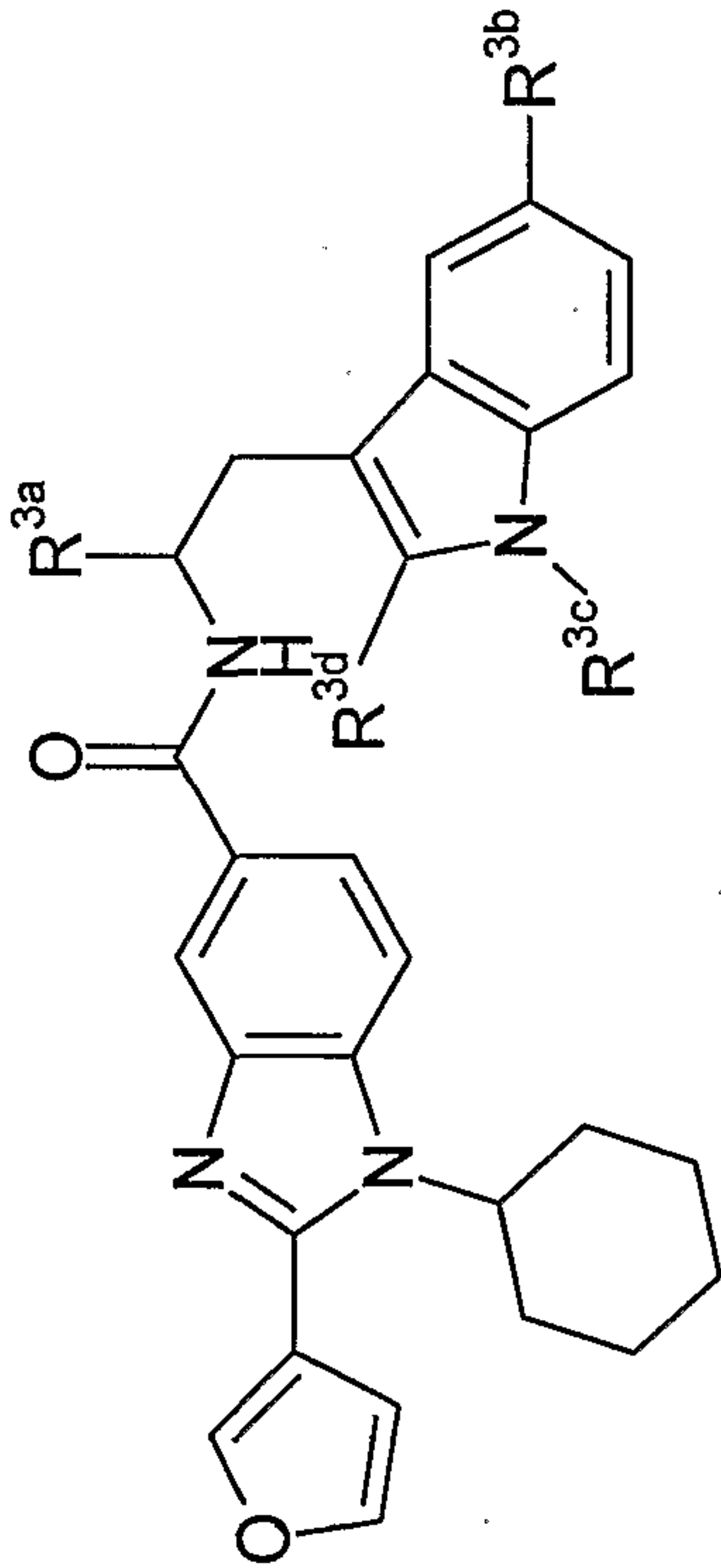
233

Table 10



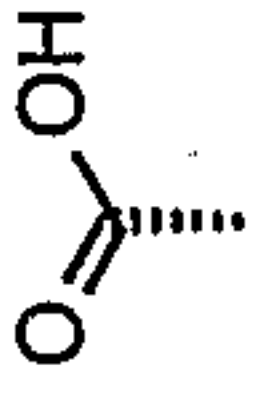
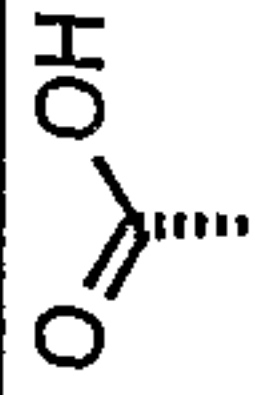
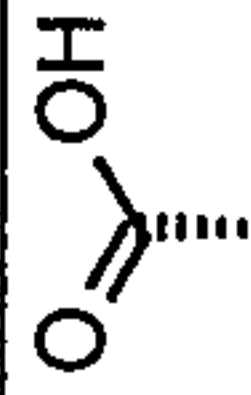
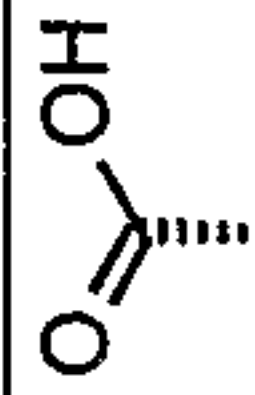
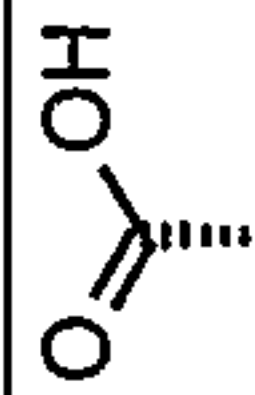
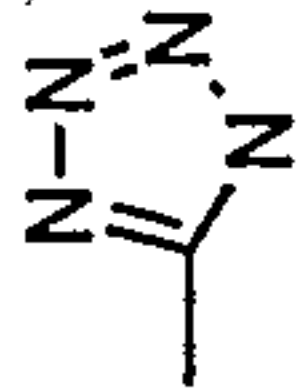
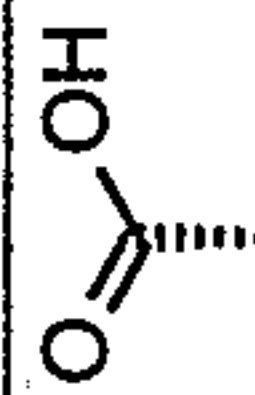
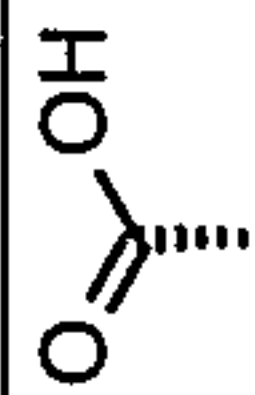
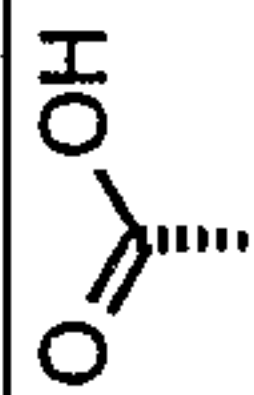
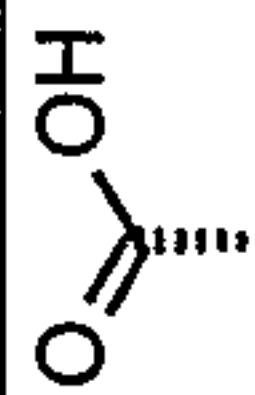
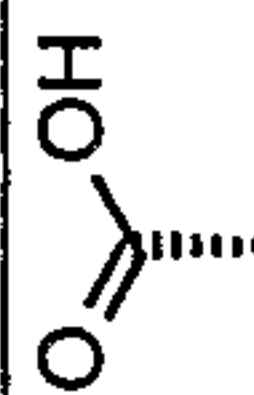
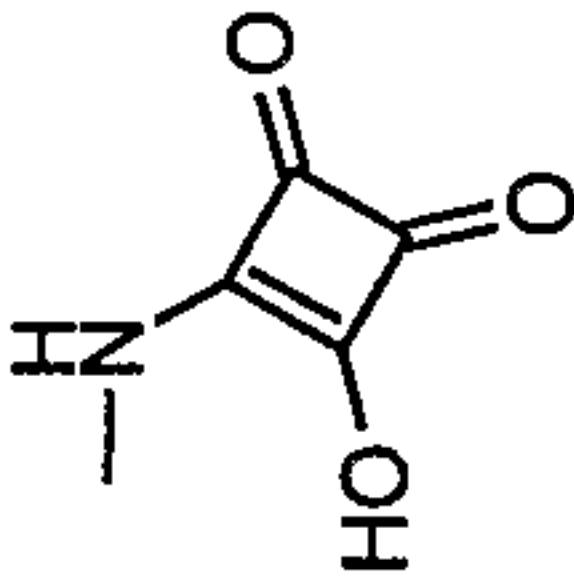
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ³	m/z
10001	A		488(MH ⁺)
10063	C		511(MH ⁺)

TABLE 11



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}	m/z
11001	D	H	OH	H	H	469(MH ⁺)
11002	D		OH	H	H	513(MH ⁺)
11003	D		H	H	H	497(MH ⁺)
11004	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H	497(MH ⁺)
11005	D		OH	H	H	527(MH ⁺)
11006	D		OH	H	H	513(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}	m/z
11007	D		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₂ COOH	H	629(MH ⁺)
11008	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H	585(MH ⁺)
11009	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H	571(MH ⁺)
11010	D		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	H	H	599(MH ⁺)
11011	D	H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	H	527(MH ⁺)
11012	D	H	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₂ COOH	H	585(MH ⁺)
11013	D		OH	H	H	513(MH ⁺)
11014	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H	571(MH ⁺)
11015	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	CH ₃	599(MH ⁺)
11016	D		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H	585(MH ⁺)
11017	D		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H	599(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}	m/z
11018	D		COOH	H	H	541(MH ⁺)
11019	D		CONH ₂	H	H	540(MH ⁺)
11020	D		OH	H	CH ₃	527(MH ⁺)
11021	D		OH	CH ₃	H	527(MH ⁺)
11022	D			H	H	565(MH ⁺)
11023	D		NH ₂	H	H	512(MH ⁺)
11024	D		NHCOCOOH	H	H	584(MH ⁺)
11025	D		NHSO ₂ CH ₃		H	590(MH ⁺)
11026	D		NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	H	644(MH ⁺)
11027	D			H	H	608(MH ⁺)

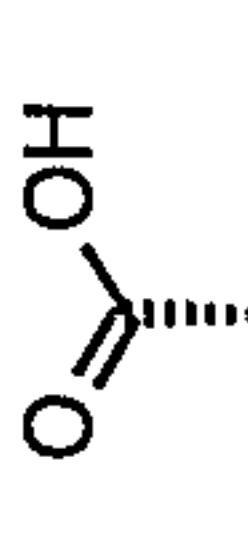
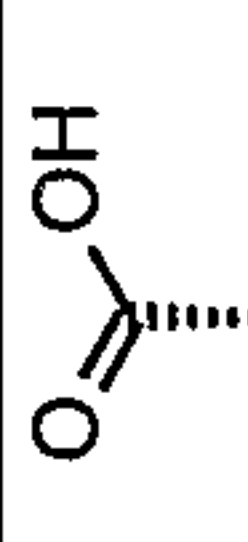
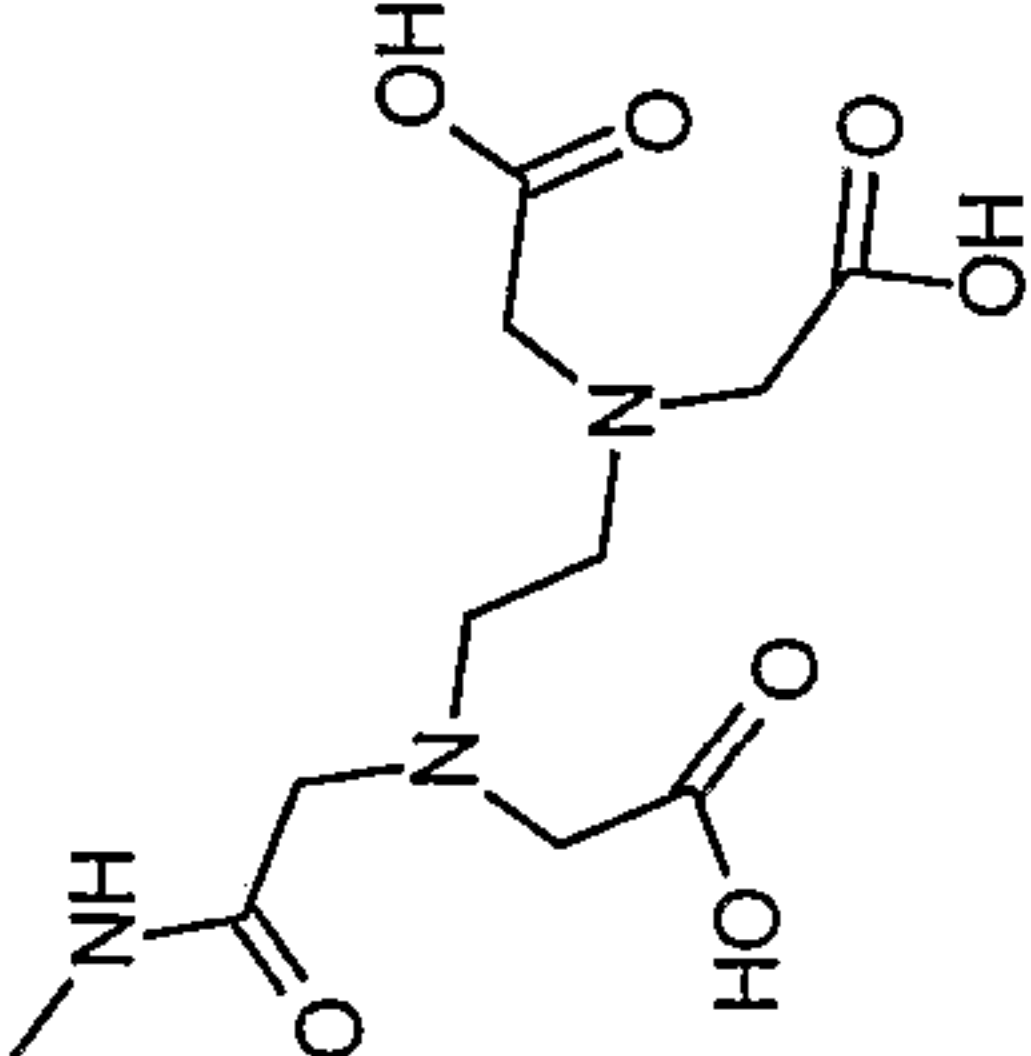
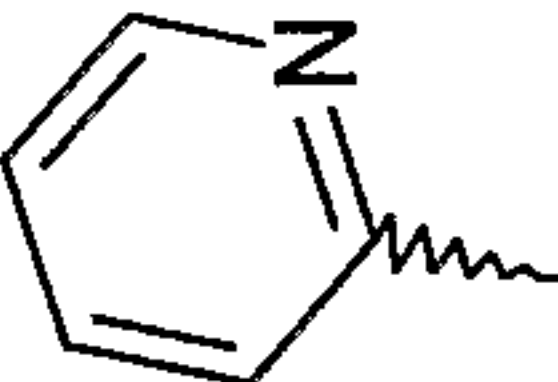
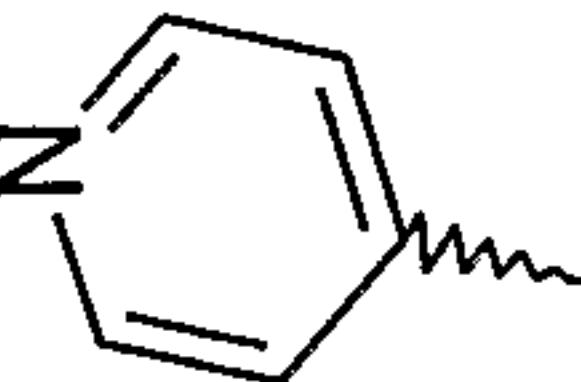
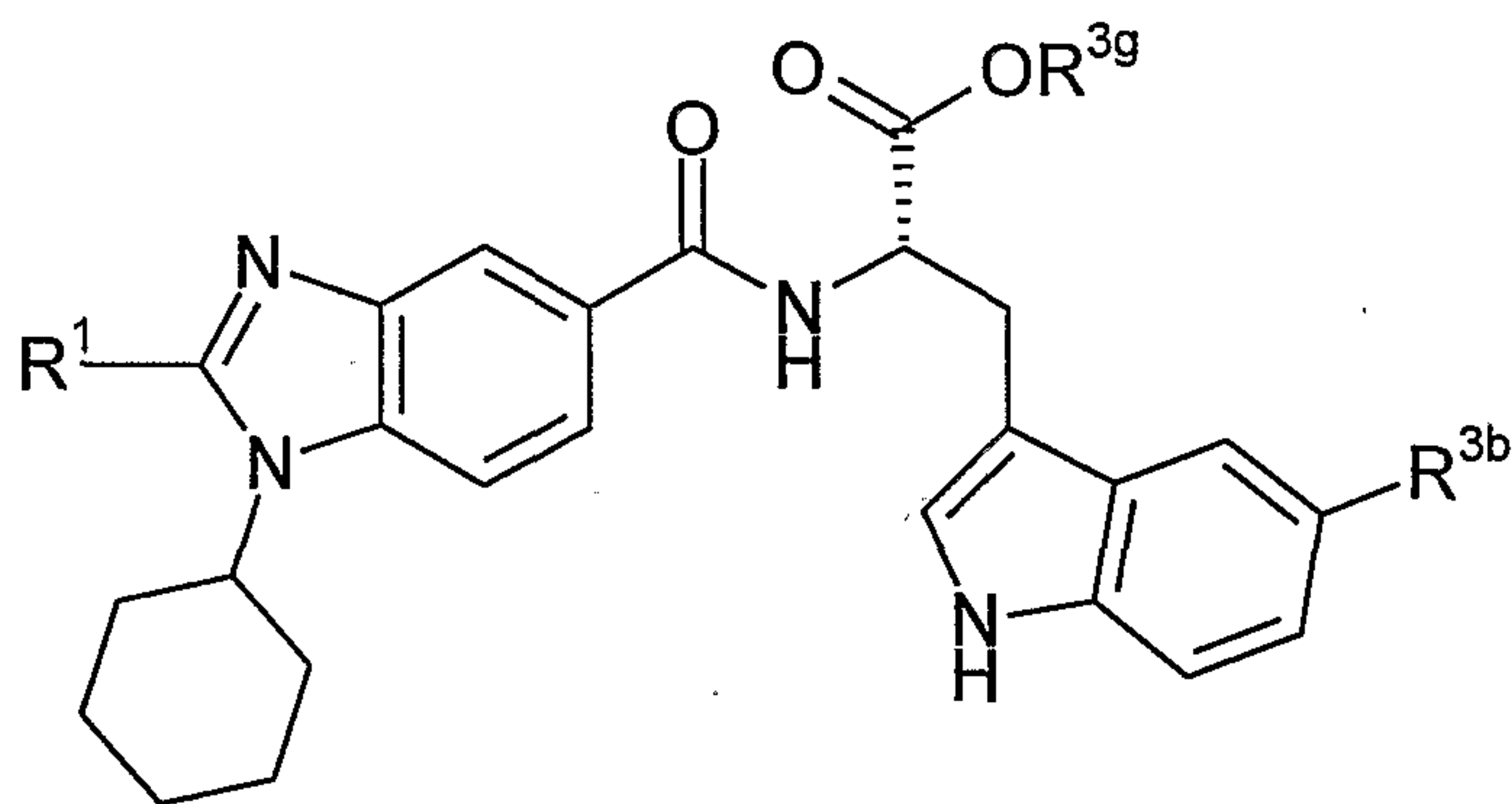
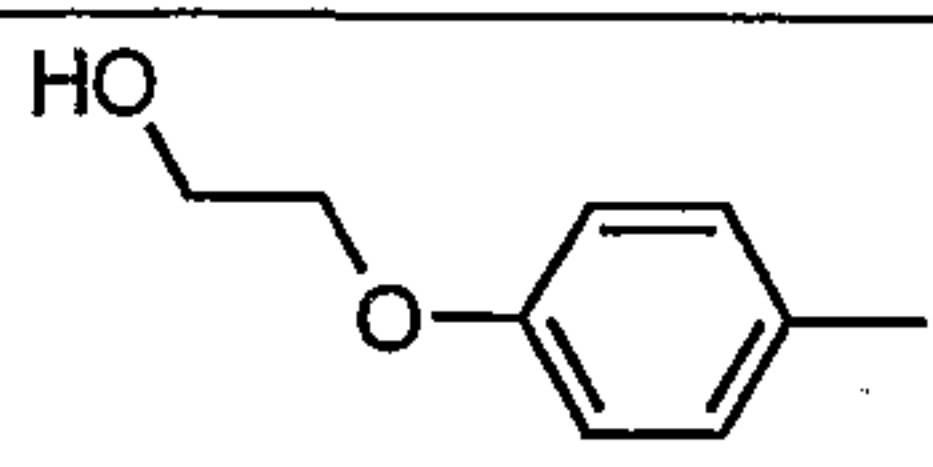
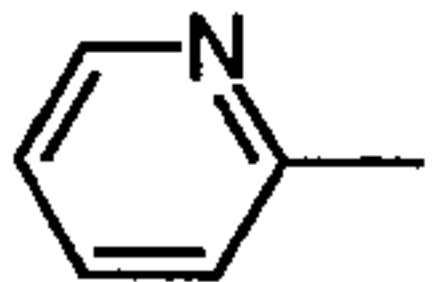
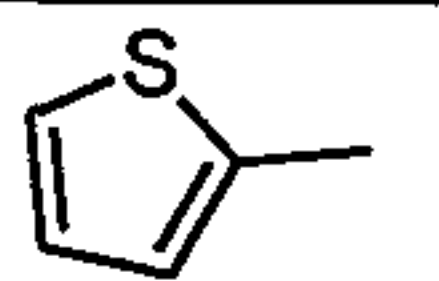
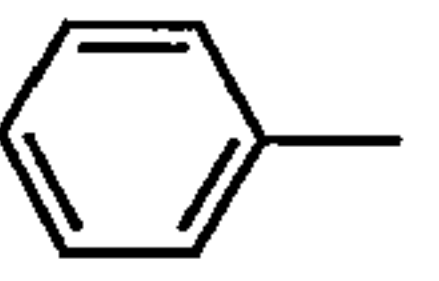
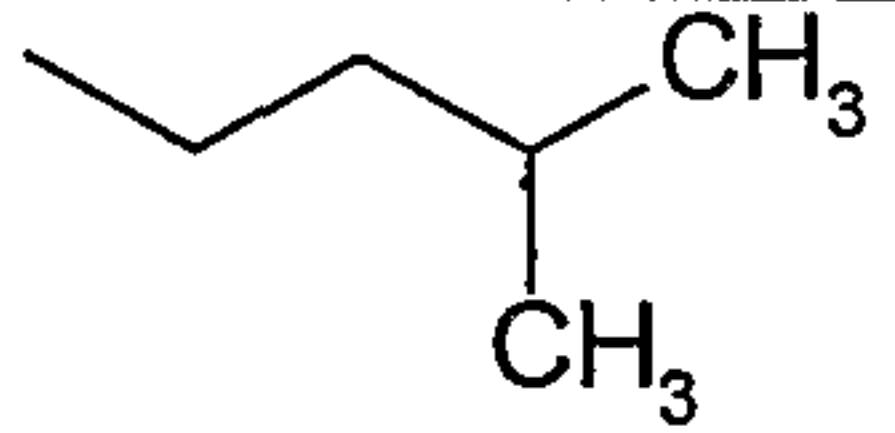
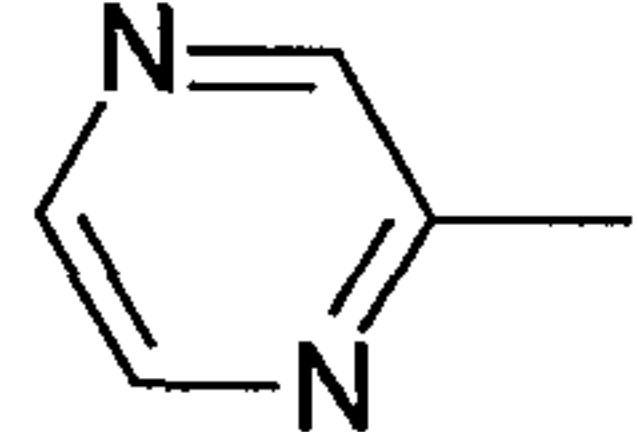
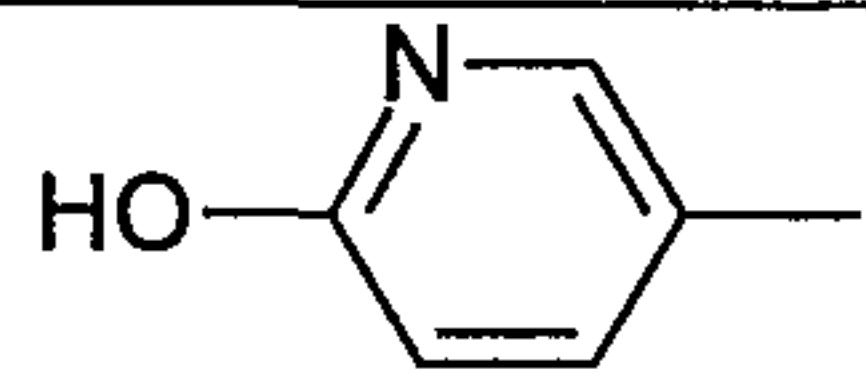
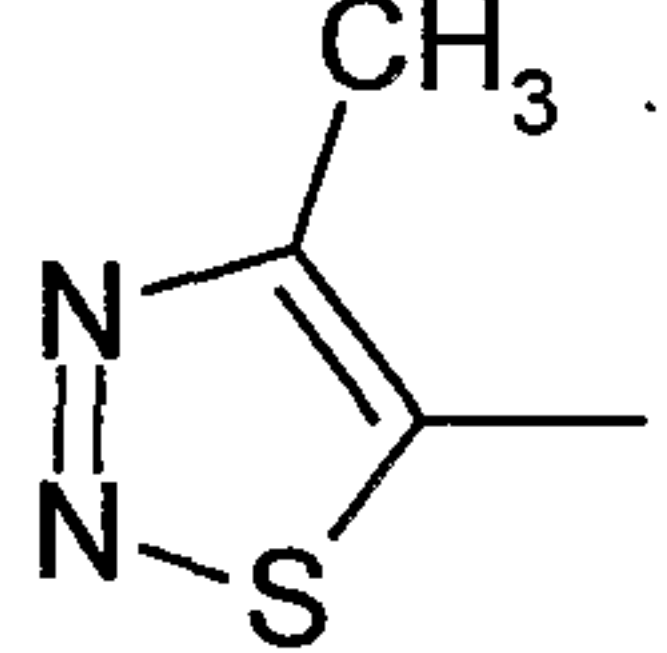
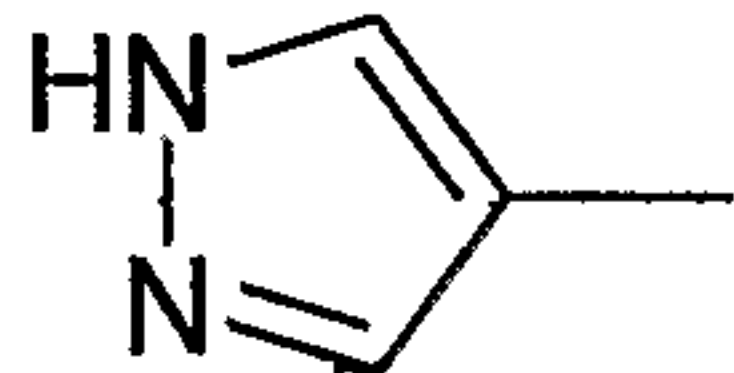
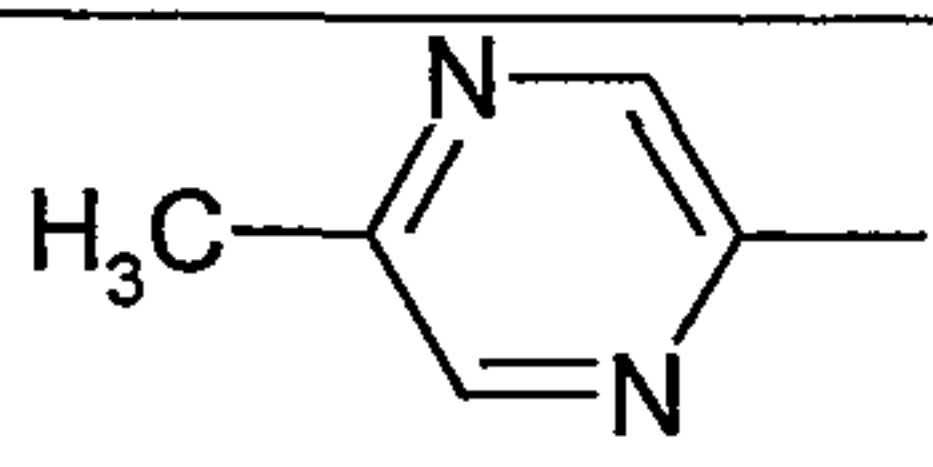
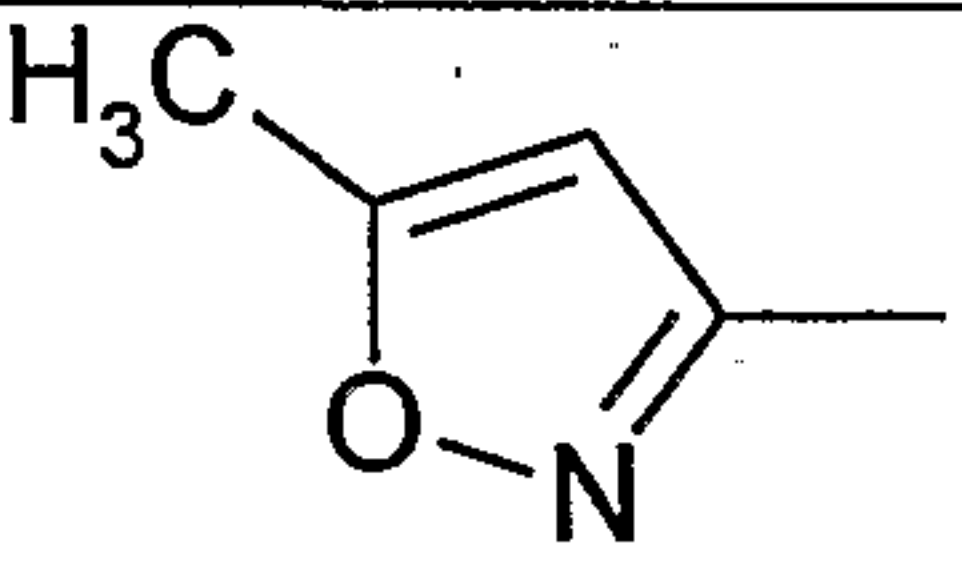
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}	m/z
11028	D		OH	CH ₃	H	541(MH ⁺)
11029	D		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H	584(MH ⁺)
11030	D		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H	613(MH ⁺)
11031	D			H	H	786(MH ⁺)
11032	D		OH	H	H	546(MH ⁺)
11033	D		OH	H	H	546(MH ⁺)

TABLE 12

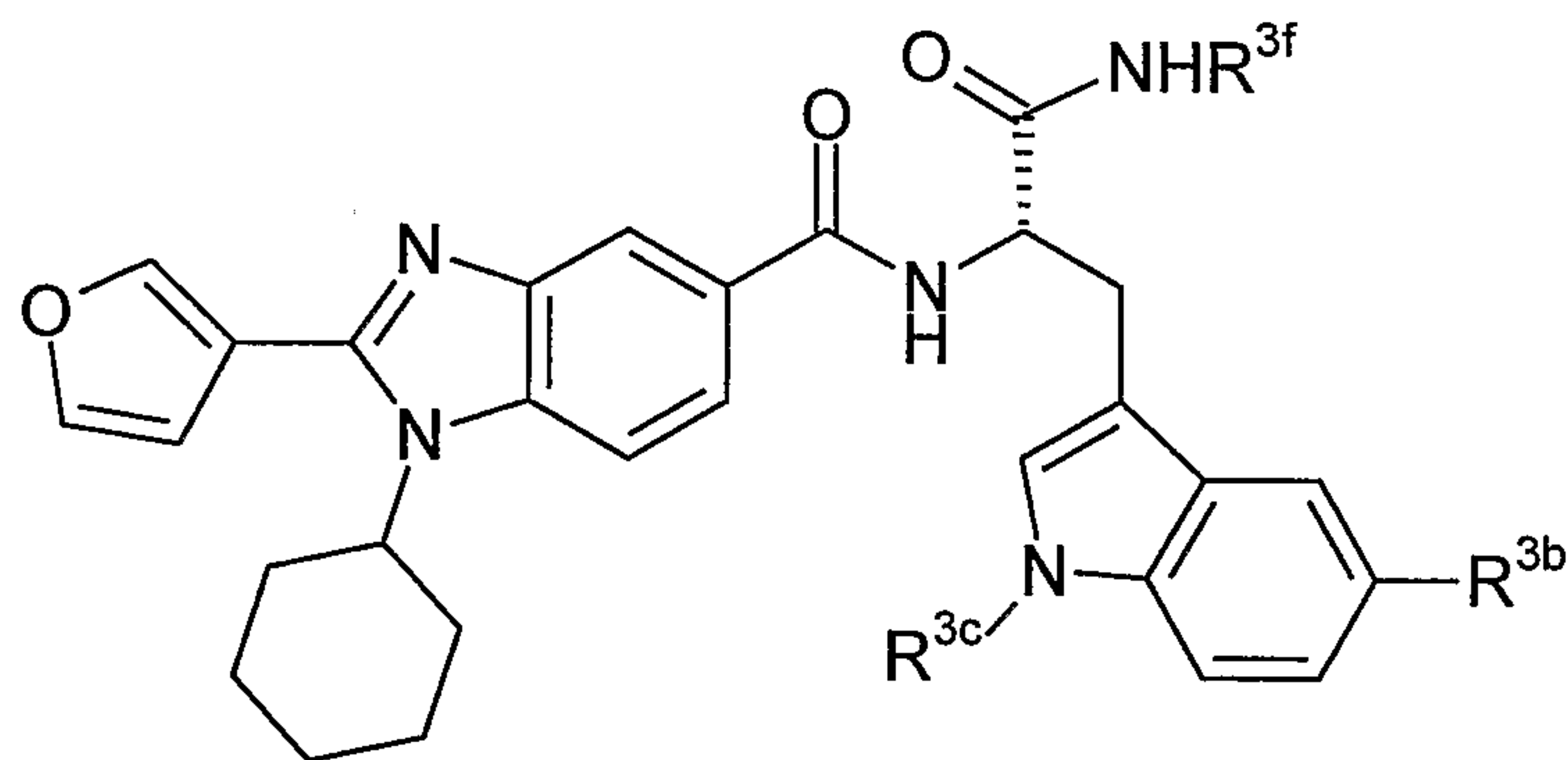


Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}	m/z
12001	D		CH ₃	OH	583(MH ⁺)
12002	D		CH ₃	OCH ₂ COOH	458(MH ⁺)
12003	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	582(MH ⁺)
12004	D		H	OH	567(MH ⁺)
12005	D		H	OH	567(MH ⁺)
12006	D		H	OH	583(MH ⁺)
12007	D		H	OH	513(MH ⁺)
12008	D		H	OH	529(MH ⁺)
12009	D		H	OH	527(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}	m/z
12010	D		H	OH	583(MH ⁺)
12011	D		H	OH	524(MH ⁺)
12012	D		H	OH	529(MH ⁺)
12013	D		H	OH	523(MH ⁺)
12014	D		H	OH	517(MH ⁺)
12015	D		H	OH	525(MH ⁺)
12016	D		H	OH	540(MH ⁺)
12017	D		H	OH	545(MH ⁺)
12018	D		H	OH	513(MH ⁺)
12019	D		H	OH	539(MH ⁺)
12020	D		H	OH	528(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}	m/z
12021	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	1057(MH ⁺)
12022	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	1087(MH ⁺)
12023	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	599(MH ⁺)
12024	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	649(MH ⁺)
12025	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	842(MH ⁺)
12026	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	905(MH ⁺)

TABLE 13



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3f}	m/z
13001	D	OH	H	H	512(MH ⁺)
13002	D	OH	CH ₃	H	526(MH ⁺)
13003	D	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H	584(MH ⁺)
13004	D		H	H	607(MH ⁺)
13005	D	NH ₂	H	H	511(MH ⁺)
13006	D	NHSO ₂ CH ₃	H	H	589(MH ⁺)
13007	D	NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	H	643(MH ⁺)
13008	D	NHCOCOOH	H	H	583(MH ⁺)
13009	D	NHCOCONH ₂	H	H	582(MH ⁺)
13010	D	NHCOCONHCH ₃	H	H	596(MH ⁺)
13011	D	NHCOCONHOH	H	H	598(MH ⁺)
13012	D		H	H	716(MH ⁺)
13013	D	NHCOCONH ₂	H	H	554(MH ⁺)

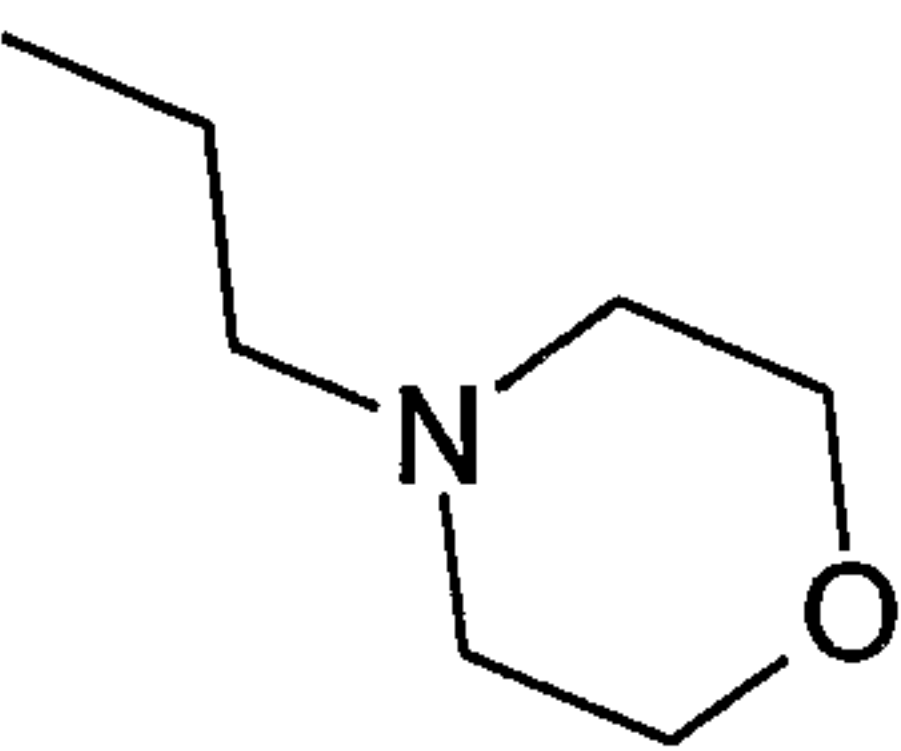
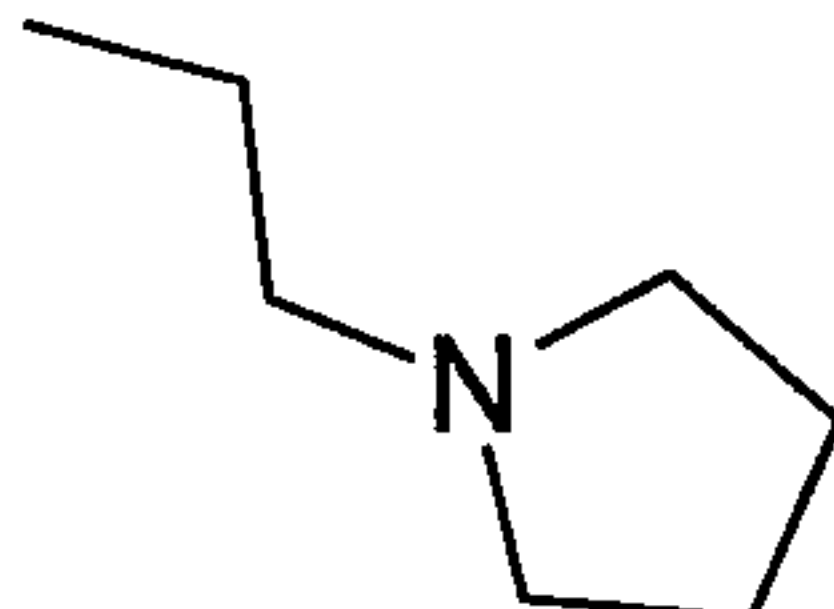
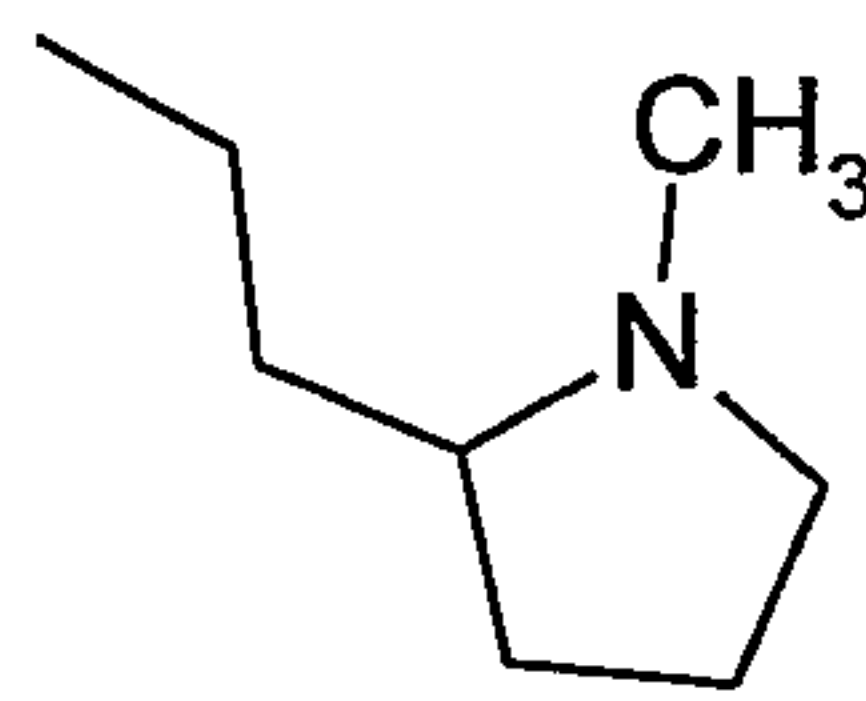
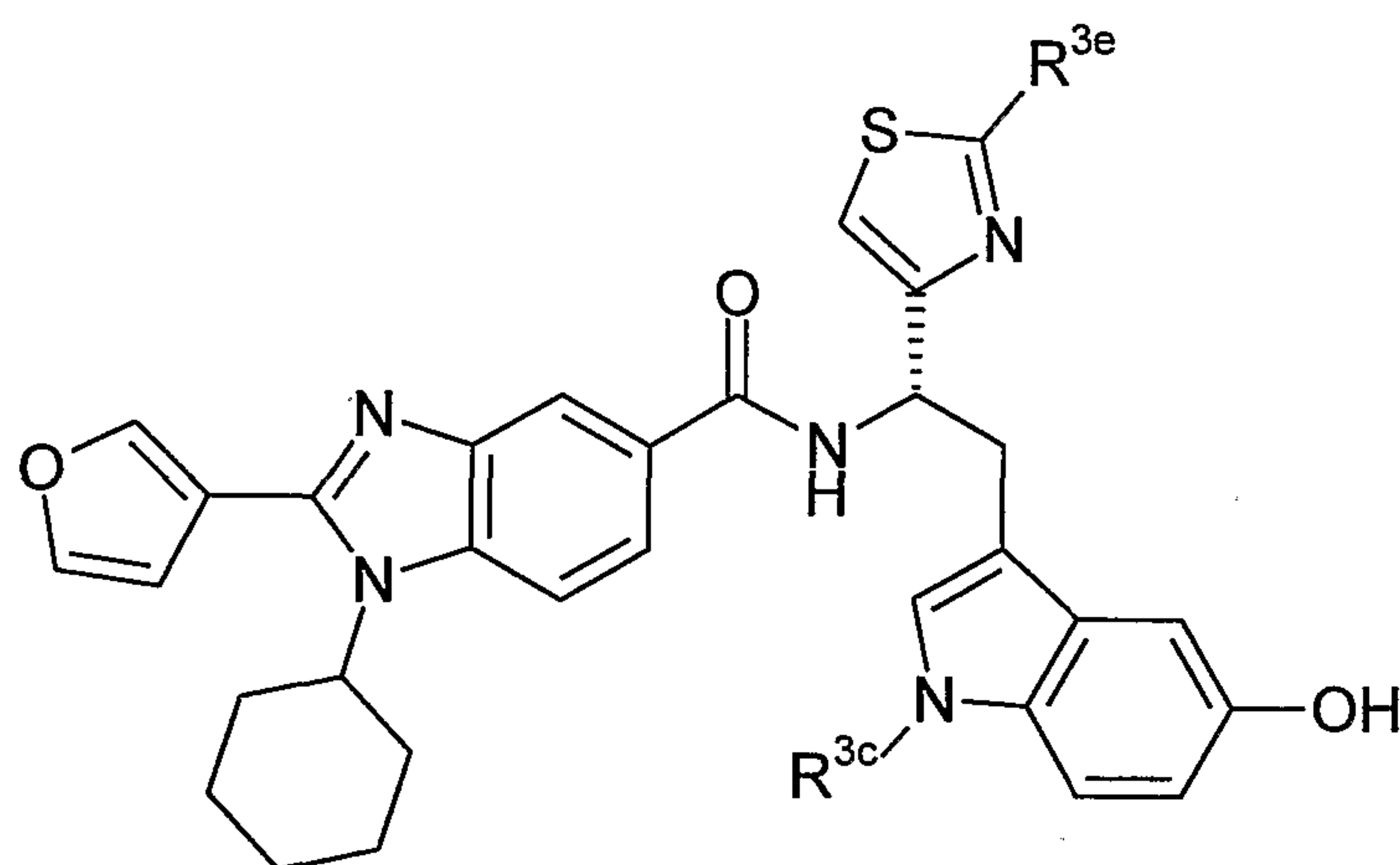
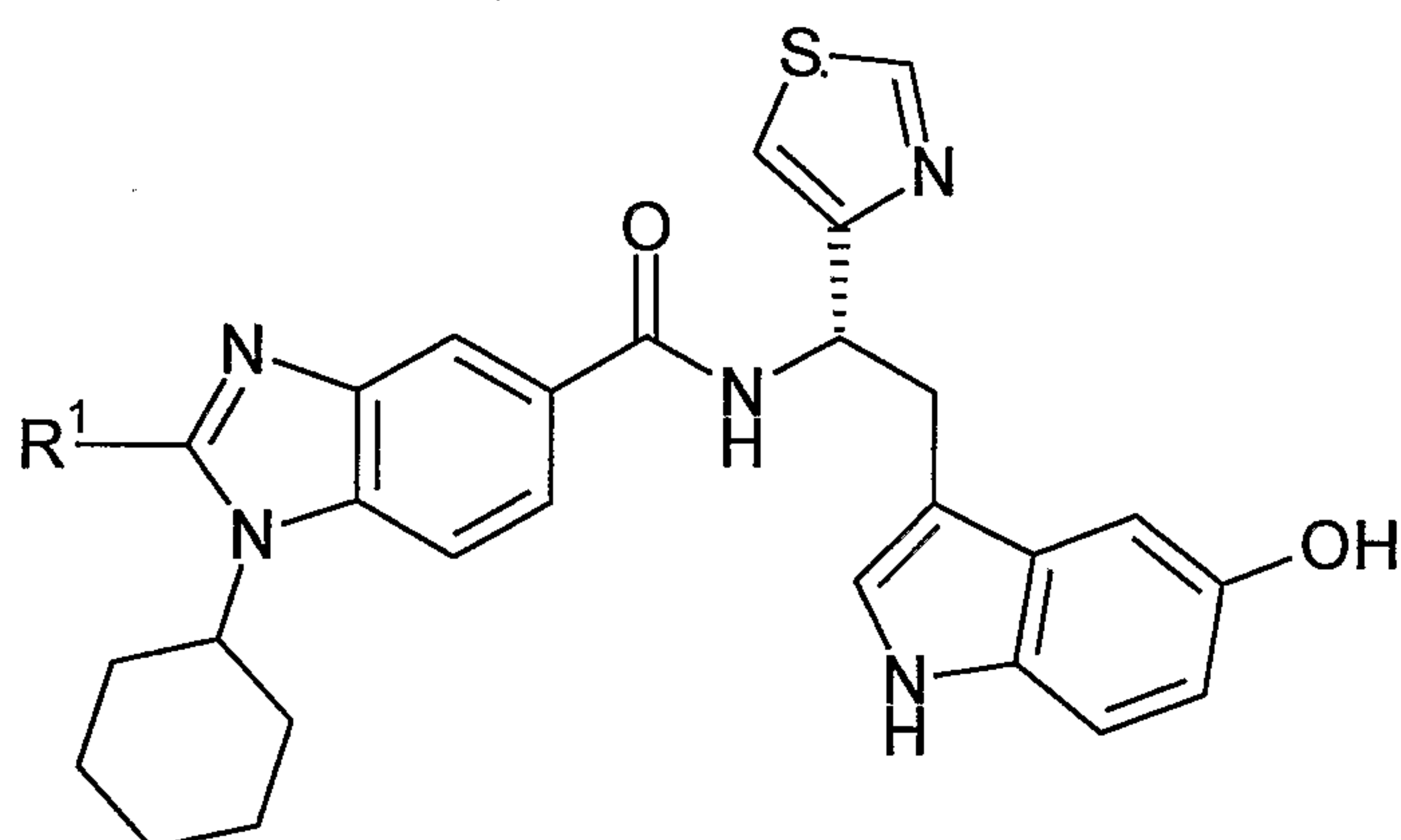
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3f}	m/z
13014	D	OH	H	CH(CH ₂ OH) ₂	586(MH ⁺)
13015	D	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂	583(MH ⁺)
13016	D	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ OH	556(MH ⁺)
13017	D	OH	H		625(MH ⁺)
13018	D	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂	597(MH ⁺)
13019	D	OH	H		609(MH ⁺)
13020	D	OH	H		623(MH ⁺)
13021	D	OH	H	C(CH ₃) ₂ CH ₂ OH	584(MH ⁺)
13022	D	OH	H	CH ₂ CH(OH)CH ₂ OH	586(MH ⁺)

TABLE 14



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3c}	R ^{3e}	m/z
14001	D	H	CH ₃	566(MH ⁺)
14002	D	H	NH ₂	567(MH ⁺)
14003	D	CH ₃	NH ₂	581(MH ⁺)
14004	D	H	NHCH ₃	472(MH ⁺)
14005	D	H	N(CH ₃) ₂	595(MH ⁺)
14006	D	H	NHCOCH ₃	609(MH ⁺)
14007	D	H	H	552(MH ⁺)

TABLE 15



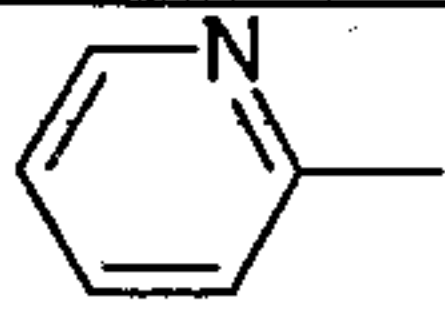
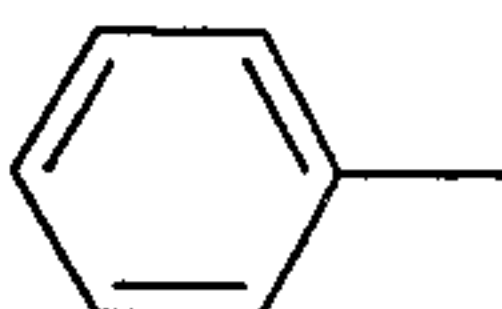
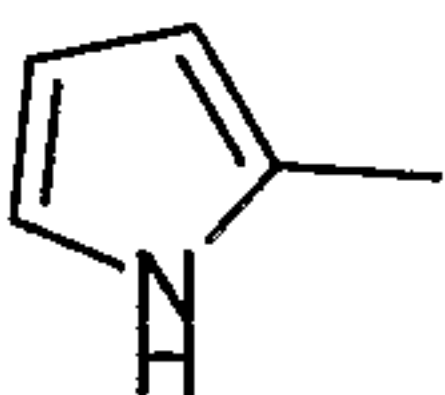
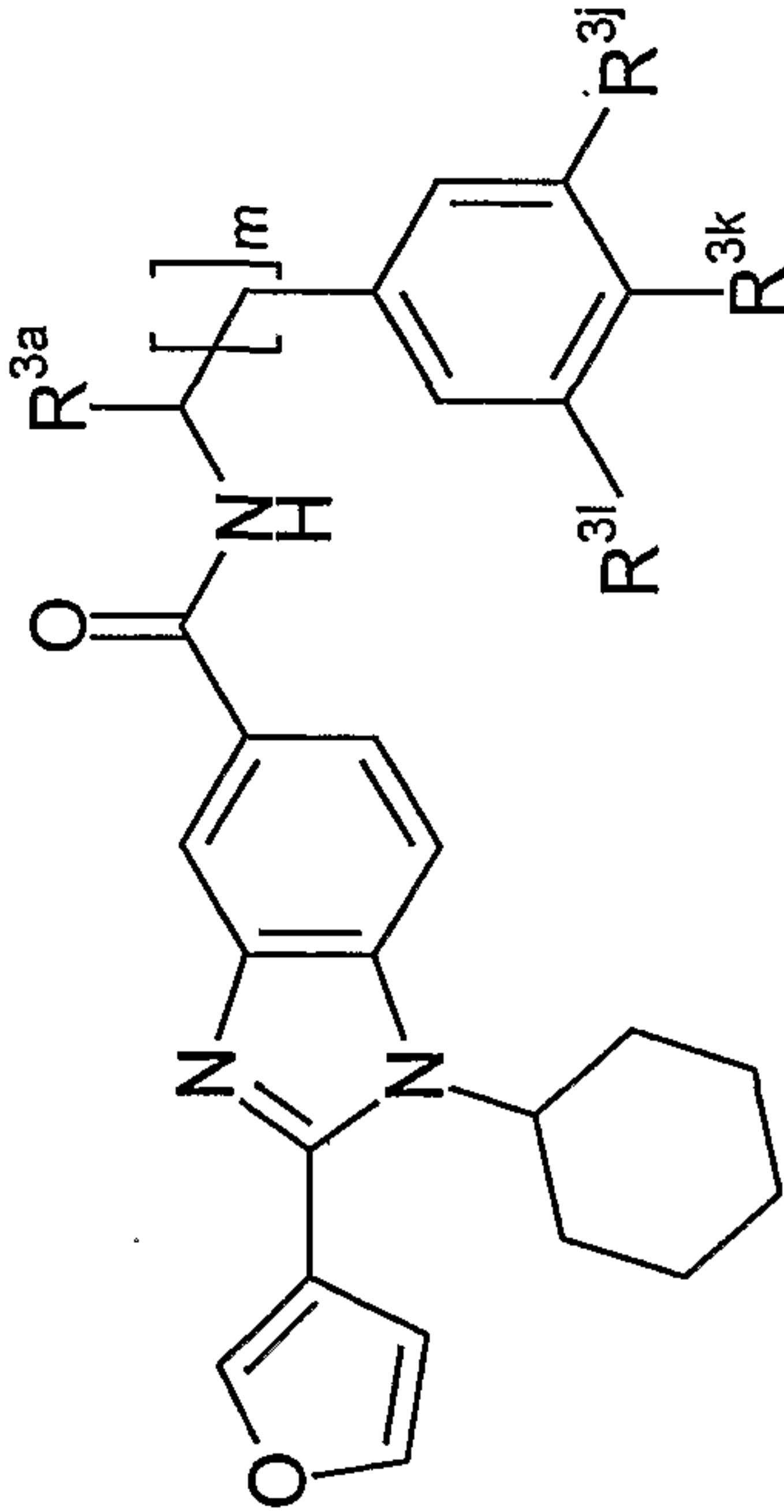
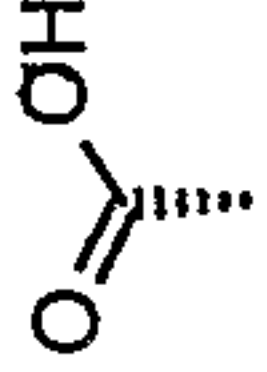
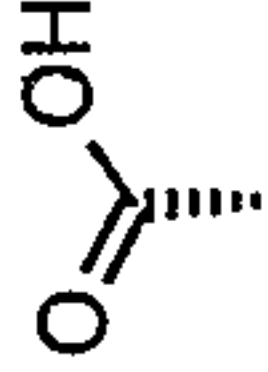
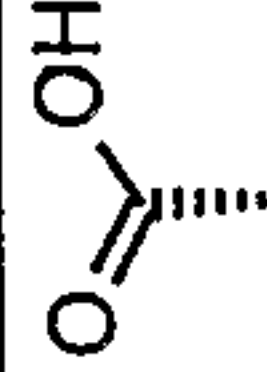
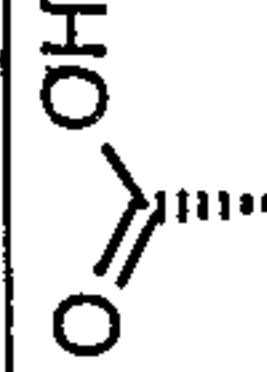
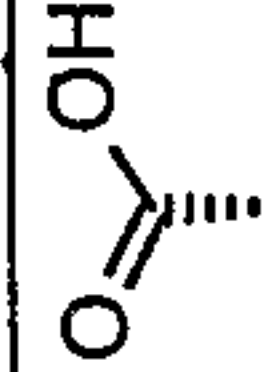
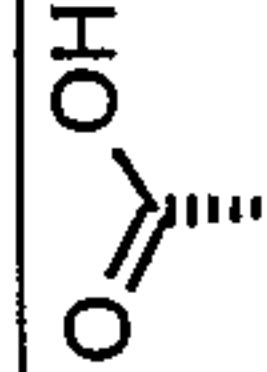
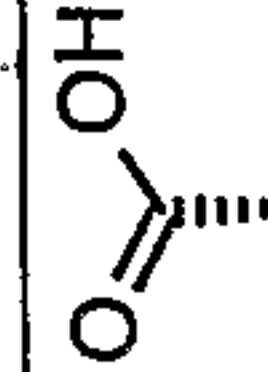
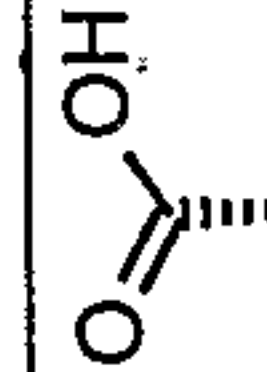
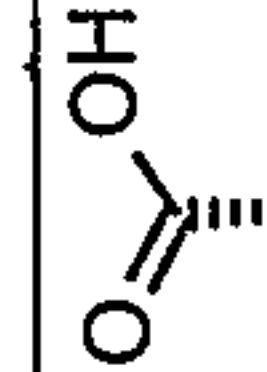
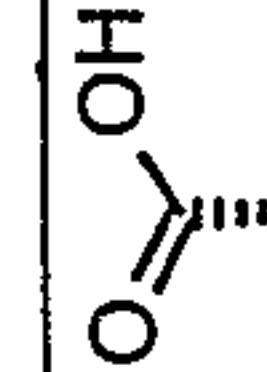
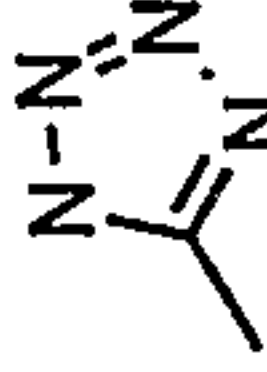
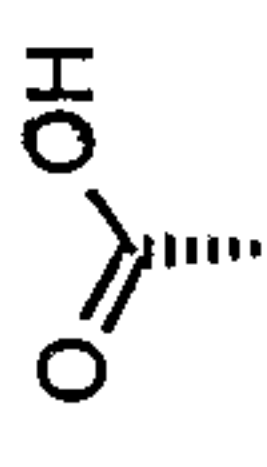
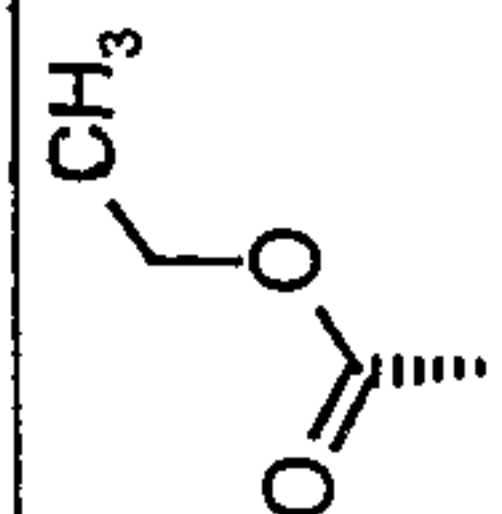
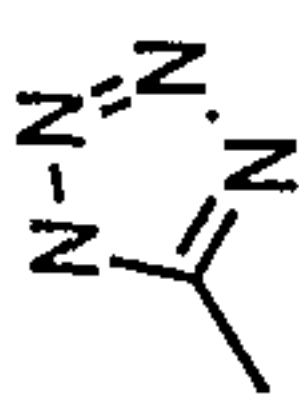
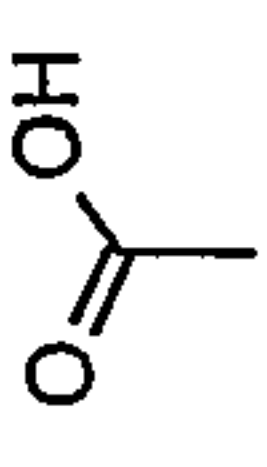
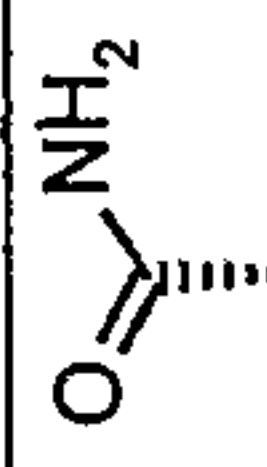
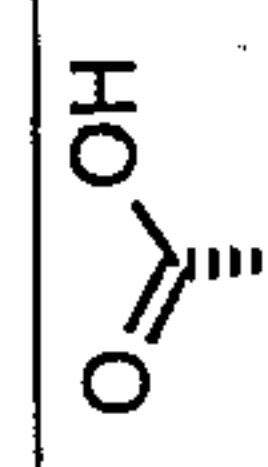
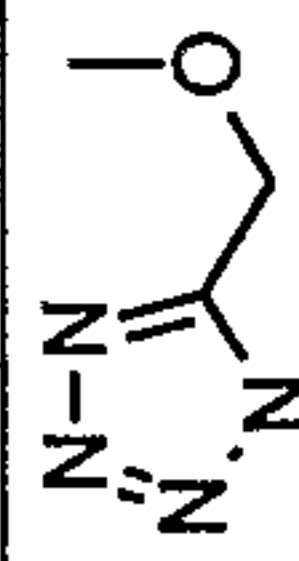
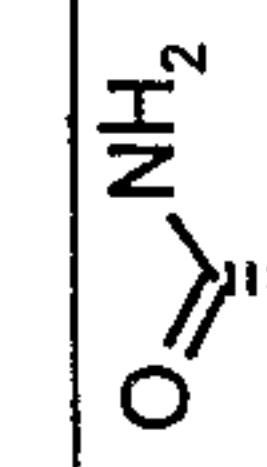
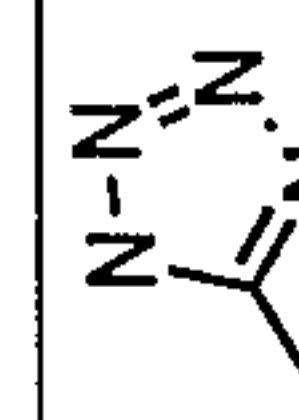
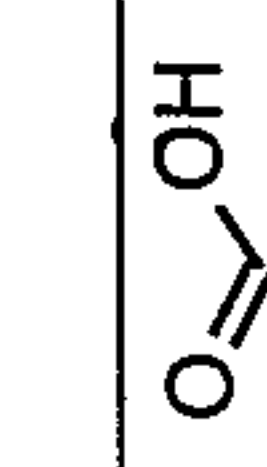
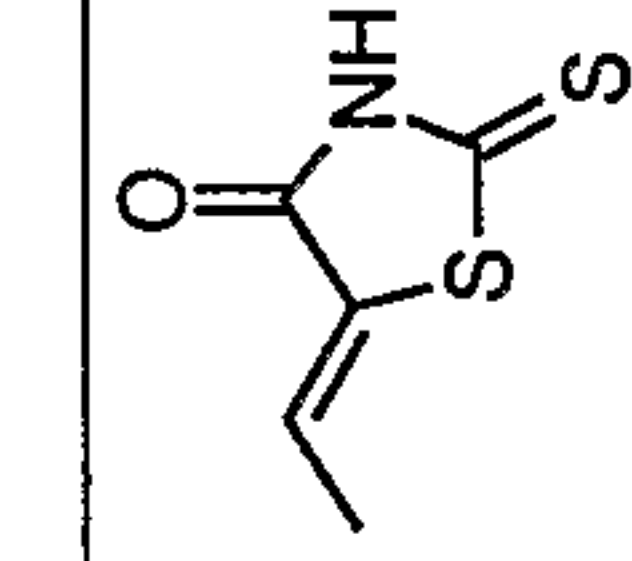
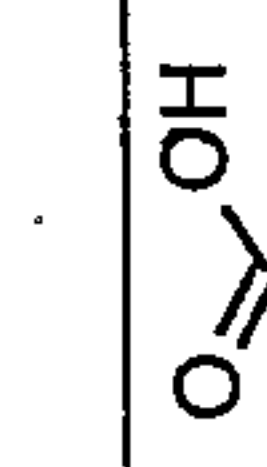
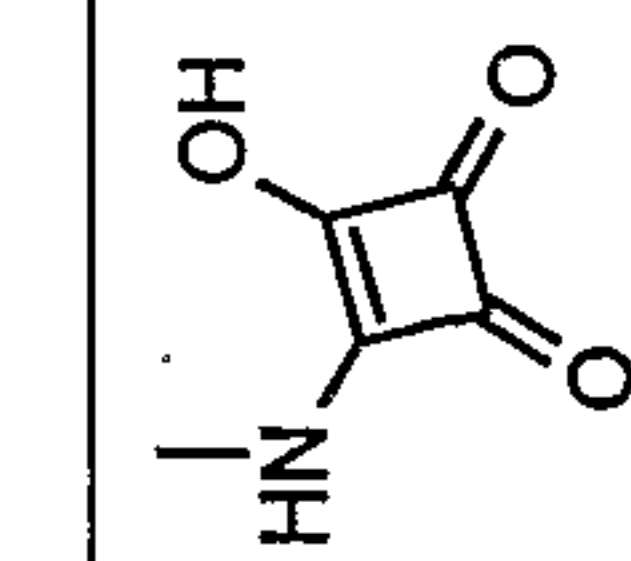
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ¹	m/z
15001	D		563(MH ⁺)
15002	D		562(MH ⁺)
15003	D		551(MH ⁺)

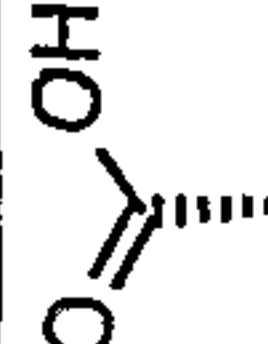
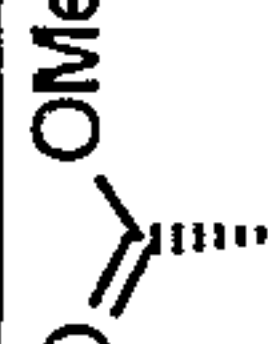
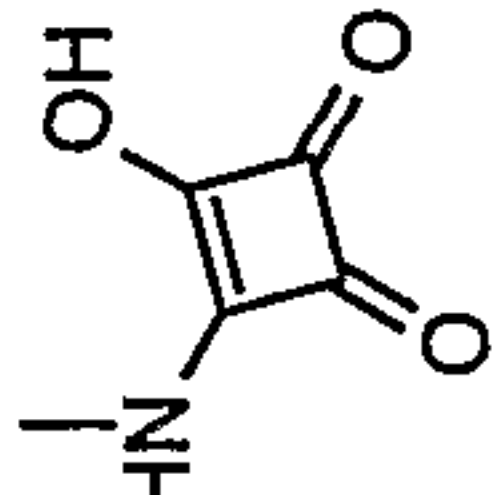
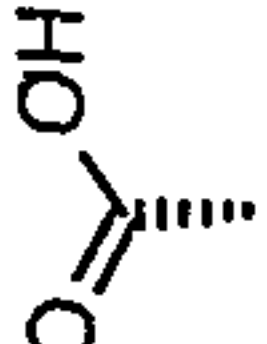
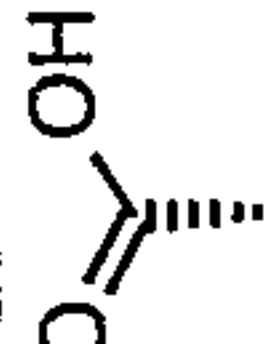
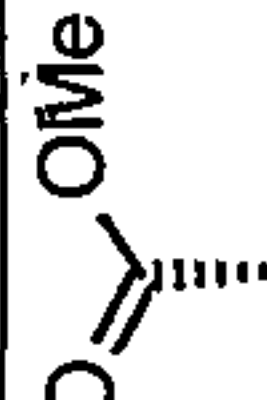
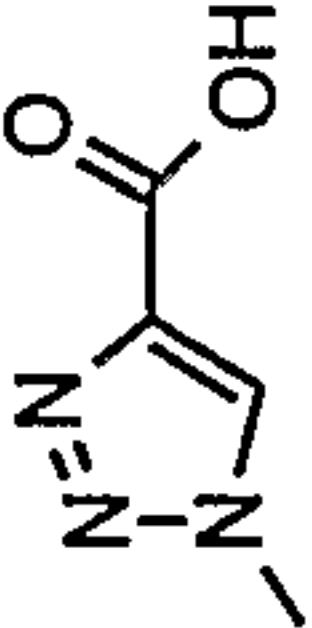
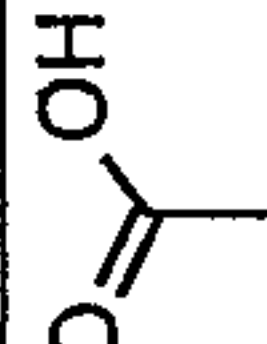
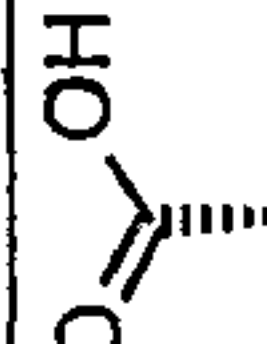
TABLE 16

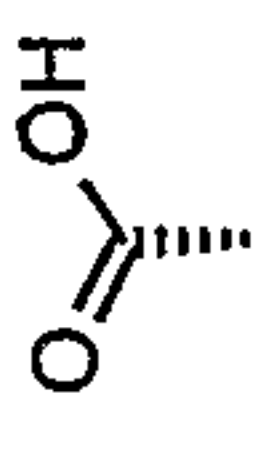
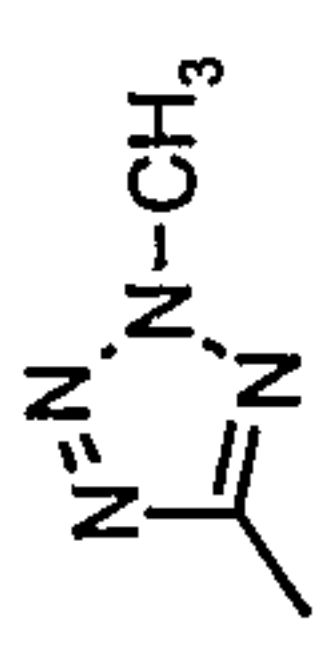
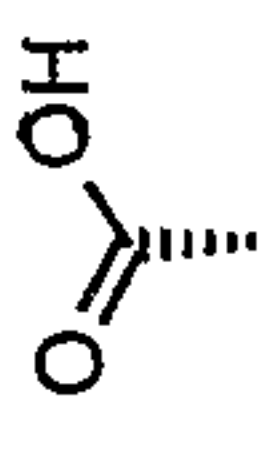
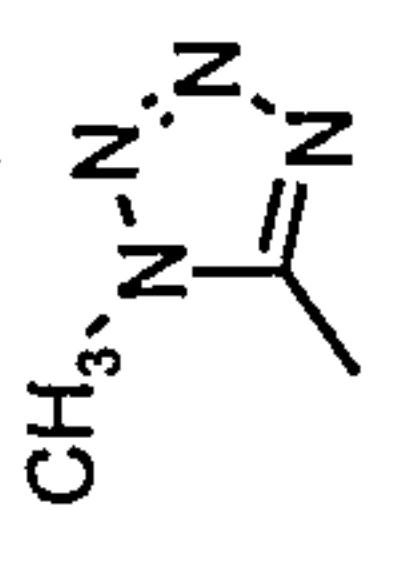
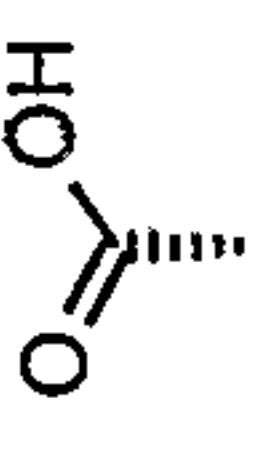
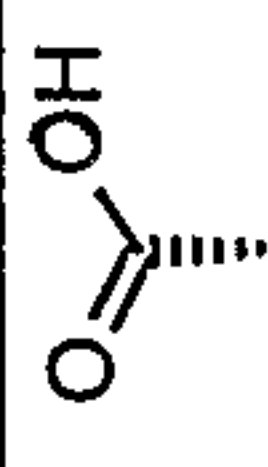
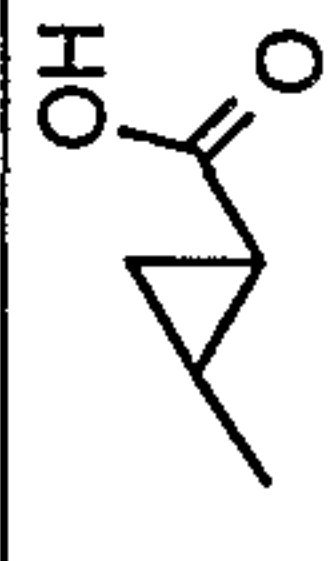
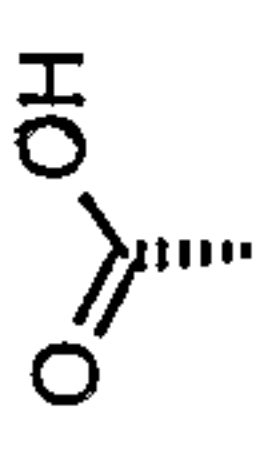
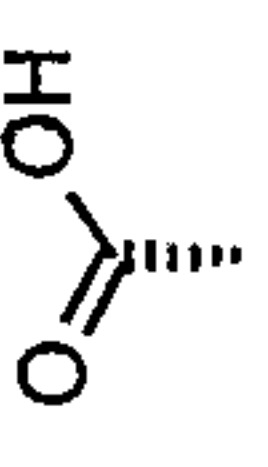
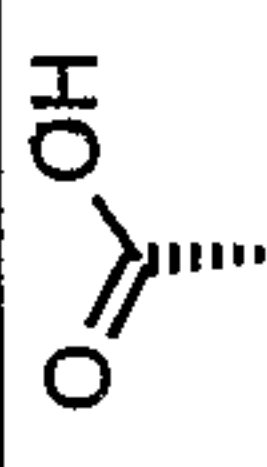
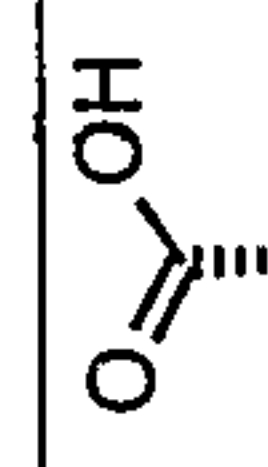
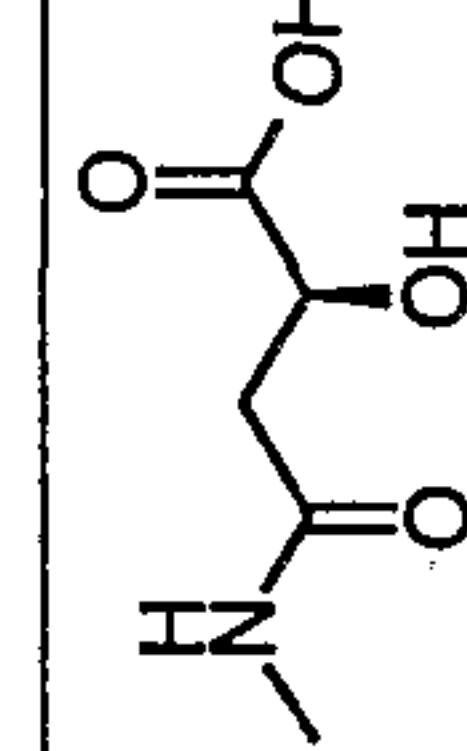


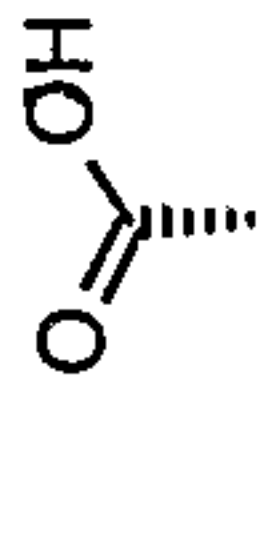
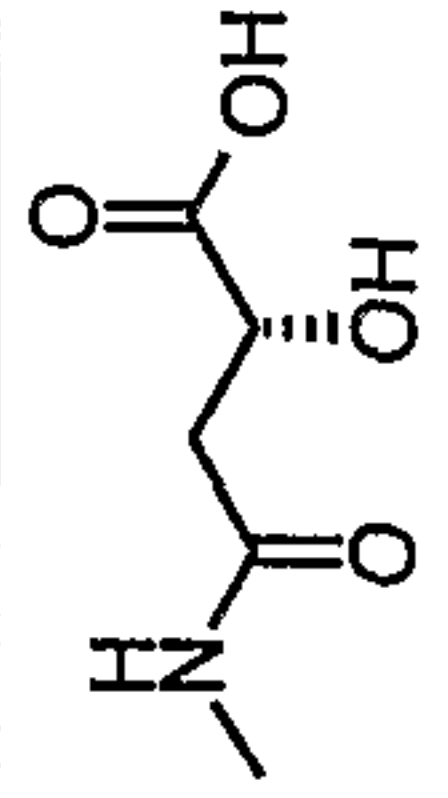
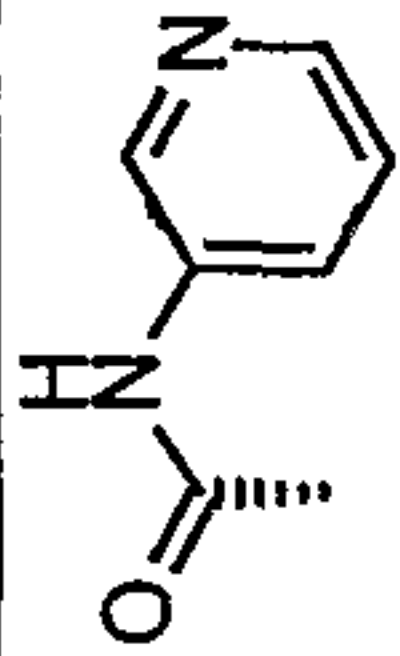
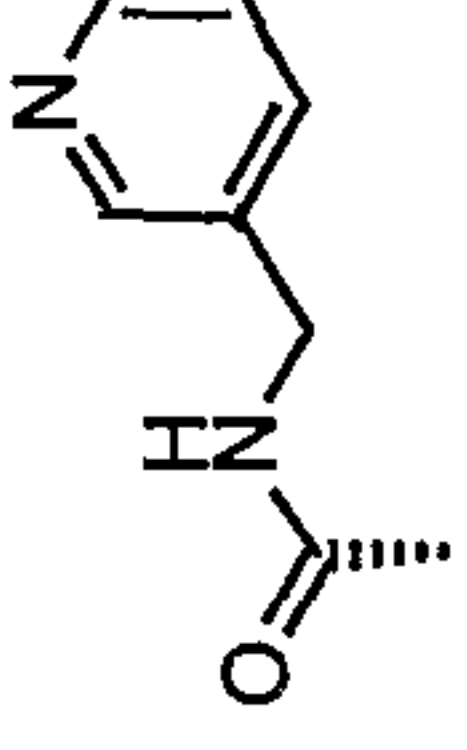
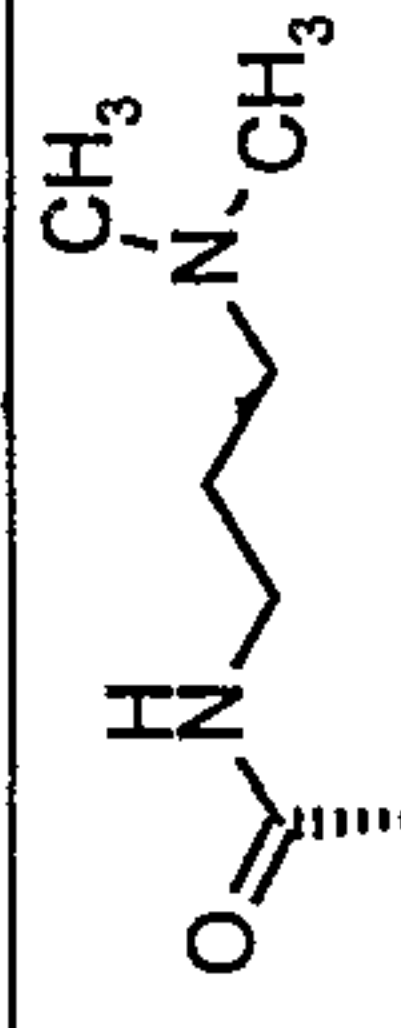
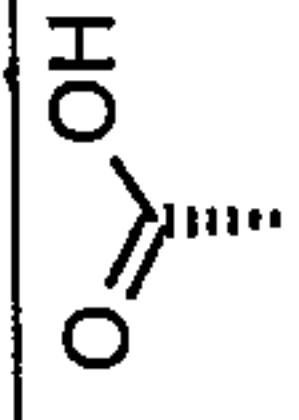
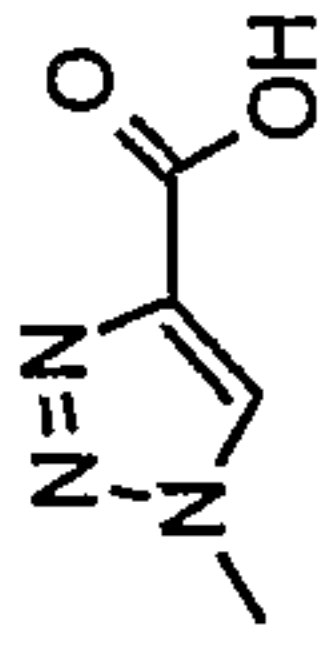
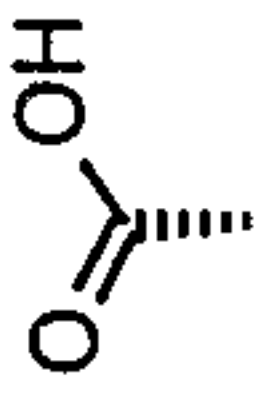
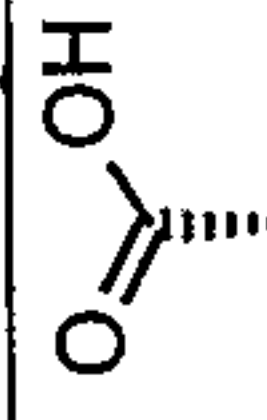
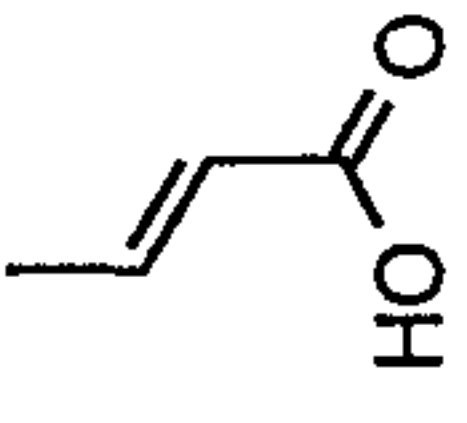
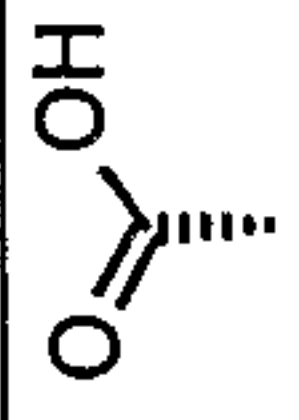
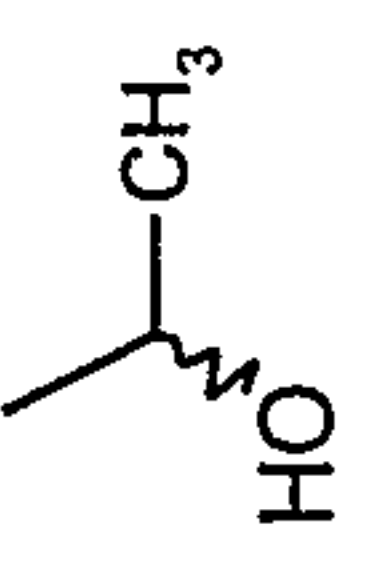
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16001	D		H	OH	H	0	460(MH ⁺)
16002	D		H	CH ₂ COOH	H	1	516(MH ⁺)
16003	D		H	NH ₂	H	1	473(MH ⁺)
16004	D		OMe	OMe	H	0	504(MH ⁺)
16005	D	H	OMe	OMe	H	0	460(MH ⁺)
16006	D		OMe	OMe	H	0	504(MH ⁺)
16007	D		OMe	OMe	H	1	518(MH ⁺)

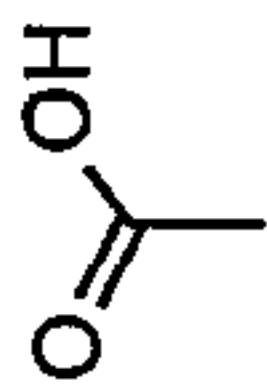
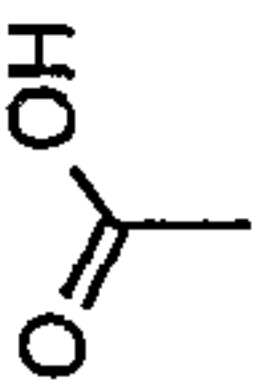
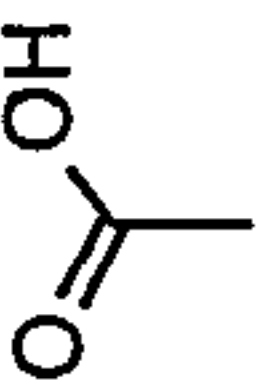
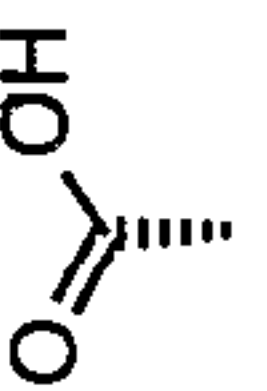
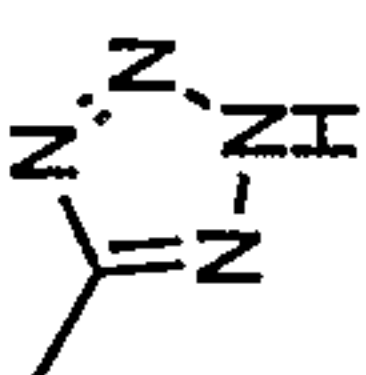
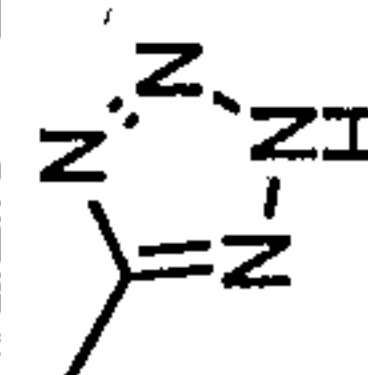
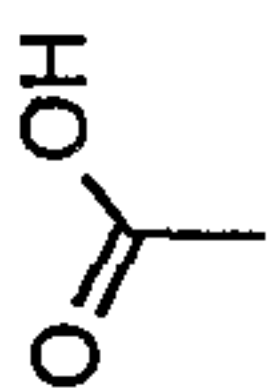
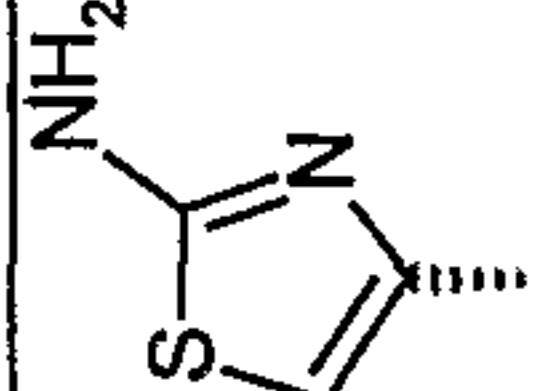
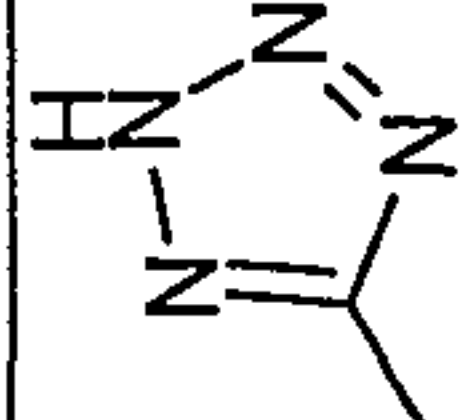
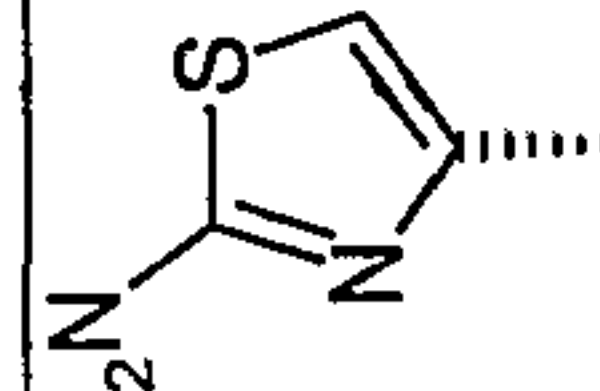
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16008	D		H	OH	H	1	474(MH ⁺)
16009	D		H	NHCOCOOH	H	1	545(MH ⁺)
16010	D		H	NHCH ₂ COOH	H	1	531(MH ⁺)
16011	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1	532(MH ⁺)
16012	D		H	COOH	H	1	502(MH ⁺)
16013	D		H	OH	H	2	488(MH ⁺)
16014	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	2	546(MH ⁺)
16015	D		OH	OH	H	1	490(MH ⁺)
16016	D		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	0	518(MH ⁺)
16017	D		H		H	1	526(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16018	D		H	OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	H	1	560(MH ⁺)
16019	D		H		H	1	554(MH ⁺)
16020	D		H	H	OCH ₂ COOH	1	532(MH ⁺)
16021	D		H	OH	H	1	473(MH ⁺)
16022	D		H		H	1	556(MH ⁺)
16023	D		H		H	1	525(MH ⁺)
16024	D		H		H	1	601(MH ⁺)
16025	D		H		H	1	569(MH ⁺)
16026	D		H	NHCONH ₂	H	1	516(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16027	D		H	NHCN	H	1	512(MH ⁺)
16028	D		H	NHCHO	H	1	501(MH ⁺)
16029	D		H		H	1	569(MH ⁺)
16030	D		H	NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	1	605(MH ⁺)
16031	D		H	NHCOCH ₃	H	1	515(MH ⁺)
16032	D		H	NHSO ₂ CH ₃	H	1	551(MH ⁺)
16033	D		H		H	1	583(MH ⁺)
16034	D		CH ₃	OH	CH ₃	1	502(MH ⁺)
16035	D		H	CONH ₂	H	1	501(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16036	D		H		H	1	540(MH ⁺)
16037	D		H		H	1	540(MH ⁺)
16038	D		H	CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	H	1	530(MH ⁺)
16039	D		H		H	1	542(MH ⁺)
16040	D		H		H	1	528(MH ⁺)
16041	D		Br	OH	Br	1	632(MH ⁺)
16042	D		H	O(CH ₂) ₄ COOH	H	1	574(MH ⁺)
16043	D		H	O(CH ₂) ₃ COOH	H	1	560(MH ⁺)
16044	D		H		H	1	589(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16045	D		H		H	1	589(MH ⁺)
16046	D		H	OH	H	1	550(MH ⁺)
16047	D		H	OH	H	1	564(MH ⁺)
16048	D		H	OH	H	1	558(MH ⁺)
16049	D		H			1	569(MH ⁺)
16050	D		H	PO ₄ ⁻	H	1	554(MH ⁺)
16051	D			OMe	H	1	558(MH ⁺)
16052	D			OH	H	1	518(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16053	D		COOH	H	H	1	502(MH ⁺)
16054	D		COOH	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1	576(MH ⁺)
16055	D		Cl	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	1	581(MH ⁺)
16056	D			OH	H	1	542(MH ⁺)
16057	D			H	H	1	526(MH ⁺)
16058	D		COOH	OH	H	1	518(MH ⁺)
16059	D		H		H	1	580(MH ⁺)
16060	D		H	OH	H	1	528(MH ⁺)

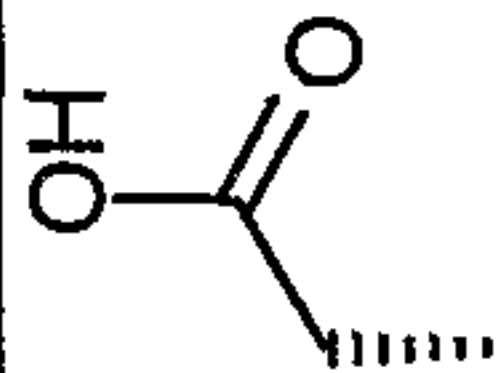
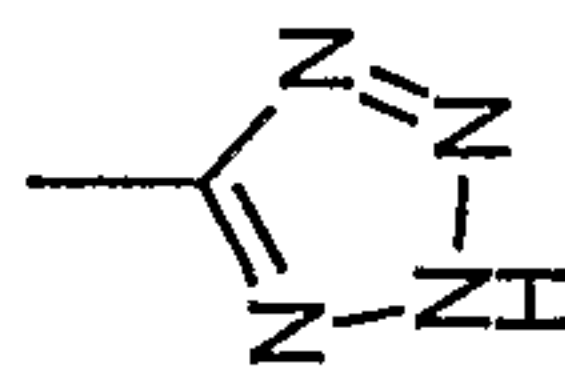
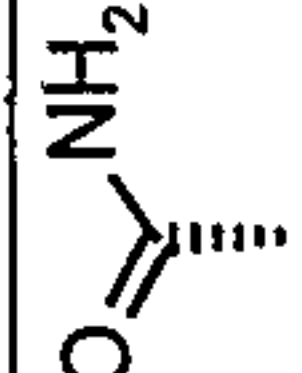
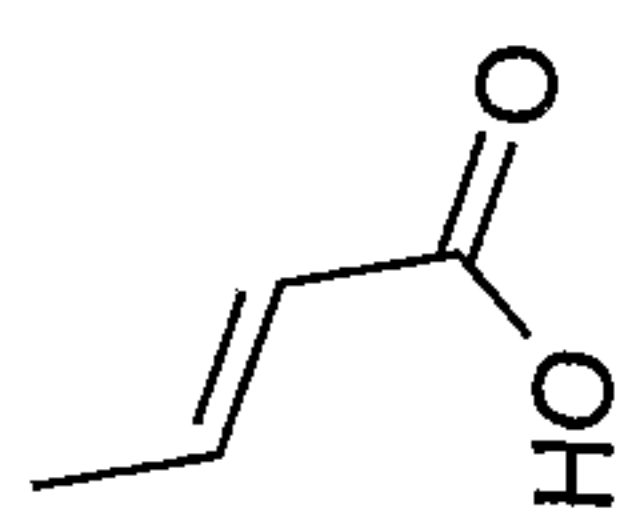
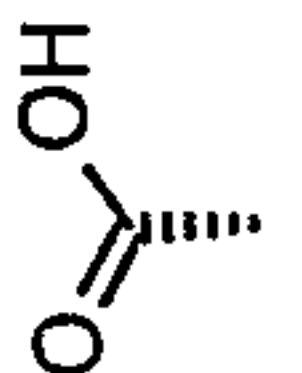
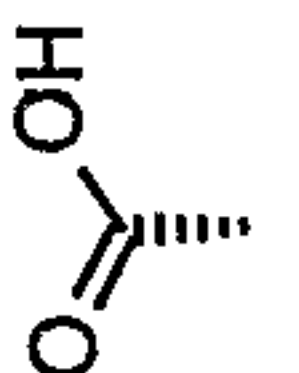
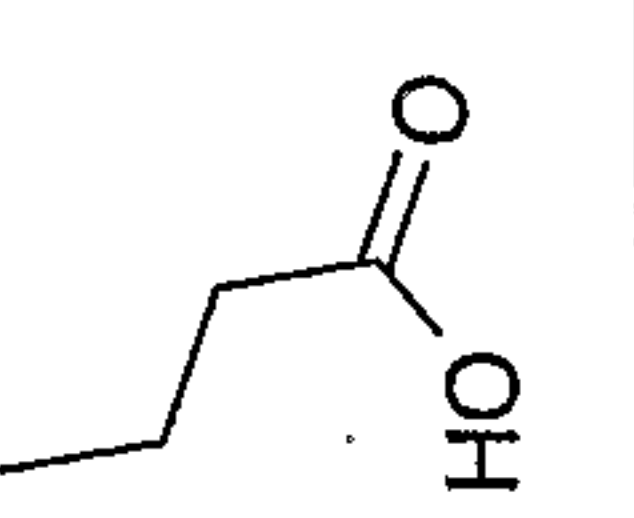
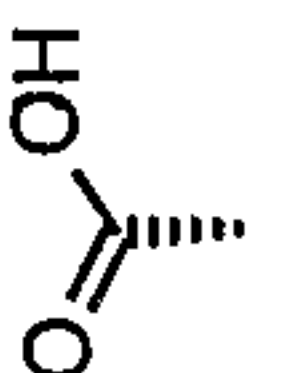
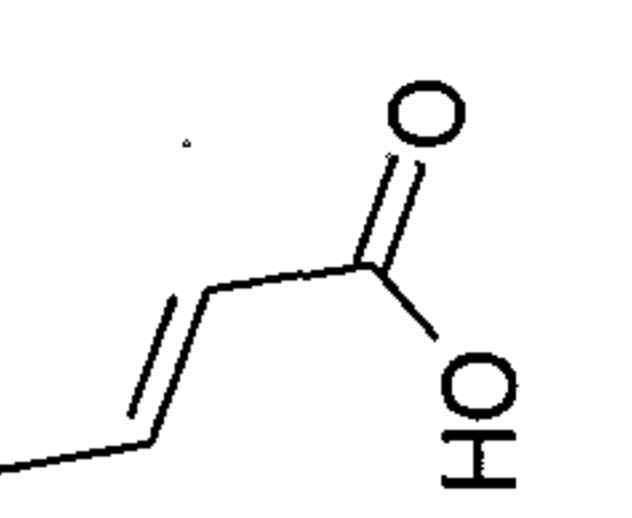
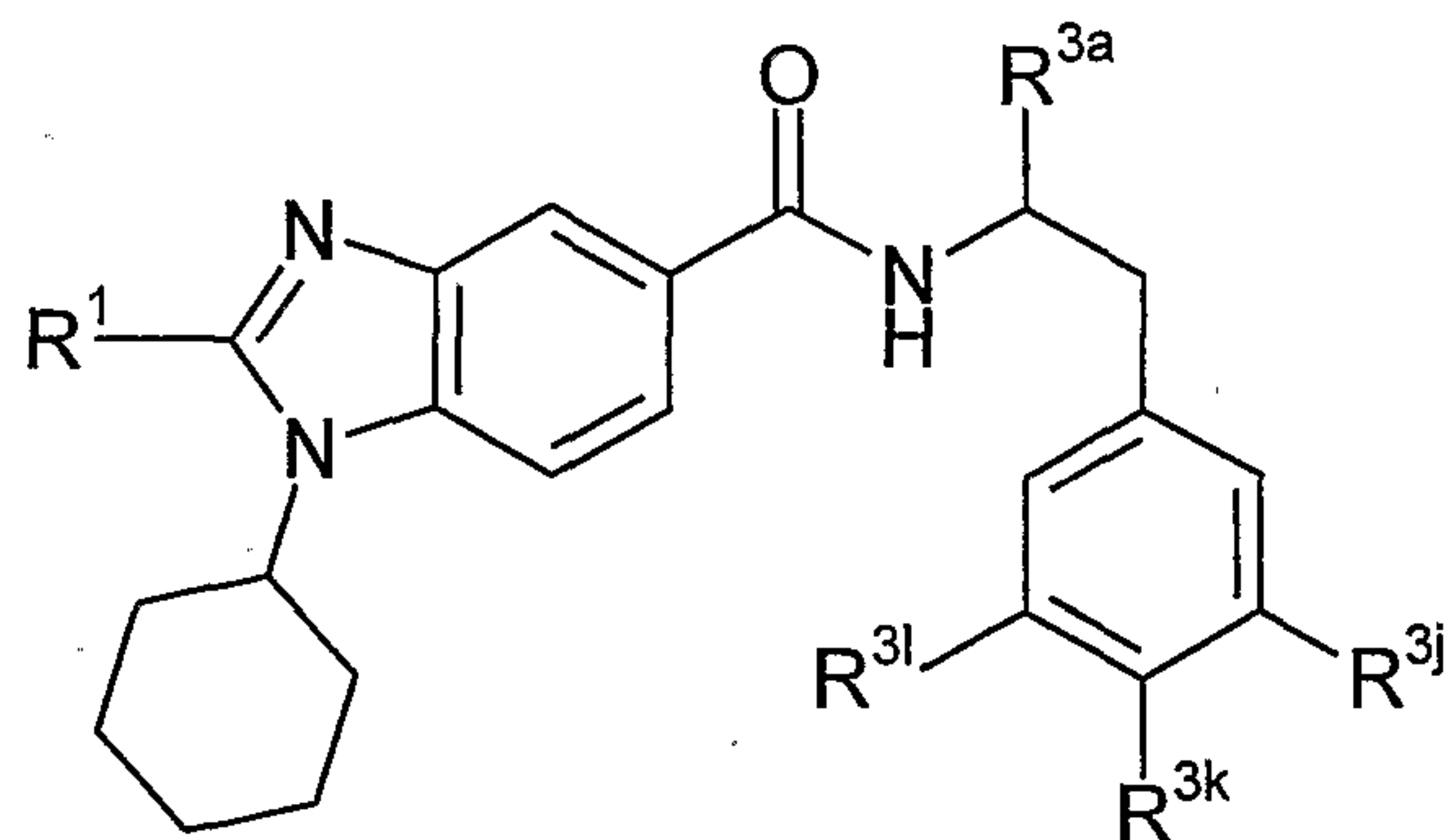
Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m	m/z
16061	D		H		H	1	540(MH ⁺)
16062	D			OH	H	1	543(MH ⁺)
16063	D		N ₃	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1	573(MH ⁺)
16064	D			OH	H	1	544(MH ⁺)
16065	D			OH	H	1	546(MH ⁺)

TABLE 17



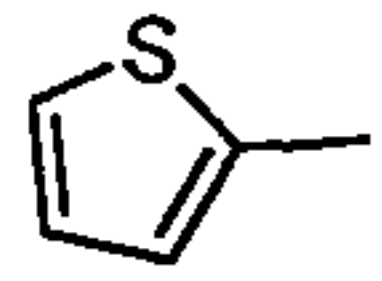
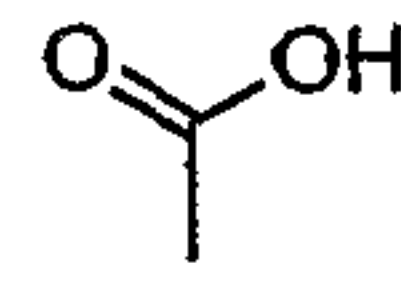
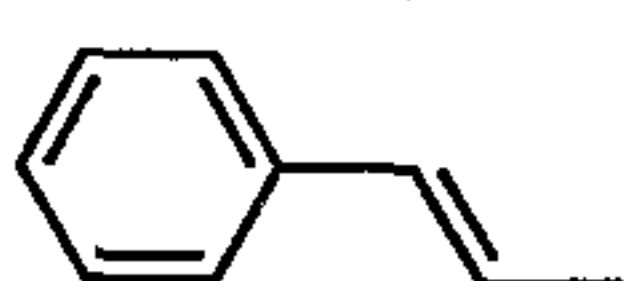
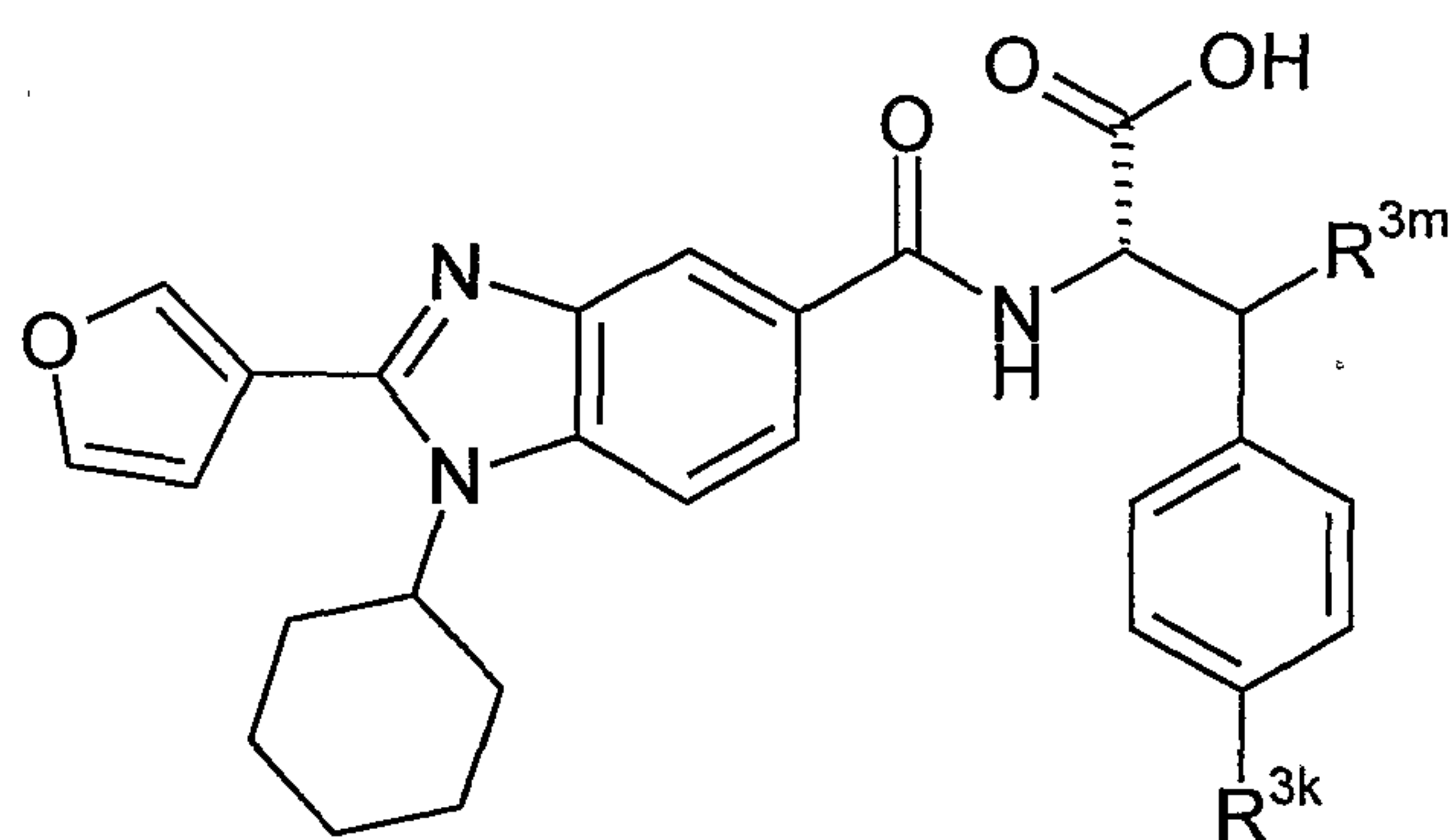
Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R^1	R^{3a}	R^{3j}	R^{3k}	R^{3l}	m/z
17001	D			OMe	OMe	H	520(MH ⁺)
17002	D		H	OMe	OMe	H	451(MH ⁺)

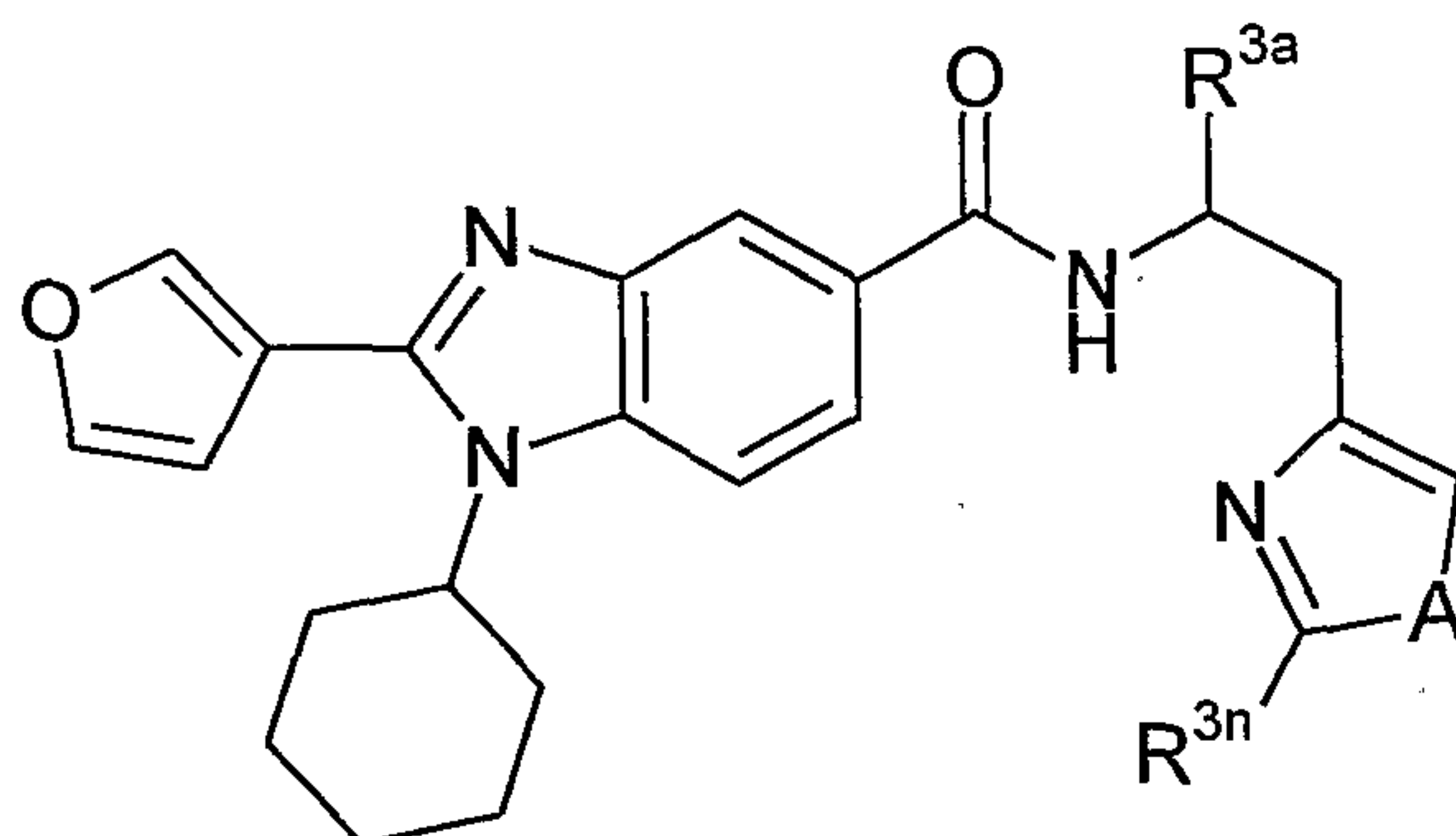
TABLE 18



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3m}	R ^{3k}	m/z
18001	D			542(MH ⁺)
18002	D			542(MH ⁺)

255

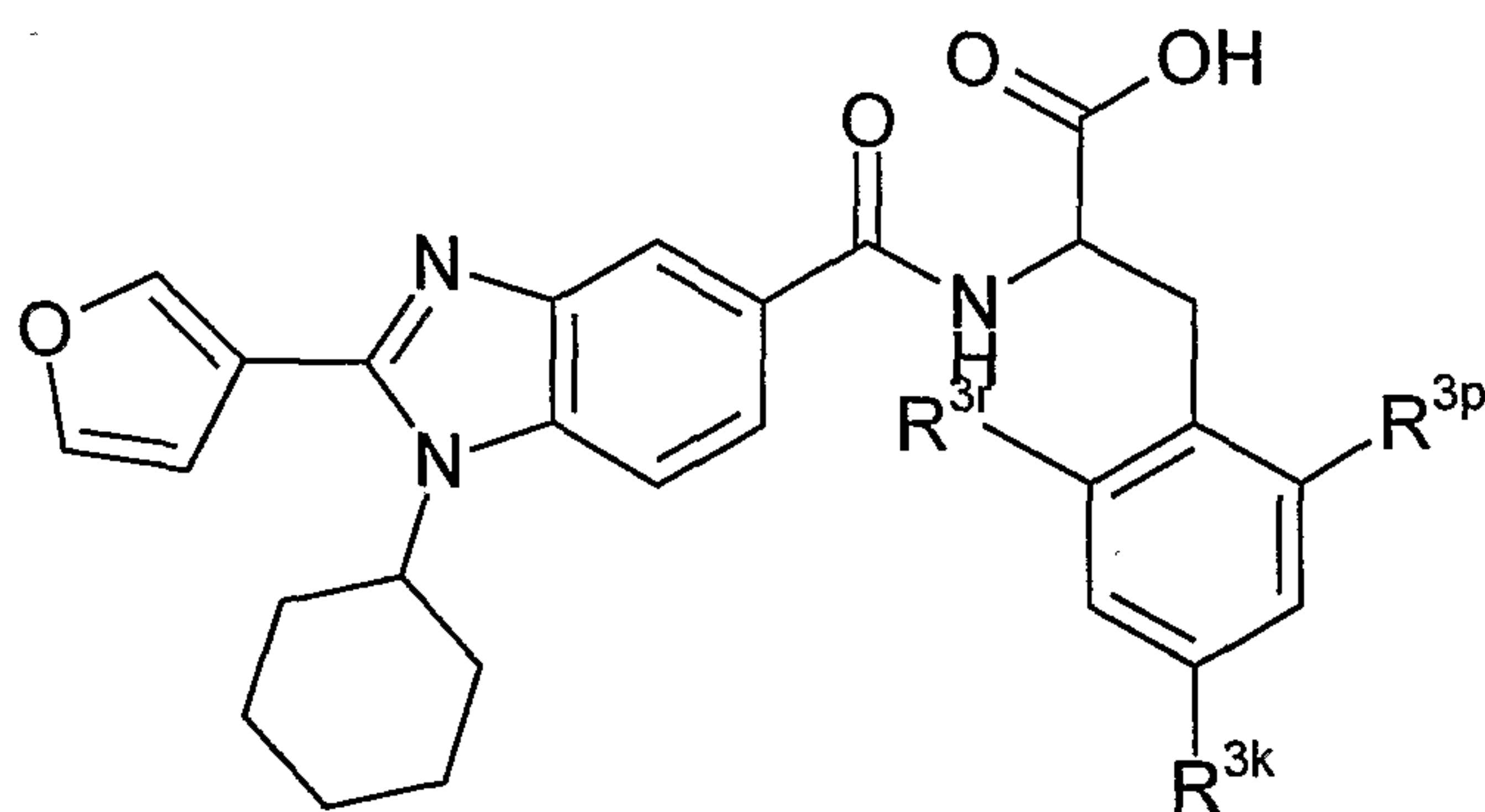
TABLE 19



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3a}	R ³ⁿ	A	m/z
19001	D		H	NCH ₂ COOH	506(MH ⁺)
19002	D		NH ₂	S	586(MH ⁺)

256

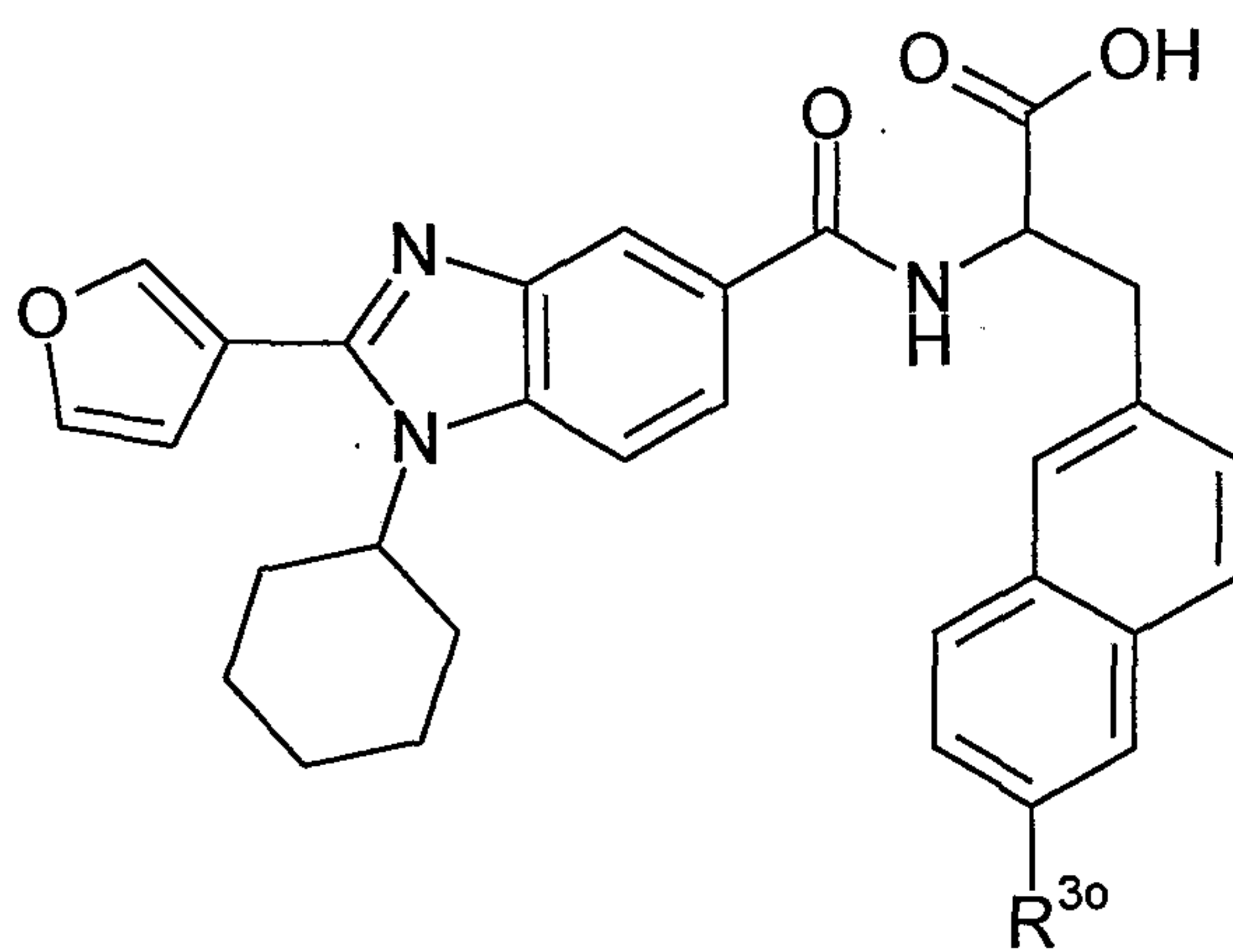
TABLE 20



Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ^{3k}	R ^{3p}	R ^{3r}	m/z
20001	D	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	CH ₃	560(MH ⁺)

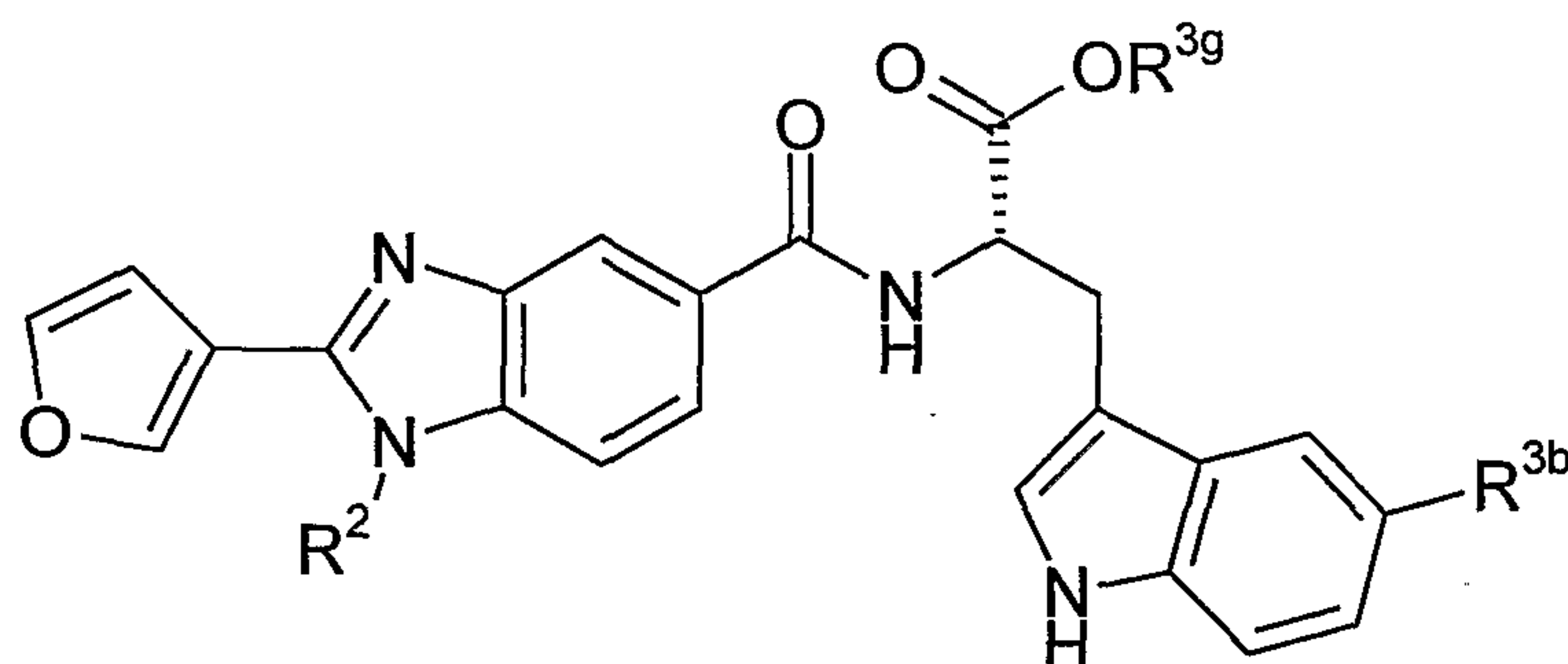
257

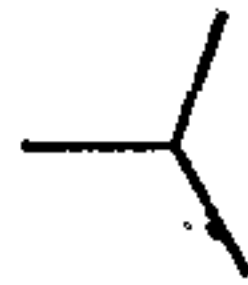
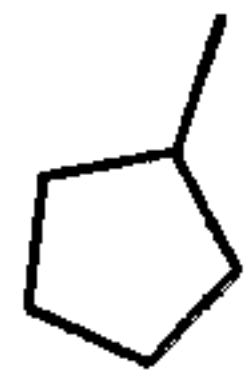
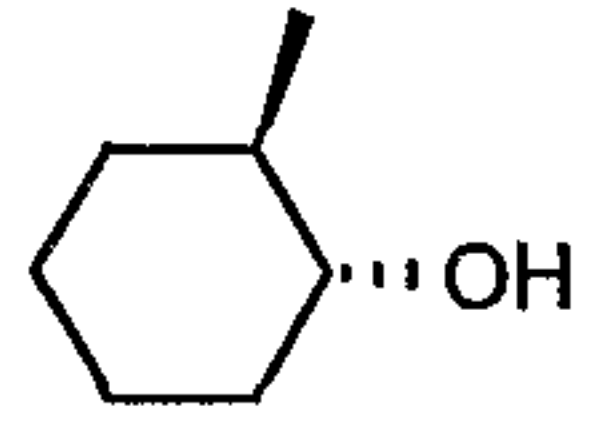
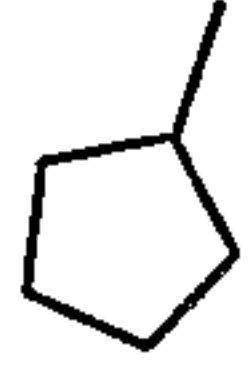
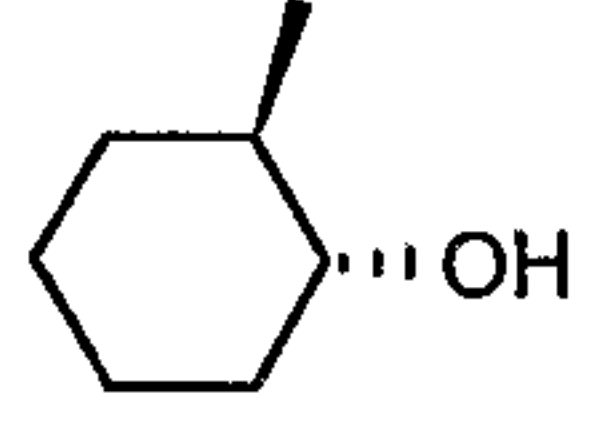
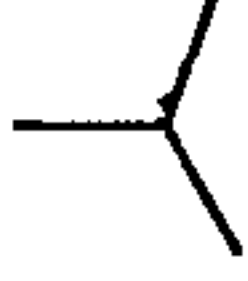
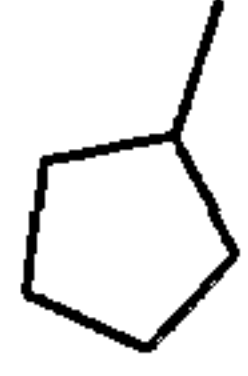
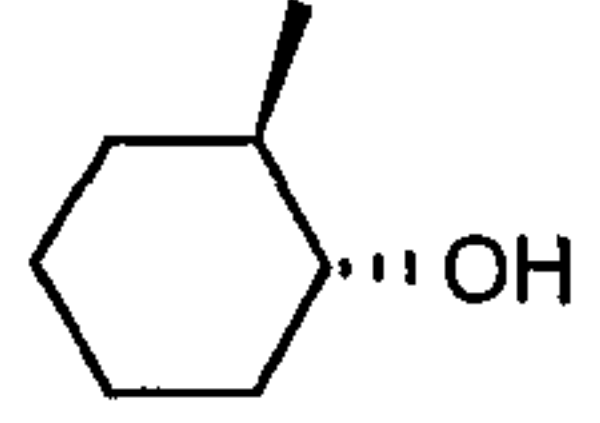
TABLE 21

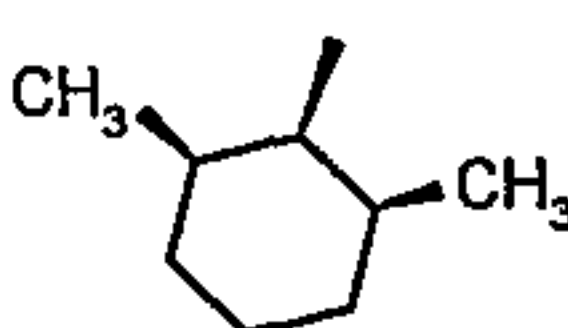
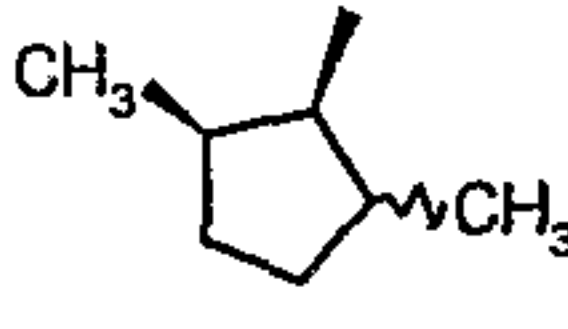
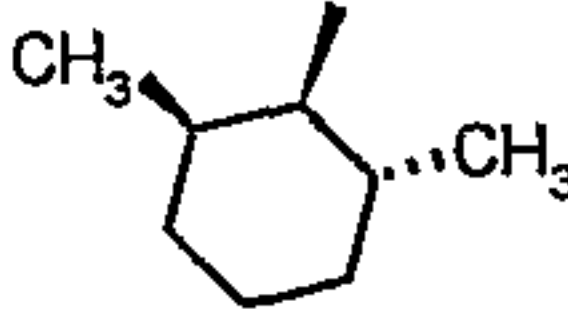
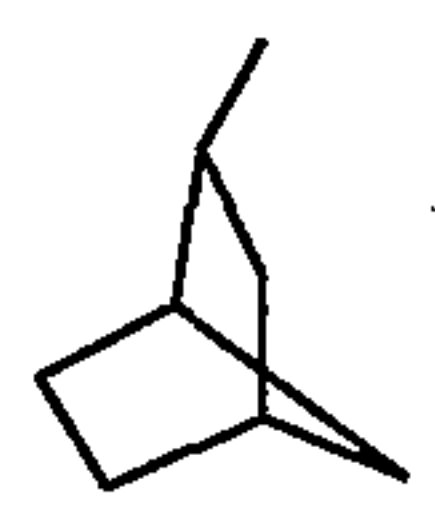
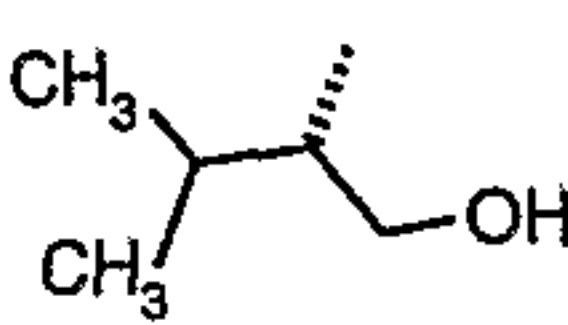
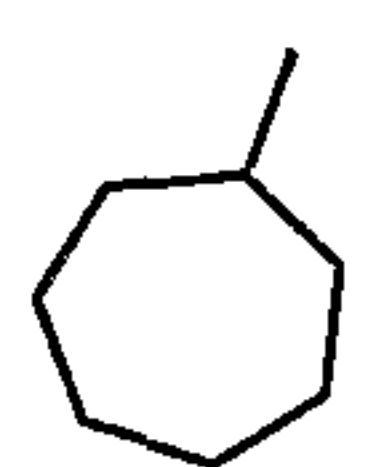
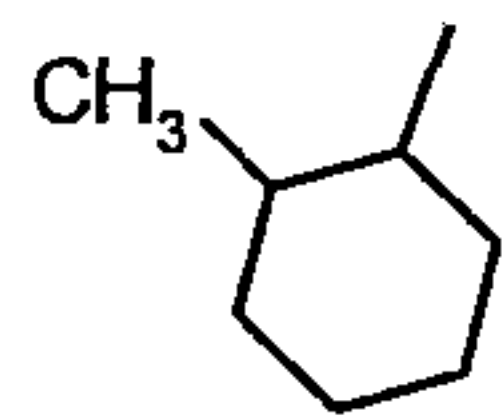
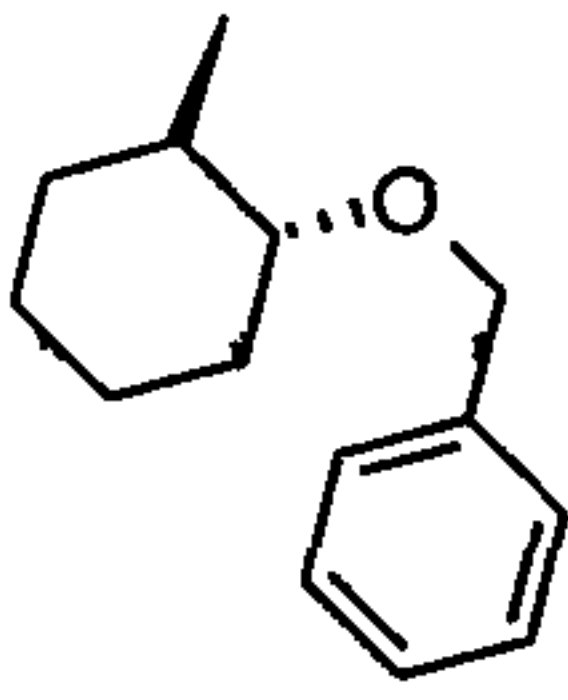
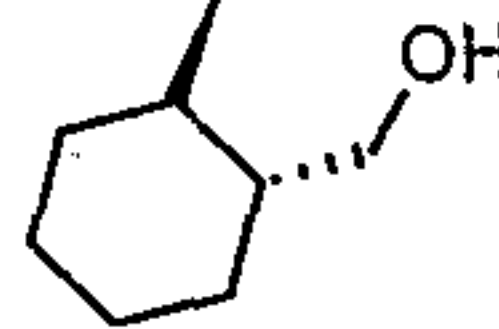


Entry #	IC ₅₀	R ³⁰	m/z
21001	D	OH	524(MH ⁺)
21002	D	OCH ₂ COOH	582(MH ⁺)

TABLE 22



Entry #	IC ₅₀ μM	R ²	R ^{3b}	R ^{3g}	m/z
22001	D		OH	H	573(MH ⁺)
22002	D		OH	H	499(MH ⁺)
22003	D		OH	H	529(MH ⁺)
22004	D		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	571(MH ⁺)
22005	D		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	601(MH ⁺)
22006	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	531(MH ⁺)
22007	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	557(MH ⁺)
22008	D		OCH ₂ COOH	H	587(MH ⁺)
22009	D		OH	H	525(MH ⁺)

Entry #	IC ₅₀ μ M	R ²	R ^{3b}	R ^{3g}	m/z
22010	D		OH	H	541(MH ⁺)
22011	D		OH	H	527(MH ⁺)
22012	D		OH	H	541(MH ⁺)
22013	D		OH	H	525(MH ⁺)
22014	D		OH	H	517(MH ⁺)
22015	D		OH	H	485(MH ⁺)
22016	D		OH	H	527(MH ⁺)
22017	D		OH	H	527(MH ⁺)
22018	D		OH	H	619(MH ⁺)
22019	D		OH	H	543(MH ⁺)
22020	D		OH	H	485(MH ⁺)
22021	D		OH	H	527(MH ⁺)

260

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM (CANADA) LTD.

5 <120> VIRAL POLYMERASE INHIBITORS

<130> 13/079

<150> 60/216,084

10 <151> 2000-07-06

<150> 60/274,374

<151> 2001-03-08

15 <150> 60/281,434

<151> 2001-04-02

<160> 1

20 <170> FastSEQ for Windows Version 4.0

<210> 1

<211> 621

<212> PRT

25 <213> Hepatitis C Virus

<400> 1

	Met	Ser	Tyr	Tyr	His	His	His	His	His	His	Asp	Tyr	Asp	Ile	Pro	Thr	
	1				5					10				15			
30	Thr	Glu	Asn	Leu	Tyr	Phe	Gln	Gly	Ala	Met	Asp	Pro	Glu	Phe	Ser	Met	
				20					25					30			
	Ser	Tyr	Thr	Trp	Thr	Gly	Ala	Leu	Ile	Thr	Pro	Cys	Ala	Ala	Glu	Glu	
			35					40					45				
	Ser	Gln	Leu	Pro	Ile	Asn	Ala	Leu	Ser	Asn	Ser	Leu	Val	Arg	His	Arg	
35		50				55						60					
	Asn	Met	Val	Tyr	Ser	Thr	Thr	Ser	Arg	Ser	Ala	Ala	Leu	Arg	Gln	Lys	
	65					70					75				80		
	Lys	Val	Thr	Phe	Asp	Arg	Leu	Gln	Val	Leu	Asp	Asp	His	Tyr	Arg	Asp	
					85					90					95		
40	Val	Leu	Lys	Glu	Met	Lys	Ala	Lys	Ala	Ser	Thr	Val	Lys	Ala	Lys	Leu	
				100					105					110			
	Leu	Ser	Val	Glu	Glu	Ala	Cys	Lys	Leu	Thr	Pro	Pro	His	Ser	Ala	Lys	
			115					120					125				
	Ser	Lys	Phe	Gly	Tyr	Gly	Ala	Lys	Asp	Val	Arg	Asn	Leu	Ser	Ser	Lys	
45		130					135					140					
	Ala	Val	Asp	His	Ile	Arg	Ser	Val	Trp	Lys	Asp	Leu	Leu	Glu	Asp	Thr	
	145				150						155				160		
	Glu	Thr	Pro	Ile	Asp	Thr	Thr	Ile	Met	Ala	Lys	Asn	Glu	Val	Phe	Cys	
				165					170						175		
50	Val	Gln	Pro	Glu	Lys	Gly	Gly	Arg	Lys	Pro	Ala	Arg	Leu	Ile	Val	Phe	
				180					185					190			
	Pro	Asp	Leu	Gly	Val	Arg	Val	Cys	Glu	Lys	Met	Ala	Leu	Tyr	Asp	Val	
			195					200					205				
	Val	Ser	Thr	Leu	Pro	Gln	Ala	Val	Met	Gly	Ser	Ser	Tyr	Gly	Phe	Gln	
55		210				215						220					

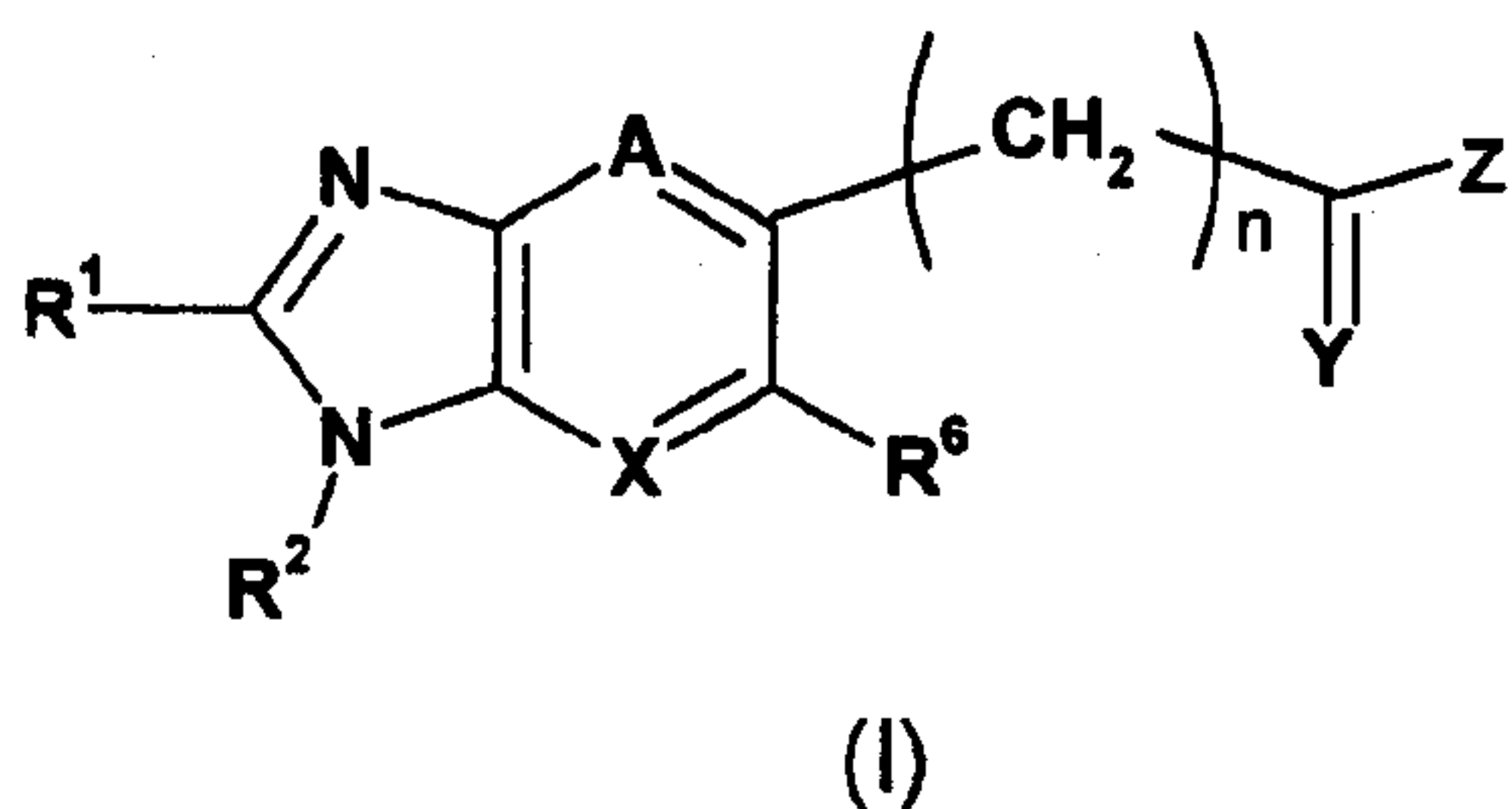
261

	Tyr	Ser	Pro	Lys	Gln	Arg	Val	Glu	Phe	Leu	Val	Asn	Ala	Trp	Lys	Ser
	225					230					235					240
	Lys	Lys	Cys	Pro	Met	Gly	Phe	Ser	Tyr	Asp	Thr	Arg	Cys	Phe	Asp	Ser
					245					250					255	
5	Thr	Val	Thr	Glu	Ser	Asp	Ile	Arg	Val	Glu	Glu	Ser	Ile	Tyr	Gln	Cys
				260					265					270		
	Cys	Asp	Leu	Ala	Pro	Glu	Ala	Arg	Gln	Ala	Ile	Lys	Ser	Leu	Thr	Glu
			275					280					285			
	Arg	Leu	Tyr	Ile	Gly	Gly	Pro	Leu	Thr	Asn	Ser	Lys	Gly	Gln	Asn	Cys
10		290					295					300				
	Gly	Tyr	Arg	Arg	Cys	Arg	Ala	Ser	Gly	Val	Leu	Thr	Thr	Ser	Cys	Gly
	305					310					315					320
	Asn	Thr	Leu	Thr	Cys	Tyr	Leu	Lys	Ala	Ser	Ala	Ala	Cys	Arg	Ala	Ala
					325					330					335	
15	Lys	Leu	Gln	Asp	Cys	Thr	Met	Leu	Val	Asn	Gly	Asp	Asp	Leu	Val	Val
				340					345					350		
	Ile	Cys	Glu	Ser	Ala	Gly	Thr	Gln	Glu	Asp	Ala	Ala	Asn	Leu	Arg	Val
			355					360					365			
	Phe	Thr	Glu	Ala	Met	Thr	Arg	Tyr	Ser	Ala	Pro	Pro	Gly	Asp	Leu	Pro
20		370					375					380				
	Gln	Pro	Glu	Tyr	Asp	Leu	Glu	Leu	Ile	Thr	Ser	Cys	Ser	Ser	Asn	Val
	385					390					395					400
	Ser	Val	Ala	His	Asp	Ala	Ser	Gly	Lys	Arg	Val	Tyr	Tyr	Leu	Thr	Arg
				405						410					415	
25	Asp	Pro	Thr	Thr	Pro	Leu	Ala	Arg	Ala	Ala	Trp	Glu	Thr	Ala	Arg	His
				420					425					430		
	Thr	Pro	Ile	Asn	Ser	Trp	Leu	Gly	Asn	Ile	Ile	Met	Tyr	Ala	Pro	Thr
			435					440					445			
	Leu	Trp	Ala	Arg	Met	Val	Leu	Met	Thr	His	Phe	Phe	Ser	Ile	Leu	Leu
30		450					455					460				
	Ala	Gln	Glu	Gln	Leu	Glu	Lys	Ala	Leu	Asp	Cys	Gln	Ile	Tyr	Gly	Ala
	465					470					475					480
	Cys	Tyr	Ser	Ile	Glu	Pro	Leu	Asp	Leu	Pro	Gln	Ile	Ile	Glu	Arg	Leu
					485					490					495	
35	His	Gly	Leu	Ser	Ala	Phe	Ser	Leu	His	Ser	Tyr	Ser	Pro	Gly	Glu	Ile
				500					505					510		
	Asn	Arg	Val	Ala	Ser	Cys	Leu	Arg	Lys	Leu	Gly	Val	Pro	Pro	Leu	Arg
			515						520				525			
	Val	Trp	Arg	His	Arg	Ala	Arg	Ser	Val	Arg	Ala	Lys	Leu	Leu	Ser	Gln
40		530					535					540				
	Gly	Gly	Arg	Ala	Ala	Thr	Cys	Gly	Lys	Tyr	Leu	Phe	Asn	Trp	Ala	Val
	545					550					555					560
	Arg	Thr	Lys	Leu	Lys	Leu	Thr	Pro	Ile	Pro	Ala	Ala	Ser	Arg	Leu	Asp
					565					570					575	
45	Leu	Ser	Gly	Trp	Phe	Val	Ala	Gly	Tyr	Asn	Gly	Gly	Asp	Ile	Tyr	His
				580					585					590		
	Ser	Leu	Ser	Arg	Ala	Arg	Pro	Arg	Trp	Phe	Met	Leu	Cys	Leu	Leu	Leu
			595					600					605			
	Leu	Ser	Val	Gly	Val	Gly	Ile	Tyr	Leu	Leu	Pro	Asn	Arg			
50		610					615						620			

262

What is claimed is:

1. A compound of formula I:



wherein:

5 X is CH or N;

Y is O or S;

Z is OH, NH₂, NMeR³, NHR³, OR³ or 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and -O(C₆-10)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH;

A is N, COR⁷ or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆) alkyl and R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl), with the proviso that X and A are not both N;

R⁶ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₆ alkyl) or OR⁷, wherein R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl);

15 R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

20 wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle

263

are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R² is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

R³ is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆)alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

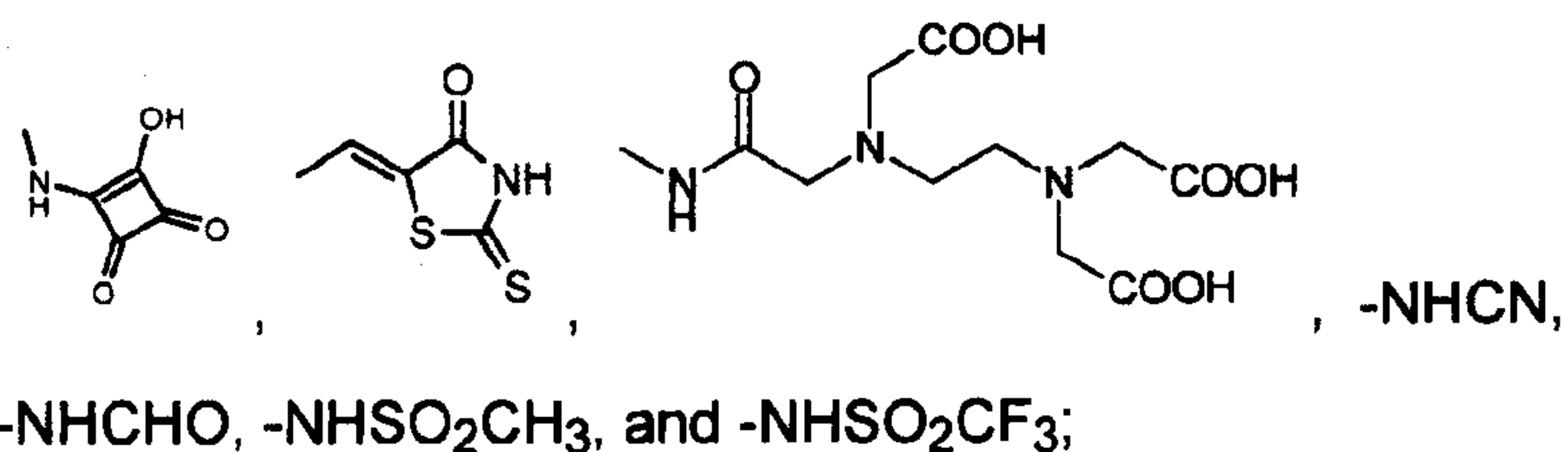
(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, NHCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂,

264

wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$, $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkenyl})\text{COOH}$, tetrazolyl, COOH , $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl, OH , NO_2 , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, $(\text{C}_{1-4})\text{alkoxy}$, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COOH}$, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COO}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONHCH}_3$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-O}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl COOH}$,

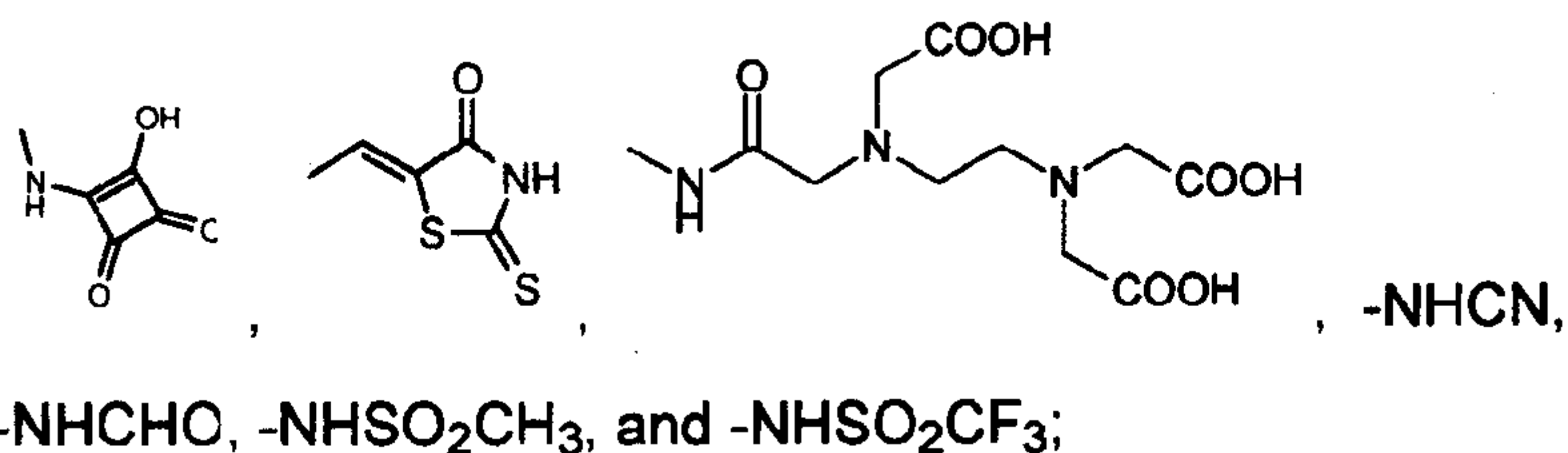


or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are

265

each optionally substituted with 6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$, $-\text{COCH}_3$,
 (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH, $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl,
 5 OH, NO_2 , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea,
 (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COOH}$, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$
 $\text{COO}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONH}_2$,
 $-\text{NHCOCOCONHCH}_3$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-}$
 10 COOH , $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-}$
 COOH , $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-}$
 $(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-O}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$,
 15 $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl COOH}$,



or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are
 20 each optionally substituted with coumarin, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino,
 di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, $\text{C}(\text{halogen})_3$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{acyl}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aroyl}$,
 $-\text{CONHCH}(\text{CH}_2\text{OH})_2$, $-\text{CO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{CO-NH-alanyl}$,

266

-(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl,
 -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)
 alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-pyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-N-
 methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-(COOH)-imidazole,
 5 -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COOH,
 -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COO(C₁₋₆) alkyl,
 -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆) alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆) alkyl-
 CONH-9 or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms
 10 selected from O, N, and S [said heterobicycle being optionally
 substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl
 and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or 6-membered
 heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S [said
 heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents
 15 selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl)
 [said aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4
 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], or
 -O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl; and

n is zero or 1;

20 or salt thereof;

with the proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R¹ is

(C₂₋₁₀)alkyl, (C₃₋₁₀)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R² is not phenyl;

25 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, n=0, and R² is
 cycloalkyl, then R¹ is not 6-phenylbenzofuran-2-yl, alkenyl or 2-hydroxy-

phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=1$, then R^1 is not methyl, ethyl, vinyl or 5-azabenzimidazol-2-yl;

5 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH, $n=0$ or 1, R^1 is heteroaryl or phenyl, then R^2 is not heteroaryl or phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is (C_{1-3}) alkyl, substituted with COOH, COOalkyl or tetrazol-5-yl, and further substituted with aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$ or 1, and R^1 is (C_{2-10}) alkyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R^2 is not optionally substituted phenyl;

10 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is $NMeR^3$ or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl or aryl, then R^1 is not a substituted 2-benzofuryl group;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not a substituted benzofuryl group or benzofuran-2-yl;

15 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, heteroaryl or alkyl;

20 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heterocycle], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 3,4-dialkoxyphenyl, 3,4-dialkoxyphenylphenylene or 3,4-dialkoxyphenylalkylene;

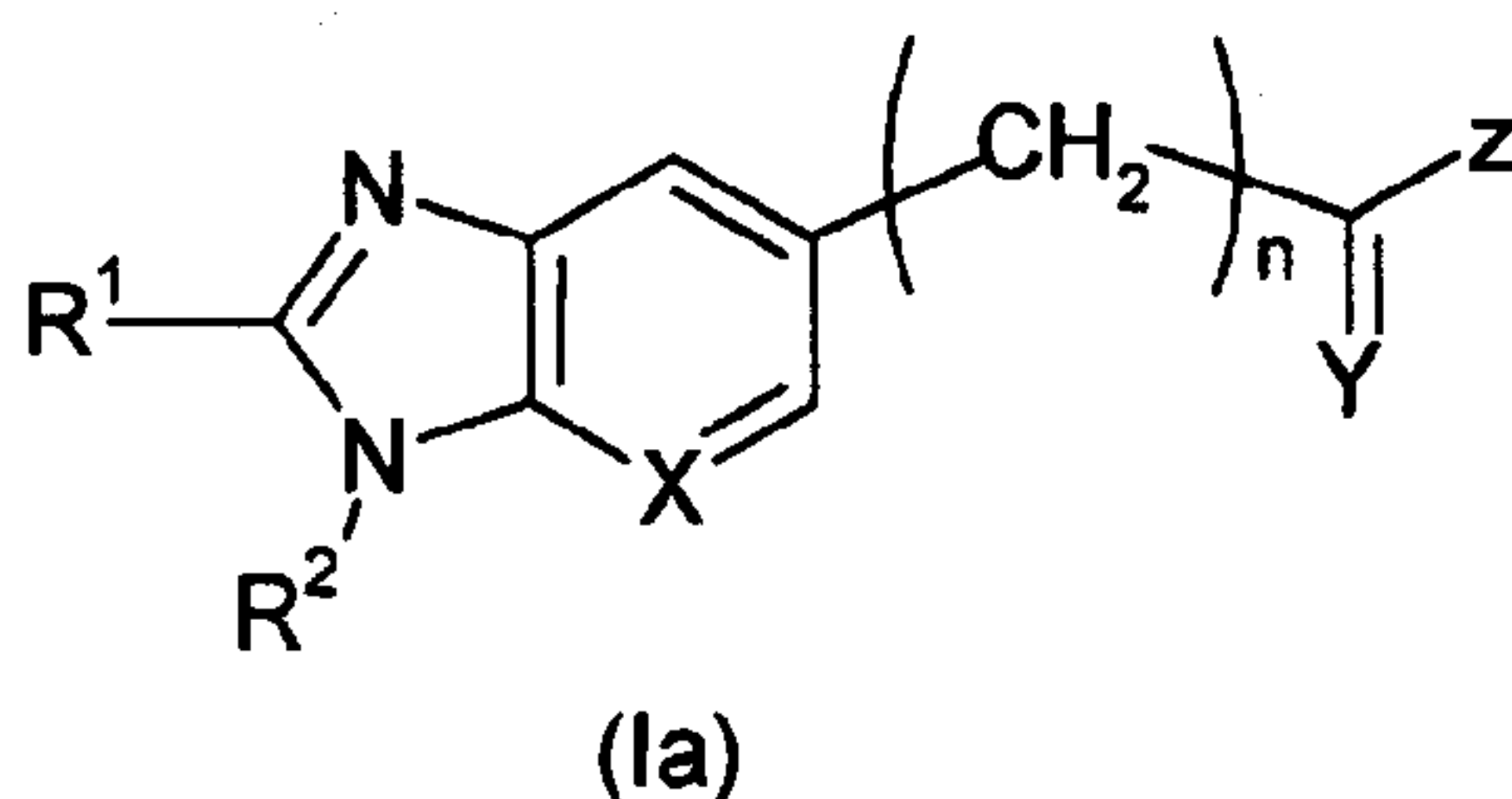
25 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, allyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, phenyl or benzyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not tetrazolyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is

268

thiazolyl], $n=1$, and R^2 is (C_{3-7}) cycloalkyl, phenyl or heteroaryl, then R^1 is not phenyl, phenyl (C_{2-4}) alkenyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, (C_{1-8}) alkyl, (C_{2-6}) alkenyl, or (C_{3-7}) cycloalkyl.

5 2. A compound of formula Ia:



wherein:

X is CH or N;

10 Y is O or S;

Z is OH, NH_2 , $NMeR^3$ or NHR^3 ;

and wherein

R^1 is selected from 5- or 6-membered heteroaryl or heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

15 phenyl, phenyl (C_{1-3}) alkyl, (C_{2-6}) alkenyl, phenyl (C_{2-6}) alkenyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, 9- or 10-atom heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heteroaryl, phenyl, phenylalkenyl, phenylalkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6}) alkyl, and heterobicycle are each optionally substituted with 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen,

20

269

cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl,
 -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino),
 pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl,
 -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃ and NO₂;

5 **R²** is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: halogen,
 (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

10 **R³** is selected from (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, and 5- to 10-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4
 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

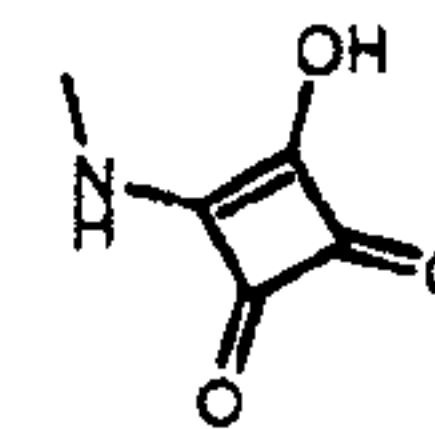
15 wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH,
 COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen,
 (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- to 6-membered heterocycle
 having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle
 being optionally substituted with from 1 to four substituents selected
 from: CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH and COOH;

20 or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are
 each optionally substituted with 9- to 10-membered heterobicycle
 having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S said
 heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents
 selected from:

25 halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, tetrazolyl, COOH, -CONH₂,

270

triazolyl, OH, and $-O(C_{1-3})COOH$; (C_{1-4}) alkoxy, cyano, amino, azido, (C_{1-6}) alkyl-amino, di- (C_{1-6}) alkyl-amino, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , nitro, $C(halo)_3$, $-NH(C_{2-4})$ acyl,



$-NHCOCOOH$, $-NHCH_2COOH$, $-NHCONH_2$,

5

$-NHCN$, $-NHCHO$, $-NHSO_2CH_3$, $-NHSO_2CF_3$, $-NH(C_{6-10})$ aroyl,

$-CONH_2$, $-CO-NH$ -alanyl, $-(CH_2)_pCOOH$, $-OCH_2Ph$,

$-O-(C_{1-6})$ alkyl $COOH$, $-NHCO(C_{1-6})$ hydroxyalkyl $COOH$,

$-OCO(C_{1-6})$ hydroxyalkyl $COOH$, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl $COOH$,

$-CONH$ benzyl, $-CONH$ pyridyl, $-CONHCH_2$ pyridyl,

10

$-CONH(C_{2-4})N(CH_3)_2$, $-CONH(C_{2-4})$ morpholino and

$-O(CH_2)_p$ tetrazolyl, p being an integer from 1 to 4; and

n is zero or 1;

or a salt thereof;

15

with the proviso that if X is CH , Y is O , Z is OH , $n=0$, and R^1 is (C_{2-10}) alkyl, (C_{3-10}) alkenyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R^2 is not phenyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH , Y is O , Z is OH , $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 6-phenylbenzofuran-2-yl, alkenyl or 2-hydroxyphenyl;

20

and with the further proviso that if X is CH , Y is O , Z is OH , $n=1$, then R^1 is not methyl, ethyl, vinyl or 5-azabenzimidazol-2-yl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH , Y is O , Z is OH , $n=0$ or 1, R^1 is heteroaryl or phenyl, then R^2 is not heteroaryl or phenyl;

271

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is (C_{1-3}) alkyl, substituted with COOH, COOalkyl or tetrazol-5-yl, and further substituted with aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$ or 1, and R^1 is (C_{2-10}) alkyl, (C_{3-6}) cycloalkyl or phenyl, then R^2 is not optionally substituted phenyl;

5 and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NMeR^3 or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl or aryl, then R^1 is not a substituted 2-benzofuryl group;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not a substituted benzofuryl group or benzofuran-2-yl;

10

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heteroaryl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not aryl, heteroaryl or alkyl;

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl or heterocycle], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not 3,4-dialkoxyphenyl, 3,4-dialkoxyphenylphenylene or 3,4-dialkoxyphenylalkylene;

15

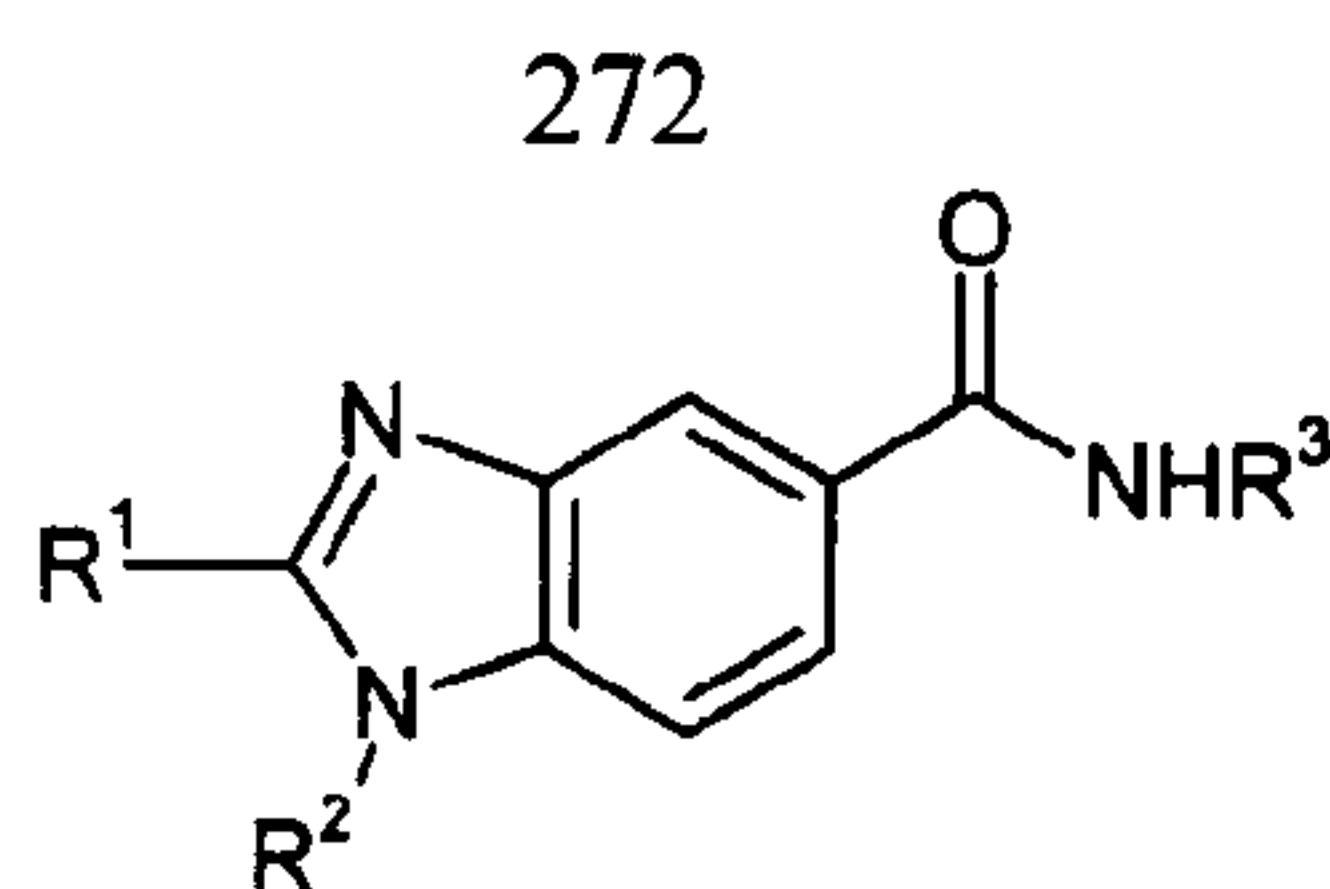
and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is OH or NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is H, alkyl, allyl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkylalkyl, phenyl or benzyl], $n=0$, and R^2 is cycloalkyl, then R^1 is not tetrazolyl;

20

and with the further proviso that if X is CH, Y is O, Z is NHR^3 [wherein R^3 is thiazolyl], $n=1$, and R^2 is (C_{3-7}) cycloalkyl, phenyl or heteroaryl, then R^1 is not phenyl, phenyl (C_{2-4}) alkenyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, (C_{1-8}) alkyl, (C_{2-6}) alkenyl, or (C_{3-7}) cycloalkyl.

25

3. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



wherein

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

5 phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle
10 are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being
15 an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R^2 is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

20 R^3 is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl,

273

(C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

5 wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to
10 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

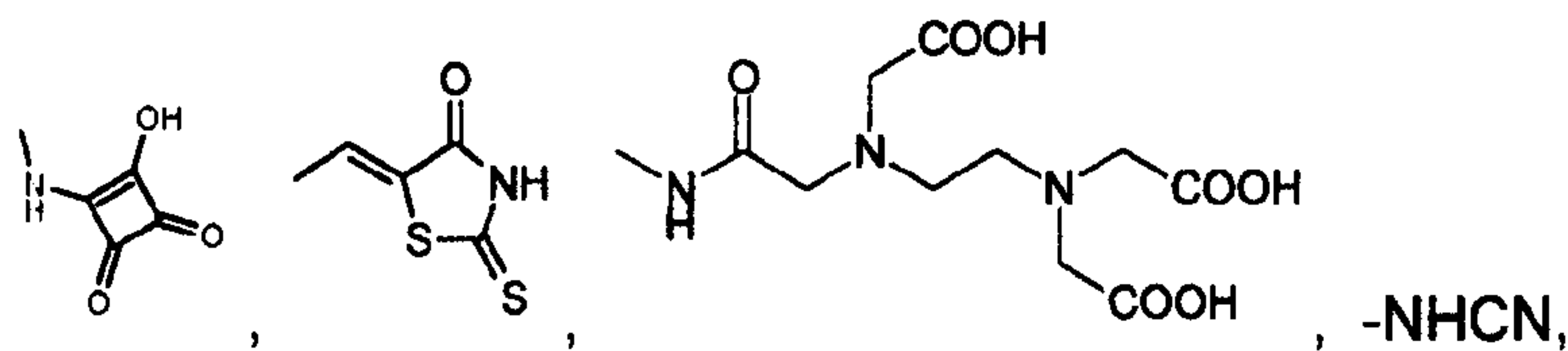
(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, NCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

15 or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

20 halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH, -CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl
COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCOOH,
25 -NHCOCONHOH, -NHCOCONH₂, -NHCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,

274

-NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -
 NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 COOH, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, - NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, - NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH,
 -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl
 COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl
 COOH,



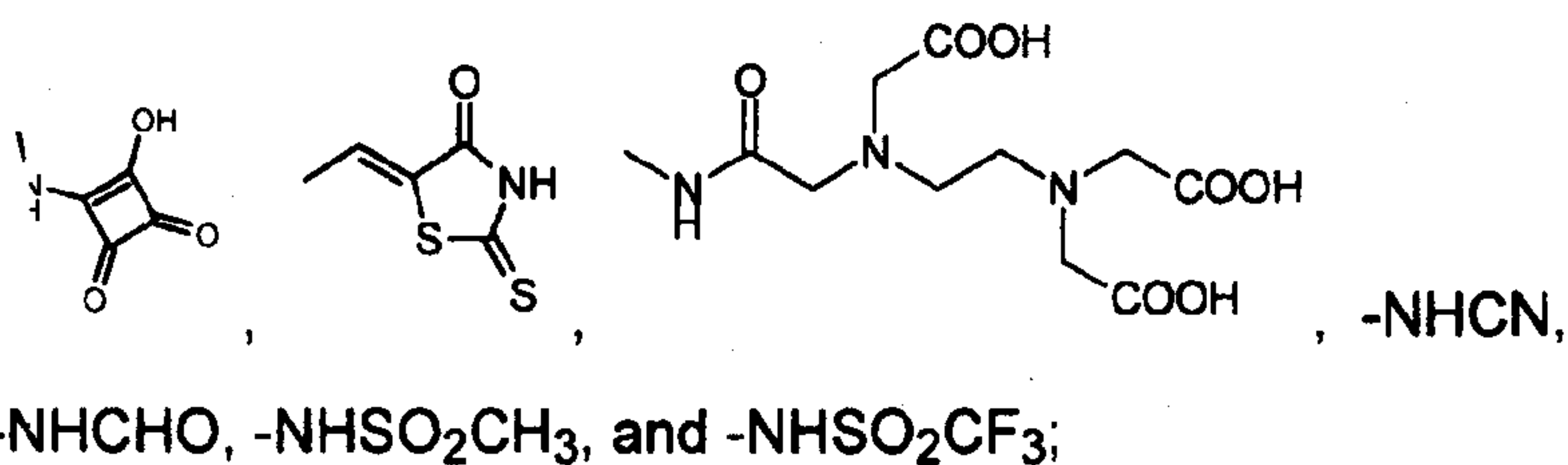
-NHCHO, -NHSO₂CH₃, and -NHSO₂CF₃;

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, -CONH₂,
 -COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH,
 -CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin,
 benzoyleneurea, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl
 COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCOOH,
 -NHCOCONHOH, -NHCOCONH₂, -NHCOCONHCH₃,
 -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,
 -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -
 NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-

275

COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,



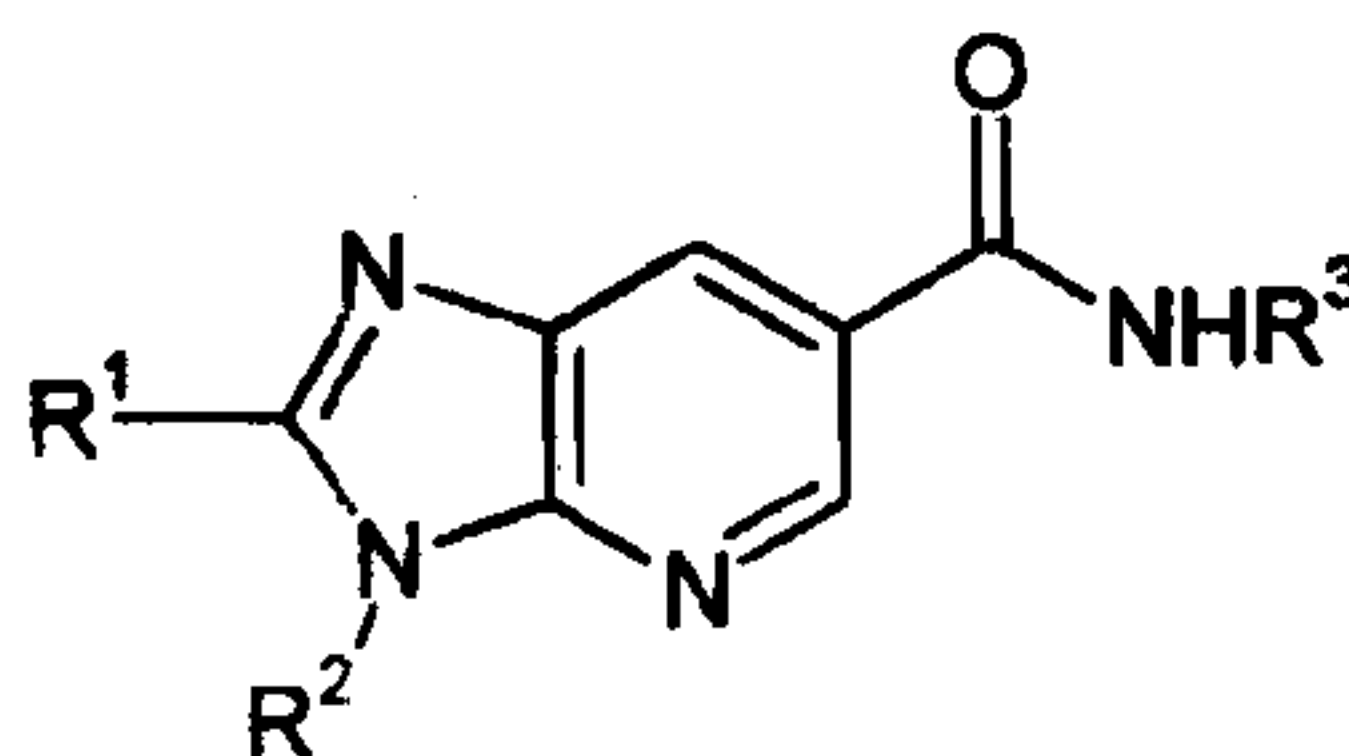
or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with coumarin, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, C(halogen)₃, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -NH(C₆₋₁₀)aroyl, -CONHCH(CH₂OH)₂, -CO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CO-NH-alanyl, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-pyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-(COOH)-imidazole, -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆)alkyl-CONH-9 or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S, [said heterobicycle being optionally

276

substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, [said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl), [said aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], or -O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl;

or a salt thereof.

4. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



wherein

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S, phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected

277

from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH,
 -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂,
 (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl,
 carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being
 5 an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R² is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen,
 (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;
 10 **R³** is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl,
 NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4
 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having
 15 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

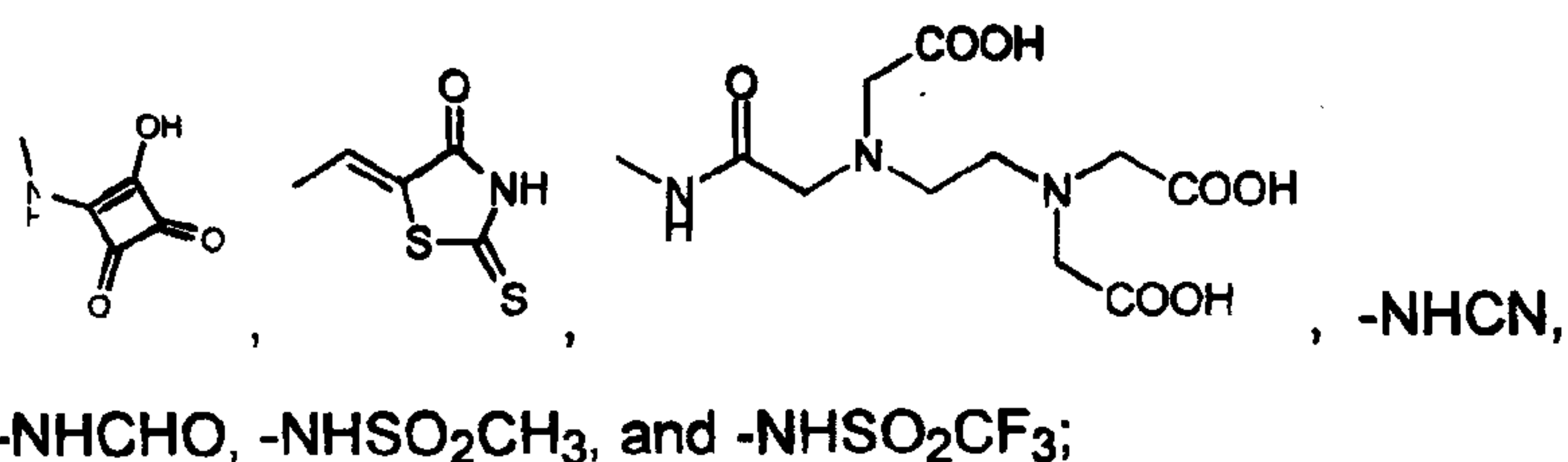
wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH,
 COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl,
 benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,
 20 and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to
 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂,
 NCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂,
 25 wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

278

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$, $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{alkenyl}$, COOH , tetrazolyl, COOH , $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl, OH , NO_2 , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, $(\text{C}_{1-4})\text{alkoxy}$, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$ COOH , $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$ $\text{COO}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCOCONHCH}_3$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-\text{COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-\text{COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$ COOH , $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl}-\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl}$ COOH , $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl}$ COOH , $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl}$ COOH ,

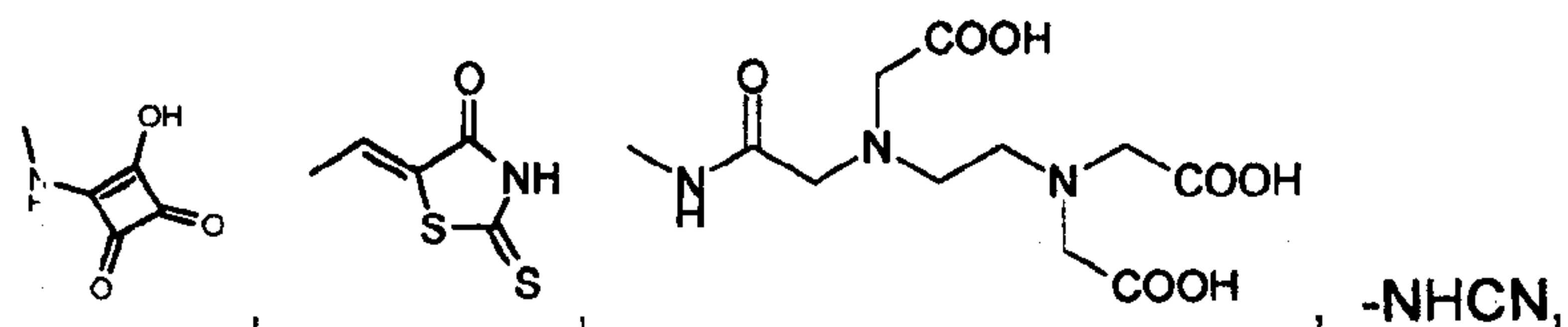


or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are

279

each optionally substituted with 6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$,
 $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkenyl})\text{COOH}$, tetrazolyl, COOH ,
 $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl, OH , NO_2 , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin,
 benzoyleneurea, $(\text{C}_{1-4})\text{alkoxy}$, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$
 COOH , $-\text{O}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COO}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCOCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCOCOCONHCH}_3$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, -
 $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-}$
 COOH , - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-O}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}-(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl}$
 COOH , $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl}$
 COOH ,



$-\text{NHCHO}$, $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{CH}_3$, and $-\text{NHSO}_2\text{CF}_3$;

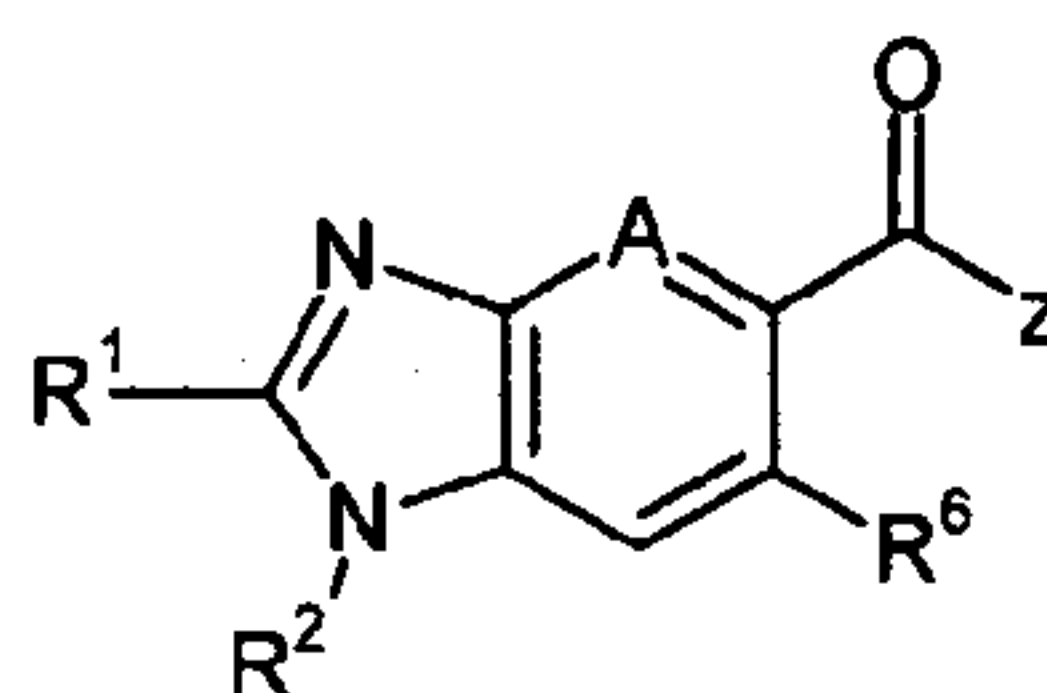
or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with coumarin, $(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-amino}$,
 $\text{di}-(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-amino}$, $\text{C}(\text{halogen})_3$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{2-4})\text{acyl}$, $-\text{NH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aroyl}$,

280

-CONHCH(CH₂OH)₂, -CO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CO-NH-alanyl,
 -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl,
 -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)
 alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-pyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-N-
 5 methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-(COOH)-imidazole,
 -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COOH,
 -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)
 alkyl, -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆) alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₁₋₆)
 10 6)alkyl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆)
 alkyl-CONH-9 or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4
 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S, [said heterobicycle being
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from
 COOH, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or
 15 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O,
 N and S [said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to
 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₁₋₆
 6alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl) [said aryl being optionally substituted with
 from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], or
 -O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl;
 20 or salt thereof.

5. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

281



wherein

Z is OH, NH₂, NMeR³, NHR³; OR³ or 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and -O(C₆-10)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH;

A is N, COR⁷ or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆) alkyl and R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl), with the proviso that **X** and **A** are not both N;

R⁶ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₆ alkyl) or OR⁷, wherein R⁷ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl);

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being

282

an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R² is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, norbornane, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

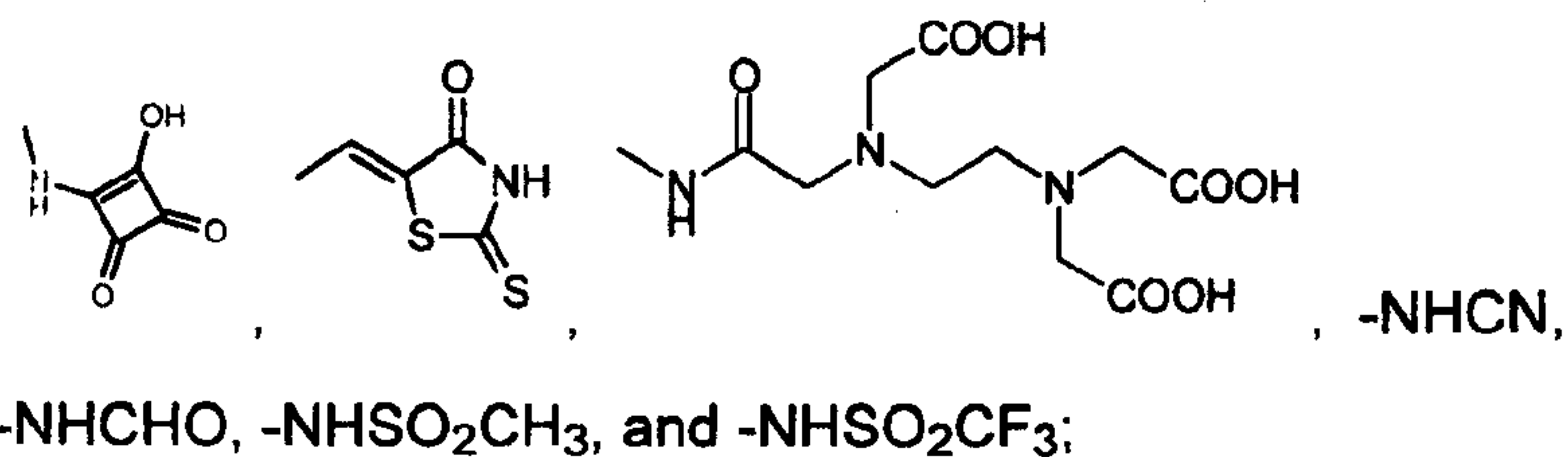
R³ is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆)alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, [said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from (C₁₋₆alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, NCO(C₁₋₆alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4];

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

283

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$,
 $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkenyl})\text{COOH}$, tetrazolyl, COOH ,
 $-\text{CONH}_2$, triazolyl, OH , NO_2 , NH_2 , $-\text{O}(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{COOH}$, hydantoin,
benzoyleneurea, $(\text{C}_{1-4})\text{alkoxy}$, cyano, azido, $-\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$
 COOH , $-\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCOCOOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCOCONHOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCOCONHCH}_3$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCOCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{3-7})\text{cycloalkyl-COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$, -
 $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-}$
 COOH , - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl-COO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}$, - $\text{NHCONH}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl}(\text{C}_{2-6})\text{alkenyl-COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-O}(\text{C}_{1-}$
 $6)\text{alkyl COOH}$, - $\text{NH}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{alkyl}(\text{C}_{6-10})\text{aryl-COOH}$,
 $-\text{NHCH}_2\text{COOH}$, $-\text{NHCONH}_2$, $-\text{NHCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl}$
 COOH , $-\text{OCO}(\text{C}_{1-6})\text{hydroxyalkyl COOH}$, $(\text{C}_{3-6})\text{cycloalkyl}$
 COOH ,

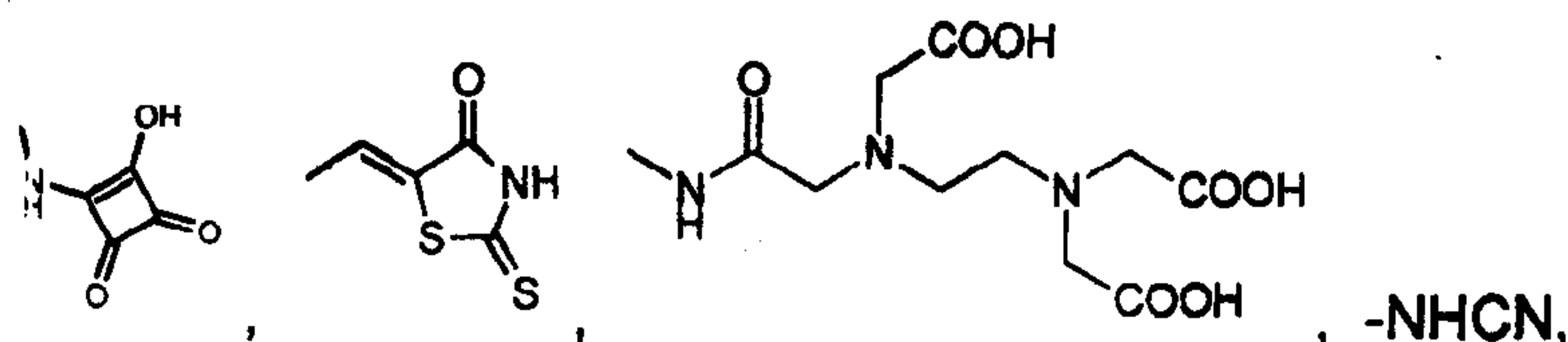


or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are
each optionally substituted with 6- or 10-membered aryl being
optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO_3H , sulfonamido, SO_3H , SO_2CH_3 , $-\text{CONH}_2$,
 $-\text{COCH}_3$, $(\text{C}_{1-3})\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_{2-4}\text{alkenyl})\text{COOH}$, tetrazolyl, COOH ,

284

-CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCO₂H, -NHCOCONHOH, -NHCOCONH₂, -NHCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,



-NHCHO, -NHSO₂CH₃, and -NHSO₂CF₃;

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with coumarin, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, C(halogen)₃, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -NH(C₆₋₁₀)aroyl, -CONHCH(CH₂OH)₂, -CO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CO-NH-alanyl, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-pyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-N-

285

methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄) alkyl-(COOH)-imidazole,
 -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COOH,
 -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-COO(C₁₋₆) alkyl,
 -CONH(C₁₋₆) alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆) alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-
 5 COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆) alkyl-
 CONH-9 or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms
 selected from O, N, and S [said heterobicycle being optionally
 substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH, (C₆-
 10)aryl and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₆₋₁₀) aryl-5- or 6-membered
 10 heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S [said
 heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents
 selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH],
 -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl) [said aryl being optionally
 substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and
 15 (CH₂)_pCOOH], or -O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl;

or salt thereof.

6. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 5, wherein R⁶ is H or (C₁₋₆alkyl).

20

7. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 5, wherein A is N or CR⁵, wherein R⁵ is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl).

8. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 7, wherein A is CH.

9. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 6, wherein R^6 is H.
10. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 5, wherein Z is NHR^3 , OR^3 ,
5 or OH.
11. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 10, wherein Z is NHR^3 .
12. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, wherein R^1 is selected
10 from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4
heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,
phenyl, phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl, (C_{2-6})alkenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl, (C_{3-6})cycloalkyl,
(C_{1-6})alkyl, CF_3 , 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms
selected from O, N and S,
wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl and
15 phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, and heterobicycle
are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected
from: OH, halogen, CF_3 , amino, cyano, phenyl(C_{1-4})alkoxy, $COOH$,
- $OCH_2CONHCH_2Ph$, (C_{1-4})alkyl, - $OCH_2CONH(CH_2)_{2-3}N(CH_3)_2$,
(C_{1-4})alkoxy, - OCH_2CO -(morpholino), pyrrole, pyrrolidinyl,
20 carboxy(C_{2-4})alkenyl, phenoxy, - $NH(C_{2-4})acyl$, - $O(CH_2)_mOH$, m being
an integer from 2 to 4, SO_3H , and NO_2 .
13. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 12, wherein R^1 is furanyl,
tetrahydrofuranyl, pyridyl, N-methylpyrrolyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazine, imidazole,

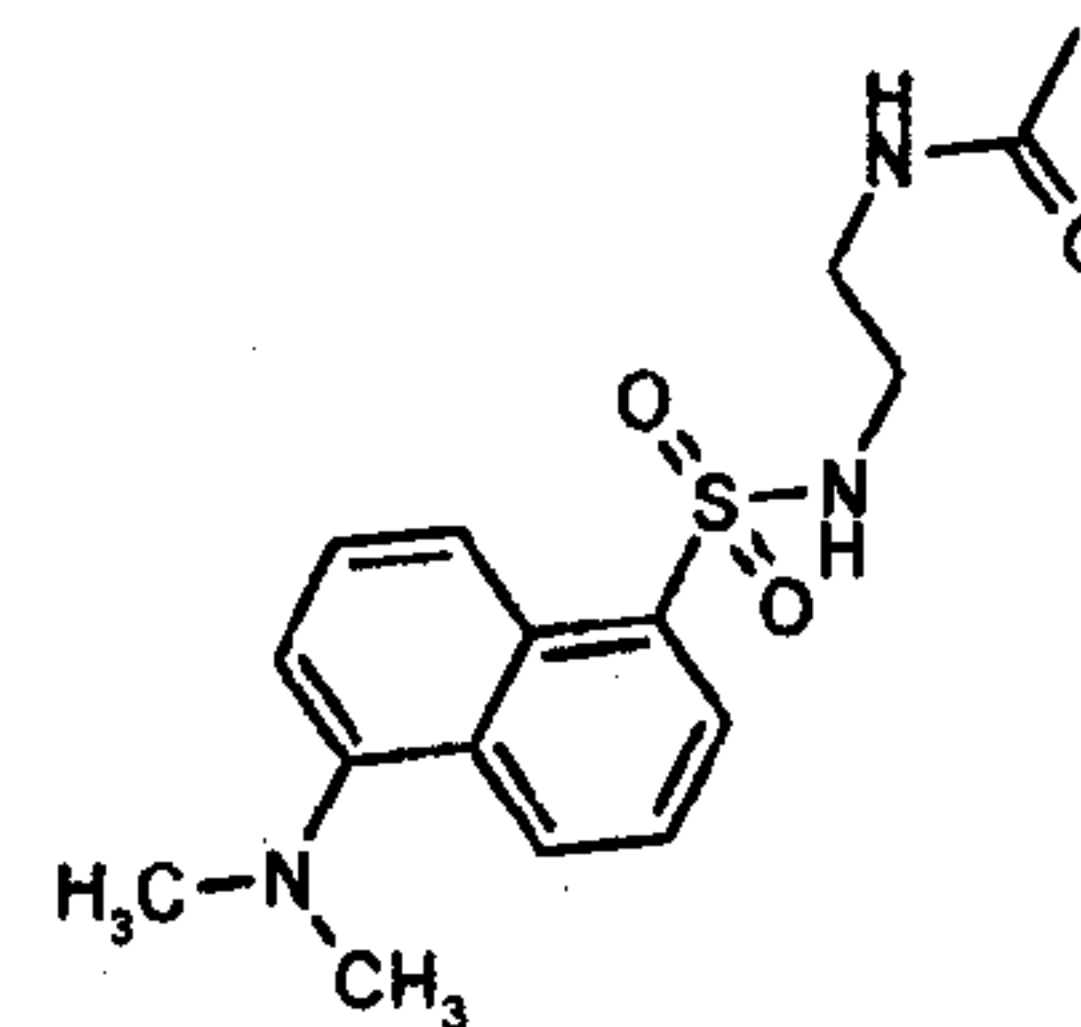
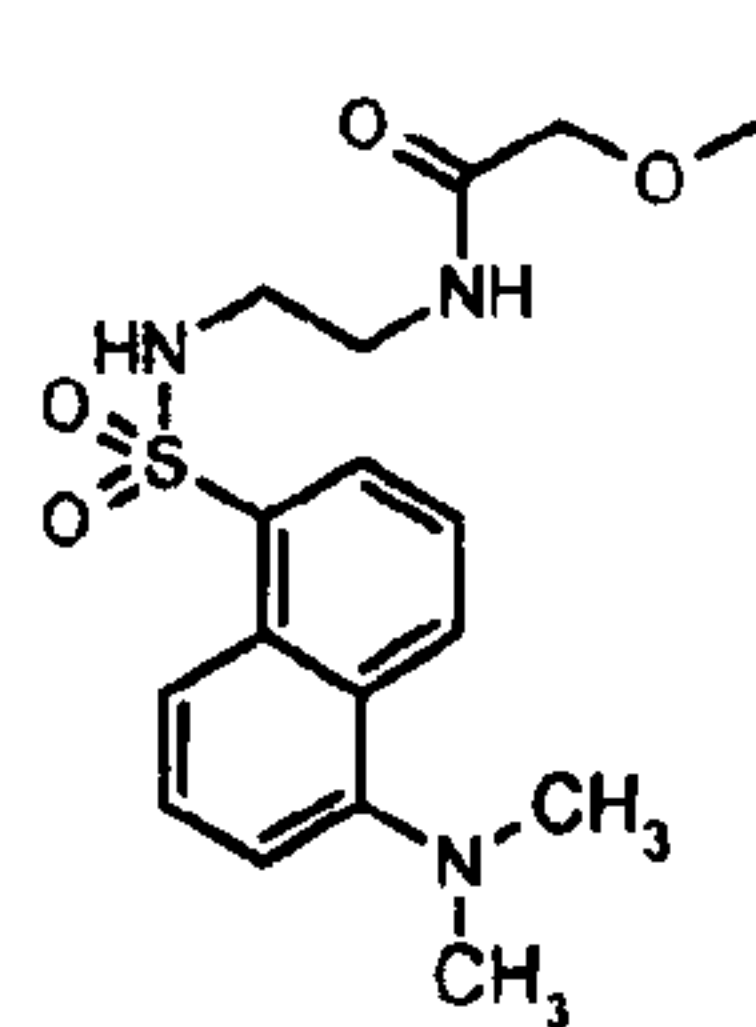
287

isoquinoline, thiazole, thiadiazole, pyrazole, isoxazole, indole, thiophenyl,
1,3-benzodioxazole, 1,4-benzodioxan, CF₃, phenyl;

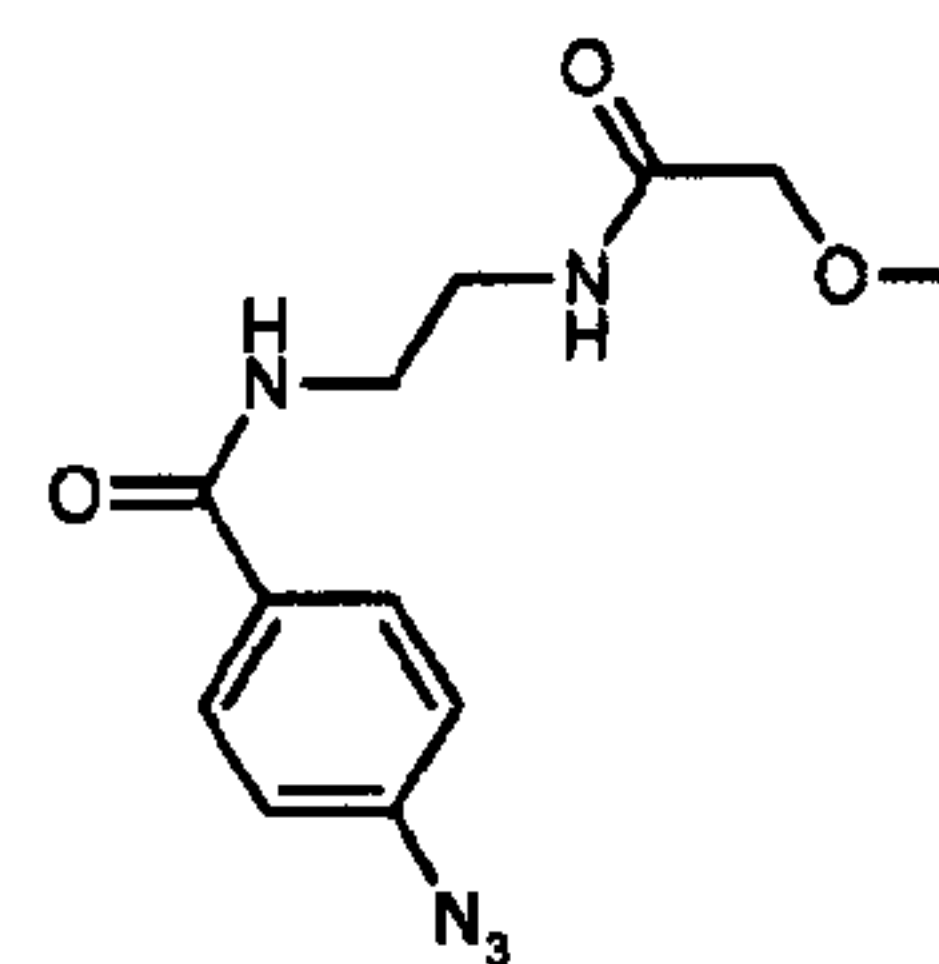
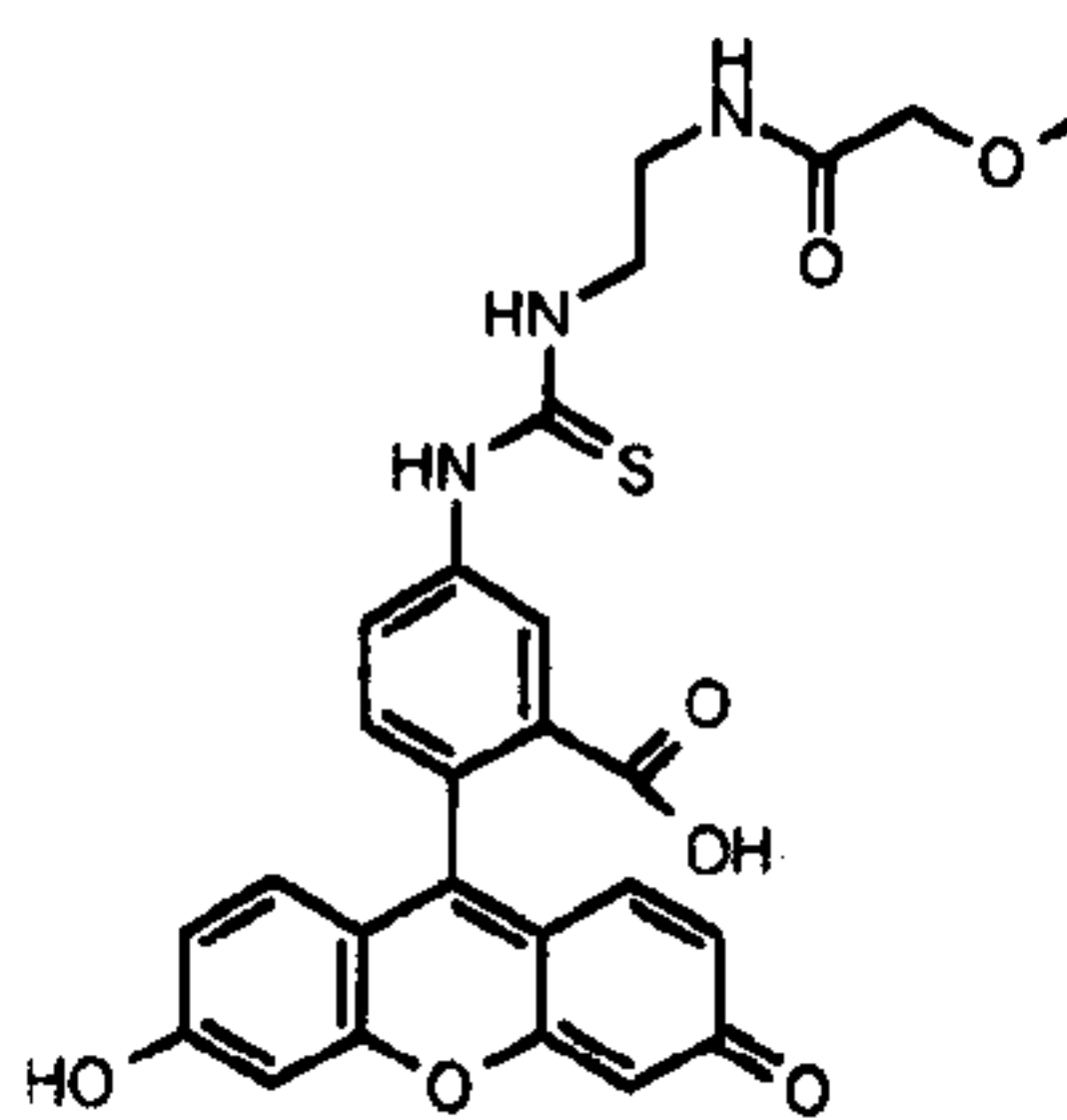
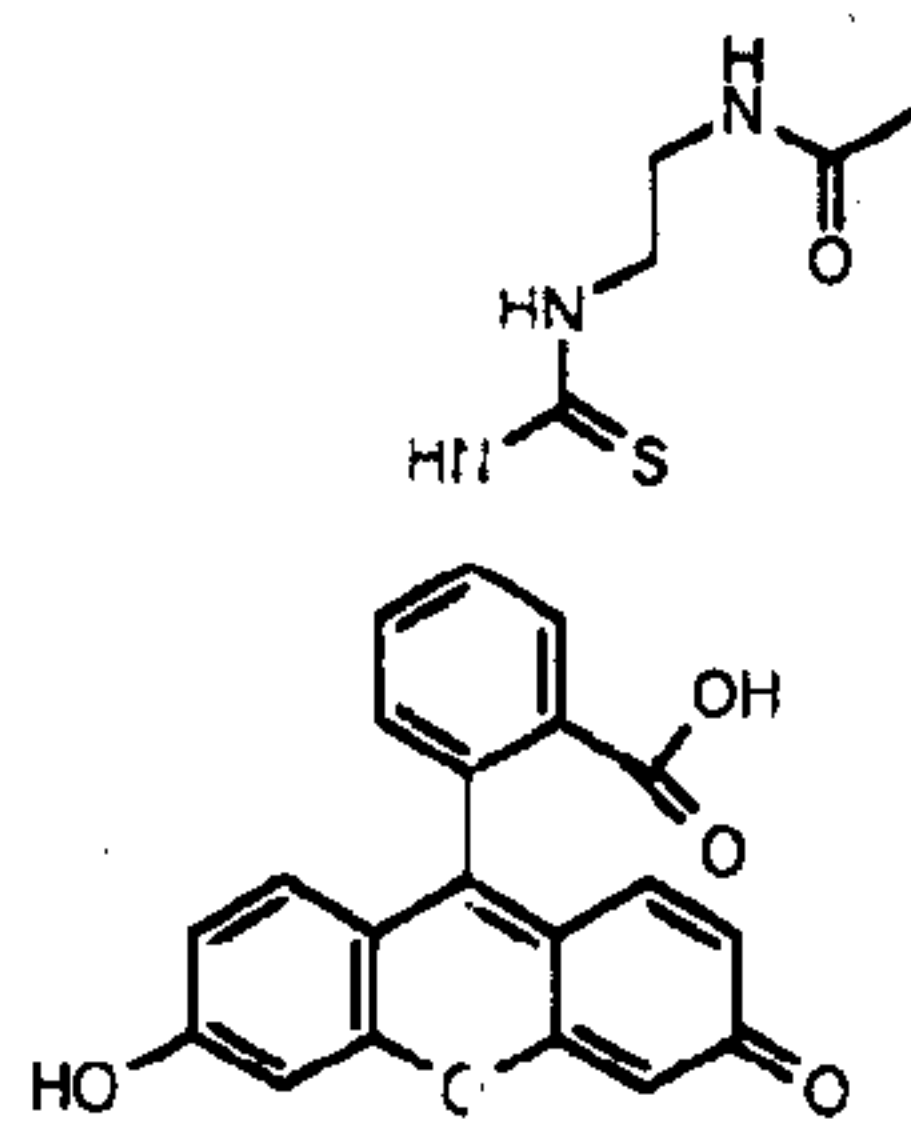
5

wherein said furanyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, pyridyl, N-methylpyrrolyl,
pyrazine, isoquinoline, thiazole, pyrazole, isoxazole, indole,
thiophenyl, 1,3-benzodioxazole, 1,4-benzodioxan or phenyl being
optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: (C₁-
6alkyl), (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, COOH, OH,
halogen, CF₃, cyano, phenoxy, pyrrolidinyl, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -

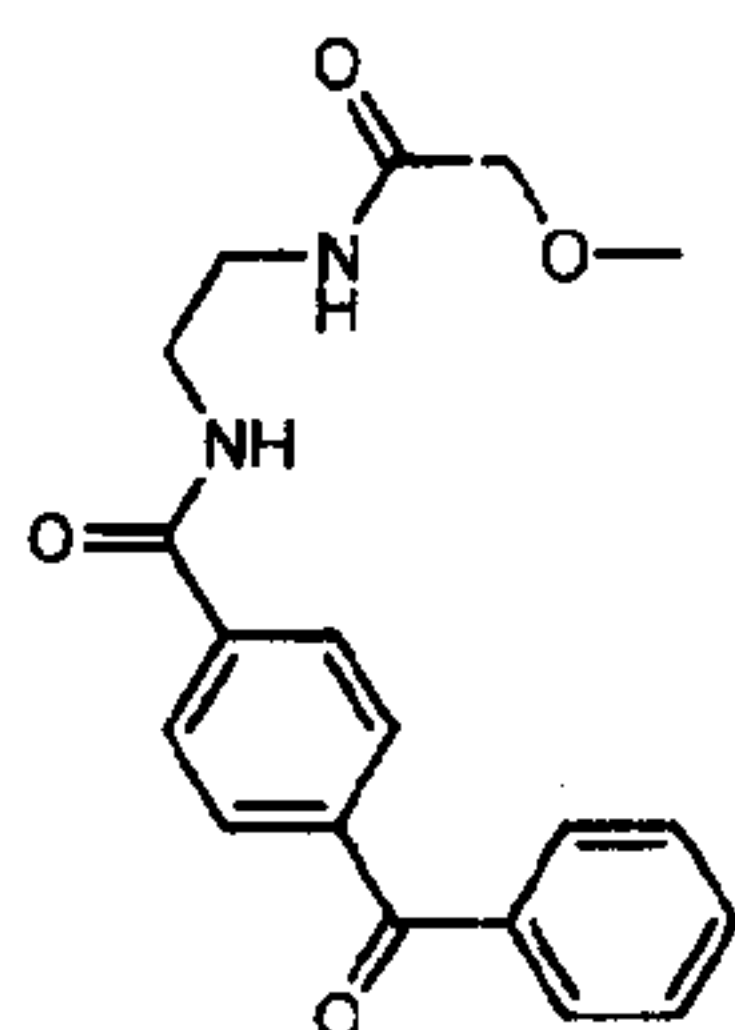
O(CH₂)₂OH, NO₂, SO₃H,



10



, and



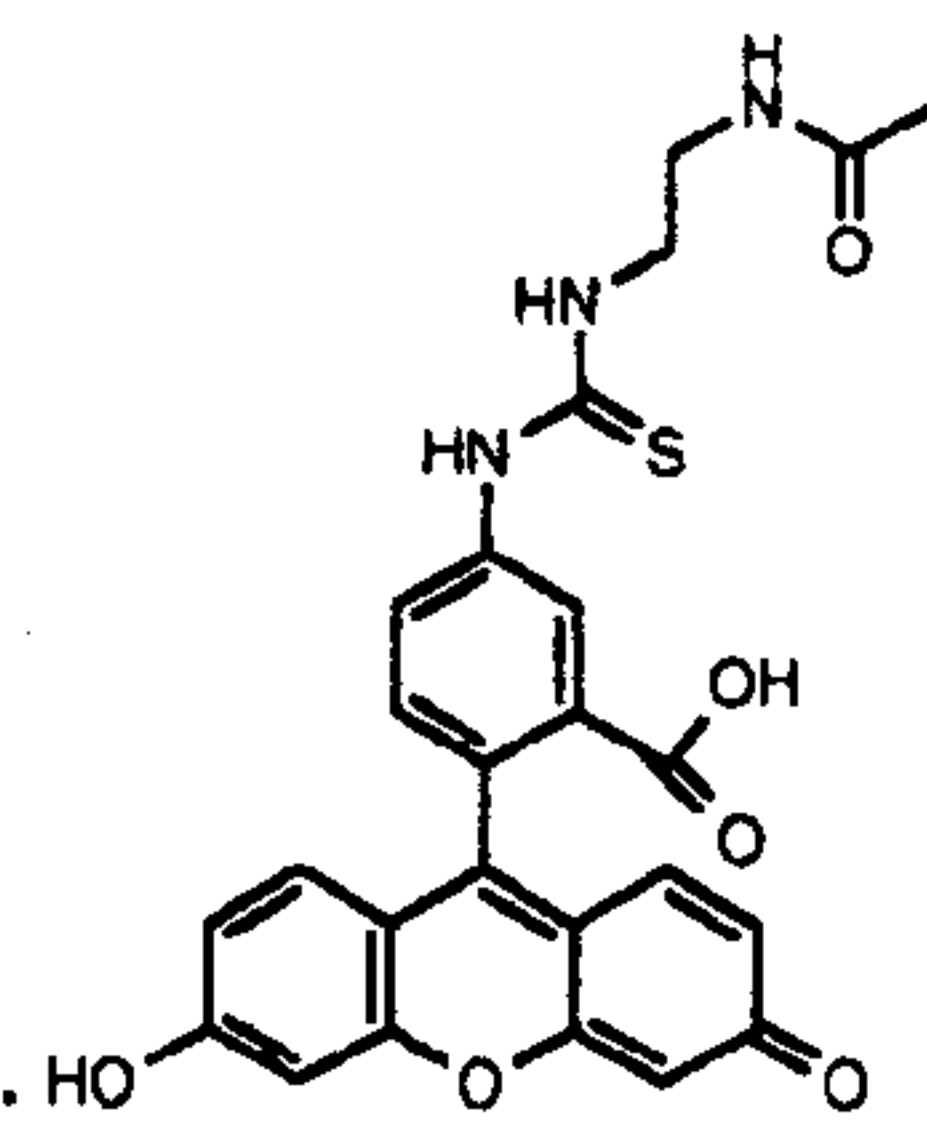
14. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 13, wherein R¹ is furanyl,
pyridinyl, pyridyl, phenyl, thiophenyl, thiadiazole, 1,3-benzodioxazole,

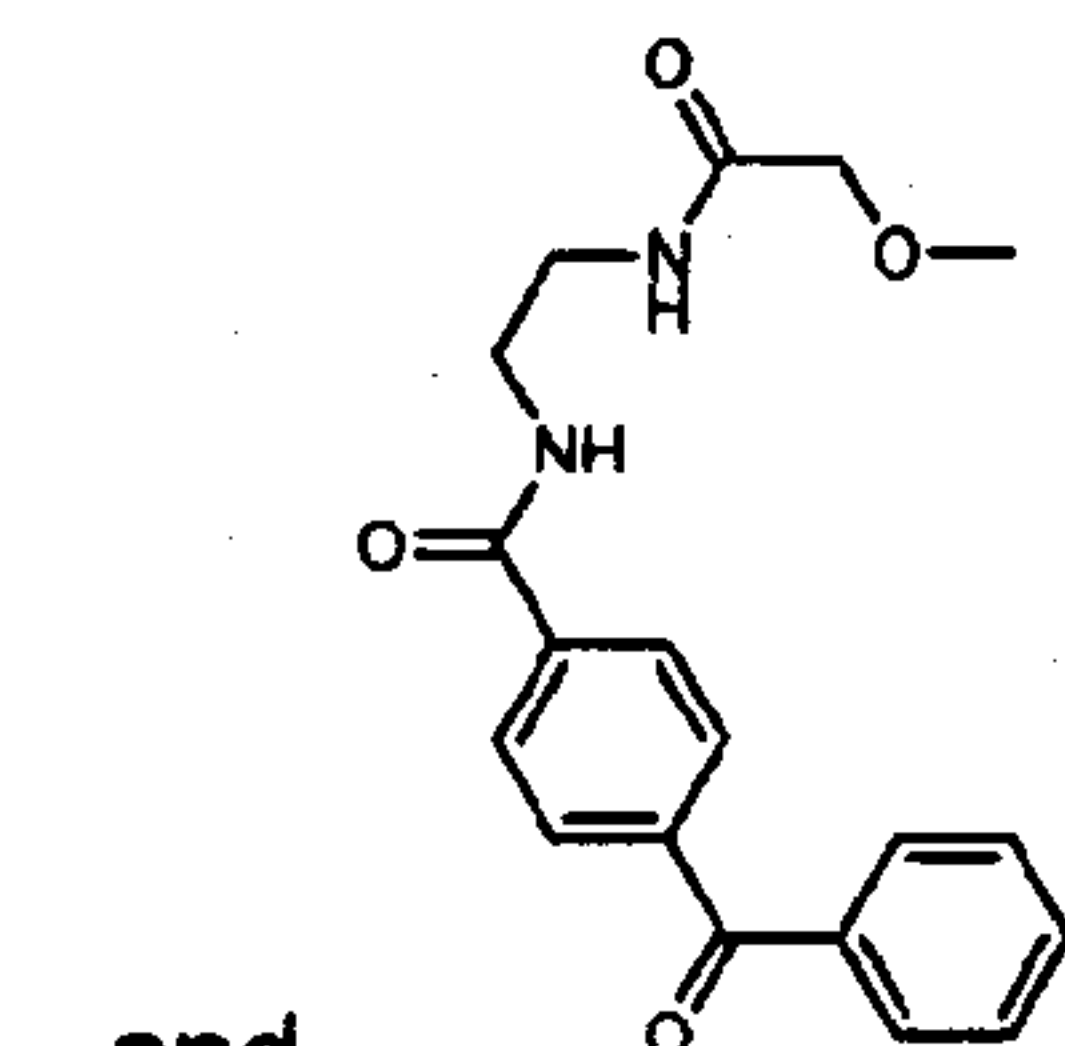
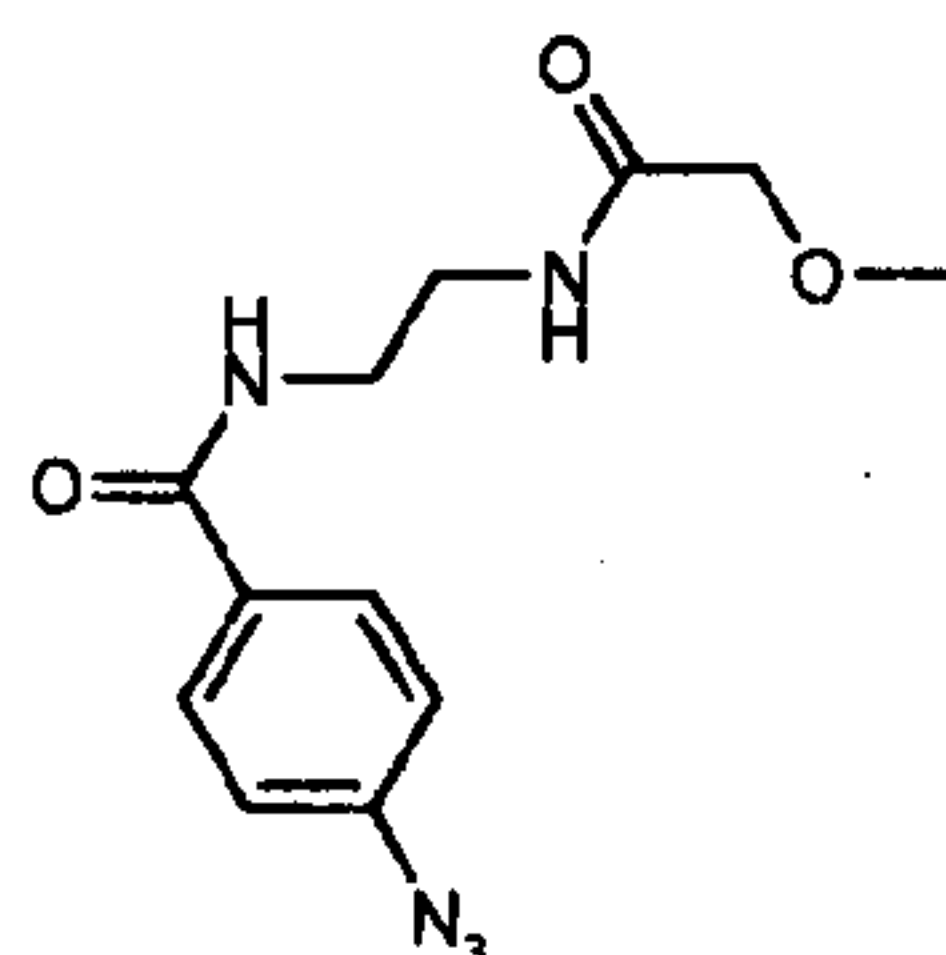
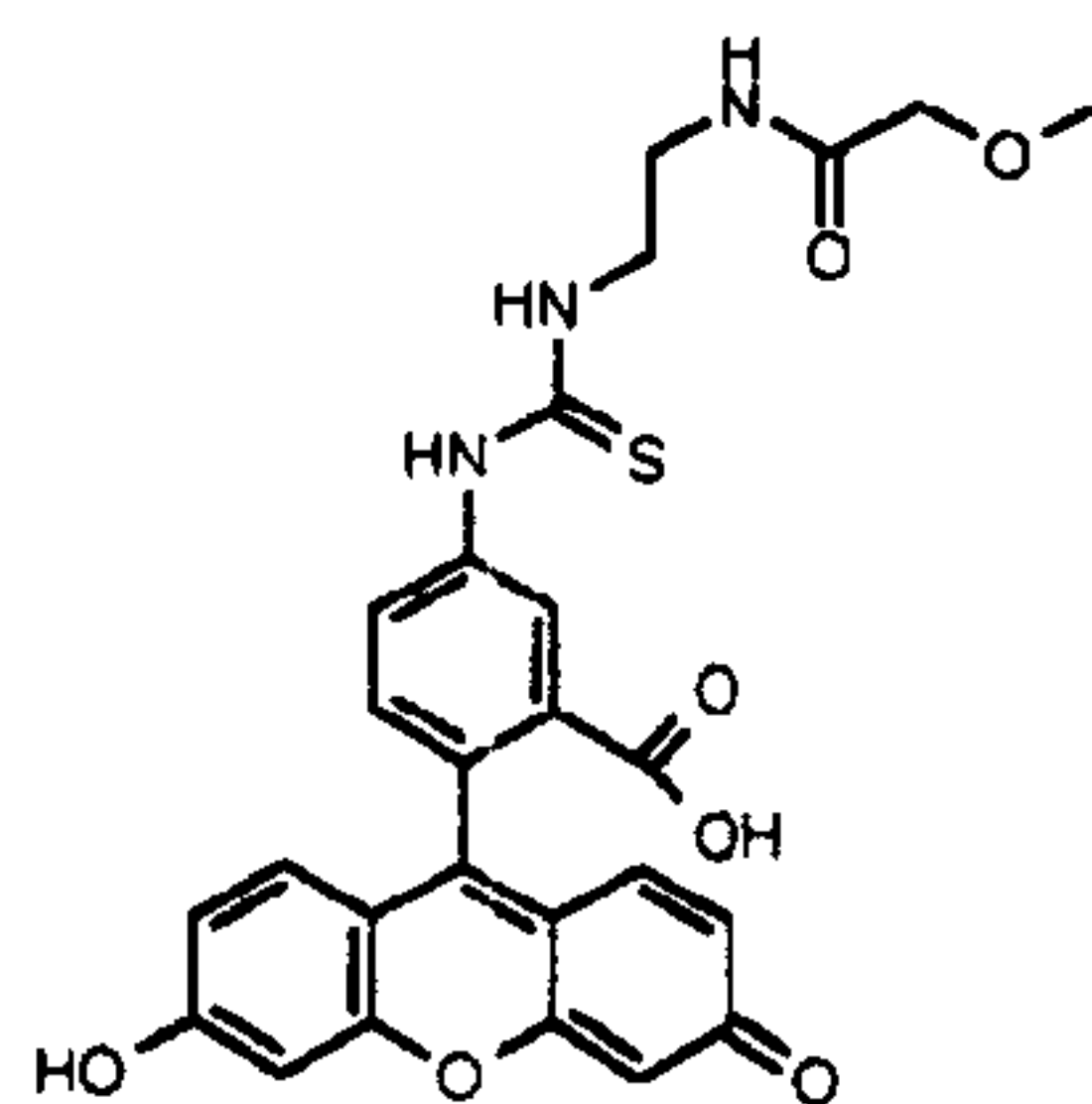
288

pyrazine, imidazole, pyrazole, isooxazole,

wherein said furanyl, pyridyl, pyridinyl, phenyl, thiophene, thiadiazole, 1,3-benzodioxazole, pyrazine, imidazole, pyrazole, isooxazole being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: (C₁-

5

6alkyl), halogen, CF₃, OH, -O(CH₂)₂OH, ;  ,



, and

15. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 14, wherein R¹ is furanyl, pyridinyl, thiophenyl or phenyl.

10

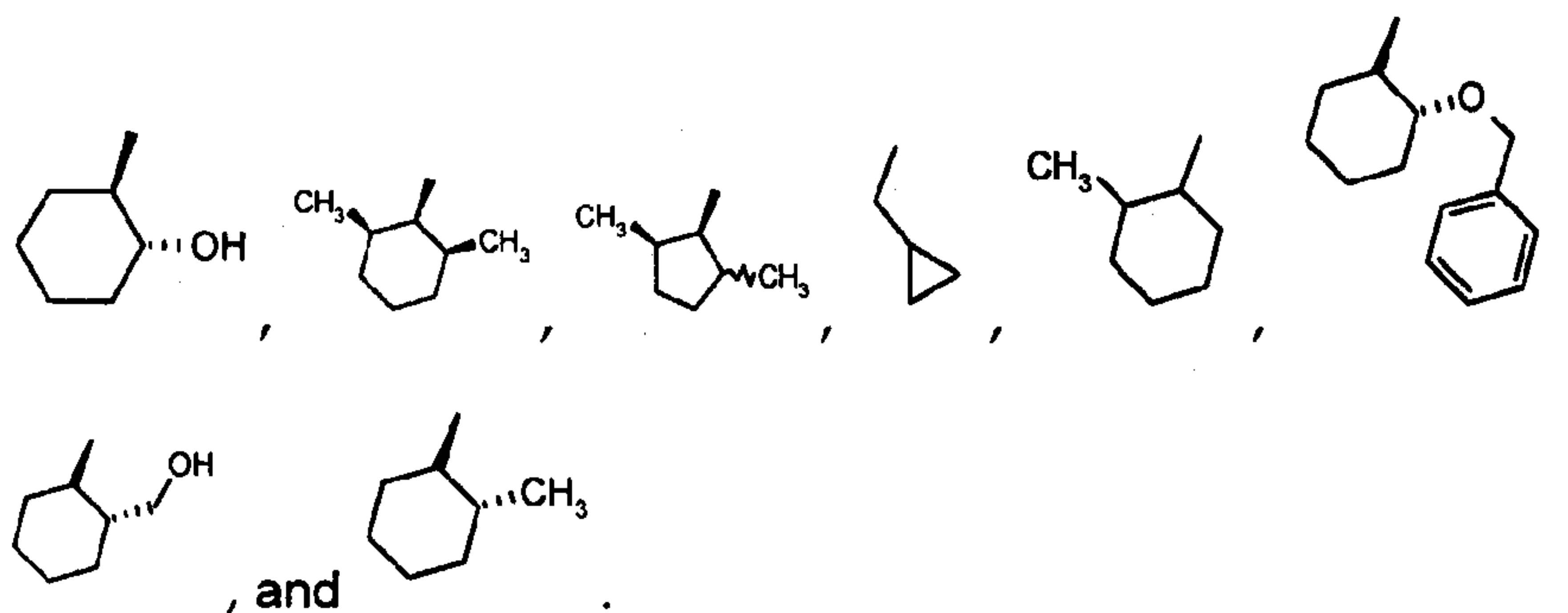
16. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, wherein R² is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH.

15

17. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 16, wherein R² is norbornane,

289

cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl,



- 5 18. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 17, wherein R^2 is cyclohexyl.
19. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, wherein R^3 is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, N{(C₁₋₆) alkyl}₂, NHCOO(C₁₋₆)alkyl(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, NHCO(C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, and 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;
- 15 wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, phenyl, benzyloxy, halogen, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, and carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being
- 20 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

290

(C₁₋₆ alkyl), CF₃, OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH, COOH, NCH(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂,

NCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl), NH₂, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), and N(C₁₋₆ alkyl)₂,

wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4;

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are
 5 each optionally substituted with 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle
 having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said
 heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents
 selected from:

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, -CONH₂,

10 -COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH,

-CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin,

benzoyleneurea, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl

COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCOOH,

-NHCOCOONHOH, -NHCOCOCONH₂, -NHCOCOCONHCH₃,

15 -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH,

-NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -

NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-

COOH, - NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, - NHCONH(C₁₋

6)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, - NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋

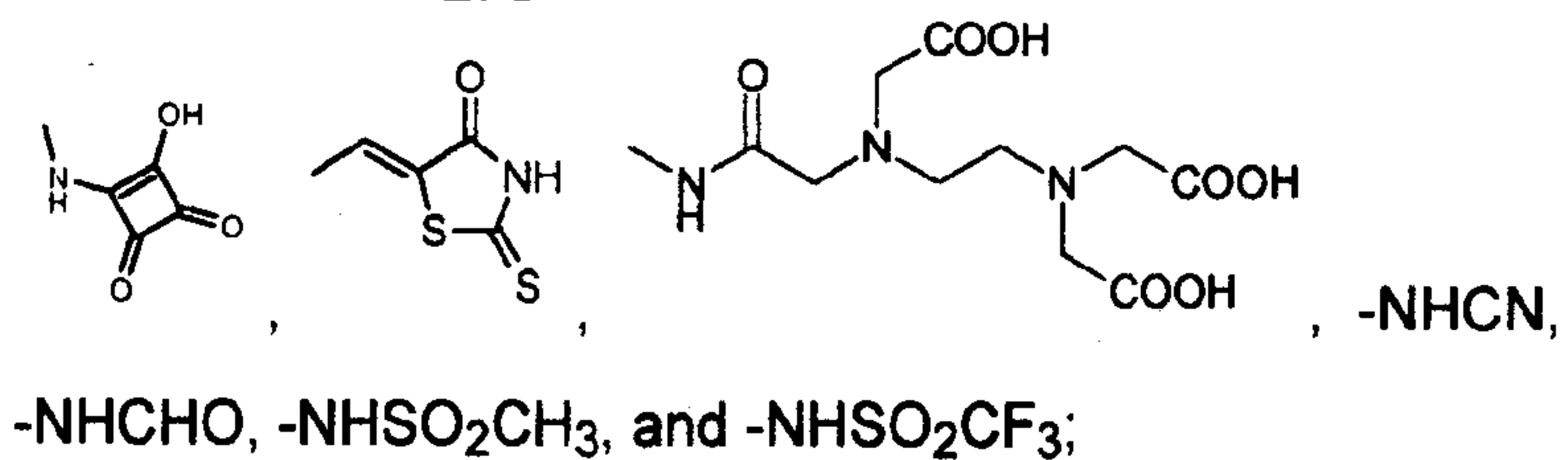
20 6)alkyl COOH, - NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH,

-NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl

COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl

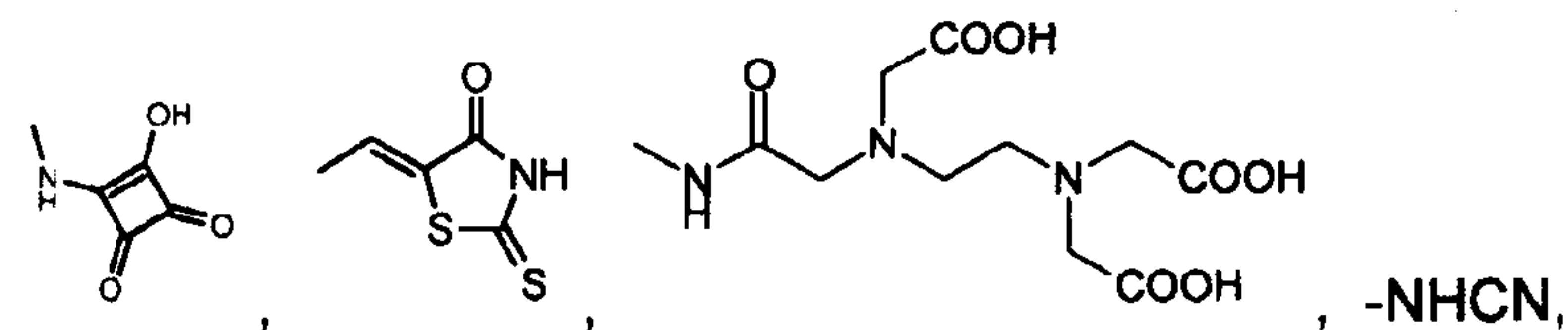
COOH,

291



or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with 6- or 10-membered aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from:

halogen, OPO₃H, sulfonamido, SO₃H, SO₂CH₃, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₄alkenyl)COOH, tetrazolyl, COOH, -CONH₂, triazolyl, OH, NO₂, NH₂, -O(CH₂)_pCOOH, hydantoin, benzoyleneurea, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, cyano, azido, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COO-(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCOCOOH, -NHCOCONHOH, -NHCOCONH₂, -NHCOCONHCH₃, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCOCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCO(C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -NHCONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-O(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH, -NH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -NHCH₂COOH, -NHCONH₂, -NHCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, -OCO(C₁₋₆)hydroxyalkyl COOH, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl COOH,

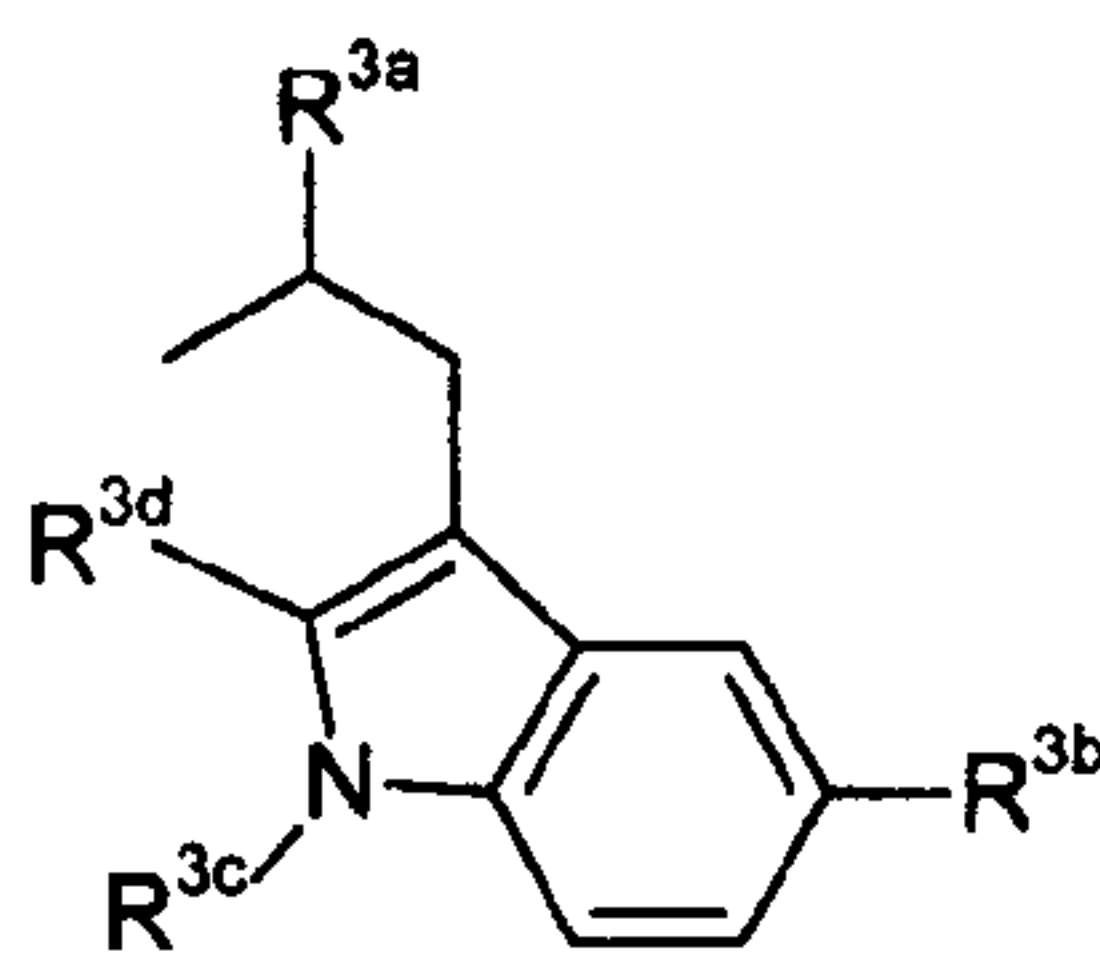


-NHCHO, -NHSO₂CH₃, and -NHSO₂CF₃;

or wherein said alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, alkenyl and heterocycle are each optionally substituted with coumarin, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, di-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-amino, C(halogen)₃, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -NH(C₆₋₁₀)aroyl, -CONHCH(CH₂OH)₂, -CO(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CO-NH-alanyl, -CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CONHbenzyl, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(C₁₋₆alkyl)₂, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-morpholino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-pyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino, -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkyl-(COOH)-imidazole, -CONHCH₂CH(OH)CH₂OH, -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CONH(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₁₋₆)alkyl-COOH, -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-(C₂₋₆)alkenyl-COOH, -CONH(C₂₋₆)alkyl-CONH-9 or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S [said heterobicycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S [said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], -CONH(C₁₋₆alkyl)CONH(C₆₋₁₀aryl) [said aryl being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from COOH and (CH₂)_pCOOH], or -O(CH₂)_ptetrazolyl.

293

20. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 19, wherein R^3 is

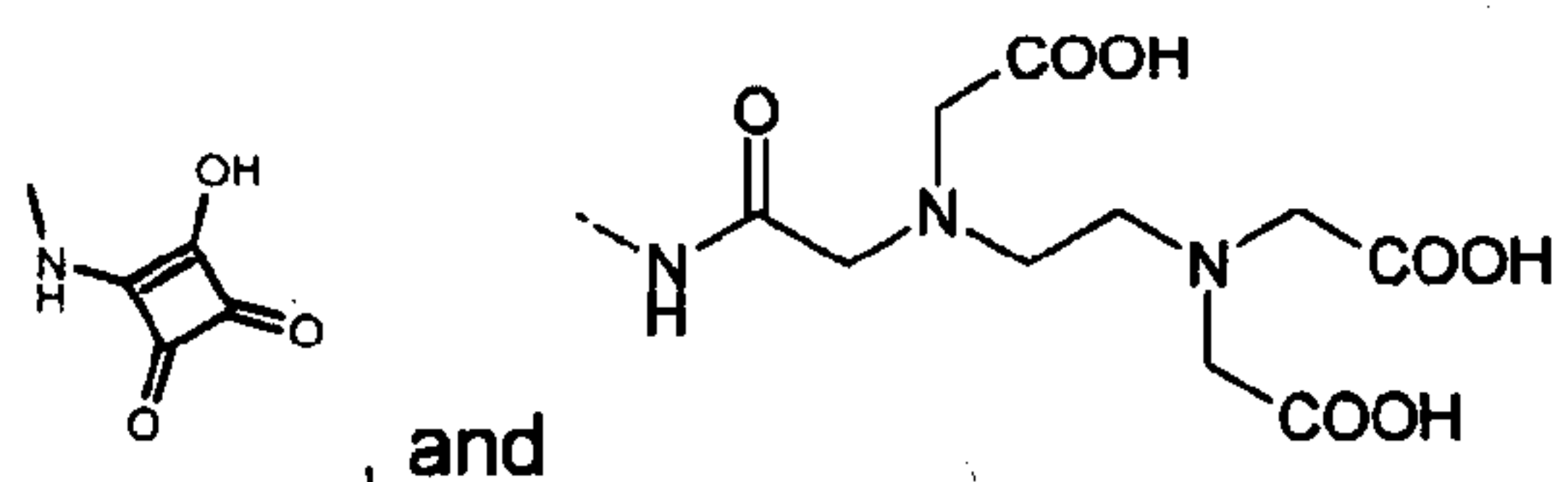


wherein

R^{3a} is selected from H, 5- to 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from the group consisting of: CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH, NCH(CH₃)₂, NHCOCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, N(CH₃)₂, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CH₂(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, and -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(CH₃)₂;

R^{3b} is selected from H, OH, OCH₂OH, amino, 5- to 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S; said heterocycle being optionally substituted with OH, COOH, CH₃, CF₃, CH₂COOH, -O(C₁₋₃)alkylCOOH, -NHCOCOOH, -NHSO₂CH₃, -NHSO₂CF₃,

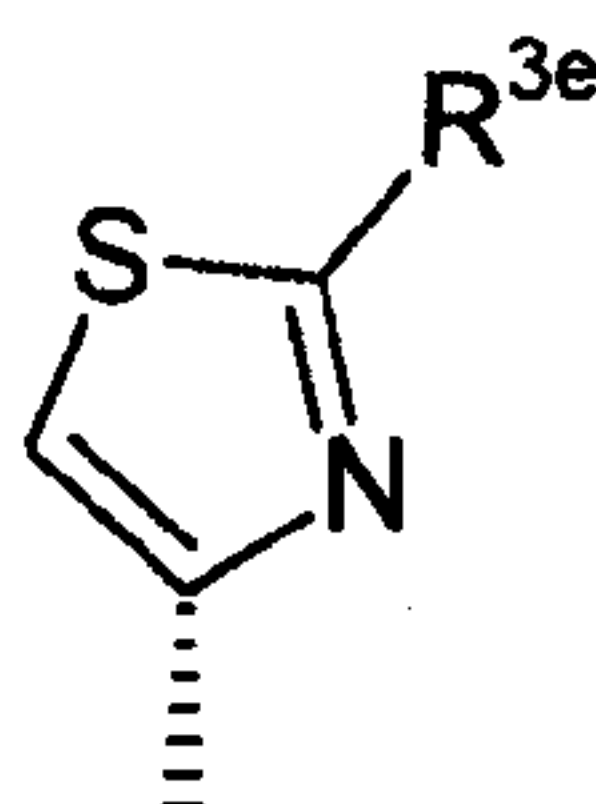


R^{3c} is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl and -(CH₂)_pCOOH, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4; and

294

R^{3d} is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl).

21. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 20, wherein R^{3a} is COOR^{3g}, CONHR^{3f}, or



5

wherein

R^{3e} is H, (C₁₋₆ alkyl), amino, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl), N{(C₁₋₆ alkyl)}₂, or NHCO(C₁₋₆ alkyl);

R^{3f} is H, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-morpholino, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-pyrrolidino, -(C₂₋₄) alkyl-N-methylpyrrolidino; (C₁₋₆ alkyl)N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₆ alkyl)OH, CH(CH₂OH)₂ or CH₂C(OH)CH₂OH; and

10

R^{3g} is H or (C₁₋₆ alkyl).

22. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 21, wherein R^{3f} is H.

15

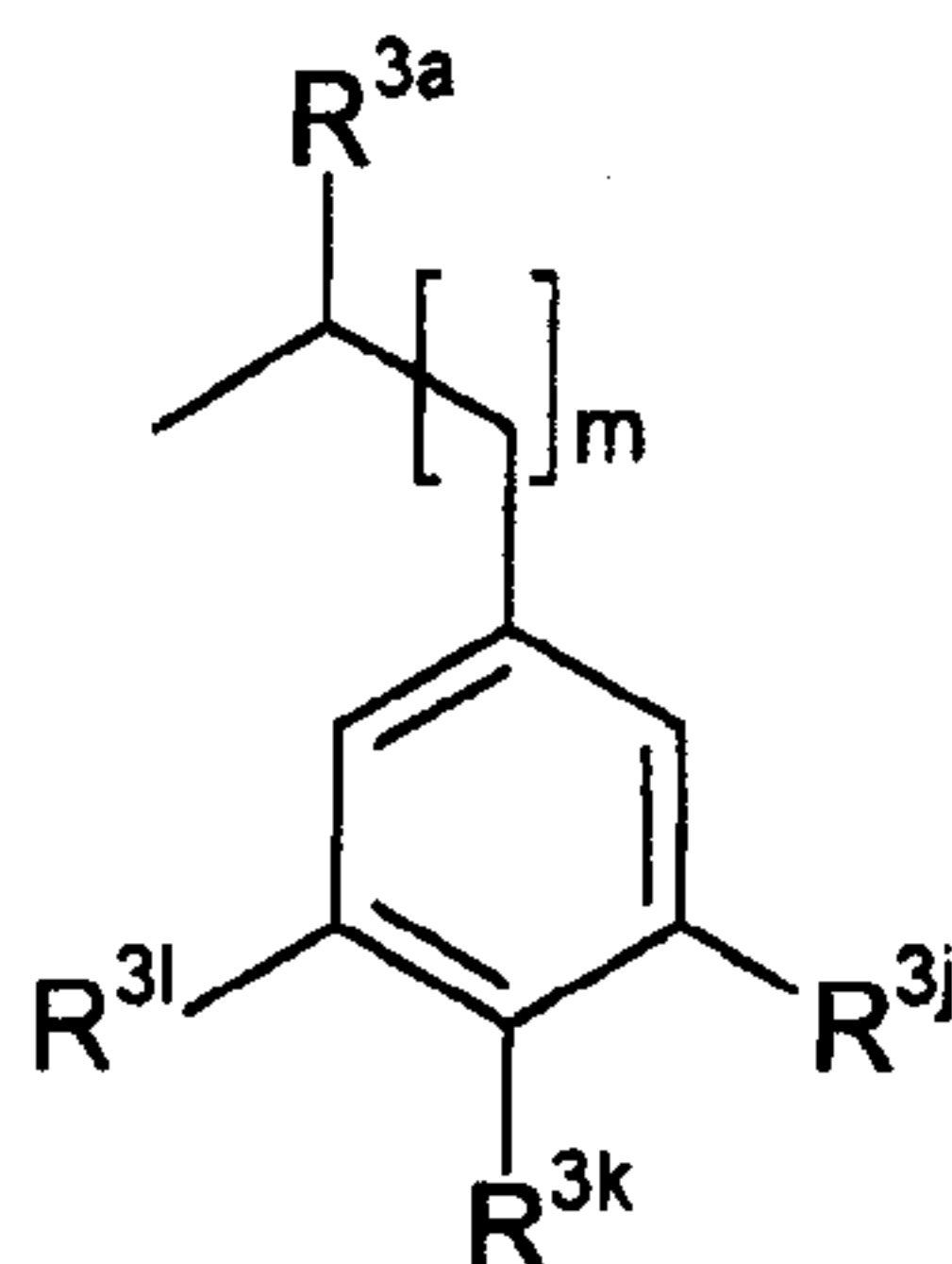
23. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 21, wherein R^{3g} is H or CH₃.

24. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 20, wherein R^{3b} is OCH₂OH or OH.

20

295

25. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 20 wherein R^{3c} is H, CH_3 or $-CH_2CH_2COOH$.
26. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 20, wherein R^{3d} is H or CH_3 .
27. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 26, wherein R^{3d} is H.
28. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 19, wherein R^3 is:



10

wherein

R^{3a} is as defined in claim 20 above;

R^{3j} is (C_{1-4}) alkoxy, OH, $O(C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})COOH$, $(C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})$, halogen; (C_{2-6}) alkenylCOOH, (C_{1-6}) alkyl-hydroxy, COOH, or azido;

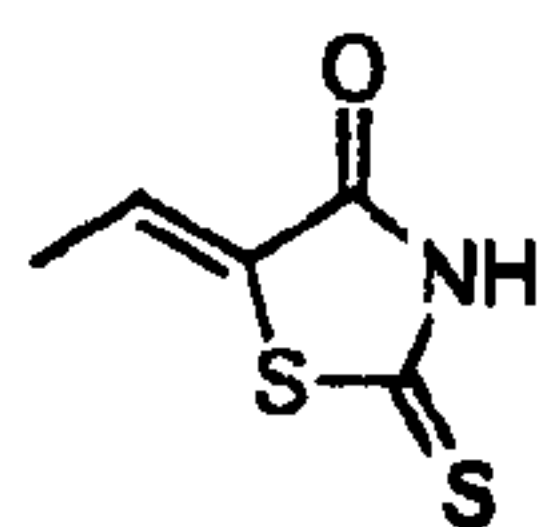
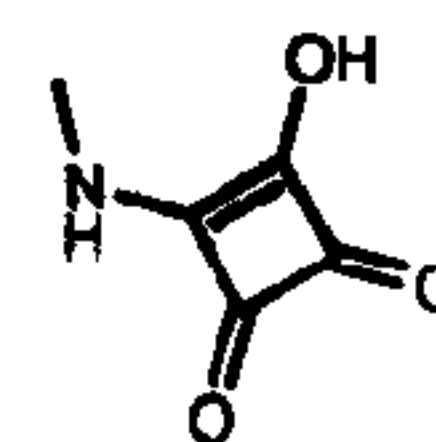
15

R^{3k} is OH, $(CH_2)_pCOOH$ where p is an integer from 1 to 4, amino, (C_{1-4}) alkoxy, $NHCOCOOH$, $NH(C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})COOH$, $O(C_{1-6} \text{ alkyl})COOH$, COOH, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to

296

4 substituents selected from the group consisting of:

CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH; -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH,



, NHCONH₂, NHCN, NHCHO, NHSO₂CF₃, NHCOCH₃,
NHCOCH₃, CONH₂, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkylCOOH, (C₂₋₆)alkenylCOOH,
and NHCOCH₂(OH)COOH.

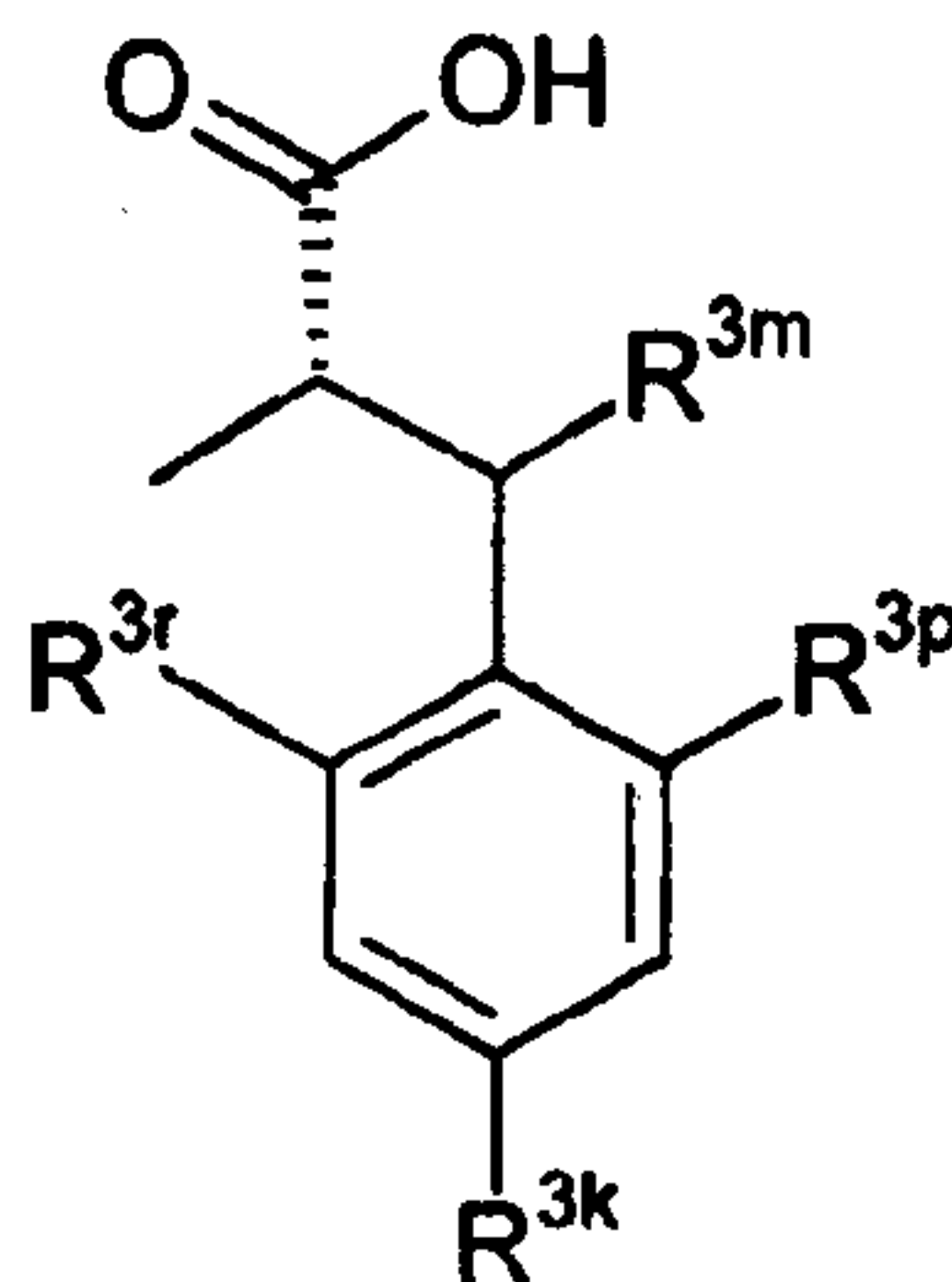
5

R^{3l} is O(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH, (C₁₋₆ alkyl), or halogen; and

m is an integer from 0 to 4.

29. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 28, wherein m is 1.

10 30. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 19, wherein R³ is :



wherein

R^{3k} is OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH where p is an integer from 1 to 4, amino,

(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, NHCOCOOH, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH, O(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH,

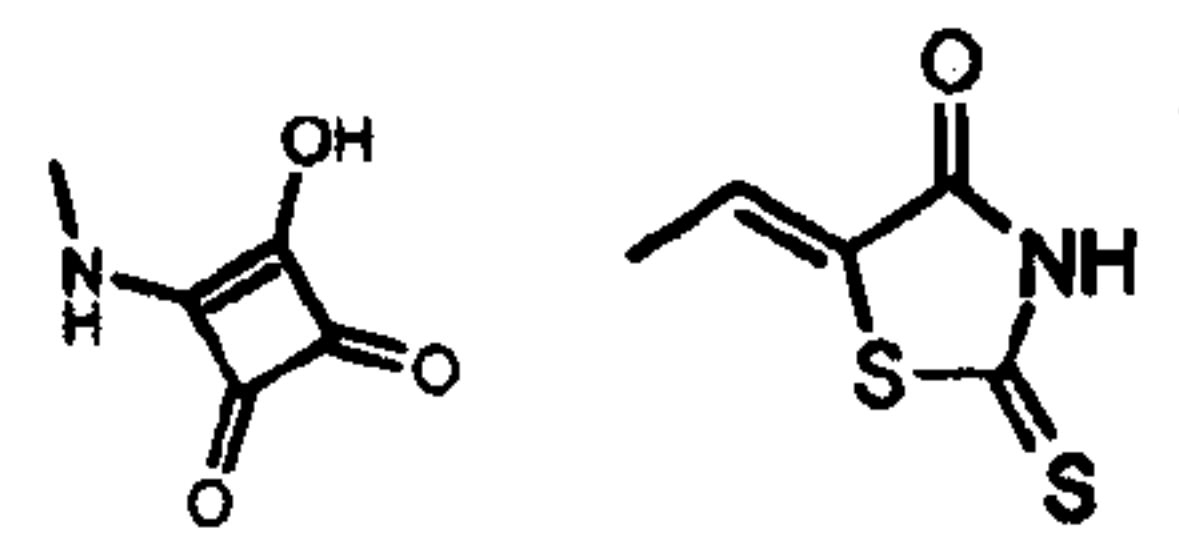
297

COOH, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from the group consisting of:

CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH, NCH(CH₃)₂, NCOCH₃, NH₂,

5

NHCH₃, and N(CH₃)₂; -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH,



NHCONH₂, NHCN, NHCHO, NHSO₂CF₃, NHCOCH₃, NHSO₂CH₃,

CONH₂, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkylCOOH, (C₂₋₆)alkenylCOOH, and

NHCOCH₂(OH)COOH;

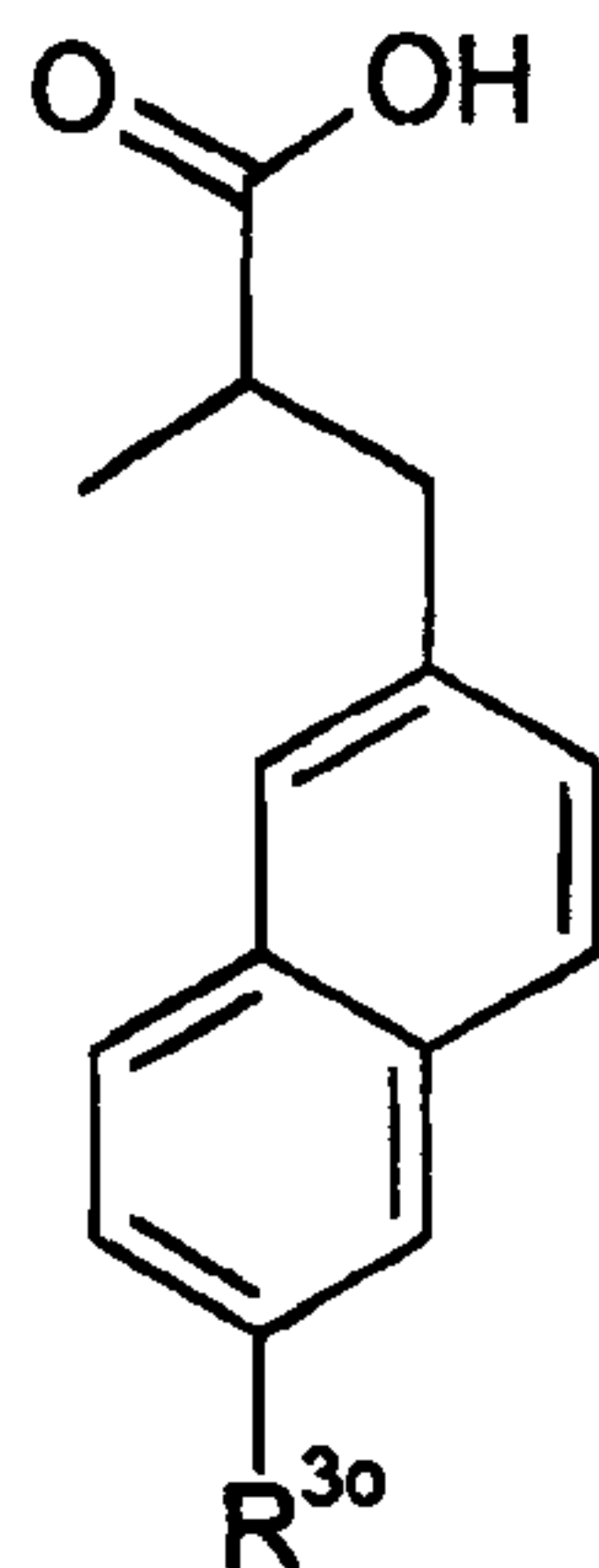
R^{3m} is H or OH;

10

R^{3p} is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆)alkyl; and

R^{3r} is H, halogen, or (C₁₋₆)alkyl).

31. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 19, wherein R³ is

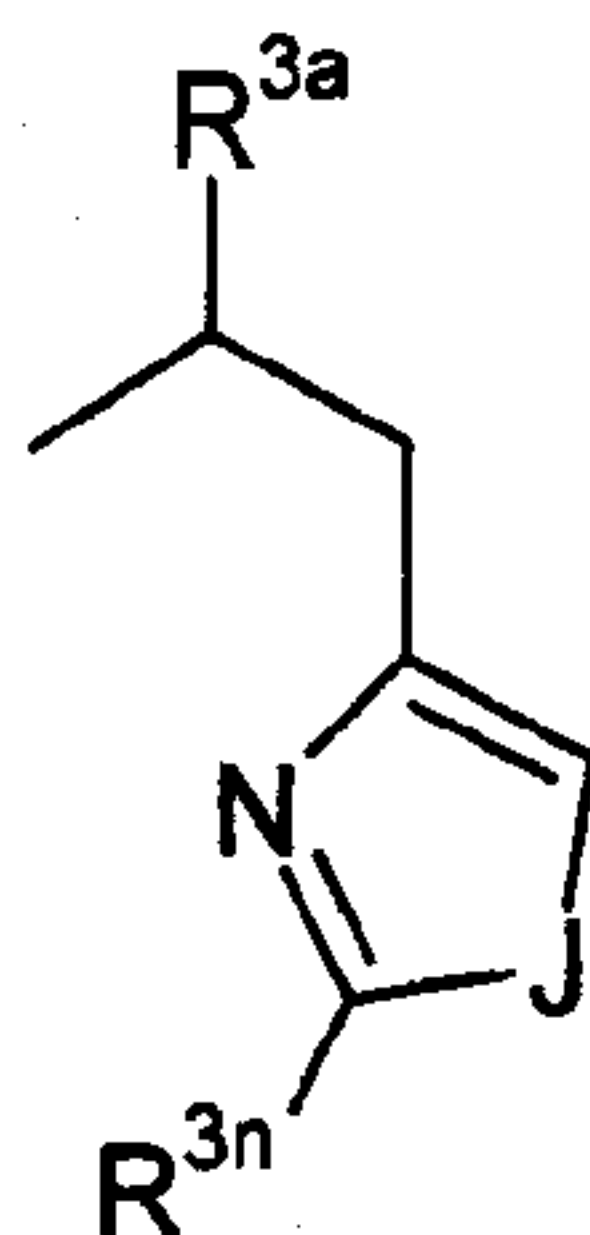


15

wherein R^{3o} is OH or O(C₁₋₆)alkyl)COOH.

298

32. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 19, wherein R^3 is:



wherein

- 5 R^{3a} is selected from H, 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

- COOH, COO(C₁₋₆)alkyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from the group consisting of: CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH, NCH(CH₃)₂, NCOCH₃, NH₂, NHCH₃, N(CH₃)₂, -CONH₂, -COCH₃, -COCH₃ -(CH₂)_pCOOH, -OCH₂Ph, -CH₂(C₆₋₁₀)aryl-COOH, -CONHpyridyl, -CONHCH₂pyridyl, and -CONH(C₂₋₄)alkylN(CH₃)₂;

J is S or N(C₁₋₆ alkyl); and

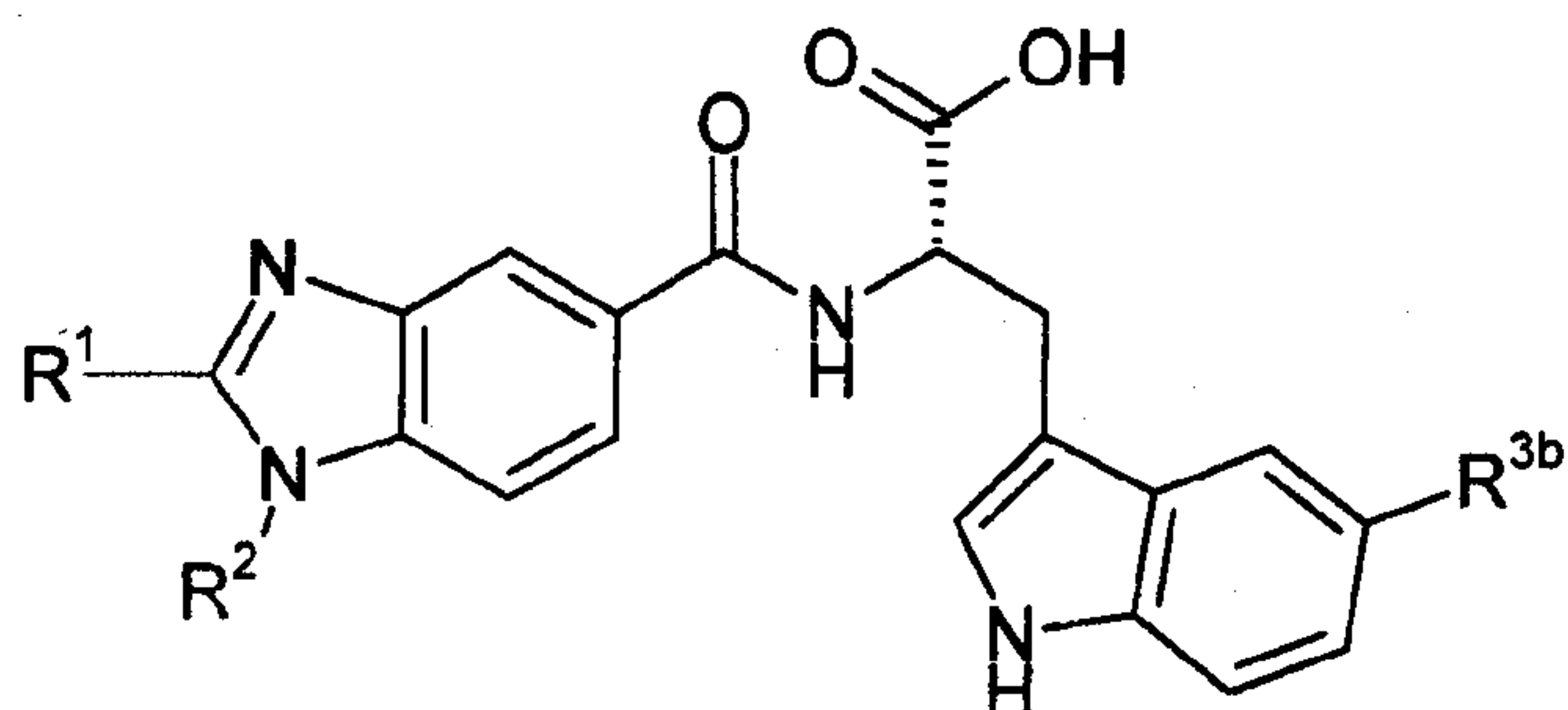
- 15 R^{3n} is H or amino.

33. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 32, wherein J is S or N(CH₃).

34. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1 having the following

299

formula:



wherein

R¹ is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle
 5 having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl,
 (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms
 selected from O, N and S,

wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and

10 phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl), alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle
 are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected
 from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH,
 -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂,
 (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl,
 15 carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being
 an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

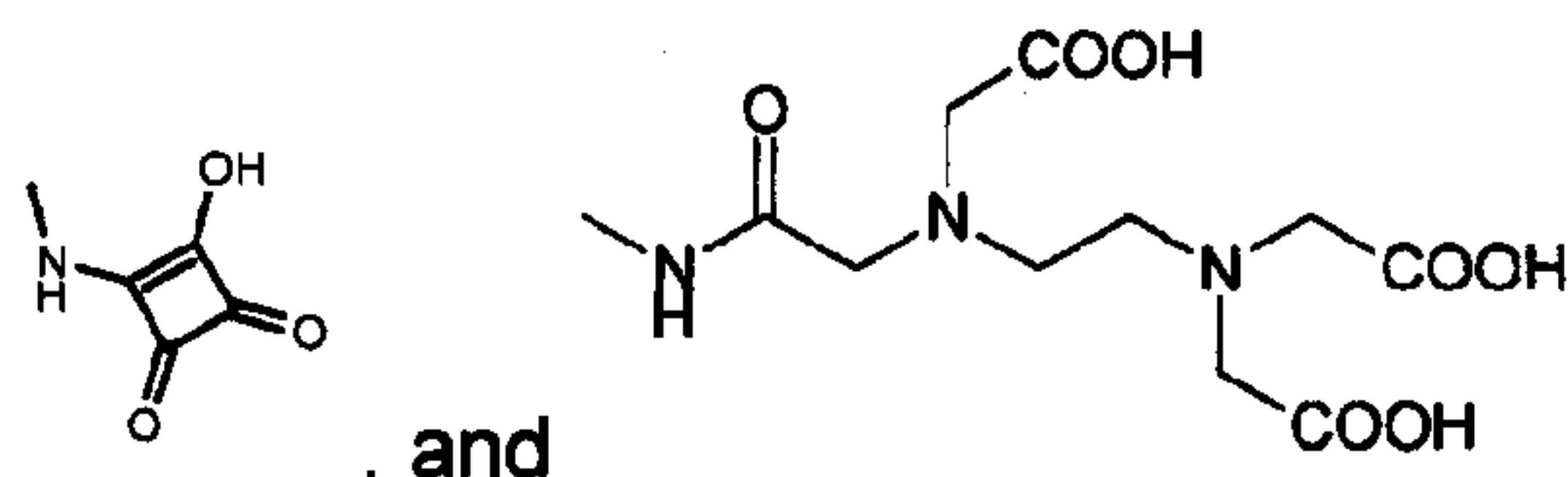
R² is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl,
 (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is
 optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen,
 20 (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH; and

300

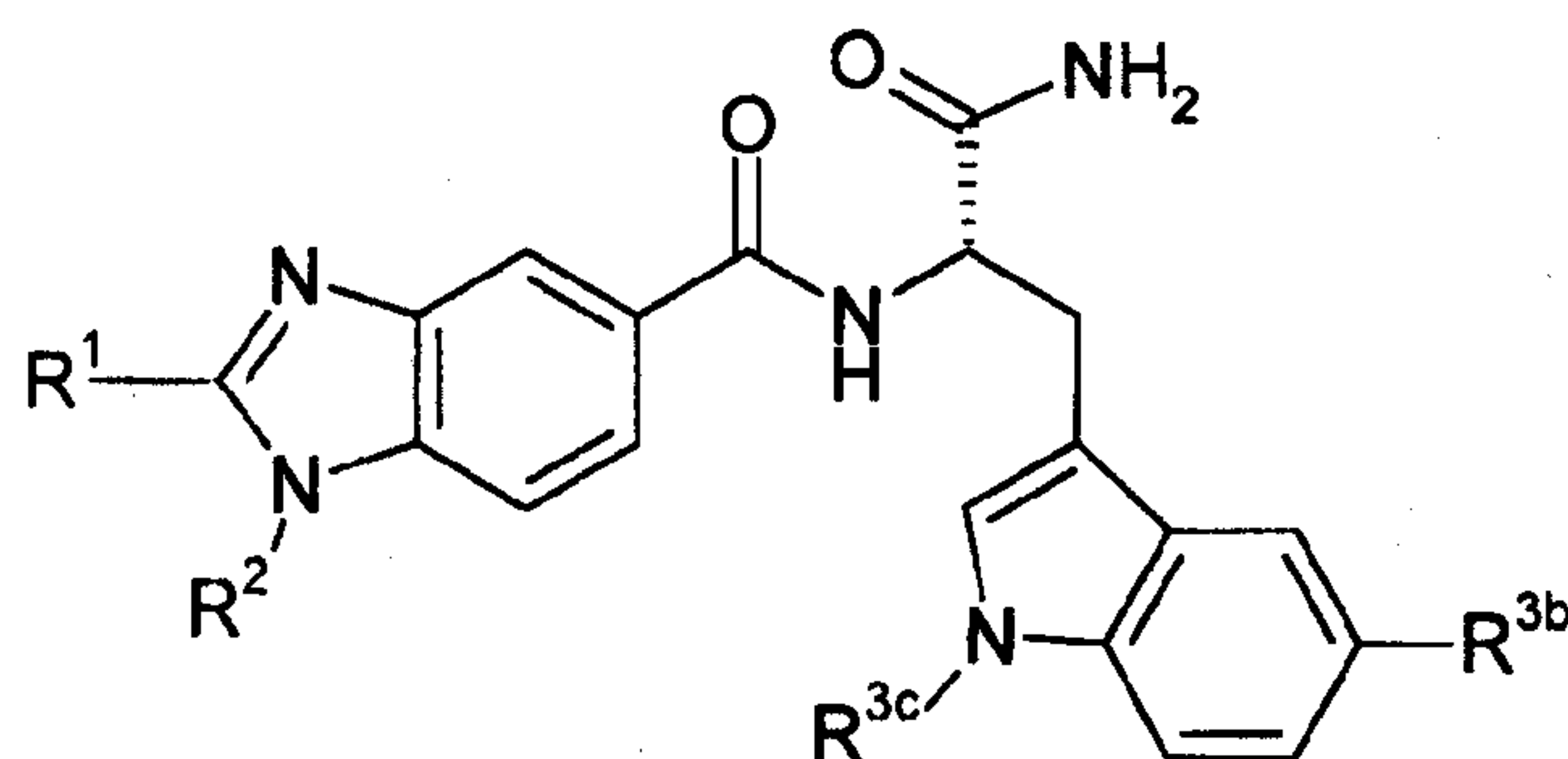
R^{3b} is selected from H, OH, OCH_2OH , amino, 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S;

$COOH$, $-O(C_{1-3})alkylCOOH$, $-NHCOCOOH$, $-NHSO_2CH_3$,
 $-NHSO_2CF_3$,

5



35. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1 having the following formula:



10

wherein

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

phenyl, phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl, (C_{2-6})alkenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl, (C_{3-6})cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, CF_3 , 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

15

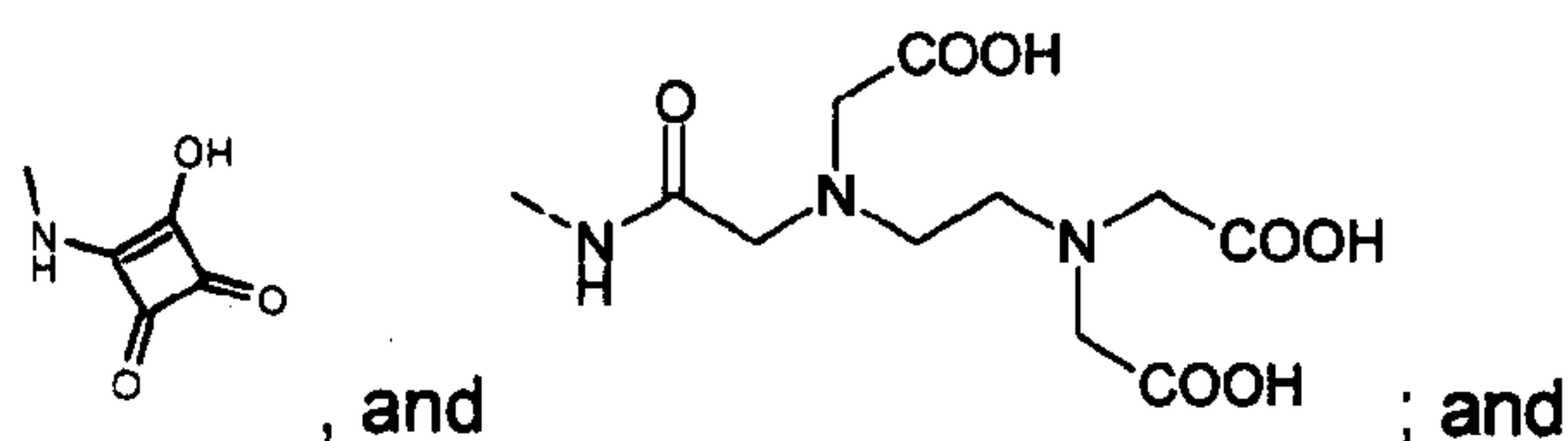
wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C_{2-6})alkenyl and phenyl(C_{1-3})alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C_{1-6})alkyl, and heterobicycle

301

are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

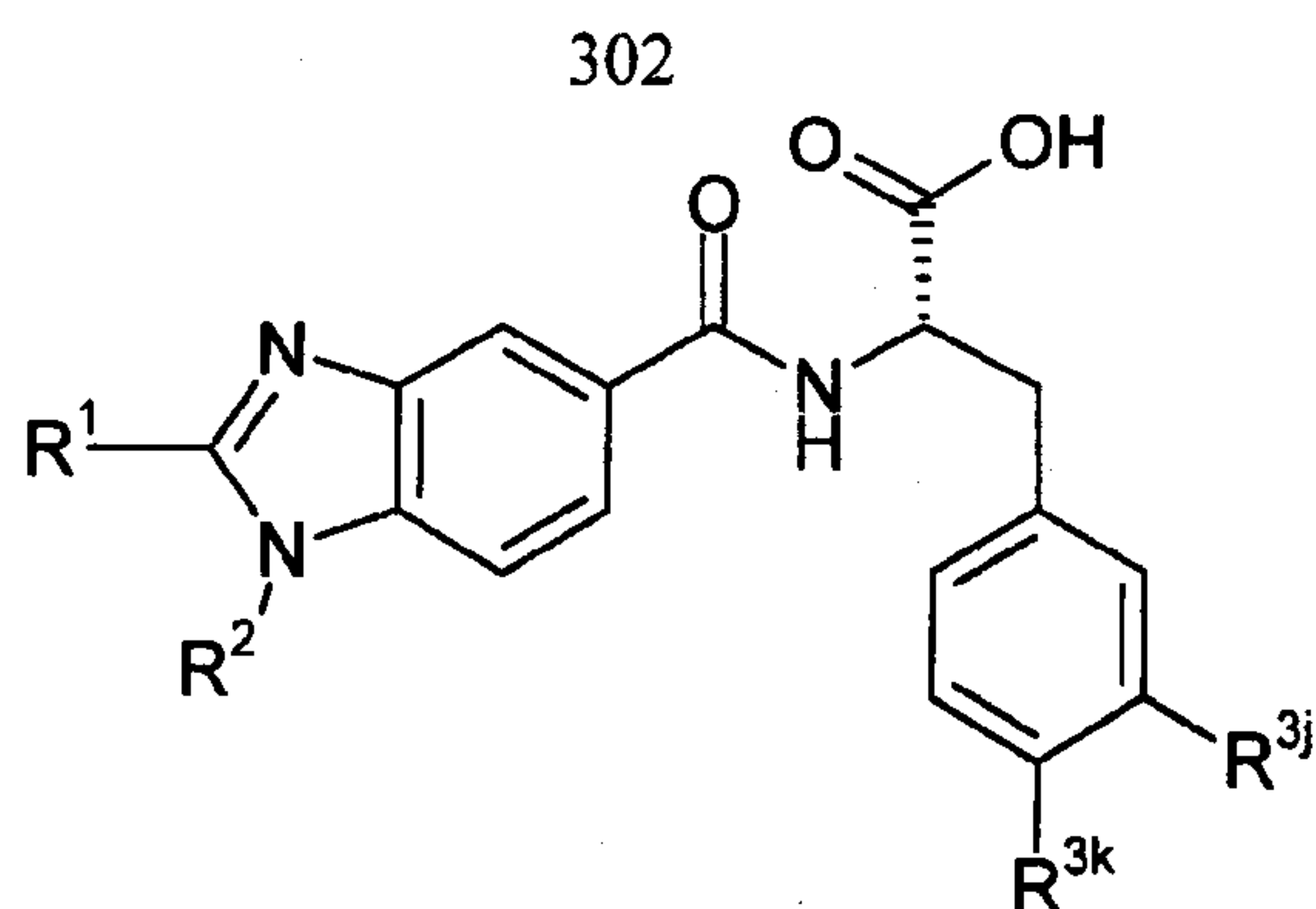
R^2 is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH; and

R^{3b} is selected from H, OH, OCH₂OH, amino, 5- or 10-atom heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S; COOH, -O(C₁₋₃)alkylCOOH, -NHCOCOOH, -NHSO₂CH₃, -NHSO₂CF₃,



R^{3c} is selected from H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl or -(CH₂)_pCOOH, wherein p is an integer from 1 to 4.

36. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



wherein

R^1 is selected from the group consisting of 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N, and S,

5 phenyl, phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, CF₃, 9- or 10-membered heterobicycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from O, N and S,

10 wherein said heterocycle, phenyl, phenyl(C₂₋₆)alkenyl and phenyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, and heterobicycle are each optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from: OH, halogen, CF₃, amino, cyano, phenyl(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, COOH, -OCH₂CONHCH₂Ph, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, -OCH₂CONH(CH₂)₂₋₃N(CH₃)₂, (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, -OCH₂CO-(morpholino), pyrrolidinyl, carboxy(C₂₋₄)alkenyl, phenoxy, -NH(C₂₋₄)acyl, -O(CH₂)_mOH, m being
15 an integer from 2 to 4, SO₃, and NO₂;

R^2 is selected from (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl(C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₆₋₁₀)bicycloalkyl, adamantyl, phenyl, and pyridyl, each of which is optionally substituted with from 1 to 4 substituents selected from halogen, (C₁₋₆)alkyl, -CH₂OH, O-benzyl and OH;

303

R^{3j} is (C₁₋₄)alkoxy, OH, O(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH, (C₁₋₆ alkyl), halogen;
(C₂₋₆)alkenylCOOH, (C₁₋₆)alkyl-hydroxy, COOH, or azido; and

R^{3k} is OH, (CH₂)_pCOOH where p is an integer from 1 to 4, amino,
(C₁₋₄)alkoxy, NHCOCOOH, NH(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH, O(C₁₋₆ alkyl)COOH,
COOH, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle having 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected
from O, N and S, said heterocycle being optionally substituted with from 1 to
4 substituents selected from the group consisting of:

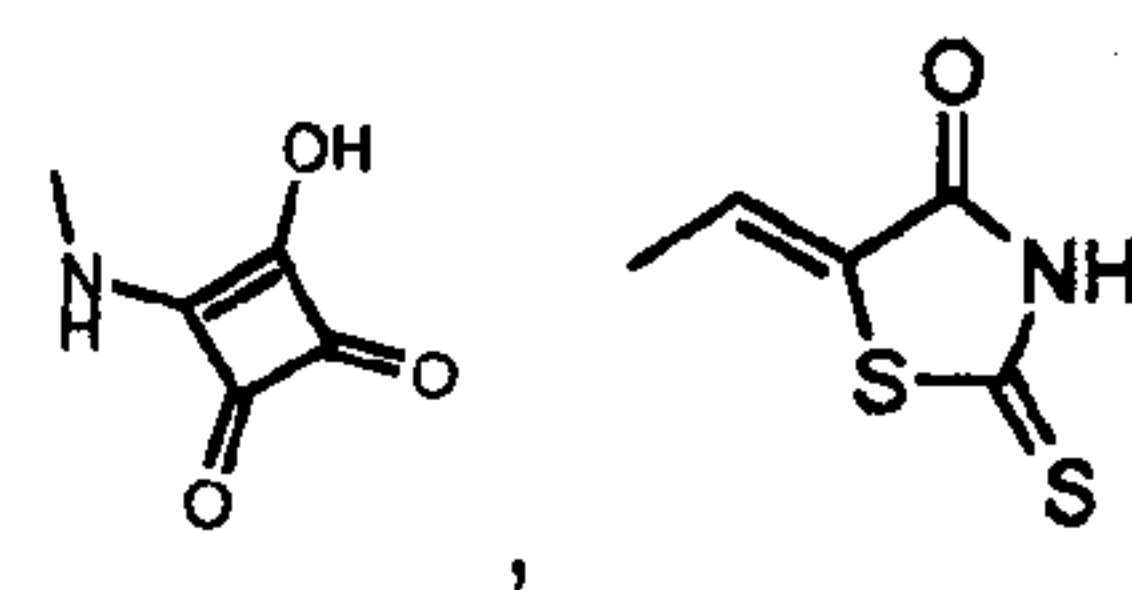
CH₃, CF₃, OH, CH₂COOH, COOH, NCH(CH₃)₂, NCOCH₃, NH₂,

NHCH₃, and N(CH₃)₂; -O-(C₁₋₆)alkyl COOH,

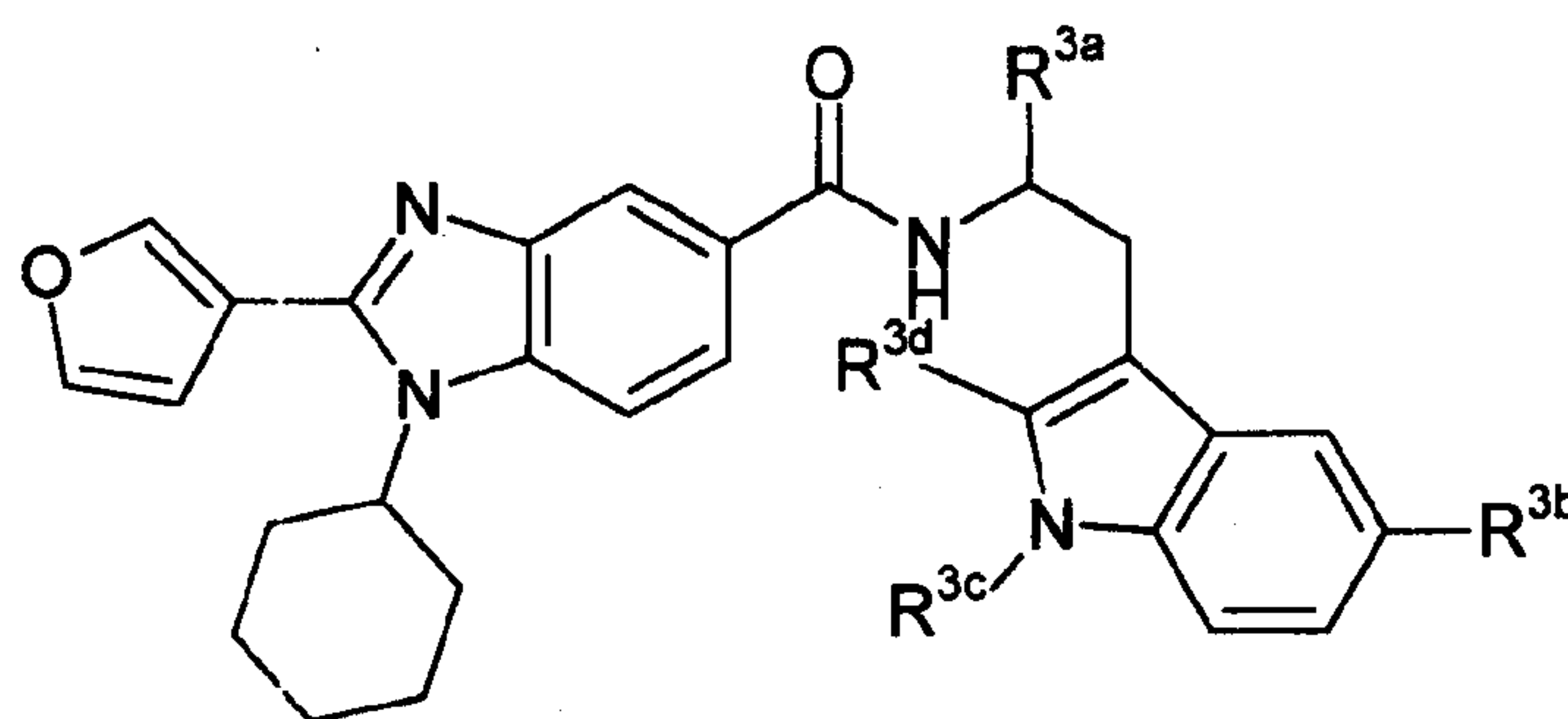
NHCONH₂, NHCN, NHCHO, NHSO₂CF₃, NHCOCH₃, NHSO₂CH₃,

CONH₂, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkylCOOH, (C₂₋₆)alkenylCOOH, and

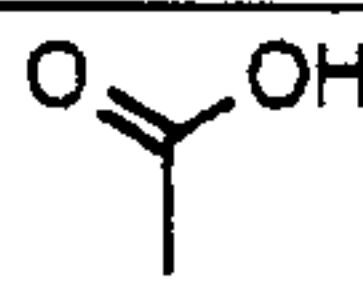
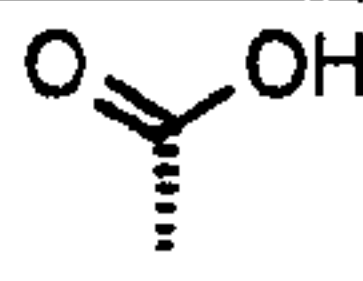
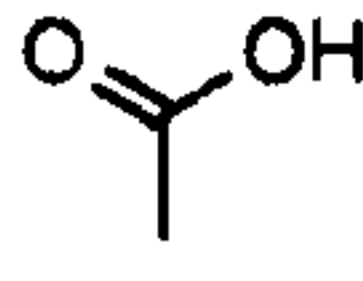
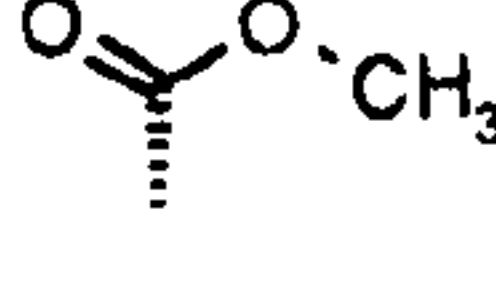
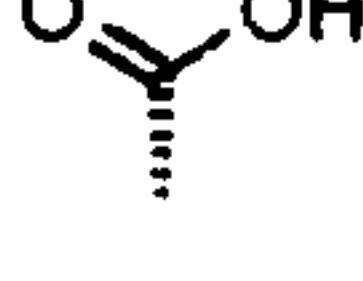
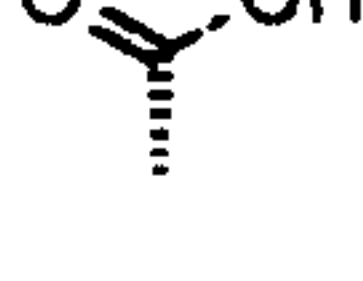
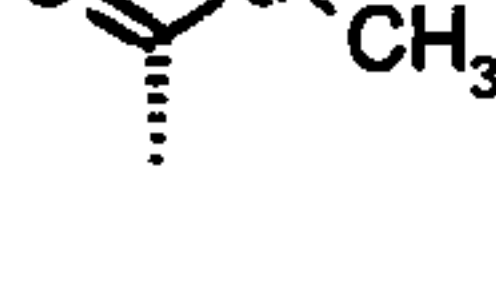
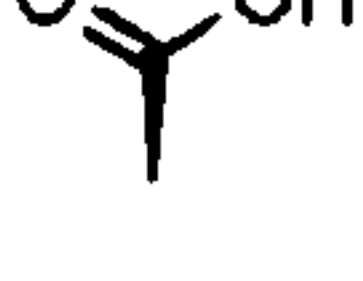
NHCOCH₂(OH)COOH.



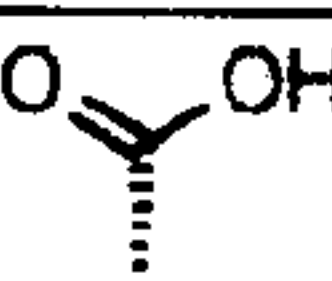
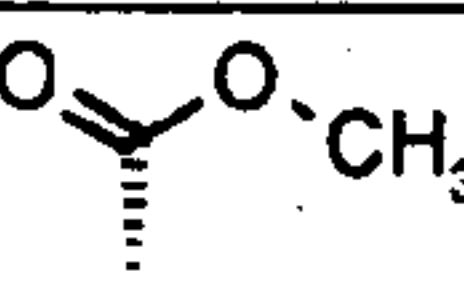
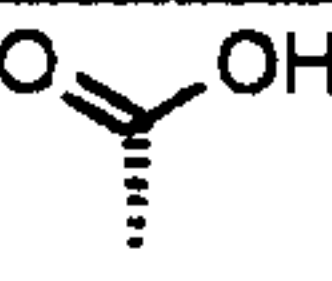
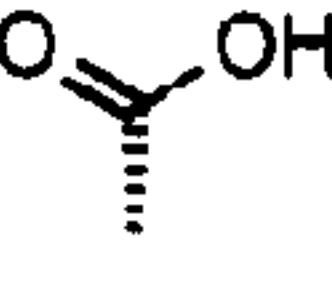
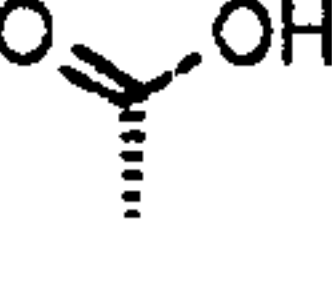
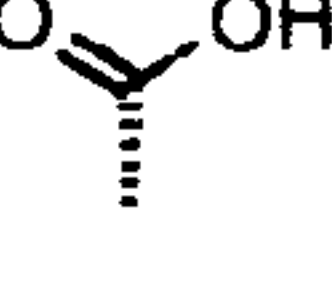
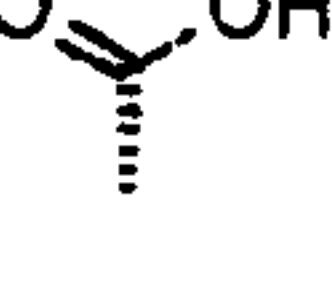
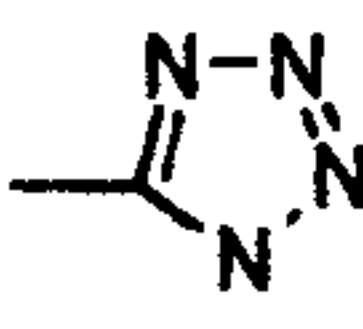
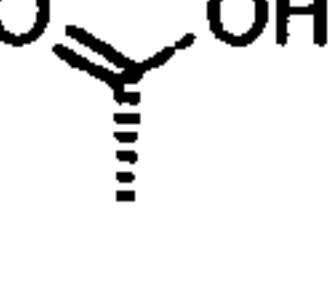
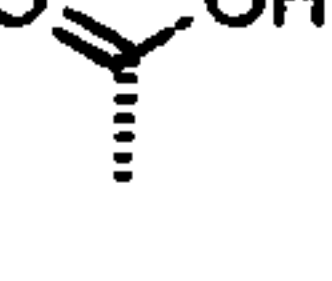
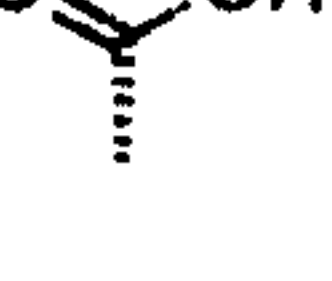
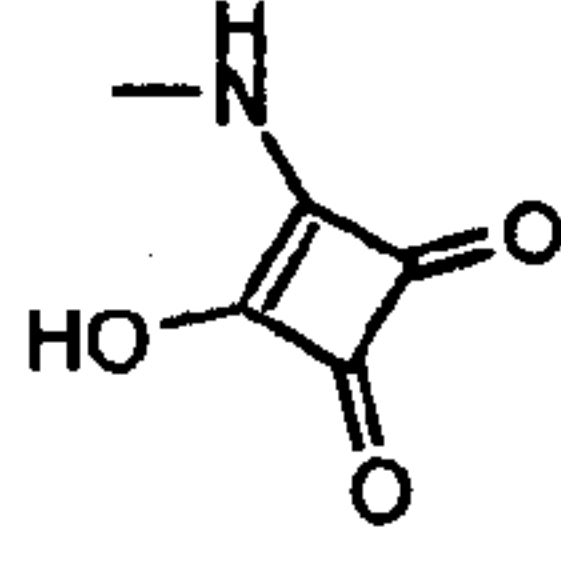
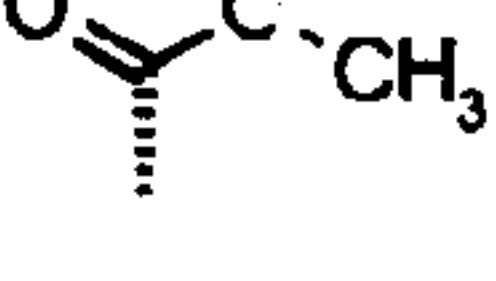
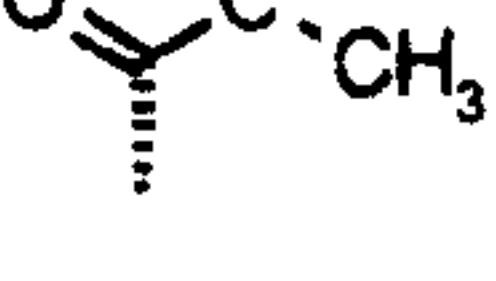
37. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following
formula:



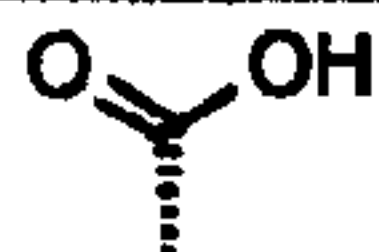
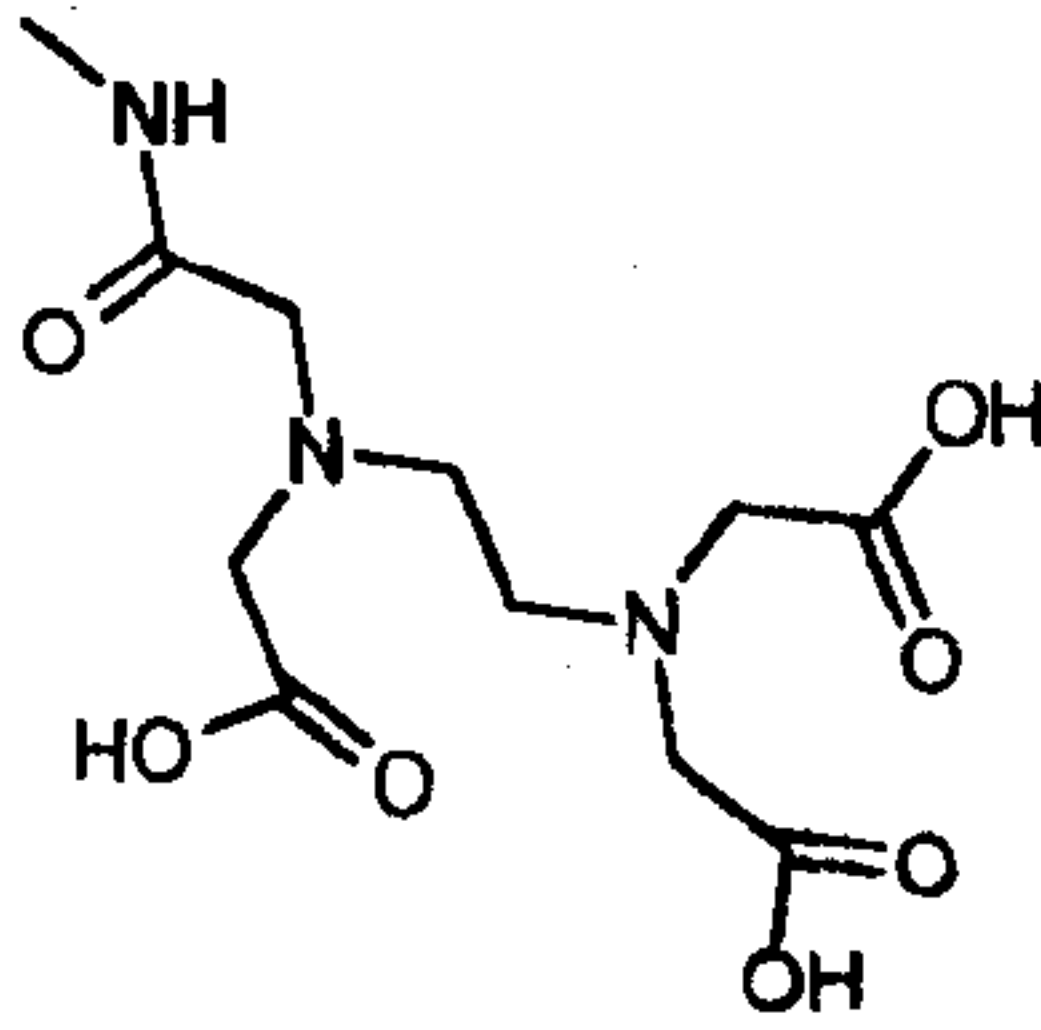
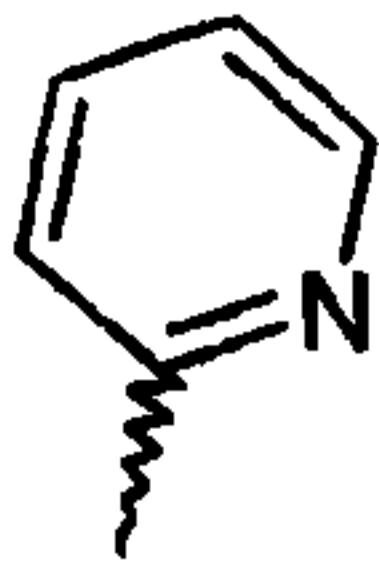
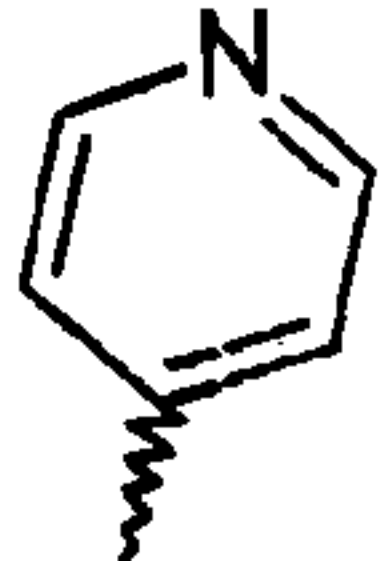
wherein R^{3a} , R^{3b} , R^{3c} , and R^{3d} are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}
11001	H	OH	H	H
11002		OH	H	H
11003		H	H	H
11004		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H
11005		OH	H	H
11006		OH	H	H
11007		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₂ COOH	H
11008		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H
11009		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H
11010		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	H	H
11011	H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	H
11012	H	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₂ COOH	H
11013		OH	H	H
11014		OCH ₂ COOH	H	H
11015		OCH ₂ COOH	H	CH ₃

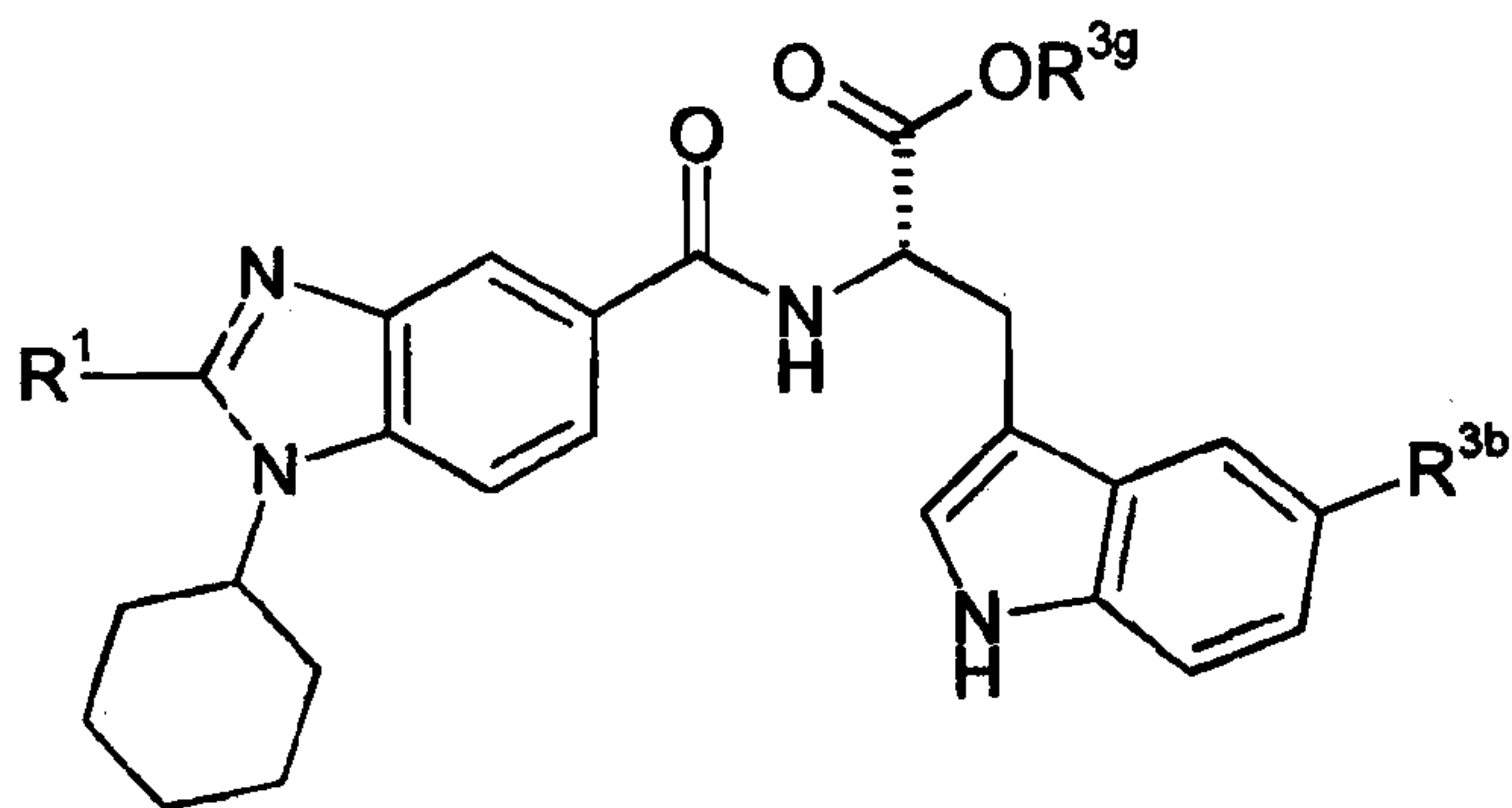
305

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}
11016		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H
11017		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H
11018		COOH	H	H
11019		CONH ₂	H	H
11020		OH	H	CH ₃
11021		OH	CH ₃	H
11022			H	H
11023		NH ₂	H	H
11024		NHCOCOOH	H	H
11025		NHSO ₂ CH ₃		H
11026		NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	H
11027			H	H
11028		OH	CH ₃	H
11029		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H

306

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3d}
11030		OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H
11031			H	H
11032		OH	H	H
11033		OH	H	H

38. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

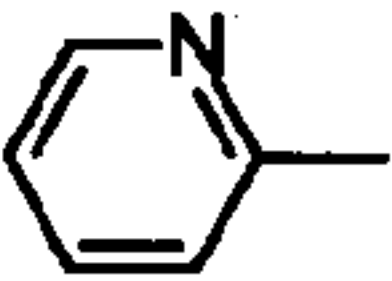
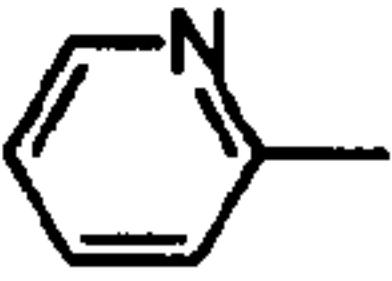
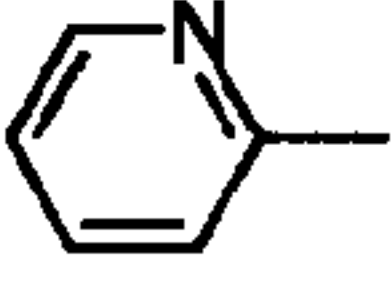
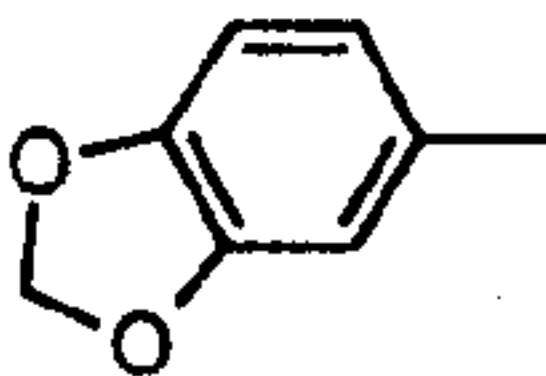
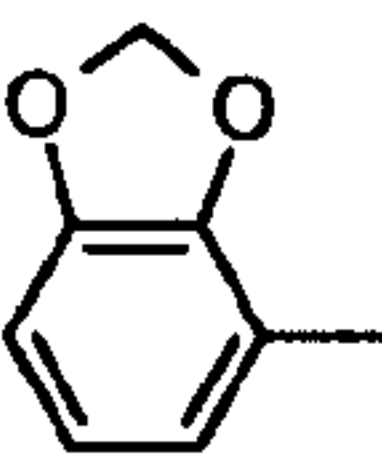
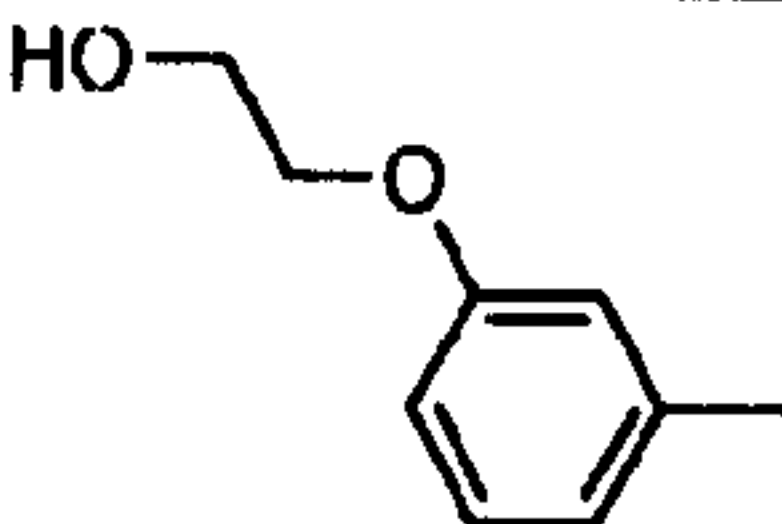
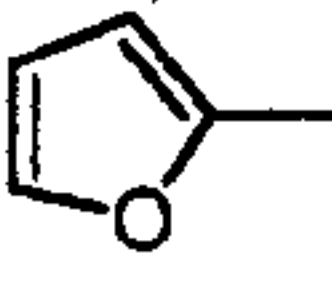
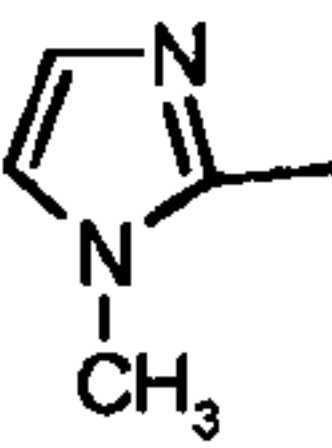
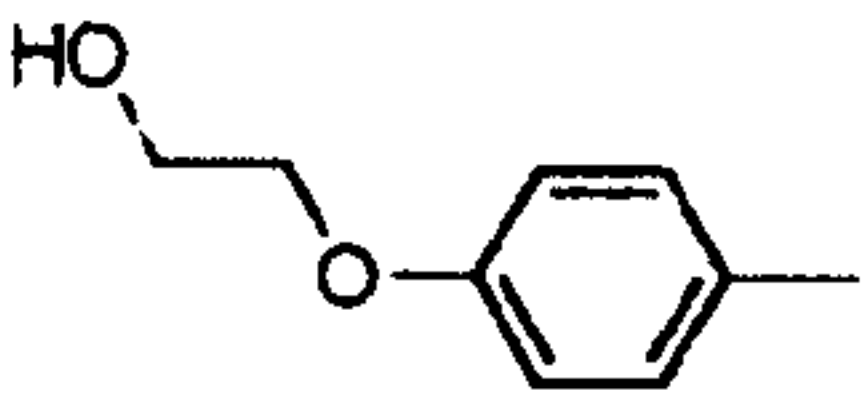
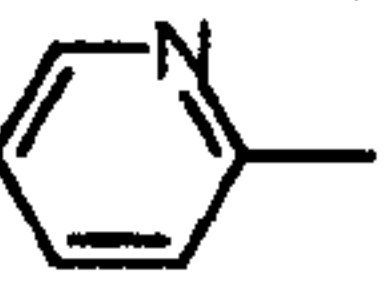
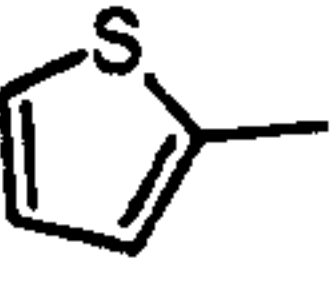


5

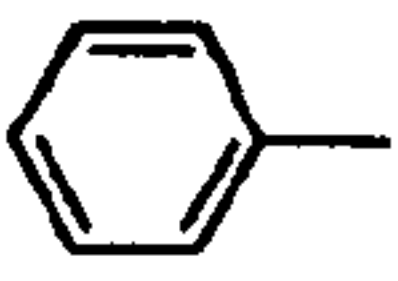
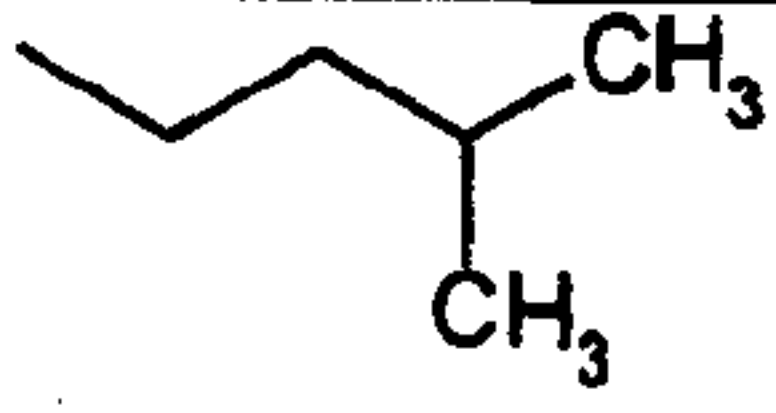
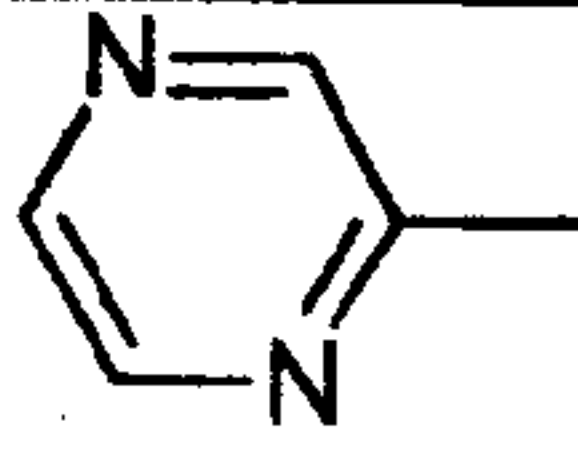
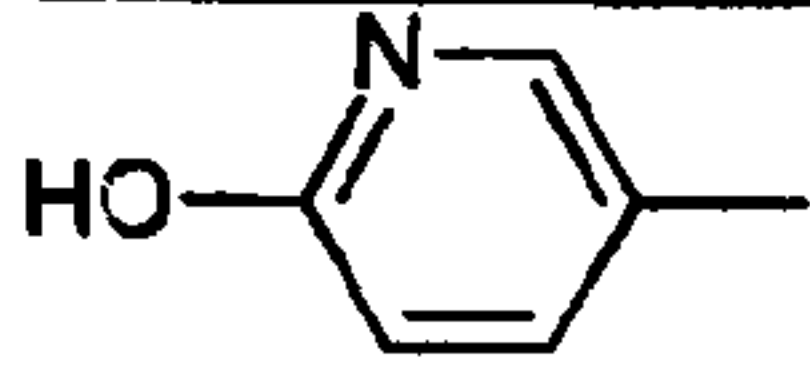
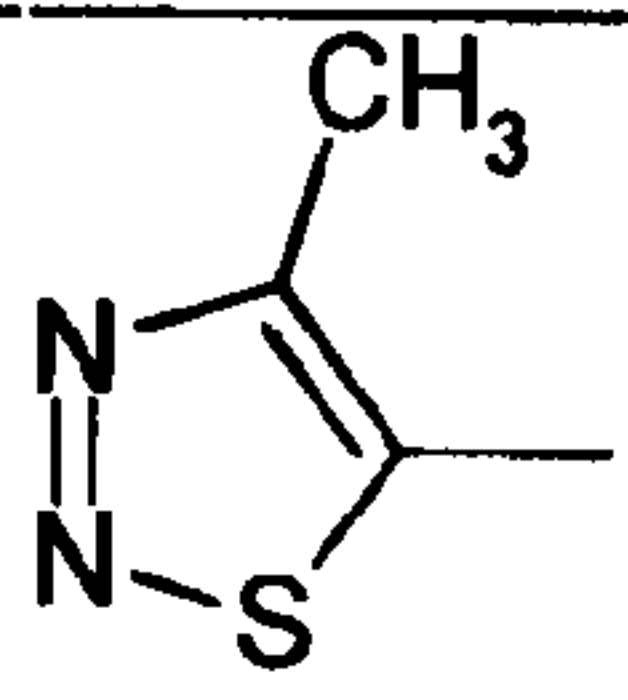
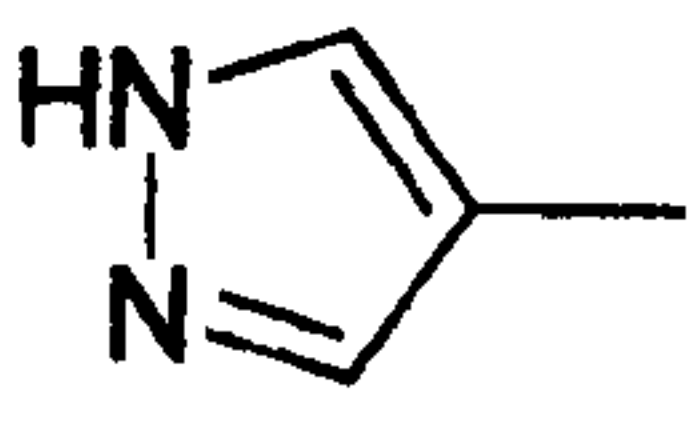
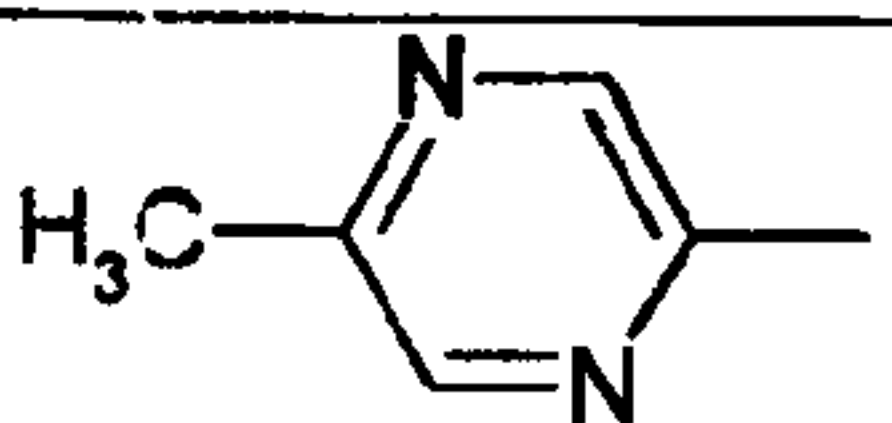
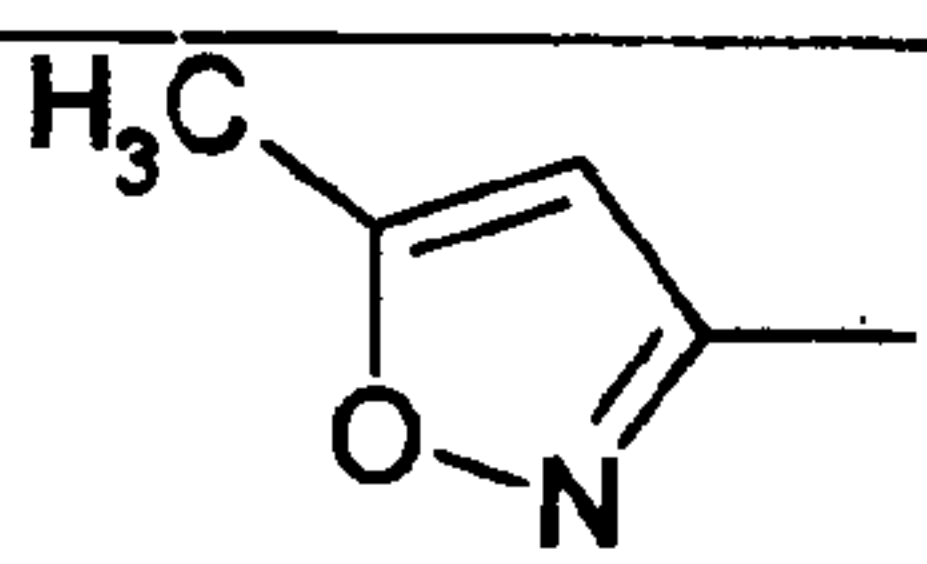
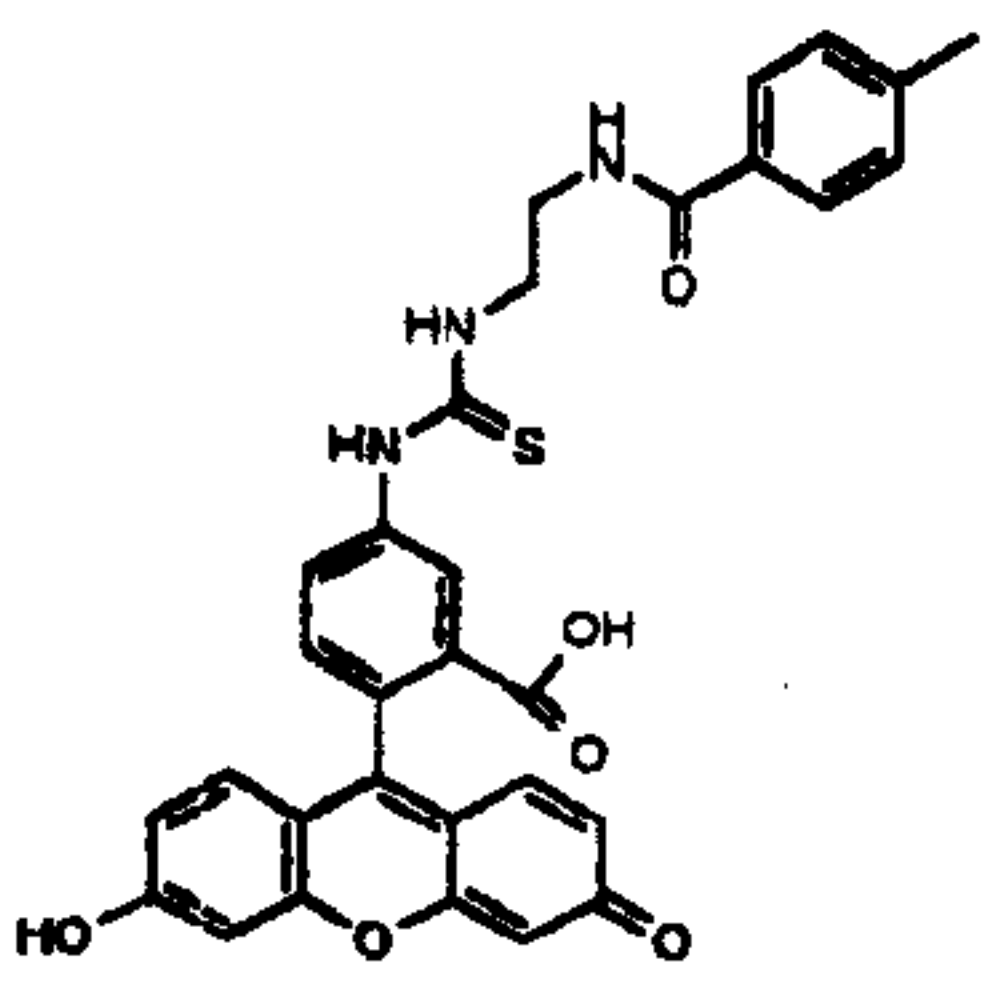
wherein R¹, R^{3g}, and R^{3b} are as defined below:

Entry #	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}

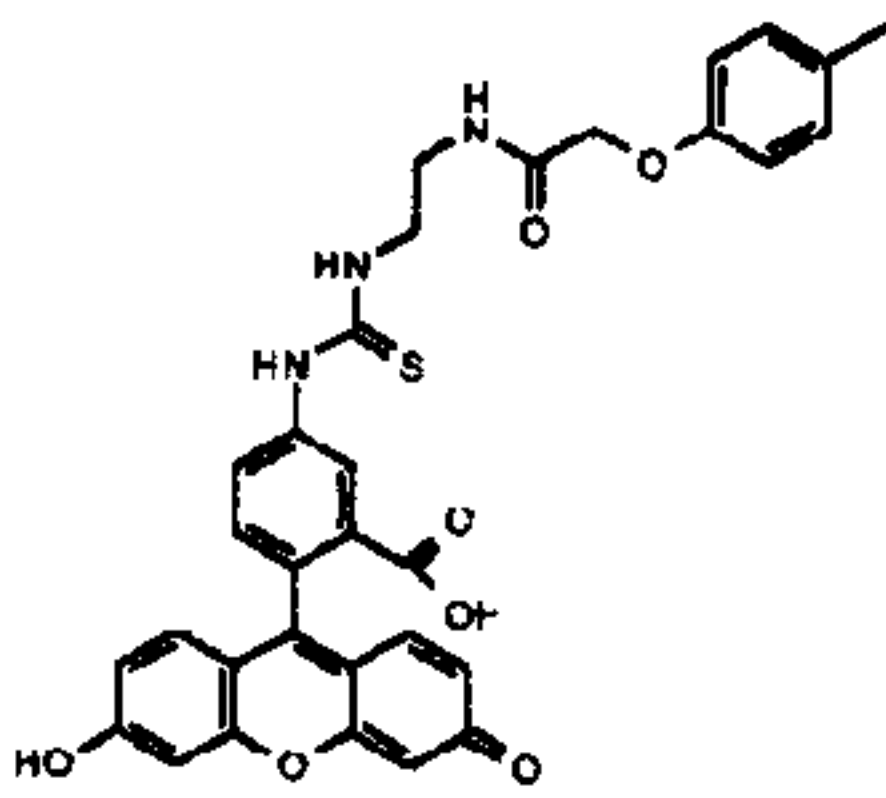
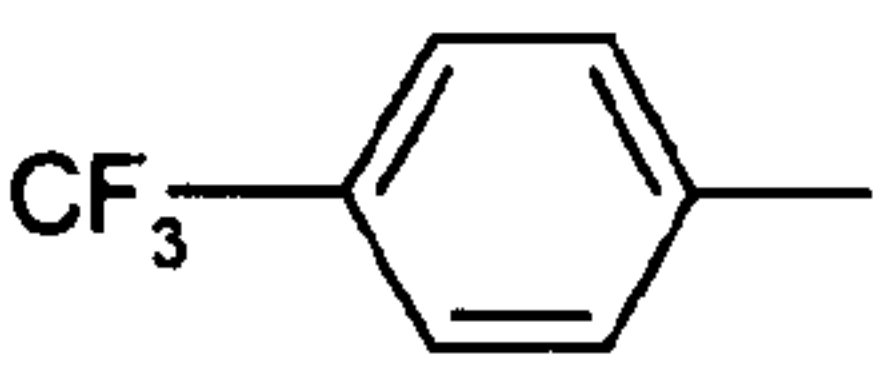
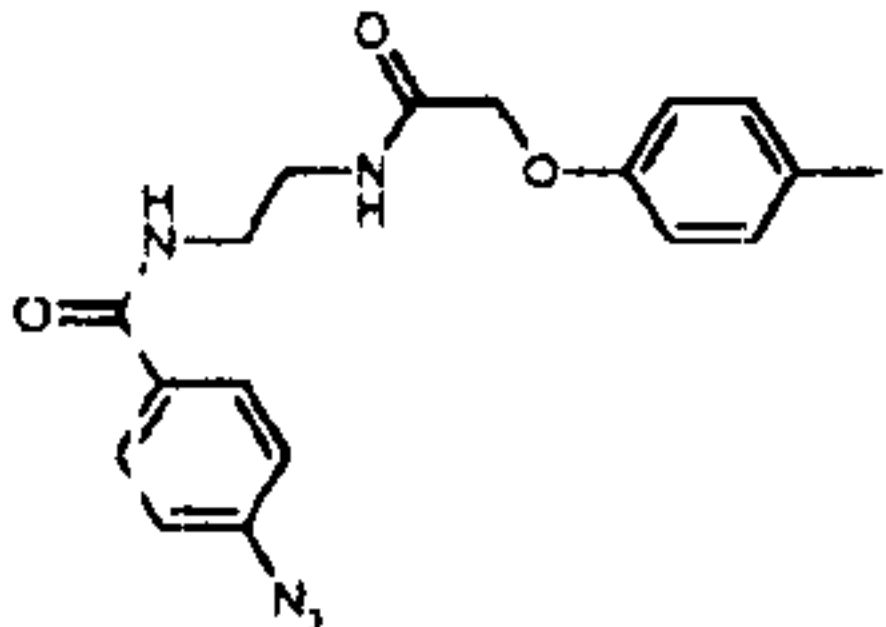
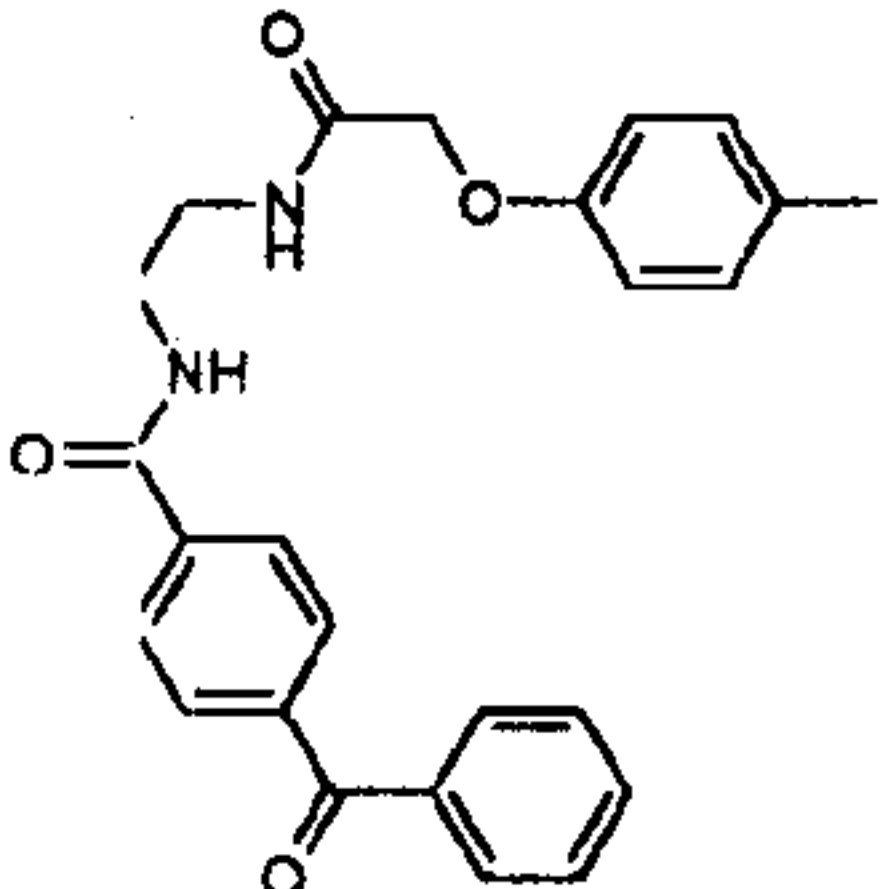
307

Entry #	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}
12001		CH ₃	OH
12002		CH ₃	OCH ₂ COOH
12003		H	OCH ₂ COOH
12004		H	OH
12005		H	OH
12006		H	OH
12007		H	OH
12008		H	OH
12009		H	OH
12010		H	OH
12011		H	OH
12012		H	OH

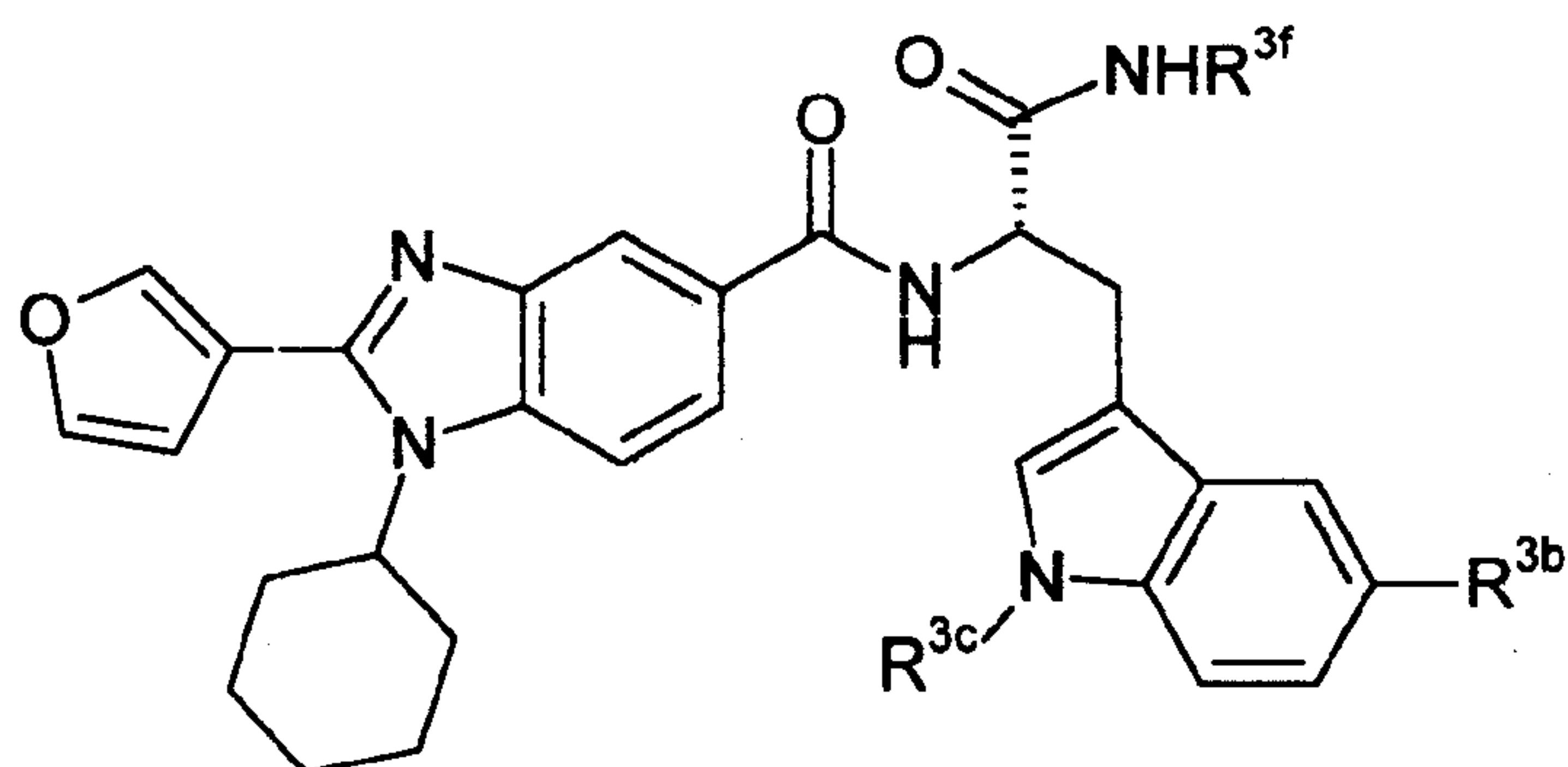
308

Entry #	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}
12013		H	OH
12014		H	OH
12015		H	OH
12016		H	OH
12017		H	OH
12018		H	OH
12019		H	OH
12020		H	OH
12021		H	OCH ₂ COOH

309

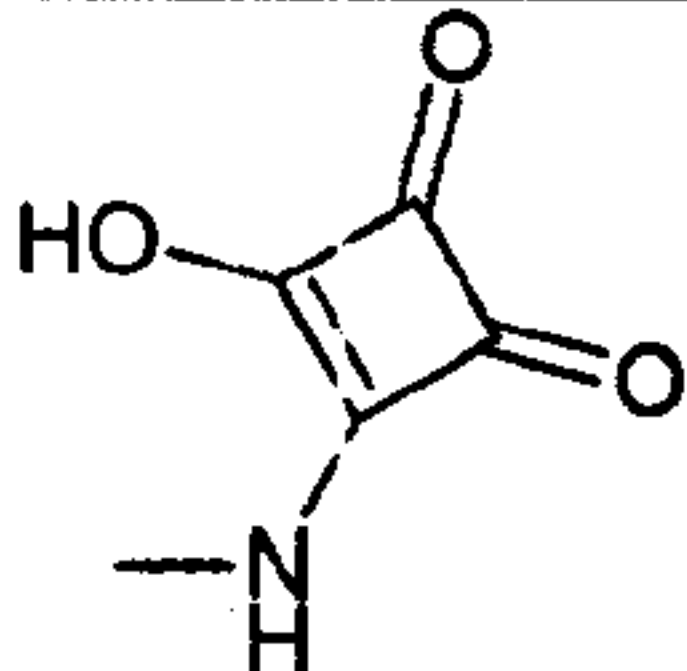
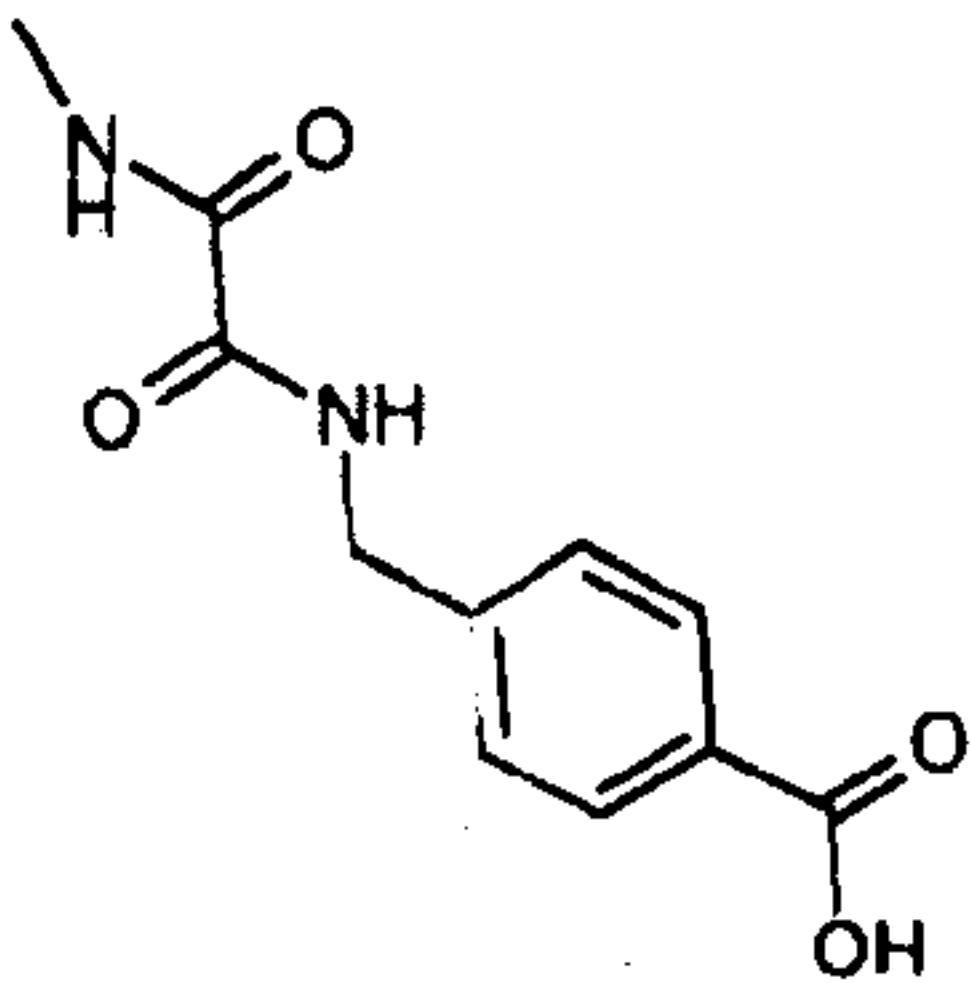
Entry #	R ¹	R ^{3g}	R ^{3b}
12022		H	OCH ₂ COOH
12023		H	OCH ₂ COOH
12024		H	OCH ₂ COOH
12025		H	OCH ₂ COOH
12026		H	OCH ₂ COOH

39. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

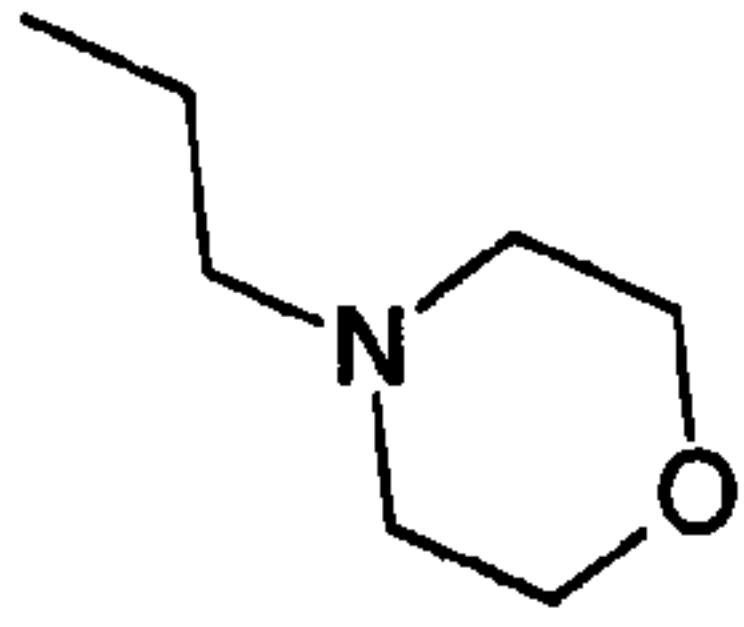
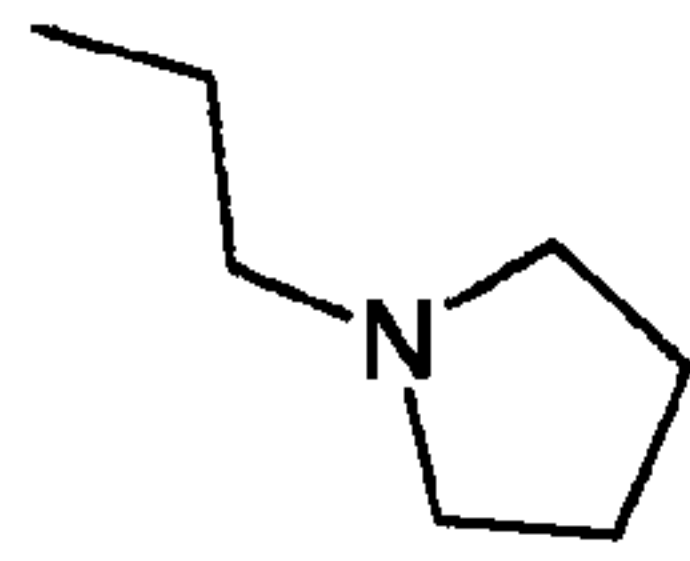
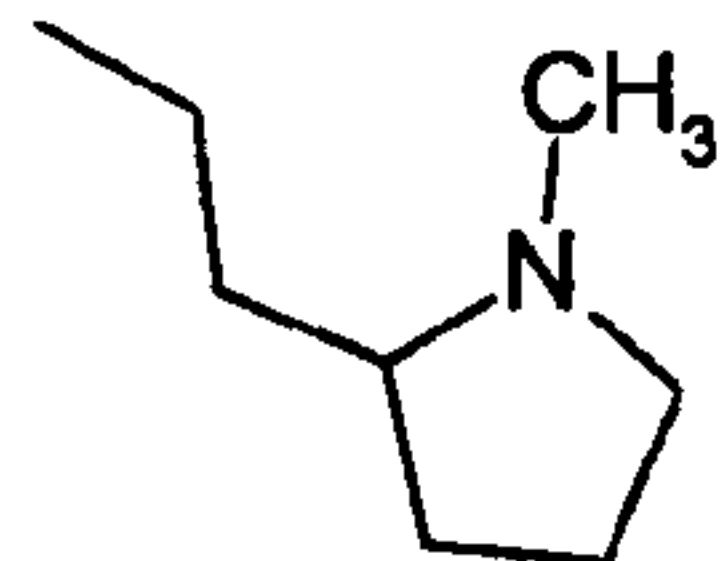


310

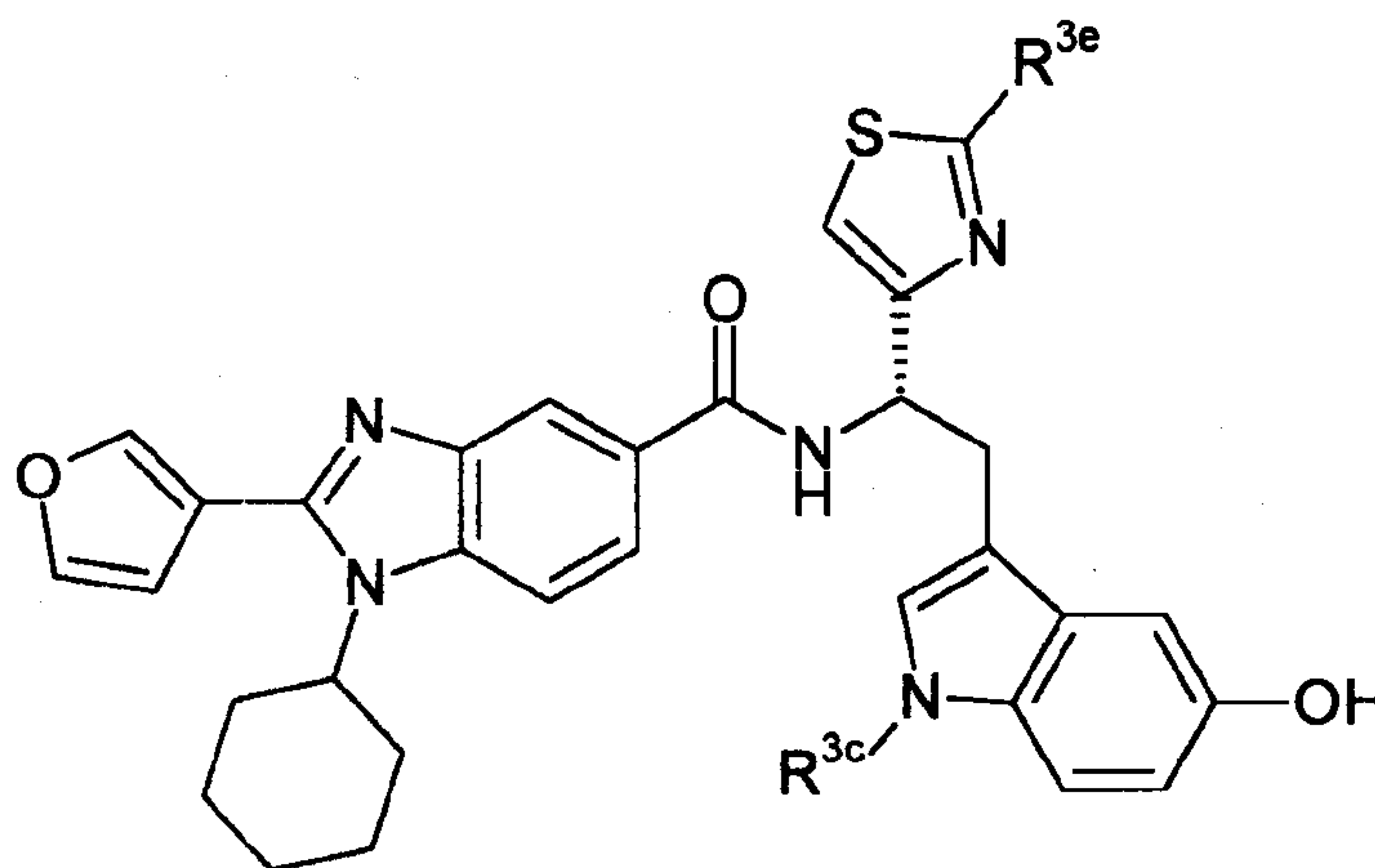
wherein R^{3b} , R^{3c} , and R^{3f} are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^{3b}	R^{3c}	R^{3f}
13001	OH	H	H
13002	OH	CH ₃	H
13003	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	H
13004		H	H
13005	NH ₂	H	H
13006	NHSO ₂ CH ₃	H	H
13007	NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	H
13008	NHCOCOOH	H	H
13009	NHCOCONH ₂	H	H
13010	NHCOCONHCH ₃	H	H
13011	NHCOCONHOH	H	H
13012		H	H
13013	NHCOCONH ₂	H	H
13014	OH	H	CH(CH ₂ OH) ₂
13015	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂
13016	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ OH

311

Entry #	R ^{3b}	R ^{3c}	R ^{3f}
13017	OH	H	
13018	OH	H	CH ₂ CH ₂ CH ₂ N(CH ₃) ₂
13019	OH	H	
13020	OH	H	
13021	OH	H	C(CH ₃) ₂ CH ₂ OH
13022	OH	H	CH ₂ CH(OH)CH ₂ OH

40. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



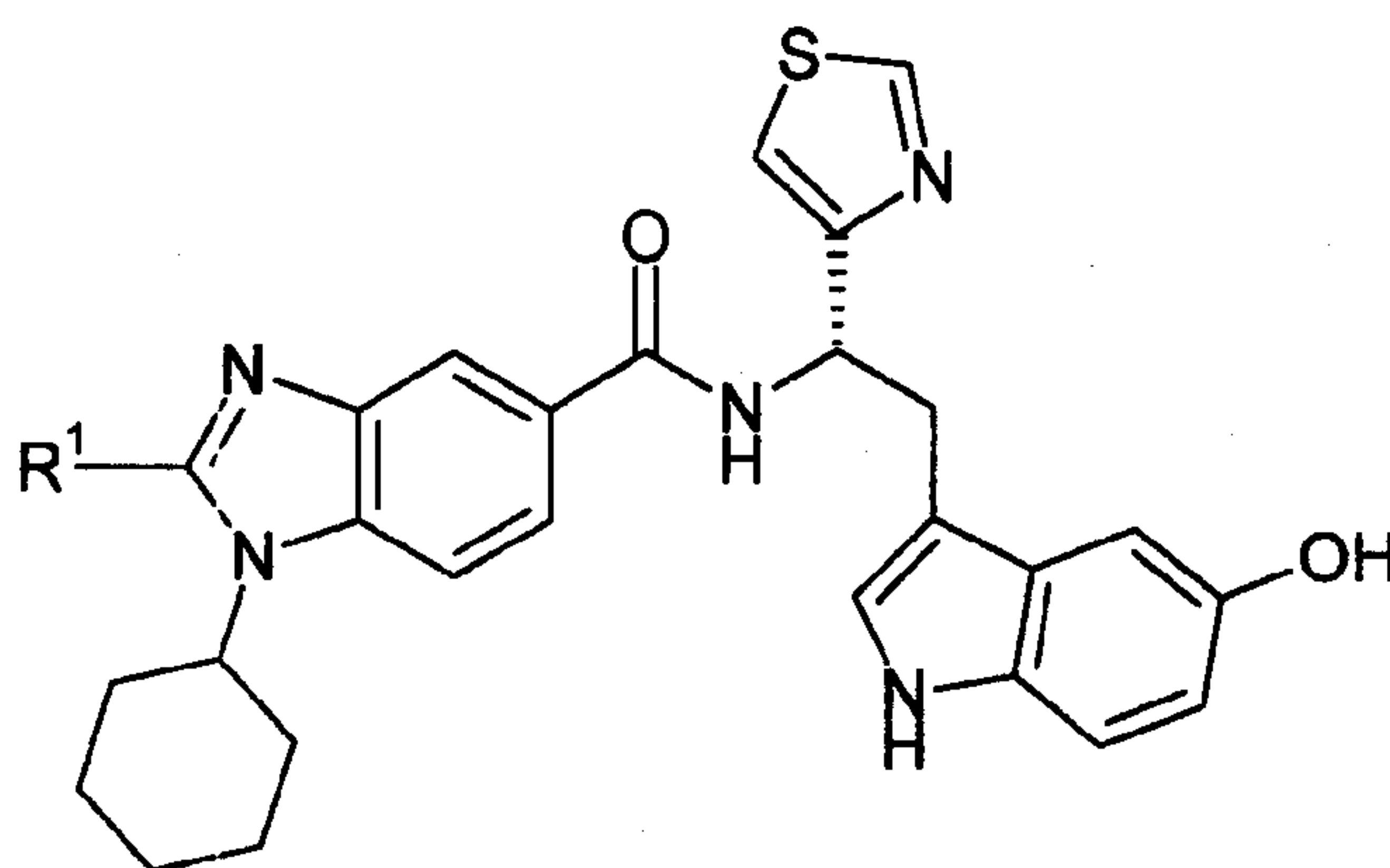
5

wherein R^{3c} and R^{3e} are as defined as follows:

312

Entry #	R ^{3c}	R ^{3e}
14001	H	CH ₃
14002	H	NH ₂
14003	CH ₃	NH ₂
14004	H	NHCH ₃
14005	H	N(CH ₃) ₂
14006	H	NHCOCH ₃
14007	H	H

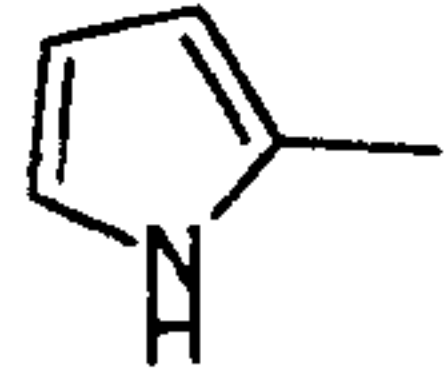
41. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



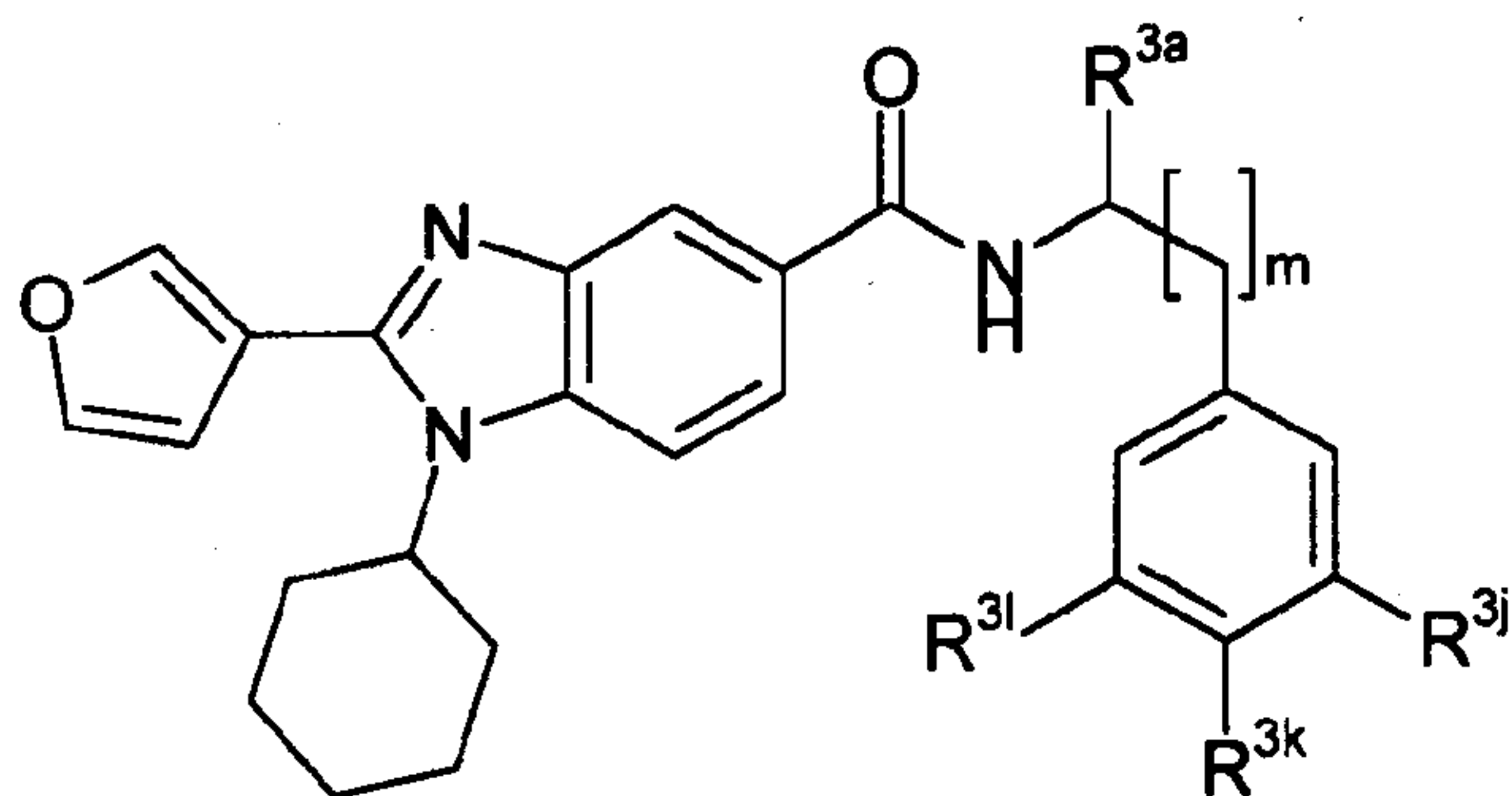
5

wherein R¹ is as defined as follows:

Entry #	R ¹
15001	
15002	

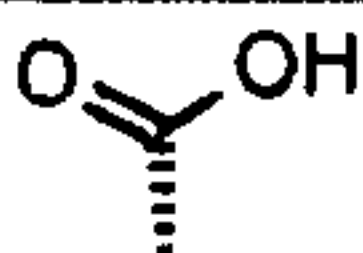
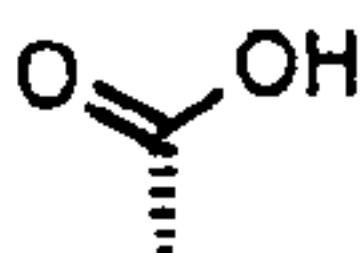
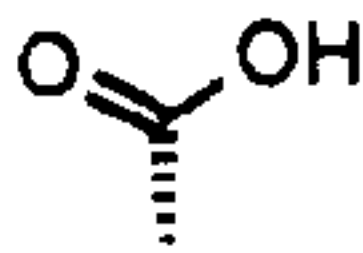
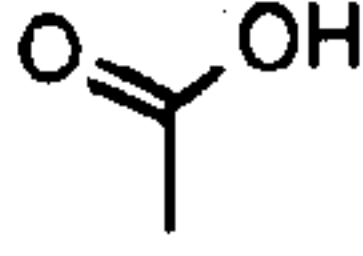
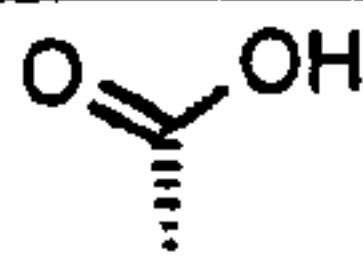
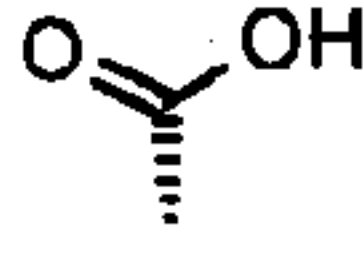
313	
15003	

42. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1 having the following formula:

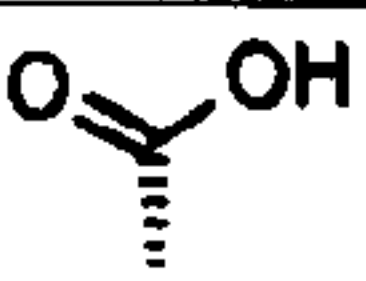
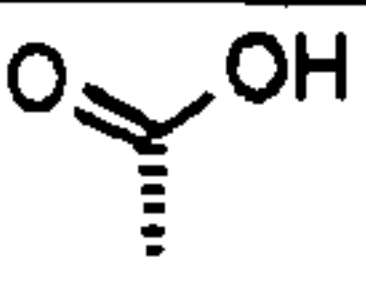
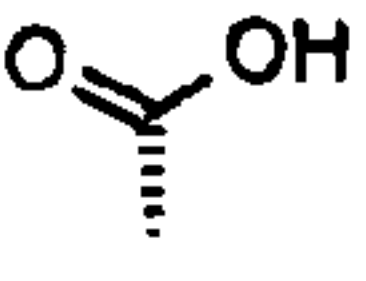
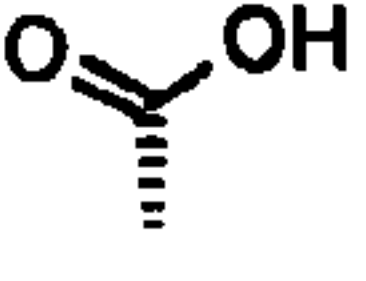
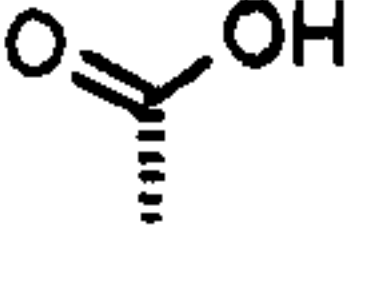
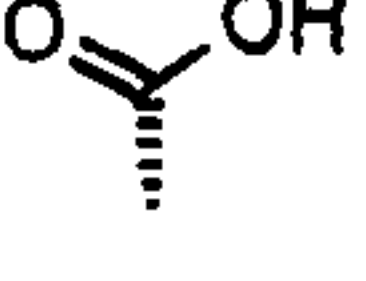
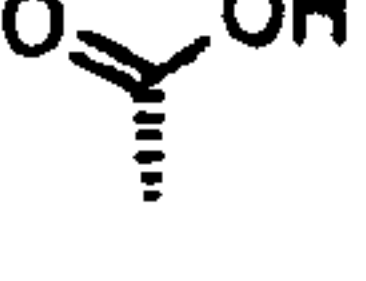
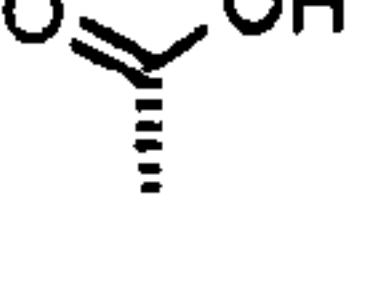
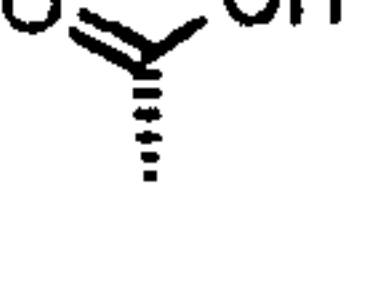
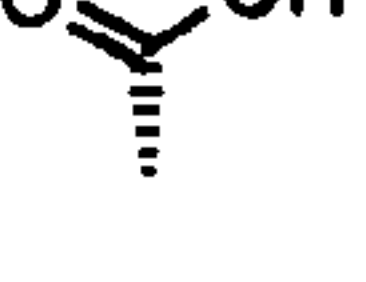
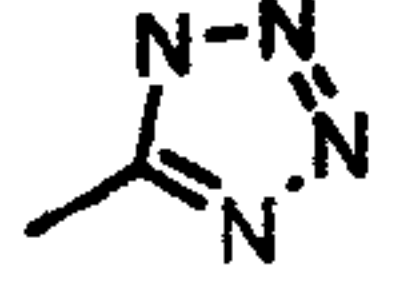
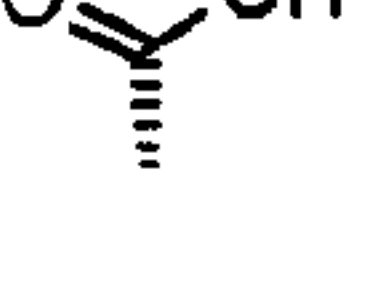
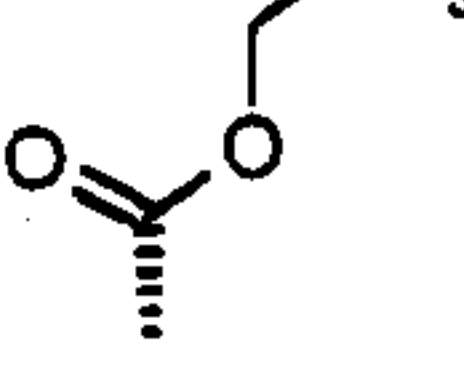
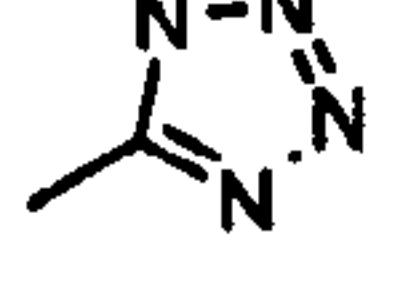
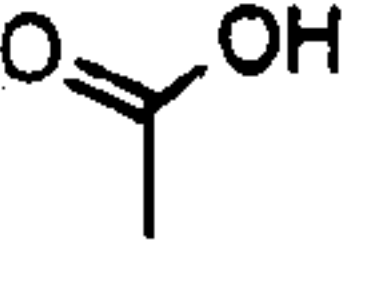


5

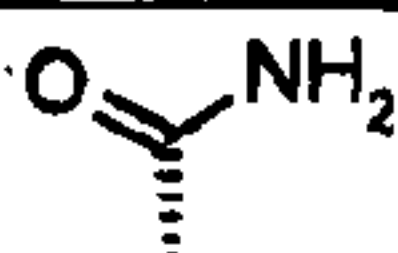
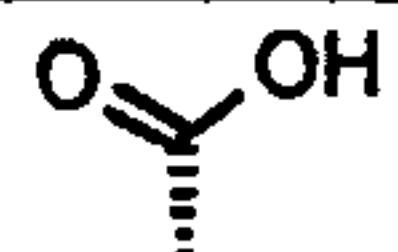
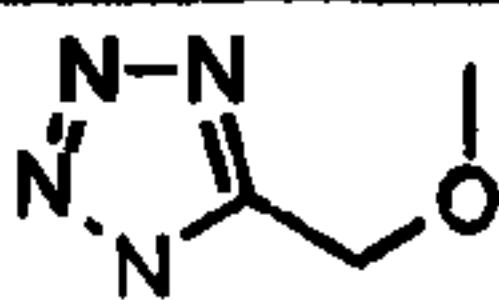
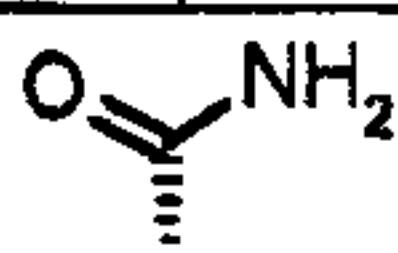
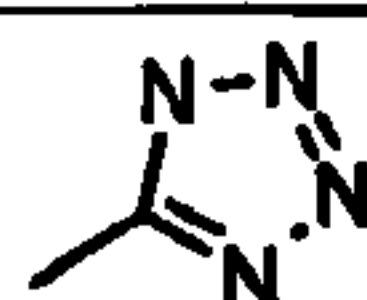
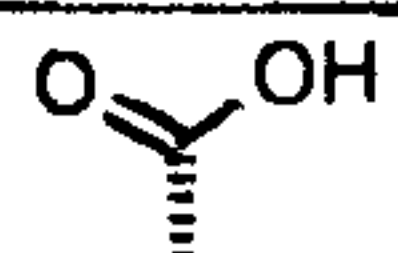
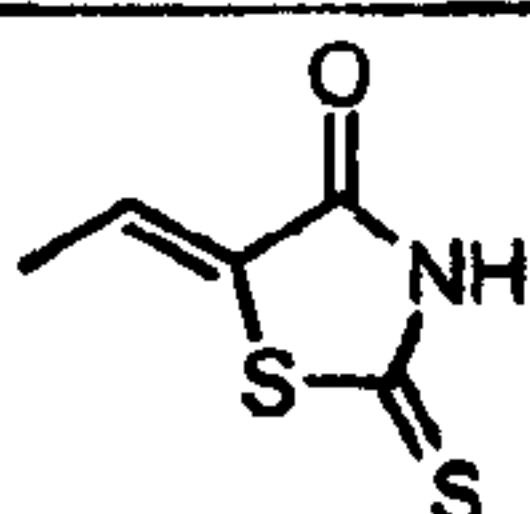
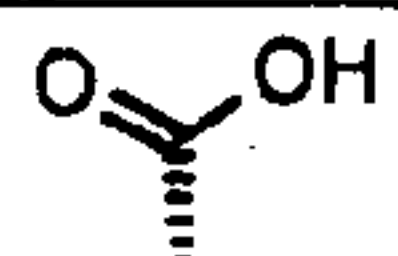
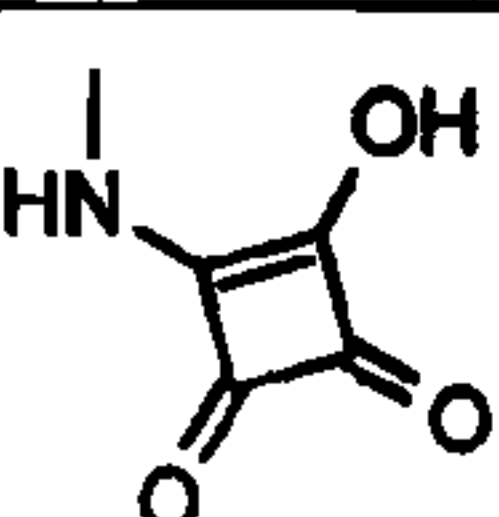
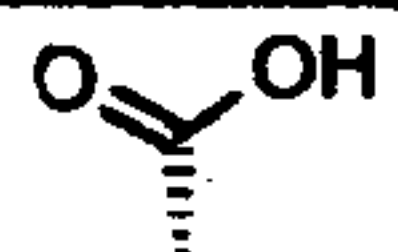
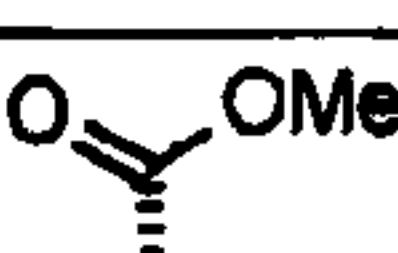
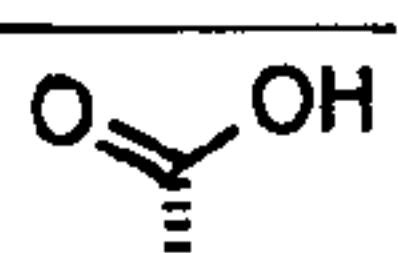
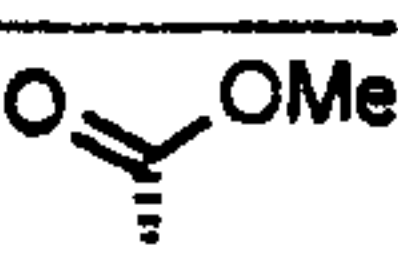
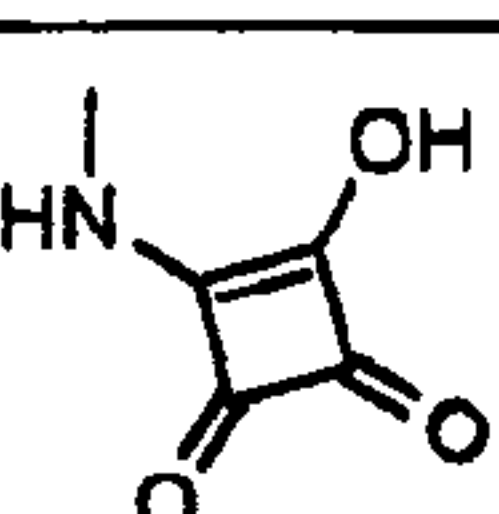
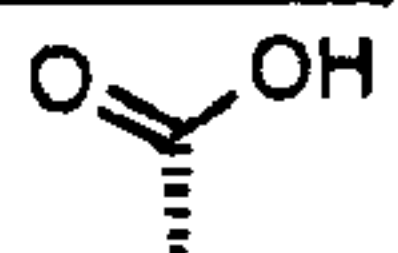
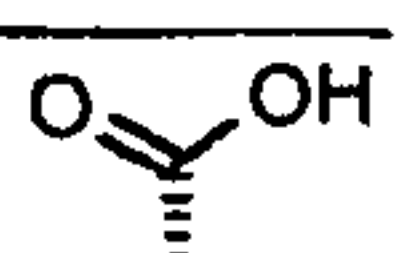
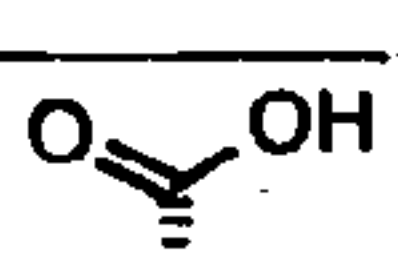
wherein R^{3a} , R^{3j} , R^{3k} , R^{3l} , and m , are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^{3a}	R^{3j}	R^{3k}	R^{3l}	m
16001		H	OH	H	0
16002		H	CH ₂ COOH	H	1
16003		H	NH ₂	H	1
16004		OMe	OMe	H	0
16005	H	OMe	OMe	H	0
16006		OMe	OMe	H	0
16007		OMe	OMe	H	1

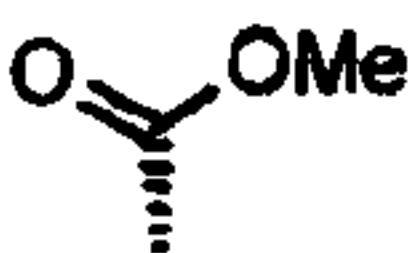
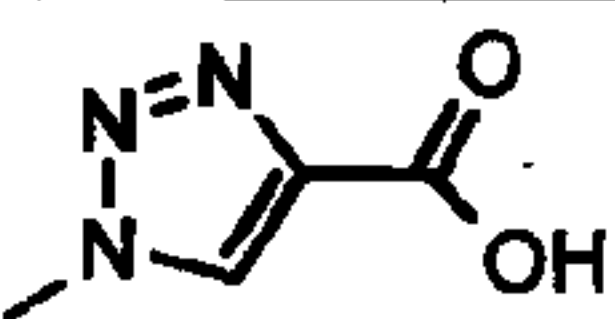
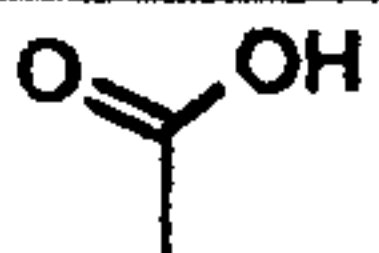
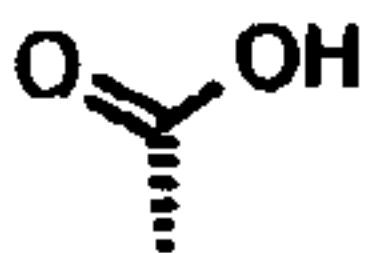
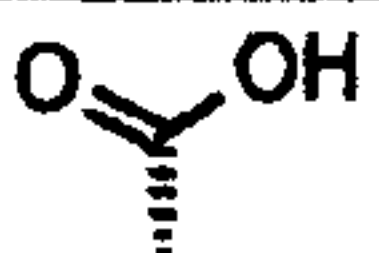
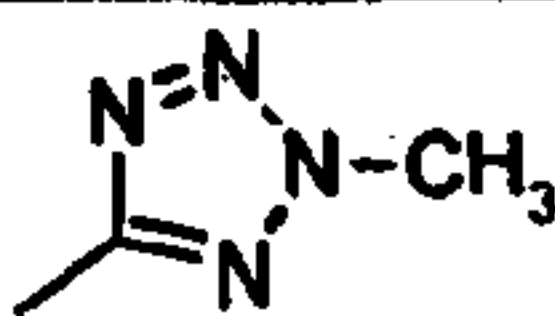
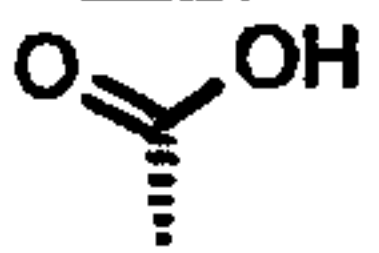
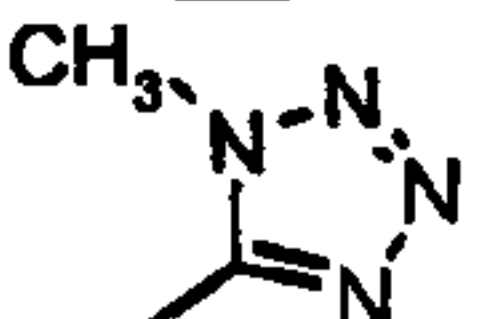
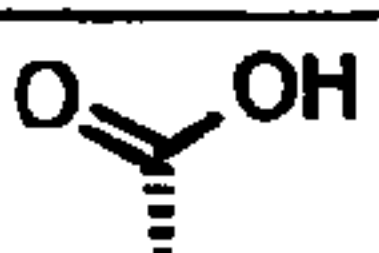
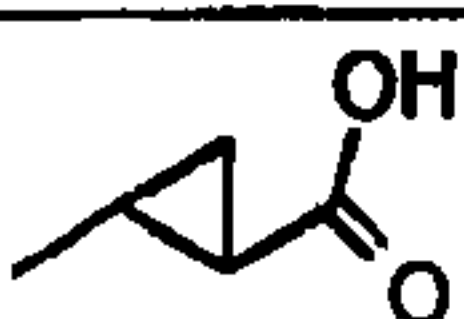
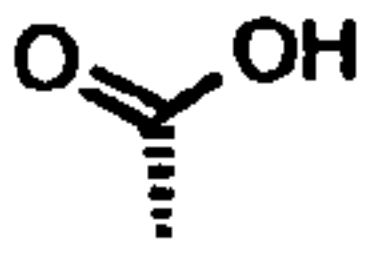
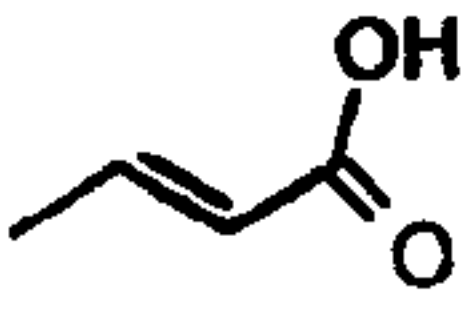
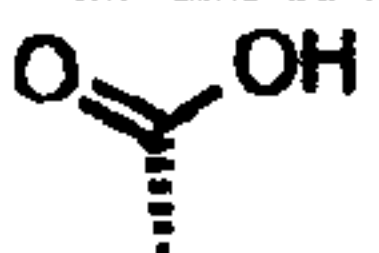
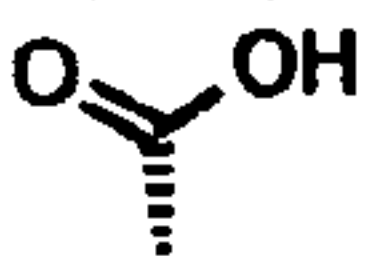
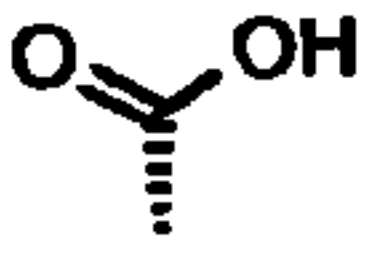
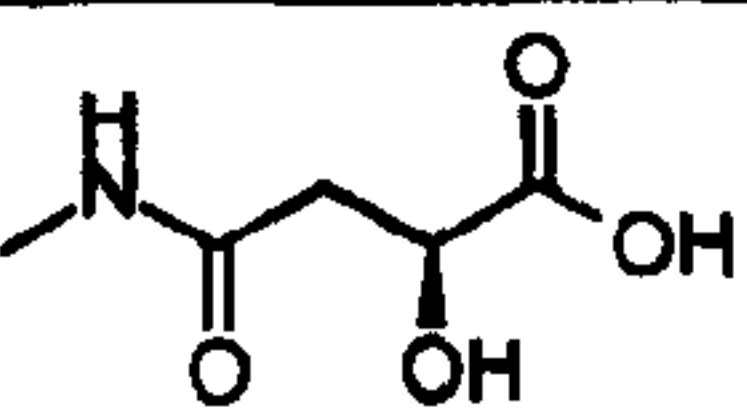
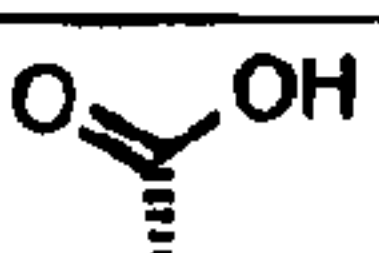
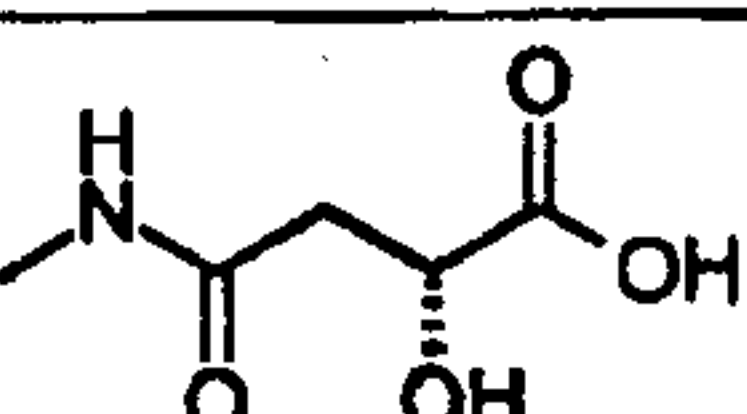
314

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m
16008		H	OH	H	1
16009		H	NHCOCOOH	H	1
16010		H	NHCH ₂ COOH	H	1
16011		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1
16012		H	COOH	H	1
16013		H	OH	H	2
16014		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	2
16015		OH	OH	H	1
16016		H	OCH ₂ COOH	H	0
16017		H		H	1
16018		H	OC(CH ₃) ₂ COOH	H	1
16019		H		H	1
16020		H	H	OCH ₂ COOH	1

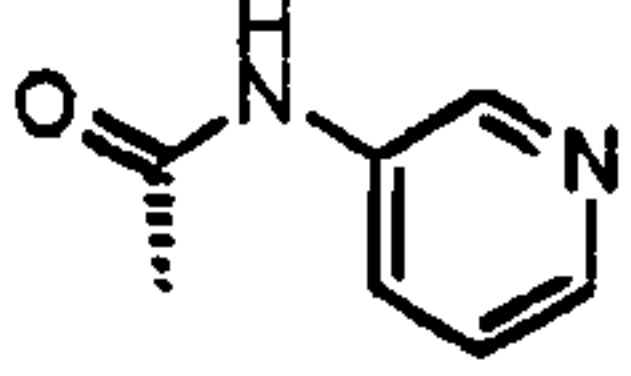
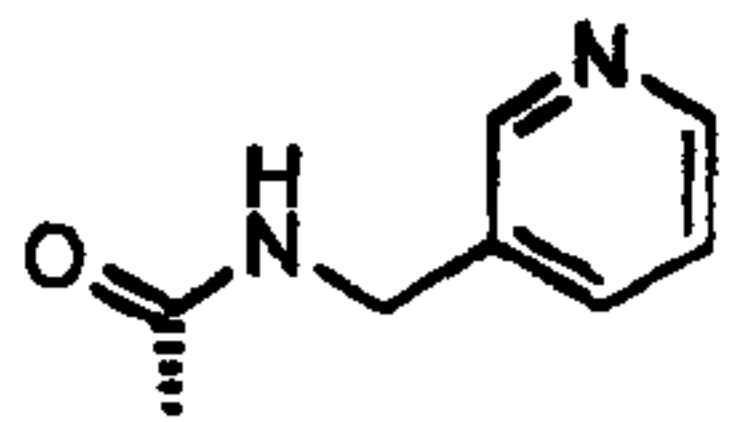
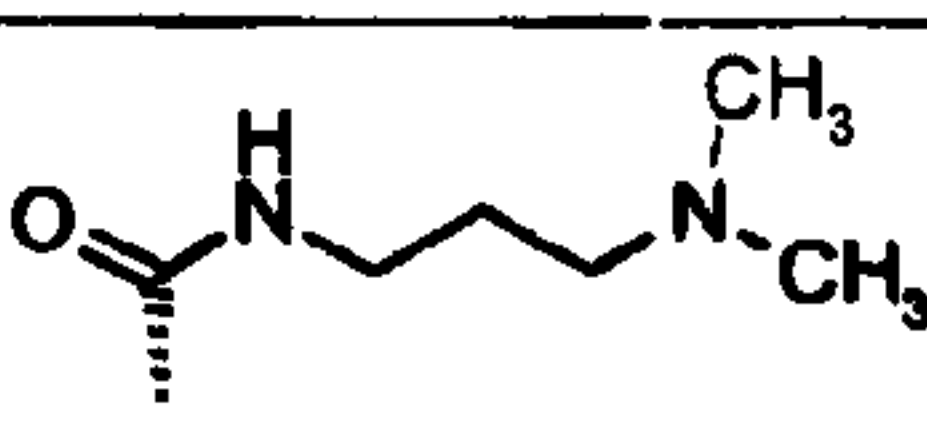
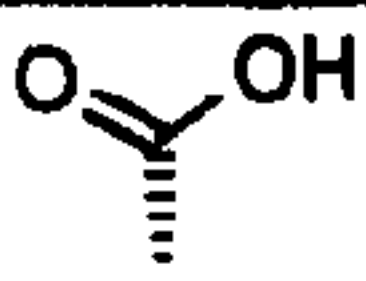
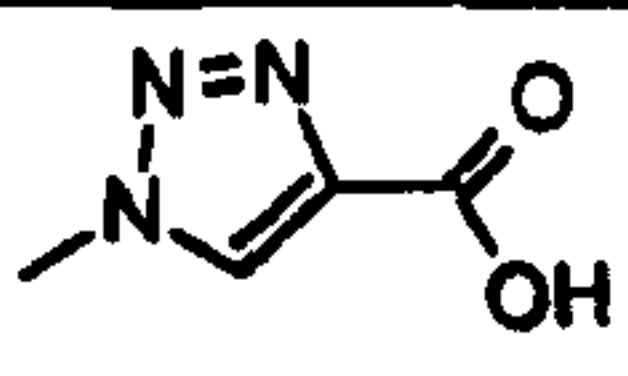
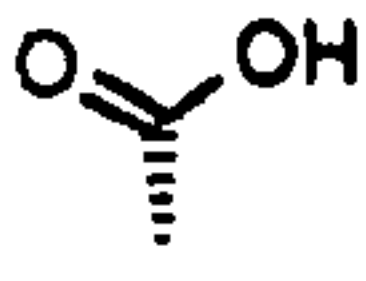
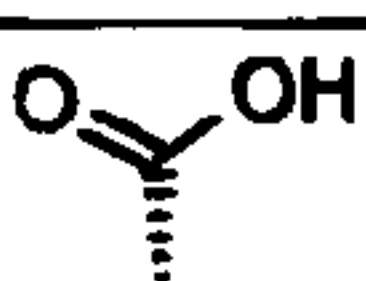
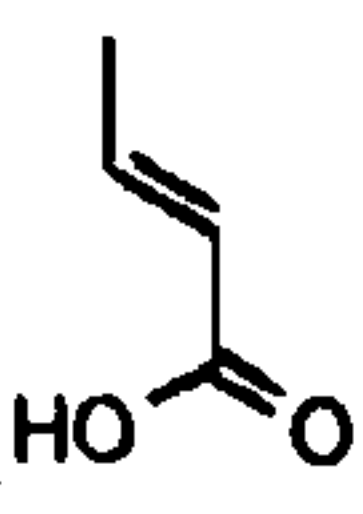
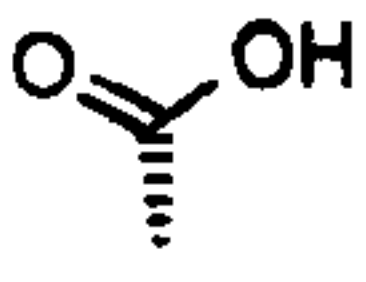
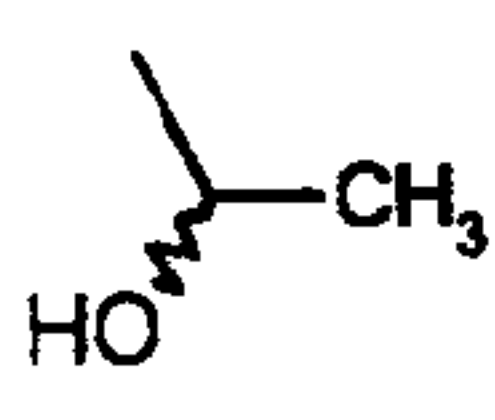
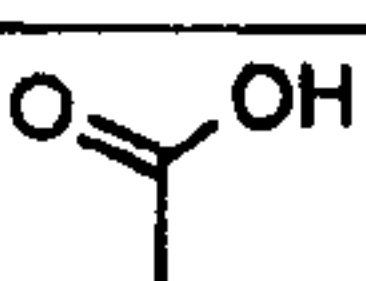
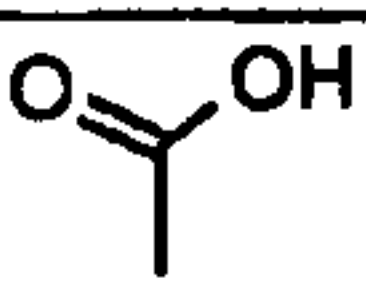
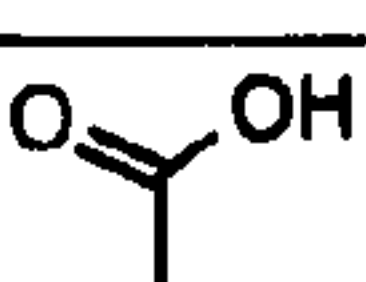
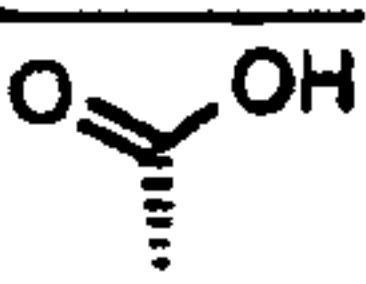
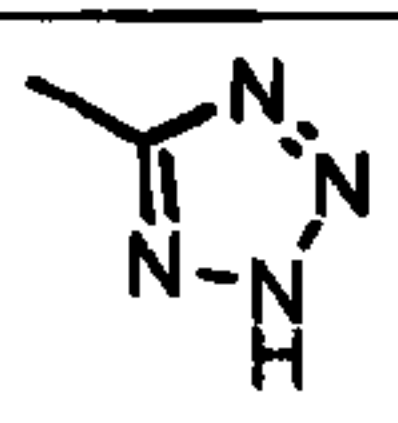
315

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m
16021		H	OH	H	1
16022		H		H	1
16023		H		H	1
16024		H		H	1
16025		H		H	1
16026		H	NHCONH ₂	H	1
16027		H	NHCN	H	1
16028		H	NHCHO	H	1
16029		H		H	1
16030		H	NHSO ₂ CF ₃	H	1
16031		H	NHCOCH ₃	H	1
16032		H	NHSO ₂ CH ₃	H	1

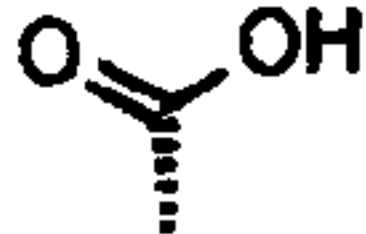
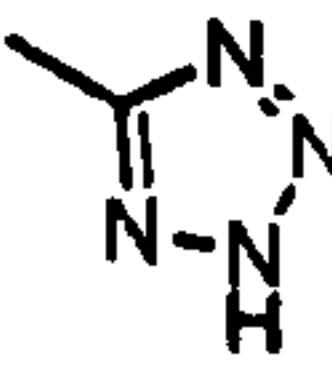
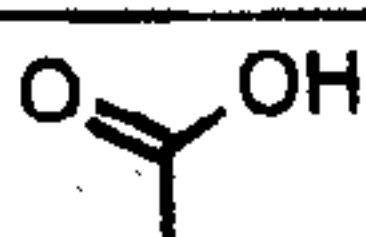
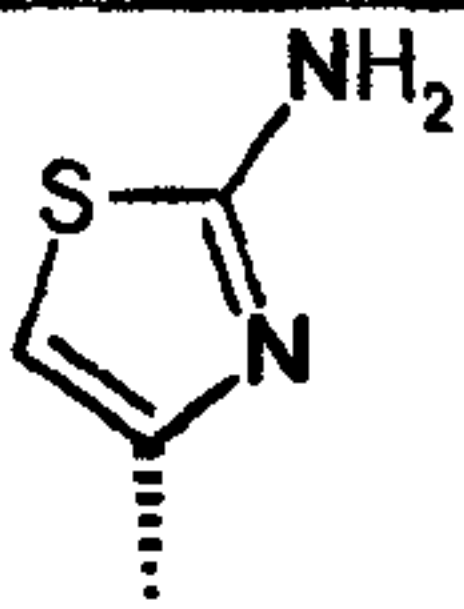
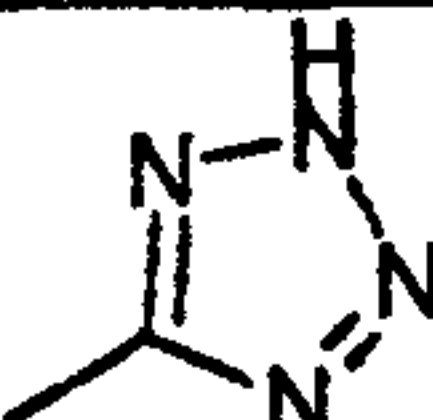
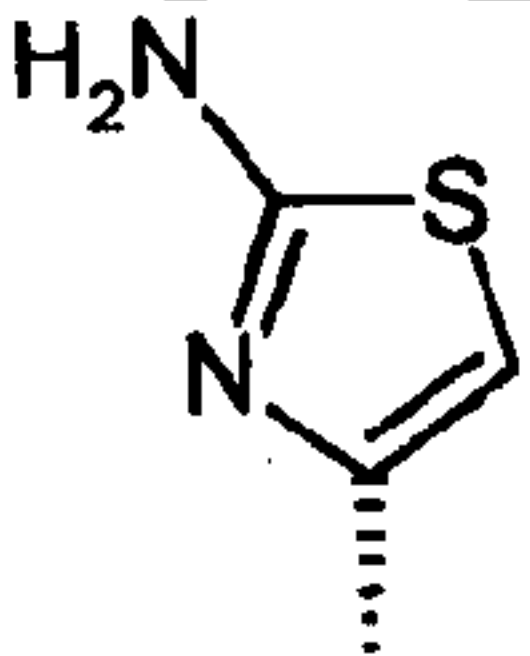
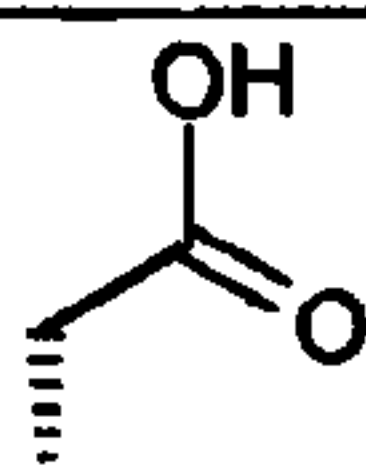
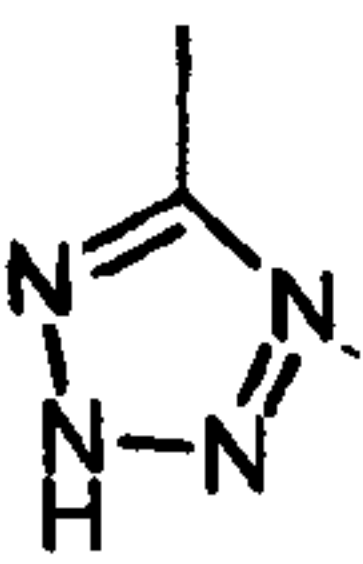
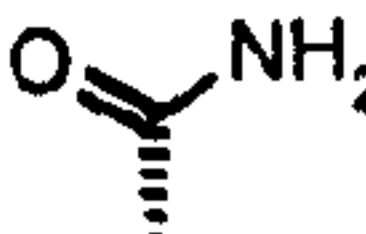
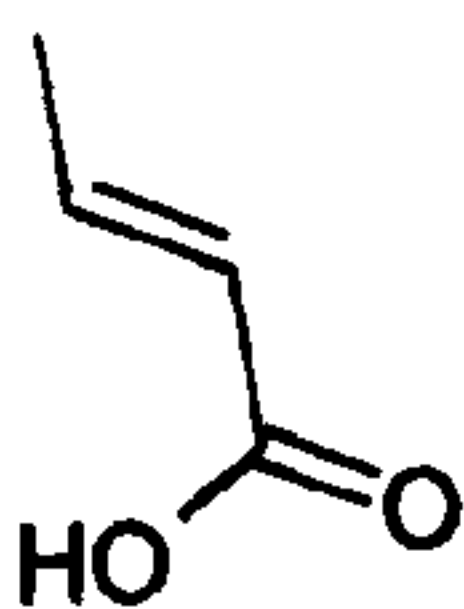
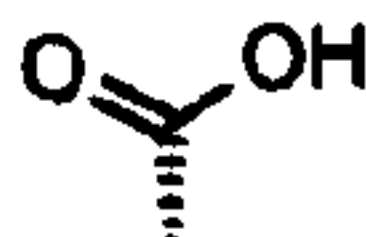
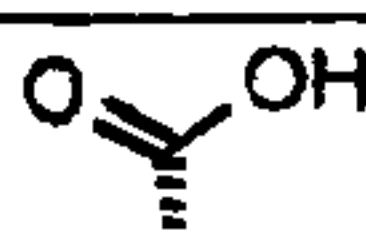
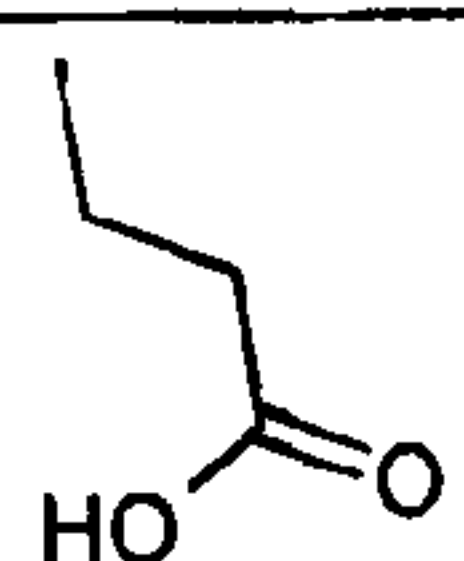
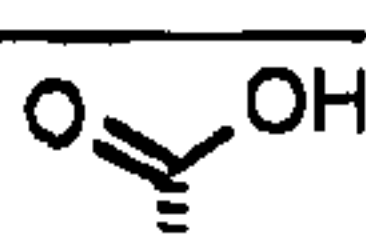
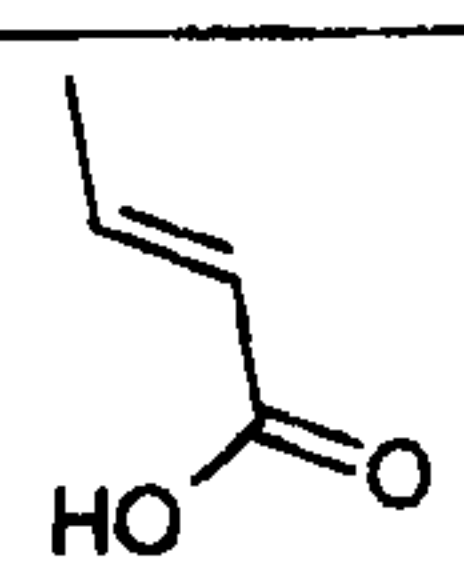
316

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m
16033		H		H	1
16034		CH ₃	OH	CH ₃	1
16035		H	CONH ₂	H	1
16036		H		H	1
16037		H		H	1
16038		H	CH ₂ CH ₂ COOH	H	1
16039		H		H	1
16040		H		H	1
16041		Br	OH	Br	1
16042		H	O(CH ₂) ₄ COOH	H	1
16043		H	O(CH ₂) ₃ COOH	H	1
16044		H		H	1
16045		H		H	1

317

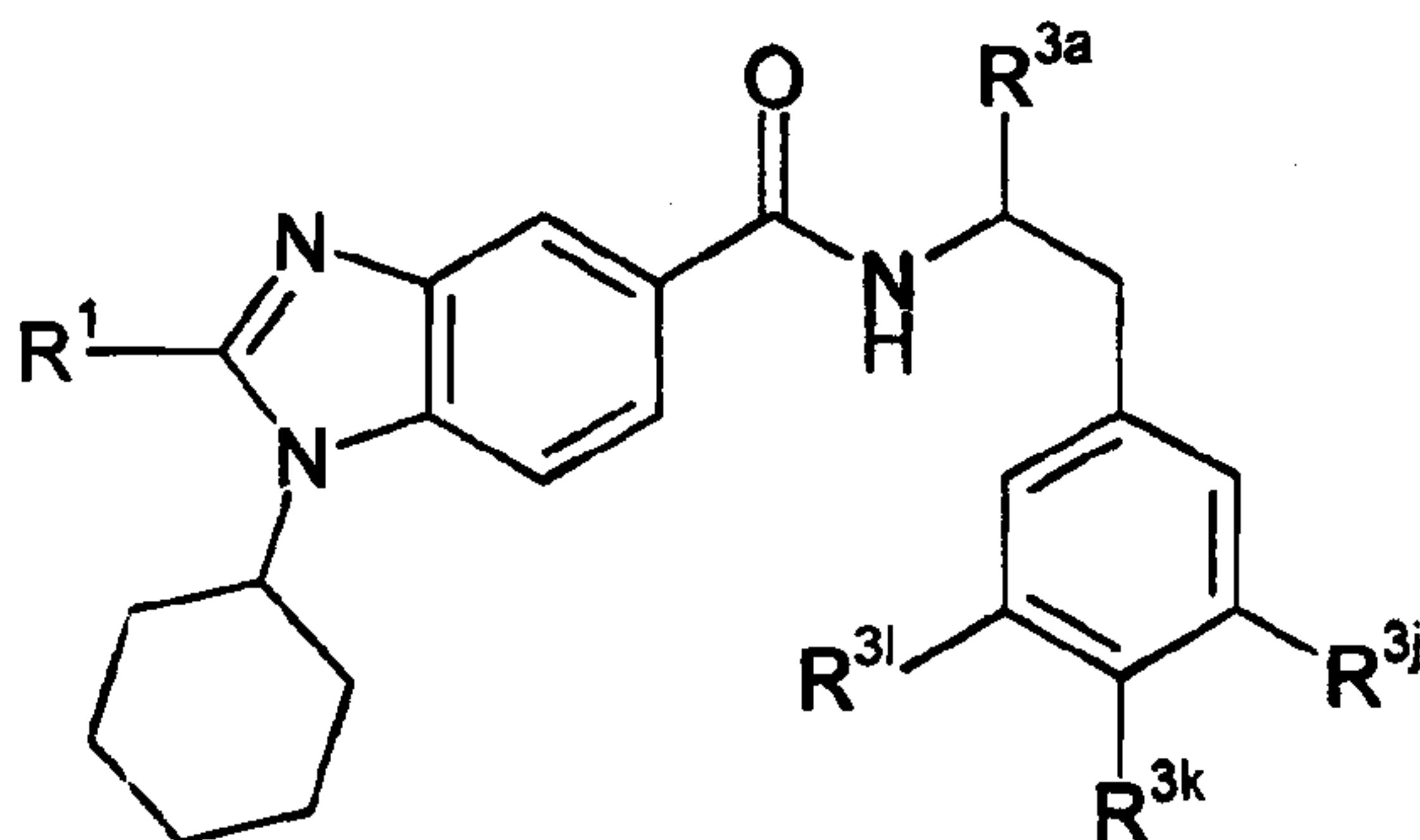
Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m
16046		H	OH	H	1
16047		H	OH	H	1
16048		H	OH	H	1
16049		H		H	1
16050		H	PO ₄ ⁻	H	1
16051			OMe	H	1
16052			OH	H	1
16053		COOH	H	H	1
16054		COOH	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1
16055		Cl	OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃	1
16056			OH	H	1

318

Entry #	R ^{3a}	R ^{3j}	R ^{3k}	R ^{3l}	m
16057			H	H	1
16058		COOH	OH	H	1
16059		H		H	1
16060		H	OH	H	1
16061		H		H	1
16062			OH	H	1
16063		N ₃	OCH ₂ COOH	H	1
16064			OH	H	1
16065			OH	H	1

319

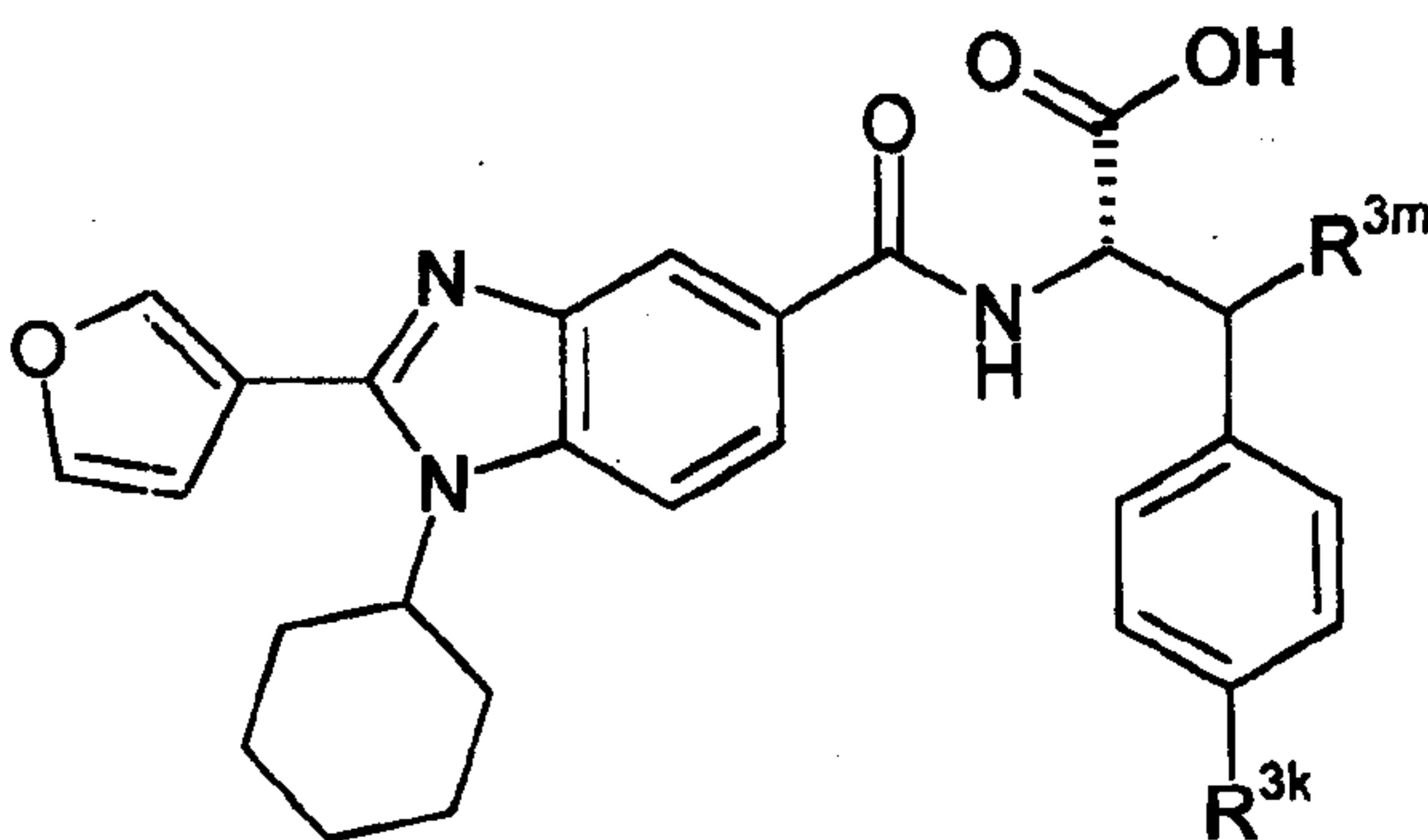
43. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



wherein R^1 , R^{3a} , R^{3j} , R^{3k} , and R^{3l} are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^1	R^{3a}	R^{3j}	R^{3k}	R^{3l}
17001			OMe	OMe	H
17002		H	OMe	OMe	H

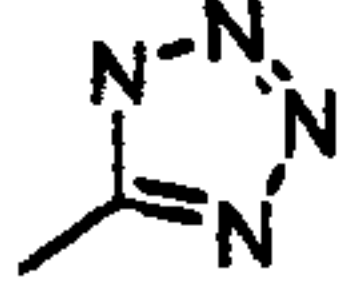
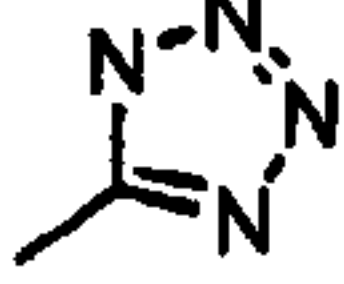
44. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



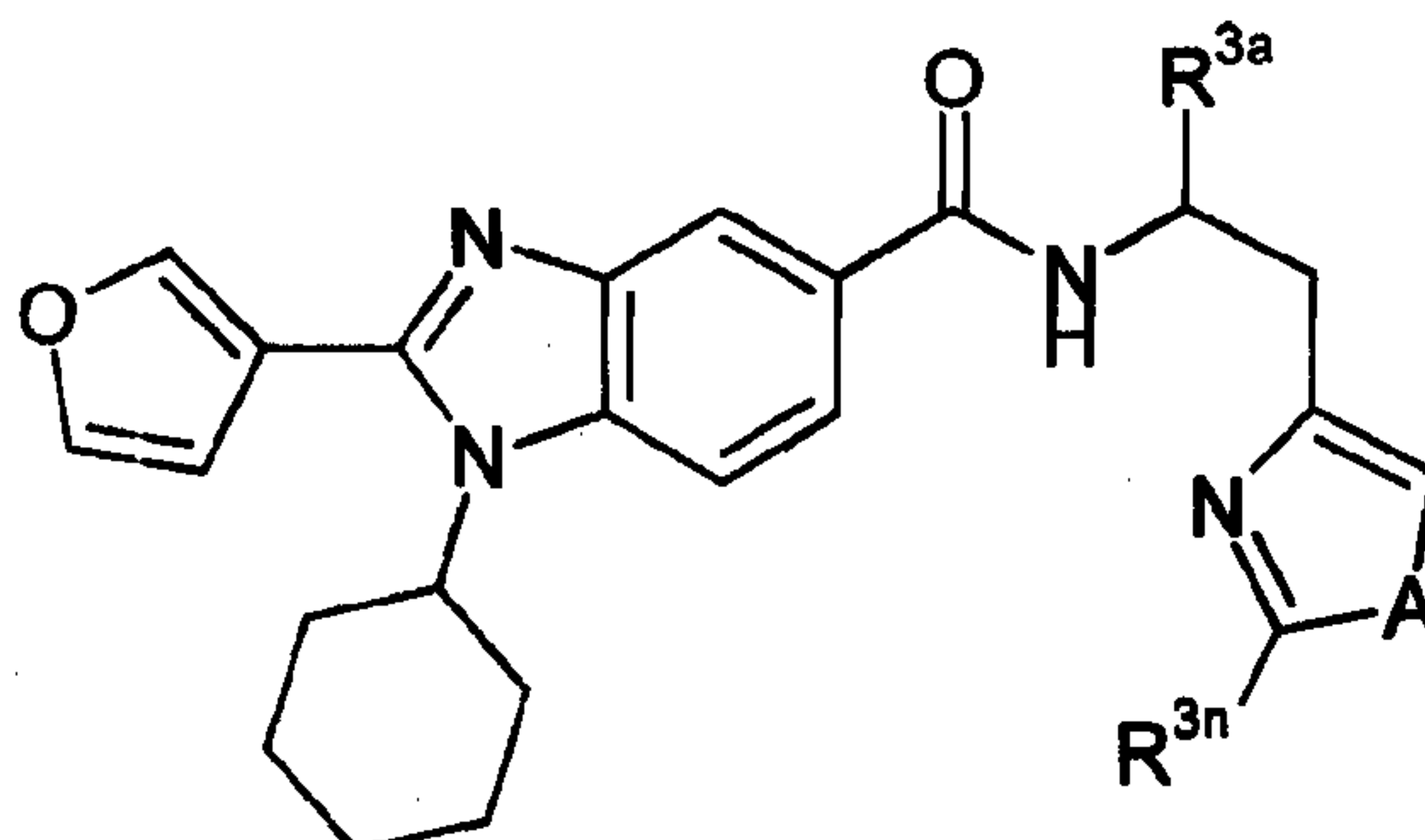
wherein R^{3m} and R^{3k} are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^{3m}	R^{3k}

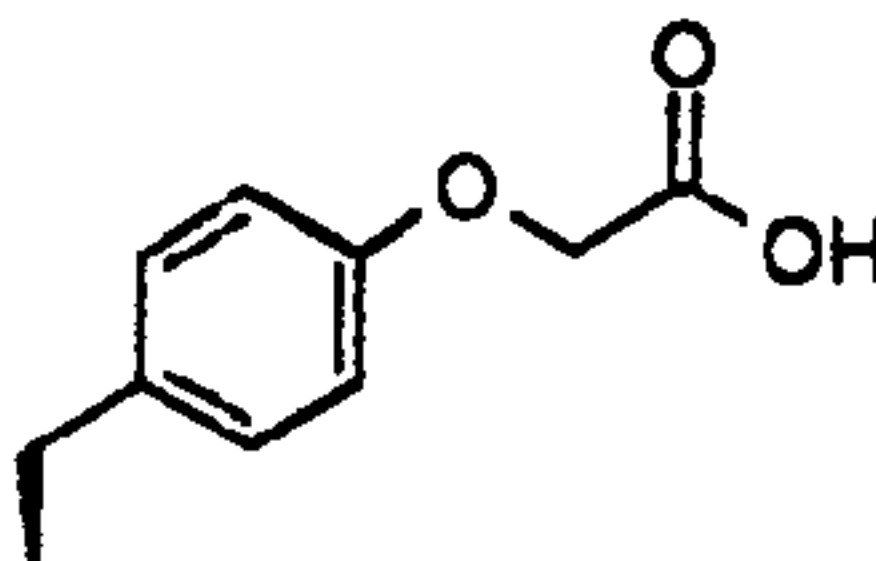
320

18001		
18002		

45. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

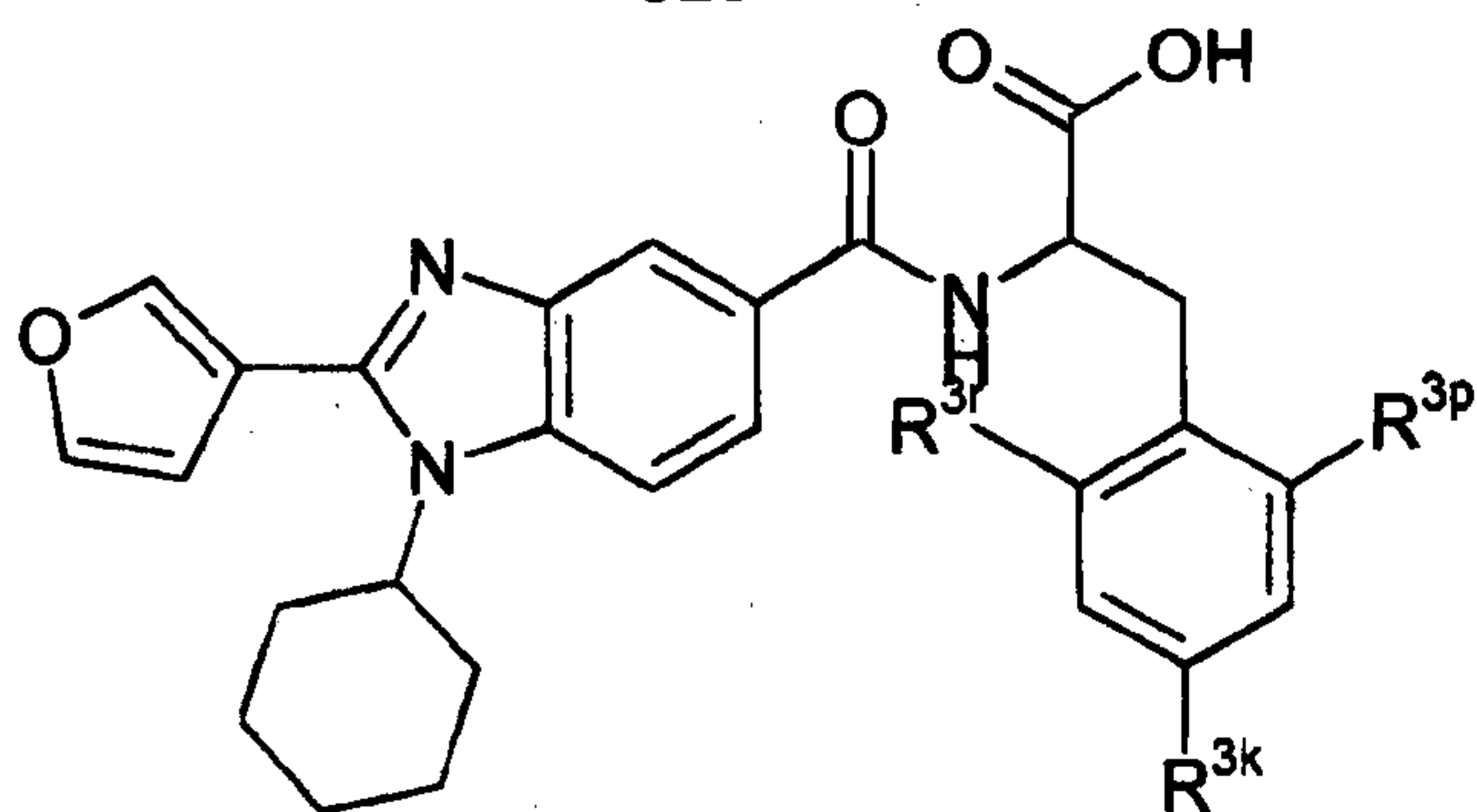


5 wherein R^{3a} , R^{3n} , and A are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^{3a}	R^{3n}	A
19001		H	NCH ₂ COOH
19002		NH ₂	S

10 46. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

321

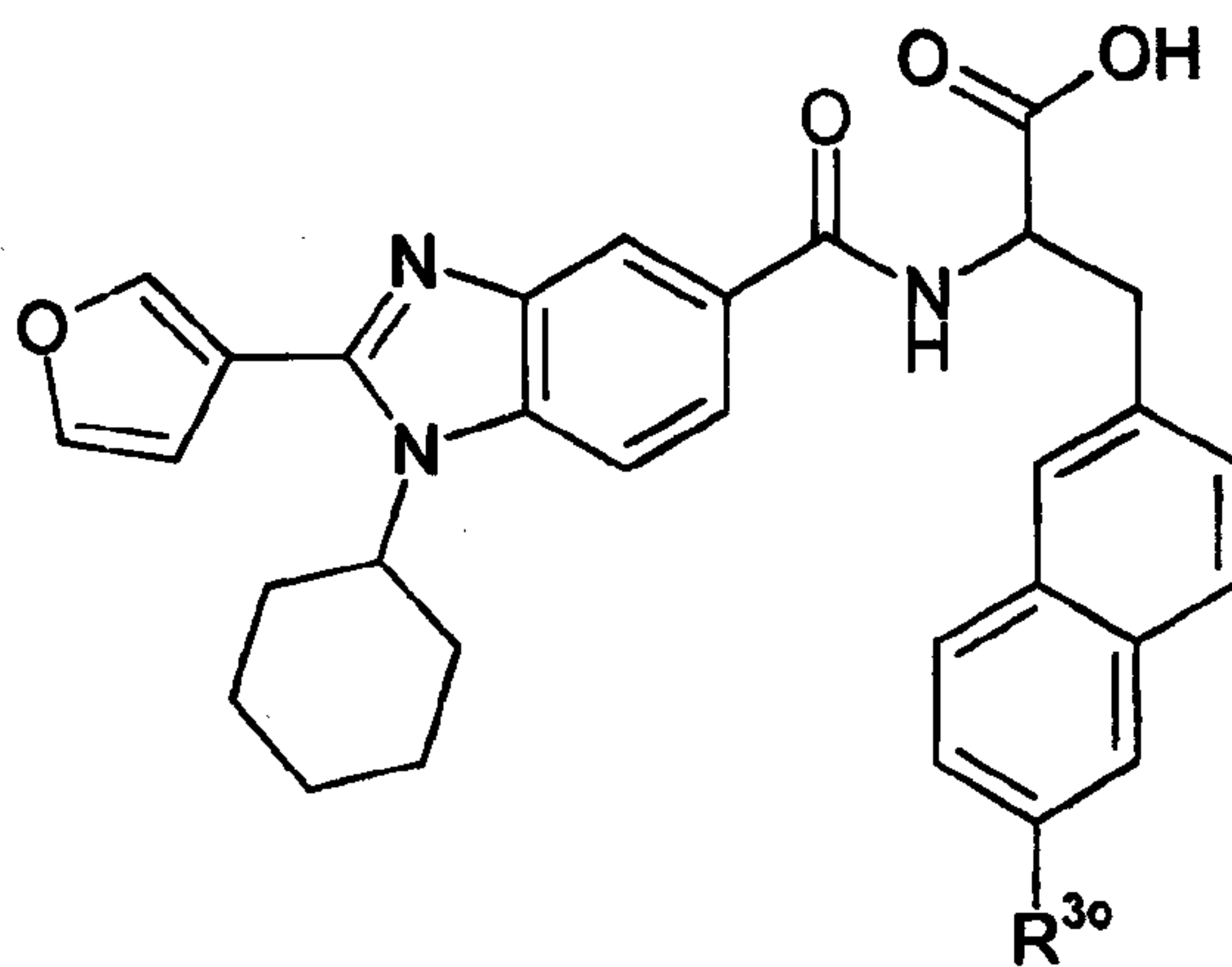


wherein R^{3k} , R^{3p} , and R^{3r} are as defined as follows:

Entry #	R^{3k}	R^{3p}	R^{3r}
20001	OCH_2COOH	CH_3	CH_3

5

47. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:

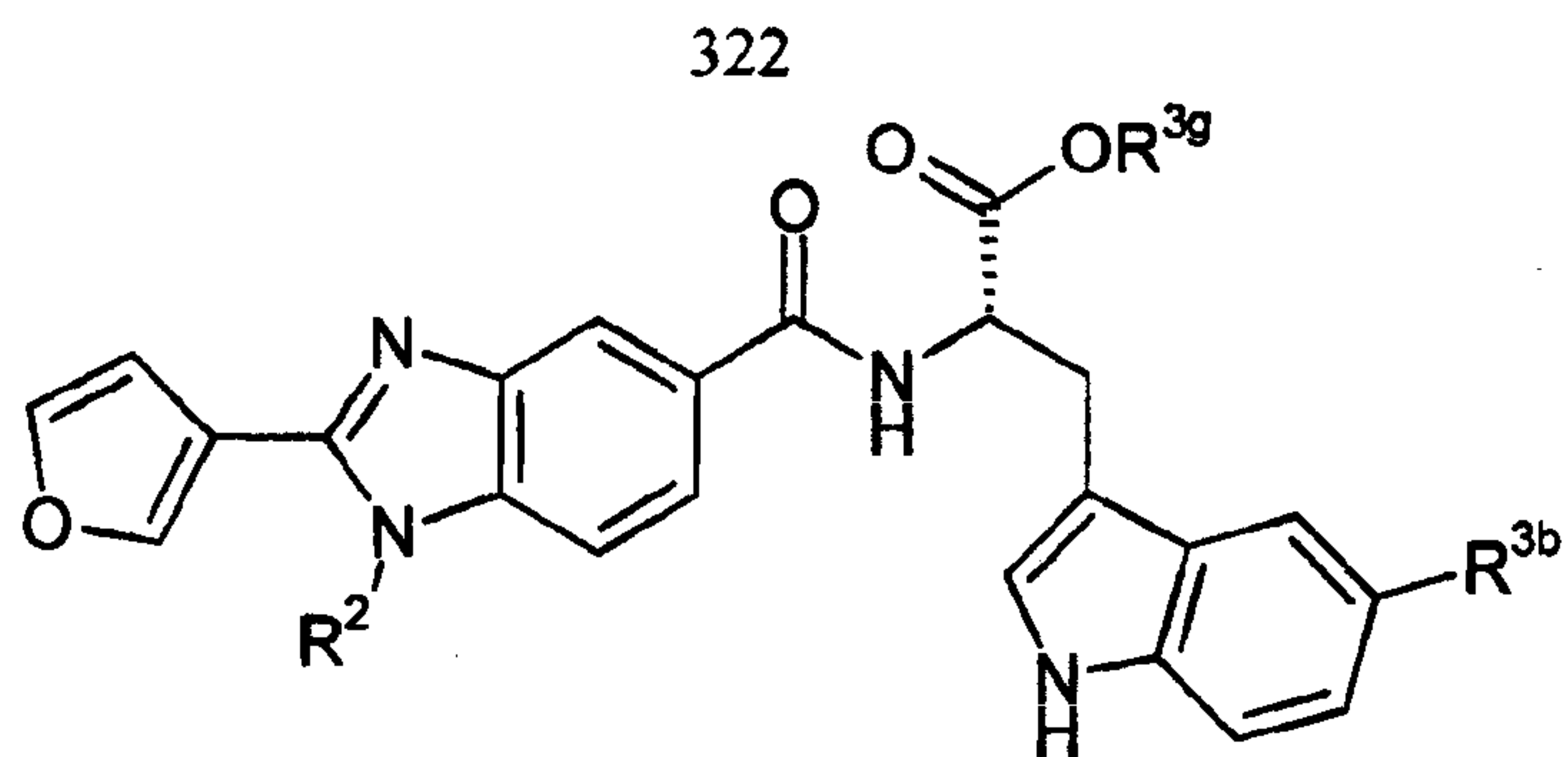


10

wherein R^{3o} is as defined as follows:

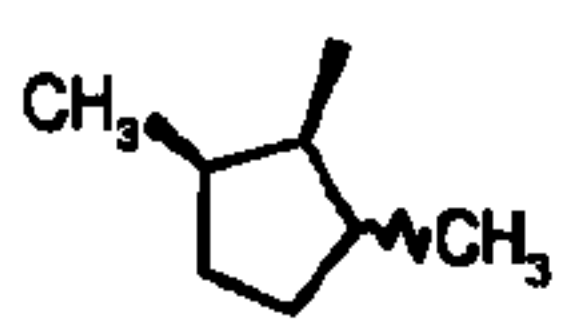
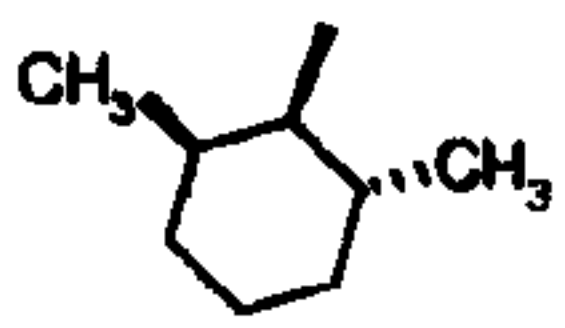
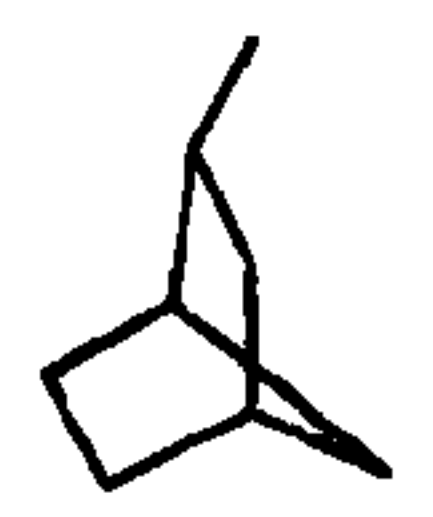
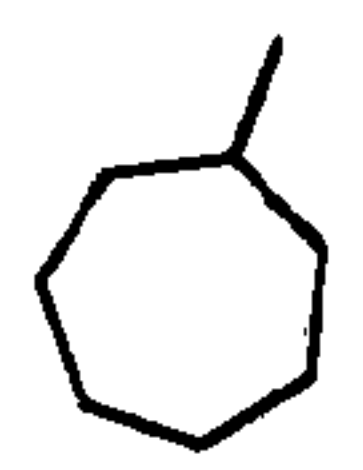
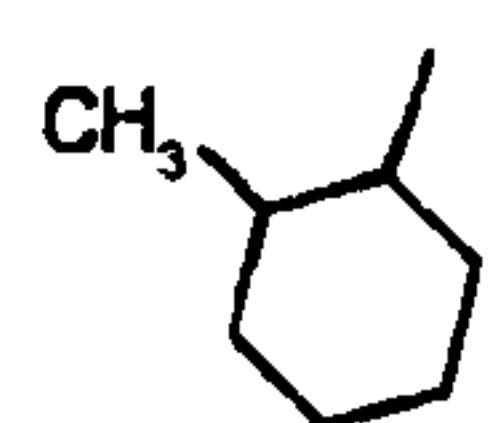
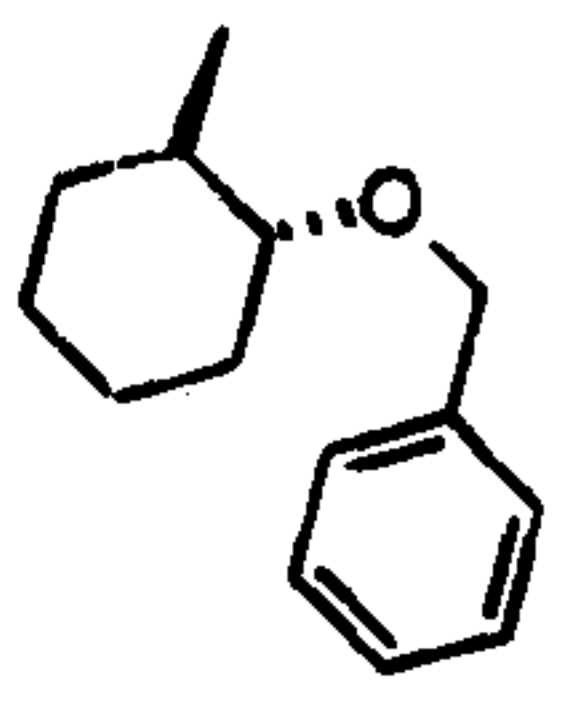
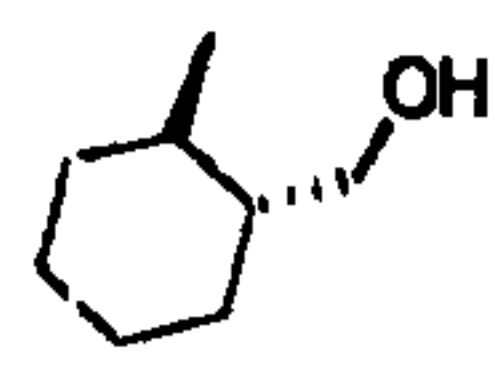
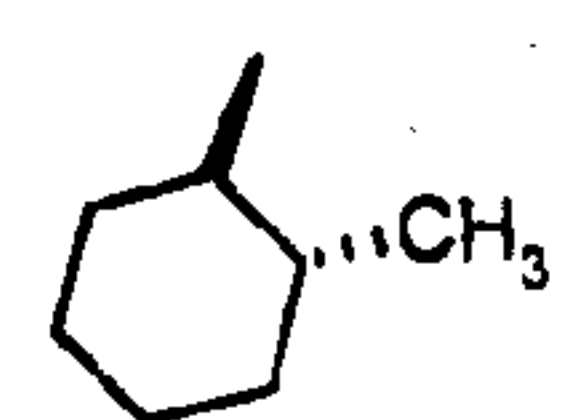
Entry #	R^{3o}
21001	OH
21002	OCH_2COOH

48. The compound of formula I as claimed in claim 1, having the following formula:



Entry #	R^2	R^{3b}	R^{3g}
22002		OH	H
22003		OH	H
22004		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃
22005		OCH ₂ COOH	CH ₃
22007		OCH ₂ COOH	H
22008		OCH ₂ COOH	H
22009		OH	H
22010		OH	H

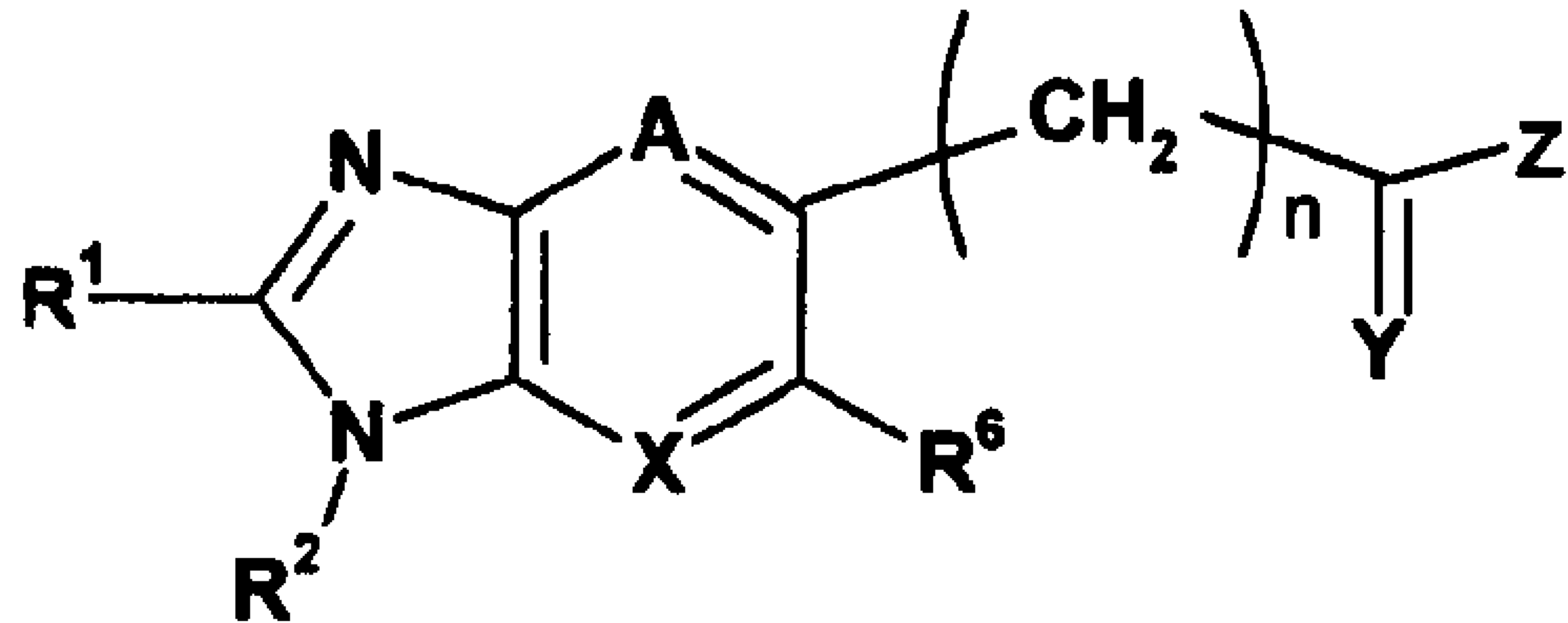
323

Entry #	R ²	R ^{3b}	R ^{3g}
22011		OH	H
22012		OH	H
22013		OH	H
22015		OH	H
22016		OH	H
22017		OH	H
22018		OH	H
22019		OH	H
22020		OH	H
22021		OH	H

- 5 49. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the formula I, without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, as an inhibitor of RNA dependent RNA polymerase activity of the enzyme NS5B, encoded by HCV.
- 10 50. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a compound of the formula I, without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, as an inhibitor of HCV replication.
- 15 51. A pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prevention of HCV infection, comprising an effective amount of a compound of formula I, without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 20 52. Use of a compound of formula I, without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1, for the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of HCV infection.
- 25 53. Use of a compound of formula I without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1 as an inhibitor of RNA dependent RNA polymerase activity of the enzyme NS5B, encoded by HCV.
54. Use of a compound of formula I without the provisos, as claimed in claim 1 as an inhibitor of HCV replication.

FIGURE 1
AMINO ACID SEQUENCE OF HCV NS5B (SEQ ID NO. 1)

MSYYHHHHHDYDIPTTENLYFQGAMDPEFSMSYTWGTGALITPCAAEESQLPINALSNSLVRHRNMVYSTTSRSAALRQK
KVTFDRQLQVLDHRYRDVLKEMKAKASTVKAKLLSVEEACKLTTPHSAKSKFGYGAKDVRLSSKAVDHIRSVWKDILLED
ETPIDTTIMAKNEVFCVQPEKGGKPARLIVFPDLGVRVCEKMALYDVVSTLPQAVMGSSYGFQYSPKQRVEFLVNAWKS
5 KKCPMGFSYDTRCFDSTVTESDIRVEESIYQCCDLAPEARQAISLTERLYIGGPLTNSKGQNCGYRRCRASGVLTTS
NTLTCYLKASAAACRAAKLQDCTMLVNGDDL VICESAGTQEDAAANLRVFTTEAMTRYSAAPPDLPQPEYDLELITSCSSNV
SVAHDASGKRVYYLTRDPTTPLARAAWETARHTPINSWLGNIMYAPT LWARMVLMTHFFSILLAQEQLEKALDCQIYGA
CYSIEPLDLPQIIERLHGLSAFSLHSYSPGEINRVASCLRKLGVPPLRVWRHRARSVRAKLLSQGGRAATCGKYLFNWAV
10 RTKLKLTPIPAASRLDLSGWFVAGYNGGDIYHSLSRARPRWFMLCLLLSVGVGIYLLPNR



(I)